

# Forgotten Books

— [www.forgottenbooks.com](http://www.forgottenbooks.com) —

Copyright © 2016 FB &c Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

In compliance with current  
copyright law, Cornell University  
Library produced this  
replacement volume on paper  
that meets the ANSI Standard  
Z39.48-1992 to replace the  
irreparably deteriorated original.

2005





21  
11

FRAGILE PAPER  
Please handle this book  
with care, as the paper  
is brittle.

**Cornell University Library**

BOUGHT WITH THE INCOME  
FROM THE  
SAGE ENDOWMENT FUND  
THE GIFT OF  
**Henry W. Sage**  
1891

A.1884.09

..... 17/3/05

1248

**FRAGILE DOES NOT  
CIRCULATE**

# A LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR

SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY

GEORGE M. LANE, PH.D., LL.D.

PROFESSOR EMERITUS OF LATIN IN  
HARVARD UNIVERSITY

*REVISED EDITION*

NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

7/2/95

A. 128409

Copyright, 1898, 1903, by GARDINER M. LANE and LOUISA VAN RENSSLAER.

---

*All rights reserved.*

W. P. 2

## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

GEORGE MARTIN LANE died on the thirtieth of June, 1897. His *Latin Grammar*, in the preparation of which he had been engaged, during the intervals of teaching in Harvard University, for nearly thirty years, was at that time approaching completion. The first two hundred and ninety-one pages had been stereotyped; the pages immediately following, on the *Relative Sentence* and the *Conjunctive Particle Sentence* through *quod* and *quia* (pages 292-302), together with the chapter on the *Infinitive* (pages 374-386), were ready for stereotyping; of the remainder of the book, pages 303-373 and 387-436 were in the form of a first draught; finally, he had received a few weeks before his death, but had never examined, the manuscript of the chapter on *Versification* (pages 442-485), written at his invitation by his former pupil, Dr. Herman W. Hayley, now of Wesleyan University.

It was found that my dear and honoured master had left a written request that his work should be completed by me, in consultation with his colleagues, Professors Frederic De Forest Allen and Clement Lawrence Smith. A month had scarcely passed when scholars everywhere had another heavy loss to mourn in the sudden death of Professor Allen. Almost immediately afterwards, Professor Smith left this country, to take charge for a year of the American School of Classical Studies in Rome, but not before we had agreed that circumstances required the early publication of the book, notwithstanding his absence. I was thus deprived of two eminent counsellors, whose knowledge and experience would have been of inestimable assistance.

About one hundred and twenty pages (303-373 and 387-436), exclusive of *Versification*, were yet to receive their final form. Professor Lane had determined the order in which the topics contained in these pages should be treated, and no change has been made in that order. Most of the main principles of syntax,



## Preface.

---

too, have been left exactly as they were expressed in his draught. This draught was written some years ago, and, although he had corrected and annotated it from time to time, there is no doubt that in writing it out afresh he would have made many alterations and improvements which are not indicated in his notes. Consequently, he is not to be held responsible for errors and omissions in the pages which had not received his final approval. Yet I conceived it my duty to preserve, so far as possible, the very language of his corrected draught; and this, in the statement of almost all the main principles, I have been able to do. Some modifications and some radical alterations were inevitable; in particular, the treatment of *quamvis*, *quando*, *quin*, the *Supine*, and *Numerals* seemed to call for much amplification and rearrangement. I have also deemed it necessary to add some seventy sections<sup>1</sup> under various heads, and Dr. Hayley has been good enough to write sections 2458–2510, which precede his chapter on *Versification*. But, in general, my principal function has been: first, to provide additional Latin examples of the principles which Professor Lane had formulated; secondly, to enter, under the various principles, historical statements regarding the usage in the Latin writers, drawn from the best authorities at my disposal.

Professor Lane's own method was far from that of a compiler. He took nothing for granted without thorough investigation, however well established it might seem, and he followed the dictum of no man, however widely accepted as an authority. For example, his many pupils and correspondents will remember how untiring he was in his efforts to arrive at accuracy in even the minutest points of inflection. Thus, for the *List of Verbs* (§§ 922–1022), he made entirely new collections, and admitted no form among the 'principal parts' unless actually found represented in the authors. In the details of syntax, he was equally indefatigable; the sections on the *Locative Proper* (1331–1341), for instance, contain the result of an immense amount of painful

<sup>1</sup> The sections which I have added are as follows: 1866, 1873, 1878, 1879, 1880, 1887, 1890, 1901, 1902, 1903, 1907, 1909, 1913, 1922, 1927, 1935, 1964, 1975, 1978, 1979, 1980, 1981, 1982, 1983, 1984, 1989, 1990, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2068, 2086, 2088, 2097, 2111, 2122, 2152, 2155, 2255, 2264, 2267, 2271, 2273, 2275, 2276, 2277, 2281, 2289, 2292, 2345, 2357, 2400, 2406, 2407, 2408, 2409, 2410, 2411, 2412, 2413, 2414, 2740–2745.

## Preface.

---

research. He devoted much anxious thought to the definitions and the titles of the various constructions: thus, the distinction between the *Present of Vivid Narration* (1590) and the *Annalistic Present* (1591) seems obvious now that it is stated; but to reach it many pages of examples were collected and compared. He held that examples printed in the grammar to illustrate syntactical principles should never be manufactured; they should be accurately quoted from the authors, without other alteration than the omission of words by which the construction under illustration was not affected. He was careful, also, not to use an example in which there was any serious doubt as to the text in that part which covered the principle illustrated by the example. To 'Hidden Quantity' he had given much attention, and many of the results of his studies in this subject were published, in 1889, in the *School Dictionary* by his friend Dr. Lewis. Since that time he had found reason to change his views with regard to some words, and these changes are embodied in the present book, in which he marked every vowel which he believed to be long in quantity.

The order in which the divisions and subdivisions of grammar are here presented will not seem strange to those who are acquainted with the recent grammars published by Germans. It is the scientific order of presentation, whatever order a teacher may think fit to follow in his actual practice. The table of contents has been made so full as to serve as a systematic exposition of the scheme, and to make needless any further words upon it here. In the *Appendix* Professor Lane would have inserted, out of deference to custom, a chapter on the *Arrangement of Words*; but the draught of it which he left was too fragmentary for publication. Since the proper preparation of the chapter would have greatly delayed the publication of the book, it was thought best to omit it altogether, at least for the present. This topic, in fact, like some others in the *Appendix*, belongs rather to a treatise on Latin Composition than to a Latin Grammar.

For the indexes, and for much valuable help in proof reading, I heartily thank Dr. J. W. Walden, another of Professor Lane's pupils.

In the course of his work, Professor Lane frequently consulted his colleagues and other distinguished scholars both in this country and in Europe. He gratefully welcomed their advice, and care-

## *Preface.*

---

fully considered and often adopted their suggestions. Had he lived to write a preface, he would doubtless have thanked by name those to whom he considered himself as under particular obligation, whether from direct correspondence or through the use of their published works; but it is obvious that the information in my possession will not allow me to attempt this pleasant duty. Of Professor Lane's pupils, also, not a few, while in residence as advanced students at the University, were from time to time engaged in the collection of material which he used in the grammar. They, like his other helpers, must now be content with the thought of the courteous acknowledgment which they would have received from him.

MORRIS H. MORGAN.

HARVARD UNIVERSITY,  
CAMBRIDGE, *May*, 1898.

# PREFATORY NOTE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

IN this Revised Edition many changes and corrections in details have been introduced throughout the book, but no alterations have been made in the treatment of broad general principles, except in the chapter on Sound (§§ 16-179). This has been very largely rewritten and extended from nineteen to thirty-one pages by my friend, Professor Hanns Oertel, of Yale University, who has also been kind enough to make the changes in the chapters on Formation and Inflection rendered necessary by his rewriting of the sections on Sound. In this rewriting Mr. Oertel has proceeded upon the ideas that in a school grammar, even an advanced one, phonology should play a subordinate part; that nothing should be introduced that cannot be illustrated from such Latin and Greek as are available to the student; and that those points should be emphasized which assist in the analyzing of compounds and in the understanding of word-formation and inflection. With these ideas, which necessarily prevent the introduction of some important topics treated in works on phonetics, I am in entire sympathy.

My thanks are due to not a few scholars and reviewers who have pointed out passages in the first edition which in their opinion called for changes. Some of their suggestions I have adopted; with others I have found myself unable to agree.

M. H. M.

HARVARD UNIVERSITY,  
CAMBRIDGE, May, 1903.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

THE REFERENCES ARE TO SECTIONS.

Parts of Latin Grammar, 1.

## PART FIRST: WORDS, 2-1022.

Parts of Speech, 2-15.

### (A.) SOUND, 16-179.

Alphabet, 16-30.

Sources of our Pronunciation, 31.

Vowels, 32-46.

Long and Short, 33-36. Pronunciation, 37-42. Classification, 43-46.

Diphthongs, 47-50.

Nature and Kinds, 47, 48. Pronunciation, 49, 50.

Consonants, 51-81.

Pronunciation, 51-72. Classification, 73-81.

Syllabic and Unsyllabic Function, 82, 83.

Accent, 84-98.

Nature, 84. Marks of Accent, 85. The Classical Accent, 86-88. Earlier Recessive Accent, 89-91. Proclitics and Enclitics, 92-94.

Change of Sound, 95-174.

*Vowel Change:* Of Diphthongs, 95-101; 108. Of Simple Vowels, 102-107. Loss, 110-113. Hiatus, 114-116. Synizesis, 117. Contraction, 118. Elision, 119. Combination into Diphthongs, 120. Lengthening, 121-123. Shortening, 124-132. Transfer of Quantity, 133. Variation, 134. Quantitative Vowel Gradation, 135. Qualitative Vowel Changes, 136-143. Assimilation, 144. Qualitative Vowel Gradation, 145.

*Consonant Change:* Disappearance or Change of Single Consonants, 146-161. Change in Consonant Groups, 162-179. Assimilation, 163-166. Consonantal Glides, 167. Disappearance, 168-171. Development of Anaptyctical Vowel, 172. Dissimilation, 173. Changes within Compounds, 174.

Syllables, 175-179.

Defined, 175, 176. Length of Syllables, 177, 178. Loss, 179.

# Table of Contents.

---

## (B.) FORMATION, 180-396.

Definitions, 180-198.

Roots, 183-189. Present Stems as Roots, 190-194. Stems, 195-197.  
Primitives and Denominatives, 198.

Formation of the Noun, 199-364.

Without a Formative Suffix, 199. Formative Suffixes, 200-203. *Formation of the Substantive*: Primitives, 204-245. Denominatives, 246-279. *Formation of the Adjective*: Primitives, 280-297. Denominatives, 298-341. Comparison, 342-364.

Formation of Denominative Verbs, 365-375.

Composition, 376-396.

Of Nouns, 379-390. Of Verbs, 391-396.

## (C.) INFLECTION, 397-1022.

Definition, 397.

### (A.) INFLECTION OF THE NOUN, 398-712.

General Principles, 398-431.

Case Endings, 398. The Stem, 399-401. Gender, 402-413. Number, 414-418. Case, 419-431.

The Substantive, 432-607.

Stems in *-ā-* (*The First Declension*), 432-445. Stems in *-o-* (*The Second Declension*), 446-466. Consonant Stems (*The Third Declension*), 467-512. Stems in *-i-* (*The Third Declension*), 513-569. Gender of Consonant Stems and *-i-* Stems, 570-584. Stems in *-u-* (*The Fourth Declension*), 585-595. Stems in *-ē-* (*The Fifth Declension*), 596-607.

The Adjective, 608-643.

Stems in *-o-* and *-ā-*, 613-620. Consonant Stems, 621-626. Stems in *-i-*, 627-636. Numeral Adjectives, 637-643.

The Pronoun, 644-695.

Personal and Reflexive, 644-651. Personal and Reflexive Possessive, 652-655. Other Pronouns, 656-659. Demonstrative, 660-670. Determinative, 671-675. Pronoun of Identity, 676-678. Intensive, 679-680. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite, 681-694. Correlative Pronouns, 695.

The Adverb, Conjunction, and Preposition, 696-712.

Nouns as Adverbs, 696-698. Accusative, 699-702. Ablative, 703-707. Locative, 708-709. Other Endings, 710. Correlative Adverbs, 711. Sentences as Adverbs, 712.

### (B.) INFLECTION OF THE VERB, 713-1022.

General Principles, 713-742.

The Stem, 714-720. The Person Ending, 721-731. Nouns of the Verb, 732. Principal Parts, 733-735. Designation of the Verb, 736-737. Theme, 738-740. Classes of Verbs, 741-742.

Primitive Verbs, 743-791.

Root Verbs, 743-744. Inflection of *sum*, 745-750. *possum*, 751-753. *dō*, 754-757. *bibō*, *serō*, *sistō*, 758. *inquam*, 759-761. *eō*, 762-767. *queō*

## Table of Contents.

---

and nequeō, 768. edō, 769-771. volō, nōlō, mālō, 772-779. ferō, 780-781. Verbs in -ere (*The Third Conjugation*), regō, 782-783. Verbs in -iō, -ere, 784-791. capiō, 784-785. āiō, 786-787. fiō, 788-790. Others in -iō, -ere, 791.

**Denominative Verbs, 792-797.**

Verbs in -āre (*The First Conjugation*), laudō, 792-793. Verbs in -ēre (*The Second Conjugation*), moneō, 794-795. Verbs in -īre (*The Fourth Conjugation*), audiō, 796-797.

**Deponent Verbs, 798-801.**

**Periphrastic Forms, 802-804.**

**Defective Verbs, 805-817.**

**Redundant Verbs, 818-823.**

**Formation of Stems, 824-919.**

Variable Vowel, 824-827. *The Present System*: Present Indicative Stem, 828-840. Present Subjunctive, 841-843. Imperative, 844-846. Imperfect Indicative, 847-848. Imperfect Subjunctive, 849-850. Future, 851-853. *The Perfect System*: Perfect Indicative Stem, 854-875. Perfect Subjunctive, 876-878. Perfect Imperative, 879. Pluperfect Indicative, 880. Pluperfect Subjunctive, 881. Future Perfect, 882-884. Short or Old forms of the Perfect System, 885-893. *Nouns of the Verb*: The Infinitive, 894-898. Gerundive and Gerund, 899. Supine, 900. Present Participle, 901-903. Future Participle, 904-905. Perfect Participle, 906-919.

**List of Verbs arranged according to the Principal Parts, 920-1022.**

## PART SECOND: SENTENCES, 1023-2299.

**Definitions, 1023-1061.**

The Simple Sentence, 1023-1025. The Subject, 1026-1034. The Predicate, 1035-1036. Enlargements of the Subject, 1038-1047. Enlargements of the Predicate, 1048-1054. Combination of Sentences, 1055. The Compound Sentence, 1056-1057. The Complex Sentence, 1058-1061.

**Agreement, 1062-1098.**

Of the Verb, 1062-1076. Of the Substantive, 1077-1081. Of the Adjective, 1082-1098.

### THE SIMPLE SENTENCE, 1099-1635.

(A.) USE OF THE NOUN, 1099-1468.

**Number and Gender, 1099-1110.**

**Case, 1111-1437.**

**NOMINATIVE, 1113-1123.** Nominative of Title, 1114-1116. Of Exclamation, 1117. Vocative Nominative and Vocative Proper, 1118-1123.

**ACCUSATIVE, 1124-1174.** Of the Object, 1132-1139. Emphasizing or Defining, 1140-1146. Of the Part Concerned, 1147. Of the Thing Put



## Table of Contents.

---

On, 1148. Of Exclamation, 1149-1150. Of Space and Time, 1151-1156. Of the Aim of Motion, 1157-1166. Two Accusatives Combined, 1167-1174.

DATIVE, 1175-1225. *I. The Complementary Dative*: (1.) The Essential Complement: With Verbs, 1180-1199. With Adjectives, 1200-1204. (2.) The Optional Complement: Of the person or thing interested, 1205-1210. The Emotional Dative, 1211. The Dative of the Possessor, 1212-1216. Of Relation, 1217-1218. *II. The Predicative Dative*: Of Tendency or Result, 1219-1222. Of Purpose or Intention, 1223-1225.

GENITIVE, 1226-1295. *I. With Substantives*: In General, 1227-1231. Of the Subject, Cause, Origin, or Owner, 1232-1238. Of Quality, 1239-1240. Partitive, 1241-1254. Of Definition, 1255-1259. Objective, 1260-1262. *II. With Adjectives*, 1263-1270. *III. With Verbs*: Of Valuing, 1271-1275. With *rēfert* and *interest*, 1276-1279. With Judicial Verbs, 1280-1282. With Impersonals of Mental Distress, 1283-1286. With Verbs of Memory, 1287-1291. Of Participation and Mastery, 1292. Of Fulness and Want, 1293-1294. *IV. The Genitive of Exclamation*, 1295.

ABLATIVE, 1296-1400. *I. The Ablative Proper*: Of Separation and Want, and of Departure, 1302-1311. Of Source, Stuff, or Material, 1312-1315. Of Cause, Influence, or Motive, 1316-1319. Of Comparison, 1320-1330. *II. The Locative Ablative*: The Locative Proper, 1331-1341. The Ablative used as Locative: Of Place in, on, or at which, 1342-1349. Of Time at which or within which, 1350-1355. *III. The Instrumental Ablative*: (1.) The Ablative of Attendance: Of Accompaniment, 1356-1357. Of Manner, 1358-1361. Ablative Absolute, 1362-1374. Ablative of Quality, 1375. Of the Route Taken, 1376. (2.) The Instrumental Proper: Of Instrument or Means, 1377-1384. Of Specification, 1385. Of Fulness, 1386-1387. Of Measure, Exchange, and Price, 1388-1392. Of the Amount of Difference, 1393-1399. Two or more Ablatives Combined, 1400.

Use of Cases with Prepositions, 1401-1437.

In General, 1401-1409. With the Accusative, 1410-1416. With the Ablative, 1417-1421. With the Accusative or the Ablative, 1422-1425. Combination of Substantives by a Preposition, 1426-1428. Repetition or Omission of a Preposition, 1429-1430. Two Prepositions with one Substantive, 1431-1432. Position of Prepositions, 1433-1437.

Use of Adverbs, 1438-1453.

Use of Degrees of Comparison, 1454-1468.

(B.) USE OF THE VERB, 1469-1635.

Voice, 1469-1492.

Active, 1469-1471. Passive, 1472-1485. Deponents, 1486-1492.

Mood, 1493-1586.

THE INDICATIVE, 1493-1533. In Declarations, 1493-1498. In Questions, 1499-1533. Yes or No Questions, 1502-1510. Positive and Negative Answers, 1511-1514. Alternative Questions, 1515-1525. Pronoun Questions, 1526-1530. Some Applications of Questions, 1531-1533.

THE INFINITIVE OF INTIMATION, 1534-1539.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

# Table of Contents.

---

## The Conjunctive Particle Sentence, 1838-2122.

Introduced by *quod*, 1838-1855. *quia*, 1856-1858. *quom* or *cum*, 1859-1881. *quoniam*, 1882-1884. *quotiēns*, *quotiēnscumque*, 1885-1887. *quam*, 1888-1898. *quamquam*, 1899-1902. *quamvis*, 1903-1907. *tamquam*, 1908-1910. *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1911-1922. *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *cum primum*, *simul atque*, 1923-1934. *ut*, 1935-1970. *ubi*, 1971. *quō*, 1972-1976. *quōminus*, 1977-1979. *quīn*, 1980-1990. *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdiū*, 1991-2009. *quandō*, 2010-2014. *sī*, 2015-2115. *etsī*, *tametsī*, *etiamsī*, 2116. *quasi*, *tamquam sī*, *ut* or *velut sī*, 2117-2122.

## Connection of Separate Sentences or Periods, 2123-2159.

Without a Connective, 2124-2127. With a Connective, 2128-2158. Affirmative Coordination, 2159.

## Nouns of the Verb, 2160-2299.

THE INFINITIVE, 2160-2236. Definitions, 2160-2163. The Infinitive of Purpose, 2164-2165. With Adjectives, 2166. *The Infinitive as Object*: The Complementary Infinitive, 2168-2171. The Accusative with the Infinitive, 2172-2206. *The Infinitive as Subject*, 2207-2215. The Infinitive of Exclamation, 2216. *Tenses of the Infinitive*, 2218. Present, 2219-2222. Perfect, 2223-2231. Future, 2232-2236.

THE GERUNDIVE AND GERUND, 2237-2268. Definitions, 2237-2242. Nominative, 2243-2249. Accusative, 2250-2253. Dative, 2254-2257. Genitive, 2258-2264. Ablative, 2265-2268.

THE SUPINE, 2269-2277. Definitions, 2269. Supine in *-um*, 2270-2273. Supine in *-ū*, 2274-2277.

THE PARTICIPLE, 2278-2299. Definition, 2278. Time of the Participle, 2279-2281. The Attributive Participle, 2282-2286. The Substantive Participle, 2287-2292. The Appositive Participle, 2293-2296. The Predicative Participle, 2297-2299.

## APPENDIX, 2300-2745.

### Some Occasional Peculiarities of Verbs, 2300-2307.

The Conative Use, 2301-2303. The Causative Use, 2304. The Potential Use, 2305. The Obligatory Use, 2306. The Permissive Use, 2307.

### Indirect Discourse, 2308-2334.

Definitions, 2308-2311. Mood, 2312-2320. Tense, 2321-2324. Pronoun, 2325. Conditional Periods in Indirect Discourse, 2326-2334.

### Use of Pronouns, 2335-2403.

Personal, 2335. Reflexive, 2336-2343. Equivalents for a Reciprocal Pronoun, 2344-2345. Possessive, 2346. Demonstrative, 2347-2364. Determinative, 2365-2370. Pronoun of Identity, 2371-2373. Intensive, 2374-2384. Interrogative, 2385-2386. Relative, 2387. Indefinite, 2388-2403.

### Numerals, 2404-2428.

Classification, 2404. List of Numerals, 2405. Notation, 2406-2411. Some forms of Numerals, 2412-2418. Some uses of Numerals, 2419-2422. Other Numerals, 2423. Fractions, 2424-2428.

## *Table of Contents.*

---

### **Prosody, 2429-2739.**

**RULES OF QUANTITY, 2429-2472.** In Classical Latin, 2429-2457. Position, 2458. Hidden Quantity, 2459-2463. Peculiarities of Quantity in Old Latin, 2464-2469. Iambic Shortening, 2470-2472.

**FIGURES OF PROSODY, 2473-2510.** Hiatus, 2473-2480. Elision, 2481-2492. Ecthipsis, 2493-2496. Semi-Hiatus or Semi-Elision, 2497. Synaepha, 2498. Synizesis, 2499. Synaeresis, 2500. Dialysis, 2501. Diaeresis, 2502. Hardening, 2503. Softening, 2504. Diastolé, 2505-2506. Systolé, 2507. Synopé, 2508. Tmesis, 2509. Synapheia, 2510.

**VERSIFICATION, 2511-2739.** Definitions, 2511-2548. Numeri Italici, 2549. The Saturnian, 2550-2554. Dactylic Rhythms, 2555-2580. Iambic Rhythms, 2581-2627. Trochaic Rhythms, 2628-2649. Logaoedic Rhythms, 2650-2674. Dactylo-Trochaic Rhythms, 2675-2681. Anapaestic Rhythms, 2682-2690. Cretic Rhythms, 2691-2697. Bacchiac Rhythms, 2698-2706. Choriambic Rhythms, 2707. Ionic Rhythms, 2708-2717. Lyric Metres of Horace, 2718-2737. Lyric Strophes of Catullus, 2738. Index of Horatian Odes and their metres, 2739.

**Abbreviations used in citing the Authors, 2740-2745.**

**Index of Subjects.**

**Index of Latin Words.**



# LATIN GRAMMAR

I. Latin Grammar has two parts. I. The first part treats of words: (A.) their sound; (B.) their formation; (C.) their inflection. II. The second part shows how words are joined together in sentences.

---

## PART FIRST *of* WORDS

---

### PARTS OF SPEECH.

2. The principal kinds of words or PARTS OF SPEECH are *Nouns*, *Verbs*, and *Conjunctions*.

3. I. NOUNS are *Substantive* or *Adjective*.

4. (A.) NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE, otherwise called Substantives, are divided, as to meaning, into *Concrete* and *Abstract*.

5. (1.) CONCRETE SUBSTANTIVES denote persons or things. Concrete Substantives are subdivided into *Proper Names*, which denote individual persons or things: as, *Cicerō*, *Cicero*; *Rōma*, *Rome*; and *Common Names*, otherwise called *Appellatives*, which denote one or more of a class: as, *homo*, *man*; *taurus*, *bull*.

6. Appellatives which denote a collection of single things are called *Collectives*: as, *turba*, *crowd*; *exercitus*, *army*. Appellatives which denote stuff, quantity, material, things not counted, but having measure or weight, are called *Material Substantives*: as, *vīnum*, *wine*; *ferrum*, *iron*; *faba*, *horsebeans*.

7. (2.) ABSTRACT SUBSTANTIVES denote qualities, states, conditions: as, *rubor*, *redness*; *aequitās*, *fairness*; *sōlitūdō*, *loneliness*.

8. (B.) NOUNS ADJECTIVE, otherwise called Adjectives, attached to substantives, describe persons or things: as, *ruber*, *red*; *aequus*, *fair*; *sōlus*, *alone*.

9. PRONOUNS are words of universal application which serve as substitutes for nouns.

Thus, *taurus*, *bull*, names, and *ruber*, *red*, describes, particular things; but *ego*, *I*, is universally applicable to any speaker, and *meus*, *mine*, to anything belonging to any speaker.

10. ADVERBS are mostly cases of nouns used to denote manner, place, time or degree: *as*, *subitō*, *suddenly*; *forās*, *out of doors*; *diū*, *long*; *valdē*, *mightily, very*.

11. PREPOSITIONS are adverbs which are used to modify as prefixes the meaning of verbs, or to define more nicely the meaning of cases: *as*, *vocō*, *I call*, *ēvocō*, *I call out*; *ex urbe*, *from town*.

12. II. VERBS are words which denote action, including existence or condition: *as*, *regit*, *he guides*; *est*, *he is*; *latet*, *he is hid*.

13. III. CONJUNCTIONS connect sentences, nouns, or verbs: *as*, *et*, *and*; *sed*, *but*.

14. INTERJECTIONS are cries which express feeling, and are not usually a part of the sentence: *as*, *ā*, *ah*; *heu*, *alas*.

15. There is no ARTICLE in Latin: thus, *mēnsa* may denote *table, a table, or the table*.

## A. SOUND.

### ALPHABET.

16. In Cicero's time, the sounds of the Latin language were denoted by twenty-one letters (*DN.* 2, 93).

Character	Name	pronounced	Character	Name	pronounced
A	a	<i>ah</i>	M	em	<i>em</i>
B	be	<i>bay</i>	N	en	<i>en</i>
C	ce	<i>kay</i>	O	o	<i>o</i>
D	de	<i>day</i>	P	pe	<i>pay</i>
E	e	<i>eh</i>	Q	qu	<i>koo</i>
F	ef	<i>ef</i>	R	er	<i>air</i>
G	ge	<i>gay</i>	S	es	<i>ess</i>
H	ha	<i>hah</i>	T	te	<i>tay</i>
I	i	<i>ee</i>	V	u	<i>oo</i>
K	ka	<i>kah</i>	X	ix	<i>eex</i>
L	el	<i>el</i>			

The names given above are those employed by Roman grammarians. The sound indicated by *-ay* is only approximate; the true sound is that of the French *ê* in *fête*; see 39. The names of the letters are indeclinable; for their gender, see 412.

17. Two other letters were also in use to represent Greek sounds in Greek words; these were always called by their Greek names, and were placed at the end of the alphabet; they are Y, named *ÿ* (42), and Z, named *zēta* (71).

18. ORIGIN OF THE ALPHABET. The Latin alphabet, which originally consisted of capitals only, was adapted from the alphabet of Chalcidian colonies in Italy.

19. SPELLING. The signs for the Greek sounds denoted by  $\phi$  and  $\chi$ , and perhaps also that for  $\theta$ , these three sounds being unknown in Latin, were used as numerals (2407). In words borrowed from the Greek the Romans at first represented  $\theta$  by  $t$ ,  $\phi$  by  $p$ , and  $\chi$  by  $c$ : as,  $tūs$ , *incense*, for  $\thetaύος$ ;  $Poenī$ , *Punians*, for  $\Phiοινικες$ ;  $calx$ , *chalk*, for  $χάλιξ$ . Occasionally also the Latin mute was doubled: as,  $strupus$ , *strap*, for  $στρόφος$ . Later, about the middle of the second century B.C.,  $th$ ,  $ph$ , and  $ch$  begin to be used: as,  $cothurnus$ , *boot*, for  $κόθορνος$ ;  $amphora$ , *jar*, for  $ἀμφορα$ ;  $Achaea$  for  $Ἀχαιά$ . In some instances these aspirates were next introduced even into words purely Latin: as,  $chommodus$ , *affable*, for  $commodus$ , an affectation ridiculed by Catullus (Cat. 84) and disapproved by Quintilian (1, 5, 20). But  $pulcher$ , *pretty*, is the usual spelling for  $pulcer$  (formed by the suffix  $-cro-$  from the stem of the verb  $poliō$ , *I polish*). Even Cicero (O. 160) aspirated the  $c$  in this word as a concession to popular usage, as he did the  $t$  in  $Cethēgus$ ,  $Karthāgō$ , and the  $p$  in  $triumphus$ , while he retained the unaspirated explosive in the proper names  $Orcivius$ , *name of a 'gens,'*  $Matō$ ,  $Otō$ ,  $Caepiō$ , and in  $sepulcrum$ , *tomb*;  $corōna$ , *crown*; and  $lacrima$ , *tear*. In a similar manner Greek  $\rho$  was at first transcribed by  $r$ : as,  $rumpia$ , *a kind of weapon*, for  $\rhoομφαία$ ; but later by  $rh$ : as,  $rhētor$ , *rhetorician*, for  $\rhoήτωρ$ .

20. The letters  $C$  (first written  $\langle$ ) and  $K$  were at an early period used promiscuously, and  $C$  stood for both unvoiced  $k$  and voiced  $g$ : as,  $VIRCO$ ,  $virgō$ , *virgin*. Afterwards  $K$  dropped out of general use except in the abbreviations  $K.$  or  $Kal.$  for  $kalendae$ , *first of the month*, and  $K.$  for the proper name  $Kaesō$  (Quint. 1, 7, 10). About 300 B.C. the sign  $\langle$  or  $C$  was used for the unvoiced  $k$  alone, while a separate sign, which became  $G$ , was set apart for the voiced  $g$ . But  $C$  continued to be used for  $g$  in the abbreviations  $C$  for  $Gāius$ ,  $\mathcal{D}$  for  $Gāia$ , and  $Cn.$  for  $Gnaeus$ . Occasionally  $q$  is written for  $c$ , almost always before the vowels  $o$  and  $u$ : as,  $qum$  for  $cum$ , *with*;  $qolunt$  for  $colunt$ , *they cultivate*;  $peqūnia$ , *money*. But ordinarily  $q$  is found before unsyllabic (consonantal)  $u$  ( $v$ ) only (22).

21. Before the introduction of  $Y$  and  $Z$  (17),  $u$  was used for the Greek  $Y$ : as,  $Burrus$ , later  $Pyrrhus$  (Cic. O. 160); and  $s$ , or, as a medial,  $ss$ , for  $Z$ : as,  $sōna$ , *belt*, later  $zōna$ ;  $massa$ , *lump*, for  $μάζα$ ;  $malacissō$ , *I soften*, for  $μαλακίζω$ . By a blunder,  $y$  was occasionally introduced in words of Latin origin: as,  $lacryma$ , *tear*, for  $lacrima$ , which was wrongly supposed to be derived from Greek  $δάκρυ$ .

22. The characters  $I$  and  $V$  represent not only the two vowels  $i$  and  $u$ , but also their cognate semivowels (52)  $i̯$  and  $u̯$  (83), called commonly *consonant i* and  $u$ , but with less ambiguity *unsyllabic i* and  $u$  (82; 83). They are equivalent to the English  $y$  and  $w$  respectively.

23. In words like  $maior$ , simple  $i$  was commonly written for the sound of  $ii$  (153. 2; 82; 83). But Cicero in such cases wrote  $ii$ : as,  $aiiō$ , *I say*,  $Maiia$ ,  $Troiia$  (Quint. 1, 4, 11). In the same way Lucretius spelled  $Graiiugenārum$ , *of Greek-born men*, and  $EIIVS$ , *of him*,  $CVIIVS$ , *whose*, occur in inscriptions. Sometimes the same sound is represented by a taller letter, '*i longa*,' especially in the imperial age: as,  $MAIOR$ , *greater*. There are also cases in which the two designations were confounded, a double  $i$  being written, and one or the other letter made taller: as,  $EIIVS$  or  $EIIVS$ , *of him*.

24. The tall  $i$ ,  $I longa$ , was used not only to represent unsyllabic  $i$  (22), but, beginning with Sulla's time, also for long vowel  $i$  (29, 2,  $b$ ): as,  $SIGNA$ , *signs*;  $QVINQVE$ , *five*. It also represents sometimes double  $i$ : as,  $VIS$  for  $VIIS$ , *in the roads*. At the beginning of words it occurs without reference to quantity for both short and long  $i$ , and, by mistake,  $I$  is elsewhere found for short  $i$ .



25. The emperor Claudius (A.D. 41-54) introduced a separate sign for unsyllabic **u** (22), restricting the sign **v** to the vowel **u** (Quint. 1, 7, 26; Ta. 11, 14); but it did not become current.

26. In schoolbooks and most texts of the authors, the vowel **u** is printed **U**, **u**, and the consonant **V**, **v**. A character, **J**, **j**, was introduced in the 17th century, to indicate the consonant **i**. But this character is no longer usual in editions of the authors or in schoolbooks.

27. The distinction between **u** and **v** is not always made very consistently: **q** has regularly, and **g** and **s** have sometimes, an aftersound of *w*, best represented by **v**; but the usual practice is to write **u**, as in the following disyllables: **quōrum**, *of whom*; **anguis**, *snake*; **suāvis**, *sweet*. **qu** is always counted as a single sound (177). See also 2504.

28. For the intermediate sound (103) between **i** and **u**, as in the first syllable of **lubet**, **libet**, *it pleases*, and in the second syllable of **optimus**, **optumus**, *best* (Quint. 1, 4, 8; 7, 21), the emperor Claudius invented a separate character. It failed of acceptance, as did also the sign which he attempted to introduce for **ps**.

29. The same characters were ordinarily used to denote both long and short vowels. But at different periods long vowels were sometimes indicated in inscriptions thus:

(1.) Long **a**, **e**, or **u** was sometimes doubled: as, **AARA**, *altar*; **PAASTORES**, *shepherds*; **LEEGE**, *by law*; **IVVS**, *right*. This doubling, which was never frequent, seems to have been introduced into Latin from the Oscan by the poet Accius. It occurs most frequently in inscriptions about the year 150 B.C., but sporadically much later: as, **CONVENTVVS**, *of the assembly*; **ARBITRATVV**, *by the decree*; and in other stems in **-u-** (593).

(2.) Long **i** was often denoted (*a.*) By the spelling **ei** (after the pronunciation of this diphthong had been changed to **ī**, 98): as, **DAREI**, *be given*; **REDIEIT**, *hath come back*; **INTERIEISTI**, *hast died*. Some Roman grammarians prescribed this spelling for every long **i**; others tried to regulate the use of **ei** for **ī** by special rules. At the end of the republic, the spelling **EI** had given way to uniform **I**. (*b.*) Since the time of Sulla, by a taller letter ('*i longa*'): as, **FLXA**, *fastened* (23, 24).

(3.) A mark called an *apex* (∩∩∩) was often put over a long vowel: as, **FĒCIT**, *made*; **HORTĒNSIVS**; **DVŪMVIRATVS**, *duumvirate*. The apex was written ' in the imperial age; the form ∩, which occurs in an inscription, was adopted by the grammarians, and is still in use to mark the long vowels. It may be mentioned that inscriptions which employ the apex are by no means consistent in its use, and that late inscriptions have it over short and long vowels, apparently for decorative purposes. Quintilian 1, 7, 2 prescribes it only for cases which otherwise might be ambiguous: as, **MĀLVS** (*mālus*), *mast*, to distinguish it from **MALVS** (*malus*), *bad*.

30. In schoolbooks, a long vowel is indicated by a horizontal line over it: as, **āra**, *altar*; **mēnsis**, *month*; **ōrdō**, *series*. A short vowel is sometimes indicated by a curved mark: as, **pĕr**, *through*; **dŭx**, *leader*; but this mark is unnecessary if long vowels are systematically marked. Usually the quantity of the vowels in each word is definitely fixed; but in a few cases the same vowel may be now short, now long, as in English the *ee* of *been* is pronounced long by some (*bean*), short by others (*bin*). Thus (2446) **mihi**, **ibi** were sometimes pyrrhics (∪ ∪, 2522), sometimes iambi (∪ —, 2521). See for other cases 134, 2443, 2452, 2453. Such vowels of variable quantity are termed *common* and marked ∪ or ∩: as **mihī**, *to me* (2514).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## (B.) LONG VOWELS.

## 36. All vowels are long which are :

(1) Weakened from a diphthong (96-101; 108), or which are the result of contraction (118) : as, *concidō* from *caedō* ; *cōgō* from *co-agō*.

(2) Lengthened by compensation (121) : as, *quīnī* for \* *quincnī*.

(3) Before *nf*, *ns*, often before *nc* followed by a consonant, and, in some cases, before *gn* (122).

## PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS.

37. The following English sounds come nearest to the Latin pronunciation of the vowels :

38. LONG VOWELS. *ā* had the sound of *a* in *father* ; *ē* that of *a* in *fate* (but see 39) ; *ī* that of *i* in *machine* ; *ō* that of *o* in *tone* ; *ū* that of *u* in *rule*.

39. It must be noted, however, that all English long vowels, save *a* as in *father*, are more or less diphthongal, that is, they become gradually closer (46) ; *a* in *fate* ends in a vanishing sound of *ee* (not heard in the *ê* of French *fête*), and *o* in *no* ends in the sound of *oo*. Similarly the long *e* sound in *he* becomes closer and ends in a sound similar to the *y* in *year*. In Latin all long vowels had one sustained sound.

40. SHORT VOWELS. *a* sounded approximately like the English *a* in the first syllable of *aha* ; *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u* sounded like *e* in *step*, *i* in *pit*, *o* in *obey*, and *u* in *pull* respectively.

41. Latin short *a* did not differ, except in quantity, from long *ā* ; it never had the 'flat' sound of English *a* in *pat*. In the case of the other vowels, *i*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, the long vowels were closer (46) than the short ones. This is the same difference which the English shows in *keen* (long and close) and *kin* (short and open) ; *pool* (long and close) and *pull* (short and open). For this reason, open *i* is sometimes represented by *e* in inscriptions : as, *ANEMA* for *anima*, *soul* ; and *vea* was the rustic pronunciation for *via*, *road* (Varro, *R. R.* 1, 2, 14).

42. *Y*, which was a sound borrowed from the Greek (17), sounded like German *ü*. The sound, which is missing in English, is formed with the tongue in position for *i* (in *kin*) and the lips rounded as for *oo* (in *moon*).

## CLASSIFICATION OF VOWELS.

43. Vowels are divided according to the position of the tongue. Latin *i* and *e* are called *front vowels*, because the front part of the tongue is elevated. This elevation is greater for *i* than for *e*. Latin *o* and *u* are called *back vowels*, because they require an elevation of the rear part of the tongue. This elevation is greater for *u* than for *o*. Latin *a* holds an intermediate position, no part of the tongue being raised, while the front part is depressed.

44. In the formation of *i* and *e*, the tongue approaches the hard palate ; hence these two vowels are also called *palatal vowels*. Similarly, *o* and *u* are called *velar* or *guttural vowels*, because in their formation the tongue approaches the soft palate (*vēlum palātī*).

45. *o* and *u* require a rounding of the lips (*labia*); hence they are called *labial vowels*. The same is true for *y*.

46. Comparing the vowels in English *keen* and *kin*, it will be noted that the passage between the tongue and the hard palate is narrower in the former than in the latter case. The *ee* in *keen* is therefore said to be a *narrow* or *close* vowel, while the *i* in *kin* is *wide* or *open*. See 41.

### DIPHTHONGS.

47. Two unlike (43-46) vowels pronounced under one stress and as one syllable form a *Diphthong*. All diphthongs are long.

In all diphthongs the transition from one vowel to the other is gradual. A diphthong is, therefore, not formed simply by pronouncing two vowels in succession, but the vocal organs pass through all the intermediate positions and consequently the sound is constantly changing.

48. In their origin diphthongs are of two kinds: (*a.*) primitive diphthongs: as in *foedus*, *treaty*; *aurum*, *gold*; or (*b.*) secondary diphthongs, the result of vowels meeting in formation, composition, or inflection: see 120.

49. The diphthongs which occur in classical Latin are *au*, *ae*, *oe*, and the rare *ui* and *eu*.

*au* sounded like *ou* in *house*. *ae* had the sound of short Latin *a* rapidly combined with the sound of *e* in English *men*. But it is the common practice now to give to *ae* the sound of *ay* or *ai* in *ay*, *aisle*, although the difference between Latin *ae* and the earlier *ai* from which it descended is thus obliterated. *oe* had the sound of short Latin *o* rapidly followed by the sound of *e* in English *men*. But it is now customary not to distinguish between Latin *oe* and *oi*, and to give to both the sound of *oi* in *boil*. *ui* is pronounced by combining Latin short *u* and *i* (40, 41) with the stress on the *i* like French *oui*; *eu* by combining Latin short *e* and *u* with stress on the *u*.

50. Besides these, the following diphthongs occur in the older inscriptions: *ai* pronounced as *ai* in *aisle*; *ei* as *ei* in *eight*; *oi* as *oi* in *boil*; and *ou* which sounded very much like the final *o* in *no*, *go*, which is really a diphthong (see 39).

### CONSONANTS.

51. Consonants are formed by stopping the breath somewhere in the cavity of the mouth or by squeezing it through a narrow channel or aperture.

52. SEMIVOWELS. There is no sharp line of demarcation between consonants and vowels. Some vowels in unsyllabic function (82, 83) notably *i* (*j*) and *u* (*u*) (corresponding to English *y* and *w*), though usually classed as consonants, are so closely related to the vowels that they are termed semivowels (2504). To these may be added also the liquids *l* and *r*. Contact of the semivowels *i* and *u* with their corresponding vowels *i* and *u* is avoided in classical times. See for *-vu-* 107 *c*; for *-quu-* 157; and for *-ji-* 104, *c* (on *objiciō*); 458 (*Bōi* for *\*Bōi*). See 153, 3.

## PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS.

**53.** Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. The following points must be noticed :

**54.** *b* before a surd, as *s* or *t*, has the sound of *p*. The spelling *b* is here simply etymological : as, *abs*, pronounced *aps* (the *b* retained in spelling because of *ab*) ; *urbs*, pronounced *urps* (the *b* retained because of the oblique cases *urbis*, *urbī*, etc.) ; *obterō*, pronounced *opterō* (Quint. I, 7, 7), where the spelling of the preposition *ob* was kept (164).

**55.** *c* has always the sound of English *k*.

**56.** *d* before the surd *s* is pronounced *t* ; the spelling *d* is preserved for etymological reasons only : as, *adsum*, pronounced *atsum*.

**57.** *g* always has the sound of English *g* in *go*, never that of *g* in *gentle*. *gu*, when it makes one syllable with the following vowel, is pronounced like English *gw* : as, *sanguine* like *sanguine*.

**58.** *h* has a weak sound as *h* in British English (Southern), and by some was not counted as a consonant. Consequently the same uncertainty existed as to initial *h*. The omission of initial *h* is recognized in classical Latin for *ānser* (originally \**hānser*). Elsewhere the omission of initial *h* in spelling, as *ostia* for *hostia*, is rare until the third century A.D.

Very rarely *h* is written between two vowels to denote that each should be pronounced separately (like our diaeresis in *coëxtensive*) : as, *ahēneus*, *bronze*, with *aē* separate (116 *a*) ; but *aes*, *bronze*, with diphthongal *ae*.

**59.** Unsyllabic (22) or consonant *i* has the sound of English *y* in *year*.

**60.** There were two varieties of *l*. One was like the English *l*, guttural in character, because in its pronunciation not only the blade (front part) of the tongue touched the gums, but in addition to this the rear part of the tongue was elevated toward the soft palate. The other *l* was purely dental, and formed without such back elevation. This second variety appeared in the combination *ll*, or whenever *l* was followed by the front vowels (43) *e* or *i*, or when it was final. Elsewhere *l* was guttural.

**61.** From the earliest times final *m* in unaccented syllables had a faint sound or was even inaudible (Quint. 9, 4, 39). Consequently it is often omitted in writing in the older inscriptions both before an initial vowel or consonant : as, *POCOLO* for *pōcolom* ; *OINO* for *oinom* (*ūnum*), and the grammarian Verrius Flaccus proposed to write only half an *M* for final *m* before a vowel. In prosody, therefore, final *m* did not prevent elision (2493). The same is seen in prose in cases like *animadvertō*, *I pay heed to*, from *animūm advertō*, *I turn my mind toward* (395) ; *vēnīre*, *to be sold* for *vēnum īre*, *to go to sale* (1165). But in monosyllables where *m* closes the accented syllable, it did not vanish (2494, 2495), and this difference in the treatment of final *m* is reflected in the Romance languages.

**62.** *n* stands for two sounds. It represents the dental nasal, as *n* in English *now*. But before the gutturals *k*, *c*, *g*, *q*, and the compound *x* (= *cs*), it represents the guttural nasal which is written *ng* in English *sing*, *wrong*. This second *n* is sometimes called *n adulterinum* or 'spurious *n*,' thus : *nc* (in *avunculus*) as in *uncle* ; *ng* (in *angulus*) as in *angle* ; *ngu* (in *sanguine*) as in *sanguine* ; *nqu* (in *inquit*) as *inkw* in *inkwiper* ; *nx* (in *pīnix*) as in *lynx*.

63. Dental *n* before *s* had a reduced sound, and is therefore sometimes omitted in writing: as, *CESOR* for *cēnsor*; *COSOL* for *cōnsul*, in older inscriptions; and *fōrmōsus* by the side of *fōrmōnsus*; *vicēsimum* by the side of *vicēnsimum*, Cicero omitted the *n* in the adjective suffix *-ēnsis*: as, *forēsia*, of the forum; *hortēsia*, garden plants.

64. *q*, in classical Latin, appears only in the combination *qu*, sounded like English *qu* or *kw* (27). *r* was trilled.

65. *s*, in classical Latin was always unvoiced (surd, 75) like English *s* in *so*, *sin*, never voiced (sonant, 75) as English *s* in *ease*. *su*, when it makes one syllable with the following vowel, is like *sw* in *sweet* (27).

66. In old Latin, final *s* after a short vowel and before a consonant seems to have been reduced in sound or to have disappeared altogether. In the older inscriptions it is often omitted in the ending of the nominative singular *-us*, and in the pre-Ciceronian poets final *s* often does not make position (2468). But such omission was considered vulgar in Cicero's time (*Cic. O.* 161; *Quint.* 9, 4, 38).

67. In the archaic period Latin *s* stood also for the voiced sibilant (English *s* in *ease*, *z* in *zeal*), as in *ASA*, altar (154).

68. *t* is always sounded as in *time*, never as in *nation*. The pronunciation of *ci* and *ti* with the *c* and *t* as sibilants (as in English *cinder*, *nation*) is very late.

69. *v* is like the English *w*.

70. *x* is a compound consonant, standing for *cs*, and so sounded, never as English *gs* or *gz*.

71. *z*, being a Greek sound, should have retained its Greek pronunciation. This differed in the different dialects; in the Attic of the fourth century B.C. it was approximately that of English *z* in *zeal*, while its earlier value was *zd*. The Romans had great difficulty in pronouncing this sound (*Quint.* 12, 10, 27 f.), but the grammarian Velius Longus expressly states that it should not be pronounced as a compound sound (*zd*).

72. About 100 B.C. the combinations *ch*, *ph*, and *th* were introduced in Greek words to represent  $\chi$ ,  $\phi$ , and  $\theta$ ; as *Philippus*, for the older *PILIPVS*. Somewhat later these combinations were in general use in some Latin words (19). *ch* is thought to have been pronounced like *kh* in *blockhead*, *ph* as in *uphill*, and *th* as in *hothouse*. But in practice *ch* is usually sounded as in the German *machen* or *ich*, *ph* as in *graphic*, and *th* as in *pathos*.

#### CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS.

73. **EXPLOSIVES.** Consonants which are formed by stopping the breath in the oral cavity and then suddenly removing the obstruction are called *explosives*. They cannot be prolonged in sound. They are: *c*, *k*, *q*, *g*; *t*, *d*; *p*, *b*. These are often called *mutes*.

74. **CONTINUANTS.** Consonants which may be prolonged in sound are called *continuants*. They are: unsyllabic (83) *i* (59) and *u* (66); *l* (60), *r*; *l*, *s*, *f*; *n* (62), *m*.

75. VOICED and UNVOICED. If during the emission of breath the vocal chords vibrate (32), the consonant is said to be *voiced* or *sonant*: g; d; b; n (62), m; l (60), r; unsyllabic (83) i (59) and u (69); otherwise it is said to be *unvoiced* or *surd*: c, k, q; t; p; h, s, f.

76. NASALS. In the majority of consonants, the breath escapes through the cavity of the mouth, and the cavity of the nose is closed in the rear by means of the raised soft palate. Those consonants in which the breath escapes through the nose, while the oral cavity is closed, are called *nasals*: as, n, m, n adulterinum (see 62).

77. CLASSIFICATION ACCORDING TO PLACE OF FORMATION. Consonants are further divided according to the place where the breath is stopped or squeezed. (1.) If the breath is stopped by the lips, as in p, b, m, or squeezed through the lips, as in v (English *w*), we speak of *labials*. (2.) If the breath is forced through an opening between the upper teeth and the lower lip, as in f, we speak of a *labiodental*. (3.) Sounds which are produced by the point of the tongue touching the upper gums and teeth, as t, d, n, r, or by the formation of a narrow median channel in the same place, like s, or of a lateral channel, like l (60), are called *dentals*. (4.) *Palatals* are formed by an elevation of the front part of the tongue against the forward section of the palate, like i consonant (English *y*). (5) If the back of the tongue touches or approaches the rear part of the palate as in k, q, c, g, n adulterinum (English *ng* in *sing*), and l (60), we speak of *gutturals* (*velars*); see 44.

78. SPIRANTS. Sounds which are produced by friction of the breath are called *spirants*: as, s, f, and h.

79. SIBILANTS. On account of its hissing sound, s is called a sibilant. English *s*, *z*, *th* are sibilants.

80. DOUBLING OF CONSONANTS. In English, double consonants as the *tt*, *nn*, *pp*, *mm* in *motto*, *Anna*, *tapping*, *grammar*, are sounded exactly like the corresponding single consonants in *cot*, *pan*, *tap*, *ram*. In Latin, on the other hand, double consonants (*geminatae*) were pronounced as they are in modern Italian. In the case of explosives (73), as in *mitto*, after the tongue had come in contact with the roof of the mouth (= first t) a short pause ensued before the explosion took place (= second t). In the case of continuants (74), as in *summus*, *Apollo*, the *mm* or *ll* was sounded appreciably longer than a single *m* or *l*, and at the beginning of the second half of the long continuant there was a slight increase of force.

81. Consonants were not doubled in writing till after 200 B.C.: as, *FVISE* for *fuisse*, *to have been*, and for more than a century afterward the usage is variable: as, in the same inscription, *ESSENT*, *they might be*, by the side of *SVPERASES*, *thou mayest have conquered*; but it must not be inferred that they were pronounced as single consonants.

#### SYLLABIC AND UNSYLLABIC FUNCTION.

82. Whenever two or more sounds are combined in a syllable, one of them excels in acoustic prominence: as, *a* in English *pat*; *n* in the group *pnd* in *opnd* (*opened*); *l* in the group *tld* in *bottld* (*bottled*); and *s* in the group *pst*. This sound is said to have *syllabic function* or to be *syllabic*; in the examples given, *a*, *n*, *l*, and *s* are respectively syllabic. All the other members of each group are termed *unsyllabic*.

83. Vowels are almost always used in syllabic function. When, in rare cases, they are unsyllabic, this fact is usually indicated in phonetic works by an inverted half-circle,  $\underset{\curvearrowright}$ , placed under the vowel; so in the case of diphthongs to indicate the subordinate member: as  $a\underset{\curvearrowright}i$ ,  $o\underset{\curvearrowright}e$ ,  $u\underset{\curvearrowright}i$  (49). Latin *omnia* and English *glorious*, when pronounced as words of two syllables, would be written  $omni\underset{\curvearrowright}a$  (2503),  $glori\underset{\curvearrowright}ous$ . When sounds other than vowels have, in rare cases, syllabic function, this fact is noted in phonetic works by a point,  $\cdot$ , or circle,  $\circ$ , under the letter: as, Latin  $*ag\underset{\cdot}{r}s$ ,  $*ag\underset{\circ}{r}s$  (111, *b*), English  $op\underset{\cdot}{n}d$ ,  $op\underset{\circ}{n}d$ .

## ACCENT.

84. The relative force with which the different syllables of a word are uttered varies. Such variation in emphasis is called *stress accentuation*.

The degrees of stress are really infinite, but for practical purposes it is sufficient to distinguish between (1.) the strongest stress (chief accent); (2.) a weaker stress (secondary accent); and (3.) absence of stress (atonic syllable). In the English *contradict*, the last syllable has the chief accent, a secondary accent falls on the first, and the second syllable is unstressed.

85. It is not customary to indicate the place of accents in Latin by special signs. When, for special reasons, signs are used,  $\acute{}$  denotes the chief accent,  $\grave{}$  the secondary accent, while the unstressed syllables are left unmarked.

### THE CLASSICAL ACCENT.

86. In classical Latin the place of the chief accent may be determined by the following rules.

(1.) Words of two syllables have the accent on the penult (175): as,  
 $h\acute{o}mo$ ;  $\acute{a}cer$ .

(2.) Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when that syllable is long (177); otherwise on the antepenult: as,

$pal\acute{u}ster$ ,  $on\acute{u}stus$  (177);  $muliebris$ ,  $g\acute{e}netrix$  (178);  $\acute{a}rbor\acute{e}s$ ,  $\acute{a}rbu\acute{t}us$ ,  $gladiolus$ .

87. A short penult retains the accent in the genitive and vocative with a single  $\bar{i}$  from stems in  $-io-$  (456, 459): as, genitive,  $c\acute{o}ns\bar{u}l\bar{i}$ ;  $imp\acute{e}r\bar{i}$ ; genitive or vocative,  $Verg\bar{u}l\bar{i}$ ;  $Val\acute{e}r\bar{i}$ ;  $Merc\acute{u}r\bar{i}$ . For  $calef\acute{a}cis$ , &c., see 394.

88. In a few words which have lost a syllable the accent is retained on the last syllable; such are (1.) compounds of the imperatives  $d\acute{ic}$  and  $d\acute{u}c$  (113): as,  $\acute{e}d\acute{u}c$ ; (2.) nominatives of proper names in  $-\acute{a}s$  and  $-i\acute{s}$  for  $-\acute{a}tis$  and  $-i\acute{tis}$ : as,  $Arp\bar{i}n\acute{a}s$ , for  $Arp\bar{i}n\acute{a}tis$ ;  $Laen\acute{a}s$ ;  $Maec\acute{e}n\acute{a}s$ ;  $Quir\bar{i}s$ ;  $Samn\bar{i}s$ ; also  $nostr\acute{a}s$ ,  $vostr\acute{a}s$ ; (3.) words compounded with the abbreviated (113) enclitics  $-c$  for  $-ce$  and  $-n$  for  $-ne$ : as,  $ill\acute{ic}$ ;  $tant\acute{o}n$ ;  $aud\bar{i}st\bar{i}n$  (for the shortening of the final syllable: as,  $vid\acute{e}n$ , *do not see?*, see 129); (4.)  $aud\bar{i}t$ , contracted from  $aud\bar{i}vit$  (154, 893). The Latin grammarians prescribe the circumflex (90) for all these long syllables.



## EARLIER RECESSIVE ACCENT.

89. In the preliterate period of the Latin language, the accent tended to go as far from the end of the word as possible (*recessive accent*). Thus, while the classical accentuation is *inimicus*, the older period accented *ínimicus*. In literary Latin this early recessive accent has survived, only in Plautus's accentuation of words of the form  $\cup \cup \cup \underline{\cup}$  (proceleusmatic or fourth paeon, see 2521), in which he stresses the first syllable: as, *fácilius* (classical *facílius*); *vóluerat* (classical *volúerat*). But in many instances the early recessive accent may be traced in literary Latin by the phonetic changes which it produced (102 ff.).

90. MUSICAL ELEMENT. The native Latin grammarians slight the stress accentuation and pay much attention instead to the variations in pitch. But they are so greatly dependent on their Greek models that they are unsafe guides in this matter. It is, however, probable that a stressed vowel was uttered on a higher key (acute) than an unstressed vowel (grave), and that in certain syllables the long, accented vowel showed a rise and fall (circumflex): as, *illic* (88).

91. The force of the Latin stress accent must have varied at different periods and in different localities, as it now varies in the Romance countries. The early recessive accent seems to have been fairly emphatic; but the stress in classical Latin was probably weak and the difference between accented and unaccented syllables was much less marked than it is in English.

## PROCLITICS AND ENCLITICS.

92. PROCLITICS are unaccented words which are pronounced as a part of the following word; they are: (1.) The relative and indefinite pronouns and their derivatives; (2.) Prepositions.

(a.) Thus, *quō diē*, pronounced *quōdiē*; *quī vixit*, *quívixit*; *genus unde Latinum*, *génus undeLatinum*. Similarly *quamdiū*, *as long as*; *iamdiū*, *this long time*. A distinction is thus made between the interrogative *quālis* (1526), which is accented, and the relative *quālis* (1831) which is proclitic (Quint. 1, 5, 26); cf. the English *who*, which is accented when interrogative, and proclitic when relative.

(b.) *circum litora*, pronounced *circumlitora*; *ab ōris*, pronounced *abōris* (Quint. 1, 5, 27); in inscriptions and manuscripts prepositions are often united in writing with the following word. Phrases like *extemplō*, *suddenly*, *invicem* (94), *in turn*, are commonly written and accented as one word. But the preposition is accented when it is followed by a monosyllabic unemphatic (and therefore enclitic) personal pronoun: as, *in mē*; *abs tē* (but *abs tē*, if *tē* is emphatic). All prepositions used as adverbs (1402) have an independent accent.

93. ENCLITICS are words which have no accent of their own, but are pronounced as a part of the word preceding. This increase of the number of syllables produced certain accentual changes, all the details of which are not clear. When the enclitic was monosyllabic the place of the accent seems to have been determined as in 86; thus *vidēs*, but *vidēsne*; *Latiō*, but *Latiōque*. Again, when by the addition of a monosyllabic enclitic the accent falls on the fourth syllable from the end, a secondary (84, 85) accent was probably placed on the penult: as, *perícula*, but *periculàque*. The Roman grammarians agree, however, in demanding that everywhere the syllable preceding the enclitics *-que*, *-ne*, *-ve*, and *-ce* should be accented. In *deinde* and *subinde* there is authority for placing the accent on the first syllable. •



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

97. CHANGE OF *au*. The diphthong *au*, which was preserved in educated speech, was changed to *ō* in rustic and colloquial pronunciation (see the anecdote related by Suetonius, *Vesp.* 22): as, *cōpō*, *innkeeper*, for *caupō*; *plōstrum* for *plaustrum* (*barge*), *cart*: *Clōdius* for *Claudius*. Some of these gained literary currency: as, *cōdex*, *book*, *caudex*, *block*; *fōcāle*, *neckcloth*, *faucēs*, *throat*. The form *sōdēs* (1572) for *si audēs* = *sī audēs* (Cic. *O.* 154) is a colloquialism.

98. CHANGE OF *ei*. *ei* as a genuine diphthong is common in old inscriptions: as, *SEI*; *SEIVE*; *ADITVR*; *DRIXERVNT*; *FEIDA*. In classical Latin it has passed into *ī*: thus, *sī*, *if*; *sīve*, *either*; *adītur*, *is approached*; *dīxērunt*, *they said*; *fīda*, *faithful*. An intermediate stage between the old diphthong *ei* and the classical *ī* was a very close (46) *ē*: as, *PLOIRVME* (465) for *plūrimī*; *IOVRE* (501, 507) for *iūrī*. For the orthographical use of *ei* as a spelling for the long *ī*-sound, see 29.

99. CHANGE OF *oi*. The development of *oi* was parallel to that of *ai*. It first passed into *oe*: as, *COIRAVERVNT* and *COERAVERVNT*, *they cared*; *OITILE*, *useful*, and *OETI*, *to use*; *LOIDOS* and *LOEDOS*, *play*, — all in old Latin. In classical Latin it has further been changed in accented syllables to *ū*: as, *cūrāvērunt*, *ūtile*, *ūtī*, *lūdus*. But *oe* was retained in classical Latin (1.) when a secondary diphthong (48), the result of contraction (120), and (2.) in a few words like *foedus*, *treaty*, perhaps as an archaizing, legal term; *foedus*, *ugly*; *poena*, *penalty*, perhaps through the influence of Greek *ποινή* (in the verb *pūnīre*, *to punish*, the regular *ū* appears); *proelium*, *skirmish*; *foetor*, *stench*; and *moenia*, *walls*, perhaps because there was a word *mūnia*, *services*. The connection of *nōn*, *not*, with *noenum* (455; 1444; 699) is difficult because of the unusual development of *oe* to *o*, for which the Praenestine form *CORAVERONT* is the only parallel.

100. CHANGE OF *ou*. *ou*, found in inscriptions down to about 90 B.C., passed, in classical Latin, into *ū*: as, *POVBLICOM*, *NOVNTIATA*, *IOVDIX*; later *pūblicum*, *public*, *nūntiāta*, *notified*, *iūdex*, *judge*.

101. CHANGE OF *eu*. Primitive (48) *eu* appears in classical Latin only in the interjections *eu*, *heu*, *ēheu*, *heus*. Every other original *eu* had, even in old Latin, passed into *ou* and developed like the latter: as, *\*neumen* (Greek *νεῦμα*) became first *\*noumen*, then (100) *nūmen*. With the exceptions noted above, the diphthong *eu*, as it appears in Latin, is always of secondary origin (48), the result of the two vowels *e* and *u* meeting in composition: as, *neu*, *neither*, from *nē-ve*; *neutiquam*, from *nē* and *utiquam* (124).

#### WEAKENING IN UNACCENTED SYLLABLES.

102. The vowel of an unstressed (atonic) syllable is often weakened, changing its quantity or quality or both. This is especially the case in syllables immediately preceded by the chief accent (*posttonic syllables*). The following changes took place at an early period when Latin still possessed the old, recessive accent (89).

#### WEAKENING OF SIMPLE VOWELS IN MEDIAL SYLLABLES.

103. (a.) ATONIC MEDIAL *e* before a single consonant was weakened (with the exceptions given under *b.*) to *i*: as, *cólligō*, *collect*, from *legō*; *óbsideō*, *besiege*, from *sedeō*; *cértāminis*, *of the contest*, from *certāmen* (224); *flāminis*, from *flāmen* (470). And so probably *hic* (664) arose from *\*hec* or *\*hoc* (105, *g*) when used as proclitic (92). Before the labials *p*, *b*, *f*, and *m* this weakened sound was intermediate between *i* and *u* (28), and both spellings occur: as, *quadripēs* and *quadrupes*, *four-footed*; *alimentum*, *nourishment*; *monumentum*, *monument*. The choice of *i* or *u* was probably governed by the quality of the stressed vowel in the preceding syllable: viz., *u* after *o* and *u*, and *i* after *a*, *e*, and *i*. But such distinction is only imperfectly maintained in classical Latin.

(b.) But before two consonants, before r, before vowels, and after i, atonic e does not change: as, *lévāmentum* (224), but *lévāminis*, of consolation; *óbsessus* (but *óbsideō*), possessed; *sóciētās*, society, from the stem *socie-* (but *novitas* from the stem *nove-*); *géneris*, of the kind; *ádeunt*, they approach.

104. (c.) Atonic medial a, except in the cases mentioned below under (d.), (e.), and (f.), was first weakened to e and then underwent the same changes as atonic medial e (103): as (before single consonants), *cōnficiō*, accomplish, from *facio*; *ínsiliō*, jump in, from *saliō* (1019); *rédditus*, restored, from *datus*; *trícipitem*, three-headed, from \**tricapitem* (*caput*), Cic. O. 159; *occiput*, back of the head, and *sinciput*, jolt (478). In compounds of *iaciō* (940), -*iaciō* is weakened in early Latin to -*ieciō* (as, *conieciō*, 940), but later to -*iciō* (as, *subiciō*). This last form may be due to syncope (111, a) of the radical a. The spelling -*iiciō* (as, *subiiciō*) is late and faulty (52). It does not occur in republican inscriptions and owes its origin to a confusion of the two forms *conieciō* and *conicio*. (On the quantity of the vowel of the prepositions in these compounds of *iaciō*, see 122 e); (before p, b, f, m) *áccipiō*, accept, and *óccupō*, occupy, from *capiō*; *cóntubernālis*, room-mate, from *taberna*; *ábripiō*, to snatch away, from *rapio*; (before two consonants) *pépercī*, I have spared, from *parcō*; *áccentus*, accent, from *cantus*; (before r) *péperi*, I brought forth, from *pariō*.

(d.) But an a in the preceding syllable may protect the atonic a: as, *ádagio*, *ádagium*, proverb, but *prōdigium*, miracle (144).

(e.) Atonic medial a before the guttural nasal (62) n followed by g changed to i (138): as, *áttingō*, touch, from *tangō*.

(f.) Atonic medial a before l followed by any consonant save l changed to u (both l and u being guttural, 60, 44): as, *éxsultāre*, to leap up, from *saltāre*; but *féfelli*, I deceived, from *fallō*.

105. (g.) ATONIC MEDIAL O, when followed by a single consonant, first changed to e and then underwent all further changes of medial atonic e: as, *hóminis*, from \**homon-is* (485); *ímāginis*, for \**imāgonis*, 226 (nominative *imāgō*, 485); *cúpīdinis*, for \**cupīdonis*, 225 (nominative *cupīdō*, 485); *vírginis*, for \**virgonis* (nominative *virgō*, 470); *ílicō*, from \**in-slocō*, on the spot (169, 6).

(h.) Before two consonants or before guttural l (60) atonic medial o changed to u: as, *éuntis*, from \**éontis* (Greek *ἰοντος*); *sēdulō*, from *sē dolō* (1417). But a preceding v or u protects o (107, c).

(i.) Before r, atonic medial o was retained: as, *témporis*, of time; except when u in the preceding syllable induced a change to u: as, *fúlguris*, of lightning (for the -r in the nominative singular *fulgur* instead of -s, see 154).

106. (k.) Medial -av-, -ov-, and -iv- in posttonic syllables were weakened to u: as, *dēnuō* from *dēnovō* (94); *ábluō* from *ablavō*. The form *puer*, boy, arose from the older *POVER* in enclitic vocatives (93, 7) and was thence transferred to the nominative like *piter* in *Iūpiter* (94).

#### WEAKENING OF SIMPLE VOWELS IN FINAL SYLLABLES.

107. (a.) In final syllables unaccented original e before s and t was weakened to i: as, *salūtis*, of safety, from older *salūtes* (507).

(b.) Final i became e: as, *ante* for \**anti* (Greek *ἀντι* and *anti-cipāre*); nominative singular *mare*, from the stem *mari-* (526).

(c.) In final syllables o before consonants changed to u except when preceded by u or v: as, *filius*, son, for old Latin *filius* (452); *ferunt*, they carry, for older *feront*; *femur*, thigh, nomin. sg. from the stem *femor-* (489); *genus*, kind, for \**genos*, Greek *γένος*; but *vivont*, they live: *salvom*, safe. Not long before the beginning of our era o here also changed to u and appears to have coalesced with the preceding v (Quint. 1, 7, 26): as, in inscriptions: *INGENVVS* (nomin. sg.) for *ingenuos*; *SERVVM*, slave (acc. sg.), for *servom*; *NOVM* for *novom*, something new;

so also *boum*, *oxen* (gen. pl.), for *bovom* (494). But inasmuch as the majority of forms in the paradigms of these words retained their *v*, it was restored in most cases, by analogy, to the forms which had lost it: as, *servum* for *serum*, because of *servi*, *servō*, etc.; *vivunt* for *vīunt*, because of *vivō*, *vivis*, *vivit*, etc.

(*d.*) When the stems *fac-* (*facere*, *do*), *cap-* (*capere*, *take*) appear as second members of compounds, their *a* changes in final syllables to *e*: as, *artifex*, *artisan*; *auceps*, *bird-catcher*. After the analogy of these words, compounds with *dīcere* and *īre* have *e* in the nom. sg.: as, *iūdex*, *iūdicis*, *judge* (from *īus* and *dīcere*); *comes*, *companion* (from *com*, *with*, and *īre*); see 136, 2.

#### WEAKENING OF DIPHTHONGS IN UNACCENTED SYLLABLES.

108. Diphthongs, whether medial or final, are treated alike in atonic syllables.

(*a.*) Atonic *ei*, *oi*, and *ai* (*ae*) became *i*: as, *lupī*, *wolves* (nom. pl.), for *\*lupoi* (Gr. *λύκοι*); *bellī*, *in war* (loc. sg., 460, 1338), for *\*bellei* (Greek *οἰκει*) or *\*belloi* (Greek *οἰκοι*); *éxistimō*, *I consider*, from *aestimō*; *cōncidō*, *I strike down*, from *caedō*; Cicero, *O.* 159, mentions *inicum*, *unfair*, for *\*inaecum*, and *concisum* for *\*cōncaesum*; so also, probably, *hīc*, *this*, arose from *hoic* (662) when used as a proclitic (92).

(*b.*) Atonic *ou* and *au* became *ū*: as, *inclūdō*, *I include*, from *claudō*; *accūsāre*, *to accuse*, from *causa*.

109. There are not a few cases in which the atonic vowel does not conform to the rules given above (102-108). These are usually compounds which show the vowel of the simple verb. Some of these were formed at a time when the early recessive accent was no longer in force and consequently there was no cause for weakening; in others the vowel of the simple verb was by analogy substituted for the weakened vowel of the compound: as, *appetō*, *I strive after*, from *petō*, which ought to have *i* like *colligō*, *collect*, from *legō*; *intermedius*, *intermediate*, but *dīmidius*, *half*; *dēfraudāre*, *to cheat*, by the side of *dēfrūdāre* from *fraudāre*; instead of the common *redarguō*, *I refute*, Scipio Africanus minor Pauli filius (185-129 B.C.) said *rederguō*, and *pertisum* for *pertaesum*, but both Cicero (*O.* 159) and Lucilius discountenance *pertisum* as the sign of a pedantic prig. In a few cases the reverse process took place, and the weakened vowel which arose in the compound was transferred to the simple verb: as, *clūdō*, *I close* (958), for *claudō*, which owes its *ū* to compounds like *occlūdō*. For a case where the vowel of the preceding syllable acted as a stay to the expected change, see 104, *d.*

#### LOSS IN UNACCENTED SYLLABLES.

110. Only vowels which are short and atonic may be lost. The loss of a medial vowel is called *Syncope*, of an initial vowel, *Aphaeresis*; of a final vowel *Apocope*.

111. SYNCOPE. (*a.*) Loss of a posttonic vowel, entailing the loss of a syllable, occurs in *ardus* (Lucil.; for *ā* see 128) for the common *āridus*, *dry*; *caldus* by the side of *calidus*, *warm* (Quint. 1, 6, 19); *reppulī*, *I pushed back*, and *rettulī*, *I carried back*, stand for *\*répepulī* and *\*rétetulī* (861); *pergō*, *I proceed*, stands for *\*perregō* from *regō* (cf. *cor-rigō*, *ē-rigō*, where the *e* is weakened, 103, and *porrigō*, *porgō*, where it is either weakened or lost), hence it forms its perfect *perrēxī* (953); *pōnō*, *I place*, is for *\*posnō* (170, 2) from *\*po-sinō* (112), hence it forms its past participle *positus* (972); for *iūrgō*, *I blame*. Plautus has *iūrigō*; *\*ūsūripō* (from *ūsus* and *rapere*) yields *ūsūrpō*, *I utilize*; *\*gāvīdeō*, hence *gāvīsus* (801), gives *gaudeo*, *I rejoice*, converting *āu* to *au* before the following *d* (128); in a similar way *auceps*, *bird-catcher*, is formed from *\*aviceps* (*avis*, *bird*,

~~rather~~ \*praedicō

and *capere*, *catch*); *claudere*, *lock*, from \*clāvidere (clāvis, *key*); *aetās*, *age*, for *āevitās* (262); *praecō*, *herald*, for \*prāevicō (105, *g*) *prae-vocō* (211); also with change of *ou* to *ū* (100), *prūdēns*, *prudent*, for \*proudēns from *providēns*, *foreseeing*; *nūper*, *lately*, from \*noviper; *nūntius*, *messenger*, from \*noventius (333); *iūcundus*, *joyful*, from *iuvicundus* (Cic. *Fin.* 2, 14). But forms like *pōclum*, *cup*, *saeculum*, *age*, do not belong here, as they are original and not derived by syncope from *pōculum*, *saeculum*; cf. 172.

(*b.*) Where, through the loss of a vowel, *l* or *r* would come to stand between two consonants, or where they would be final and preceded by a consonant, *l* and *r* become syllabic (83) and the syllable is thus maintained. Syllabic *l* is represented by *ul*, syllabic *r* by *er* (172, 3). The development of such intercalary vowels as *u* before *l* and *e* before *r* is called *Anaptyxis* (172). Thus, \*sacri-dōts (cf. *sacri-legium*) became first \*sacrdōts by syncope, then *sacerdōs*, *priest*, by anaptyxis; \*ācribus (cf. *ācri-mōnia*, *pungency*) first became \*ācrbus then *ācerbus*, *pungent*; \*agri-los (267, cf. *agri-cola*, *farmer*) became first \*agḡlos, then \*agerlos, and finally, by assimilation of the *r* to *l* (166, 7), *agellus*, *small field*; from \*dis-ficiter (adverb from *dis-* and *facilis*) arose \*difficiter and *difficulter*, *with difficulty*. The nominative sg. of the following words is to be explained thus. *ager* (451) was originally \*agros (cf. Greek *ἄγρος*), which changed successively to \*agrs, \*agers, and *ager* (for the loss of *-s* see 171, 1 and 3). Similarly \*ācris, passing through the stages of \*ācrs, \*ācers, became *ācer* (627), and \*famlos by way of \*famls, \*famuls, became *famul* (455), to which later the common ending of nouns of the *o*-declension was added, giving *famulus*.

112. APHAERESIS. Aphaeresis hardly occurs in literary Latin. In the pronoun *iste* the initial *i* is sometimes dropped (667); this loss implies an accented ultima (94). A trace of prehistoric aphaeresis is found in the prefix *po-* for \*apo (Greek *ἀπό*) in *pōnō*, *I place*, for *po-s(i)nō* (111, *a*).

113. APOCOPE. Under the same conditions under which a medial vowel was syncopated, the final vowel of a word which stood in close union with the following word, as a preposition with its noun, was lost. In this way \*peri (Greek *περί*) became *per*; \*apo (Greek *ἀπό*) became *ap*, *ab* (164, 2); \*eti (Greek *ἐτι*) became *et*. Similarly the final *-e* of the enclitics *-ce*, *-ne*, *not*, and *-ne* interrogative was lost: \*sī-ce became *sic*, *so*; \*quī-ne, *quīn*, *why not*; *habēsne*, *haben*, *hast thou*; the imperatives *dīc*, *say*, *dūc*, *lead*, and *fac*, *do*, stand for earlier *dīce*, *dūce*, *face* (846); the shortened form *em* for *eme* (imperative of *emere*, *take*) has been turned into an interjection (1149). In the same way *nec* arose by the side of *neque*; *ac* by the side of *atque* (158). Final *-e* has also been dropped in the nominative sg. of a number of polysyllabic neuter stems in *-āli* and *-āri* (546): as, *animal*, *animal*, for \*animāle, *exemplar*, *pattern*, for \*exemplāre. See 536, 537. It must, however, be remembered that in most of the cases given the loss of a final vowel would also result from elision (119) before the initial vowel of the following word.

#### COMBINATION OF ADJACENT VOWELS.

114. HIATUS. A succession of two vowel sounds not making a diphthong is called *Hiatus*.

When in the formation of words by means of suffixes or prefixes or through the loss of an intervening consonant, two vowels come into contact within a word we speak of *internal hiatus*; the term *external hiatus* comprises those cases where, in connected discourse, the final vowel of one word comes into contact with the initial vowel of the following word. For the latter kind, see 2474.

115. The treatment of vowels in internal hiatus is four-fold: (1.) The hiatus may remain; (2.) the two vowels may be fused into one (*Contraction*); (3.) one of the two vowels may be dropped (*Elision*); and (4.) the two vowels may be combined into a diphthong.

116. HIATUS is maintained (a.) between two adjacent vowels the second of which is long and accented (according to the classical accentuation): as, *coēgī*, *I forced*, and *coāctus*, *forced* (937); but *cōgō* (118, 3). For *coepī*, instead of *coēpī*, *I began*, see 120.

(b.) In many prepositional compounds when the members were still felt to be independent: as, *praeesse* (the contracted form *praesse* is found in inscriptions); *dēerunt*, *they will be wanting*, by the side of *dērunt*; *coalēscō*, *grow together* (the contracted form *cōlēscō* appears in Varro); *cooptāre*, *coōpt*, *cooperiō*, *I cover up* (by the side of rare *cōptāre*, *cōperire*); *coitus*, *meeting*, by the side of *coetus* (120).

(c.) A comparatively large number of vowel combinations remain unchanged: as *ea* and *eā* in *eam*, *her*, and *meā*, *by my* (fem. sing.); *ia* and *iā* in *māria*, *seas*, *viātōris*, *of the traveller*; *ua* and *uā* in *bēlua*, *monster*, *suā*, *through her* (fem. sg.); *iē* in *quiēs*, *quiet*; *uē* in *luēs*, *pestilence*; *eī* in *meī*, *of me*; *uī* in *tuī*, *of thee*; *eō* in *meō*, *by my* (masc. sing.).

117. SYNIZESIS. In these combinations the first vowel is sometimes made unsyllabic (83). This is called *synizesis* (2499) and is not rare in poets, being often the only means of adapting a word to the requirements of certain metres. Thus, *fortuitus* (— ∪ — ∪) must appear in a hexameter as *fortvitus* (*fortuītus*). See 2499, 2503.

118. CONTRACTION. (1.) Two like vowels may unite in one long vowel; rapidity of utterance was favourable to such fusion. In compounds, the desire to keep the members distinct often prevented it. So always *nēmō*, *nobody*, for *\*neemō* from *\*ne-hemō*, *no man* (for the loss of *h*, see 58, 150; for *e* in *\*hemō*, see 144); and by the side of the open forms, *nīl* from *nihil*, *nothing*; *vēmēns* from *vehemēns*, *rapid* (connected with the verb *vehō*); rarely *dēerunt*, *they will be wanting*, and *dēsse*, *to be wanting*, for *dēerunt*, *dēesse*; *dēlēram*, *I had destroyed*, from *\*dēlēeram* for *dēlēveram* (for the loss of *v*, see 153), see 890; *passūm*, *of paces*, for *passuum* (591).

(2.) A diphthong absorbs the following vowel: as, *praetor*, older *praitor*, *praetor*, from *\*prai-itor*, *who goes before*; inscriptions show *praerunt* for *praerunt*, *they will be before*; for *praebēre*, *to furnish*, the open form *praehibēre* occurs in Plautus (1004).

(3.) If two unlike vowels are contracted at all, they usually unite in the long sound of the first vowel. Thus, *o* and *a* yield *ō*: as, *cōgō*, *I force*, from *co-agō*; *cōgitō*, *I think*, from *co-agitō*. Similarly Varro has *cōlēscat*, *it may combine*, for *co-alēscat*. *o* and *e* yield *ō*: as, *prōmō*, *bring out*, *cōmō*, *put up*, for *pro-emō*, *co-emō* (953). *ē* and *a* yield *ē*: as, *dēgō*, *I pass away*, from *dē-agō* (937). *i* and *e* in the termination of the vocative of *-io-* stems probably contracted to *-ī*; as *filī* from *\*filie*. 459. But in denominative (365) and other verbs of the first conjugation *ā* and *ō* contract into *ō*: as, *amō*, *I love*, from *\*amā-ō* (cf. Greek *τιμάω*); and *ā* and *ē* into *ē*: as, *amēs*, *thou mayest love*, for *\*amā-ēs*.

119. ELISION. Only rarely the first of two successive vowels is dropped: as, *nullus*, *no*, for \**ne-ūllus*; likewise the final vowel of the first member of nominal compounds: as, *multangulus*, *with many corners*, for \**multi-angulus* (cf. *multi-cavus*, *with many holes*); *flexanimus*, *heart-rending*, for \**flexi-animus* (cf. *flexi-pēs*, *with bent feet*).

120. COMBINATION INTO DIPHTHONGS. The union of two successive vowels into a diphthong is equally rare: *o* and *i* are combined to *oi*, *oe*, in *coetus*, *meeting*, by the side of the open form *coitus* (116, *b*); the perfect *coepi* (812), *I began*, owes its diphthong *oe* to forms in which the *e* was short and unaccented, such as the rare present forms *coepiō* for *có-ēpiō* (813); for *coēpi* (813, 863) would have remained unchanged (116, *a*). *neuter*, with the accent on the *e*, was pronounced as three syllables, later *eu* became diphthongal; *neutiquam* with synizesis (117) of *e*. *e* and *ī* sometimes contract to *ēi* in *rēi* (601, 602) and in *dēinde*, *dein* in the classic poets.

#### LENGTHENING.

121. COMPENSATIVE LENGTHENING. When certain groups of consonants are simplified by the dropping of a consonant, its time is absorbed by a preceding short vowel, which thereby becomes long. This is called *Compensation*. In many cases compensative lengthening is due to the loss of a preliterate sonant *s* (170, 2): as,

*cānus*, *gray*, from \**casnus* (cf. *cas-cus*, *very old*). See for other cases of this lengthening, 170, 5, *quīnī*, for \**quincnī*; 170, 6, *ignōscō*, for \**ingnōscō*.

122. INDUCED LENGTHENING. Before certain groups of consonants short vowels have a tendency to become long: as,

(*a.*) The prefixes *in-* and *con-* before *s* or *f* lengthened their vowels in classical Latin (Cic. *O.* 159): as, *insānus*, *mad*; *infēlix*, *unhappy*; *cōnsuēvit*, *he grew used to*; *cōnfēcit*, *he accomplished*. Elsewhere also the vowel before *ns* and *nf* appears to have been lengthened: as, *fōns*, *fountain*; *pēnsus*, *weighty* (Gell. 9, 6); *forēnsis*, *forensic*; *cēnsor*, *censor*; *mēnsa*, *table*; *mēnsis*, *mouth*; *Valēns*; *Clēmēns*; the *o* of *insons*, *guiltless*, however, is marked as short by the grammarian Probus.

(*b.*) A similar lengthening of the vowel before *nc* followed by *t* or *s* appears: as, *ūnctus*, *anointed*, from *unguō* (Gell. 9, 6); *iūnctus*, *joined*, from *iungō* (954), *coniūnx*, *spouse*, genit. *coniugis* (472); *quīnctus*, *fifth*, whence *quīntus* (170, 4) and *quīnque*, *five*, derive their *ī*; *sānctus*, *hallowed*.

(*c.*) Spellings like *SIGNVM*, *sign* (well supported in inscriptions), and *DIGNE*, *worthily* (less well supported) show that *i* was at times lengthened before *gn*. The grammarian Priscian demands this lengthening for all vowels preceding the ending *-gnus*, *-gna*, *-gnum*.

(*d.*) A lengthened vowel before *r* followed by a consonant is also certain for some words like *ōrdō*, *order*; *fōrma*, *shape*.

(*e.*) Some speakers appear to have lengthened the vowel of prepositions like *con-*, *sub-*, *ob-*, in the compounds of *iaciō* (104, *c*); as *ōbicit*. This practice, which is disapproved by Gellius (4, 17), probably arose from the transfer by analogy of the quantity of the first syllable in forms like *coniciant* (940) to that of the shortened form. In the same way the occasional spelling *CÓNIVNX*, *spouse*, for *coniūnx*, may owe its long *ō* to the analogy of *cōiunx*, *CÓIVGI* (170, 6).



(f.) Many verb stems ending in -g have a long vowel in the past participle before the suffix -to-: as, *tēctus*, *covered*, from *tego* (916); *tāctus*, *touched*, from *tangō* (925); *pāctus*, *fixed*, from *pangō* (925); *fīctus*, *moulded*, from *fiŋgō* (954); *pīctus*, *painted*, from *pingō*. The evidence for ā in *maximus* is very scanty: one case of A with the apex (29, 3) in a faulty inscription.

(g.) Of the induced lengthenings enumerated above, only those given in (a.) (b.) (f.) seem to have been universal in classical Latin. The rest appear to have been local peculiarities, which, while making inroads upon the literary language, never gained full recognition.

123. (1.) ANALOGICAL LENGTHENING. In noun stems in -o the stem vowel is lengthened in the genitive plural -ōrum (449, 462), by analogy to the stems in -ā (435): as, *servōrum*, *of slaves*, like *mēnsārum*, *of tables*. For other cases see 122, e.

(2.) METRICAL LENGTHENING. On the lengthening of a vowel (or a syllable) under the influence of verse-ictus, see 2505.

#### SHORTENING.

124. A vowel originally long is regularly shortened in classical Latin before another vowel, even though an h intervene: as,

*taceō*, *I am silent*, from the stem *tacē-* (365); *seorsum*, *apart*, *deorsum*, *downward*, from *sē(v)orsum*, *dē(v)orsum* (153).

125. In simple words a diphthong occurs before a vowel only in one or two proper names: as, *Gnaeus*, *Annaeus*, in which it remains long, and in Greek words. But the diphthong ae of the prefix *prae* is sometimes shortened before a vowel: as, *prāeacūtus*; *prāeeunt*; *prāehibeō*; hence *prehendō* for \**prae-hendō*. Sometimes it coalesces with a following vowel: as, *prāeoptāvistī*.

126. An increased tendency to shorten a long vowel before another vowel can be traced in the history of the language: thus, classical *fuī*, *I was*, for Plautus's *fūī* (750); *clueō*, *I am called*, for Plautus's *clūeō*; perfect *pluit*, *it rained*, for Varro's *plūit* (cf. *plūvit*, 823, 947); *pius*, *pious*, for Ennius's *pīus*; see also 765.

127. But even in classical Latin there are cases where a vowel before another vowel remains long: thus,

(1.) Regularly, the ī of *fīō*, *I am made*, except before -er-, as in *fierem* (788, 789).

(2.) In *dīus*, *godly*, for *dīvus* (153), and the old ablatives *dīū*, *dīō*, *open sky* (used only in the expression *sub dīū*, *sub dīō*, i. e. *sub dīvō*).

(3.) In the ending *ēī* of the genitive and dative sg. of stems in -ē- (601) when an i precedes: as, *diēī*, *of a day*, *aciēī*, *of the battle line*, but *reī*, *of the thing*, for older *rēī*.

(4.) It may be mentioned here that *rēī* is said to occur in verse 6 times (Plaut. G. 2, Lucr. G. 2, D. 2); *reī* 9 times (Plaut. G. 2, Ter. G. 4, D. 1, Juv. G. 1, Sulp. Apoll. G. 1); *rēī* 27 times (Plaut. G. 2, D. 3, Enn. D. 1, Ter. G. 9, D. 8, Lucil. G. 1, D. 1, Lucr. G. 2). *fidēī* G. 3 times (Plaut., Enn., Lucr.); *fideī* 11 times (Enn. D. 1, Man. G. 2, D. 1, Sil. G. 4, D. 1, Juv. G. 2); *fidēī* 5 times (Ter. G. 1, D. 3, Hor. 1). *ēī* 35 times (Plaut. 18, Ter. 8, Lucr. 9); *eī* some 17 times (Plaut. 12, Ter. 2, German. 1, Ter. Maur. 2); *ēī* 23 times (Plaut. 11, Ter. 8, Lucil. 3, Cat. 1).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

(4.) Of imperatives only *puta*, used adverbially (2438, *c*), *ave*, *have* (805; Quint. 1, 6, 21; but Martial scans *havē*) as a salutation and *cave*, used as an auxiliary (1711), show the short final vowel in classical Latin. Elsewhere the long vowel has been restored, as *amā*, *monē* (845).

(5.) According to this rule *calēfaciō*, *malēdicō* changed to *calefaciō*, *maledicō*.

131. A long final vowel is shortened when an enclitic is added to the word: as *siquidem* from *sī*; *quoque* from *quō*.

132. A long vowel is regularly shortened, in the classical period, before final *-t* and *-m* and, in words of more than one syllable, also before final *r* and *l*.

Thus, *soror*, *sister*, for Plautus's *sorōr*, from the stem *sorōr-* (487); *ūtār*, *I may use*, for Plautus's *ūtār* (cf. *ūtāris*); *bacchanal* for Plautus's *bacchanāl*; *animal*, *exemplar* from the stems *animāl-* (530) and *emplār-* (537); but the long vowel is retained in the monosyllables *fūr*, *thief*, *sōl*, *sun*; *pōnēbat*, *he placed*, for Plautus's *pōnēbāt* (cf. *pōnēbās*); *iūbet*, *he commanded*, for Plautus's *iūbēt*; *eram*, *I was*, but *erās*; *rēxerim*, *I may have ruled*, but *rēxerīs* (877); *-um* in the genitive plural of *-o-* stems is for *-ūm* (462); *mēnsam*, *table*, for *\*mēnsām* from the stem *mensā-*; *rem*, from *rē-* (*rēs*), *spem* from *spē-* (*spēs*).

#### TRANSFER OF QUANTITY.

133. (1.) In a few cases the length of the vowel has been transferred to the following consonant, the length of which is then indicated by doubling it (81): as, *littera* for *lītera*, *LEITERAS*: *Iuppiter* for *Iūpiter*; *parricīda* for *pāri-cīda*, *murder of a member of the same clan* (*\*pāro-*, *member of a clan*, Doric *πᾶρς*, *a relative*); *cuppa* for *cūpa*, *barrel*. The legal formula *sī pāret*, *if it appear*, was vulgarly pronounced *sī parret* (Festus).

(2.) Since the doubled unsyllabic *i* (*i*) between vowels (23; 166, 9; 153, 2) is commonly written single, the vowel preceding it is often erroneously marked long: as, *āiō* wrongly for *aiō*, *i. e.* *aiiō*, *I say*; *māior* wrongly for *maior*, *i. e.* *maiōr*, *greater*; *pēior* wrongly for *peior*, *i. e.* *peiōr*, *worse*; *ēius*, *of him*, *cūius*, *of whom*, *hūius*, *of him*, all wrongly for *eius*, *cuius*, *huius* *i. e.* *eīius*, *cuiiūs*, *huiiūs* (153, 2). In all these words the first syllable was long but not the vowel.

#### VARIATIONS OF QUANTITY.

134. (1.) In some foreign proper names and in a very few Latin words the quantity of a vowel varied. Vergil has *Sŷchaeus* and *Sychaeus* within six verses; also *Āsia* and *Asia*, *Lavīnium* and *Lāvinius*; so also *glōmus* (Lucr.), *glomus* (Hor): *cōturnīx* (Plaut., Lucr.), *coturnīx* (Ov.).

(2.) Sometimes such variations in vowel quantity are only apparent: thus, the occasional long final *-ē* of the active infinitive (*darē*, *prōmerē*) has probably a different origin from the usual *-ē*. For metrical lengthening, see 2505.

#### QUANTITATIVE VOWEL GRADATION.

135. The same stem often shows a long vowel in some of its forms and a short vowel in others. In most cases these variations of quantity were not developed on Latin soil but inherited from a much earlier period. Such old inherited differences in vowel quantity are called *quantitative vowel gradation*.

(1.) Instances of this are *prō* for \**prōd* (149; cf. *prōdesse*) and *pro-* (Greek *πρό*); *nē* and *ne-* in *nescius*; the couples *regō*, *I rule*, *rēxī*; *vehō*, *I draw*, *vēxī*; *veniō*, *I come*, *vēnī*, where the long vowel is characteristic of the perfect stem (862); *vocō*, *I call*, and *vōx* *voice*; *regō*, *I rule*, and *rēx*, *ruler*; *legō*, *I read*, and *lēx*, *bill*; *sedeō*, *I sit*, and *sēdēs*, *seat*; *fidēs*, *confidence*, and *fīdō*, *I trust*; *dux* (cf. *ducis*), *leader*, and *dūcō*, *I lead*, where verb and noun are differentiated by the quantity of the root vowel; and many others.

(2.) Sometimes the reduction of the vowel in certain forms amounts to complete loss, as in the adverbial ending *-is-* in *magis* (346, 363) compared with the comparative suffix *-ios*, *-iōs* (Nom. *-ior*, Genit. *-iōris*); in the oblique cases of the stem *carōn-* (nomin. sg. *carō*, 497), where the suffix becomes *-n-* (545), genitive *car-n-is*; in the suffix *-ter*, which becomes *-tr-* in all cases but the nom. sg. (*pater*, *patris*, etc., 470, 487); in the feminine *-tr-ī-c-* to the suffix *-tor-*; but the nom. sing. *Caecīlis* (465) for *Caecīlios* is probably due to syncope.

#### QUALITATIVE VOWEL CHANGES.

136. (1.) *i* before an *r* which goes back to an earlier voiced *s* (154) was changed to *e*: as, *cineris*, *of ashes*, for \**cinisis*, from the stem *cinis* (491); *Faleriī*, for \**Falisiī*, cf. *Falis-cus*; (formed like *Etrūria*, for \**Etrūsia*, cf. *Etrūs-cī*).

(2) In the nominative singular of compounds like *iūdex*, *judge* (from *iūs* and *dīcere*), *comes*, *companion* (from *com*, *with*, and *īre*, *go*), the *i* of the second member of the compounds is changed to *e* (470) after the analogy of words like *artifex*, *artisan*, etc. (107, *d*).

137. *e* before *-gn-* became *i*: as, *īlignus*, from the stem *īlec-* (cf. *īlex*).

138. *e* before the guttural nasal (62) followed by a guttural mute was changed to *i*: as, *septingenti*, from *septem*; *singulī*, from the stem *sem-* in *semel* (for the assimilation of *m* see 164, 3); *obtingō* (925), *I attain*, for \**óbtengō* (104, *c*) from \**ob-tangō* (104, *e*).

139. A similar change took place in the group *-enl-* which became first *-inl-* and then *-ill-*: as, \**signilum*, diminutive of *signum* (for *ī*, see 122, *c*). first changed by syncope (111) from \**signilum* to \**signlum*, then to \**sigenlum* (172, 3), then to \**siginlum*, and finally to *sigillum*.

140. *o* before *nc* became *u*: as, *homunculus*, *manikin* for \**homonculus*, from the stem *homon-* (485); *nūncupāre*, *name*, for \**nōn-cupāre* (*nōn-* for *nōm-* (164, 3) = syncopeated *nōmen*); *hunc*, *him*, for \**honc*, from *hom-ce* (662).

141. *o* before *l* followed by any consonant save *l* was changed to *u*: as, *cultus*, *tilled*, for \**coltus*, from *colere*; *multa*, *fine*, for old Latin *molta*. But *o* before *ll* is retained: as, *collis*, *hill*.

142. *e* before guttural *l* (60) was changed to *o*: as, *solvō*, *I undo*, from \**se-luō* (*se-*, as in *se-cordia*, *luō* = Greek *λύω*); *culmen*, *top*, for \**celmen*, from \**cellō* in *ex-cellō*; *volō*, *I wish*, for \**velō*; but *e* is preserved before dental *l* (60): as in *velle*, *velim* (773). Before *l* followed by any consonant save *l* this *o* changes to *u* (141): as, *vult*.

143. In a number of words, notably in *voster*, *your*, *vorsus*, *turned*, *vortex*, *eddy*, and *votāre*, *forbid*, the forms with *o* were replaced, about the second century B. C. by forms with *e*: as, *vester*, *versus*, *vertex*, *vetāre* (Quint. 1, 7, 25).

## ASSIMILATION.

144. In a few cases a vowel is influenced by the vowel of a neighbouring syllable: as,

nisi, *unless*, for \*nesi; iīs, for eīs, *to them* (671, 674); diī, dlīs, *gods*, for deī, deīs (450); nihil, *nothing*, for \*nehil; homō, *man*, for \*hemō (cf. nēmō, from ne-hemō, 118); see also 104, *d*; 105, *i*.

## QUALITATIVE VOWEL GRADATION.

145. The same stem often shows different vowels in different forms. In most of these cases this difference was inherited from a very early period and continued in the Latin. Such old inherited variation of the quality of the stem-vowel is called *qualitative vowel gradation*. The qualitative variations may be accompanied by quantitative changes (135).

Often the verb and the noun are thus distinguished by different vowels: as, tegō, *I cover*, and toga, *a garment, toga*; precor, *I beg*, and procus, *suitor*, cf. English *to sing* and *a song, to bind*, and *a bond*. The different tenses of some verbs show a like gradation: as, capiō, *I take*, cēpī; faciō, *I make*, fēcī, cf. English *I sing, I sang; I bring, I brought*. The same occurs in derivation: as doceō, *I teach*, by the side of decet; noceō, *I harm*, by the side of nex (nec-s). The two vowels which occur most frequently in such gradation are e and o: as in stems in -o-, domine, dominus (for dominos); as variable vowel (824); genos (genus, 107, *c*) in the nom. sg. by the side of \*genes- in the oblique cases (gen. generis for \*genesis, 154); honōs by the side of hones- in hones-tus; modus, *measure*, for \*modos (originally a neuter -s- stem like genus (487, 491), but transferred later to the -o- declension), by the side of modes- in modes-tus, *seemly*. See 187.

## (B.) CONSONANT CHANGE.

146. In a number of words which belong more or less clearly to the stem of the pronoun quo- (681), cu- (157), the initial c has disappeared before u: as,

uter, *which of the two*, ubī, *where*, unde, *whence* (711). For the conjunction ut, utī, *that*, connection with this pronominal stem is much more doubtful. The c- appears in the compounds with sī and nē: as, sī-cubī (cf. sī-quidem, sī-quandō), sī-cunde, nē-cubi, ne-cunde, ne-cuter.

147. d varies in a few words with l: as old Latin dacruma, *tear*, for later lacrima; dingua, *tongue*, for later lingua; odor, *smell*, by the side of oleō, *I smell*.

148. Very rarely, before labials, final d of the preposition ad varies with r: as, old Latin arfuērunt, *they were present*, for later adfuērunt (2257); arvorsum, *against*, for advorsum. The only instances of this in classical Latin are arbiter, *umpire*, and arcēssō (970), *I summon*, which shows r before a guttural.

149. (1.) Final d after a long vowel disappeared in classical Latin: thus, in the ablative singular of -ā- and -o- stems (426), and in the ablative-accusative forms mēd, tēd, sēd (648). The prepositions prō and sē (1417) originally ended in -d which is still seen in prōdesse, *be of advantage*, prōd-īre, *go forth*; sēd-itiō, *a going-apart, sedition*. According to the grammarians, the negative haud preserved its d before vowels, but lost it before consonants (1450).

(2.) Late inscriptions confuse final -d and -t: as *FECID* (729), *ALIVT* for *aliud*. But in very old Latin -d in the third person singular seems to be the remnant of a secondary ending (cf. the Greek distinction of primary -ται and secondary -το).

150. In a number of words *f* varies dialectically with *h*. In some of these *f* appears to have been original, in others *h*: as, old Latin *fordeum*, *barley*, for classical *hordeum*; old Latin *haba*, *bean*, for classical *fabā*. The word *fīlum*, *thread*, appears as *\*hīlum* in *nihil*, *nothing*, for *\*ne-hīlum*.

151. *h* being a weak sound (58) was often lost between two like vowels, especially in rapid utterance: as, *nīl*, *nothing*, *prēndere*, *take*, *vēmēns*, *rapid*, by the side of *nihil*, *prehendere*, *vehemēns*; and always *nēmō*, *nobody*, for *\*ne-hemō*, *no man*.

152. In some words *h* between two vowels is not original, but goes back to a guttural aspirate *gh*. Before consonants this guttural appears: as, *vehō*, *I draw*, *vectus* (953) from a stem *vegh-*, *trahō*, *I drag*, *tractus* (953) from a stem *tragh-*.

153. (1.) *v* not infrequently disappeared between two like vowels: as, *dītor*, *richer*, for *dīvitor*; *sīs* (Cic. *O.* 154), for *sī vīs* (774); *lātrīna*, for *lavatrīna*; *fīnisse*, for *fīnīvisse*; *dēlēram*, for *dēlēveram*; and later also in perfect forms in which the preceding and following vowel differed: as, *amāsse*, for *amāvisse*. The abbreviated forms of the perfects in *-vī* (890) were common in Cicero's (*O.* 157) and Quintilian's (1, 6, 17) time. *v* also disappeared before *o* in *deorsum*, *seorsum*.

(2.) Old and original unsyllabic *i* (82; 83) disappeared everywhere between vowels. Wherever unsyllabic *i* appears between vowels it represents double *ii*, and is the result of the assimilation of *g* to *i* (166, 9), or *d* to *i* (166, 9), or of the combination of two *i*'s: as in *ei-ius*, *quoi-ius* (*eius*, *quoius* = *cuius*, 688). See 23; 166, 9. In all these cases the first *i* joined to the preceding vowel (83) formed with it a diphthong, and the syllable is thus long (133, 2).

(3.) The combinations of unsyllabic (83) *u* with the vowel *u* and of unsyllabic *j* with the vowel *i* were avoided in classical Latin; see 52.

(4.) In composition, unsyllabic (82) *i* after a consonant became syllabic in *quoniam*, *since*, for *quomiam* (164, 5), and *etiam*, *also*, for *etiam* (both compounds with *iam*).

154. In early Latin *s* between two vowels was voiced (75), and in the fourth century B. C. this voiced *s* changed into *r*. According to Cicero (*Nam.* 9, 21, 2) L. Papirius Crassus, consul in 336 B. C., changed his family name *Papīsius* to *Papīrius*. Old inscriptions show frequently *s* for *r*: as, *ASA*, *altar*, *AVSELII*. This change of intervocalic *s* to *r* plays an important part in declension, conjugation, and derivation: as,

Nominative *iūs*, *right*, genitive *iūris*; *spērō*, *I hope*, derived from *spēs*; *nefārius*, *wicked*, from *nefās*; *gerō*, *I carry*, from a stem *ges-* which appears in *ges-sī*, *ges-tus* (953); *erō*, *I shall be*, from the stem *es-* in *esse*; the subjunctive ending *-sem* in *es-sem* appears as *-rem* after vowels: as, *stārem*; the infinitive ending (894, 895) *-se* in *es-se* appears as *-re* after vowels: as, *legere*, for *\*legese*, *to read*, *stāre*, for *\*stāse*, *to stand*. Where all oblique cases show *-r-* and only the nominative singular *-s*, the latter is sometimes changed to *-r* by analogy: as, *arbor*, *tree*, *honor*, *honour*, for original *arbōs*, *honōs*, by analogy to the oblique cases *arboris*, *arborī*, *honōris*, *honōrī*, etc. (487, 488). The final *-s* of the prefix *dis-* follows this rule: as, *dir-imō*, *I take apart*, for *\*dis-emō*; but an initial *s-* of the second member of a compound remains unchanged: as, *dē-sinō*, *I stop*.

155. Wherever intervocalic **s** is found in classical Latin it is not original, but the result (*a.*) of earlier **-ns-**: as, *formōsus*, *handsome*, for *formōnsus* (63); (*b.*) of earlier **-ss-** (170, 7): as, *ūsus* for *\*ūssus*, *use* (159); *causa*, *thing*, for *caussa* (Quint. 1, 7, 20); or (*c.*) it occurs in borrowed words like *asinus*, *ass.* (*d.*) There are a few words in which an **r** in a neighbouring syllable seems to have prevented the change: as *miser*, *miserable* (173).

156. Before the **o** described in 142 **qu** changed to **c**: as, *incola*, *inhabitant*, for *\*inquola*, from *\*inquela*; the stem *quel-* appears in *in-quil-īnus*, *lodger*.

157. As **v** before **u** (107, *c*), so **qu** was not tolerated before **u**, but changed to **c**.

Hence when, about the beginning of our era, the **o** of *quom*, *when*, *sequontur*, *they followed*, changed to **u** (107, *c*), they became *cum*, *secuntur*; thus *equos* but *ecus*, *horse* (452); *reliquom* but *RELICVM*, *the rest*; *loquor*, *I speak*, but *locūtus* (978). Much later, in the second century of our era, the grammarians restored the **qu** before **u** by analogy to those forms in the paradigm in which **qu** came before other vowels: as, *sequuntur* for *secuntur* by analogy to *sequor*, *sequeris*, *sequitur*, *sequimur*, *sequimini*, etc.; *equus*, *equum*, for *ecus*, *ecum*, by analogy to *equī*, *equō*, *eque*, *equōrum*, *equīs*, *equōs*.

158. **qu** before consonants or when final changed to **c**: as, *relictus* from the stem *liqu-*, *leave* (present, *linquō*, 938); *ac*, *and*, for *\*atc*, by apocope from *atque*; *nec*, *nor*, by apocope from *neque*. See also *\*torctus* (170, 3), *quīnctus* (170, 4).

159. When in the process of early word formation a **t** was followed by another **t**, the combination **tt**, unless followed by **r**, changed to **ss**: as, *obsessus*, *besieged*, *sat upon*, for *\*obsettus*, from *\*obsed-tus* (cf. *sedeō*). After long vowels, nasals, and liquids this double **ss** was simplified to **s** (170, 7): as, *ūsus* from *\*ūt-tus*, *used* (cf. *ūtor*); *scānsus*, *climbed*, from *\*scant-tus* for *\*scandtus* (cf. *scandō*).

In this way arose a suffix **-sus** (906, 912) for the past participle of verbs ending in a dental, and this spread to other verbs (912): as *mānsus*, *stayed*, from *maneō* (1000), *pulsus*, *pushed*, from *pellō* (932). The regular participles of these two verbs still appear in the derivative verbs *mantāre* and *pultāre*, which presuppose the past participles *\*mantus* and *\*pultus* (371). If the double **tt** was followed by **r** it changed to **st**: as, *assestrīx* from *\*assettrīx*, while *\*assettor* changed to *assessor*.

160. But wherever the combination **tt** arose in historical times it remained unchanged: as, *attincō*; *cette*, syncopated for *cé-d(i)te*, i. e. the particle *ce* (93, 3) which is here proclitic, and the imperative *date*, *give*.

161. Initial **dv** (**du**) changed to **b**, unless the **v** (**u**) was converted into the corresponding vowel: as, *bis*, *twice*, for *\*duis* (cf. *duo*); *bidēns* for *\*duidēns*, by the side of old Latin *duldēns* with vocalic **u**: *bonus*, *good*, for *duonus*, by the side of trisyllabic *duonus*; *bellum*, *war*, for *\*duellum*, by the side of *duellum* with vocalic **u**; *bēs*, *two thirds*, for *\*duēs* (2427). Cicero (*O.* 153) notes that the change of *duellum* to *bellum* affected even the proper name *Duellius* (name of the admiral who won the naval victory over the Carthaginians in 260 B. C.) which was changed to *Bellius*. Plautus always scans *duellum* disyllabic with synizesis (2503).

## CHANGES OF CONSONANT GROUPS.

162. Many groups of consonants undergo changes in order to facilitate their pronunciation in rapid speech. These changes involve (a.) Assimilation of consonants; (b.) the development of consonantal glides; (c.) the loss of one member of the group; and (d.) the development of a vowel between the consonants.

## ASSIMILATION.

163. Of two successive consonants belonging to different syllables (175), the first is, as a rule, assimilated to the second (*regressive assimilation*), rarely the second to the first (*progressive assimilation*). A consonant may be assimilated, either entirely or partially, to another consonant.

Assimilation is very common in prepositions prefixed to a verb.

164. PARTIAL ASSIMILATION. (1.) A voiced mute before an unvoiced consonant became unvoiced: as, *rēx*, *king*, for \**rēgs* (cf. *rēgis*); *rēxī*, *I guided*, for \**rēgsī* (cf. *regō*); *rēctus*, *guided*, for \**rēgtus*; *scripsī*, *I wrote*, for \**scribsī* (cf. *scribō*); *scriptus*, *written*, for \**scribtus*; *trāxī*, *I dragged*, for \**trāghsī*, *tractus*, *dragged*, for \**traghtus* (152). The spelling did not always conform to this pronunciation: as, *urbs*, *city*, pronounced *urps* (54) but spelled with *b* by analogy to the oblique cases *urbis*, *urbem*, etc.; *optineō*, *I get*, pronounced *optineō*.

(2.) An unvoiced mute before a voiced consonant became voiced. The prepositions *ob*, *ab*, *sub*, for \**op*, \**ap*, \**sup*, owe their final *b* to their frequent position before voiced mutes: as, *obdūcō*, *abdūcō*, *sub dīvō*. The forms \**op* (still preserved in *op-eriō*, *I close*, 1019) \**ap* (preserved in *ap-erio*, *I open*, 1019; cf. Greek ἀπό) and \**sup* (preserved in the adjective *supīnus*, *supine*) were then crowded out by *ob*, *ab*, and *sub*.

(3.) Nasals changed their place of articulation to that of the following consonant. Thus, dental *n* before the labials *p* and *b* became labial *m*: as, *imbibō*, *I drink in*, *impendeō*, *I hang over*. Labial *m* before the gutturals *c* and *g* became guttural *n* (62): as, *prīnceps*, *leader*, *singulī*, *severally* (the original labials appear in *prīmus*, *semel* (138)); *hunc* for \**homce* (662). Labial *m* before the dentals *t*, *d*, *s* became dental *n*: as, *cōnsecrō*, *I consecrate*, from *com* (*cum*) and *sacrō*; *tantus*, *so great*, from *tam*; *quondam*, *once*, from *quom*; *tandem*, *at length*, from *tam*. But sometimes the etymological spelling was retained: as, *quamdiū*, *as long as*. But *m* does not change to *n* before *t* or *s* in the inflection of verbs and nouns, where *mt*, *ms* develop into *mpt*, *mps* (167): as, *sūmptus*, *sūmpsi*, from *sūmō*.

(4.) *p* and *b* before *n* changed to *m*: as, *somnus*, *sleep*, for \**sop-nus* (cf. *sopor*); *omnis*, *all*, for \**op-nis* (cf. *opēs*); *Samnium*, for \**Sabnium* (cf. *Sabīnī*).

(5.) *m* before unsyllabic *i* (*i*) became *n*: as, *quoniam* (with vocalic *i*; 153, 4), *since*, for \**quoniam* from *quom iam* (1882); *coniungō*, *I join together*, for \**comiungō*.

(6.) *c* between *n* and *l*, and before *m*, changed to *g*: as, *angulus*, *corner*, with anaptyctical (172) vowel *u* for \**anglus*, from \**anclus* (cf. *ancus*); *segmentum*, *section*, from the stem *sec-* in *secāre*.

165. It appears that at a very early period the neighbourhood of a nasal changed an unvoiced mute into a voiced one: as, *ē-mungō*, *I clean out*, by the side of *mūcus*; *pangō*, *I fix*, by the side of *pāc-* in *pāx*, *peace* (gen. *pāc-is*).



166. ENTIRE ASSIMILATION. (1.) One mute is assimilated to another: thus **p** or **b** to **c**: as, *suc-currō*, *I assist*; **t** or **d** to **c**: as, *sic-cus*, *dry* (cf. *sit-is*, *thirst*), *accipiō*, *I accept*; **d** to **g**: as, *agglūtinō*, *I glue on*; **t** or **d** to **qu**: as, *quicquam*, *anything*; **t** or **d** to **p**: as, *appellō*, *I call*; *quippe*, *why?* (1690).

(2.) A mute is assimilated to a spirant: thus, **p** to **f** in *officīna*, *workshop*, for *\*opficīna*, syncopated form of *\*opificīna*; **d** to **f**: as, *afferō*, *I bring hither*; when **t** is thus assimilated to **s** the result is **ss** after a short vowel, and **s** after a long vowel (170, 7) or when final (171); as, in the **-s-** perfects, *concussī*, *I shook*, for *\*concutsi* (*concutiō*, 961); *messuī*, *I mowed*, for *\*metsuī* (*metō*, 835); *suāsī*, *I advised*, for *\*suātsī* (*suādeō*, 1000); *clausī*, *I shut*, for *\*clautsi* (*claudō*, 958); *haesī*, *I stuck*, for *haes-sī* (868) from *haerēre*, stem *haes-* (154); in the same way *possum*, *I can*, for *\*potsum* (cf. *pot-est*, 752); *prōsum*, *I am of advantage*, for *\*prōtsum* (cf. *prōd-esse*); *legēns*, *reading*, for *\*legents* (from the stem *legent-*, cf. genitive *legent-is*). An **s** is never assimilated to a following **t**: as, *haustus*, *drained* (1014), from the stem *haus-*, present *hauriō* (154). Forms like the rare *hausūrus* (Verg.) are made after the analogy of dental stems.

(3.) One spirant, **s**, is assimilated to another, **f**: as, *difficilis*, *difficult*, *differō*, *I am unlike*, from *dis* and *facilis*, *ferō*.

(4.) A mute is assimilated to a nasal: thus **d** to **m** in *mamma*, *woman's breast*, from the stem *mad-* (cf. *madeō*, 1006); *rāmus*, *branch*, *rāmentum*, *splinter*, from the stem *rād-* (cf. *rādō*, 958) with simplification of the double **m** after the long vowel. **d** to **n** in *mercēnārius*, *hireling*, from the stem *mercēd-*, *reward*, (for *mercennarius*, see 133, 1); **p** to **m** in *summus*, *highest*, from the stem *sup-* (cf. *super*). A progressive assimilation of **nd** to **nn** belongs to the Oscan dialect, and occurs only very rarely in Latin: as, *tennitur* (Ter.), *distennite* (Plaut.) See 924; 950.

(5.) One nasal, **n**, is assimilated to another, **m**: as *immōtus*, *unmoved*. But an **m** before **n** is never assimilated: as, *amnis*, *river*.

(6.) Mutes or nasals are assimilated to liquids; thus **n** to **l**: as, *homullus*, *manikin*, for *\*homon-lus* (cf. *homun-culus*); *ūllus* (274); **d** to **l**: as, *sella*, *seat*, for *\*sed-la* from the stem *sed-* (cf. *sedeō*); *caelum*, *chisel*, from the stem *caed-* (cf. *caedō*) with simplification of the double **l** after the diphthong (170, 7); **n** to **r**: as, *irruō*, *I rush in*; and with progressive assimilation **n** to a preceding **l**: as, *tollō*, *I lift*, for *\*tolnō* (833); *fallō*, *I cheat* (932); *pellō*, *I push* (932). But no assimilation is to be assumed for *parricīda*, which does not stand for *patricīda* (133, 1).

(7.) One liquid, **r**, is assimilated to another, **l**: as, *pelliciō*, *I lead astray* (956), for *\*per-liciō*; *agellus*, *small field*, for *\*agerlos*; *pūllus*, *clean*, from *\*pūrlos* (cf. *pūrus*, *clean*).

(8.) A spirant, **s**, is assimilated to a preceding liquid in *velle*, *wish*, for *\*velse*, *ferre*, *carry*, for *\*ferse* (the infinitive ending **-se** appears in *es-se*, 895); *facillimus*, *easiest*, for *\*facilissimus* (345); *sacerrimus*, *holiest*, for *\*sacersimus* (344). But where **ls** and **rs** are not original but the result of lightening (170, 3; 10) they remain unchanged: as, *arsī*, *I burnt*, for *\*artsī* from the stem *ard-* (cf. *ardeō*, 1000); *alsī*, *I felt cold*, for *\*alcsi* from the stem *alg-* (cf. *algeō*, 1000).

(9.) **g** and **d** were assimilated to a following unsyllabic **i** (*i*) the result being (153, 2) *ii* (*ii*); thus *peior*, *worse*, for *\*ped-ior*, from the stem *ped-* (532), whence also the superlative *pessimus* for *\*petsimus* (166, 2); *maior*, *greater*, for *\*mag-ior* (the stem *mag-* appears in *magis*); *aiiō*, *I say*, for *\*ag-īō* (the stem *ag-* appears in *ad-ag-ium*, *prōd-ig-ium*, 219). These forms were pronounced by Cicero with doubled **i** (23), and traces of the spelling with double **ii** are still found (23), though in common practice only one **i** is written (153, 2). On the confusion of syllabic quantity with vowel quantity in these words, see 133, 2.

#### CONSONANTAL GLIDES.

167. Pronunciation of two successive consonants is sometimes facilitated by the insertion of a consonant which serves as a glide. Such insertion is not frequent.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

(3.) **c** falls away when it stands between a liquid and **t**, **s**, **m**, or **n**: as, *ultus*, *avenged*, for \**ulctus* from *ulc-iscor* (980); *mulsi* for \**mulcsi* from both *mulgeō*, *I milk*, and *mulceō*, *I stroke*; similarly other stems in **-c** and **-g** (1000, 1014); *quernus*, *oaken*, for \**quercnus* from *quercus*; *tortus*, *turned*, for \**torctus* from *torqueō* (for the change of **qu** to **c**, see 158); for *fortis*, *brave*, *forctis* is found in old Latin.

(4.) **c** drops out when it stands between **n** and **t**: as, *quintus*, *fifth*, for older *quinctus* (2412), from *quinque* (for the change of **qu** to **c**, see 158; for the long **i** in *quinque*, see 122, *b*). But verbs having stems in **-nc** or **-ng** retain the **c** in their past participles: as, *vinctus*, *bound*, from *vincire* (1014); *iunctus*, *joined*, from *iungere* (954). In *pastus* (965) **c** has dropped out between **s** and **t**.

(5.) The group **-ncn-** was simplified to simple **-n-**, and the preceding vowel was lengthened: as, *quini*, *five each*, for \**quinc-ni* (317); *cō-niveō*, *wink and blink*, for *con-cniveō*.

(6.) **n** before **gn** was dropped and the preceding vowel lengthened: as, *i-gnōs-cō*, *I forgive*, for \**in-gnōscō*, *cō-gnōscō*, *I know*, for \**con-gnōscō*. In this manner (170, 5; 6) arises a form *cō-* by the side of *con-* (122, *e*): as, *cō-nectō*, *cō-nubium*, *cō-ligātus* (Gell. 2, 17, 8).

(7.) In the imperial age, **ss** after long vowels and diphthongs was regularly changed to **s**: as, *clausi*, *I closed*; *ūsus*, *used* (166, 2); but always *ēsse*, *to eat* (769); **ll** changed to **l** after diphthongs: as, *caelum*, *chisel* (166, 6); also when preceded by **i** and followed by **i**: as, *villa*, *country-place*, but *vīlicus* (adject.); *mille*, *thousand*, but *mīlia* (642). Elsewhere **ll** was retained after long vowels: as, *pūllus* (166, 7), *clean*; *rāllum*, *ploughshare*, from *rādō* with suffix **-lo-** (209). In Cicero's time (Quint. 1, 7, 20) the spelling was still *caussa* (155, *b*), *matter*: *cāssus* (930), *fallen*; *divīssiō* (cf. 912), *division*. Vergil also, according to Quintilian, retained the doubled consonants, and the best manuscripts of both Vergil and Plautus frequently show **ll** and **ss** for later **l** and **s**, as do inscriptions: as, *PROMEISSERIT*, *he might have promised* (49 B.C.); *ACCVSSASSE*, *to have accused*.

(8.) After a long vowel **d** was dropped before consonant **u** (**v**): as, *svāvis*, *sweet*, for \**svādvis* from *svād-* (cf. *svādeō*).

(9.) **r** before **st** was dropped: as, *tostus*, *roasted* (1004) for \**torstus* from the stem *tors-* (cf. *torreō* with assimilated **-rs-**, 166, 8).

(10.) **-rts-** changed to **-rs**: as, *arsi*, *I burnt*, for \**artsī* (1000). **-rcsc-** changed to **-sc-**: as, *poscō*, *I demand*, for \**porcscō* (834).

(11.) In *ipse*, *self*, for \**is-pse*, an **s** has disappeared before **-ps-**

(12.) **d** (**t**) disappears between **r** and **c**: as, *cor-culum* for *cord(i)-culum* (275).

**171. FINAL DISAPPEARANCE.** (1.) A word never ends in a doubled consonant: as, *es* for \**es-s*, *thou art*, which Plautus and Terence still scan as a long syllable; and the following cases of assimilation: *ter* for \**terr* from \**ters* (cf. *terr-uncius*, *a quarter of an ās*, *a farthing*, 1272, for \**ters-uncius*, 166, 8); *fār*, *spelt*, for \**farr*, from \**fars* (489); *fel*, *gall*, for \**fell*, from \**fels* (482); in *mīles*, *soldier*, for \**mīless* from \**mīlets* (cf. Gen. *mīlitis*, 477) the final syllable is still long in Plautus. *hoc*, *this*, for \**hocc* from \**hod-c(e)* (the neuter \**hod* from the stem *ho-*, as *istud*, *illud* (107, *c*) from *isto-*, *illo-*) counts as a long syllable even in classical poetry.

(2.) No Latin word can end in two explosives: thus, final **t** is dropped in *lac*, *milk* (478); final **d** in *cor*, *heart* (476).

(3.) When final **s** was preceded by **r** or **l**, it was assimilated to these liquids, and final **rr** and **ll** were then simplified to **r** and **l**. See the examples under (1). Wherever final **-rs** and **-ls** appear they are not original but the result of the disappearance of an intervening consonant: as, *puls*, *pottage*, for \**pults* (533); *pars*, *part*, for \**parts* (533); all with syncope (111) of the vowel **i** in the nominative sg.

(4.) Original final *ns* was changed to *s* and the preceding vowel was lengthened: as, *sanguis*, *blood* (2452), for \**sanguins* from the stem *sanguin-* (486). Whenever final *-ns* appears it is not original but the result of the disappearance of an intervening consonant: as, *ferens*, *carrying*, for \**ferents*, from the stem *ferent-*; *frons*, *foliage*, for \**fronds*, from the stem *frond-*.

(5.) A dental mute before final *s* is dropped: as, *hērēs*, *heir*, for \**hērēds* (475); *virtūs*, *virtue*, for \**virtūts* (477); *nox*, *night*, for \**noctis* (533); a labial or guttural mute is retained: as, *fornāx* (*x = cs*), *furnace*, from the stem *fornāc-* (531); *lēx*, *law*, from the stem *lēg-* (472); *urbs*, *city*, from the stem *urb-* (480); *ops* from the stem *op-*, *help* (480).

#### DEVELOPMENT OF AN ANAPTYCTICAL VOWEL.

172. Certain consonant groups, notably those containing a liquid, are sometimes eased by the insertion of a vowel which develops between the consonants. This is called *Anaptyxis* (Greek *ἀναπτύσσειν*, *unfold*). It is the opposite of syncope of vowels (110, 111).

(1.) The suffix *-clo-* (242), changed to *-culo-*, being thus no longer distinguishable from the diminutive suffix *-culo-* (267): as, *pōculum*, *cup*, for *pōclum* (Plaut.); *vehiculum*, *carriage*, for *vehiclum* (Plaut.). But *-clo-* is more common in Plautus than *-culo-*, especially after long vowels. The suffixes *-blo-* (245), and *-bli-* (294) always show the anaptyctical vowel. Its colour depends on the nature of the *l* (60): as, *stabulum*, *resting-place*; *stabilis*, *steady*. The group *-ngl-* also changes to *-ngul-*: as, *angulus* (164, 6).

(2.) In words borrowed from the Greek an unfamiliar sequence of consonants was so lightened; as, *mina*, *mina*, for \**mna* (*μνᾶ*); and in Old Latin *drachuma* (Plaut.) for later *drachma*, *drachma* (*δραχμή*); *techina*, *trick*, from Greek *τέχνη*; *Tecumēssa* for *Tecmēssa* (*Τέκμησσα*).

(3.) Before syllabic (83) *l* and *r* a vowel is developed (111, *b*): as, *incertus*, *uncertain*, for \**incrtus*; *facultās*, *capability*, for *facrtās*. Likewise before syllabic *n* (139).

#### DISSIMILATION.

173. (1.) To avoid the repetition of the same liquid in successive syllables *l* is sometimes changed to *r*: as, *caeruleus*, *sky-blue*, for \**caeluleus*, from *caelum*; *Parilia*, by the side of *Palilia*, from *Palēs*; the suffix *-clo-* appears as *-cro-* after an *l*: as, *lavācrum*, *bath*; *simulācrum*, *image* (241); the suffix *-āli-* under like conditions changes to *-āri-*; as, *molāre*, *of a mill* (313), but *augurāle*, *of an augur*.

(2.) In a few cases repetition is avoided by dropping the sound once: as, *praestigiae*, *jugglery*, for *praestrigiae*. This also applies to the spirant *s* followed by a consonant, a combination which is not tolerated in successive syllables: as in the reduplicated perfects *stetī*, for \**stestī*; *sppondī*, for \**spospondī* (859), where the second syllable, and in *quisquiliae*, *sweepings*, for \**squisquiliae*, where the first syllable was lightened.

#### CHANGES WITHIN COMPOUNDS.

174. The final syllable of the first member of compounds (181) sometimes undergoes certain changes by analogy to other compounds:

(1.) The final *-ā* of *ā*-stems, by analogy to the more frequent *-o*-stems, usually changed to *-o*, which in atonic syllables became *-i* (105): as, *āli-ger*, *winged*, for \**ālo-ger* from *ālā-*.

(2.) Stems in *-on-* substitute *-o-* for *-on-* by analogy to the *-o*-stems: as, *homi-cida*, *murderer*, for \**homo-cida* (105) from *homon-* (Nom. *homō*).

(3.) Some stems in *-s* substitute *-o-* by analogy to the *-o*-stems: as, *foedi-fragus*, *treaty-breaking*, for \**foedo-fragus* from the stem *foedos-* (Nom. *foedus*, Gen. *foederis*; 154).

## SYLLABLES.

175. A word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs. The last syllable is called the *Ultima*; the last syllable but one is called the *Penult*; the last syllable but two is called the *Antepenult*.

176. The quantity of single sounds (e. g. the quantity of a vowel) must be carefully distinguished from the quantity of the group of sounds or the syllable of which the single sound forms a part.

## LENGTH OF SYLLABLES.

177. A syllable is long if its vowel is long, or if its vowel is followed by two consonants or by *x* or *z*: as,

*dūcēbās*; *volvunt*. In *dūcēbās* both the vowels and the syllables are long; in *volvunt* the vowels are short, but the syllables are long; in cases like the last the syllables (not the vowels) are said to be *long by position*. *h* does not count as a consonant (58) and *qu* (or *qv*, 27) has the value of a single consonant only: thus, in *adhūc* and *aqua* the first syllable is short.

178. In prose or old dramatic verse a syllable with a short vowel before a mute or *f* followed by *l* or *r* is not long: as *tenebrae*. In other verse, however, such syllables are sometimes regarded as long. In compounds such syllables are long in any verse: as *obruit*.

## LOSS OF SYLLABLES.

179. The first of two successive syllables which begin with the same sound is sometimes lost. This is called *Haplology*.

Thus, *sēmōdius* for *sēmimodius*, *half a bushel*; *calamitōsus* for *\*calamitātōsus*, from the stem *calamitāt-* (262) and suffix *-oso-* (336); *voluntārius*, for *voluntātārius* (262, 309); *cōnsuētūdō*, for *cōnsuētītūdō* (264). See also 255; 379.

## B. FORMATION.

180. FORMATION is the process by which stems are formed from roots or from other stems.

181. A word containing a single stem is called a *Simple* word: as, *magnus*, *great*, stem *magno-*; *animus*, *soul*, stem *animo-*. A word containing two or more stems is called a *Compound* word: as, *magnanimus*, *great-souled*, stem *magnanimo-*.

182. Most inflected words consist of two parts: a stem, which is usually a modified root (195), and an inflection ending: thus, in *ductōrī*, *for a leader*, the root is *duc-*, *lead*, the stem is *ductōr-*, *leader*, and *-ī* is the inflection ending, meaning *for*.

## ROOTS.

183. A ROOT is a monosyllable which gives the fundamental meaning to a word or group of words.

184. A root is not a real word; it is neither a noun, naming something, nor a verb, denoting action. Thus *i u g-*, *yoke*, does not mean *a yoke* nor *I yoke*; it merely *suggests* something about yoking. The root becomes a real word only when an inflection ending is added, or, more commonly, both a formative suffix and an inflection ending: as, *iug-u-m*, *a yoke*.

185. Roots are common to Latin and its cognate languages, such as the Sanskrit and the Greek. When a root is named in this book, the specific Latin form of the root is meant. This often differs somewhat from the form of the root which is assumed as applicable to all the cognate languages.

186. Almost all roots are noun and verb roots; that is, roots with a meaning which may be embodied either in a noun or in a verb, or in both. Besides these there is a small class, less than a dozen in number, of pronoun roots. There are many words which cannot be traced back to their roots.

187. A root sometimes has two or more forms: as, *f i d-* (for *f e i d-*), *f o e d-*, *f i d-*, *trust*; *g e n-*, *g n-*, *sire*; *t o l*, *t l*, *bear*; see 135, 145.

Thus, *f i d-* is found in *f i d-us*, *trusty*, *f i d-ūcia*, *confidence*, *f i d-ūciō*, *I pledge*, *f i d-ūciārius*, *in trust*, *f i d-ere*, *put trust in*, *f i d-ēns*, *courageous*, *f i d-entia*, *courage*; *foed-* in *foed-us*, *pledge of faith*, *foed-erātus*, *bound by a pledge of faith*; *fid-* in *fid-ēs*, *faith*, *fid-ēlis*, *faithful*, *fid-ēliter*, *faithfully*, *fid-ēlitās*, *faithfulness*, *per-fid-us*, *faithless*, *per-fid-ia*, *faithlessness*, *per-fid-iōsus*, *full of faithlessness*, *per-fid-iōsē*, *faithlessly*. *gen-* in *gen-itor*, *sire*, *gn-* in *gi-gn-ere*, *beget*, *gn-ā-* in *gnā-tus*, *son*.

188. A root ending in a vowel is called a *Vowel Root*: as, *d a-*, *give*; a root ending in a consonant is called a *Consonant Root*: as, *r u p-*, *break*. Roots are conveniently indicated by the sign  $\sqrt{\quad}$ : as,  $\sqrt{t e g-}$ , to be read 'root *t e g-*.'

189. A root or a part of a root is sometimes doubled in forming a word; this is called *Reduplication*: as, *mur-mur*, *murmur*; *tur-tur*, *turtle-dove*; *po-pul-us*, *people*; *ul-ul-āre*, *yell*.

#### PRESENT STEMS AS ROOTS.

190. Many nouns are formed from the present stems of verbs, which take the place of roots. Stems thus used are mostly those of verbs in *-āre* and *-īre*.

Thus, from *orā-*, stem of *orāre*, *speak*, are formed *orā-tor*, *speaker*, and *orā-tiō*, *speech*; from *audī-*, stem of *audire*, *hear*, are formed *audī-tor*, *hearer*, and *audī-tiō*, *hearing*.

191. Verbs in *-ēre*, and those in *-āre* and *-īre* in which the *ā* or *ī* is confined to the present system (868, 874) usually have parallel nouns formed directly from a root: as,

*doc-tor*, *teacher*, *doc-umentum*, *lesson*, *doc-ills*, *teachable* ( $\sqrt{d o c-}$ , *docēre*); *sec-tor*, *cutter* ( $\sqrt{s e c-}$ , *secāre*); *dom-itor*, *tamer*, *dom-inus*, *master*, *dom-itus*, *tamed* ( $\sqrt{d o m-}$ , *domāre*); *sarc-ina*, *package* ( $\sqrt{s a r c-}$ , *sarcire*).

192. But a noun is sometimes exceptionally formed from the present stem of a verb in *-ēre*: as, *monē-ta*, *mint* (*monēre*); *acē-tum*, *vinegar* (*acēre*); *virē-tum*, *a green* (*virēre*); *suādē-la*, *persuasion* (*suādēre*); *habē-na*, *retn* (*habēre*); *egē-nus*, *needy* (*egēre*); *verē-cundus*, *shamefast* (*verēri*); *valē-tūdō*, *health* (*valēre*).

193. Verbs in -ere, and particularly such as have a present in -nō, -scō, -tō or -iō (832), usually have their parallel nouns formed directly from a root: as,

vic-tor, *conqueror* (√vic-, vincere); incrē-mentum, *growth* (√crē-, crēscere); pul-sus, *a push* (√pol-, pellere).

194. Sometimes, however, nouns are formed from such verb stems, and not from roots: as, lecti-stern-ium, *a couch-spreading* (sternere, √ster-, strā-); vinc-ibilis, *conquerable* (vincere, √vic-); pāsc-uum, *pasture* (pāscere, √pā-); pect-en, *comb* (pectere, √pec-); fall-āx, *deceitful* (fallere, √fal-).

#### STEMS.

195. A STEM is that part of a word which contains its meaning, and is either a root alone or more commonly a root with an addition called a *Formative Suffix*.

Thus, in the word ducis, *leader's*, the stem, which is identical with the root duc-, means *leader*; a root thus serving as a stem is called a *Root Stem*; in ductōris, *leader's*, the stem is formed by the formative suffix -tōr-, denoting the agent, attached to the √duc-.

196. New stems are formed by adding a suffix to a stem. Thus, from ōrātōr-, *speaker*, is formed by the addition of the suffix -io-, a new stem ōrātōr-io-, N. ōrātōrius, *speaker's*.

197. The noun has usually only one form of the stem. The verb has different stems to indicate mood and tense; these stems are all based on two principal tense stems, the present and the perfect active.

#### PRIMITIVES AND DENOMINATIVES.

198. I. A stem or word formed directly from a root or a verb stem is called a *Primitive*. II. A stem or word formed from a noun stem is called a *Denominative*.

(a.) Primitives: from √rēg-, reg-, *guide*: rēx, stem rēg-, *king*; rēg-num, stem rēg-no-, *kingdom*; rēctus, stem rēc-to-, *guided*; regere, stem reg-e-, *guide*. From ōrā-, stem of ōrāre, *speaking*: ōrātor, stem ōrā-tōr-, *speaker*; ōrātiō, stem ōrā-tiōn-, *speech*.

(b.) Denominatives: from noun stem rēg-, *king*: rēgīna, stem rēg-īnā-, *queen*; rēgius, stem rēg-io-, rēgālis, stem rēg-āli-, *royal*. From ōrātiōn-, *speech*: ōrātiūncula, stem ōrātiūn-culā-, *little speech*. From rēg-no-, *kingdom*: rēgnāre, stem rēgnā-, *to rule*. From iūs, *law*: iūrāre, *swear*, stem iūrā (154).

### (A.) FORMATION OF THE NOUN.

#### WITHOUT A FORMATIVE SUFFIX.

199. Some roots are used as noun stems: as, duc-, N. dux, *leader* (√duc-, *lead*); rēg-, N. rēx, *king* (√rēg-, *guide*); particularly at the end of a compound: as, con-iug-, N. coniūnx, *yoke-fellow, spouse* (com-, √jug-, *yoke*); tubī-cin-, N. tubicen, *trumpeter* (tubā-, √can-, *play*).

WITH A FORMATIVE SUFFIX.

200. SIMPLE formative suffixes are vowels: as, -ā-, -o-, -i-, -u-; also -io-, -uo-, (-vo-); or such little syllables as -mo-, -min-; -ro-, -lo-; -ōu-; -no-, -ni-, -nu-; -to-, -ti-, -tu-; -ter-, -tōr-; -unt- (-nt-); -es- (-er-), -ōr-; these syllables sometimes have slight modifications of form. COMPOUND suffixes consist of one or more simple suffixes attached to a simple suffix: as, -tōr-io-, -ti-mo-, &c., &c.

201. The following are examples of noun stems formed from roots or verb stems by simple suffixes added:

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.	STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
fug-ā-	fuga, flight	fug-, fly	som-no-	somnus, sleep	sop-, sleep
fid-o-	fidus, trusty	fid-, trust	plē-no-	plēnus, full	plē-, fill
ac-u-	acus, pin	ac-, point	rēg-no-	rēgnum, realm	rēg-, guide
od-io-	odium, hate	od-, hate	da-to-	datus, given	da-, give
pluv-iā-	pluvia, rain	pluv-, wet	lec-to-	lectus, bed	leg-, lie
ar-vo-	arvom, tith	ar-, till	gen-ti-	gēns, race	gen-, beget
al-vo-	alvos, belly	al-, nurture	sta-tu-	status, stand	sta-, stand
sal-vo-	salvos, safe	sal-, safe	rēc-tōr-	rēctor, ruler	rēg-, guide
fā-mā	fāma, tale	fā-, tell	e-unt-	iēns, going	i-, go
teg-min-	tegmen, cover	teg-, cover	rege-nt-	regēns, guiding	rege-, guide
sel-lā-	sella, seat	sed-, sit	gen-er-	genus, race	gen-, beget
err-ōn-	errō, stroller	errā-, stroll	fur-ōr-	furor, madness	fur-, rave

202. Formative suffixes are often preceded by a vowel, which in many instances is a stem vowel, real or presumed; in others, the vowel has come to be regarded as a part of the suffix itself.

Thus, -lo-: filio-lo-, N. filio-lu-s, little son (filio-); hortu-lu-s, little garden (horto-, 105, h); but -ulo-: rēg-ulu-s, petty king (rēg-); ger-ulu-s, porter (√ges-, bear). -ci-: pugnā-ci-, N. pugnā-x, full of fight (pugnā-re); but -āci-: fer-āx, productive (√fer-, bear). -to-: laudā-to-, N. laudā-tu-s, praised (laudā-re); but -āto-: dent-ātus, toothed (denti-). -tu-: equitā-tu-, N. equitā-tu-s, cavalry (equitā-re); but -ātu-: sen-ātu-s, senate (sen-). -lā-: suādē-lā-, N. suādē-la, persuasion (suādē-re, 192); but -ēlā-: loqu-ēla, talk (√loqu-, speak). -tāt-: cīvi-tāt-, N. cīvi-tā-s, citizenship (cīvi-); but -itāt-: auctōr-itā-s, authority (auctōr-). -cio-: aedīli-cio-, N. aedīli-ciu-s, of an aedile (aedīli-); but -icio-: patr-iciu-s, patrician (patr-). -timo-: finī-timo-, N. finī-timu-s, bordering (finī-); but -itimo-: lēg-itimu-s, of the law (lēg-).

203. There are many formative suffixes of nouns. The commonest only can be named, and these may be conveniently grouped as below, by their meanings. Compound suffixes are arranged with reference to the last element of the suffix: thus, under the adjective suffix -io- (304) will be found -c-io-, -īc-io-, -tōr-io-, and -ār-io-. In many instances it is difficult to distinguish between simple and compound suffixes.



## I. THE SUBSTANTIVE.

## (A.) PRIMITIVES.

## I. THE AGENT.

204. The suffixes -tōr-, -o-, -ā-, -lo-, and -ōn-, are used to denote the *Agent* : as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
lēc-tōr-	lēctor, <i>reader</i>	√lēg-, <i>read</i>
scrib-ā-	scriba, <i>writer</i>	√scrib-, <i>write</i>
fig-ulo-	figulus, <i>potter</i>	√fig-, <i>mould</i>
err-ōn-	errō, <i>stroller</i>	errā-re, <i>stroll</i>

## (1.) -tōr- (N. -tor).

205. -tōr-, N. -tor, or -sōr-, N. -sor (159, 202), is the commonest suffix of the agent; the feminine is -trī-ci-, N. -trī-x. -tōr- is sometimes used in a present sense, of action repeated or occurring at any time, and sometimes in a past sense.

206. (a.) -tōr- (-sōr-), in the present sense, often denotes one who makes a regular business of the action of the root or verb.

ōrā-tōr-, N. ōrā-tor, *spokesman, speaker* (ōrā-re); lēc-tor, *reader* (√lēg-, *read*). Workmen and tradesmen: arā-tor, *ploughman*, pās-tor, *shepherd*, pīc-tor, *painter*, sū-tor, *shoemaker*. Semi-professional: captā-tor, *legacy-hunter*, dēlā-tor, *professional informer*. Government officials: cēn-sor, *appraiser, censor*, imperā-tor, *commander*, prae-tor, (*leader*), *praetor*, dictā-tor, lic-tor. Of the law: āc-tor, *manager*, accūsā-tor, *accuser*, spōn-sor, *bondsman*, tū-tor, *guardian*. From presumed verb stems (202): sen-ātor, *senator* (sen-); viā-tor, *wayfarer* (viā-); fundi-tor, *slinger* (fundā-). -tro-, N. -ter, has the meaning of -tōr-: as, aus-tro-, N. aus-ter (*scorcher*), *south-wester* (√aus-, *burn*).

207. In the present sense -tōr- (-sōr-) is also used to indicate permanent character, quality, capability, tendency, likelihood: as, bellā-tor, *a man of war, warlike*; dēliberā-tor, *a man of caution*; cessā-tor, *a loiterer*; dērī-sor, *a mocker, ironical*; cōnsūmp-tor, *apt to destroy, destructive*; aedificā-tor, *building-mad*.

208. (b.) -tōr- (-sōr-), in a perfect sense, is used particularly in old Latin, or to denote an agent who has acquired a permanent name by a single conspicuous action. In this sense it usually has a genitive of the object, or a possessive pronoun: thus,

castīgā-tor meus, *my mentor, or the man who has upbraided me*; olivae inven-tor, *the deviser of the olive* (Aristaeus); reper-tor vītis, *the author of the vine* (Bacchus); patriae liberā-tōrēs, *the emancipators of the nation*.

## (2.) -o- (N. -u-s), -ā- (N. -a); -lo- (N. -lu-s); -ōn- (N. -ō).

209. -o- and -ā- stems may denote vocation or class; many are compounds. -o-, N. -u-s: coqu-o-, N. coqu-o-s or coc-u-s, *cook* (√coqu-, *cook*); causidic-u-s, *pleader* (causā-, √dic-, *speak*). -ā-, N. -a: scrib-ā-, N. scrib-a, *clerk* (√scrib-, *write*); agricol-a, *husbandman* (agro-, √col-, *till*).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

220. -t-io-, N. -t-*iu*-m: spa-tio-, N. spa-t*iu*-m, *stretch* (√spa-, *span, stretch*); sōlsti-t*iu*-m, *sun-stand, solstice* (sōl-, √sta-, *stand*); inī-t*iu*-m, *a beginning* (in-, √i-, *go*).

221. -iā-, N. -ia: fur-iā-, N. fur-*iae*, plural, *ravings, madness* (√fur-, *rave*); pluvia, *rain* (√pluv-, *rain*). Most stems in -iā- are compounds, used in the plural only, often with concrete or passive meaning: dēlic-*iae*, *allurements, pet* (dē-, √lac-, *allure*); excub-*iae*, *patrol* (ex-, √cub-, *lie*).

222. -iē-, N. -iē-s, a variation of -iā-, usually denotes result (604): ser-iē-, N. ser-iē-s, *row* (√ser-, *string*); spec-iē-s, *sight, looks* (√spec-, *spy, see*); pernic-iē-s, *destruction* (per-, √nec-, *murder*).

223. -t-iē-, N. -t-iē-s: permi-tiē-, N. permi-tiē-s, *wasting away* (per-, √mi-, *less*).

(2.) -min- (103) (N. -men); -din-, -gin- (105, *g*) (N. -dō-, -gō).

224. -min-, N. -men (202), usually active, occasionally passive, is very common; it sometimes denotes the means, instrument, or effect.

certā-min-, N. certā-men, *contest* (certā-re); crī-men, *charge* (√cer-, crī-, *sift*); spec-imen, *what is inspected, sample* (√spec-, *spy, see*); lū-men, *light* (√lūc-, *light*); flū-men, *flood, stream* (√flugū-, *flow*); ag-men, *what is led, train* (√ag-, *lead*). Words in -min- often mean nearly the same as those in -mento- (239): as, levā-men, levā-mentu-m, *lightening*; teg-umen, teg-umentu-m, *covering*.

225. ē-din-, -ī-din- (202): -ē-din-, N. -ē-dō: grav-ēdin-, N. grav-ēdō, (*heaviness*), *catarrh* (√grav-, *heavy*). -ī-din-, N. -ī-dō: cup-īdin-, N. cup-īdō, *desire* (√cup-, *desire*); lib-īdō, *whim* (√lib-, *yearn*).

226. -ā-gin-, -ī-gin- (202): -ā-gin-, N. -ā-gō: vorā-gin-, N. vorā-gō, *gulf* (vorā-re); imā-gō, *representation* (\*imā-, cf. imitārī). -ī-gin-, N. -ī-gō: orī-gin-, N. orī-gō, *source* (orī-rī); cāl-igō, *darkness* (√cāl-, *hide*). A few denominatives have -ū-gin-, N. -ū-gō: aer-ūgin-, N. aer-ūgō, *copper rust* (aer-).

(3.) -i-ōn- (N. -i-ō); -ti-ōn- or -si-ōn- (N. -ti-ō or -si-ō).

227. -i-ōn-, N. -i-ō: opīn-iōn-, N. opīn-iō, *notion* (opīnā-rī); condic-iō, *agreement* (com-, √dic-, *say*); contāg-iō, *touch* (com-, √tag-, *touch*). Some words are concrete: leg-iō, *pick, legion* (√leg-, *pick*). A few are denominatives: commūn-iō, *mutual participation* (commūni-).

228. -ti-ōn-, N. -ti-ō, or -si-ōn-, N. -si-ō (159, 202), is very common, and may denote action either intransitive, transitive, or passive, or the manner or possibility of action.

cōgitā-tiōn-, N. cōgitā-tiō, *a thinking, a thought* (cōgitā-re); existimā-tiō, *judging, reputation* (existimā-re); coven-tiō, commonly cōn-tiō, *meeting, speech* (com-, √ven-, *come*); dēpul-siō, *warding off* (dē-, √pol-, *push*); oppugnā-tiō, *besieging, method of besieging* (oppugnā-re); occultā-tiō, *hiding, chance to hide, possibility of hiding* (occultā-re). Some words denote the place where: sta-tiō, *a stand* (√sta-, *stand*); some become collectives or concretes: salūtā-tiō, *greeting, levee, guests at a levee* (salūtā-re); mūnī-tiō, *fortification, i.e., act of fortifying or works* (mūnī-re).

(4.) -ē-lā- (N. -ē-la), -tē-lā- (N. -tē-la).

229. -ē-lā-, N. -ē-la (202): suādē-lā-, N. suādē-la, *persuasion* (suādē-re): loqu-ēla, *talk* (√loqu-, *talk*); quer-ēla or quer-ēlla, *complaint* (√quē s-, *complain*). Some words are concrete: candē-la, *candle* (candē-re).

230. -tē-lā-, N. -tē-la: corrup-tēlā-, N. corrup-tēla, *a seduction* (com-, √rup-, *spoil, ruin*); tū-tēla, *protection* (√tū-, *watch, protect*).

(5.) -mā- (N. -ma), -nā- (N. -na); -trī-nā- (N. -trī-na).

231. -mā- and -nā- are rare, and denote result or something concrete. -mā-, N. -ma: fā-mā-, N. fā-ma, *tale* (√fā-, *tell*); -nā-, N. -na: ur-na, *pitcher* (√urc- in urc-eus, *pitcher*, 170, 3); with original suffix -sna (170, 2): lū-na, *moon* (√lūc-, *light*); scāla, *stairs* (√scand-, *mount*).

232. -inā-, N. -ina: ang-inā-, N. ang-ina, *choking* (√ang-, *choke*); pāg-ina, *page* (√pāg-, *fasten*); sarc-ina, *package* (√sarc-, *patch*). -inā-, N. -ina (202): ru-inā-, N. ru-ina, *downfall* (√ru-, *cumble*); -inā- is very common in denominatives: pisc-ina, *fish-pond* (pisci-).

233. -trī-nā-, N. -trī-na, akin to the agent in -tōr-: doc-trinā-, N. doc-trīna, *teaching*, either *the act of teaching* or *what is taught* (√doc-, *teach*); sū-trīna, *shoemaking, shoemaker's trade, shoemaker's shop* (√sū-, *sew*).

(6.) -tā- or -sā- (N. -ta or -sa); -tu- or -su- (N. -tu-s or -su-s).

234. -tā-, N. -ta, or -sā-, N. -sa (159), is rare, and sometimes denotes result, or something concrete: as, no-tā-, N. no-ta, *mark* (√gno-, *know*); por-ta (*passage, gate*) (√por-, *fare*); fos-sa, *ditch* (√fod-, *dig*); repul-sa, *repulse* (re-, √pol-, *push*); offēn-sa, *offence* (ob, √fend-, *strike*).

235. -tu-, N. -tu-s, or -su-, N. -su-s (159, 202), denotes the action and its results: ques-tu-, N. ques-tu-s, *complaint* (√quē s-, *complain*); gem-itus, *groan* (√gem-, *groan*). Stems in -ā-tu-, N. -ā-tu-s, sometimes denote office or officials: cōnsul-ātu-, N. cōnsul-ātu-s, *being consul, consulship* (cōnsul-); sen-ātu-s, *senate* (sen-). -tu- is seldom passive: vī-su-s, active, *sight*, passive, *looks* (√vīd-, *see*); apparā-tu-s, *preparation*, either *a getting ready*, or *what is got ready* (apparā-re). The supine (2269) is the accusative or ablative of substantives in -tu- (-su-). Most words in -tu- (-su-) are defective in case, and are chiefly used in the ablative (430).

(7.) -er- for -es- (N. -us); -ōr- (N. -or).

236. Neuter stems in -er- (for -es-), or in -or- (for -os-), N. -us, denote result, or have a concrete meaning: gen-er-, N. gen-us, *birth, race* (√gen-, *beget*); op-er-, N. op-us, *work* (√op-, *work*); frīg-or-, N. frīg-us, *cold* (√frīg-, *cold*). -ēs with lengthened ē is sometimes used in the nominative of gender words: as, nūb-ēs, *cloud* (√nūb-, *veil*); sēd-ēs, *seat* (√sēd-); vāt-ēs, *hard*. -ner-, -nor-, N. -n-us: vol-ner-, N. vol-nus, *wound* (√vol-, *tear*); fac-inor-, N. fac-inus, *deed* (√fac-, *do*, 202).

237. -ōr- (for an older form -ōs-, 154), N. -ōs, commonly -or, masculine, denotes a state. Many substantives in -ōr- have a parallel verb, usually in -ēre (368), and an adjective in -īdo- (287).

od-ōr-, N. od-ōs or od-or *smell* (√od-, *smell*, cf. olē-re); pall-or, *pale-ness* (cf. pallē-re); cal-or, *warmth* (cf. calē-re); ūm-or, *moisture* (cf. ūmē-re); am-or, *love* (cf. amā-re); ang-or, *choking, anguish* (√ang-, *choke*).

### III. THE INSTRUMENT OR MEANS.

238. The suffixes -men-to-, -tro-, -cro- or -culo-, -lo-, -bro- or -bulo-, are used to denote the *Instrument* or *Means*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
ōrnā-mento-	ōrnāmentum, <i>embellishment</i>	ōrnā-re, <i>embellish</i>
arā-tro-	arātrum, <i>plough</i>	arā-re, <i>plough</i>
pō-culo-	pōculum, <i>drinking-cup</i>	√pō-, <i>drink</i>
pā-bulo-	pābulum, <i>fodder</i>	√pā-, <i>feed</i>

239. -men-to-, N. -men-tu-m (202), is one of the commonest suffixes; it sometimes denotes result of action, rarely action itself.

pig-mento-, N. pig-mentu-m, *paint* (√pīg-, *paint*); experi-mentu-m, *test* (experi-rī); ōrnā-mentu-m, *ornament* (ōrnā-re); frag-mentu-m, *fragment* (√frag-, *break*); cae-mentu-m, *quarried stone* (√caed-, *cut*); incre-mentu-m, *growth* (in, √crē-, *grow*); al-imentu-m, *nourishment* (√al-, *nurture*); doc-umentu-m, *lesson* (√doc-, *teach*). See also -min- (224). -men-tā-, N. -men-ta, F., is rare: ful-menta, *prop* (√fulc-, *prop*); rā-menta, *scraping* (√rād-, *scrape*).

240. -tro-, N. -tru-m (202): arā-tro-, N. arā-tru-m, *plough* (arā-re); fer-etru-m, *bier* (√fer-, *bear*); rōs-tru-m, *beak* (√rōd-, *peck*). Sometimes -stro-: mōn-stru-m, *warning* (√mōn-, *mind*); lu-stra, plural, *fen, jungle* (√lu-, *wash*); lū-stru-m, *purification* (√lou-, *wash*). -trā-, N. -tra, F.: mulc-trā-, N. mulc-tra (also mulc-tru-m, Ne.), *milking-pail* (√mulg-, *milk*). -es-trā-: fen-estra, *window*.

241. -cro-, N. -cru-m, used when an l precedes: ful-cro-, N. ful-cru-m, *couch-leg* (√fulc-, *prop*). -cro- sometimes denotes the place where: ambulā-cru-m, *promenade* (ambulā-re); sometimes the effect: simulā-cru-m, *likeness* (simulā-re).

242. -culo-, N. -culu-m (202): pō-culo-, N. pō-culu-m, *cup* (√pō-, *drink*); fer-culu-m, *tray* (√fer-, *bear*). -culo- sometimes denotes the place where: cub-iculu-m, *sleeping-room* (√cub-, *lie*); cēnā-culu-m, originally *dining-room*, usually *garret* (cēnā-re).

243. -u-lo-, N. -u-lu-m- (202): chiefly after c or g: vinc-ulo-, N. vinc-ulu-m, *bond* (√vinc-, *bind*); cing-ulu-m, *girdle* (√cing-, *gird*). -u-lā-, N. -u-la, F., rēg-ula, *rule* (√rēg-, *guide*).

244. -bro-, N. -bru-m (202): crī-bro-, N. crī-bru-m, *sieve* (√cer-, crī-, *sift*); lā-bru-m, *wash-basin* (√lav-, *wash*). -brā-, N. -bra, F.: dolā-bra, *chisel, mattock* (dolā-re); late-bra, *hiding-place* (√lat-, *hide*).

245. -bulo-, N. -bulu-m (202): pā-bulo-, N. pā-bulu-m, *fodder* (√pā-, *keep*); vēnā-bulu-m, *hunting-spear* (vēnā-rī); pat-ibulu-m, *pillory* (√pat-, *stretch*). -bulo- sometimes denotes the place where: sta-bulu-m, *standing-place, stall* (√sta-, *stand*). -bulā-, N. -bula, F., rare: sū-bula, *awl* (√su-, *sew*); ta-bula, *board* (√ta-, *stretch*); fā-bula, *talk* (√fā-, *talk*).

(B.) DENOMINATIVES.

I. THE QUALITY.

246. The suffixes -io-, -iā-; -tā-, -tāt-, -tūt-, -tū-din-, are used to denote the *Quality*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
conlēg-io-	conlēgium, <i>colleagueship</i>	conlēgā-, N. conlēga, <i>colleague</i>
audāc-iā-	audācia, <i>boldness</i>	audāci-, N. audāx, <i>bold</i>
cīvi-tāt-	cīvitās, <i>citizenship</i>	cīvi-, N. civis, <i>citizen</i>
magni-tūdin-	magnitūdō, <i>greatness</i>	magno-, N. magnus, <i>great</i>

247. These abstracts are feminine, and come chiefly from adjectives or participles, except those in -io-, which are neuters, and come mostly from substantives. Sometimes the same stem takes two or more of these suffixes: as, clāri-tāt- or clāri-tūdin-, *brightness* (clāro-); iuven-tūt-, in poetry iuven-tāt- or iuven-tā-, *youth* (iuven-).

(1.) -io- (N. -iu-m), -iā- (N. -ia), -iē- (N. -iēs).

248. -iē- sometimes occurs as collateral form to -iā- (604); -io- or -iā- is sometimes attached to other suffixes: thus, -t-io-, -t-iā- (-t-iē-); -mōn-io-, -mōn-iā-; -cin-io-.

249. -io-, N. -iu-m, chiefly used in compounds, denotes *belonging to*, with a very wide range of meaning; many of these words are clearly neuter adjectives in -io- (305). Suffixed to personal names -io- often denotes the condition, action, or employment, which gives rise to the name; this meaning sometimes passes over to that of result, relation of persons, collection of persons, or place.

250. (a.) From simple noun stems: sen-io-, N. sen-iu-m, *feeble old age* (sen-); somn-iu-m, *dream* (somno-); sāv-iu-m, *love-kiss* (suāvi-); silent-iu-m, *silence* (silenti-); crepund-ia, plural, *rattle* (\*crepundo-); mendāc-iu-m, *lie* (mendāci-); sōlāc-iu-m, *comfort* (\*sōlāci-, *comforting*).

251. (b.) Direct compounds (377): aequinoct-iu-m, *equinox* (aequo-, nocti-); contubern-iu-m, *companionship* (com-, tabernā-); prīvilēg-iu-m, *special enactment* (prīvo-, lēg-).

252. (c.) Indirect compounds (377), chiefly from personal names: cōnsil-iu-m, *deliberating together, faculty of deliberation, conclusion, advice, deliberative body* (cōnsul-); auspic-iu-m, *taking auspices, auspices taken* (auspic-); rēmig-iu-m, *rowing, oars, oarsmen* (rēmig-); conlēg-iu-m, *colleagueship, corporation* (conlēgā-); aedific-iu-m, *building* (\*aedific-, *builder*); perfug-iu-m, *asylum* (perfugā-).

253. -t-io- N. -t-iu-m, rare: servi-tio-, N. servi-tiu-m, *slavery, slaves* (servo-); calvi-tiu-m, *baldness* (calvo-).

254. -mōn-io-, N. -mōn-iu-m (202): testi-mōnio-, N. testi-mōniu-m, *evidence* (testi-); mātr-imōniu-m, *marriage* (mātr-); patr-imōniu-m, *patrimony* (patr-).

255. -cin-io-, N. -cin-*iu-m*, rare: *latrō-cinio-*, N. *latrō-ciniu-m*, *robbery* (*latrōn-*); *patrō-ciniu-m*, *protection* (*patrōno-*).

256. -iā-, N. -*ia*, is very common indeed, forming abstracts from nouns, mostly adjectives or present participles.

*audāc-iā-*, N. *audāc-ia*, *boldness* (*audāci-*); *miser-ia*, *wretchedness* (*miser-*); *abundant-ia*, *plenty* (*abundanti-*); *scient-ia*, *knowledge* (*scienti-*); *milit-ia*, *warfare* (*milit-*); *victōr-ia*, *victory* (*victōr-*); *māter-ia*, *timber* (*māter-*); *custōd-ia*, *guard* (*custōd-*).

257. -iē-, N. -*iē-s*: *pauper-iē-*, N. *pauper-iē-s*, *moderate means* (*pauper-*). Most stems in -*iē-* are primitive (222).

258. -t-iā-, N. -*t-ia*, is suffixed to a few adjective stems, chiefly in -*o-*: *iūsti-tiā-*, N. *iūsti-tia*, *justice* (*iūsto-*); *mali-tia*, *wickedness* (*malo-*); *pudici-tia*, *shamefastness* (*pudico-*); *trīsti-tia*, *sadness* (*trīsti-*).

259. -t-iē-, N. -*t-iē-s*, particularly as a collateral form of -*t-iā-* in the N., Ac., and Ab. singular (604): *molli-tiē-*, N. *molli-tiē-s*, *softness* (*molli-*).

260. -mōn-iā-, N. -*mōn-ia* (202): *ācri-mōniā-*, N. *ācri-mōnia*, *sharpness* (*ācri-*); *parsi-mōnia*, *economy* (*parso-*). Analogously from roots, *quer-imōnia*, *complaint* ( $\sqrt{qu}$  e s-, *complain*); *al-imōnia*, *nurture* ( $\sqrt{a}$  l-, *nurture*).

(2.) -*tā-* (N. -*ta*), -*tāt-* (N. -*tā-s*), -*tūt-* (N. -*tū-s*),  
-*tū-din-* (N. -*tū-dō*).

261. -*tā-*, N. -*ta*: chiefly poetic: *iuven-tā-*, N. *iuven-ta*, *youth* (*iuven-*); *senec-ta*, *age* (*sen-ec-*).

262. -*tāt-*, N. -*tā-s* (202), is one of the very commonest suffixes.

*pie-tāt-*, N. *pie-tā-s*, *dutifulness* (*pio-*, 105); *fēlici-tā-s*, *happiness* (*fēlici-*); *cīvi-tā-s*, *citizenship, the community* (*cīvi-*); *facili-tā-s*, *easiness*, *facul-tā-s*, *ability* (*facili-*); *cāri-tā-s*, *dearness* (*cāro-*); *auctōr-itā-s*, *authority* (*auctōr-*); *liber-tā-s*, *freedom* (*libro-*, 111, b); *maies-tā-s*, *grandeur* (*maiōs-*); *volun-tā-s*, *wish* (*\*volunti-*, 179); *venus-tā-s*, *grace* (*venusto-*, 179); *ae-tā-s*, *age* (*aevo-*, 111, a); *tempes-tā-s*, *kind of time, weather* (*tempes-*).

263. -*tūt-*, N. -*tū-s*, only in *iuven-tūt-*, N. *iuven-tū-s*, *youth* (*iuven-*), *senec-tū-s*, *age* (*senec-*), *servi-tū-s*, *slavery* (*servo-*), and *vir-tū-s*, *manhood* (*viro-*, 111).

264. -*tū-din-*, N. -*tū-dō*, suffixed to adjective stems: *magni-tūdin-*, N. *magni-tūdō*, *greatness* (*magno-*); *forti-tūdō*, *courage* (*forti-*); and to a few participles: *cōnsuē-tūdō*, *custom* (*cōnsuēto-*, 179); *sollici-tūdō*, *anxiety* (*sollicito-*); analogously *valē-tūdō*, *health* (*\*valēto-*, *valēre*).

## II. THE PERSON CONCERNED.

265. The suffixes -*ārio-*, -*ōn-*, -*iōn-*, -*li-*, -*no-*, and some others, are used to denote the *Person concerned* or *occupied* with a thing: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
sic-ārio-	sicārius, <i>assassin</i>	sicā-, N. sica, <i>dagger</i>
āle-ōn-	āleō, <i>gambler</i>	āleā-, N. ālea, <i>die</i>
lūd-iōn-	lūdiō, <i>player</i>	lūdo-, N. lūdus, <i>play</i>
aedi-li-	aedilis, <i>aedile</i>	aedi-, N. aedis, <i>house</i>
tribū-no-	tribūnus, <i>tribune</i>	tribu-, N. tribus, <i>tribe</i>

III. THE PLACE.

266. Neuters with the suffixes -tōrio-, -ārio-, -īli-, -to-, or -ēto- are often used to denote the *Place*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
audī-tōrio-	audī-tōrium, <i>lecture-room</i>	audītōr-, N. auditor, <i>hearer</i>
aer-ārio-	aerārium, <i>treasury</i>	aer-, N. aes, <i>money</i>
ov-īli-	ovile, <i>sheepfold</i>	ovi-, N. ovis, <i>sheep</i>
murt-ēto-	murtēta, <i>myrtlegroves</i>	murto-, N. murtus, <i>myrtle</i>

IV. DIMINUTIVES.

267. The suffixes -lo-, -lā-, or -cu-lo-, -cu-lā-, are used to form substantives with a *Diminutive* meaning. Diminutives may denote:

268. (1.) Actual smallness: as, *secūricula*, a little hatchet; *ventulus*, a bit of wind; *spēcula*, a ray of hope.

269. (2.) Imputed smallness: implying, (a.) admiration, affection, or compassion; (b.) contempt or irony. This diminutive, which usually serves to add point to sentences themselves of a playful, patronizing, or slurring character, is very hard to translate; *little* and *small* are often inadequate; *old* or *poor* will sometimes do; but usually recourse must be had to free translations adapted to the particular context: as,

*ōrātiuncula*, a gem of a speech, an attempt at a speech; *mātercula*, an anxious mother, poor mamma, dear mamma; *lectulus*, one's own little bed; *ānellus aureolus*, a gay gold ring; *Graeculī*, our Greek cousins, the good people in Greece; *Graeculus*, a regular Greek, your gentleman from Greece; *muliercula*, a pretty girl, a lady gay, one of the gentler sex, a mere woman, an unprotected female, a maiden all forlorn; *lacrimula*, a wee tear, a crocodile tear; *volpēcula*, Master Reynard, dan Russel; *tōnstrīcula*, a common barber girl; *popellus*, rabble; *nummulī*, filthy lucre; *mercēdula*, an apology for pay; *ratiuncula*, a first rate reason; *caupōnula*, a low tavern.

270. Some diminutives have entirely lost the diminutive meaning: as, *puella*, girl, not necessarily little girl; others have changed their original meaning: as, *avunculus*, uncle, originally grandpapa; *anguilla*, eel, originally little snake. Some words are only found in the diminutive form: as, *stēlla*, star (\*ster-). Diminutives usually have the gender of their primitives; exceptions are rare: as, *rāna*, frog, F., *rānunculus*, tadpole, M.

(1.) -lo- (N., M. -lu-s, Ne. -lu-m), -lā- (N. -la).

271. Stems in -o-, -ā-, or a mute (-g-, -c-, -d-, or -t-), take -lo- or -lā-, which is usually preceded by -u- (202).

*hortu-lo-*, N. *hortu-lu-s*, little garden (*horto-*); *oppidu-lu-m*, hamlet (*oppido-*); *serru-lā-*, N. *serru-la*, little saw (*serrā-*); *rēg-ulu-s*, chieftain (*rēg-*); *vōc-ula*, a bit of a voice (*vōc-*); *calc-ulu-s*, pebble (*calci-*); *nepōt-ulu-s*, a grandson dear (*nepōt-*); *aetāt-ula*, tender age (*aetāt-*).



272. Stems in -eo-, -io-, or -vo-, retain -o- before -lo-; stems in -eā-, -iā-, or -vā-, also have -o- before -lā-.

alveo-lo-, N. alveo-lu-s, *little tray* (alveo-); gladio-lu-s, *little sword* (gladio-); servo-lu-s, *little slave* (servo-); nauseo-lā-, N. nauseo-la, *a slight squeamishness* (nauseā-); bēstio-la, *little animal* (bēstiā-); filio-la, *little daughter* (filiā-).

273. Stems in -lo-, -ro-, -no-, and -lā-, -rā-, -nā-, commonly drop the stem vowel and assimilate -r- or -n- to -l-: thus: -el-lo-, -el-lā- (111; b; 166, 6, 7).

catel-lo-, for \*catululo-, N. catel-lu-s, *puppy* (catulo-); agel-lu-s, *little field* (agro-); asel-lu-s, *donkey* (asino-); fābel-lā-, N. fābel-lā, *short story* (fābulā-); umbel-la, *sunshade* (umbrā-); pāgel-la, *short page* (pāginā-). A few words are not thus changed: pueru-lo-, N. pueru-lu-s, *poor boy* (puero-), as well as puel-lu-s.

274. Another vowel than e (172, 3) appears in: Hispāl-lu-s (Hispāno-), Messāl-la (Messānā-), proper names; corōl-la, *chaplet* (corōnā-); ūl-lu-s, *the least one, any at all* (ūno-); Sūl-la (Sūrā-), proper name; lapil-lu-s, for \*lapid-lu-s, *pebble* (lapid-). Also homul-lu-s, *son of the dust* (homon-).

(2.) -cu-lo- (N., M. -cu-lu-s, Ne. -cu-lu-m), -cu-lā-  
' (N. -cu-la).

275. Stems in a continuous sound (-l-, -n-, -r-, or -s-), or in -i-, -u-, or -ē-, usually take -cu-lo- or -cu-lā-.

sermūn-culo-, N. sermūn-culu-s, *small-talk* (sermōn-); virgun-culā-, N. virgun-cula, *little maid* (virgon-); homun-culu-s, *son of earth* (homon-); arbus-cula, *tiny tree* (arbos-); cor-culu-m, *heart of hearts* (cord-, 170, 12); igni-culu-s, *spark* (igni-); ani-cula, *grandam* (anu-); diē-cula, *brief day* (diē-); analogously, volpē-cula (*vixen*), *little fox* (\*volpē-). Rarely with ī: canī-cula, *little dog* (can-).

276. -un-culo-, N. -un-culu-s: av-unculo-, N. av-unculu-s, *uncle* (avo-); rān-unculu-s, *tadpole* (rānā-). -un-culā-, N. -un-cula: dom-unculā-, N. dom-uncula, *little house* (domo-).

277. Diminutives are sometimes formed from other diminutives: cistel-lu-la, *casket* (cistel-la, cistu-la, cistā-).

278. A few other suffixes have a diminutive meaning: as, -ciōn-, -leo-, -astro-, -ttā-: homun-ciō, *manikin, child of dust* (homon-); acu-leu-s, *sting* (acu-); Antōni-aster, *regular little Antony*; pīn-aster, *bastard pine*; Iūli-tta, *Juliet* (Iūliā-); Pōlli-tta, *little Polla* (Pōllā-).

## V. PATRONYMICS.

279. Patronymics, or proper names which denote descent from a father or ancestor, have stems in -dā- (N. -dē-s), F. -d- (N. -s). These are chiefly Greek names used in poetry.

Priami-dā-, N. Priami-dē-s, *scion of Priam's house*; Tantali-d-, N. Tantalī-s, *daughter of Tantalus*. Pēli-dē-s (Pēleu-s); Aenea-dē-s (Aenēā-); Thestia-dē-s (Thestio-); Lāertia-dē-s (Lāertā-); Scipia-dā-s (Scipiōn-). F. sometimes -īnē or -ōnē: Neptūnīnē (Neptūno-); Acrisiōnē (Acrisio-).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

288. -undo- (-endo-), N. -undu-s, (-endu-s) is the suffix of the gerundive, which was originally neither active nor passive (2238). In a few words from reflexives, which have become adjectives, it has a reflexive or active meaning: *lāb-undo-*, N. *lāb-undu-s*, *gliding, slipping* (*lābī*); *ori-undo-s*, *arising* (*orīri*); *sec-undo-s*, *following* (*sequī*); *volv-endo-s*, *rolling* (*volvi*). See 899.

289. -bundo-, N. -bundu-s (202), has the meaning of an exaggerated present participle: *freme-bundo-*, N. *freme-bundu-s*, *muttering away* ( $\sqrt{\text{frem-}}$ , *roar*); *treme-bundu-s*, *all in a flutter* ( $\sqrt{\text{trem-}}$ , *quiver*); *fur-ibundu-s*, *hot with rage* ( $\sqrt{\text{fur-}}$ , *rave*); *cōntiōnā-bundu-s*, *speaking a speech* (*cōntiōnā-rī*); *minitā-bundu-s*, *breathing out threatenings* (*minitā-rī*); *vitā-bundu-s*, *forever dodging* (*vitā-re*).

290. -cundo-, N. -cundu-s, denotes permanent quality: *fā-cundo-*, N. *fā-cundu-s*, *eloquent* ( $\sqrt{\text{fā-}}$ , *speak*); *īrā-cundu-s*, *choleric* (*īrā-sci*); *iū-cundu-s*, *pleasant, interesting* ( $\sqrt{\text{iuv-}}$ , *help*).

## II. WITH A PASSIVE MEANING.

291. The suffixes -li-, -ti-li-, -bili-, -tīvo-, -no-, and -mino-, are used to form adjectives with a *Passive* meaning: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
fac-ili-	facilis, <i>easy to do</i>	$\sqrt{\text{fac-}}$ , <i>do</i>
duc-tili-	ductilis, <i>ductile</i>	$\sqrt{\text{duc-}}$ , <i>draw</i>
amā-bili-	amābilis, <i>lovable</i>	amā-re, <i>love</i>
mag-no-	māgnus, <i>great</i>	$\sqrt{\text{mag-}}$ , <i>increase</i>

(1.) -li- (N. -li-s); -ti-li-, -bili- (N. -ti-li-s, -bili-s).

292. -i-li-, N. -i-li-s (202), denotes passive capability: *fac-ili-*, N. *fac-ili-s*, *easy to do* ( $\sqrt{\text{fac-}}$ , *do*); *frag-ili-s*, *breakable, frail* ( $\sqrt{\text{frag-}}$ , *break*); *hab-ili-s*, *manageable, handy* ( $\sqrt{\text{hab-}}$ , *hold*); *nūb-ili-s*, *marriageable* ( $\sqrt{\text{nūb-}}$ , *veil*).

293. -ti-li-, N. -ti-li-s, or -si-li-, N. -si-li-s (159), denotes capability or quality: as, *duc-tili-*, N. *duc-tili-s*, *capable of being drawn out, ductile* ( $\sqrt{\text{duc-}}$ , *draw*); *fis-sili-s*, *cleavable* ( $\sqrt{\text{fid-}}$ , *split*); *rā-sili-s*, *scraped* ( $\sqrt{\text{rād-}}$ , *scrape*). Rarely active: as, *fer-tili-s*, *productive* ( $\sqrt{\text{fer-}}$ , *bear*).

294. -bili-, N. -bili-s (202), denotes passive capability like -i-li-, but is far more common: *horr-ibili-s*, *exciting a shudder* (cf. *horrē-re*); *amā-bili-s*, *lovable* (*amā-re*); *flē-bili-s*, *lamentable* ( $\sqrt{\text{flē-}}$ , *weep*). Rarely active: as, *sta-bili-s*, *that can stand* ( $\sqrt{\text{sta-}}$ , *stand*); *penetrā-bili-s*, *piercing* (*penetrā-re*). -ti-bili- (159), passive, rare: *flexibili-s*, *flexible* ( $\sqrt{\text{flec-}}$ , *bend*, 960).

295. -tīvo-, N. -tīvu-s, denotes the way a thing originated: as, *cap-tīvu-s*, *captive* ( $\sqrt{\text{cap-}}$ , *take*); *sta-tīvu-s*, *set* ( $\sqrt{\text{sta-}}$ , *set*).

(2.) -no- (N. -nu-s); -mino- (N. -minu-s).

296. -no-, N. -nu-s, an old passive participle suffix, denotes result: *mag-nu-s* (*enlarged*), *great* ( $\sqrt{\text{mag-}}$ , *great*); *plē-nus*, *full* ( $\sqrt{\text{plē-}}$ , *fill*). Neuter as substantive: *dō-nu-m*, *gift* ( $\sqrt{\text{dō-}}$ , *give*). Sometimes active: *egē-nu-s*, *needy* (*egē-re*, 192).

## The Adjective: Appurtenance. [297-304.]

---

297. The suffix **-mino-** (for **-meno-**, 103, *a*) in its weakest form (135, 2) is found in a few substantives: as, **alu-mnu-s**, *nursling* ( $\sqrt{\text{al-}}$ , *nurse*). The endings **-minī** (730) and **-minō** (731) are apparently case forms of the same suffix. **-minō** would seem to be an ablative; **-minī** may be a nominative plural.

### (B.) DENOMINATIVES.

298. Denominative adjectives may be divided into such as denote: I. *Material or Resemblance*. II. *Appurtenance*: implying sometimes *possession*, often *fitness, conformity, character, or origin*. III. *Supply*. IV. *Diminutives*. V. *Comparatives and Superlatives*; a few of these are primitive.

#### I. MATERIAL OR RESEMBLANCE.

299. The suffixes **-eo-** and **-n-eo-** are used to form adjectives denoting *Material or Resemblance*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
aur-eo-	aureus, <i>golden</i>	auro-, N. aurum, <i>gold</i>
ahē-neo-	ahēneus, <i>bronze</i> (58)	aes-, N. aes, <i>bronze</i>

300. **-eo-**, N. **-eu-s**: aur-eo-, N. aur-eu-s, *golden, all gold, as good as gold* (auro-); ferr-eu-s, *iron* (ferro-); pulver-eu-s, *all dust* (pulver-); virgin-eu-s, *girlish* (virgin-).

301. **-n-eo-**, N. **-n-eu-s**: ahē-neu-s, *bronze* (ahē-, 58; aes-); quer-neu-s, *oaken* (quercu-). **-no-** is usually poetical: as, ebur-nu-s, *ivory* (ebur-); quer-nu-s, *oaken* (quercu-). **-ā-neo-**, N. **-ā-neu-s**: miscell-āneu-s, *mixed* (miscello-).

#### II. APPURTENANCE.

302. The suffixes **-o-**, **-io-**, **-vo-**; **-timo-**, **-li-**, **-no-**; **-bri-**, **-cri-**, **-tri-**; **-co-**, **-ti-**, **-si-**, are used to form adjectives denoting *Belonging to*: as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
rēg-io-	rēgius, <i>kingly</i>	rēg-, N. rēx, <i>king</i>
mari-timo-	maritimus, <i>of the sea</i>	mari-, N. mare, <i>sea</i>
rēg-āli-	rēgālis, <i>of a king</i>	rēg-, N. rēx, <i>king</i>
can-īno-	canīnus, <i>of a dog</i>	can-, N. canis, <i>dog</i>
mulie-bri-	muliebris, <i>womanly</i>	mulier-, N. mulier, <i>woman</i>
cīvi-co-	cīvicus, <i>citizen's</i>	cīvi-, N. cīvis, <i>citizen</i>

(I.) **-o-** (N. **-u-s**), **-io-** (N. **-iu-s**), **-vo-** (N. **-vu-s**).

303. **-o-**, N. **-u-s**: decōr-o-, N. decōr-u-s, *becoming* (decōr-); canōr-u-s, *melodious* (canōr-); pervius, *passable* (via-).

304. **-io-** is one of the commonest suffixes, and is often added to other suffixes; thus: **-c-io-**, **-īc-io-**; **-tōr-io-** (**-sōr-io-**); **-ār-io-**.

305. -io-, N. -iu-s: rēg-io-, N. rēg-iu-s, *of or like a king* (rēg-); patr-iu-s, *of a father* (patr-). Here belong many gentile names: as, Sēst-iu-s (Sexto-). These are used with substantives as adjectives: as, lēx Cornēl-ia, lēx Iūl-ia. Furthermore patril adjectives: as, Corinth-iu-s, *Corinthian* (Corintho-). In some, consonant -io- is used: plēbē-iu-s, *of the commons* (plēbē-). -io- is rare in primitives: exim-iu-s, *select* (ex, √ e m-, take).

306. -c-io-, N. -c-iu-s (202): aedīl-i-cio, N. aedīl-i-ciu-s, *of an aedile* (aedīl-); patr-iciu-s, *of the fathers* (patr-); later-iciu-s, *of brick* (later-).

307. -īc-io-, N. -īc-iu-s: nov-īcio-, N. nov-īciu-s, *new, new-comer* (novo-); nātāl-īciu-s, *birthday's* (nātāli-); caement-īciu-s, *rubble* (caemento-). Usually suffixed to perfect participles to denote the quality derived from the past act: conduct-īciu-s, *hired* (conducto-); trālāt-īciu-s, *transferred* (trālāto-).

308. -tōr-io-, N. -tōr-iu-s, or -sōr-io-, N. -sōr-iu-s, from the agent (205) in -tōr- (-sōr-), is the commonest ending with -io-: imperā-tōrio-, N. imperā-tōriu-s, *of a commander* (imperātōr-). The neuter, as substantive, denotes the place where (266): audī-tōriu-m, *lecture-room* (audītōr-); dēvor-sōriu-m, *inn* (dēvorsōr-).

309. -ār-io-, N. -ār-iu-s, very common, is chiefly added to substantives: as, agr-ārio-, N. agr-āriu-s, *of land* (agro-). Often as substantive: not-āriu-s (265), *stenographer* (notā-); aer-āriu-m (266), *treasury* (aer-); sēmin-āriu-m, *nursery* (sēmin-); bell-āria, plural, *goodies, bonbons* (bello-).

310. -ī-vo-, N. -ī-vu-s (202): tempest-īvu-s, *seasonable* (tempestāt-, 126); aest-īvu-s, *summer's* (aestāt-). See 179.

(2.) -timo- (N. -timu-s); -li- (N. -li-s); -no- (N. -nu-s).

311. -timo-, N. -timu-s (202), for an older -tumo- (28): mari-timo-, N. mari-timu-s, *of the sea* (mari-); fīni-timu-s, *of the border* (fīni-); lēg-itimu-s, *lawful* (lēg-).

312. -li- N. -li-s: humi-li-, N. humi-li-s, *lowly* (humo-); but almost always in denominatives -li- is preceded by a long vowel (202), usually -ā- or -ī-, thus: -ā-li- (-ā-ri-), -ī-li-; -ē-li-, -ū-li-.

313. -ā-li-, N. -ā-li-s: rēg-āli-, N. rēg-āli-s, *kingly* (rēg-); decemvir-āli-s, *of a decemvir* (decemviro-); fāt-āli-s, *fated* (fāto-); t-āli-s, *such* (stem to<sup>h</sup>, that); qu-āli-s, *as* (quo-). -ā-ri-, N. -ā-ri-s, is used for -āli- if an l precedes (173): as, mol-āri-, N. mol-āri-s, *of a mill* (molā-); milit-āri-s, *of a soldier* (milit-). Neuters in -āli- and -āri- often become substantives (600): fōc-āle, *neckcloth* (fauci-); anim-al, *breathing thing* (animā-); calc-ar, *spur* (calci-).

314. -ī-li-, N. -ī-li-s: cīv-īli-, N. cīv-īli-s, *of a citizen* (cīvi-); puer-īli-s, *boyish* (puero-). The neuter, as substantive, sometimes denotes the place where (266): ov-ile, *sheepfold* (ovi-).

315. -ē-li-, N. -ē-li-s: fidē-li-, N. fidē-li-s, *faithful* (fidē-); crūd-ēli-s, *cruel* (crūdo-); patru-ēli-s, *cousin* (patruo-). -ū-li-, N. -ū-li-s: tribū-li-, N. tribū-li-s, *tribesman* (tribu-).

316. The old participle suffix *-no-* (296) is sometimes added at once to noun stems, sometimes to other suffixes: thus, *-ā-no-*, *-ī-no-*; *-ti-no-*, *-tī-no-*; *-er-no-*, *-ur-no-*.

317. *-no-*, N. *-nu-s*, is added to stems formed with the comparative suffix *-ero-* or *-tero-* (347), denoting place: *super-no-*, N. *super-nu-s*, *above*; *inter-nu-s*, *internal* (*inter*); *exter-nu-s*, *outside*; so, also, *alter-nu-s*, *every other* (*altero-*); and to a very few substantives: as, *pater-nu-s*, *fatherly* (*patr-*); *frāter-nu-s*, *brotherly* (*frātr-*); *vēr-nu-s*, *of spring* (*vēr-*). Also to cardinals, making distributives: as, *bī-nī*, *two by two* (for *\*duīnī*, *duo-*, 161).

318. *-ā-no-*, N. *-ā-nu-s* (202): *arcā-no-*, N. *arc-ānu-s*, *secret* (*arcā-*); *Rōma-nu-s*, *of Rome* (*Rōmā-*); *mont-ānu-s*, *of a mountain* (*monti-*); *oppid-ānu-s*, *of a town* (*oppido-*). *-i-āno-*: *Cicerōn-iāno-*, N. *Cicerōn-iānu-s*, *Cicero's*. Rarely *-ā-neo-*: *mediterrā-neu-s*, *midland* (*medio-*, *terrā-*).

319. *-ī-no-*, N. *-ī-nu-s* (202): *mar-īno-*, N. *mar-īnu-s*, *of the sea*; *repent-īnu-s*, *sudden* (*repenti-*); oftenest added to names of living beings: as, *can-īnu-s*, *of a dog* (*can-*); *dīv-īnu-s*, *of a god* (*dīvo-*); *-ē-no-*: *lani-ēnu-s*, *ali-ēnu-s*. Also to proper names: as, *Plaut-īno-*, N. *Plaut-īnu-s*, *of Plautus* (*Plauto-*); *Alp-īnu-s*, *Alpine* (*Alpi-*).

320. *-ti-no-*, N. *-ti-nu-s*, is used in some adjectives of time: *crās-tinu-s*, *to-morrow's* (*crās-*); *diū-tinu-s*, *lasting* (*diū*); *prīs-tinu-s*, *of a foretime* (*prī-*, *prae*).

321. *-tī-no-*, N. *-tī-nu-s*, is used in a few words of place and time: *intes-tīno-*, N. *intes-tinu-s*, *inward* (*intus*); *vesper-tīnu-s*, *at eventide* (*vespero-*).

322. From words like *frāter-nus* (from *\*fratr(i)-nus*, III, *b*), *pater-nus*, *exter-nus*, *inter-nus*, arose a new suffix *-terno-*: as, *hes-ternus*, from the stem *hes-* (cf. *her-ī*, 154), and *-erno-* in *hodiernus*. From the adverb *\*noctur* (*νύκτωρ*) was derived *noctur-nus*, by analogy to which *diurnus* was formed. Elsewhere the *-ur* of *-urnus* and the *-tur-* of *-turnus* belong to the stem: as, *ebur-nus*; *tacitur-nus*, from the agent *\*taci-tor* (205).

(3.) *-bri-*, *-cri-*, *-tri-* (N. *-ber* or *-bri-s*, &c.).

323. *-bri-*, N. *-ber* or *-bri-s*: *salū-bri-*, N. *salū-ber*, *healthy* (*salūt-*); *mulie-bri-s*, *womanly* (*mulier-*).

324. *-cri-*, N. *-cer* or *-cri-s* (202): *volu-cri-*, N. *volu-cer*, *winged* (*\*volo-*, *flying*); *medio-cri-s*, *middling* (*medio-*).

325. *-tri-*, N. *-ter* or *-tri-s*: *eques-tri-*, N. *eques-ter*, *of horsemen* (*equit-*, 152); *sēmēs-tri-s*, *of six months* (*sex*, *mēns-*). *-es-tri-* is used in a few words: *camp-ester*, *of fields* (*campo-*); *silv-estri-s*, *of woods* (*silvā-*).

(4.) *-co-* (N. *-cu-s*); *-ti-*, *-si-* (N. *-s*, *-si-s*).

326. *-co-* is often suffixed to *-ti-*, sometimes to *-es-ti-*; thus: *-ti-co-*, *-es-ti-co-*.

327. *-co-*, N. *-cu-s*: *cīvi-co-*, N. *cīvi-cu-s*, *of a citizen* (*cīvi-*); *belli-cu-s*, *of war* (*bello-*); *vīli-cu-s*, *bailiff* (*vīllā-*). *-ā-co-*, *-ī-co-*, *-ū-co-* (202): *merā-cu-s*, *amī-cu-s*, *antī-cu-s*, *aprī-cu-s*, *postī-cu-s*, *pudī-cu-s*, *cadū-cu-s*. *-ti-co-*, N. *-ti-cu-s*: *rūs-tico-*, N. *rūs-ticu-s*, *of the country* (*rūs-*). *-es-ti-co-*, N. *-es-ti-cu-s*: *dom-esticu-s*, *of a house* (*domo-*, *domu-*).

328. -ti- or -si- denotes belonging to a place; usually -ā-ti-, -ī-ti-, -es-ti-, -en-ti-; -ēn-si-, or -i-ēn-si-.

329. -ti-, N. -s: Tībur-ti-, N. Tībur-s, *Tiburine* (Tībur-). -ā-ti-: quoi-ā-ti-, N. quoi-ā-s, *what countryman?* (quoio-); Anti-ā-s, *of Antium* (Antio-); optim-ātēs, *good men and true* (optimo-). -ī-ti-: Samn-ī-ti-, N. Samn-ī-s, *Samnian* (Samnio-). -en-ti-: Vēi-enti-, N. Vēi-ēn-s, *of Veii* (Vēio-). -es-ti-, N. -es-ti-s: agr-esti-, N. agr-esti-s, *of the fields* (agro-); cael-esti-s, *heavenly* (caelo-).

330. -ēn-si-, N. -ēn-si-s (202), from appellatives of place or proper names of place: castr-ēnsi-, N. castr-ēnsi-s, *of a camp* (castro-); circ-ēnsi-s, *of the circus* (circo-); Hispāni-ēnsi-s (*temporarily*) *of Spain*. -i-ēnsi-: Karthāgin-i-ēnsi-s, *of Carthage* (Karthāgin-).

### III. SUPPLY.

331. The suffixes -to- or -ōso- are used to form adjectives denoting *Supplied* or *Furnished with*. as,

STEM.	NOMINATIVE.	FROM.
barbā-to-	barbātus, <i>bearded</i>	barbā-, N. barba, <i>beard</i>
ann-ōso-	annōsus, <i>full of years</i>	anno-, N. annus, <i>year</i>

(1.) -to- (N. -tu-s); -len-to- (N. -len-tu-s).

332. -to-, the perfect participle suffix, is sometimes added at once to a noun stem, sometimes to other suffixes, thus: -āto-, -īto-, -ēto-, -ūto-, -ento-, -lento-.

333. -to-, N. -tu-s: onus-to-, N. onus-tu-s, *loaded* (onus-); vetus-tu-s, *full of years* (\*vetus-, *year*); iūs-tu-s, *just* (iūs-); hones-tu-s, *honourable* (\*hones-); fūnes-tu-s, *deadly* (fūnes-). -ā-to-: barbā-tu-s, *bearded* (barbā-); dent-ātu-s, *toothed* (denti-); -ī-to-: auri-tu-s, *long-eared* (auri-); -ū-to-: cornū-tu-s, *horned* (cornu-). -en-to-, N. -en-tu-s: cru-ento-, N. cru-entu-s, *all gore* (\*cruenti-, \*cruēre). As substantive, arg-entu-m (*white metal*), *silver*; flu-enta, plural, *streams* (fluenti-).

334. The neuter of stems in -to-, as a substantive, denotes the place where something, generally a plant, is found (266): arbus-tu-m, *vineyard* (arbos-); commonly preceded by -ē-, forming -ē-to- (202), usually plural: dūm-ēta, *thorn-thickets* (dūmo-); murt-ēta, *myrtle-groves* (murto-).

335. -len-to-, N. -len-tu-s (202): vīno-lento-, N. vīno-lentu-s, *drunken* (vīno-); sanguin-olentu-s, *all blood* (sanguin-); lūcu-lentu-s, *bright* (lūci-, 28); pulver-ulentu-s, *dusty* (pulver-). A shorter form -lenti- is rare: vi-olenti-, N. vi-olēn-s, *violent* (vi-); op-ulēn-s, *rich* (op-).

(2.) -ōso- (N. -ōsu-s).

336. -ōso- (sometimes -ōnso-, -ōsso-), N. -ōsu-s, *full of*, is very common indeed. -ōso- is sometimes attached to other suffixes, thus: -c-ōso-, -ul-ōso-, -ūc-ul-ōso-.

337. -ōso-, N. -ōsu-s: ann-ōso-, N. ann-ōsu-s, *full of years*; fōrm-ōnsu-s, fōrm-ōssu-s or fōrm-ōsu-s, *shapely* (fōrmā-); pericul-ōsu-s, *with danger fraught* (periculo-); mōr-ōsu-s, *priggish, cross* (mōr-); calamit-ōsu-s, *full of damage* (calamitāt-, 179); superstiti-ōsu-s, *superstitious* (superstition-, 179); frūctu-ōsu-s, *fruitful* (frūctu-, 116, c); mont-uōsu-s, *full of mountains* (monti-, 202); cūri-ōsu-s, *full of care* (cūrā-); labōr-iōsu-s, *toilsome* (labōr-, 202).

338. -c-ōso-, N. -c-ōsu-s: belli-cōso-, N. belli-cōsu-s, *warlike* (bello-, bellico-). -ul-ōso-, N. -ul-ōsu-s: formid-ulōso-, N. formid-ulōsu-s, *terrible* (formidin-, 179). -ūc-ul-ōso-, N. -ūc-ul-ōsu-s: met-ū-culoso-, N. met-ū-culōsu-s, *skittish* (metu-).

#### IV. DIMINUTIVES.

339. Diminutives are formed from adjectives, as from substantives (267).

-lo-, N. -lu-s: aureo-lo-, N. aureo-lu-s, *all gold, of precious gold, of red red gold, good as gold* (aureo-); ebrio-lu-s, *tipsy* (ebrio-); parvo-lu-s, or parvu-lu-s, *smallish* (parvo-); frigidu-lu-s, *chilly* (frigido-); vet-ulus, *little old* (vet-); tenellu-lu-s, *soft and sweet* (tenello-, tenero-); pulchellus, *sweet pretty* (pulchro-); bel-lu-s, *bonny* (bono-); novel-lu-s, *newborn* (\*novolo-, novo-). -culo-, N. -culu-s: pauper-culo-, N. pauper-culu-s, *poorish* (pauper-); levi-culu-s, *somewhat vain* (levi-).

340. A peculiar class of diminutives is formed by adding -culo- to the comparative stem -ius- (346): as, nitidius-culo-, N. nitidius-culu-s, *a trifle sleeker* (nitidius-); longius-culu-s, *a bit longer* (longius-).

341. Adverbs sometimes have a diminutive form: as, bellē, *charmingly*; paululum, *a little bit*; meliusculē, *a bit better* (340).

#### V. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

342. Comparatives and superlatives are usually formed from the stem of the positive: as, dignior, *worthier*, dignissimus, *worthiest*, from digno-, stem of dignus. A few are formed directly from roots: thus, maior, *greater*, and maximus, *greatest*, are formed from the √mag-, and not from magno-, stem of magnus.

##### (I.) COMPARATIVE -ior, SUPERLATIVE -issimus.

343. The nominative of comparative adjectives ends usually in -ior, and that of superlatives in -issimus: thus,

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
-ior	-ior	-ius	-issimus	-issima	-issimum
POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.		
altus, <i>high</i> ,		altior, <i>higher</i> ,	altissimus, <i>highest</i> .		
trīstis, <i>sad</i> ,		trīstior, <i>sadder</i> ,	trīstissimus, <i>saddest</i> .		



## (2.) SUPERLATIVE -rimus.

344. Adjectives with the nominative in -er have the nominative of the superlative like the nominative of the positive with -rimus added (350): as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
pauper, <i>poor</i> ,	pauperior, <i>poorer</i> ,	pauperrimus, <i>poorest</i> .
acer, <i>sharp</i> ,	acrior, <i>sharper</i> ,	acerrimus, <i>sharpest</i> .
maturrimus occurs once (Tac.), for mātūrissimus, positive mātūrus, <i>ripe</i> .		

## (3.) SUPERLATIVE -limus.

345.

humilis, difficilis, and facilis,  
similis, dissimilis, and gracilis,

have the nominative of the superlative in -limus, following l of the stem (350): as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
humilis, <i>lowly</i> ,	humilior, <i>lowlier</i> ,	humillimus, <i>lowliest</i> .

## THE COMPARATIVE SUFFIX.

346. The comparative suffix is -iōs-, which becomes in the singular, nominative masculine and feminine, -ior (154; 132), neuter nominative and accusative, -ius (107, c); in all other cases -iōr- (154).

347. Other comparative suffixes are -ro- or -ero-, and -tro- or -tero-, used in a few words, principally designating place: as, sup-erī, *the upper ones*, inferī, *the nether ones*; ex-terī, *outsiders*, posterī, *after-generations*; alter, *the other*; uter, *whether? which of the two?* (for \*quo-ter, 146); dexter, *right*.

348. Some words designating place have a doubled comparative suffix, -er-iōr-, or -ter-iōr-: as, sup-er-ior, *upper*, inferior, *lower*. ci-ter-ior, *hither*, dēterior (*lower*), *worse*, exterior, *outer*, interior, *inner*, posterior, *hinder*, *after*, ulterior, *further*, dexterior, *more to the right*. -is-tro- is used in two words which have become substantives: min-is-ter (*inferior*), *servant*, and magister (*superior*), *master*.

## THE SUPERLATIVE SUFFIX.

349. The common superlative suffix is -issimo-, nominative -issimus, with older -issumo-, nominative -issumus (28).

350. Stems which end in -ro-, -ri-, or -li- (344, 345) take the suffix -issimo- (cf. -simo-, 351) with syncope of its initial i (111) and assimilation of the final l or r (166, 8).

351. The suffix -timo- is further used in a few root superlatives: ci-timus, dextimus, extimus, intimus, optimus, postumus, and ultimus; and -simo- in maximus, pessimus, and proximus.

352. The suffix -mo- or -imo- is used in sum-mo-, N. summus, *highest* (sub); min-imo-, N. minimus, *least*; prīmus, *first*, septimus, *seventh*, decimus, *tenth*. -mo- or -imo- is attached to -is- (135, 2) in plūrimus for \*plō-is-imo-s (*fullest*), *most* (99); and to -rē- or -trē-, possibly an adverbial form (705), in suprēmus, extrēmus, and postrēmus.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

359. Most primitives in -ilis and -bilis (292, 294), have a comparative, but no superlative; but these have a superlative: *facilis* and *difficilis* (345), *easy* and *hard*, *ūtilis*, *useful*; also *fertilis*, *productive*, *amābilis*, *lovable*, *mōbilis*, *movable*, *nōbilis*, *well known*.

360. Many adjectives have no suffixes of comparison, and supply the place of these by *magis*, *more*, and *maximē*, *most*: as, *mīrus*, *strange*, *magis mīrus*, *maximē mīrus*. Many adjectives, from their meaning, do not admit of comparison.

#### COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS.

361. Adverbs derived from adjectives have as their comparative the accusative singular neuter of the comparative adjective; the superlative is formed like that of the adjective, but ends in -ē: as.

<i>altē</i> , <i>on high</i> ,	<i>altius</i> ,	<i>altissimē</i> .
<i>ācriter</i> , <i>sharply</i> ,	<i>ācrius</i> ,	<i>ācerrimē</i> .
<i>facile</i> , <i>easily</i> ,	<i>facilius</i> ,	<i>facillimē</i> .

362. An older superlative ending, -ēd for -ē, occurs in an inscription of 186 B.C.: *FACILV MED*, i.e. *facillimē*. A few adverbs have superlatives in -ō or -um: as, *meritissimō*, *most deservedly*; *primō*, *at first*, *primum*, *first*; *postrēmō*, *at last*, *postrēmum*, *for the last time*.

363. If the comparison of the adjective has peculiarities, they are retained in the adverb likewise: as, *bene*, *well*, *melius*, *optimē*; *male*, *ill*, *peius*, *pes-simē*; *multum*, *much*, *plūs*, *plūrimum*; *mātūrē*, *betimes*, *mātūrius*, *mātū-rissimē* (Cic., Plin.), or *mātūrrimē* (Cic., Caes., Sall., Tac.). *ōcius*, *swifter*, no positive. *ōcissimē*. *minus*, *less*, is formed by the nominal suffix -es- (236), from √min- (*minuō*); for *magis*, *more*, see 135, 2. In poetry *magis* sometimes becomes *mage*, as if neuter of an adjective in -i-.

364. A few adverbs not derived from adjectives are compared: as, *diū*, *long*, *diūtius*, *diūtissimē*; *saepe*, *often*, *saepius*, *saepissimē*; *nūper*, *lately*, no comparative, *nūperrimē*; *secus*, *otherwise*, *sētius*, *the less*; *temperī*, *betimes*, *temperius*, *earlier*, no superlative.

#### (B.) FORMATION OF DENOMINATIVE VERBS.

365. Denominative verb stems have present infinitives in -āre, -ēre, or -īre (-ārī, -ērī, or -īrī), and are formed from noun stems of all endings: as,

VERB.	FROM NOUN.	VERB.	FROM NOUN.
<i>fugā-re</i> , <i>rout</i>	<i>fugā-</i> , N. <i>fuga</i>	<i>flōrē-re</i> , <i>blossom</i>	<i>flōr-</i> , N. <i>flōs</i>
<i>locā-re</i> , <i>place</i>	<i>loco-</i> , N. <i>locus</i>	<i>sordē-re</i> , <i>be dirty</i>	<i>sordi-</i> , N. <i>sordēs</i>
<i>nōminā-re</i> , <i>name</i>	<i>nōmin-</i> , N. <i>nōmen</i>	<i>pūnī-re</i> , <i>punish</i>	<i>poenā-</i> , N. <i>poena</i>
<i>levā-re</i> , <i>lighten</i>	<i>levi-</i> , N. <i>levis</i>	<i>condī-re</i> , <i>season</i>	<i>condo-</i> , N. <i>condus</i>
<i>sinuā-re</i> , <i>bend</i>	<i>sinu-</i> , N. <i>sinus</i>	<i>custōdī-re</i> , <i>guard</i>	<i>custōd-</i> , N. <i>custōs</i>
<i>albē-re</i> , <i>be white</i>	<i>albo-</i> , N. <i>albus</i>	<i>vestī-re</i> , <i>dress</i>	<i>vesti-</i> , N. <i>vestis</i>
<i>miserē-rī</i> , <i>pity</i>	<i>misero-</i> , N. <i>miser</i>	<i>gestī-re</i> , <i>flutter</i>	<i>gestu-</i> , N. <i>gestus</i>

366. These present verb stems are formed by adding the suffix *-io-*, *-ie-* to the noun stem: as *\*fugā-iō*, *I flee*; the *i* between two vowels was dropped (153, 2) and the final vowel of noun stem was often contracted with the ending (118, 3). The noun stem ending is often slightly modified.

367. In a half a dozen denominatives from stems in *-u-* the *u* of the noun stem remains without modification, and is not contracted with the variable vowel (116, *c*): these are, *acuere*, *sharpen* (*acu-*), *metuere*, *fear*, *statuere*, *set*, *tribuere*, *assign*; *arguere*, *make clear*, *bātuere*, *beat*.

368. Verbs in *-āre* are by far the most numerous class of denominatives; they are usually transitive; but deponents often express condition, sometimes occupation: as, *dominārī*, *lord it, play the lord*; *aquārī*, *get oneself water*. Most verbs in *-īre* also are transitive; those in *-ēre* usually denote a state: as, *calēre*, *be warm*; but some are causative: as, *monēre*, *remind*.

369. Many denominative verbs in *-āre* contain a noun suffix which is not actually found in the noun itself; such suffixes are: *-co-*, *-cin-*, *-lo-*, *-er-*, *-ro-*, *-to-*, &c.: as,

*-co-*: *albi-cāre*, *be white* (*\*albi-co-*); *velli-cāre*, *pluck* (*\*velli-co-*, *plucker*). *-cin-*: *latrō-cinārī*, *be a robber* (*latrōn-*); *sermō-cinārī*, *discourse* (*sermōn-*). *-lo-*: *grātu-lārī*, *give one joy* (*\*grātu-lo-*); *vi-olāre*, *harm* (*\*vi-olo-*); *heiu-lārī*, *cry 'heia'* (*\*heiu-lo-*). *-er-*: *mod-erārī*, *check* (*\*mod-es-*, 236). *-ro-*: *tole-rāre*, *endure* (*\*tole-ro-*); *flag-rāre*, *blaze* (*\*flag-ro-*). *-to-*: *dēbili-tāre*, *lame* (*\*dēbili-to-*); *dubi-tāre*, *doubt* (*\*dubi-to-*).

370. Many denominatives in *-āre* are indirect compounds (377), often from compound noun stems which are not actually found. So, particularly, when the first part is a preposition, or the second is from the root *f a c-*, *make*, *a g-*, *drive, do*, or *c a p-*, *take*: as,

*opi-tul-ārī*, *bear help* (*opitulo-*); *suf-fōc-āre*, *suffocate* (*\*suf-fōc-o-*, *fauci-*); *aedi-fic-āre* (*housebuild*), *build* (*\*aedific-* or *\*aedifico-*, *house-builder*); *signi-fic-āre*, *give token* (*\*significo-*); *fūm-ig-āre*, *make smoke* (*\*fūmigo-*, *smoker*, *fūmo-*,  $\sqrt{a g-}$ ); *nāv-ig-āre*, *sail*, and *rēm-ig-āre*, *row* (*nāvi-*, *ship*, and *rēmo-*, *oar*); *mīt-ig-āre*, *make mild* (*mīti-*); *iūr-ig-āre*, commonly *iūr-g-āre*, *quarrel* (*iūr-*); *pūr-ig-āre*, commonly *pūr-g-āre*, *clean* (*pūro-*); *gnār-ig-āre*, *tell* (*gnāro-*, *narrāre*, 169, 2; 133, 1); *anti-cip-āre*, *take beforehand* (*\*anticipo-*, *ante*,  $\sqrt{c a p-}$ ); *oc-cup-āre*, *seize* (*\*occupo-*); *re-cup-er-āre*, *get back* (*\*recupero-*).

371. Many verbs in *-tāre* (*-sāre*), or *-tārī* (*-sārī*), express frequent, intense, or sometimes attempted action. These are called *Frequentatives* or *Intensives*; they are formed from perfect participle stems; but stems in *-ā-to-* become *-i-to-*. as,

*cant-āre*, *sing* (*canto-*); *cess-āre*, *loiter* (*cesso-*); *amplex-ārī*, *embrace* (*amplexo-*); *habit-āre*, *live* (*habito-*); *pollicit-ārī*, *make overtures* (*pollicito-*); *dormīt-āre*, *be sleepy* (*dormīto-*); *neg-itāre*, *keep denying* (for *\*negā-tāre*, with suffix *-i-tāre*, 910).

372. Some frequentatives in *-tāre* are formed from the present stem of a verb in *-ere*; the formative vowel before *-tāre* becomes *i*: as,

*agi-tāre*, *shake* (*age-re*); *flui-tāre*, *float* (*flue-re*); *nōsci-tāre*, *recognize* (*nōsce-re*); *quaeri-tāre*, *keep seeking* (*quaere-re*); *scisci-tārī*, *enquire* (*scisce-re*); *vēndi-tāre*, *try to sell* (*vēnde-re*).

373. A few frequentatives add *-tā-* to the perfect participle stem: as, *ācti-tāre*, *act often* (*ācto-*); *facti-tāre*, *do repeatedly* (*facto-*); *lēcti-tāre*, *read again and again* (*lēcto-*); *ūcti-tāre*, *anoint often* (*ūcto-*). From a frequentative another frequentative is sometimes derived: as, *dict-āre*, *dictate*, *dicti-tāre*, *keep asserting* (*dicto-*).

374. Some verbs are found only as frequentatives: as, *gust-āre*, *taste* (*\*gusto-*,  $\sqrt{\text{gus-}}$ , *taste*); *put-āre*, *think* (*puto-*,  $\sqrt{\text{pu-}}$ , *clean*); *aegrōt-āre*, *be ill* (*aegrōto-*).

375. A few verbs in *-uriō*, *-urire*, express desire; such are called *Desideratives*: as, *ēss-urire* or *ēs-urire*, *want to eat* (*edere*, *ēsse*). A few in *-ssō*, *-ssere*, express earnest action; such are called *Meditatives*: as, *lacē-ssō*, *lacē-ssere*, *provoke*.

## COMPOSITION.

376. In compounds, the fundamental word is usually the second, which has its meaning qualified by the first.

377. A DIRECT COMPOUND is one formed directly from two parts: as, *con-iug-*, N. *coniūnx*, *yoke-fellow* (*com-*, *together*,  $\sqrt{\text{iu g-}}$ , *yoke*); *con-iungere*, *join together* (*com-*, *iungere*); an INDIRECT COMPOUND is one formed by the addition of a suffix to a direct compound: as, *iūdic-io-*, N. *iūdicium*, *trial* (*iūdic-*): *iūdicā-re*, *judge* (*iūdic-*).

378. A REAL COMPOUND is a word whose stem is formed from two stems, or an inseparable prefix and a stem, fused into one stem; an APPARENT COMPOUND is formed by the juxtaposition of an inflected word with another inflected word, a preposition, or an adverb.

### I. COMPOSITION OF NOUNS.

#### (A.) REAL COMPOUNDS.

##### FORM OF COMPOUNDS.

379. If the first part is a noun, its stem is taken: as, *Ahēno-barbus*, *Redbeard*, *Barbarossa*; usually with weakening of a stem vowel (103-105): as, *auritex*, *jeweller* (*auro-*). On other changes of the final vowel in the first member of compounds, see 174. Sometimes with disappearance of a syllable (179): as, *\*venēni-ficus*, *venē-ficus*, *poisoner* (*venēno-*); or of a vowel (111): as, *man-ceps*, *contractor* (*manu-*); particularly before a vowel (119): as, *magn-animus*, *great-souled* (*magno-*). Consonant stems are often extended by *i* before a consonant: as, *mōri-gerus*, *complaisant* (*mōr-*).

380. Stems in *-s-*, including those in *-er-*, *-or-* and *-ōr-* (236), are sometimes compounded as above (379): as, *nemori-vagus*, *woodranger*; *honōri-ficus*, *complimentary*; but usually they drop the suffix and take *i*: as, *opi-fex*, *workman* (*oper-*); *foedi-fragus*, *truce-breaker* (*foeder-*); *volni-ficus*, *wounding* (*volner-*); *mūni-ficus*, *generous* (*mūner-*); *terri-ficus*, *awe-inspiring* (*terrōr-*); *horri-fex*, *dreadful*, *horri-sonus*, *awful-sounding* (*horrōr-*).

381. The second part, which often has weakening of the vowel (102), is sometimes a bare root used as a stem (199), oftener a root with a formative suffix; or a noun stem, sometimes with its stem ending modified: as, iū-dic-, N. iūdex, *juror* (√dic-, *declare*); causi-dic-o-, N. causicus, *pleader* (209); in-gen-io-, N. ingenium, *disposition* (√gen-, *beget*, 219); con-tāg-iōn-, N. contāgiō, *touching together* (√tag-, *touch*, 227); im-berb-i-, N. imberbis, *beardless* (barbā-).

MEANING OF COMPOUNDS.

382. DETERMINATIVES are compounds in which the second part keeps its original meaning, though determined or modified by the first part. The meaning of a determinative may often be best expressed by two words.

383. (1.) The first part of a determinative may be an adjective, an adverb, a preposition, or an inseparable prefix; the second part is a noun: as,

lāti-fundium, i.e. lāti fundī, *broad acres*; prīvi-lēgium, i.e. prīva lēx, *special act*; alti-sonāns, i.e. altē sonāns, *high-sounding*; con-discipulus, i.e. cum alterō discipulus, *fellow-pupil*; per-magnus, i.e. valdē magnus, *very great*; in-dignus, i.e. nōn dignus, *unworthy*.

384. (2.) The first part of a determinative may represent the oblique case of a noun, generally a substantive; the second part is a noun or verb stem. These compounds are called *Objectives*: as,

Accusative of direct object (1132), armi-ger, i.e. quī arma gerit, *armour-bearer*; dative of indirect object (1208), man-tēle, i.e. manibus tēla, *handkerchief, napkin*; genitive (1227), sōl-stitium, i.e. sōlis statiō, *solstice*; ablative instrumental (1300), tubi-cen, i.e. quī tubā canit, *trumpeter*; locative (1331), Troiu-gena, i.e. Troiae nātus, *Troy-born*; ablative locative (1350), nocti-vagus, *night-wandering*; monti-vagus, *mountain-ranging*.

385. POSSESSIVES are adjective compounds in which the meaning of the second part is changed. The second part of a possessive is always formed from a substantive, qualified by the noun, adverb, or inseparable prefix of the first part, and the whole expresses an attribute which something *has*: as,

longi-manus, *long arms, long-armed*; miseri-cors, *tender-hearted*; bi-linguis, *two-tongued*; magn-animus, *greatheart, great-hearted*; im-berbis, *beardless*.

(B.) APPARENT COMPOUNDS.

386. Apparent Compounds are formed:

387. (1.) By two nouns combined, one with an unchanging case ending, the other with full inflections: as, aquae-ductus, *aqueduct*; senātūs-cōnsultum, *decree of the senate*; pater-familiās, *father of a family*; vēri-similis, *like the truth*; in these words, aquae, senātūs, familiās, and vēri are genitives, and remain genitives, while the other part of the compound is declinable.

388. (2.) By a substantive with an adjective habitually agreeing with it, both part; being declined: as, *rēs pūblica*, *the common-weal*; *rēs gestae*, *exploits*; *iūs iūrandum*, *oath*; *pecūniae repetundae*, *money claim*.

389. (3.) By nouns, chiefly substantives, in the same case placed loosely side by side and making one idea. The two words may be used: (a.) Copulatively: as, *ūsus-frūctus*, *use and enjoyment*; *pactum-conventum*, *bargain and covenant*; *duo-decim*, *two and ten, twelve*; or (b.) Appositively: one word explaining the other (1045): as, *Iuppiter*, *Jove the Father* (94; 133); *Mārspiter*, *Mars the Father*, for *Mārs pater*.

390. (4.) From an original combination of an oblique case with a preposition: as, *prōcōnsul*, *proconsul*, from *prō cōnsule*, *for a consul*; *ēgregius*, *select*, from *ē grege*, *out of the herd*; *dēlīrus*, *astray, mad*, from *dē līrā*, *out of the furrow*.

## II. COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

### (A.) REAL COMPOUNDS.

391. Real Compounds are direct compounds of a verb with a preposition; the root vowel or diphthong of the verb is often weakened (102): as,

*per-agere*, *put through, accomplish*; *ab-igere*, *drive away*; *ex-quirere*, *seek out*. The prefix, which was originally a separate adverb modifying the verb, is in poetry sometimes separated from the verb by another word; the disyllabic prepositions in particular often remain as juxtaposed adverbs (396).

392. Some prepositions are inseparable, that is, used only in composition: *ambi-*, *round*, *an-*, *up*, *dis-*, *in two, apart*, *por-*, *towards*, *red-*, *re-*, *back*, *sēd-*, *sē-*, *by oneself, away*: as, *amb-ire*, *go round to*; *an-hēlāre*, *breathe up*; *dis-pellere*, *drive apart*; *por-rigere*, *stretch forth*; *red-dere*, *give back*; *sē-iungere*, *separate*.

### (B.) APPARENT COMPOUNDS.

393. Apparent Compounds are formed by the juxtaposition of:

394. (1.) A verb with a verb: *faciō* and *fiō* are added to present stems, mostly of intransitive verbs in *-ēre*; the *-e-* of the first verb is sometimes long, and sometimes short (130, 5): as, *calē-facere*, *make warm* (*calēre*); *excandē-facere*, *make blaze* (*candēre*); *madē-facere*, *make wet* (*madēre*). In these apparent compounds, the accent of *faciō* remains the same as in the simple verb: as, *calēfācis*.

395. (2.) A substantive with a verb: as, *anim-advertere*, *pay heed to*, *anim-advertere*; *vēnum-dare*, or *vēndere*, *sell*, *vēnum dare*; *vēn-ire*, *be sold*, *vēnum ire*; *lucrī-facere*, *make gain*, *lucrī facere*; *manū-mittere*, *set free*.

396. (2) An adverb with a verb: as, *circum-dare*, *put round*; *satis-facere*, *satis-dare*, *give satisfaction*; *intro-ire*, *go inside*; *mālle*, *prefer*, for *magis velle* (170, 2); *nōlō*, *be unwilling*, for *ne volō*; *ne-scire*, *hau-scire*, *not know*.

### C. INFLECTION.

397. INFLECTION is the change which nouns, pronouns, and verbs undergo, to indicate their relation in a sentence.

The inflection of a noun or pronoun is often called *Declension*, and that of a verb, *Conjugation*.

#### (A.) INFLECTION OF THE NOUN.

398. The noun or pronoun is inflected by attaching case endings to the stem.

The endings, which are called case endings for brevity, indicate number as well as case, and serve also to distinguish gender words from neuters in the nominative and accusative singular of some stems, and of all plurals. These endings are nearly the same for stems of all kinds.

#### THE STEM.

399. The stem contains the meaning of the noun. Noun stems are arranged in the following order: (1.) stems in *-ā-*, in *-o-*, in a consonant, or in *-i-*; these are substantive, including proper names, or adjective; (2.) stems in *-u-* or *-ē-*; these are substantive only, and include no proper names.

400. In some instances, a final stem vowel is retained before a case ending which begins with a vowel: as, *urbi-um*, *ācri-a*, *cornu-a*, *portu-ī*, *portu-um* (116, *c*); in others the stem vowel blends inseparably with the vowel of the case ending: as, *mēnsīs*, *dominīs* (108, *a*).

401. Some nouns have more than one form of the stem: as, *sēdēs* (476); *femur*, *iecur* (489); *vās*, *mēnsīs* (492); *vīrus*, *volgus* (493); *iter*, *nix*, *senex*, &c. (500); *vīs* (518); *caedēs* (523); *famēs*, *plēbēs* (524); *domus* (594); *angiportus*, &c. (595). Many nouns have a consonant stem in the singular, and an *-ī-* stem in the plural: see 516; most substantives in *-iē-* or *-tiē-* have a collateral form in *-iā-* or *-tiā-* (604). Some adjectives have two different stems: as, *hilarus*, *hilara*, *hilarum*, and *hilaris*, *hilare*; *exanimus* and *exanimis*.

#### GENDER.

402. There are two genders, *Masculine* and *Feminine*. Masculine and feminine nouns are called *Gender nouns*. Nouns without gender are called *Neuter*.

403. Gender is, properly speaking, the distinction of sex. In Latin, a great many things without life have gender in grammar, and are masculine or feminine.



404. Some classes of substantives may be brought under general heads of signification, as below, like the names of rivers and winds (405), which are usually of the masculine gender, or of plants (407), which are usually of the feminine. When the gender cannot be determined thus, it must be learned from the special rules for the several stems and their nominatives.

### GENDER OF SOME CLASSES OF SUBSTANTIVES.

#### MASCULINES.

405. Names of male beings, rivers, winds, and mountains, are masculine : as,

Caesar, Gāius, Sūlla, men's names ; pater, *father* ; erus, *master* ; scriba, *scrivener* ; Tiberis, *the Tiber* ; Aquilō, *a Norther* ; Lūcrētīlis, *Mt. Lucretilis*.

406. The river names : Allia, Dūria, Sagra, Lēthē, and Styx are feminine. Also the mountain names Alpēs, plural, *the Alps*, and some Greek names of mountains in -a or -ē : as, Aetna, *Mt. Etna* ; Rhodopē, *a Thracian range*. A few are neuter, as Sōracte.

#### FEMININES.

407. Names of female beings, plants, flowers, shrubs, and trees, are feminine : as,

Gāia, Glycerium, women's names ; mālus, *apple-tree* ; quercus, *oak* ; ilex, *holm-oak* ; abiēs, *fir*.

408. Masculine are : bōlētus, *mushroom*, carduus, *thistle*, dūmī, plural, *brambles*, intibus, *endive*, iuncus, *rush*, oleaster, *bastard olive*, rubus, *bramble*, rumex, *sorrel*, scirpus, *bulrush*, and rarely ficus, *fig*. Also some of Greek origin : as, acanthus, amāracus, asparagus, and crocus. Neuter are : apium, *parsley*, balsamum, *balsam-tree*, rōbur, *heart of oak*, and some names with stems in -er- (573).

#### MOBILE, COMMON, AND EPICENE NOUNS.

409. MOBILE NOUNS have different forms to distinguish sex : as, Iūlius, *a man*, Iūlia, *a woman*, Iūlia, *Julia* ; cervus, *stag*, cerva, *hind* ; socer, *father-in-law*, socrus, *mother-in-law* ; victor, *conqueror*, victrix, *conqueress*. Adjectives 'of three endings' (611), belong to this class.

410. Some nouns have one ending, but are applicable to either sex. Such are said to be of *Common Gender* : as, adulēscēns, *young man or young woman* ; dux, *leader* ; infāns, *baby, child* ; and many other consonant stems or stems in -i-, denoting persons. Adjectives 'of two endings' or 'of one ending' (611), belong to this class.

411. EPICENES have one ending and one grammatical gender, though applicable to animals of either sex. Thus, aquila, *eagle*, is feminine, though it may denote a *he-eagle* as well as a *she-eagle* : anatēs, *ducks*, feminine, includes *drakes*.

#### NEUTERS.

412. Infinitives, words and expressions quoted or explained, and letters of the alphabet, are neuter : as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

420. Town names and a few appellatives have also a case denoting the place where, called the *Locative*. Masculine stems in -o- and some Greek stems with other endings have still another form used in addressing a person or thing, called the *Vocative*.

421. The stem of a noun is best seen in the genitive; in the genitive plural it is preserved without change, except that o of -o- stems is lengthened (123). In dictionaries the stem ending is indicated by the genitive singular, thus: -ae, -ī, -is, -ūs (-ěī), indicate respectively stems in -ā-, -o-, a consonant or -i-, -u-, and -ē-, as follows:

GENITIVE SINGULAR.	GENITIVE PLURAL.	STEMS IN.
-ae, mēnsae, <i>table</i>	-ārum, mēnsā-rum	-ā-, mēnsā-, N. mēnsa
-ī, dominī, <i>master</i>	-ōrum, dominō-rum	-o-, domino-, N. dominus
-is, rēgis, <i>king</i>	-cons. um, rēg-um	-consonant, rēg-, N. rēx
-is, cīvis, <i>citizen</i>	-ium, cīvi-um	-i-, cīvi-, N. cīvis
-ūs, portūs, <i>port</i>	-uum, portu-um	-u-, portu-, N. portus
(-ěī, rěī), <i>thing</i>	(-ērum, rē-rum)	-ē, rē-, N. rēs

422. Gender nominatives usually add -s to the stem: as, servo-s or servu-s, *slave*, rēx (164, 1), cīvi-s, portu-s, rē-s. But stems in -ā- or in a continuous consonant (-l-, -n-, -r-, or -s-) have no -s: as, mēnsa, cōnsul, *consul*, flāmen, *special priest*, pater, *father*, flōs, *flower*.

423. Neuters have the nominative and accusative alike; in the singular the stem is used: as nōmen, *name*; or a shortened stem: as, exemplar, *pattern*; but stems in -o- take -m: as, aevo-m or aevu-m, *age*. In the plural -a is always used: as, rēgna, *kingdoms*, nōmina, *cornua*, *horns*. For -s in adjectives 'of one ending,' see 612.

424. Gender accusatives singular add -m to the stem: as, mēnsa-m, servo-m or servu-m, nāvi-m, *ship*, portu-m, die-m. The consonant stems have the ending -em: as, rēg-em; most substantive stems in -i- and all adjectives also drop -i- and take -em: as, nāv-em, trist-em, *sad*. In the plural, gender stems add -s before which the vowel is long: as, mēnsā-s, servō-s, rēgē-s, nāvī-s or nāvē-s, portū-s, rē-s.

425. The ablative singular usually ends in the long vowel of the stem: as, mēnsā, dominō, nāvī, portū, rē. The ablative of consonant stems usually has -e (rarely -ī-, see 502): as, patre, *father*; and that of substantive -i- stems has -e more commonly than -ī: as, nāve.

426. The ablative singular of -ā- and -o- stems ended anciently in -ād and -ōd respectively: as, PRAIDAD, PREIVATOD; that of consonant stems in -īd: as, AIRID, COVENTIONID. But -d is almost entirely confined to inscriptions and disappeared early (149).

427. The genitive plural adds -rum to -ā-, -o-, and -ē- stems: as, mēnsā-rum, dominō-rum, rē-rum; and -um to consonant stems, -i- stems, and -u- stems: as, rēg-um, cīvi-um, portu-um.

428. The dative and ablative plural are always alike: stems in -ā- and -o- take -is, which blends with the stem vowel (400): as, mēnsīs, dominīs; other stems have -bus, before which consonant stems are extended by ī: as, rēgi-bus, nāvī-bus, portu-bus or porti-bus, rē-bus.

429. Some pronouns and a few adjectives have some peculiar case endings; see 618-694.

430. Many nouns are defective in case.

Thus, many monosyllables have no genitive plural: *as*, *aes*, *copper*, *cor*, *heart*, *cōs*, *whetstone*, *dōs*, *dowry*, *ōs*, *face*, *pāx*, *peace*, *pix*, *pitch*, *rōs*, *dew*, *sāl*, *salt*, *lūx*, *light*; many words have no genitive, dative, or ablative plural: *as*, *hiemps*, *winter*; especially neuters: *as*, *fār*, *spelt*, *fel*, *gall*, *mel*, *honey*, *pūs*, *matter*, *rūs*, *country*, *tūs*, *frankincense*. Many words in -tu- (-su-) have only the ablative (235). For -ē- stems, see 600. Other words more or less defective are *exlēx*, *exspēs*, *fās* and *nefās*, *infitiās*, *inquiēs*, *instar*, *luēs*, *nēmō*, *opis* and *vicis* genitives, *pondō* and *sponte* ablatives, *secus*, *vīs*. Many adjectives 'of one ending' want the nominative and accusative neuter plural and genitive plural.

431. Some adjectives are altogether indeclinable: *as*, *frūgī*, *thrifty*, an old dative; *nēquam*, *naughty*, an old accusative; *quot*, *how many*; *tot*, *so many*; and most numerals (637). These adjectives are attached to any case of a substantive without varying their own forms.

## STEMS IN -ā-.

### The First Declension.

Genitive singular -ae, genitive plural -ā-rum.

432. Stems in -ā- include substantives and adjectives; both substantives and adjectives are feminine.

433. Names of males are masculine (405): *as*, *scrība*, *writer*; also *Hadria*, *the Adriatic*, and rarely *damma*, *deer*, and *talpa*, *mole*.

434. The nominative of stems in -ā- ends in the shortened stem vowel -a.

435. Stems in -ā- are declined as follows:

Example Stem	<i>mēnsa</i> , <i>table</i> , <i>mēnsā</i> -, F.		Stem and case endings
Singular			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mēnsa</i>	<i>table</i> , <i>a</i> (or <i>the</i> ) <i>table</i>	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mēnsae</i>	<i>a table's</i> , <i>of a table</i>	-ae
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mēnsae</i>	<i>to</i> or <i>for a table</i>	-ae
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mēnsam</i>	<i>a table</i>	-am
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mēnsā</i>	<i>from</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>by a table</i>	-ā
Plural			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mēnsae</i>	<i>tables</i> (or <i>the</i> ) <i>tables</i>	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mēnsārum</i>	<i>tables'</i> , <i>of tables</i>	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mēnsīs</i>	<i>to</i> or <i>for tables</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mēnsās</i>	<i>tables</i>	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mēnsīs</i>	<i>from</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>by tables</i>	-īs

## SINGULAR CASES.

436. -ā- of the stem was shortened in the nominative and accusative singular at an early period (130, 132). A few apparent examples of the nominative in -ā, found in the oldest writers, seem due to metrical causes: as, *aquilā* (Enn.). But -ā occurs in Greek proper names (445). A couple of old masculine nominatives in -ās are quoted (422): *pāricidās*, *murderer*, and *hosticapās*, *taker of enemies*. In the accusative singular -ām occurs once: *inimicitiam* (Enn.).

437. The genitive sometimes ends (1.) in -āī in poetry: as, *aulāī*, *of the hall*; *pictāī*, *embroidered*; (2.) in -ās: as, *molās*, *of a mill*. This genitive is rare, but was always kept up in the word *familiās* with *pater* or *māter*, sometimes with *filius* or *fīlia*: *pater familiās*, *the goodman*, *māter familiās*, *the housewife*. But *pater familiae*, or in the plural *patrēs familiārum*, is equally common.

438. Town names and a few appellatives have a locative case in -ae: as, *Rōmae*, *at Rome, in Rome*; *militiae*, *in war, in the field, in the army*.

## PLURAL CASES.

439. Compounds ending with -cola, *inhabiting*, and -gena, *born*, and patronymics, sometimes have the genitive plural in -ūm in poetry: as, *caelicolūm*, *of occupants of heaven*; *Graiugenūm*, *of Greek-born men*; *Aeneadūm*, *of Aeneas's sons*; also names of peoples: as, *Lapithūm*, *of the Lapithae*. With these last -ūm occurs even in prose: as, *Crotōniātūm*, *of the Crotona people*. Others in -ūm are *drachmūm*, *amphorūm*.

440. In the dative and ablative plural, -eis sometimes occurs (443): as, *tuēis ingrātieis*, *against your will* (Plaut.). Nouns in -ia have rarely a single ī: as, *pecūnis*, *by moneys* (Cic.); *taenīs*, *with fillets* (Verg.); *nōnis Iūnis*, *on the fifth of June* (Cic.). See 24.

441. In the dative and ablative plural, words in -āia, or plural -āiae, have -āīs, and those in -ēia have -ēīs (127, 7): as *KAL. MAIS*, *on the calends of May* (inscr.); *Bāīs*, *at Bajae* (Hor.); *plēbēīs*, *plebeian*.

442. The dative and ablative plural sometimes end in -ābus, particularly in *deābus*, *goddesses*, and *filiābus*, *daughters*, to distinguish them from *deīs*, *gods*, and *filiīs*, *sons*. *ambae*, *both*, and *duae*, *two*, regularly have *ambābus* and *duābus*.

443. Other case forms are found in inscriptions, as follows:

G. -ai, which may be monosyllabic or disyllabic in pronunciation: *PVLCHRAI*; *LAVERNAI*; -āēs, after 80 B.C., chiefly in proper names, mostly Greek: *HERAES*; rarely in appellatives: *DOMINAE*; -ēs: *MINERVES*; -ā, *VESTA*; *COIRA*, i. e. *Cūrae*. D. -ai, in all periods (96): *FILIAI*; -ā: *FORTVNA*; -ē (96): *FORTVNE*. Ac. -a (61): *TAVRASIA*; *MAGNA SAPIENTIA*. Ab. -ād (426): *PRAIDAD*. Loc. -ai: *ROMAI*. Plural: N. -ai (96): *TABELAI DATAI*; -ā, rare: *MATRONA*; -ē, rare and provincial (96): *MVSTE*, i. e. *mystae*. D. and Ab. -eis, very often (98): *SCRIBEIS*; D. -ās, once: *DEVAS CORNISCAS*, i. e. *divis Corniscis*. Ab. -ēs once (98): *NVGES*, i. e. *nūgis*.

## GREEK NOUNS.

444. Greek appellatives always take a Latin form in the dative singular and in the plural, and usually throughout: thus, *poēta*, M., *poet*, and *aula*, F., *court*, are declined like *mēnsa*. Masculines have sometimes a nominative -ēs and accusative -ēn: as, *anagnōstēs*, *reader*, *anagnōstēn*; rarely an ablative -ē: as, *sophistē*, *sophist*. Greek feminines in -ē sometimes have Greek forms in late writers: as, N. *grammaticē*, *philology*, G. *grammaticēs*, Ac. *grammaticēn*, Ab. *grammaticē* (Quintil.).

445. Greek proper names sometimes have the following forms. Nominative masculine -ās, -ēs: as, Prūsiās, Atrīdēs; feminine -ā: as, Gelā, Phaedrā; -ē: as, Circē. Genitive feminine -ēs: as, Circēs. Accusative masculine -ān, -dēn: as, Aenēān, Pēlidēn; feminine -ēn: as, Circēn. Ablative feminine -ē: as, Tisiphonē. Vocative -ā or -a: as, Atrīdā, Atrīda, Thyesta; -tē: as, Boōtē; -dē: as, Aeacidē.

## STEMS IN -o-.

### The Second Declension.

Genitive singular -ī, genitive plural -ō-rum.

446. Stems in -o- include substantives and adjectives, masculine or neuter.

447. Most names of plants in -us are feminine (407); also the following: alvos or alvus, belly, colus, distaff, domus, house, humus, ground, vannus, fan.

448. The nominative of masculines ends, including the stem vowel, in -o-s, or usually -u-s; some end in -r; neuters end in -o-m, or usually -u-m.

449. (r.) Stems in -o- with the nominative in -us or -um are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	dominus, <i>master</i> , domino-, M.	rēgnum, <i>kingdom</i> , rēgno-, Ne.	Stem and case endings	
			M.	Ne.
Singular				
<i>Nom.</i>	dominus, <i>a (or the) master</i>	rēgnum	-us	-um
<i>Gen.</i>	dominī, <i>a master's</i>	rēgnī	-ī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	dominō, <i>to or for a master</i>	rēgnō	-ō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	dominum, <i>a master [master</i>	rēgnum	-um	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	dominō, <i>from, with, or by a</i>	rēgnō	-ō	-ō
<i>Voc.</i>	domine, <i>master</i>		-e	
Plural				
<i>Nom.</i>	dominī, <i>(the) masters</i>	rēgna	-ī	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	dominōrum, <i>of masters</i>	rēgnōrum	-ōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	dominīs, <i>to or for masters</i>	rēgnīs	-īs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	dominōs, <i>masters [masters</i>	rēgna	-ōs	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	dominīs, <i>from, with, or by</i>	rēgnīs	-īs	-īs

450. deus, *god*, is declined as follows: N. deus, G. deī, D. and Ab. deō, Ac. deum. Plural: N. deī, dī, commonly dī, G. deōrum or deūm, D. and Ab. deīs, dīs, commonly dīs, Ac. deōs.

451. (2.) Stems in -o- with the nominative in -r or in -āius, -ēius, or -ōius are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	puer, boy, puero-, M.	ager, field, agro-, M.	Pompēius, Pompey, Pompēio-, M.
Singular			
Nom.	puer, a (or the) boy	ager	Pompēius
Gen.	puerī, a boy's, of a boy	agrī	Pompēī
Dat.	puerō, to or for a boy	agrō	Pompēiō
Acc.	puerum, a boy	agrū	Pompēium
Abl.	puerō, from, with, or by a boy	agrō	Pompēiō
Voc.			Pompēī, Pompēī
Plural			
Nom.	puerī, (the) boys	agrī	Pompēī
Gen.	puerōrum, boys', of boys	agrōrum	Pompēiōrum
Dat.	puerīs, to or for boys	agrīs	Pompēīs
Acc.	puerōs, boys	agrōs	Pompēiōs
Abl.	puerīs, from, with, or by boys	agrīs	Pompēīs

## SINGULAR CASES.

452. -us and -um were originally -os and -om. But -us was used in the earliest times, -um somewhat later, and both became prevalent between 218 and 55 B.C. (107, c). After u or v, however, the -os and -om were retained till toward 50 A.D. (107, c); also after qu; but -cus and -cum often displaced -quos and -quom (157): as, equos, equom, or ecus, ecum, horse; antiquos, antiquom, or anticus, anticum, ancient. In the vocative -e was always used, and is retained by Plautus in puere, thou boy.

453. Words in -rus with a long penult, as, sevērus, stern, and the following substantives with a short penult are declined like dominus (449):

erus, master

iūniperus, juniper

numerus, number

umerus, shoulder

uterus, womb

For adjective stems in -ro- with nominative -rus, see 615.

454. Masculine stems in -ro- preceded by a short vowel or a mute, except those above (453), drop -os in the nominative, and have no vocative: as, stem puero-, N. puer, boy (111, b). Most masculines in -ro- have a vowel before r only in the nominative -er (111, b): as agro-, N. agrer. But in compounds ending in -fer and -ger, carrying, having, and the following, the vowel before -r is a part of the stem, and is found in all the cases:

adulter, Liber, paramour, Liber

puer, vir, boy, man

gener, socer, son-in-law, father-in-law

liberī, vesper, children, evening

For Mulciber, Hibēr, and Celtibēr, see the dictionary; for adjective stems in -ro- with nominative -r, see 616. Once socerus (Pl.).

455. *nihilum*, *nothing*, usually drops -um in the nominative and accusative, becoming *nihil* or *nīl*, and similarly *nōn*, *not*, may be for *noenum*, *naught* (99) *famul* is used for *famulus*, *slave*, by Ennius and Lucretius, once each (111, b).

456. Substantives ending in -ius or -ium (but never adjectives), have commonly a single -ī in the genitive singular: as,

Vergilius, G. Vergīlī (87); filius, son, G. filī; cōnūbium, marriage, G. cōnūbī.

457. Vergil has once a genitive -iī, fluvīī, *river's*. Propertius has -iī two or three times; with Ovid, Seneca, and later writers, -iī is common: as, gladiī, *of a sword*; even in proper names, which were the last to take -iī: as, Tarquiniī; but family names almost always retain a single -ī. Locatives have -iī: as, Iconiī (Cic.).

458. Proper names ending in -āius, -ēius, or -ōius have -āī, -ēī, or -ōī in the genitive and vocative singular and nominative plural, and -āis, -ēis, or -ōis in the dative and ablative plural (127, 7): as,

Gāius, G., V., and N. Pl. Gāī, D. and Ab. Pl. Gāis; Pompēī, Pompēis; Bōī, Bōis. In verse -ēī of the vocative is sometimes made one syllable (120): as, Pompēī; Volteī (Hor.).

459. Latin proper names in -ius have the vocative in -ī only: as,

Vergilius, V. Vergīlī; Mercurius, V. Mercūrī (87). So, also, filius, filī, *son*; genius, genī, *good angel*; volturius, volturī, *vulture*; meus, mī, *my*.

460. Town names and a few appellatives have a locative case in -ī: as, Ephesī, *in Ephesus*; humī, *on the ground*; bellī, *in war*.

#### PLURAL CASES.

461. In the nominative plural masculine, -ei sometimes occurs (465): as, nātei geminei, *twins born* (Plaut.); -eis or -īs is rare (465): as, Sardeis, *Sardians*; oculīs, *eyes*; not infrequently hīsce, *these here* (Plaut.); masculine stems in -io- have rarely a single -ī: as, filī, *sons*. For -āī, -ēī, or -ōī, see 458. The nominative and accusative plural of neuters ended anciently in -ā (130, 2). But -ā was shortened at an early period.

462. In the common genitive plural -ōrum, the -o- of the stem is lengthened (123). A genitive plural in -ūm (or, after v, in -ōm) is common from dīvos, dīvus, and deus, *god*; from dēnārius, *denar*, modius, *peck*, nummus, *money*, sēstertius, *sesterce*, and talentum, *talent*, with numerals; and from cardinals and distributives (641): as, dīvōm, dīvūm, deūm; mille sēstertiūm; ducentūm; binūm. The u was originally long (132); but it was shortened before 100 A.D.

463. Other masculine substantives have occasionally this genitive: as, liberūm, *of children*; particularly in set phrases and in verse: as, centuria fabrūm, *century of mechanics*; Graiūm, *of Greeks*. With neuter substantives, as oppidūm, for oppidōrum, *of towns*, and with adjectives it is rare.

464. In the dative and ablative plural, -eis is rare (98): as, Epidamnieis (Plaut.). Stems in -io- have rarely a single ī: as, filīs, *for sons*. For -āis, -ēis, or -ōis, see 458. ambō, *both*, and duo, *two*, have ambōbus and duōbus (640).



465. Other case forms are found in inscriptions as follows :

N. -os, -om, with o retained (107, c): FILIOS, TRIBVNOS; POCOLOM; in proper names -o (66): CORNELIO; -u, rare: LECTV; -is, or -i, for -ius (135, 2): CAECILIS; CLAVDI; neuter -o (61): POCOLO. G. oldest form -ī: VRBANI; -ei, from 146 B.C. to Augustus: POPVLEI; CONLEGEI; -iī from stems in -io- not before Tiberius: COLLEGII. Ac. -om (107 c): VOLCANOM; -o (61): OPTVMO VIRO; -u: GREMIV. Ab. -od, not after 186 B.C. (426): POPLICOD, PREIVATOD. Plural: N. -ei, always common (98): VIREI; FILEI; -ēs, -eis, -īs (461): ATILIES; COQVES; LEIBEREIS, i.e. liberī; MAGISTREIS; MAGISTRIS; -ē, rare: PLOIRVME, i.e. plūrumī. G. -ōm or -ō (61) ROMANOM; ROMANO; -ōro (61): DVONORO. D. and Ab. -eis, the only form down to about 130 B.C. (98): ANTIQVEIS; PROXSVMEIS; -ēs, twice: CAVATVRINES.

#### GREEK NOUNS.

466. Greek stems in -o- are generally declined like Latin nouns, but in the singular sometimes have -os in the nominative, -on in the nominative or accusative neuter, rarely -ū in the genitive, or -ō in the feminine ablative. Plural, nominative sometimes -oe, masculine or feminine, and genitive, chiefly in book-titles, -ōn: as,

Nominative *Īlios*; *Īlion* or *Īlium*. Genitive *Menandrū*, of *Menander*. Ablative feminine adjective *lecticā octōphorō*, in a sedan with eight bearers. Plural: nominative *Adelphoe*, the Brothers; *canēphoroe*, basket-bearers, feminine. Genitive *Geōrgicōn liber*, book of Husbandry. For *Androgeōs*, *Athōs* and *Panthūs*, see the dictionary.

#### CONSONANT STEMS.

##### *The Third Declension.*

Genitive singular -is, genitive plural -um.

467. Consonant stems are mostly substantive, and include both gender words and neuters.

Comparatives and a few other words are adjective. For the gender of substantives, see 570.

468. The nominative of consonant stems ends in -s (or -x); or in -n (-ō), -l, -r, or -s of the stem, rarely in -c or -t.

469. Most consonant stems have one syllable less in the nominative than in the genitive.

Such words are called *Imparisyllabic* words or *Imparisyllables*: as, nominative *rēx*, king, one syllable; genitive *rēgis*, of a king, two syllables.

470. Many consonant stems have a double form: one form used in the nominative singular (neuters have this form in the accusative also), another form in the other cases: as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

473. (b.) Examples of stems in -c-, with nominative -x, genitive -cis, are:

- ax, -acis fax, F., *torch*, no G. Pl. in good writers (430).  
 -ax, -ācis pax, F., *peace*, Pl. only N. and Ac. pācēs; limāx, F., *snail*.  
 -ex, -ecis faenisex, M., *haycutter*; nex, F., *murder*; precī, D., F., *prayer*, no N., usually plural.  
 -ēx, -ecis vervēx, M., *wether*; allēx, F., *fish-pickle*, also allēc, Ne.  
 -ex, -icis Masculines mostly: apex, *point*; cārex, F., *rush*; caudex or cōdex, *block, book*; cīmex, *bug*; cortex, M., F., *bark*; culex, *gnat*, forfex, M., F., *shears*; frutex, *shrub*; īlex, F., *holm-oak*, illex, M., F., *seducer*; imbrex, *tile*; latex, *fluid*; mūrex, *purple shell*; obicc, Ab., M., F., *bar*, no N.; paelex, F., *concubine*; pollex, *thumb*; pūlex, *flea*; pūmex, *pumice-stone*; rāmex, *blood-vessel*; rumex, *sorrel*; silex, M., F., *flint*; sōrex, *shrew-mouse*; vortex or vertex, *whirl*; vītex, F., *a shrub*. Also some compounds: as, iūdex, *juror*; artifex, *artisan*; auspex, *bird-viewer*.  
 -ix, -icis Feminines mostly: appendix, *addition*; calix, M., *cup*; filix, *fern*; fulix, *gull*; fornix, M., *arch*; larix, *larch*; pix, *pitch*, no G. Pl. (430); salix, *willow*; vārix, *swollen vein*; vicis, G., *change*, no N., D., or G. Pl. (430).  
 -īx, -īcis Feminines: cervīx, *neck*; cicātrīx, *scar*; cornīx, *crow*; cōturnīx (62), *quail*; lōdīx, *blanket*; rādīx, *root*; struīx, *heap*. Also coxendīx, *hip*, later coxendix, coxendicis.  
 -ōx, -ōcis vōx, F., *voice*.  
 -ux, -ucis crux, F., *cross*; dux, M., F., *leader*; nux, F., *nut-tree, nut*; trādux, M., *vinelayer*.

474. (2.) Stems in a dental mute, -d- or -t-, are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	custōs, <i>keeper</i> , custōd-, M.	aetās, <i>age</i> , aetāt-, F.	virtūs, <i>virtue</i> , virtūt-, F.	mīles, <i>soldier</i> , mīlit-, M.
Singular <i>Nom.</i> <i>Gen.</i> <i>Dat.</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Abl.</i>	custōs custōdis custōdī custōdem custōde	aetās aetātis aetātī aetātem aetāte	virtūs virtūtis virtūtī virtūtem virtūte	mīles mīlitis mīlitī mīlitem mīlite
Plural <i>Nom.</i> <i>Gen.</i> <i>Dat.</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Abl.</i>	custōdēs custōdum custōdibus custōdēs custōdibus	aetātēs aetātum aetātibus aetātēs aetātibus	virtūtēs virtūtum virtūtibus virtūtēs virtūtibus	mīlitēs mīlitum mīlitibus mīlitēs mīlitibus

475. (a.) Examples of stems in -d-, with nominative -s, genitive -dis, are :

- as, -adis was, M., F., *personal surety*, no G. Pl. (430).
- aes, -aedis praes, M., *bondsman*.
- es, -idis obses, M., F., *hostage*; praeses, M., F., *overseer*. \*dēses, *slothful*, adjective.
- ēs, -edis pēs, M., *foot*.
- ēs, -ēdis hērēs, M., F., *heir*; exhērēs, *disinherited*, adjective; mercēs, F., *reward*.
- is, -idis Feminines: capis, *cup*; cassis, *helmet*; cuspis, *spear-point*; prōmulsis, *appetizer*; lapis, M., *stone*.
- ōs, -ōdis custōs, M., F., *guard*.
- aus, -audis laus, F., *praise*.
- us, -udis pecus, F., *beast, head of cattle*.
- ūs, -ūdis Feminines: incūs, *anvil*; palūs, *swamp*, nominative once in Horace palus, as from an -o- stem; subscūs, *dovetail*.

476. sēdēs, F., *seat*, has an -s- stem, namely -ēs (236), in the nominative, and sēd- in the other cases (401); G. Pl. sēdum, once sēdium (Vell. Pat.). The only example of a neuter stem in -d-, with nominative -r, genitive -dis, is cor (171, 2), *heart*, cordis, no G. Pl. (430).

477. (b.) Examples of stems in -t-, with nominative -s, genitive -tis, are :

- as, -atis anas, F., *duck*; G. Pl. also anitum (Cic.), and Ac. Pl. anitēs (Plaut.).
- ās, -ātis aetās, F., *age*; also numerous other feminines in -tās (262).
- es, -etis interpres, M., F., *go-between*; seges, F., *crop*; teges, F., *mat*.
- es, -itis Masculines mostly: ames, *net-pole*; antistes, M., F., *overseer*; caespes, *sod*; comes, M., F., *companion*; eques, *horseman*; fōmes, *tinder*; gurgēs, *whirlpool*; hospes, M., F., *guest-friend*; līmes, *path*; merges, F., *sheaf*; mīles, M., F., *soldier*; palmes, *vine-sprout*; pedes, *man afoot, infantry*; poples, *hough*; stipes, *trunk*; termes, *bough*; trāmes, *by-path*. dives, *rich*; sōspes, *safe*; superstes, *surviving*; caelite, Ab., *occupant of heaven*, no N., adjectives.
- ēs, -etis abiēs, F., *fir*; ariēs, M., *ram*; pariēs, M., *wall*.
- ēs, -ētis Feminines: quiēs and requiēs, *rest*, no D., Ac. often requiem, Ab. usually requiē (603); inquiēs, *unrest*, N. only.
- os, -otis compos, *master of*, adjective.
- ōs, -ōtis nepōs, M., *grandson, profligate*; sacerdotēs, M., *priest*; cōs, F., *whetstone*, no G. Pl. (430); dōs, F., *dowry*, no G. Pl. in good writers (430); dōtum once (Val. Max.), and dōtium in the jurists.
- ūs, -ūtis Feminines: iuventūs, *youth*; salūs, *existence*; senectūs, *old age*; servitūs, *slavery*, all singular only; and virtūs, *virtue*, with a plural.

478. *vātēs*, *bard*, has an -s- stem, namely -ēs (236), in the nominative, and *vāt-* in the other cases (401); G. Pl. *vātum*, but thrice *vātium* (Cic.). The only example of a neuter stem in -t-, with nominative -t, genitive -tis, is *caput*, *head*, *capitis*, and its compounds *occiput*, *back of the head* and *sinciput*, *jole-lac*, Ne., *milk*, *lactis*, has in old and late Latin nominative and accusative *lacte*, *lact* once in Varro (171, 2); acc. *lactem* occurs in Petronius once and later.

479. (3.) Stems in a labial mute, -b- or -p-, are declined as follows :

*mūniceps*, *burgess*, stem *mūnicip-*, M., F.

Singular: N. *mūniceps*, G. *mūnicipis*, D. *mūnicipī*, Ac. *mūnicipem*, Ab. *mūnicipē*. Plural: N. *mūnicipēs*, G. *mūnicipum*, D. *mūnicipibus*, Ac. *mūnicipēs*, Ab. *mūnicipibus*.

480. Examples of stems in -b- or -p-, with nominative -s, genitive -bis or -pis, are :

-ebs, -ibis *caelebs*, *unmarried*, adjective, the only stem in -b-.

—, -apis *dapis*, G., F., *feast*, N. and D. S., and G. Pl. not used (430).

-eps, -ipis *adeps* or *adips*, M., F., *fat*, no G. Pl.; *forceps*, M., F., *pincers*; *mūniceps*, *burgher*. *particeps*, *sharing*, and *princeps*, *first*, adjectives.

-eps, -upis *auceps*, *fowler*; *manceps*, *contractor*, *mancupis* or *mancipis*.

—, -ipis *stipis*, G., F., *small change*, no N.

-ops, -opis *Ops*, F., old *Opis* (Plaut.), *goddess of power*; *opis*, G., F., *help*, no N., D. once only, Pl. *opēs*, *means* (418).

## II. STEMS IN A CONTINUOUS CONSONANT.

481. (1.) Stems in -l- and -n- are declined as follows :

Examples Stems	<i>cōnsul</i> , <i>consul</i> , <i>cōnsul-</i> , M.	<i>leō</i> , <i>lion</i> , <i>leōn-</i> , M.	<i>imāgō</i> , <i>likeness</i> , <i>imāgin-</i> , F.	<i>nōmen</i> , <i>name</i> , <i>nōmin-</i> , Ne.
Singular <i>Nom.</i> <i>Gen.</i> <i>Dat.</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Abl.</i>	<i>cōnsul</i> <i>cōnsulis</i> <i>cōnsulī</i> <i>cōnsulem</i> <i>cōnsule</i>	<i>leō</i> <i>leōnis</i> <i>leōnī</i> <i>leōnem</i> <i>leōne</i>	<i>imāgō</i> <i>imāginis</i> <i>imāginī</i> <i>imāginem</i> <i>imāgine</i>	<i>nōmen</i> <i>nōminis</i> <i>nōminī</i> <i>nōmen</i> <i>nōmine</i>
Plural <i>Nom.</i> <i>Gen.</i> <i>Dat.</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Abl.</i>	<i>cōnsulēs</i> <i>cōnsulum</i> <i>cōnsulibus</i> <i>cōnsulēs</i> <i>cōnsulibus</i>	<i>leōnēs</i> <i>leōnum</i> <i>leōnibus</i> <i>leōnēs</i> <i>leōnibus</i>	<i>imāginēs</i> <i>imāginum</i> <i>imāginibus</i> <i>imāginēs</i> <i>imāginibus</i>	<i>nōmina</i> <i>nōminum</i> <i>nōminibus</i> <i>nōmina</i> <i>nōminibus</i>

482. Examples of stems in -l-, with nominative -l, genitive -lis, are :  
 -āl, -alis sāl, M., salt, sometimes Ne. in the singular; no G. Pl. (430).  
 -el, -ellis fel (171, 1), Ne., gall; mel, Ne., honey; plural only fella, mella.  
 -il, -ilis mūgil, M., mullet; pūgil, M., boxer; vigil, M., watchman.  
 -ōl, -ōlis sōl, M., sun, no G. Pl. (430).  
 -ul, -ulis cōsul, consul; praesul, head dancer; exsul, exile.

483. (a.) Examples of stems in -n-, with nominative -en, genitive -inis, are :

fāmen, M., priest; pecten, M., comb; tībicen, M., piper; tubicen, M., trumpeter; sanguen, Ne., blood. Many neuters in -men (224): as, certāmen, contest.

484. (b.) Examples of stems in -n-, with nominative -ō, genitive -ōnis, are :

Many masculine concretes: as, pugiō, dagger; words of the agent (211): as, praedō, robber; and family names: as, Cicerō. Feminine abstracts in -iō (227), and many in -tiō or -siō (228): as, opīniō, notion; cōgitātiō, thought.

485. (c.) Examples of stems in -u-, with nominative -ō, genitive -inis, are :

Masculines: Apollō; cardō, hinge; ōrdō, rank; turbō, whirlwind. homo, M., F., human being; nēmō, nobody; for G. and Ab., nūllus and nūllō are generally used; margō, M., F., brink. Feminines: grandō, hail; harundō, reed; hirundō, swallow; hirūdō, leech; testūdō, tortoise; virgō, maiden. Many in -dō, -dinis (225), -gō, -ginis (226), and -tūdō, -tūdinis (264): as, cupidō, also M., desire; imāgō, likeness; sōlitūdō, loneliness.

486. sanguīs, M., blood, stem sanguin-, takes -s in the nominative (171, 4). canis, M., F., dog, stem can-, and iuvenis, M., F., young person, stem iuven-, have the nominative formed like that of -i- stems. For senex, old man, see 500.

487. (2.) Stems in -r- and -s- are declined as follows :

Examples Stems	pater, father, patr-, M.	dolor, pain, dolōr-, M.	fłōs, flower, flōr-, M.	genus, race, gener-, Ne.
Singular Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc. Abl.	pater patris patrī patrem patre	dolor dolōris dolōrī dolōrem dolōre	fłōs flōris flōrī flōrem flōre	genus generis generī genus genere
Plural Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc. Abl.	patrēs patrum patribus patrēs patribus	dolōrēs dolōrum dolōribus dolōrēs dolōribus	flōrēs flōrum flōribus flōrēs flōribus	genera generum generibus genera generibus

488. Many stems in -r- ended originally in -s-, which became -r- between two vowels, and in some words in the nominative also (154): as, flōs, M., *flower*, G. \*flōsis, flōris; honōs, M., *honour*, G. honōris, N. honor.

489. (a.) Examples of stems in -r-, with nominative -r, genitive -ris, are:

- ar, -aris    baccar, Ne., *a plant*; iūbar, Ne., rarely M., *bright sky*, no Pl.
- ār, -aris    lār, M., *household god*; G. Pl. larum; two or three times larium.
- ār, -arris    fār (171, 1), Ne., *spelt*; Pl. only N. and Ac. farra.
- er, -eris    Masculines: acipēser, *sturgeon*; agger, *mound*; ānsēr, rarely F., *goose*; assēr, *pole*; carcer, *jail*; later, *brick*; mulier, F., *woman*; passer, *sparrow*; vōmer, *ploughshare*. Neuters: cadāver, *corpse*; tūber, *swelling*; ūber, *breast*; verberis, G., *lash*, no N., generally Pl.; acer, *maple*, and some other plant names: see 573. pauper, *poor*, adjective.
- ter, -tris    accipiter, M., *hawk*; frāter, M., *brother*; māter, F., *mother*; pater, M., *father*.
- ēr, -ēris    vēr, Ne.; no Pl.
- or, -oris    aequor, Ne., *sea*; marmor, Ne., *marble*; arbor, F., *tree*.
- or, -ōris    olor, M., *swan*; soror, F., *sister*; uxor, F., *wife*. Many masculines in -or for -ōs (237): as, odor, *smell*; and in -tor, -tōris (205): as, amātor, *lover*. Also gender comparatives of adjectives: as, trīstior (346), M., F., *sadder*.
- ur, -oris    Neuters: ebur, *ivory*; Pl. only eborā; rōbur, *heart of oak*; Pl. rōborā common, rōborum and rōboribus twice each. Also femur *thigh*, femoris or feminis, and iecur, *liver*, iecoris, iecinēris, or iocinēris.
- ur, -uris    augur, M., F., *augur*; furfur, M., *bran*; turtur, M., F., *turtle-dove*; voltur or vultur, M., *vulture*. Neuters: fulgur, *lightning*; guttur, rarely M., *throat*; murmur, *murmur*; sulphur, *sulphur*. cicur, *tame*, adjective.
- ūr, -ūris    fūr, M., *thief*.

490. volucris, F., *bird*, stem volucr-, has its nominative formed like that of -i- stems.

491. (b.) Examples of stems in -s-, or -r- for -s-, with nominative -s, genitive -ris, are:

- aes, -aeris    aes, Ne., *copper, bronze*; in the Pl. only aera and aerum are usual.
- ēs, -eris    Cerēs. pūbēs, *mangrown*; impūbēs, *immature*, adjectives; for the last more commonly impūbis, like brevis (630).
- is, -eris    cinis, M., *ashes*; cucumis, M., *cucumber*, also with -i- stem; pulvis, M., *dust*; vōmis, M., *ploughshare*.
- ōs, -oris    arbōs, F., *tree*.
- ōs, -ōris    Masculines: flōs, *flower*; mōs, *custom*; rōs, *dew*, no G. Pl. (430); lepōs, *grace*; honōs or honor, *honour*, and some old Latin words for later -or: as, odōs or odor, *smell* (489). ōs, Ne., *mouth, face*, no G. Pl. (430).

- us, -eris** Neuters: *acus*, *husk*; *foedus*, *treaty*; *fūnus*, *funeral*; *genus*, *race*; *glōmus* (134), *clew*; *holus*, *green stuff*; *latus*, *side*; *mūnus*, *gift*; *onus*, *burden*; *opus*, *work*; *pondus*, *weight*; *raudus* or *rūdus*, *piece of copper*; *scelus*, *crime*; *sīdus*, *constellation*; *ulcus*, *sore*; *vellus*, *fleece*; *vīscus*, *bowel*, usually plural; *volnus* or *vulnus*, *wound*. Also *Venus*, F., and *vetus*, *old*, adjective.
- us, -oris** Neuters: *corpus*, *body*; *decus*, *grace*; *dēdecus*, *disgrace*; *facinus*, *deed*; *faenus*, *interest*; *frīgus*, *cold*; *lītus*, *shore*; *nemus*, *grove*; *pectus*, *breast*; *pecus*, *flock*; *penus*, *store*; *pignus*, *pledge*; *stercus*, *dung*; *tempus*, *time*; *tergus*, *back*. Also *lepus*, M., *hare*.
- us, -ōris** Neuter comparatives of adjectives: *as*, *trīstius* (346), *sadder*.
- ūs, -ūris** Neuters: *crūs*, *leg*; *iūs*, *right*, Pl. *iūra*, G. Pl. twice only (Plaut.; Cato), no D. or Ab. Pl.; *iūs*, *broth*, *pūs*, *pus*, *rūs*, *country*, *tūs*, *frankincense*, Pl. only N. and Ac. *iūra*, &c. *tellūs*, F., *earth*.

492. *vās*, Ne., *vessel, utensil*, retains the *s* between two vowels: G. *vāsis*, D. *vāsī*, Ab. *vāse*, plural N. and Ac. *vāsa*; the G. *vāsōrum*, and D. and Ab. *vāsis*, are formed from an *-o-* stem, *vāso-* (401). *mēnsis*, M., *month*, *mēnsis*, has its nominative formed like that of *-i-* stems; G. Pl. *mēnsūm*, sometimes *mēnsūm* or *mēnsiūm*. *os* (171, 1) Ne., *bone*, *ossis*, has no G. Pl. in good writers (430): *ossium* late.

493. The two neuters *vīrus*, *gall, poison*, and *volgus* or *vulgus*, *the crowd*, have *-o-* stems, except in the nominative and accusative (401), and no plural: thus, N. and Ac. *volgus*, G. *volgī*, D. and Ab. *volgō*. A masculine accusative *volgum* is sometimes found. The Greek neuter *pelagus*, *the deep*, has also G. *pelagī*, D. and Ab. *pelagō*, Pl. N. and Ac. *pelagē* (508).

### III. STEMS IN *-u-* OR *-v-*.

494. Four substantives with stems in *-ū-* or *-v-*, *grūs*, F., *crane*, *gruis*; *sūs*, M., F., *sow, swine*, *suis*; *bōs*, M., F., *ox, cow*, *bovis*; and *nix*, F., *snow*, *nivis*, follow the consonant declension; also the genitive *Iovis*, and the other oblique cases of *Iuppiter* (500). But *sūs* has in the plural dative and ablative *suibus*, *sūbus*, or *subus*; *bōs* has in the plural genitive *bovm* or *bovm*, rarely *bovom* (107, c), and in the dative and ablative *bōbus*, or oftener *būbus*; *nix* has no genitive plural in good writers (430): *nivium* late, once *nivum*.

### SINGULAR CASES.

495. (1.) The nominative singular of gender stems in a mute is formed by adding *-s* to the stem (422): *as*,

*rēg-*, *king*, N. *rēx* (164, 1); *duc-*, *leader*, N. *dux* (135, 1); *custōd-*, *guard*, N. *custōs* (171, 5); *aetāt-*, *age*, N. *aetās* (171, 5); *caelib-*, *unmarried*, N. *caelebs* (54); *mūnicip-*, *burgher*, N. *mūniceps*. *hiem-*, *winter*, the only stem in *-m-*, N. *hiemps* (167) or *hiems*, also takes *-s*.

496. (2.) Stems in a continuous consonant, *-l-*, *-n-*, *-r-*, or *-s-*, and neuters have no nominative suffix (422, 423): *as*,

*cōnsul-*, *consul*, N. *cōnsul*; *flāmin-*, *special priest*, N. *flāmen*; *agger-*, *mound*, N. *agger*; *iūr-* for *iūs-*, *right*, N. *iūs*.

For *cor*, *heart*, see 476; *lacte*, *lac*, *milk*, 478; *sanguīs*, *blood*, 486; *-s* in neuter adjectives, 612.



497. (a.) Stems in *-ōn-* drop *-n-* in the nominative; stems in *-in-* for *-on-* drop *-n-*, and end in *-ō*: as,

*leōn-*, *lion*, N. *leō*; *imāgin-* for *imāgon-*, *likeness*, N. *imāgō*.

498. (b.) Stems of one syllable in *-r-* for *-s-* usually retain *-s* in the nominative: as, *flōr-* for *flōs-*, M., *flower*, N. *flōs*; *iūr-* for *iūs-*, Ne., *right*, N. *iūs*. Some of more than one syllable also retain *-s*: see 491; but in others *-s* is changed to *-r*, and in masculines a preceding *ō* is shortened: as, *odōs*, *smell*, odor. *lepōs*, *grace*, retains *-ōs*.

499. (c.) Four stems in *-er-* for *-is-* have the nominative singular in *-is*: *cinis*, *ashes*, *cineris*; *cucumis*, *cucumber*, *cucumeris* or *cucumis*; *pulvīs*, *dust*, *pulveris*; and *vōmis*, oftener *vōmer*, *ploughshare*, *vōmeris*.

500. The following have the nominative singular formed from a different stem from that of the other cases (401):

*iter*, *journey*, *itineris*, stems *iter-*, *itiner-*; *Iuppiter* (389) *Iovis*; *supellēx*, *furniture*, *supellēctilis* (545); *senex*, *old man*, *man of forty or more*, *senis*, stems *senec-*, *sen-*. For *sēdēs*, *seat*, see 476; *vātēs*, *bard*, 478. *canis*, *dog*, N. also *canēs* (Plaut. Enn., Lucil.), *iuvenis*, *young or middle-aged person* (486), *volucris*, *bird* (490), and *mēnsis*, *month* (492), have their nominatives formed like those of *-i-* stems.

501. An old dative in *-ē* is sometimes retained in set phrases (507): as, *aerē*, *money*; *iūrē*, *right*. See 98.

502. Substantives have rarely an ablative in *-ī* or *-ei* like *-i-* stems: as, *capitī* (Catull.), *head*, for *capite*; *dōtei* (Plaut.), *dowry*, for *dōte*. Substantives used as adjectives have sometimes *-ī*: as *artificī manū*, *with artist hand*; but often *-e*: as *ālite lāpsū*, *with winged glide*. For *-ē* in old Latin there is no certain evidence.

503. Adjectives in the comparative degree have sometimes an ablative in *-ī*: as, *meliōrī*, *better*, for *meliōre*. Adjectives 'of one ending' with consonant stems (624) have always *-e*, except *vetus*, *old*, which has sometimes *veterī*.

504. Town names and a few appellatives have a locative case in *-ī*: as, *Karthāginī*, *at Carthage*; *rūrī*, *a-field*, *in the country*.

#### PLURAL CASES.

505. The nominative and accusative plural masculine and feminine have rarely *-īs*, like stems in *-i-*: as *sacerdōtīs*, *priests*; *meliōrīs*, *better*. For *-ā* in neuters in old Latin, see 130, 2.

506. The genitive plural of stems in *-tāt-* (262) is sometimes *-ium*, like that of *-ī-* stems: as, *civitātium*, *communities*; *voluptātium*, *pleasures* (Cic.); but chiefly in or after the Augustan age. *mēnsis*, *month*, has *mēnsium*, but often *mēnsuum*, sometimes *mēnsium*. *āles*, *bird*, has sometimes *ālituum* in hexameter verse. For the dative and ablative *-būs*, see 2505.

507. Other case forms are found in inscriptions, as follows:

N. MVNICIPES; *-ō* for *-ōs* (66): MAIO, i.e. *maiōs* or *maior*. G. *-es*, as early as 218 B.C.: SALVTES; *-us*, from 186 to 100 B.C.: NOMINVS; *-u* (66): CAESARV. D. *-ei*: VIRTVTEI, soon after 290 B.C.; HEREDEI, 45 B.C.; *-ē*, disappeared sooner than *-ei* except in set phrases (501), but is equally old: IVNONE; IOVRE. Ac. *-e* (61): APICE. Ab. *-īd* (426): CONVENTIONID, i.e. *cōntiōne*; *-ei*: VIRTVTEI; *-ī*: HEREDI. Plural: N. *-īs*: IOVDICIS. G. *-om*: POVMILIONOM; *-ium*: MVNICIPIVM. D. *-ebus*: TEMPESTATEBVS. Ac. *-īs*: MVNICIPIS.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

Such words are called *Parisyllabic* words, or *Parisyllables*: as, nominative **cīvis**, *citizen*, two syllables; genitive **cīvis**, *of a citizen*, also two syllables.

516. Stems in **-i-** are declined in the main like consonant stems, but have **-im** in the accusative of some substantives, and **-ī** in the ablative of adjectives, of some gender substantives, and of neuters; in the plural they have **-ium** in the genitive, **-is** often in the accusative of gender words, and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative neuter.

### I. PARISYLLABLES.

517. (1.) Parisyllabic gender stems in **-i-** with the nominative in **-is** are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	tussis, <i>cough</i> , tussi-, F.	turris, <i>tower</i> , turri-, F.	amnis, <i>river</i> , amni-, M.	hostis, <i>enemy</i> , hosti-, M., F.	Stem and case endings
Singular					
<i>Nom.</i>	tussis	turris	amnis	hostis	-is
<i>Gen.</i>	tussis	turris	amnis	hostis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	tussī	turri	amni	hosti	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	tussim	turrim, -em	amnem	hostem	-im, -em
<i>Abl.</i>	tussī	turri, -e	amne, -ī	hoste	-ī, -e
Plural					
<i>Nom.</i>	tussēs	turrēs	amnēs	hostēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>		turrium	amnum	hostium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>		turribus	amnibus	hostibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	tussīs, -ēs	turrīs, -ēs	amnīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	-īs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>		turribus	amnibus	hostibus	-ibus

518. (a.) Like the singular of **tussis** are declined parisyllabic names of rivers and places, like **Tiberis**, **Hispalis**. Also **cucumis**, M., *cucumber* (but see 491), and the defectives **sitis**, F., *thirst*, Ac. **sitim**, Ab. **sitī**, no plural; and **vīs**, F., *power*, Ac. **vim**, Ab. **vī**. Plural (401): N. **vīrēs**, G. **vīrium**, D. and Ab. **vīribus**, Ac. **vīrīs** or **vīrēs**. (The D. **vī** is only found twice; a N. and Ac. Pl. **vīs** is very rare.)

519. (b.) The following feminines are declined like **turris**, with **-im** or **-em** in the accusative, and **-ī** or **-e** in the ablative:

**clāvis**, *key*  
**febris**, *fever*

**nāvis**, *vessel*  
**puppis**, *stern*

**sēmentis**, *planting*  
**strigilis**, *skin-scraper*

So also in the oblique cases, **Liger**, *the Liger*. **Arar**, *the Arar*, has in the accusative **-im**, in the ablative **-e** or **-ī**.

520. **secūris**, *axe*, **messis**, *crop*, and **restis**, *rope*, also have **-im** or **-em** in the accusative, but only **secūrī**, **messe**, and **reste** in the ablative. **canālis**, *conduit*, has only **-em** in the accusative, and only **-ī** in the ablative.

521. (c.) The following are declined like *amnis*, with -em in the accusative, and -ī or -e in the ablative:

*avis, bird*  
*bīlis, bile*

*cīvis, citizen*  
*classis, fleet*

*fūstis, club*  
*ignis, fire*

522. (d.) Most parisyllabic stems in -i-, with the nominative in -is, are declined like *hostis*: as,

*ēnsis, M., glaive*; *piscis, M., fish*; *aedis, F., temple, Pl. house* (418); *vītis, F., vine*; and a great many others. Also gender forms of adjectives in -i- 'of two endings' (630), except the ablative singular, which ends in -ī.

523. (2.) Parisyllables in -i- with the nominative in -ēs have their other cases like those of *hostis*: such are:

*caedēs, bloodshed*; *cautēs, rock*; *clādēs, disaster*; *indolēs, native disposition, no Pl.*; *lābēs, fall*; *mōlēs, pile*; *nūbēs, cloud*; *prōlēs, offspring, no Pl.*; *pūbēs, young population, no Pl.*; *rūpēs, crag*; *saepēs, hedge*; *strāgēs, slaughter*; *subolēs, offspring*; *tābēs, wasting, no Pl., feminine*; and some others. Masculine: *verrēs, boar*; *volpēs* or *vulpēs, fox*.

524. *famēs, hunger*, has G. twice *famī* (Cato, Lucil.), Ab. always *famē* (603), no Pl.; *plēbēs, commons*, N. also *plēbs* or *plēps*, has G. *plēbēi* (603), *plēbī* or *plēbis*, no Pl.

525. (3.) A few stems in -bri-, -cri-, or -tri-, are declined as follows:

*imber, shower, stem imbri-, M.*

Singular: N. *imber*, G. *imbris*, D. *imbrī*, Ac. *imbrem*, Ab. *imbrī*, oftener *imbre*. Plural: N. *imbrēs*, G. *imbrium*, D. *imbribus*, Ac. *imbris* or *imbrēs*, Ab. *imbribus*. So also *lunter* or *linter, F. (M.), tub, boat*, *ūter, M., leather bag*, and *venter, M., belly*, but with only -e in the Ab.; and the masculine of adjectives in -bri-, -cri-, -tri-, N. -er (628); these last have in the Ab. always -ī.

526. (4.) Parisyllabic neuters in -i- with the nominative in -e are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	<i>sedīle, seat,</i> <i>sedīli-, Ne.</i>		<i>mare, sea,</i> <i>mari-, Ne.</i>		Stem and case endings	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	S.	Pl.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>sedīle</i>	<i>sedīlia</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>maria</i>	-e	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>sedīlis</i>	<i>sedīlium</i>	<i>maris</i>		-is	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sedīlī</i>	<i>sedīlibus</i>	<i>marī</i>		-ī	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sedīle</i>	<i>sedīlia</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>maria</i>	-e	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>sedīlī</i>	<i>sedīlibus</i>	<i>marī</i>		-ī	-ibus

527. *mare* has rarely the ablative *mare* in verse; in the plural only the nominative and accusative are usual; but a genitive *marum* is once quoted (Naev.), and the ablative *maribus* is once used by Caesar.

528. Examples of parisyllabic neuters in -i-, with the nominative in -e, genitive -is, are :

ancile, *sacred shield*; aplustre, *ancient*; conclāve, *suite of rooms*; insigne, *ensign*; praesaepe, *stall*; rēte, *net*, Ab. rēte. Also the neuter of adjectives in -i- 'of two endings' (630), and some words in -īle, -āle, -āre, originally adjectives (313, 314): as, būbile, *ox-stall*; fōcāle, *neckcloth*; cocleāre, *spoon*.

## II. IMPARISYLLABLES.

529. Sometimes a plural stem in -i- is combined, in the singular, with a stem in a mute, in -l, or -r, or rarely in -s. These mixed stems thus become imparisyllables. Gender stems of this class are like consonant stems in the singular, except the ablative of adjectives, which has usually -ī.

530. Imparisyllabic stems in -i- are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	arx, <i>citadel</i> , arci-, F.	pars, <i>part</i> , parti-, F.	urbs, <i>city</i> , urbi-, F.	animal, <i>animal</i> , animāli-, Ne.
Singular <i>Nom.</i> <i>Gen.</i> <i>Dat.</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Abl.</i>	arx arcis arcī arcem arce	pars partis partī partem parte	urbs urbis urbī urbem urbe	animal animālis animālī animal animālī
Plural <i>Nom.</i> <i>Gen.</i> <i>Dat.</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Abl.</i>	arcēs arcium arcibus arcīs, -ēs arcibus	partēs partium partibus partīs, -ēs partibus	urbēs urbium urbibus urbīs, -ēs urbibus	animālia animālium animālibus animālia animālibus

531. Examples of stems in -ci-, with nominative -x, genitive -cis, are :

-āx, -ācis fornāx, F., *furnace*. Many adjectives (284): as, audāx, *daring*.

-aex, -aecis faex, F., *dregs*, no G. Pl. (430).

-ex, -icis supplex, *suppliant*, Ab. -ī, sometimes -e, G. Pl. supplicum. Adjectives: duplex, *twofold*; multiplex, *manifold*; quadruplex, *fourfold*; septemplex, *sevenfold*; simplex, *simple*; triplex, *threefold*. The foregoing have Ab. -ī: as, duplicī; duplicē once (Hor.), septemlice twice (Ov.; Stat.); G. Pl. -ium, Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. -ia.

-ix, -icis fēlix, *happy*; pernīx, *nimble*, adjectives. Also many feminines of the agent in -trīx (205): as, victrīx, *victorious*; these sometimes have a Ne. Pl. N. and Ac.: as, victrīcia; in the G. Pl. they have -ium, or, as substantives, -um: as, nūtrīcum, *nurses*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

- ns, -ntis** Masculines: *dēns*, *tooth*; *fōns*, *fountain*; *pōns*, *bridge*; *mōns*, *mountain*, N. once *montis* (Enn.); factors of twelve: *sextāns*, *one sixth*; *quadrāns*, *triēns*, *dōdrāns*, *dēxtāns*. Feminines: *frōns*, *forehead*; *gēns*, *clan*; *mēns*, *mind*. Present participles: *as*, *re-gēns*, *guiding*. Many adjectives: *as*, *ingēns*, *gigantic*, Ab. -ī (559); *Vēiēns*, *of Vei*; compounds of *mēns*: *as*, *āmēns*, *out of one's head*; of *dēns*: *as*, *tridēns*, Ab. -ī, *as substantive usually -e*.
- eps, -ipitis** Adjective compounds of *caput*, *head*: *anceps* (543), *two-headed*, once older *ancipēs* (Plaut.); *biceps*, *two-headed*; *triceps*, *three-headed*; *praeceps*, *head-first*, old *praecipēs* (Plaut.; Enn.), Ab. -ī (559), no G. Pl., Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. -ia.
- rs, -rtis** Feminines: *ars*, *art*; *cohors*, *cohort*; *fors*, *chance*; *mors*, *death*; *pars*, *part*; *sors*, *lot*, N. twice *sortis* (Plaut.; Ter.). Adjectives: *cōsors*, *sharing*, *exsors*, *not sharing*, no G. Pl.; *expers*, *without part*; *iners*, *unskilled*, *sollers*, *all-skilled*, Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. -ia.
- x, -ctis** *nox*, F., *night*; Ab. also *noctū* (401); an old adverb form is *nox*, *nights*.

534. (a.) Stems in -bi-, with nominative -bs (149), genitive -bis, are :

*trabs*, F., *beam*, older N. *trabēs* (Enn.); *plēbs*, F., *commons*, N. sometimes *plēps*, for the older *plēbēs* (603), no Pl.; *urbs*, F., *city*.

535. (b.) Stems in -pi-, with nominative -ps, genitive -pis, are :

*inops*, *poor*, adjective, Ab. -ī (559), G. Pl. -um, no Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. (430); *stirps*, F. (M.), *trunk*.

536. Examples of stems in -li-, with nominative -l, genitive -lis, are :

**-al, -ālis** Neuters, originally adjective (546): *animal*, *animal*; *bacchānal*, *shrine or feast of Bacchus*; *cervīcal*, *bolster*; *puteal*, *well-curb*; *toral*, *valance*; *tribūnal*, *tribunal*; *vectīgal*, *indirect tax*. Only N. or Ac.: *cubital*, *elbow-cushion*; *minūtal*, *minced-fish*; *capital*, *capitālia*, *death*, *capital crime*.

**-il, -ilis** *vigil*, *wide-awake*, adjective, Ab. -ī, *as substantive -e* (561), G. Pl. *vigilum* (563), no Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. (430).

537. (a.) Examples of stems in -ri-, with nominative -r, genitive -ris, are :

**-ar, -āris** Neuters, originally adjective (546): *calcar*, *spur*; *columbar*, *dove-cote*; *exemplar*, *pattern*; *lacūnar*, *panel-ceiling*; *pulvīnar*, *couch*; *sublīgar*, *tights*; *torcular*, *wine-press*.

**-ār, -aris** Adjectives: *pār*, *equal*; *dispār*, *impār*, *unequal*, for Ab., see 561; G. Pl. -ium, Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. -ia; *compār*, *co-mate*, *as substantive has G. Pl. -um*.

**-er, -eris** Adjectives: *dēgener*, *degenerate*, Ab. -ī (559), no Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. (430); *ūber*, *fruitful*, Ab., -ī, *late -e*, Ne. Pl. *ūbera* once only (Acc.).

- or, -oris** Adjectives: *memor, remembering; immemor, forgetful*, Ab. -ī (559), G. Pl. *memorum* (636) once only (Verg.), no Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. (430).
- or, -ōris** Adjective compounds of color: *as, concolor, of like shade, discolor, of different shade*, both with Ab. -ī only; *versicolor, pied*, Ab. -ī, rarely -e, Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. -ia; the G. Pl. of these words is not usual, but *versicolōrum* once.

538. (b.) Stems in -ri-, with nominative -s of the stem, genitive -ris, are *glīs, F., dormouse, gliris; mās, M., male, maris; mūs, F., mouse, muris*.

539. The only imparisyllabic stem in -si- is *ās* (171, 1), *M., unit, an as*, G. *assis*, with its compounds *bēs, two thirds*, G. *bessis*, and *sēmis, half an as*, *half*, G. *sēmissis*.

#### SINGULAR CASES.

540. (1.) The nominative singular of gender stems in -i- is usually formed by adding -s to the stem (422). But many gender substantives have the nominative in -ēs (236, 401): *as*,

*amni-, river*, N. *amnis*; *aedi-, temple*, N. *aedis*; *brevi-, short*, N. *brevis*. With N. -ēs: *nūbi-, cloud*, N. *nūbēs*; for other examples, see 523.

541. Some substantives form the nominative in both these ways: *as, vallēs* and *vallis, valley*, equally common; *aedis, temple*, later *aedēs*; for *caedēs, slaughter*, *clādēs, disaster*, and *mōlēs, pile*, *caedis, &c.*, occur exceptionally.

542. A few stems in -bri-, -cri-, or -tri-, drop -i- in the nominative. The endings *brs, crs, trs*, then change to -ber, -cer, -ter (111, b): *as, imbri-, shower*, N. *imber* (525).

543. Of gender imparisyllables, some have lost -i- of the stem before -s in the nominative; others have originally a consonant stem in the nominative (529-535).

Thus, *monti-, mountain*, and *sorti-, lot*, have N. *mōns* and *sors* for an older *montis* and *sortis*; but *dēns, tooth*, and *regēns, ruling*, have as original stems *dent-* and *regent-*. Adjectives in -cipiti- have N. -ceps (533).

544. A few adjective stems in -li- or -ri- drop -i- in the nominative without taking -s (536, 537): *as, vigili-, wide-awake*, N. *vigil*; *pari-, equal*, N. *pār*; so also *Arar* and *Liger*. Three substantives in -ri- for -si- likewise drop -i-, and end in the original -s (538): *gliri- for glīs-, dormouse*, N. *glīs*; *mās, male*; *mūs, mouse*.

545. For *carō, F., flesh, carnis* (Ab. -ī, usually -e, no G. Pl.) see 135, 2. *supellēx, F., furniture, supellēctilis* (Ab. -ī or -e, no Pl.), has the nominative formed from a different stem from that of the other cases (401).

546. (2) Neuter stems in -i- have no nominative suffix, and end in -e for -i- of the stem (107, b): *as*,

*mari-, sea*, N. *mare*; *brevi-, short*, N. *breve*. In some words, originally neuter adjectives in -āle and -āre, the -e is dropped and the ā shortened: *as, animāle, living thing, animal* (536); *exemplāre* (Lucr.), *pattern, exemplar* (537). Some neuter adjectives end in -l or -r (536, 537); and some 'of one ending' end in -s (612).



547. The accusative singular of gender substantives usually has -em, like consonant stems (424); but a few substantives with the nominative in -is have -im only, and some have either -im or -em.

548. (a.) Accusatives in -im

Are sitim, tussim, vim,            *thirst, cough, strength*  
And būrim, cucumim.            *ploughtail, cucumber*

549. The accusative in -im is found in many adverbs (700): as, partim, *in part*; in some adverbial expressions: as, adamussim, examussim, *to a T*, adfatum, *to satiety*, ad ravim, *to hoarseness*; in some names of rivers and cities: as, Tiberim, Hispalim; and in some Greek words (565).

550. (b.) Six have the accusative commonly in -im, sometimes in -em:

febrim, -em, *fever*            puppim, -em, *stern*            secūrim, -em, *axe*  
pelvim, -em, *basin*            restim, -em, *rope*            turrim, -em, *tower*

551. Six have the accusative commonly in -em, sometimes in -im:

bipennem, -im, *two-edged axe*            nāvem, -im, *ship*  
clāvem, -im, *key*            sēmentem, -im, *planting*  
messeem, -im, *crop*            strigilem, -im, *skin-scrapers*

552. In the ablative, gender substantives have usually -e, and neuters and adjectives have -ī: as,

hoste, *enemy*; marī, *sea*; ācrī, *sharp*, brevī, *short*, audācī, *daring*.

553. (1.) Of gender substantives with the nominative in -is, a few have only -ī in the ablative, and many have either -ī or -e.

554. (a.) These ablatives have only -ī:

secūrī, sitī, tussī, vī,            *axe, thirst, cough, strength*  
canālī, cucumī.            *conduit, cucumber*

Some names of rivers and cities have only -ī: as, Tiberī, Hispalī. The locative also ends in -ī: as, Neāpolī, *at Neapolis*.

555. (b.) These ablatives of gender substantives with the nominative in -is have -ī or -e:

amne, -ī, <i>river</i>	clāvī, -e, <i>key</i>	orbī, -e, <i>circle</i>
ave, -ī, <i>bird</i>	febrī, -e, <i>fever</i>	puppī, -e, <i>stern</i>
bīle, -ī, <i>bile</i>	fūstī, -e, <i>club</i>	sēmentī, -e, <i>planting</i>
cīvī, -e, <i>citizen</i>	ignī, -e, <i>fire</i>	strigilī, -e, <i>skin-scrapers</i>
classe, -ī, <i>fleet</i>	nāvī, -e, <i>ship</i>	turri, -e, <i>tower</i>

556. A few other words in -is have occasionally an ablative in -ī: as, anguis, *snake*, collis, *hill*, finis, *end*, postis, *post*, unguis, *nail*, &c. sors, *lot*, imber, *shower*, and lūx, *light*, have also -e or -ī; supellēx, *furniture*, has supellēctilī or -e; Arar has -e or -ī; Liger, -ī or -e.

557. Neuter names of towns with the nominative in -e have -e in the ablative: as, Praeneste. rēte, *net*, has only rēte; mare, *sea*, has rarely mare (527).

558. (2.) Adjectives 'of two endings' with stems in -i- (630) often have -e in the ablative when they are used as substantives, and sometimes in verse, when a short vowel is ne



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## CHARACTERISTICS OF STEMS IN -i-.

566. Parisyllables with nominatives in -is, -ēs, or -e, and a few in -er; and imparisyllables with nominatives in -al, and in -ar for -āre, have stems in -i-.

But *canis*, *iuvenis* (486), *volucris* (490), *mēnsis* (492), *sēdēs* (476), and *vātēs* (478), have consonant stems.

567. Under -i- stems may also conveniently be grouped the following classes, which have usually a consonant form in the singular, and an -i- form in the plural:

568. (a.) Imparisyllabic adjectives with the genitive in -is, except comparatives and the dozen with consonant stems (624), and imparisyllables with a nominative in -s or -x preceded by any consonant except p. But *cōniūnx* (472) and *caelebs* (480) have consonant stems.

569. (b.) The following monosyllables: *ās*, *unit*, *an as*, *faex*, *dregs*, *fraus*, *deceit*, *glīs*, *dormouse*, *lis*, *strife*, *lūx*, *light*, *mās*, *male*, *mūs*, *mouse*, *nox*, *night*, *stirps*, *trunk*, *vīs*, *strength*. Also *fauce*, *throat*, and *compede*, *fetter*, both Ab., no N., and *fornāx*, *furnace*.

## GENDER OF CONSONANT STEMS AND -i- STEMS.

570. The gender of many of these substantives is determined by their meaning (404-412); that of participles used as substantives follows the gender of the substantive understood; Greek substantives follow the Greek gender. The gender of other words may be conveniently arranged for the memory according to the nominative endings as follows.

## MASCULINE.

571. Imparisyllables in -es or -ēs and substantives in -er, -ō, -or, and -ōs are masculine: *as*,

*caespes*, *sod*; *pēs*, *foot*; *agger*, *mound*; *sermō*, *speech*; *pallor*, *pale-ness*; *flōs*, *flower*.

572. These imparisyllables in -es or -ēs are feminine: *merges*, *sheaf*, *seges*, *crop*, *teges*, *mat*; *requiēs* and *quiēs*, *rest*; *compedēs*, plural, *fetters*; *mercēs*, *reward*. *aes*, *copper*, *bronze*, is neuter.

573. These substantives in -er are neuter: *cadāver*, *corpse*, *iter*, *way*, *tūber*, *swelling*, *truffle*, *ūber*, *udder*, *verberis*, *lash*, genitive, no nominative; also names of plants in -er: *as*, *acer*, *maple*, *cicer*, *chickpea*, *papāver*, *poppy*, *piper*, *pepper*, *siler*, *osier*, *siser*, *skirret*, *sūber*, *corktree*. *linter*, *tub*, *boat*, is feminine, once masculine. *vēr*, *spring*, is neuter.

574. Substantives in -ō, with genitive -inis (485), are feminine; as, *imāgō*, *imāginis*, *likeness*; also *carō*, *carnis*, *flesh*, and words of action in -iō and -tiō (227, 228). But *cardō*, *hinge*, *ōrdō*, *rank*, and *turbō*, *whirlwind*, are masculine. *margō*, *brink*, and *cupidō*, *desire*, are sometimes masculine.

575. These substantives in -or are neuter: *ador*, *spelt*, *aequor*, *sea*, *marmor*, *marble*, *cor*, *heart*. *arbor*, *tree*, is feminine.

576. These substantives in -ōs are feminine: *cōs*, *whetstone*, *arbōs*, *tree*, *dōs*, *dowry*. *ōs*, *ōris*, *mouth*, *face*, is neuter, also *os*, *ossis*, *bone*.

FEMININE.

577. Parisyllables in **-ēs**, and substantives in **-ās** **-aus**, **-is**, **-s** preceded by a consonant, and **-x**, are feminine: as,

*nūbēs, cloud; aetās, age; laus, praise; nāvis, ship; urbs, city; pāx, peace.*

578. *ās, assis, penny*, is masculine. *vās, vessel, utensil*, and the defectives *fās, right*, and *nefās, wrong*, are neuter.

579. Substantives in **-nis** are masculine; also twenty-nine others in **-is**, as follows:

<i>axis, callis, caulis, anguis,</i>	<i>axle, path, cabbage, snake</i>
<i>fascis, fūstis, lapis, sanguis,</i>	<i>bundle, club, stone, blood</i>
<i>piscis, postis, pulvis, ēnsis,</i>	<i>fish, post, dust, glaive</i>
<i>torquis, torris, unguis, mēnsis,</i>	<i>twisted collar, firebrand, nail, month</i>
<i>vectis, vermis, vōmis, collis,</i>	<i>lever, worm, ploughshare, hill</i>
<i>glis, canālis, also follis,</i>	<i>dormouse, conduit, ball</i>
<i>cassēs, sentēs, veprēs, orbis,</i>	<i>nets, brambles, thorns, plurals, circle</i>
<i>cucumis, and sometimes corbis.</i>	<i>cucumber, basket</i>

*būrim, ploughtail*, accusative only, is also masculine. A few of the above are sometimes feminine: *as, amnis, anguis, callis, canālis, cinis, finis, fūnis, torquis, veprēs, &c.*

580. Four in **-s** preceded by a consonant are masculine: *dēns, tooth, fōns, fountain, pōns, bridge, mōns, mountain*; also factors of twelve: *sextāns, one sixth, quadrāns, triēns, dōdrāns, dēxtāns; rudēns, rope, once. adeps, fat, and forceps, pincers*, are masculine or feminine. *stirps, stock*, is sometimes masculine.

581. *calix, cup, fornix, arch, and trādux, vinelayer*, are masculine; also substantives in **-ūnx** and **-ex**; except *nex, murder*, and *precī, prayer*, dative, no nominative, which are feminine; also rarely *grex, herd. cortex, bark, forfex, scissors, silex, flint, and obice, barrier*, ablative, no nominative, are either masculine or feminine. *calx, heel, and calx, lime*, are sometimes masculine, also *lūx, light*, in the ablative in old Latin.

NEUTER.

582. Substantives in **-c**, **-e**, **-l**, **-n**, **-t**, in **-ar**, **-ur**, **-us**, and **-ūs**, are neuter: as,

*lac, milk; mare, sea; animal, animal; carmen, song; caput, head; calcar, spur; fulgur, lightning; corpus, body; iūs, right.*

583. *sōl, sun, pecten, comb, liēn, spleen, rēnēs, kidneys*, plural, and *furfur, bran*, are masculine. So usually *sāl, salt*, but sometimes neuter in the singular. *fār, spelt*, is neuter.

584. *pecus, beast*. is feminine; also *tellūs, earth*, and the substantives in **-ūs** which have **-ūdis** (475) or **-ūtis** (477) in the genitive: as, *palūs, marsh; iuventūs, youth.*

## STEMS IN -u-.

*The Fourth Declension.*

Genitive singular -ūs, genitive plural -u-um.

585. Stems in -u- are substantive only, and mostly masculine.

586. There are only three neuters in common use, *cornū*, *horn*, *genū*, *knee*, and *verū*, *a spit*. But some cases of other neuters are used: as, ablative *pecū*, *flock*; plural nominative and accusative *artua*, *limbs* (Plaut.); *ossua*, *bones* (inscr.).

587. The nominative of stems in -u- ends, including the stem vowel, in -u-s in gender words, and in lengthened -ū of the stem in neuters.

588. Most substantives in -u- are masculines in -tu- or -su-, often defective in case (235). The following words are feminine: *acus*, *pin*, *needle*, *domus*, *house*, *manus*, *hand*, *porticus*, *colonnade*; *tribus*, *tribe*; and the plurals *idūs*, *ides*, and *quīnquātrūs*, *feast of Minerva*; rarely *penus*, *store*, and *specus*, *cave*.

589. Stems in -u- are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	flūctus, <i>wave</i> , flūctu-, M.	cornū, <i>horn</i> , cornu-, Ne.	Stem and case endings	
			M.	Ne.
Singular				
<i>Nom.</i>	flūctus, <i>a (or the) wave</i>	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	flūctūs, <i>a wave's, of a wave</i>	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	flūctuī, -ū, <i>to or for a wave</i>	cornū	-uī, -ū	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	flūctum, <i>a wave</i>	cornū	-um	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	flūctū, <i>from, with, or by a wave</i>	cornū	-ū	-ū
Plural				
<i>Nom.</i>	flūctūs, <i>(the) waves</i>	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	flūctuum, <i>waves', of waves</i>	cornuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	flūctibus, <i>to or for waves</i>	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flūctūs, <i>waves</i> [waves]	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	flūctibus, <i>from, with, or by</i>	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

## SINGULAR CASES.

590. In the genitive, the uncontracted form -uis sometimes occurs: as, *anuis*, *old woman* (Ter.). A genitive in -tī is rather common: as, *adventī*, *arrival*; *ōrnātī*, *embellishment* (Ter.); *senātī*, *senate*. In the dative, -ū is regularly found for -uī in neuters and often in gender words.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

601. Stems in *-ē-* of the first class are declined as follows :

Examples Stems	<i>rēs, thing, rē-, F.</i>	<i>diēs, day, diē-, M.</i>	Stem and case endings
Singular			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēs, a (or the) thing</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēi, rēi, a thing's, of a thing</i>	<i>diēi, diēi</i>	<i>-ēi, -ēi, -ēi</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēi, rēi, to or for a thing</i>	<i>diēi, diēi</i>	<i>-ēi, -ēi, -ēi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rem, a thing</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>-em</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rē, from, with, or by a thing</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>-ē</i>
Plural			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēs (the) things</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rērum, things', of things</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēbus, to or for things</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēs, things</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēbus, from, with, or by things</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

602. *fidēs* is declined like *rēs*; it has once a genitive *fidēs* (Plaut.). For *rēi*, *reī*, or *rēi*, and *fidēi*, *fideī*, or *fidēi*, see 127, 4. *diēs* has rarely a genitive *diēs* (Enn.) or *diī* (Verg.). *spēs* has only the genitive and dative *spēi* in verse. A genitive or dative in *-ē* is sometimes found: as, *rē*, *diē*, *fidē*.

603. A few cases of other words sometimes follow this class (401): as, *plēbēs* (524), *commons*, G. *plēbēi* or *plēbī*; *famēs* (524), *hunger*, Ab. always *famē*; *requiēs* (477), *rest*, G. *requiē* (Sall.), Ac. *requiem*, Ab. *requiē*; *tābēs* (523), *waste*, Ab. *tābē*, \**contāgēs*, *contact*, Ab. *contāgē* (Lucr.), &c.

604. (2.) Stems of the second class are formed by the suffix *-iē-* or *-tiē-*, and have three or more syllables.

This class, which is parallel to stems in *-iā-*, has usually no genitive, dative, or plural. Many stems, especially those in *-tiē-*, have also a collateral form in *-iā-*, and the genitive and dative, when used at all, are commonly from a stem in *-iā-*.

605. Stems in *-ē-* of the second class are declined as follows :

*lūxuriēs, extravagance, stem lūxuriē-, F.*  
*Nom. lūxuriēs, Acc. lūxuriem, Abl. lūxuriē.*

606. A few examples of the genitive of these stems are found: as, *pernicii*, *perniciēs*, or *perniciē*, *ruin* (Cic.); *rabiēs*, *fury* (Lucr.); *aciē*, *edge of battle* (Sall., Caes., auct. B. Afr.), *faciē*, *make* (Plaut., Lucil.), *speciē*, *looks* (Caes.); *aciēi* (auct. B. Afr.). And a very few of the dative: as, *aciēi* twice (Caes.); *perniciēi*, *pernicii* (Nep.); *perniciē* (Liv.).

607. *ēluviēs*, *offscouring, wash*, has the nominative of the plural, and *glaciēs*, *ice*, has the accusative of the plural. Five words only have the nominative and accusative plural:

*seriēs, aciēs, row, edge, speciēs, faciēs, look, make, effigiēs, likeness.*

THE ADJECTIVE.

608. Adjectives are declined like substantives, and it has been shown already how their cases are formed. But they differ from substantives in having different forms in some of their cases to denote different genders; it is convenient therefore to put their complete declension together.

609. Adjective stems end in -o- and -ā-, in a consonant, or in -i-.

610. An accusative plural of a stem in -u-, *anguimanūs*, with a serpent for a hand, is once used (Lucr.). There are no adjective stems in -ē-.

611. Adjectives are often conveniently said to be 'of three endings,' 'of two endings,' or 'of one ending.'

By the 'ending' is meant the ending of the nominative singular: thus, *bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, *good*, and *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*, *sharp*, are 'of three endings' (409); *brevis*, *breve*, *short*, is 'of two endings' (410); and *audāx*, *bold*, is 'of one ending' (410).

612. Adjectives 'of one ending' which form a gender nominative in -s, retain the -s irrationally in the nominative and accusative neuter singular: as, N. M. and F. *audāx*, N. and Ac. Ne. also *audāx*.

STEMS IN -o- AND -ā-.

613. Most adjectives with stems in -o- and -ā- are declined as follows:

Example Stems	M. bonus, F. bona, Ne. bonum, <i>good</i> , bono-, bonā-.					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Voc.</i>	bone					

614. Stems in -io- and -iā- have no consonant i in cases ending in -i or -īs (153, 3): as *plēbēius*, *plebeian*, G. S. M. and Ne., and N. Pl. M. *plēbēī*, D. and Ab. Pl. *plēbēīs*.

615. Stems in -ro- preceded by a long vowel retain -us in the nominative singular masculine and are declined like *bonus* (453): as, *sevērus*, *stern*; also

*ferus*, *merus*, *wild*, *unmixed*

*mōrigerus*, *complaisant*

*praeposterus*, *reversed*

*properus*, *hasty*

*prōsperus*, *lucky*

*triquetrus*, *three-cornered*



616. (1.) Some stems in -ro- preceded by a short vowel end in -r in the nominative singular masculine and have no vocative (454); they are declined as follows:

Example Stems	M. liber, F. libera, Ne. liberum, <i>free</i> , libero-, liberā-.					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

Such are: compounds, chiefly poetical, ending in -fer and -ger, *bearing, carrying, having*: as, caelifer, *heaven-upholding*; corniger, *horned*; also the following:

(alter, 618), asper, *other, rough*

lacer, liber, *torn, free*

gibber, miser, *hump-backed, forlorn*

satur, sēmifer, *full, half-beast*

tener, Trēver, *tender, Treveran*

dexter, *right*, has dextera, dexterum, or dextra, dextrum, G. dexterī, or dextri, &c. sinister, *left*, has usually sinistra, &c., rarely sinisteram (Plaut., Ter.). asper has a plural accusative asprōs (Stat.), and ablative aspris (Verg.).

617. (2.) Other stems in -ro- have a vowel before r only in the nominative singular masculine -er (454); they are declined as follows:

Example Stems	M. aeger, F. aegra, Ne. aegrum, <i>ill</i> , aegro-, aegrā-.					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aeger	aegra	aegrum	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī	aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrum	aegram	aegrum	aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
<i>Abl.</i>	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

618. Nine adjectives or adjective pronouns have the pronoun form -ius in the genitive singular and -ī in the dative singular, for masculine, feminine, and neuter alike; they are the following:

alius, *another*

sōlus, *alone*

tōtus, *whole*

ūnus, *one*

ūllus, *any at all*

nūllus, *no*

alter, *the other*

uter, *which of the two*

neuter, *neither*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

625. When these adjectives have a neuter, it is the same as the gender forms, except in the accusative singular; they are declined as follows:

M. F. and Ne. *dīves*, *rich*, stem *dīvit-*.

Singular: N. *dīves*, G. *dīvitis*, D. *dīvitī*, Ac. M. and F. *dīvitem*, Ne. *dīves*, Ab. *dīvite*. Plural: N. and Ac. M. and F. *dīvitēs*, G. *dīvitum*, D. and Ab. *dīvitibus*.

626. The plural *caelitēs*, *heavenly, occupants of heaven*, is also declined like the plural of *dīves*; the singular Ab. *caelite* occurs a couple of times. *vetus*, *old*, G. *veteris*, is also declined like *dīves*, but has a Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. *vetera*; the Ab. S. is regularly *vetere*, but *veterī* is sometimes used.

### STEMS IN -i-.

#### OF THREE ENDINGS.

627. A dozen adjectives with stems in *-bri-*, *-cri-*, or *-tri-*, have a distinctive form in *-er* for the masculine nominative singular; they are:

<i>celeber</i> , <i>thronged</i>	<i>volucer</i> , <i>winged</i>	<i>pedester</i> , <i>foot-</i>
<i>salūber</i> , <i>healthy</i>	<i>campester</i> , <i>of a plain</i>	<i>puter</i> , <i>rotten</i>
<i>ācer</i> , <i>keen</i>	<i>equester</i> , <i>cavalry-</i>	<i>silvester</i> , <i>woody</i>
<i>alacer</i> , <i>lively</i>	<i>palūster</i> , <i>of a swamp</i>	<i>terrester</i> , <i>land-</i>

So also *celer*, *swift*. The names of months, *September*, *Octōber*, *November*, *December*, are also adjectives with stems in *-bri-*, but are not used in the neuter. Other adjectives with stems in *-bri-*, *-cri-*, or *-tri-*, have no distinctive form for the masculine nominative singular: as, *muliebris*, *mediocris*, *inlūstris*.

628. These adjectives are declined as follows:

Example Stem	M. <i>ācer</i> , F. <i>ācris</i> , Ne. <i>ācre</i> , <i>sharp</i> , <i>ācri-</i> .					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrīs, -ēs</i>	<i>ācrīs, -ēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācri</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

629. In all cases but the masculine nominative singular these adjectives are just like those in *-i-* 'of two endings' (630). But the ablative always has *-ī*, never *-e*, and the genitive plural always has *-ium*, never *-um*. In *celer* the second *e* belongs to the stem: M. *celer*, F. *celeris*, Ne. *celere*; the genitive plural, which is *celerum*, is found only as a substantive. Most of these adjectives have now and then a masculine in *-is*, like adjectives 'of two endings' (630), and in old Latin the nominative *-er* is rarely feminine.

OF TWO ENDINGS.

630. Adjectives 'of two endings' with stems in **-i-** are declined as follows:

Example Stem	M. and F. brevis, Ne. breve, <i>short</i> , brevi-.			
	Singular.		Plural.	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	brevis	breve	brevēs	brevia
<i>Gen.</i>	brevis	brevis	brevium	brevium
<i>Dat.</i>	brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus
<i>Acc.</i>	brevem	breve	brevīs, -ēs	brevia
<i>Abl.</i>	brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus

631. The ablative is sometimes **-e** when these adjectives are used substantively or in verse (558). The genitive plural is rarely **-um** for **-ium** (563).

OF ONE ENDING.

632. Most adjectives 'of one ending' have a consonant form of the stem in the singular, except usually in the ablative (633), and an **-i-** stem in the plural; they are declined as follows:

Examples Stems	M. F. and Ne. audāx, <i>bold</i> , audāc(i)-.		M. F. and Ne. regēns, <i>ruling</i> , regent(i)-.	
	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<b>Singular</b>				
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	regēns	regēns
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	regentis	regentis
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī	regentī	regentī
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx	regentem	regēns
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī	audācī	regente, -i	regente, -i
<b>Plural</b>				
<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācia	regentēs	regentia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium	regentium	regentium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	regentibus	regentibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācis, -ēs	audācia	regentīs, -ēs	regentia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	regentibus	regentibus

633. Present participles have **-ī** in the ablative, when they are used as adjectives, otherwise **-e** (560). For **-ī** or **-e** in other words, see 559, 561. For **-ium** or **-um** in the genitive plural, 563.

634. Most adjectives 'of one ending' in -i- are declined as above (632); some of them have peculiarities in some of their cases, as follows:

635. (1.) *trux* (531), *savage*, has Ab. -ī or -e, G. Pl. -ium, no Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. *redux* (531), *returning*, has Ab. -ī or -e, no G. Pl. or Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. *hebes*, *dull*, *teres*, *cylindrical* (533), and compounds of *caput*, *head*, as *anceps*, (533), *two-headed*, have Ab. -ī, no G. Pl.; a Ne. Pl. N. or Ac. -ia is rare. For *locuplēs*, *rich*, see 533.

636. (2.) The following have -ī in the ablative, but -um of consonant stems in the genitive plural, and no nominative or accusative neuter plural: *inops* (535), *without means*, *vigil* (536), *wide-awake*, *memor* (537), *remembering*, *dēgener*, *degenerate*. *ūber* (537), *prolific*, has Ab. -ī, twice -e, Ne. Pl. once -a (Acc.). Compounds of *pēs*, as, *bipēs* (532), *two-legged*, have a late and rare Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. -ia.

### THE NUMERAL ADJECTIVE.

637. Of the cardinals, *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and the hundreds except *centum* are declined. The other cardinals are not declined.

638. *ūnus*, *one*, is declined as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Voc.</i>	ūne					

In verse, the genitive singular is often *ūnius*.

639. *duo*, *two*, and *trēs*, *three*, are declined as follows:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duo or duōs	duās	duo	trēs or trīs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

640. In dramatic verse, *duō*, &c., is common. In the genitive plural, *duo* sometimes has *duūm* (462). *ambō*, *both*, is declined like *duo*, but has -ō in the nominative and accusative, and only *ambōrum* and *ambārum* in the genitive plural. For the forms *duo*, *ambō*, see 415; *duōbus*, *duābus*, 464, 442.

641. Hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus* (613): as, *ducenti*, *ducentae*, *ducenta*, *two hundred*, G. *ducentōrum* or *ducentūm* (462), &c.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

651. In inscriptions, the datives MIHEI, TIBEI, and SIBEI occur, so written in verse sometimes even when the last syllable is short; and MIHE, TIBE. Plural: D. and Ab. VOBIS. Ac. ENOS in an old hymn; SESE (29,1).

---

THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVE.

652. The possessives of ego, tū, and suī, are meus, *mine*, tuus, *thine*, and suus, *his, her, its, their (own)*, declined like bonus (613), except that meus has mī in the vocative singular masculine (459); those of nōs and vōs are noster, *our*, and voster, later vester, *your*, declined like aeger (617).

653. Old forms are tuos, tuom, and suos, suom (452). In old verse meūs, mēi, &c., tūos, tūi, &c., suōs, suī, &c., often occur. sōs for suōs, sās for suās, and sīs for suīs, are old and rare.

654. Other case forms are found in inscriptions, as follows:

MEEIS, MIEIS, monosyllable; TOVAM; SVEI, SOVOM, SOVO, SVVO, SOVEIS, SVEIS, SVIEIS.

655. Emphasis is given (1.) by -met added to suō, suā, suōs, and to mea and sua, neuter plural: as, suōmet; (2.) by -pte, which is oftenest found with the ablative: as, suōpte.

---

(B.) OTHER PRONOUNS.

656. Some pronouns have a peculiar genitive singular in -ius and dative singular in -ī, for masculine, feminine, and neuter alike.

These are: iste, ille, ipse, uter, and their derivatives. Some other words of a pronoun character also have this form of the genitive and dative: see 618.

657. In verse, the -ī- of the genitive is often shortened, and always in utriusque; but neutrius is not found with short i. In dramatic verse, the genitive singular of iste, ille, or ipse, is often two syllables.

658. hic, is, quī or quis, and their derivatives have the genitive singular in -ius, thus: huius, eius, and quouis or cuius; in dramatic verse, these genitives are often one syllable. Their datives are huic for hoice, ēī or ēi, and quoi or cui.

659. Six words have a peculiar neuter nominative and accusative singular in -d: id, illud, istud, quid, quod, aliud, and derivatives. In manuscripts, -t is sometimes found for -d: as, it, illut, istut, &c.; sometimes also in inscriptions of the empire. In hoc for \*hod-ce and in istuc and illuc for \*istud-ce, \*illud-ce, the d has vanished (166, 1; 171, 1).

---

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

660. The demonstrative pronouns are hic, *this, this near me*; iste, istic, *that; that near you*; and ille, illic, *yonder, that*.

661. The demonstrative pronoun *hic*, *this*, *this near me*, is declined as follows :

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

662. The stem of *hic* is *ho-*, *hā-*; to most of its cases a demonstrative *-c* for *-ce* is attached. The masculine and feminine nominative singular and nominative and accusative neuter plural take an *-i-*: *hic* for *\*ho-i-ce* (108, *a*); *haec* for *ha-i-ce* (96). *hunc*, *hanc*, are for *\*hom-ce*, *\*ham-ce*. For the quantity of the first syllable of *huius*, see 153, 2; of *hoc*, 171, 1.

663. Old forms with the full ending *-ce* are rare except after *-s*: Plural Ne. Acc. *haece* (Enn.); G. F. *hārumce* (Cato); also G. *hōrunc*, *hārunc* (Pl., T.); *hōsce*, D. and Ab. *hīsce* (Pl., T.). After 100 B.C., the full form *-ce* is not found, except occasionally after *-s*: *huiusce*, *hōsce*, *hāsce*, *hīsce*. Before *-ne* interrogative it is retained in the weakened form *-ci-*: as, *hicine*. But *hicne*, *hocne*, *huicne*, &c., are found, though rarely.

664. The nominative *hic* or *hicine* found in the dramatists and rarely later is probably for *\*ho-c*, *\*he-c* (103, *a*). A nominative plural feminine *haec* is found in writers of all ages. Other and rare forms are: Pl. N. M. *hīsce* (461), D. or Ab. *hībus*.

665. Other case forms of *hic* are found in inscriptions, as follows :

N. M. *HEC*, *HIC*. G. *HOIVS*, *HVIIVS* (23), *HVIIVS*, *HOIVSCE*, *HOIVSQVE*, *HVIIVSQVE*. D. *HOICE*, *HOIC*, *HOI*, *HVIC*, *HVI*. Ac. M. *HONC*, *HOC*; F. *HANCE*; Ne. *HOCE*, *HVC*. Ab. M. and Ne. *HOCE*; F. *HACE*, oftener than *HAC* in republican inscriptions; *HAACE* (29, 1). Loc. *HEICE*, *HEIC*. Plural: N. M. *HEISCE*, *HEIS*, or *HEI*, *HISCE* or *HIS*; *HI*, not before Augustus; Ne. N. and Ac. *HAICE*, *HAECE*. G. *HORVNC*. D. and Ab. *HEISCE*, *HIBVS*. Ac. F. *HASCE*.

666. The demonstrative pronouns *iste*, *that*, *that near you*, and *ille*, *yonder*, are declined alike, as follows :

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>



667. The first syllable of *iste* and *ille* is often short in the dramatists. Old forms of *iste* are: N. *istus*, G. *istī*, in *istīmodī*, D. F. *istae*. The initial *i* of *iste* and of *istic* (669), is sometimes not written: as, *sta rēs* (Cic.), *stūc periculum* (Ter.). Old forms of *ille* are: N. *olus* (81); *ollus* or *olle*, &c.: as, D. S. or N. Pl. *ollī*, D. Pl. *ollīs*. G. *illī*, in *illīmodī*, D. F. *illae*. The dramatists have *eccistam*, *eccilla*, *eccillud*, *eccillum*, *eccillam*, for *ecce istam*, &c., and *ellum*, *ellam*, for *em illum*, &c.

668. Other case forms of *ille* are found in inscriptions, as follows:

D. F. *ILLAE*. Plural: N. M. *ILLEI*. G. *OLORVM* (81). D. and Ab. *OLLEIS*, *ILLEIS*.

669. *istic* and *illic*, compounded of *iste*, *ille*, and *-ce* or *-c*, are declined alike, as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>illic</i>	<i>illaec</i>	<i>illuc</i>	<i>illīc</i>	<i>illaec</i>	<i>illaec</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illunc</i>	<i>illanc</i>	<i>illuc</i>	<i>illōsce</i>	<i>illāsce</i>	<i>illaec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illōc</i>	<i>illāc</i>	<i>illōc</i>	<i>illisce</i>	<i>illisce</i>	<i>illisce</i>

670. Rare forms are: N. and Ac. Ne. *istoc*, *illoc*, G. *illīusce*, D. *illīc*, Ab. F. *istāce*, *illāce*. Plural: N. M. *illīsce* (461), *illīc*, Ac. *illōsce*, *illāsce*. Before *-ne* interrogative, *-ce* becomes *-ci-*: N. *illicine*, *istucine*, Ac. *illancine*, Ab. *istōcine*, *istācinē*. Pl. Ac. *istōscine*.

#### THE DETERMINATIVE PRONOUN.

671. The determinative pronoun *is*, *that*, *the aforesaid*, *the one*, is declined as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, iī, or ī</i>	<i>cae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ēi</i>	<i>ēi</i>	<i>ēi</i>	<i>eīs, iīs, or īs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs, or īs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs, or īs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs, or īs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs, or īs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs, or īs</i>

672. *is* and *id* (659) are formed from a stem *i-*, and the other parts from a stem *eo-*, *eā-*. The genitive is sometimes written in Cicero and Plautus *eius*; for the quantity of the first syllable of *eius*, see 153, 2; for *ēi*, see 127, 3, and 127, 4.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



## THE RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

## (I.) quī AND quis.

681. The stem *qui-*, or *quo-*, *quā-*, is used in three ways: as a relative, *who, which*; as an interrogative, *who? which? what?* as an indefinite, *any*.

682. (a.) The relative *quī*, *who, which*, is declined as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

683. (b.) The interrogative adjective *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, *which? what?* is declined like the relative *quī* (682).

684. The interrogative substantive has in the nominative singular *quis*, *quid*, *who? what?* the rest is like *quī* (682).

In old Latin, *quis* is both masculine and feminine, but a separate feminine form *quae* is used three or four times.

685. *quis* interrogative is sometimes used adjectively with appellatives: as, *quis senātor? what senator?* And *quī* is sometimes used substantively: as, *quī primus Ameriam nūntiat? who is the first to bring the tidings to America?*

686. (c.) The indefinite *quis* or *quī*, *one, any*, has the following forms:

*quis* and *quid* masculine and neuter substantives, *quī* and *quod* adjectives; feminine singular nominative and neuter plural nominative and accusative commonly *qua*, also *quae*. The rest is like *quī* (682).

687. *quis*, *quem*, *quid*, and *quibus* come from the stem *qui-*; the other parts come from *quo-*, *quā-*. *quae* stands for an older *quai* (690). For *quid* and *quod*, see 659.

688. Old forms of the genitive singular are *quoius*, and of the dative *quoiei*, *quoiī*, or *quoi*, also in derivatives of *quī* or *quis*. A genitive plural *quōiūm* is old and rare. The dative and ablative plural is sometimes *quīs* from *quo-*, *quā-*. A nominative plural interrogative and indefinite *quēs* is rare (Pacuv.).

689. The ablative or locative is sometimes *quī*, from the stem *qui-*: as an interrogative, *how?* as a relative, *wherewith, whereby*, masculine, feminine, or neuter, in old Latin sometimes with a plural antecedent; especially referring to an indefinite person, and with *cum* attached, *quicum*; and as an indefinite, *somehow*.

690. Other case forms of *quī* or *quis* and their derivatives are found in inscriptions, as follows:

N. *QVEI*, prevalent in republican inscriptions; also *QVI*; once *QVE*. G. *QVOIVS*, regularly in republican inscriptions; *CVIIVS*, *CVIIVS*, *CVIIVS* (23), once *QVIVS* (20). D. *QVOIEI*, *QVOI*; once F. *QVAI*. Ab. *QVEI*. Plural: N. M. *QVEI*, but after 120 B. C., occasionally *QVI*; *QVES*, indefinite; F. and Ne. *QVAI*. G. *QVOIVM*.

DERIVATIVES OF *quī* AND *quis*.

691. The derivatives of *quī* and *quis* have commonly *quis* and *quid* as substantives, and *quī* and *quod* as adjectives. Forms requiring special mention are named below:

692. *quisquis*, *whoever, whatever, everybody who, everything which*, an indefinite relative, has only these forms in common use: N. M. *quisquis*, sometimes F. in old Latin, Ne. N. and Ac. *quicquid* or *quidquid*, Ab. M. and Ne. as adjective *quōquō*.

Rare forms are: N. M. *quīquī*, Ac. *quemquem*, once Ab. F. *quāqua*, as adverb *quīqui*, once D. *quibusquibus*. A short form of the genitive occurs in *quoiquoimodī* or *cuicuumodī*, *of whatsoever sort*.

*aliquis* or *aliquī*, *aliqua*, once *aliquae* (Lucr.), *aliquid* or *aliquid*, *some one, some*; Ab. M. sometimes, Ne. often *aliquī* (689). Pl. Ne. N. and Ac. only *aliqua*; D. and Ab. sometimes *aliquis* (688).

*ecquis* or *ecquī*, *ecqua* or *ecquae*, *ecquid* or *ecquod*, *any?* Besides the nominative only these forms are found: D. *eccui*, Ac. *ecquem*, *ecquam*, *ecquid*, Ab. M. and Ne. *ecquō*. Pl. N. *ecquī*, Ac. M. *ecquōs*, F. *ecquās*.

*quicumque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, *whoever, whichever, everybody who, everything which*. The *cumque* is sometimes separated from *quī* by an intervening word. An older form is *quīquomque*, &c.

*quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam* or *quoddam*, *a, a certain, some one, so and so*; Ac. *quendam*, *quandam*. Pl. G. *quōrundam*, *quārundam*.

*quīlibet*, *quaelibet*, *quidlibet* or *quodlibet*, *any you please*.

*quisnam*, rarely *quīnam*, *quaenam*, *quidnam* or *quodnam*, *who ever? who in the world?* Sometimes *nam quis*, &c.

*quispiam*, *quaepiam*, *quippiam*, *quidpiam* or *quodpiam*, *any, any one*; Ab. also *quīpiam* (689), sometimes as adverb, *in any way*.

*quisquam*, *quicquam* or *quidquam*, *anybody at all, anything at all*, generally a substantive, less frequently an adjective, *any at all*. There is no distinctive feminine form, and *quisquam* and *quemquam* are rarely, and in old Latin, used as a feminine adjective. Ab. also *quīquam* (689), sometimes as adverb, *in any way at all*. No plural.

*quisque*, *quaeque*, *quicque*, *quidque* or *quodque*, *each*. Sometimes *ūnus* is prefixed: *ūnusquisque*; both parts are declined. *quisque* and *quemque* are sometimes feminine. Ab. S. *quīque* (689) rare, Ab. Pl. *quisque* (688) once (Lucr.).

*quīvis*, *quaevis*, *quidvis* or *quodvis*, *which you will*; Ab. also *quīvis* (689).

(2.) *uter*.

693. *uter, utra, utrum, whether? which of the two?* has the genitive singular *utrius*, and the dative singular *utrī*.

The rest is like *aeger* (617). *uter* is sometimes relative, *whichever*, or indefinite, *either of the two*.

DERIVATIVES OF *uter*.

694. The derivatives of *uter* are declined like *uter*; they are:

*neuter, neither of the two*, genitive *neutrius*, always with *ī* (657). When used as a grammatical term, *neuter*, the genitive is always *neutrī*: as, *generis neutrī, of neither gender*.

*utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque, whichever of the two, either of the two*.

*uterlibet, whichever you please*.

*uterque, whichever, both*. G. always *utriusque* (657).

*utervīs, whichever you wish*.

*alteruter, F. altera utra, Ne. alterutrum or alterum utrum, one or the other, G. alterius utrius, once late alterutrius, D. alterutri, Ac. M. alterutrum or alterum utrum, F. alterutram once (Plin.) or alteram utram, Ab. alterutrō or alterō utrō, F. alterā utrā. No Pl., except D. alterutris once (Plin.)*.

## CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

695. Pronouns often correspond with each other in meaning and form; some of the commonest correlatives are the following:

Kind.	Interrogative.	Indefinite.	Demonstrative, Determinative, &c.	Relative.
Simple	<i>quis, quī, who?</i>	<i>quis, quī, aliquis</i>	<i>hīc, iste, ille is, quisque</i>	<i>quī</i>
Alternative	<i>uter, which of the two?</i>	<i>uter, alteruter</i>	<i>uterque</i>	<i>uter, quī</i>
Number	<i>quot, how many? (431)</i>	<i>aliquot</i>	<i>tot</i>	<i>quot</i>
Quantity	<i>quantus, how large? (613)</i>	<i>aliquantus, quantusvīs</i>	<i>tantus</i>	<i>quantus</i>
Quality	<i>quālis, of what sort? (630)</i>	<i>quālislibet</i>	<i>tālis</i>	<i>quālis</i>



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## (2.) ABLATIVE.

## (a.) ABLATIVE OF SUBSTANTIVES.

703. *domō*, from home, *rūre*, from the country; *hodiē*, to-day (ho-, diē-), *volgō*, publicly, *vespere*, by twilight, *noctū*, by nights, nights, *lūce*, by light, *tempore*, in times, betimes; *sponte*, voluntarily, *forte*, by chance; *quotannis*, yearly; *grātiis* or *grātis*, for nothing, *ingrātiis* or *ingrātis*, against one's will; *īlicō*, on the spot (169, 4; 170, 2), *foris*, out of doors (\*forā-).

## (b.) ABLATIVE OF ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

704. Many adverbs in -ō are formed from adjectives of time: as, *perpetuō*, to the end, *crēbrō*, frequently, *rārō*, seldom, *repentinō*, suddenly, *sērō*, late, *primō*, at first. Many denote manner: as, *arcānō*, privily, *sēriō*, in earnest. Some are formed from participles: as, *auspicātō*, with auspices taken; *compositō*, by agreement. A plural is rare: *alternis*, alternately.

705. Instead of -ō, neuter ablatives commonly have -ē: as, *longē*, far, *doctē*, wisely. So also superlatives: *facillimē*, most easily, anciently FACILV-MED (362). Consonant stems have -e: as, *repente*, suddenly.

706. From pronouns some end in -ī (689): as, *quī*, how? indefinite, *quī*, somehow; *atquī*, but somehow; *quī-quam*, in any way at all.

707. Feminines: many in -ā: *ūnā*, together; *circā*, around; *contrā*, against (com-, 347); *extrā*, outside (ex, 347); in classical Latin, *frūstrā*, in vain (fraud-). So, especially, adverbs denoting the 'route by which:': *hāc*, this way; *rēctā*, straightway.

## (3.) LOCATIVE.

708. In -ī, from names of towns and a few other words: *Karthāginī*, at Carthage; *Rōmae*, for *Rōmāī*, at Rome; *domī*, at home; *illī*, commonly *illī-c*, there (illo-), *istī*, commonly *istī-c*, where you are, *hī-c*, here (ho-); old *sei*, common *sī*, at that, in that case, so, if; *sīc*, so (*sī*, -ce).

709. In -bī, from some pronouns: *ibī*, there (i-); *ubī* (for \**quobī*, 146), where; *alicubī*, somewhere; *sī-cubi*, if anywhere, *nē-cubi*, lest anywhere.

## OTHER ENDINGS.

710. Besides the above, other endings are also found in words of this class: as,

-s in *abs*, from, *ex*, out of; similarly *us-que*, in every case, ever, *us-quam*, anywhere at all. -tus has the meaning of an ablative: as, *intus*, from within, within; *antīquitus*, from old times, anciently; *funditus*, from the bottom, entirely. -ō denotes the 'place to which' in adverbs from pronoun stems: as, *eō*, thither; *quō*, whither; *illō*, or *illūc*, for *illoi-ce*, thither, after *hūc*; *hōc*, commonly *hūc*, perhaps for *hoi-ce* (99) hither. -im denotes the 'place from which': as, *istim*, commonly *istinc*, from where you are; *illim*, commonly *illinc*, from yonder; *hinc*, hence; *exim*, thereupon; also -de: as, *unde*, whence (quo-, 146), *sī-cunde*, if from any place, *nē-cunde*, lest from anywhere. -ter: as comparative (347): *praeter*, further, beyond, *inter*, between; denoting manner: *ācritēr*, sharply; *amanter*, affectionately; rarely from -o- stems: as, *firmiter*, steadfastly.

CORRELATIVE ADVERBS.

711. Adverbs derived from pronoun stems often correspond with each other in meaning and form; some of the commonest correlatives are the following:

	Interrogative.	Indefinite.	Demonstrative, Determinative, &c.	Relative.
Place	ubī, <i>where?</i>	alicubī usquam uspiam ubivīs	hīc, istīc, illic ibī, ibīdem	ubī
	quō, <i>whither?</i>	aliquō quōlibet quōvis	hūc, istūc, illūc eō, eōdem	quō
	quorsum, <i>whitherward?</i>	aliquōvor- sum	horsum, istorsum	quorsum
	unde, <i>whence?</i>	alicunde undelibet	hinc, istinc, illinc inde, indidem	unde
Time	quandō, <i>when?</i>	aliquandō umquam	nunc, tum, tunc	quom or cum
	quotiēns, <i>how often?</i>	aliquotiēns	totiēns	quotiēns
Way	quā, <i>by what way?</i>	aliquā quāvis	hāc, istāc, illāc eā, eādem	quā
Manner	utī or ut, <i>how?</i>	aliquā	ita, sic	utī or ut (146)
Degree	quam, <i>how?</i>	aliquam	tam	quam

II. SENTENCES AS ADVERBS.

712. Some adverbs are condensed sentences: as,

ilicet, *you may go, straightway* (īre licet); scīlicet, *you may know, obviously, of course* (scīre licet); vidēlicet, *you can see, plainly* (vidēre licet); nūdiustertius, *now is the third day, day before yesterday* (num dius, i.e. dīes, tertius); forsitan, *maybe* (fors sit an); mīrum quantum, *strange how much, astonishingly*; nesciō quō pactō, nesciō quōmodo, *somehow or other, unfortunately*.



## (B.) INFLECTION OF THE VERB.

713. The verb is inflected by attaching person endings to the several stems.

## THE STEM.

714. The stem contains the meaning of the verb, and also denotes the mode (mood) and the time (tense) of the action as viewed by the speaker.

715. There are three MOODS, *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, and *Imperative*.

716. There are six TENSES in the indicative, three of the present system, *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future*; and three of the perfect system, *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Perfect*. The subjunctive lacks the futures; the imperative has only the present.

717. The meanings of the moods and tenses are best learnt from reading. No satisfactory translation can be given in the paradigms, especially of the subjunctive, which requires a variety of translations for its various uses.

718. The verb has two principal stems: I. The Present stem, which is the base of the present system; II. The Perfect stem, which is the base of the perfect active system.

719. The perfect system has no passive; its place is supplied by the perfect participle with a form of *sum*, *am*, or less frequently of *fuī*, *am become*.

720. Many verbs have only the present system: as, *maereō*, *mourn*; some have only the perfect system: as, *meminī*, *remember*. Some verbs have a present and perfect system made up of two separate roots or stems: as, present indicative *ferō*, *carry*, perfect indicative *tulī*, and perfect participle *lātus*; present *possum*, *can*, perfect *potuī*.

## THE PERSON ENDING.

721. The person ending limits the meaning of the stem by pointing out the person of the subject. There are three PERSONS, the *First*, used of the speaker, the *Second*, of what is spoken to, and the *Third*, of what is spoken of. The person ending furthermore indicates number and voice.

722. There are two NUMBERS: the *Singular*, used of one, and the *Plural*, used of more than one.

723. There are two VOICES: the *Active*, indicating that the subject acts, and the *Passive*, indicating that the subject acts on himself, or more commonly is acted on by another.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## NOUNS OF THE VERB.

732. The verb is accompanied by some nouns, which are conveniently, though not quite accurately, reckoned parts of the verb; they are:

Three Infinitives, *Present Active* and *Passive*, and *Perfect Active*, sometimes called the *Infinitive Mood*. For the future active and passive and the perfect passive, compound forms are used.

The *Gerund* and the *Gerundive*.

Two *Supines*.

Three Participles, *Present* and *Future Active*, and *Perfect Passive*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

733. The several verb stems can readily be found, when once the principal parts are known; these are given in the dictionary.

734. The PRINCIPAL PARTS of a verb are the *Present Indicative Active*, *Present Infinitive Active*, *Perfect Indicative Active*, and *Perfect Participle*: as,

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
regō, <i>rule</i>	regere	rēxī	rēctus
laudō, <i>praise</i>	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātus
moneō, <i>advise</i>	monēre	monuī	monitus
audiō, <i>hear</i>	audire	audīvī	audītus

735. The Principal Parts of deponents are the *Present Indicative*, *Present Infinitive*, and *Perfect Participle*: as,

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. PART.
queror, <i>complain</i>	querī	questus
mīror, <i>wonder</i>	mīrārī	mīrātus
vereor, <i>fear</i>	verērī	veritus
partior, <i>share</i>	partīrī	partītus

## DESIGNATION OF THE VERB.

736. A verb is usually named by the present indicative active first person singular: as, regō; laudō, moneō, audiō; or by the present infinitive active: as, regere; laudāre, monēre, audire. Deponents are named by the corresponding passive forms: as, queror; mīror, vereor, partior; or querī; mīrārī, verērī, partīrī.

737. For convenience, verbs with -ere in the present infinitive active are called *Verbs in -ere*; those with -āre, -ēre, or -īre, *Verbs in -āre, -ēre, or -īre*, respectively. In like manner deponents are designated as *Verbs in -ī*; or *Verbs in -ārī, -ērī, or -īrī*, respectively.

THEME OF THE VERB.

738. The several stems of the verb come from a form called the *Theme*. In primitives, the theme is a root ; in denominatives, the theme is a noun stem.

Thus, *reg-* in *reg-ō* is a root ; while *vesti-* in *vesti-ō*, *dress*, is a noun stem. The noun stem is sometimes modified in form. Oftentimes the noun stem is only presumed: as, *audi-* in *audi-ō*.

739. Some verbs have a denominative theme in the present system, and a primitive theme in the perfect system, others have the reverse.

740. Most verbs with an infinitive of more than two syllables in *-āre*, *-ēre*, or *-īre*, or, if deponent, in *-ārī*, *-ērī*, or *-īrī*, are denominative ; most other verbs are primitive.

Thus, *laudāre*, *monēre*, *audire* ; *mīrārī*, *verērī*, *partīrī*, are denominative ; while *esse*, *dare*, (*dē*)*lēre*, *regere*, *querī*, are primitive. A few verbs, however, which have the appearance of denominatives, are thought to be primitive in their origin.

ARRANGEMENT OF THE VERB.

741. Verbs are divided into two classes, according to the form of the present system : I. Root verbs, and verbs in *-ere*, mostly primitive ; II. Verbs in *-āre*, *-ēre*, or *-īre*, mostly denominative.

742. Verbs are sometimes arranged without regard to difference of kind, in the alphabetical order of the vowel before *-s* of the second person singular of the present indicative active, *ā*, *ē*, *i*, *ī* : thus, *laudās*, *monēs*, *regis*, *audīs*, sometimes called the *first*, *second*, *third*, and *fourth conjugation* respectively.

I. PRIMITIVE VERBS.

743. A few of the oldest and commonest verbs of everyday life have a bare root as stem in the present indicative or in parts of it ; and some of them have other peculiarities ; such are called *Root Verbs*, or by some, *irregular* (744-781). Most primitives are verbs in *-ere*, like *regō* (782).

(A.) ROOT VERBS.

*Irregular Verbs.*

(a.) WITH A PREVALENT BARE ROOT.

744. Primitives with the bare root as present indicative stem in almost all their forms are *sum*, *am*, *dō*, *give*, *put*, and compounds ; and with the root doubled, *bibō*, *drink*, *serō*, *sow*, and *sistō*, *set*.

(1.) *sum, am* (e s-, s-).

745. *sum, am*, is used only in the present system (720). The perfect system is supplied by forms of *fuī* (f u-).

PRINCIPAL PARTS.			
PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
<i>sum</i>	<i>esse</i>	( <i>fuī</i> )	—
INDICATIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT TENSE.			
Singular.		Plural.	
<i>sum, I am</i> <i>es, thou art</i> <i>est, he is</i>		<i>sumus, we are</i> <i>estis, you are</i> <i>sunt, they are</i>	
IMPERFECT TENSE.			
<i>eram, I was</i> <i>erās, thou wert</i> <i>erat, he was</i>		<i>erāmus, we were</i> <i>erātis, you were</i> <i>erant, they were</i>	
FUTURE TENSE.			
<i>erō, I shall be</i> <i>eris, thou wilt be</i> <i>erit, he will be</i>		<i>erimus, we shall be</i> <i>eritis, you will be</i> <i>erunt, they will be</i>	
PERFECT TENSE.			
<i>fuī, I have been, or was</i> <i>fuistī, thou hast been, or wert</i> <i>fuit, he has been, or was</i>		<i>fuiimus, we have been, or were</i> <i>fuistis, you have been, or were</i> <i>fuērunt or -re, they have been, or were</i>	
PLUPERFECT TENSE.			
<i>fueram, I had been</i> <i>fuerās, thou hadst been</i> <i>fuerat, he had been</i>		<i>fuerāmus, we had been</i> <i>fuerātis, you had been</i> <i>fuerant, they had been</i>	
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.			
<i>fuerō, I shall have been</i> <i>fueris, thou wilt have been</i> <i>fuerit, he will have been</i>		<i>fuerimus, we shall have been</i> <i>fueritis, you will have been</i> <i>fuerint, they will have been</i>	



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

747. The indicative and imperative *es* is for older *ess* (171, 1), and is regularly used long by Plautus and Terence. The *e* of *es* and *est* is not pronounced after a vowel or *-m*, and is often omitted in writing: as *experrēcta es*, pronounced *experrēctas*; *epistula est*, pronounced *epistulast*; *cōnsilium est*, pronounced *cōnsiliumst*. In the dramatists, *-s* preceded by a vowel, which is usually short, unites with a following *es* or *est*: thus, *tū servos es* becomes *tū servos*; *similis est*, *similist*; *virtūs est*, *virtūst*; *rēs est*, *rēst*.

748. Old forms are: *SONT* (inscr. about 120 B.C.); with suffix *-scō* (834), *escit* (for *\*esscit*), *gets to be, will be, escunt*; present subjunctive, *siem, siēs, siet*, and *sient* (841), common in inscriptions down to 100 B.C., and in old verse; also in compounds; imperative *estōd* rare.

749. The present participle is used only as an adjective. It has two forms: *sontem* (accusative, no nominative), which has entirely lost its original meaning of *being, actual, the real man*, and has only the secondary meaning of *guilty*, and *īnsōns, innocent*; and *-sēns* in *absēns, away, praesēns, at hand, dī cōnsentēs, gods collective*; also once *INSENTIBVS*. *sum* has no gerund or gerundive.

750. A subjunctive present *fuam, fuās, fuat, and fuant* occurs in old Latin; and an imperfect *forem, forēs, foret, and forent*, in all periods. The present infinitive *fore, to get to be, become*, has a future meaning. Old forms in the perfect system are *FVVEIT* (29, 1), *FVET*; *fūit, fūimus, fūerim, fūerit, fūerint, fūisset* (Plaut., Enn.). *fui* has no perfect participle or supine.

## 751.

*possum, can.*

Principal parts: <i>possum, posse</i> ; ( <i>potuī</i> , see 875.)		
	INDICATIVE MOOD.	
	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>possum, potes, potest</i>	<i>possumus, potestis, possunt</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>poteram, poterās, poterat</i>	<i>poterāmus, poterātis, poterant</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>poterō, poteris, poterit</i>	<i>poterimus, poteritis, poterunt</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>possim, possis, possit</i>	<i>possimus, possitis, possint</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>possem, possēs, posset</i>	<i>possēmus, possētis, possent</i>
	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>posse</i>	—

752. *possum* is formed from *pote, able*, and *sum*, juxtaposed (166, 2; 396). The separate forms *potis sum, &c.*, or *pote sum, &c.*, are also used, and sometimes even *potis* or *pote* alone takes the place of a verb; in either case *potis* and *pote* are indeclinable, and are applied to gender words and neuters both.

753. *t* is retained before a vowel, except in *possem, &c.*, for *potessem, &c.*, and in *posse*; *t* before *s* changes to *s* (166, 2). Old forms are: *possiem, &c.*, (748), *potessem, potisset, potesse*. Rare forms are *POTESTO* (inscr. 58 B.C.), and passives, as *potestur, &c.*, with a passive infinitive (1484). *possum* has no participles; the perfect system, *potuī, &c.*, is like *fui, &c.* (745).

(2.) *dō, give, put* (d ā-, d a-).

754. There are two verbs *dō*, one meaning *give*, and one meaning *put*. The *dō* meaning *put* is oftenest used in compounds; the simple verb has been crowded out by *pōnō*. The present system of *dō* is as follows:

Principal parts: *dō, dare, dedī, datus.*

ACTIVE VOICE.	
INDICATIVE MOOD.	
	Singular.   Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>dō, dās, dat</i>   <i>damus, datis, dant</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>dabam, dabās, dabat</i>   <i>dabāmus, dabātis, dabant</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>dabō, dabis, dabit</i>   <i>dabimus, dabitis, dabunt</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>dem, dēs, det</i>   <i>dēmus, dētis, dent</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>darem, darēs, daret</i>   <i>darēmus, darētis, darent</i>
IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
	<i>dā or datō, datō</i>   <i>date or datōte, dantō</i>
INFINITIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>dare</i>
GERUND.	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dandī, &amp;c.</i>
PARTICIPLE.	
	<i>dāns</i>
PASSIVE VOICE.	
INDICATIVE MOOD.	
	Singular.   Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	—, <i>daris or -re, datur</i>   <i>damur, daminī, dantur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>dabar, dabāre or -ris, dabātur</i>   <i>dabāmur, dabāminī, dabantur</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>dabor, dabere or -ris, dabitur</i>   <i>dabimur, dabiminī, dabuntur</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Pres.</i>	—, <i>dēre or -ris, dētur</i>   —, <i>dēminī, dentur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>darer, darēre or -ris, darētur</i>   <i>darēmur, darēminī, darentur</i>
IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
	<i>dare or dator, dator</i>   <i>daminī, dantor</i>
INFINITIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>darī</i>
GERUNDIVE.	
	<i>dandus</i>



755. In the present system *a* is short throughout in the first syllable, except in *dās* and *dā*. For *dedī*, *datus*, and supines *datum*, *datū*, see 859 and 900.

756. Old forms: *danunt* of uncertain origin (833) for *dant*. From another form of the root come *duis*, *duit*; *interduō*, *concrēduō*, perfect *concrēduī*; subjunctive *duim*, *duīs* (*duās*), *duit* and *duint* (841), and compounds, used especially in law language, and in praying and cursing; *crēduam*, *crēduās* or *crēduīs*, *crēduat* or *crēduit*.

757. Real compounds of *dō* have a present system like *regō* (782); in the perfect and the perfect participle, *e* and *a* become *i*: as, *abdō*, *put away*, *abdere*, *abdidī*, *abditus*; *crēdō*, *put trust in*. *perdō*, *fordo*, *destroy*, and *vēndō*, *put for sale*, have gerundives *perdendus*, *vēndundus*, and perfect participles *perditus*, *vēnditus*; the rest of the passive is supplied by forms of *pereō* and *vēneō*. *reddō*, *give back*, has future *reddibō* 3 times (Plaut.). In the apparent compounds with *circum*, *pessum*, *satis*, and *vēnum*, *dō* remains without change, as in 754.

(3.) *bibō*, *serō*, and *sistō*.

758. *bibō*, *drink*, *serō*, *sow* (for \**si-sō*, 154), and *sistō*, *set*, form their present stem by reduplication of the root (189). The vowel before the person endings is the root vowel, which becomes variable, like a formative vowel (824). These verbs have the present system like *regō* (782).

(b.) WITH THE BARE ROOT IN PARTS.

*inquam*, *eō*, and *queō*.

759. *inquam*, *eō*, and *queō* have the bare root as present stem, in almost all their parts; in a few parts only the root is extended by a formative vowel (829).

(1.) *inquam*, *say I*, *quoth I*.

760. *inquam*, *say I*, is chiefly used in quoting a person's direct words; and, from its meaning, is naturally very defective. The only parts in common use are the following:

		INDICATIVE MOOD.	
		Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>inquam</i> , <i>inquis</i> , <i>inquit</i>	_____	_____, _____, <i>inquiunt</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	_____, <i>inquiēs</i> , <i>inquiet</i>	_____	_____, _____, _____

761. Rare forms are: subjunctive *inquiet* (Cornif.), indicative imperfect *inquiēbat* (Cic.), used twice each; indicative present *inquimus* (Hor.), perfect *inquiī* (Catull.), *inquiīstī* (Cic.), once each; imperative *inque*, 4 times (Plaut. 2, Ter. 2), *inquitō*, 3 times (Plaut.). For *inquam*, see 728.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

766. A double *i* is found in *iissēs* and *iisset* once each (*Ciris*, *Nepos*), also sometimes in compounds of these forms: as *rediissēs*, *interiisset*. Compounds sometimes have it also in the perfect infinitive and in the second person singular of the perfect indicative: as, *abiisse*, *abiistī*; also in *rediistis* once (*Stat.*). In the first person of the perfect indicative a single long *ī* is found rarely in late writers in the singular: as, *adī* (*Val. Fl.*).

767. A few examples are found of a perfect system with *v*, as *ivī*, &c. This form is confined almost exclusively to poetry and late prose.

(a) Examples of simple forms with *v* are: *ivisse* (*Plaut.*), *ivit* (*Cato*), *ivī* (*Varro*), *iverat* (*Catull.*). (b) Compound forms: *exivī* (*Plaut.*), *obivit* (*Verg.*), *subivit* (*Stat.*); *trānsivisse* (*Claud. ap. Tac.*), *inivimus*, *trānsivī*, *trānsivimus* (*Curt.*), *trānsivit*, *trānsiverant* (*Sen.*), *exivit* (*Gell.*). Apparent compounds (396): *intrō ivit* (*C. Gracch.*, *Piso*, *Gell.*).

(3.) *queō*, *can*.

768. *queō*, *can*, and *nequeō*, *can't*, have the perfect *quivī*, the rest like *eō* (762); but they have no imperative, gerundive, or future participle, and the present participle is rare. *queō* is commonly used with a negative, and some parts only so. Passive forms are rare, and only used with a passive infinitive (1484).

*edō*; *volō* (*nōlō*, *mālō*) and *ferō*.

(1.) *edō*, *eat* (*e d-*, *ē d-*).

769. *edō*, *eat*, has a present system with a formative vowel like *regō* throughout (782); but in some parts of the present, and of the imperfect subjunctive, parallel root forms are usually found, with *d* of the root changed to *s*, and the vowel lengthened (135), as may be seen in the following:

Principal parts: <i>edō</i> , <i>ēsse</i> , <i>ēdī</i> , <i>ēsus</i> .	
	INDICATIVE MOOD.
	Singular.   Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>edō</i> , <i>ēs</i> or <i>edis</i> , <i>ēst</i> or <i>edit</i>   <i>edimus</i> , <i>ēstis</i> or <i>editis</i> , <i>edunt</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>edim</i> , <i>edīs</i> , <i>edit</i>   <i>edimus</i> , <i>edītis</i> , <i>edint</i>
	or <i>edam</i> , <i>edās</i> , <i>edat</i>   or <i>edāmus</i> , <i>edātis</i> , <i>edant</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>ēsem</i> , <i>ēssēs</i> , <i>ēssēt</i>   <i>ēssēmus</i> , _____, <i>ēssēt</i>
	or <i>ederem</i> , <i>ederēs</i> , <i>ederet</i>   or <i>ederēmus</i> , <i>ederētis</i> , <i>ederent</i>
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
	<i>ēs</i> or <i>ede</i> , <i>ēstō</i> or <i>editō</i>   <i>ēste</i> or <i>edite</i>
	INFINITIVE.   PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ēsse</i>   <i>edēns</i>

770. For ēs, see 728; for edim, &c., 841. In the passive, the indicative present ēstur is used, and imperfect subjunctive ēssētur. The perfect participle ēsus is for an older ēssus (170, 7). Supines ēssum, ēssū (Plaut.).

771. comedō, eat up, has also the following root forms: comēs, comēst, comēstis; comēstō; comēsse; comēssēs, comēssēt, comēssēmus. The present subjunctive has also comedim, comedīs, comedint. The participle perfect is comēssus, comēsus, or comēstus, future comēssūrus. exedō, eat out, has exēst and exēsse; subjunctive exedint. adedō, eat at, has adēst.

772. volō (nōlō, mālō) and ferō have the bare root in some parts only of the present system; in other parts the root extended by a formative vowel, like regō (782). volō (nōlō, mālō) lack some forms, as will be seen below.

773. (2.) volō, will, wish, want, am willing (vol-, vel-).

Principal parts : volō, velle, voluī, ———.		
INDICATIVE MOOD.		
	Singular.	Plural.
Pres.	volō, vīs, volt or vult	volumus, voltis or vultis, volunt
Imp.	volēbam, volēbās, volēbat	volēbāmus, volēbātis, volēbant
Fut.	volam, volēs, volet	volēmus, volētis, volent
Perf.	voluī, voluistī, voluit	voluimus, voluistis, voluērunt or -re
Plup.	volueram, voluerās, volue- erat	voluerāmus, voluerātis, volue- rant
F. P.	voluerō, volueris, volue- rit	voluerimus, volueritis, volue- rint
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
Pres.	velim, velīs, velit	velīmus, velītis, velint
Imp.	vellem, vellēs, vellet	vellēmus, vellētis, vellent
Perf.	voluerim, voluerīs, volue- erit	voluerīmus, voluerītis, volue- erint
Plup.	voluissē, voluissēs, volu- issēt	voluissēmus, voluissētis, volu- issent
INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	velle	volēns
Perf.	voluisse	

774. volo for volō is rare (2443). volt and voltis became vult and vultis about the time of Augustus (141). For volumus, see 142; velim, &c., 841; vellem, &c., velle, 166, 8. sis, an thou wilt, is common for sī vīs (Plaut. Ter., Cic., Liv.). sultis, an 't please you, is used by Plautus for sī voltis.

775. *nōlō*, *won't*, is formed from *ne-*, *not*, and *volō*, juxtaposed, and *mālō*, *like better*, abbreviated from *māvolō* for \**magsvolo* (779, 170, 2).

776. *nōlō*, *won't*, *don't want*, *object*, *am not willing*.

Principal parts : *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōluī*, ———.

		INDICATIVE MOOD.	
		Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>		<i>nōlō</i> , <i>nōn vīs</i> , <i>nōn volt</i> or <i>vult</i>	<i>nōlumus</i> , <i>nōn voltis</i> or <i>vultis</i> , <i>nōlunt</i>
<i>Imp.</i>		<i>nōlēbam</i> , <i>nōlēbās</i> , <i>nōlēbat</i>	<i>nōlēbāmus</i> , <i>nōlēbātis</i> , <i>nōlēbant</i>
<i>Fut.</i>		———, <i>nōlēs</i> , <i>nōlet</i>	<i>nōlēmus</i> , <i>nōlētis</i> , <i>nōlent</i>
		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Pres.</i>		<i>nōlim</i> , <i>nōlīs</i> , <i>nōlit</i>	<i>nōlīmus</i> , <i>nōlītis</i> , <i>nōlint</i>
<i>Imp.</i>		<i>nōllem</i> , <i>nōllēs</i> , <i>nōllet</i>	<i>nōllēmus</i> , <i>nōllētis</i> , <i>nōllent</i>
		IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
		<i>nōlī</i> or <i>nōlītō</i> , <i>nōlītō</i>	<i>nōlite</i> or <i>nōlītōte</i> , <i>nōluntō</i>
		INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>		<i>nōlle</i>	———

777. *nevis* and *nevult*, from *ne-*, *not*, are found in Plautus. *nōlō* has usually no participles, but oblique cases of *nōlēns* are used a few times by post-Augustan writers (Cels., Luc., Quintil., Ta., Juv., Mart., Plin.). The perfect system, *nōluī*, &c., is like that of *volō* (772).

778. *mālō*, *like better*, *choose rather*.

Principal parts : *mālō*, *mālle*, *māluī*, ———.

		INDICATIVE MOOD.	
		Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>		<i>mālō</i> , <i>māvis</i> , <i>māvult</i> or <i>māvult</i>	<i>mālumus</i> , <i>māvultis</i> or <i>māvultis</i> , <i>mālunt</i>
<i>Imp.</i>		<i>mālēbam</i> , <i>mālēbās</i> , <i>mālēbat</i>	<i>mālēbāmus</i> , <i>mālēbātis</i> , <i>mālēbant</i>
<i>Fut.</i>		———, <i>mālēs</i> , <i>mālet</i>	<i>mālēmus</i> , <i>mālētis</i> , <i>mālent</i>
		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Pres.</i>		<i>mālim</i> , <i>mālīs</i> , <i>mālit</i>	<i>mālīmus</i> , <i>mālītis</i> , <i>mālint</i>
<i>Imp.</i>		<i>māllem</i> , <i>māllēs</i> , <i>māllet</i>	<i>māllēmus</i> , <i>māllētis</i> , <i>māllent</i>
		INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>		<i>mālle</i>	———

779. Old forms are *māvolō*, *māvolunt*; *māvolet*; *māvelim*, *māvelīs*, *māvelit*; *māvellem*. The perfect system, *māluī*, &c., is like that of *volō* (772).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## (B.) VERBS IN -ere.

*The Third Conjugation.*

782.

regō, rule.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. INDIC.

regō

PRES. INFIN.

regere

PERF. INDIC.

rēxī

PERF. PART.

rēctus

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## Singular.

regō, *I rule, or am ruling*  
 regis, *thou rulest, or art ruling*  
 regit, *he rules, or is ruling*

## Plural.

regimus, *we rule, or are ruling*  
 regitis, *you rule, or are ruling*  
 regunt, *they rule, or are ruling*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

regēbam, *I was ruling, or I ruled*  
 regēbās, *thou wert ruling, or thou ruledst*  
 regēbat, *he was ruling, or he ruled*

regēbāmus, *we were ruling, or we ruled*  
 regēbātis, *you were ruling, or you ruled*  
 regēbant, *they were ruling, or they ruled*

## FUTURE TENSE.

regam, *I shall rule*  
 regēs, *thou wilt rule*  
 reget, *he will rule*

regēmus, *we shall rule*  
 regētis, *you will rule*  
 regent, *they will rule*

## PERFECT TENSE.

rēxī, *I have ruled, or I ruled*  
 rēxistī, *thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst*  
 rēxit, *he has ruled, or he ruled*

rēximus, *we have ruled, or we ruled*  
 rēxistis, *you have ruled, or you ruled*  
 rēxērunt or -re, *they have ruled, or they ruled*

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rēxeram, *I had ruled*  
 rēxerās, *thou hadst ruled*  
 rēxerat, *he had ruled*

rēxerāmus, *we had ruled*  
 rēxerātis, *you had ruled*  
 rēxerant, *they had ruled*

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

rēxerō, *I shall have ruled*  
 rēxeris, *thou wilt have ruled*  
 rēxerit, *he will have ruled*

rēxerimus, *we shall have ruled*  
 rēxeritis, *you will have ruled*  
 rēxerint, *they will have ruled*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

regam, *may I rule*  
 regās, *mayst thou rule*  
 regat, *let him rule*

Plural.

regāmus, *let us rule*  
 regātis, *may you rule*  
 regant, *let them rule*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

regerem, *I should rule*  
 regerēs, *thou wouldst rule*  
 regeret, *he would rule*

regerēmus, *we should rule*  
 regerētis, *you would rule*  
 regerent, *they would rule*

PERFECT TENSE.

rēxerim, *I may have ruled*  
 rēxerīs, *thou mayst have ruled*  
 rēxerit, *he may have ruled*

rēxerimus, *we may have ruled*  
 rēxerītis, *you may have ruled*  
 rēxerint, *they may have ruled*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rēxissem, *I should have ruled*  
 rēxissēs, *thou wouldst have ruled*  
 rēxisset, *he would have ruled*

rēxissēmus, *we should have ruled*  
 rēxissētis, *you would have ruled*  
 rēxissent, *they would have ruled*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

rege or regitō, *rule, thou shalt rule*  
 regitō, *he shall rule*

regite or regitōte, *rule, you shall rule*  
 reguntō, *they shall rule*

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. regere, *to rule*  
 Perf. rēxisse, *to have ruled*  
 Fut. rēctūrus esse, *to be going to rule*

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. regēns, *ruling*  
 Fut. rēctūrus, *going to rule*

GERUND.

Gen. regendī, *of ruling*  
 Dat. regendō, *for ruling*  
 Acc. regendum, *ruling*  
 Abl. regendō, *by ruling*

SUPINE.

Acc. \*rēctum, *to rule, not used*  
 Abl. \*rēctū, *in ruling, not used*



## VERBS IN -ere.

*The Third Conjugation.*

783.

*regor, am ruled.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## Singular.

## Plural.

*regor, I am ruled*  
*regeris or -re, thou art ruled*  
*regitur, he is ruled*

*regimur, we are ruled*  
*regimini, you are ruled*  
*reguntur, they are ruled*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*regēbar, I was ruled*  
*regēbāre or -ris, thou wert ruled*  
*regēbātur, he was ruled*

*regēbāmur, we were ruled*  
*regēbāmini, you were ruled*  
*regēbantur, they were ruled*

## FUTURE TENSE.

*regar, I shall be ruled*  
*regere or -ris, thou wilt be ruled*  
*regētur, he will be ruled*

*regēmur, we shall be ruled*  
*regēmini, you will be ruled*  
*regentur, they will be ruled*

## PERFECT TENSE.

*rēctus sum, I have been, or was ruled*  
*rēctus es, thou hast been, or wert ruled*  
*rēctus est, he has been, or was ruled*

*rēcti sumus, we have been, or were ruled*  
*rēcti estis, you have been, or were ruled*  
*rēcti sunt, they have been, or were ruled*

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*rēctus eram, I had been ruled*  
*rēctus erās, thou hadst been ruled*  
*rēctus erat, he had been ruled*

*rēcti erāmus, we had been ruled*  
*rēcti erātis, you had been ruled*  
*rēcti erant, they had been ruled*

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

*rēctus erō, I shall have been ruled*  
*rēctus eris, thou wilt have been ruled*  
*rēctus erit, he will have been ruled*

*rēcti erimus, we shall have been ruled*  
*rēcti eritis, you will have been ruled*  
*rēcti erunt, they will have been ruled*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## VERBS IN -iō, -ere.

784. Verbs in -iō, -ere, as *capiō, capere, take (c a p-)*, drop an *i* in some forms of the present and imperfect. The present system is as follows :

		ACTIVE VOICE.	
		INDICATIVE MOOD.	
		Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>		<i>capiō, capis, capit</i>	<i>capimus, capitis, capiunt</i>
<i>Imp.</i>		<i>capiēbam, capiēbās, capiēbat</i>	<i>capiēbāmus, capiēbātis, capiēbant</i>
<i>Fut.</i>		<i>capiam, capiēs, capiet</i>	<i>capiēmus, capiētis, capient</i>
		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Pres.</i>		<i>capiam, capiās, capiat</i>	<i>capiāmus, capiātis, capiant</i>
<i>Imp.</i>		<i>caperem, caperēs, caperet</i>	<i>caperēmus, caperētis, caperent</i>
		IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
		<i>cape or capitō, capitō</i>	<i>capite or capitōte, capiuntō</i>
		INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>		<i>capere</i>	<i>capiēns</i>
		GERUND.	
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>capiendī, &amp;c.</i>	
		PASSIVE VOICE.	
		INDICATIVE MOOD.	
		Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>		<i>capior, caperis or -re, capitur</i>	<i>capimur, capimini, capiuntur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>		<i>capiēbar, capiēbāre or -ris, capiēbātur</i>	<i>capiēbāmur, capiēbāmini, capiēbantur</i>
<i>Fut.</i>		<i>capiar, capiēre or -ris, capiētur</i>	<i>capiēmur, capiēmini, capientur</i>
		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Pres.</i>		<i>capiar, capiāre or -ris, capiātur</i>	<i>capiāmur, capiāmini, capiantur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>		<i>caperer, caperēre or -ris, caperētur</i>	<i>caperēmur, caperēmini, caperentur</i>
		IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
		<i>capere or capitor, capitor</i>	<i>capimini, capiuntor</i>
		INFINITIVE.	GERUNDIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>		<i>capī</i>	<i>capiendus</i>

## The Verb: Verbs in -iō, -ere. [785-791.]

785. There are a dozen verbs in -iō, -ere, like *capiō*, and three deponents in -ior, -ī, all formed from consonant roots with a short vowel: see 836. *aiō*, *say*, and *fiō*, *grow, become*, have certain peculiarities arising from the blending of the root with the suffix.

(1.) *aiō*, *say, say ay, avouch* (a g-).

786. *aiō*, *say*, is defective, and has only these parts in common use:

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>aiō, ais, ait</i>	_____, _____, <i>aiunt</i>
<i>Ind. Imp.</i>	<i>aiēbam, aiēbās, aiēbat</i>	<i>aiēbāmus, aiēbātis, aiēbant</i>
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	_____, <i>aiās, aiāt</i>	_____, _____, _____

787. For *aiō*, sometimes written *aiiō* (23), see 153, 2. Old forms are: present *ais, aīs, aīs*, or with -n interrogative *āin, āin*; *ait, ait*, or *āit*; imperfect *aiēbam, aiēbās, aiēbat*, and *aiēbant*; imperative once only, *ai* (Naev.). A participle *aiēntibus*, *affirmative*, occurs once (Cic.).

(2.) *fiō*, *become, am made*.

788. *fiō*, *become*, and *factus sum* supplement each other: in the present system, the passive of *faciō*, *make*, except the gerundive, *faciendus*, is not used, *fiō*, &c., taking its place; in the perfect system, only *factus sum*, &c., is used.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>fiō, fis, fit</i>	_____, _____, <i>fiunt</i>
<i>Ind. Imp.</i>	<i>fiēbam, fiēbās, fiēbat</i>	<i>fiēbāmus, fiēbātis, fiēbant</i>
<i>Ind. Fut.</i>	<i>fiam, fiēs, fiet</i>	<i>fiēmus, fiētis, fient</i>
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	<i>fiam, fiās, fiat</i>	<i>fiāmus, fiātis, fiant</i>
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	<i>fierem, fierēs, fieret</i>	<i>fierēmus, fierētis, fierent</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>fi</i>	<i>fite</i>
<i>Inf. Pres.</i>	<i>fieri</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i> _____

789. In *fiō*, &c., *i* represents an older *ei*, seen in *FEIENT* (inscr. 45 B.C.). The infinitive *fieri* for *fieri* owes its passive ending to analogy; the active form *fieri* occurs twice (Enn., Laev.). The vowel before -er- in *fierem*, &c., and *fieri*, is sometimes long in the dramatists, where a cretic (- ∨ -) is required, but otherwise always short.

790. -*fiō* is used in apparent compounds (394): as, *patēfit*. In real compounds commonly -*ficio*: as, *cōnficio*; but sometimes -*fiō*: as, *cōnfit, cōnfiunt, cōnfiat, cōnfieret, cōnfierent, cōnferi*; *dēfit, dēfiet, dēfiat, dēfieri*; *effit, effiant, ecfieri*; *infiti*; *interfiat, interfieri*; *superfit, superfiat*.

791. Some verbs in -iō, -ere (or -ior, -ī), have occasionally the form of verbs in -ire (or -iri), in some parts of the present system, oftenest before an r, and particularly in the passive infinitive: as,

*fodiri*, 3 times (Cato, Col. 2), *circumfodiri* (Col.), *ecfodiri* (Plaut.); *adgrediri* (*adgredirier*), 4 times (Plaut.), *prōgrediri* (Plaut.); *moriri* 6 times (Plaut., 4. Pomp., Ov.), *ēmoriri* twice (Plaut., Ter.); *oriri*, always; *parire*, twice (Plaut., Enn.); usually *potiri* (*potirier*). Also *cupiret* (Lucr.); *adgredire, adgredior, adgredimur* (Plaut.); *morimur* (Enn.); *oriris* (Varr., Sen.), *adcritur* (Lucil., Lucr.), *orirētur* (Cic., Nep., Sall., Liv.), *adorirētur* (Liv., Suet.); *paribis* (Pomp.), *PARIRET* (inscr.); *potiris* (Manil.), *potitur* (Lucil., Ov.), &c., &c.

## II. DENOMINATIVE VERBS.

## (I.) VERBS IN -āre.

*The First Conjugation.*

792.

laudō, *praise.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PART.
laudō	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātus

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## Singular.

## Plural.

laudō, *I praise, or am praising*laudās, *thou praisest, or art praising*laudat, *he praises, or is praising*laudāmus, *we praise, or are praising*laudātis, *you praise, or are praising*laudant, *they praise, or are praising*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

laudābam, *I was praising, or I praised*laudābās, *thou wert praising, or thou praisedst*laudābat, *he was praising, or he praised*laudābāmus, *we were praising, or we praised*laudābātis, *you were praising, or you praised*laudābant, *they were praising, or they praised*

## FUTURE TENSE.

laudābō, *I shall praise*laudābis, *thou wilt praise*laudābit, *he will praise*laudābimus, *we shall praise*laudābitis, *you will praise*laudābunt, *they will praise*

## PERFECT TENSE.

laudāvī, *I have praised, or I praised*laudāvisti, *thou hast praised, or thou praisedst*laudāvit, *he has praised, or he praised*laudāvimus, *we have praised, or we praised*laudāvistis, *you have praised, or you praised*laudāvērunt or -re, *they have praised, or they praised*

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

laudāveram, *I had praised*laudāverās, *thou hadst praised*laudāverat, *he had praised*laudāverāmus, *we had praised*laudāverātis, *you had praised*laudāverant, *they had praised*

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

laudāverō, *I shall have praised*laudāveris, *thou wilt have praised*laudāverit, *he will have praised*laudāverimus, *we shall have praised*laudāveritis, *you will have praised*laudāverint, *they will have praised*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## VERBS IN -āre.

*The First Conjugation.*

793.

*laudor, am praised.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## Singular.

*laudor, I am praised*  
*laudāris or -re, thou art praised*  
*laudātur, he is praised*

## Plural.

*laudāmur, we are praised*  
*laudāminī, you are praised*  
*laudantur, they are praised*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*laudābar, I was praised*  
*laudābāre or -ris, thou wert praised*  
*laudābātur, he was praised*

*laudābāmur, we were praised*  
*laudābāminī, you were praised*  
*laudābantur, they were praised*

## FUTURE TENSE.

*laudābor, I shall be praised*  
*laudābere or -ris, thou wilt be praised*  
*laudābitur, he will be praised*

*laudābimur, we shall be praised*  
*laudābiminī, you will be praised*  
*laudābuntur, they will be praised*

## PERFECT TENSE.

*laudātus sum, I have been, or was  
praised*  
*laudātus es, thou hast been, or wert  
praised*  
*laudātus est, he has been, or was  
praised*

*laudātī sumus, we have been, or were  
praised*  
*laudātī estis, you have been, or were  
praised*  
*laudātī sunt, they have been, or were  
praised*

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*laudātus eram, I had been praised*  
*laudātus erās, thou hadst been praised*  
*laudātus erat, he had been praised*

*laudātī erāmus, we had been praised*  
*laudātī erātis, you had been praised*  
*laudātī erant, they had been praised*

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

*laudātus erō, I shall have been  
praised*  
*laudātus eris, thou wilt have been  
praised*  
*laudātus erit, he will have been  
praised*

*laudātī erimus, we shall have been  
praised*  
*laudātī eritis, you will have been  
praised*  
*laudātī erunt, they will have been  
praised*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

lauder, *may I be praised*  
 laudēre or -ris, *mayst thou be praised*  
 laudētur, *let him be praised*

Plural.

laudēmur, *may we be praised*  
 laudēmini, *may you be praised*  
 laudentur, *let them be praised*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

laudārer, *I should be praised*  
 laudārēre or -ris, *thou wouldst be  
 praised*  
 laudārētur, *he would be praised*

laudārēmur, *we should be praised*  
 laudārēmini, *you would be praised*  
 laudārentur, *they would be praised*

PERFECT TENSE.

laudātus sim, *I may have been praised*  
 laudātus sis, *thou mayst have been  
 praised*  
 laudātus sit, *he may have been praised*

laudātī simus, *we may have been  
 praised*  
 laudātī sītis, *you may have been  
 praised*  
 laudātī sint, *they may have been praised.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

laudātus essem, *I should have been  
 praised*  
 laudātus essēs, *thou wouldst have  
 been praised*  
 laudātus esset, *he would have been  
 praised*

laudātī essēmus, *we should have been  
 praised*  
 laudātī essētis, *you would have been  
 praised*  
 laudātī essent, *they would have been  
 praised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

laudāre or laudātor, *be praised, thou  
 shalt be praised*  
 laudātor, *he shall be praised*

laudāmini, *be praised*  
 laudantor, *they shall be praised*

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. laudārī, *to be praised*  
 Perf. laudātus esse, *to have been  
 praised*  
 Fut. \*laudātum irī, *to be going to  
 be praised, not used (2273)*

GERUNDIVE.

laudandus, *to be praised*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

laudātus, *praised*



## (2.) VERBS IN -ēre.

*The Second Conjugation.*

794.

moneō, *advise.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. INDIC.  
moneōPRES. INFIN.  
monērePERF. INDIC.  
monuīPERF. PART.  
monitus

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## Singular.

moneō, *I advise, or am advising*  
 monēs, *thou advisest, or art advising*  
 monet, *he advises, or is advising*

## Plural.

monēmus, *we advise, or are advising*  
 monētis, *you advise, or are advising*  
 monent, *they advise, or are advising*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

monēbam, *I was advising, or I advised*  
 monēbās, *thou wert advising, or thou advisedst*  
 monēbat, *he was advising, or he advised*

monēbāmus, *we were advising, or we advised*  
 monēbātis, *you were advising, or you advised*  
 monēbant, *they were advising, or they advised*

## FUTURE TENSE.

monēbō, *I shall advise*  
 monēbis, *thou wilt advise*  
 monēbit, *he will advise*

monēbimus, *we shall advise*  
 monēbitis, *you will advise*  
 monēbunt, *they will advise*

## PERFECT TENSE.

monuī, *I have advised, or I advised*  
 monuistī, *thou hast advised, or thou advisedst*  
 monuit, *he has advised, or he advised*

monuimus, *we have advised, or we advised*  
 monuistis, *you have advised, or you advised*  
 monuērunt or -re, *they have advised, or they advised*

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monueram, *I had advised*  
 monuerās, *thou hadst advised*  
 monuerat, *he had advised*

monuerāmus, *we had advised*  
 monuerātis, *you had advised*  
 monuerant, *they had advised*

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

monuerō, *I shall have advised*  
 monueris, *thou wilt have advised*  
 monuerit, *he will have advised*

monuerimus, *we shall have advised*  
 monueritis, *you will have advised*  
 monuerint, *they will have advised*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## VERBS IN -ēre.

*The Second Conjugation.*

795.

moneor, *am advised.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## Singular.

moneor, *I am advised*  
 monēris or -re, *thou art advised*  
 monētur, *he is advised*

## Plural.

monēmur, *we are advised*  
 monēmini, *you are advised*  
 monentur, *they are advised*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

monēbar, *I was advised*  
 monēbāre or -ris, *thou wert advised*  
 monēbātur, *he was advised*

monēbāmur, *we were advised*  
 monēbāmini, *you were advised*  
 monēbantur, *they were advised*

## FUTURE TENSE.

monēbor, *I shall be advised*  
 monēbere or -ris, *thou wilt be advised*  
 monēbitur, *he will be advised*

monēbimur, *we shall be advised*  
 monēbimini, *you will be advised*  
 monēbuntur, *they will be advised*

## PERFECT TENSE.

monitus sum, *I have been, or was advised*  
 monitus es, *thou hast been, or wert advised*  
 monitus est, *he has been, or was advised*

monitī sumus, *we have been, or were advised*  
 monitī estis, *you have been, or were advised*  
 monitī sunt, *they have been, or were advised*

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monitus eram, *I had been advised*  
 monitus erās, *thou hadst been advised*  
 monitus erat, *he had been advised*

monitī erāmus, *we had been advised*  
 monitī erātis, *you had been advised*  
 monitī erant, *they had been advised*

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

monitus erō, *I shall have been advised*  
 monitus eris, *thou wilt have been advised*  
 monitus erit, *he will have been advised*

monitī erimus, *we shall have been advised*  
 monitī eritis, *you will have been advised*  
 monitī erunt, *they will have been advised*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

*monear, may I be advised*  
*monēāre or -ris, mayst thou be advised*  
*monēātur, let him be advised*

Plural.

*monēāmur, may we be advised*  
*monēāminī, may you be advised*  
*monēantur, let them be advised*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

*monērer, I should be advised*  
*monērēre or -ris, thou wouldst be advised*  
*monērētur, he would be advised*

*monērēmur, we should be advised*  
*monērēminī, you would be advised*  
*monērentur, they would be advised*

PERFECT TENSE.

*monitus sim, I may have been advised*  
*monitus sis, thou mayst have been advised*  
*monitus sit, he may have been advised*

*monitī simus, we may have been advised*  
*monitī sitis, you may have been advised*  
*monitī sint, they may have been advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*monitus essem, I should have been advised*  
*monitus essēs, thou wouldst have been advised*  
*monitus esset, he would have been advised*

*monitī essēmus, we should have been advised*  
*monitī essētis, you would have been advised*  
*monitī essent, they would have been advised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*monēre or monētor, be advised, thou shalt be advised*  
*monētor, he shall be advised*

*monēminī, be advised*  
*monentor, they shall be advised*

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. monērī, to be advised*  
*Perf. monitus esse, to have been advised*  
*Fut. \*monitum irī, to be going to be advised, not used (2273)*

GERUNDIVE.

*monendus, to be advised*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

*monitus, advised*

## (3.) VERBS IN -ire.

*The Fourth Conjugation.*

796.

audiō, *hear.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. INDIC.

audiō

PRES. INFIN.

audire

PERF. INDIC.

audivi

PERF. PART.

auditus

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## Singular.

audiō, *I hear, or am hearing*  
 audīs, *thou hearest, or art hearing*  
 audit, *he hears, or is hearing*

## Plural.

audīmus, *we hear, or are hearing*  
 audītis, *you hear, or are hearing*  
 audiunt, *they hear, or are hearing*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

audiēbam, *I was hearing, or I heard*

audiēbās, *thou wert hearing, or thou heardst*

audiēbat, *he was hearing, or he heard*

audiēbāmus, *we were hearing, or we heard*

audiēbātis, *you were hearing, or you heard*

audiēbant, *they were hearing, or they heard*

## FUTURE TENSE.

audiam, *I shall hear*

audiēs, *thou wilt hear*

audiet, *he will hear*

audiēmus, *we shall hear*

audiētis, *you will hear*

audient, *they will hear*

## PERFECT TENSE.

audivi, *I have heard, or I heard*

audivisti, *thou hast heard, or thou heardst*

audivit, *he has heard, or he heard*

audivimus, *we have heard, or we heard*

audivistis, *you have heard, or you heard*

audivērunt or -re, *they have heard, or they heard*

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audiveram, *I had heard*

audiverās, *thou hadst heard*

audiverat, *he had heard*

audiverāmus, *we had heard*

audiverātis, *you had heard*

audiverant, *they had heard*

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

audiverō, *I shall have heard*

audiveris, *thou wilt have heard*

audiverit, *he will have heard*

audiverimus, *we shall have heard*

audiveritis, *you will have heard*

audiverint, *they will have heard*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## VERBS IN -ire.

*The Fourth Conjugation.*

797.

audior, *am heard.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## Singular.

audior, *I am heard*  
 audīris or -re, *thou art heard*  
 audītur, *he is heard*

## Plural.

audīmur, *we are heard*  
 audīminī, *you are heard*  
 audiuntur, *they are heard*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

audiēbar, *I was heard*  
 audiēbāre or -ris, *thou wert heard*  
 audiēbātur, *he was heard*

audiēbāmur, *we were heard*  
 audiēbāminī, *you were heard*  
 audiēbantur, *they were heard*

## FUTURE TENSE.

audiar, *I shall be heard*  
 audiēre or -ris, *thou wilt be heard*  
 audiētur, *he will be heard*

audiēmur, *we shall be heard*  
 audiēminī, *you will be heard*  
 audientur, *they will be heard*

## PERFECT TENSE.

audītus sum, *I have been, or was heard*  
 audītus es, *thou hast been, or wert heard*  
 audītus est, *he has been, or was heard*

audītī sumus, *we have been, or were heard*  
 audītī estis, *you have been, or were heard*  
 audītī sunt, *they have been, or were heard*

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audītus eram, *I had been heard*  
 audītus erās, *thou hadst been heard*  
 audītus erat, *he had been heard*

audītī erāmus, *we had been heard*  
 audītī erātis, *you had been heard*  
 audītī erant, *they had been heard*

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

audītus erō, *I shall have been heard*  
 audītus eris, *thou wilt have been heard*  
 audītus erit, *he will have been heard*

audītī erimus, *we shall have been heard*  
 audītī eritis, *you will have been heard*  
 audītī erunt, *they will have been heard*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

*audiar, may I be heard*  
*audiāre or -ris, mayst thou be heard*  
*audiātur, let him be heard*

Plural.

*audiāmur, may we be heard*  
*audiāmini, may you be heard*  
*audiantur, let them be heard*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

*audīrer, I should be heard*  
*audīrēre or -ris, thou wouldst be heard*  
*audīrētur, he would be heard*

*audīrēmur, we should be heard*  
*audīrēmini, you would be heard*  
*audīrentur, they would be heard*

PERFECT TENSE.

*audītus sim, I may have been heard*  
*audītus sis, thou mayst have been heard*  
*audītus sit, he may have been heard*

*audītī simus, we may have been heard*  
*audītī sitis, you may have been heard*  
*audītī sint, they may have been heard*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*audītus essem, I should have been heard*  
*audītus essēs, thou wouldst have been heard*  
*audītus esset, he would have been heard*

*audītī essēmus, we should have been heard*  
*audītī essētis, you would have been heard*  
*audītī essent, they would have been heard*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*audīre or audītor, be heard, thou shalt be heard*  
*audītor, he shall be heard*

*audīmini, be heard*  
*audiuntor, they shall be heard*

NOUNS OF THE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. audīrī, to be heard*  
*Perf. audītus esse, to have been heard*  
*Fut. audītum irī, to be going to be heard (2273)*

GERUNDIVE.

*audiendus, to be heard*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

*audītus, heard*



## THE DEPONENT VERB.

798. Deponents, that is, verbs with passive person endings and a reflexive or an active meaning (725), have these active noun forms: participles, the future infinitive, the gerund, and the supines. The perfect participle is usually active, but sometimes passive; the gerundive always passive. The following is a synopsis of deponents:

PRINCIPAL PARTS.				
queror, <i>complain</i> , querī, questus		mīror, <i>wonder</i> , mīrārī, mīrātus vereor, <i>fear</i> , verērī, veritus partior, <i>share</i> , partīrī, partitus		
	I. -ī	II. (1.) -ārī	(2.) -ērī	(3.) -īrī
INDICATIVE MOOD.				
<i>Pres.</i>	queror	mīror	vereor	partior
<i>Imp.</i>	querēbar	mīrābar	verēbar	partiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	querar	mīrābor	verēbor	partiar
<i>Perf.</i>	questus sum	mīrātus sum	veritus sum	partitus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	questus eram	mīrātus eram	veritus eram	partitus eram
<i>F. P.</i>	questus erō	mīrātus erō	veritus erō	partitus erō
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.				
<i>Pres.</i>	querar	mīrer	verear	partiar
<i>Imp.</i>	quererer	mīrārer	verērer	partīrer
<i>Perf.</i>	questus sim	mīrātus sim	veritus sim	partitus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	questus es- sem	mīrātus es- sem	veritus essem	partitus es- sem
IMPERATIVE MOOD.				
	querere	mīrāre	verēre	partīre
PARTICIPLES.				
<i>Pres.</i>	querēns	mīrāns	verēns	partiēns
<i>Perf.</i>	questus	mīrātus	veritus	partitus
<i>Fut.</i>	questūrus	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	partitūrus
INFINITIVE.				
<i>Pres.</i>	querī	mīrārī	verērī	partīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	questus esse	mīrātus esse	veritus esse	partitus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	questūrus es- se	mīrātūrus es- se	veritūrus esse	partitūrus es- se
GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.				
<i>Gen.</i>	querendī, &c. querendus	mīrandī, &c. mīrandus	verendī, &c. verendus	partiendī, &c. partiendus
SUPINE.				
<i>Acc.</i>	questum	*mīrātum	*veritum	*partitum
<i>Abl.</i>	*questū	mīrātū	*veritū	*partitū



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



804. (2.) The gerundive with a form of *sum* is used to denote action which requires to be done: as,

*regendus sum, I am to be ruled, must be ruled.*

		INDICATIVE MOOD.	
		Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>		regendus sum, es, est	regendī sumus, estis, sunt
<i>Imp.</i>		regendus eram, erās, erat	regendī erāmus, erātis, erant
<i>Fut.</i>		regendus erō, eris, erit	regendī erimus, eritis, erunt
<i>Perf.</i>		regendus fui, fuistī, fuit	regendī fuimus, fuistis, fuērunt
<i>Plup.</i>		regendus fueram, fuerās, fuerat	regendī fuerāmus, fuerātis, fuerant
		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
<i>Pres.</i>		regendus sim, sis, sit	regendī simus, sitis, sint
<i>Imp.</i>		regendus essem, essēs, esset	regendī essēmus, essētis, essent
<i>Perf.</i>		regendus fuerim, fueris, fuerit	regendī fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint
<i>Plup.</i>		regendus fuissem, fuissēs, fuisset	regendī fuissēmus, fuissētis, fuissent
		INFINITIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i>		regendus esse	
<i>Perf.</i>		regendus fuisse	

### DEFECTIVE VERBS.

805. (1.) Some verbs have only a few forms: as,

*inquam, quoth I (760); aiō, avouch (786).* See also *apage, avaunt, get thee behind me, cedo, give, tell, fārī, to lift up one's voice, havē or avē and salvē, all hail, ovat, triumphs, and quaesō, prithee,* in the dictionary.

806. (2.) Many verbs have only the present system; such are:

807. (a.) *sum, am (745); ferō, carry (780); fiō, grow, become (788).*

808. (b.) Some verbs in *-ere*: *angō, throttle, bitō, go, clangō, sound, claudō or claudeō, hobble, fatiscō, gape, gliscō, wax, glübō, peel, hiscō, gape, temnō, scorn, vādō, go, vergō, slope.* Also many inceptives (834): as, *dītēscō, get rich, dulcēscō, get sweet, &c., &c.*

809. (c.) Some verbs in *-ēre*: *albeō, am white, aveō, long, calveō, am bald, cāneō, am gray, clueō, am called, hight, flāveō, am yellow, hebeō, am blunt, immineō, threaten, lacteō, suck, liveō, look dark, maereō, mourn, polleō, am strong, renideō, am radiant, squāleō, am scaly, ūmeō, am wet.*

810. (d.) Some verbs in *-ire*: *balbūtiō, sputter, feriō, strike, ganniō, yelp, ineptiō, am a fool, superbiō, am stuck up, tussiō, cough.* Also most desideratives (375).

811. Many verbs are not attended by a perfect participle, and lack in consequence the perfect passive system, or, if deponent, the perfect active system.

812. (3.) Some verbs have only the perfect system: so particularly *coepī*, *have begun, began* (120); and with a present meaning, *ōdī*, *have come to hate, hate*; and *meminī*, *have called to mind, remember*. The following is a synopsis of these three verbs:

INDICATIVE MOOD.				
	Active.	Passive.	Active.	Active.
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>coepī</i>	<i>coeptus sum</i>	<i>ōdī</i>	<i>meminī</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>coeperam</i>	<i>coeptus eram</i>	<i>ōderam</i>	<i>memineram</i>
<i>F. P.</i>	<i>coeperō</i>	<i>coeptus erō</i>	<i>ōderō</i>	<i>meminerō</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.				
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>coeperim</i>	<i>coeptus sim</i>	<i>ōderim</i>	<i>meminerim</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>coepissem</i>	<i>coeptus essem</i>	<i>ōdissem</i>	<i>meminissem</i>
IMPERATIVE MOOD.				
<i>Perf.</i>	—	—	—	<i>mementō, mementōte</i>
INFINITIVE.				
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>coepisse</i>	<i>coeptus esse</i>	<i>ōdisse</i>	<i>meminisse</i>
PARTICIPLES.				
<i>Perf.</i>		<i>coeptus</i>	—	—
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>coeptūrus</i>		<i>ōsūrus</i>	—

813. A few forms of the present system of *coepī* occur in old writers: as, *coepiō* (Plaut.), *coepiam* (Caec., Cato), *coepiat* (Plaut.), *coeperet* (Ter.), and *coepere* (Plaut.); perfect once *coēpit* (Lucr.). *ōsus sum* or *fui* (Plaut., C. Gracch., Gell.), *exōsus sum* (Verg., Sen., Curt., Gell.), and *perōsus sum* (Suet., Col., Quint.), are sometimes used as deponents. *meminī* is the only verb which has a perfect imperative active. *ōdī* and *meminī* have no passive.

814. *coeptūrus* is rather rare and late (Liv. 2, Plin., Suet.), once as future infinitive (Quint.); and *ōsūrus* is very rare (Cic., Gell.). *exōsus* and *perōsus*, as active participles, *hating bitterly*, are not uncommon in writers of the empire; the simple *ōsus* is not used as a participle.

815. (4.) Impersonal verbs have usually only the third person singular, and the infinitive present and perfect: as,

(a.) *pluit*, *it rains*, *tonat*, *it thunders*, and other verbs denoting the operations of nature. (b.) Also a few verbs in *-ēre* denoting feeling: as, *miseret* (or *miserētur*, *miserēscit*), *it distresses*, *miseritum est*; *paenitet*, *it repents*, *paenituit*; *piget*, *it grieves*, *pigit* or *pigitum est*; *pudet*, *it shames*, *puduit* or *puditum est*; *taedet*, *it is a bore*, *taesum est*.

816. Some other verbs, less correctly called impersonal, with an infinitive or a sentence as subject, are likewise defective: as,

lubet or libet, *it suits*, lubitum or libitum est, lubuit or libuit; licet, *it is allowed*, licuit or licitum est; oportet, *it is proper*, oportuit; rē fert or rēfert, *it concerns*, rē ferre or rēferre, rē tulit or rētulit. For the impersonal use of the third person singular passive, as pugnātur, *there is fighting*, pugnandum est, *there must be fighting*, see 724.

817. Of the impersonals in -ēre, some have other forms besides the third person singular and the infinitives: as,

paenitēns, *repenting*, paenitendus, *to be regretted*, late; pigendus, *irksome*; pudēns, *modest*, pudendus, *shameful*, puditūrum, *going to shame*; lubēns or libēns, *with willing mind, gladly*, very common indeed; imperative LICETO, *be it allowed* (inscr. 133-III B.C.), licēns, *unrestrained*, licitus, *allowable*; gerunds pudendum, pudendō, pigendum.

## REDUNDANT VERBS.

818. (1.) Some verbs have more than one form of the present stem: thus,

819. (a.) Verbs in -ere have rarely forms of verbs in -ēre in the present system: as, abnueō, *nod no*, abnuēbunt (Enn.), for abnuō, abnuent; congruēre, *to agree* (Ter.), for congruere. For verbs in -iō, -ere (or -ior, -ī), with forms of verbs in -īre (or -īri), see 791. Once pīnsībant (Enn.).

820. (b.) Some verbs in -āre have occasionally a present stem like verbs in -ere: as, lavis, *washest*, lavit, &c., for lavās, lavat, &c.; sonit, *sounds*, sonunt, for sonat, sonant. Others have occasionally a present stem like verbs in -ēre: as, dēnseō, *thicken*, dēnsērī, for dēnsō, dēnsārī.

821. (c.) Some verbs in -ēre have occasionally a present stem like verbs in -ere: as, fervit, *boils*, fervont, for fervet, fervent. See also fulgeō, oleō, scateō, strideō, tergeō, tueor in the dictionary. cieō, *set a going*, sometimes has a present stem in -īre, particularly in compounds: as, cīmus, ciunt, for ciēmus, cient.

822. (d.) Some verbs in -īre have occasionally a present stem like verbs in -ere: as, ēvenunt, *turn out*, for ēveniunt; ēvenat, ēvenant, for ēveniat, ēveniant, and advenat, pervenat, for adveniat, perveniat (Plaut.).

823. (2.) Some verbs have more than one form of the perfect stem: as,

eō, *go*, old īī (765), common īī, rarely īvī (767); pluit, *it rains*, pluit, sometimes plūvit. See also pangō, parcō, clepō, vollō or vellō, intellegō, pōnō, nectō, and adnectō, saliō and īnsiliō, applicō, explicō and implicō, dīmicō and necō in the dictionary. Some compound verbs have a form of the perfect which is different from that of the simple verb: as, cauō, *make music*, cecinī, concinūī, occinūī; pungō, *punch*, pupugī, compunxī, expunxī; legō, *pick up*, lēgī, dilēxī, intellēxī, neglēxī; emō, *take, buy*, ēmī (adēmī, exēmī), cōmpsi, dēmpsi, prōmpsi, sūmpsi.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

Other examples are: *tegō*, *cover*, *petō*, *make for*; *mergō*, *dip*, *serpō*, *creep*; *pendō*, *weigh*; *dīcō*, *say*, *fīdō*, *trust*, *scrībō*, *write*, with long *ī* for *ei* (98); *dūcō*, *lead*, with long *ū* for *eu*, *ou* (100); *lūdō*, *play*, with long *ū* for *oi*, *oe* (99); *laedō*, *hit*, *claudō*, *shut*; *rādō*, *scrape*, *cēdō*, *move along*, *fīgō*, *fix*, *rōdō*, *gnaw*, *glūbō*, *peel*. \**furō*, *rave*; *agō*, *drive*, *alō*, *nurture*. *gignō*, *beget*, (*ge n-*, *gn-*), has reduplication, and *sīdō*, *settle*, *light* (*sed-*, *sd-*), is also the result of an ancient reduplication (189).

830. In some present stems an original consonant has been modified: as, *gerō*, *carry* (*ges-*), *ūrō*, *burn* (154); *trahō*, *draw* (*tragh-*), *vehō*, *cart* (152); or has disappeared: as, *fluō*, *flow* (*flūgu-*).

831. Some roots in a mute have a nasal before the mute in the present stem: as, *frangō*, *break* (*frag-*). Other examples are: *iungō*, *join*, *linquō*, *leave*, *pangō*, *fix*, *pingō*, *paint*; *findō*, *cleave*, *fundō*, *pour*; *-cumbō*, *lie*, *lambō*, *lick*, *rumpō*, *break* (164, 3). The nasal sometimes runs over into the perfect or perfect participle, or both.

832. (2.) The present stem of many verbs in *-ere* is formed by adding a suffix ending in a variable vowel <sup>o</sup>|*e-*, which appears in the first person singular active as *-ō*, to a root: thus, *-nō*, *-scō*, *-tō*, *-iō*: as,

PRESENT STEM	VERB.	FROM THEME.
lin <sup>o</sup>   <i>e-</i>	linō, <i>besmear</i>	li-
crēsc <sup>o</sup>   <i>e-</i>	crēscō, <i>grow</i>	crē-
pect <sup>o</sup>   <i>e-</i>	pectō, <i>comb</i>	pec-
capi <sup>o</sup>   <i>e-</i>	capiō, <i>take</i>	cap-

833. (a.) *-nō* is added to roots in a vowel, or in a continuous sound, *-m-*, *-r-*, or *-l-*.

So regularly *linō*, *besmear*, *sinō*, *let*; *temnō*, *scorn*, *cernō*, *sift*, *spernō*, *spurn*, only. The third persons plural *danunt* (Naev., Plaut.) for *dant*, *prōdīnunt*, *redīnunt* (Enn.) for *prōdeunt*, *redeunt* hardly belong here; their formation is obscure. In a few verbs, *-n* is assimilated (166, 6): as, *tollō*, *lift*. Sometimes the doubled *l* runs into the perfect (855): as, *vellī*, *fefellī*. *minuō*, *lessen*, and *sternuō*, *sneeze*, have a longer suffix *-nu<sup>o</sup>|e-*.

834. (b.) *-scō*, usually meaning 'begin to,' forms presents called *Inceptives* or *Inchoatives*.

*-scō* is attached: first, to roots: as, *nāscor*, *am born*, *nōscō*, *learn*, *pāscō*, *feed*, *scīscō*, *resolve*; consonant roots have *ī*, less commonly *ē*, before the suffix: as, *tremiscō* or *tremēscō*, *fall a-trembling*, *nancīscor*, *get* (831); but *discō*, *learn* (170, 1), and *poscō*, *demand* (170, 10), are shortened; see 168. Secondly, to a form of the present stem of denominative verbs, especially of those in *-ēre*: as, *clārēscō*, *brighten*; the stem is often assumed only, as in *inveterāscō*, *grow old*, *mātūrēscō*, *get ripe*. Many inceptives are used only in composition: as, *extimēscō*, *get scared*, *obdormiscō*, *drop asleep*.

835. (c.) *-tō* occurs in the following presents from guttural roots: *flectō*, *turn*, *nectō*, *string*, *pectō* *comb*, *plector*, *am struck*, *amplector*, *lug*, *complector*, *clasp*. From a lingual root *vid-*, comes *vīdō*, *go to see*, *call on* (153). From vowel roots: *bētō* or *bītō*, *go*, and *metō*, *mow*.

836. (*d.*) -iō is usually added to consonant roots with a short vowel; the following have presents formed by this suffix:

capiō, *take*, cupiō, *want*, faciō, *make*, fodiō, *dig*, fugiō, *run away*, iaciō, *throw*, pariō, *bring forth*, quatiō, *shake*, rapiō, *seize*, sapiō, *have sense*, and their compounds; the compounds of \*laciō, *lure*, and speciō or spiciō, *spy*, and the deponents gradior, *step*, morior, *die*, and patior, *suffer*, and their compounds. For occasional forms like those of verbs in -īre (or -īrī), see 791. For aiō, see 786; for fiō, 788.

837. A few present stems are formed by adding a variable vowel -o|e-, for an older -i<sup>o</sup>|e-, to a vowel root: as,

ruō, *tumble down*, rui-s, rui-t, rui-mus, rui-tis, ruu-nt(114). Vowel roots in -ā-, -ē-, or -ī- have a present stem like that of denominatives: as, stō, *stand*, stā-s, sta-t, stā-mus, stā-tis, sta-nt; fleō, *wcep*, flē-s, fle-t, flē-mus, flē-tis, fle-nt; neō, *spin*, has once neu-nt for ne-nt (Tib.); sciō, *know*, scī-s, sci-t, scī-mus, scī-tis, sciu-nt.

838. Most present stems formed by adding the suffix -iō to a root ending in -l-, -r-, or -n-, and all formed by adding -iō to a long syllable, have the form of denominatives in -īre in the present system: as, saliō, *leap*, salīre, aperiō, *open*, aperīre, veniō, *come*, venīre; farciō, *cram*, farcīre.

## II. DENOMINATIVES.

839. The present stem of denominatives is formed by attaching a variable vowel -o|e-, for an older -i<sup>o</sup>|e-, to a theme consisting of a noun stem: as,

UNCONTRACTED PRESENT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
cēnao e-	cēnō, <i>dine</i>	cēnā-
flōreo e-	flōreō, <i>blossom</i>	flōre-
vestio e-	vestiō, <i>dress</i>	vesti-
acu <sup>o</sup>  e-	acuō, <i>point</i>	acu-

The noun stem ending is often slightly modified in forming the theme: thus, laud- becomes laudā- in laudō for \*laudā-ō, and flōr- becomes flōre- in flōre-ō.

840. In many of the forms, the final vowel of the theme is contracted with the variable vowel: as,

plantō, plantās (118, 3) for \*plantāiō, \*plantāies (153, 2); monēs for \*monēies (118, 1), audis for \*audīies (118, 3). The long ā, ē, or ī, is regularly shortened in some of the forms: as, scit, arat, habet, for Plautine scīt, arāt, habēt. In a few forms no contraction occurs: as, moneō, audiō, audiu-nt, audie-ntis, &c., audie-ndus, &c. (114). Denominatives from stems in -u-, as acuō, are not contracted, and so have the forms of verbs in -ere (367).

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

841. The suffix of the present subjunctive of sum, *am*, is -ī-, which becomes -i- before -m, -t, and -nt: si-m, sī-s, si-t, sī-mus, sī-tis, si-nt (35, 2, 3). So also in the singular and in the third person plural, dui-m, &c. (756), and edi-m, &c. (769), and in all the persons, veli-m, &c. (nōli-m, &c., māli-m, &c.). An old suffix is -iē- (-ie-), in sie-m, siē-s, sie-t, and sie-nt.



842. (1.) The present subjunctive stem of verbs in *-ere*, *-ēre*, and *-īre*, ends in *-ā-*, which becomes *-a-* in some of the persons; this suffix replaces the variable vowel of the indicative: as,

*rega-m*, *regā-s*, *rega-t*, *regā-mus*, *regā-tis*, *rega-nt*; *capia-m*, *capiā-s*, &c.; *monea-m*, *moneā-s*, &c.; *audia-m*, *audiā-s*, &c. *ea-m*, *quea-m*, *fera-m*, and the old *fua-m* (750), also have the formative subjunctive vowel.

843. (2.) The present subjunctive stem of verbs in *-āre* ends in *-ē-*, which becomes *-e-* in some of the persons: as,

*laude-m*, *laudē-s*, *laude-t*, *laudē-mus*, *laudē-tis*, *laude-nt*. *dō*, *give*, also has *de-m*, *dē-s*, &c.

#### IMPERATIVE.

844. Root verbs have a root as imperative stem (745-780): as, *es*, &c., *fer*, &c. But the imperative of *nōlō* has a stem in *-ī-*, like verbs in *-īre*: thus, *nōlī*, *nōlī-tō*, *nōlī-te*, *nōlī-tōte*.

845. The imperative stem of verbs in *-ere*, and of verbs in *-āre*, *-ēre*, and *-īre*, is the same as that of the indicative: as,

*rege*, *regi-tō*, *regu-ntō*, *rege-re*; *cape*, *capi-tō*, *capiu-ntō*; *fī*; *laudā*, &c.; *monē*, &c.; *audī*, &c.

846. The second person singular imperative active of *dīcō*, *dūcō*, and *faciō*, is usually *dīc*, *dūc*, and *fac*, respectively, though the full forms, *dīce*, &c., are also used, and are commoner in old Latin. Compounds of *dūcō* may have the short form: as, *ēdūc*. *ingerō* has once *inger* (Catull.). *sciō* has regularly the singular *sci-tō*, plural *sci-tōte*, rarely *sci-te*.

#### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

847. The imperfect indicative stem ends in *-bā-*, which becomes *-ba-* in some of the persons: as,

*daba-m*, *dabā-s*, *daba-t*, *dabā-mus*, *dabā-tis*, *daba-nt*; *ība-m*; *quība-m*. In verbs in *-ere* and *-ēre*, the suffix is preceded by a form ending in *-ē-*: as, *regēba-m*; *monēba-m*; so also *volēba-m* (*nōlēba-m*, *mālēba-m*), and *ferēba-m*; in verbs in *-iō*, *-ere*, and in *-iō*, *-īre*, by a form ending in *-iē-*: as, *capiēba-m*; *audiēba-m*; in verbs in *-āre*, by one ending in *-ā-*: as, *laudāba-m*. In verse, verbs in *-īre* sometimes have *-ī-* before the suffix (Plaut., Ter., Catull., Lucr., Verg., &c.): as, *audība-t*. *āiō*, *say*, has sometimes *āiba-m*, &c. (787).

848. The suffix of the imperfect indicative of *sum*, *am*, is *-ā-*, which becomes *-a-* before *-m*, *-t*, and *-nt* (35, 2, 3) the *s* becomes *r* between the vowels (154): *era-m*, *erā-s*, *era-t*, *erā-mus*, *erā-tis*, *era-nt*.

#### IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

849. The imperfect subjunctive stem ends in *-rē-*, which becomes *-re-* in some of the persons: as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



857. Sometimes -t is preceded by long ī: as, iīt, petiīt, REDIEIT (29, 2). -runt is sometimes preceded by short e (Plaut., Ter., Lucr., Hor., Ov., Verg., Phaedr.). This is the original form; -ē- is by analogy to -ēre.

## (A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX.

858. (1.) Some verbs in -ere form their perfect stem by prefixing to the root its initial consonant with the following vowel, which, if a, is usually represented by e; this is called the *Reduplicated Perfect*, and the first syllable is called the *Reduplication*: as,

PERFECT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
pu-pug-	pungō, <i>punch</i>	pu g-
pe-pig-	pangō, <i>fix</i>	pa g-

Other examples are: cadō, *fall*, cecidī (ca d-, 104, c); pariō, *bring forth*, peperī (pa r-, 104, c); pellō, *push*, pepulī (po l-, 105, h); poscō, *demand*, poposci (855); fallō, *deceive*, fefellī (855, 104, c); see also 923-932. caedō, *cut*, has cecidī (108, a); and a few old forms are quoted from verbs having an o or an u in the root with e in the reduplication: as, memordī, pepugī.

859. Four verbs with vowel roots also have a reduplicated perfect stem: dō, *give, put, dare*, dedī; bibō, *drink*, bibere, bibī; stō, *stand*, stāre, steti, and sistō, *set, sistere*, -stitī, rarely stitī. Also four verbs in -ēre: mordeō, *bite*, momordī, pendeō, *hang*, pependī, spondeō, *promise*, spopondī, tondeō, *clip*, -totondī. In the root syllable of spopondī, *promised*, steti, *stood*, stitī, *set*, and the old scicidī, *clove*, an s is dropped (173, 2).

860. In compounds the reduplication is commonly dropped: as,

cecidī, *fell*, compound concidī, *tumbled down*. Compounds of cucurrī, *ran*, sometimes retain the reduplication: as, prōcucurrī. Compounds of bibī, *drank*, didicī, *learned*, poposci, *asked*, stitī, *set*, steti, *stood*, and dedī, *gave, put*, retain it, the last two weakening e to i: as, restitī, *staid back*. abscondidī, *hid away*, usually becomes abscondī; in apparent compounds, e is usually retained: as, circum steti, *stood round*, vēnum dedī, *put for sale*. The reduplication is also lost in the simple verbs tulī, *carried*, old tetulī, and in scindō, *split*, scidī, which last is rare as a simple verb.

861. Some compounds with re- drop only the vowel of the reduplication (111, a): as, reccidī, *fell back*; rettulī, *brought back* (see also 781); repperī, *found*; rettudī, *beat back*. Some perfects occur only in composition: as, percellō, *knock down*, perculī; cōntundō, *smash to pieces*, contudī; diffindō, *split apart*, diffidī; but fidī also occurs a couple of times as a simple verb.

862. (2.) Some verbs in -ere have a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel (135, 1): as,

PERFECT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
ēd-	edō, <i>eat</i>	ed-
lēg-	legō, <i>pick up, read</i>	leg-

Other examples are: fodiō, *dig*, fōdī; fundō, *pour*, fūdī; linqūō, *leave*, liquī; see 936-946. Three verbs in -ēre also have this form, sedeō, *sit*, sēdī, strideō, *grate*, stridī, videō, *see*, vidī; and one in -īre, veniō, *come*, vēnī.

863. The following verbs in *-ere* with *a* in the present stem, have long *ē* in the perfect stem (145):

*agō, do, ēgi, frangō, break, frēgi, pangō, fix, rarely pēgi, but always compēgi, impēgi, oppēgi; capiō, take, cēpi, faciō, make, fēcī, iaciō, throw, iēcī.* So also the old *co-ēpi, began, common coepī.*

864. Two verbs in *-āre* and some in *-ēre* have a perfect stem consisting of a root which ends in *-v-* and has a long vowel: *iuvō, help, iuvāre, iūvī, lavō, wash, lavāre or lavere, lāvī; caveō, look out, cavēre, cāvī; see 996.*

865. Verbs in *-uō, -uere*, both primitives and denominatives, have usually a perfect stem in short *u* of the theme (124): as, *luō, pay, luī; acuō, sharpen, acū; see 947, 948.* Forms with long *ū* are old and rare (126): as, *fūi, adnūi, cōstitūi, institūi. fluō, flow, and struō, pile, have flūxi and strūxi (830).*

866. (3.) Some verbs in *-ere* from roots ending in two consonants have a perfect stem consisting of the root: as,

PERFECT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
mand-	mandō, <i>chew</i>	mand-
pand-	pandō, <i>open</i>	pand-

Other examples are: *vortō or vertō, turn, vortī or vertī; scandō, climb, -scendī;prehendō, seize,prehendī (855); vollō or vellō, pluck, vollī or vellī; see 949-951.* Similarly *ferveō, boil, fervere or fervēre, has fervī or ferbuī (823), and prandeō, lunch, prandēre, has prandī.*

(B.) PERFECT STEM IN *-s-*, OR IN *-v-* OR *-u-*.

PERFECT STEM IN *-s-*.

867. Many verbs in *-ere* form their perfect stem by adding the suffix *-s-* to a root, which generally ends in a mute: as,

PERFECT STEM	VERB.	FROM THEME.
carp-s-	carpō, <i>pluck</i>	carp-
scalp-s	scalpō, <i>dig</i>	scalp-
ges-s-	gerō, <i>bear</i>	ges-
dix-	dīcō, <i>say</i>	dīc-

Other examples are: *dūcō, lead, dūxi (100); fingō, mould, finxi (855); lādō, play, lāsī (166, 2); scribō write, scripsī (164, 1); struō, pile, strūxi (164, 1); vivō, live, vīxi (98).* Some verbs with a short vowel in the present, have a long vowel in the perfect: as, *regō, guide, rēxi (135); intellegō, understand, intellēxi (823); tegō, cover, tēxi; iungō, join, iūnxi (855).* And some verbs with a long vowel in the present, have a short vowel in the perfect: as, *ūrō, burn, ussī (830).* See 952-961.

868. Some verbs in *-ēre* also have a perfect in *-s-*: as *algeō, am cold, alsī (170, 3); haereō, stick, haesī (166, 2): see 999, 1000.* Also some in *-ire*: as, *sarciō, patch, sarsī (170, 3): see 1014, 1015.*

## PERFECT STEM IN -V- OR -U-.

869. (1.) Some verbs in -ere, with vowel roots, and almost all verbs in -āre or -īre, form their perfect stem by adding the suffix -v- to a theme ending in a long vowel: as,

PERFECT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
crē-v-	crēscō, <i>grow</i>	crē-
laudā-v-	laudō, <i>praise</i>	laudā-
audī-v-	audiō, <i>hear</i>	audī-

For other verbs in -ere with a perfect stem in -v-, and particularly terō, cernō, spernō, and sternō, see 962-970.

870. A few verbs in -ere have a perfect stem in -v- attached to a presumed theme in long ī: as, cupiō, *want*, cupivī; petō, *aim at*, petivī; quaerō, *inquire*, quaesivī; arcēssō, *fetch*, arcēssivī; see 966-970.

871. A few verbs in -ēre also have a perfect stem in -v-: as, fleō, *weep*, flēre, flēvī; see 1001-1003. And three verbs in -ēscere have a perfect stem in -v- attached to a presumed theme in long ē: -olēscō, *grow*, -olēvī; quiēscō, *get quiet*, quiēvī; suēscō, *get used*, suēvī.

872. One verb in -āscere has a perfect stem in -v- attached to a presumed theme in long ā: advesperāscit, *it gets dusk*, advesperāvit.

873. (2.) Many verbs in -ere form their perfect stem by adding the suffix -u- to a consonant root: as,

PERFECT STEM.	VERB.	FROM THEME.
al-u-	alō, <i>nurture</i>	al-
gen-u-	gignō, <i>beget</i>	geñ-

Other examples are: colō, *cultivate*, coluī; cōsulō, *consult*, cōsulū; -cumbō, *lie*, -cubuī; fremō, *roar*, fremuī; ēliciō, *draw out*, ēlicuī; molō, *grind*, moluī; rapiō, *snatch*, rapuī; serō, *string*, -serū; stertō, *snore*, -stertū; strepō, *make a racket*, strepuī; texō, *weave*, texuī; volō, *will*, voluī; compescō, *check*, compescuī (855); see 971-976.

874. Some verbs in -āre also have a perfect stem in -u-: as, crepō, *rattle*, crepāre, crepuī (993); and many in -ēre: as, moneō, *warn*, monēre, monuī: see 1004-1006; also four in -īre: as, saliō, *leap*, salire, saluī (1019).

875. The perfect potuī to the present possum (751) is from a lost present \*poteō, \*potēre (923). pōnere (for \*po-sinere, 112; 170, 2) forms an old perfect posivī (964), later posuī, as if pos- were the stem.

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

876. The perfect subjunctive stem ends in -erī-, for which -eri- is sometimes used (35, 2, 3): as,

rēxeri-m, rēxerī-s, rēxeri-t, rēxerī-mus, rēxerī-tis, rēxeri-nt.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

887. (*b.*) A perfect subjunctive stem in *-sī-* or in *-ssī-*, and a future perfect indicative stem in *-s<sup>o</sup>|e-* or in *-ss<sup>o</sup>|e-*, occur chiefly in old laws and prayers, and in dramatic verse: as,

Perfect subjunctive: *faxim, faxīs, FAXSEIS* (inscr. 145 B.C.), *faxit, faxīmus, faxītis, faxint*; *ausim, ausīs, ausit*; *locāssim, amāssīs, servāssit, amāssint, prohibēssīs, prohibēssit, cohibēssit, licēssit*.

Future perfect indicative: *faxō, faxis, faxit, faxitis, capsō, recepsō, iussō, occīsit, capsimus*; *levāssō, invitāssitis, mulcāssitis, exoculāssitis, prohibēssīs, prohibēssint*. Denominatives in *-āre* have also, in old Latin, a future perfect infinitive: as, *impetrāssere*.

888. Passive inflections, as future perfect *faxitur, turbāssitur*, deponent *MERCASSITVR* (inscr. 111 B.C.), are very rare; and, indeed, with the exception of *faxō* and *ausim*, even the active forms had become antiquated by 150 B.C. Denominatives in *-īre* never have the above formations. But *ambiō, canvass*, is thought to have a future perfect *ambīssit* twice (Plaut. prol.).

889. (2.) Shortened forms from perfect stems formed by the suffix *-v-* (869) are very common in all periods.

890. (*a.*) In tenses formed from perfect stems in *-āv-*, *-ēv-*, and *-ōv-*, *v* is often dropped before *-is-*, *-ēr-*, or *-er-*, and the vowels thus brought together are contracted (153, 1): as,

*laudāvistī, laudāstī*; *laudāvistis, laudāstis*; *laudāvērunt, laudārunt* (but the form in *-re*, as *laudāvēre*, is never contracted); *laudāverim, laudārim, &c.*; *laudāveram, laudāram, &c.*; *laudāvissem, laudāssem, &c.*; *laudāverō, laudārō, &c.*; *laudāvisse, laudāsse*.

*-plēvistī, -plēstī*; *-plēvistis, -plēstis*; *-plēvērunt, -plērunt*; *plēverim, -plērim, &c.*; *-plēveram, -plēram, &c.*; *-plēvissem, -plēssem, &c.*; *-plēverō, -plērō, &c.*; *-plēvisse, -plēsse*.

*nōvistī, nōstī*; *nōvistis, nōstis*; *nōvērunt, nōrunt*; *nōverim, nōrim, &c.*; *nōveram, nōram, &c.*; *nōvissem, nōssem, &c.*; *nōverō* always retains the *v*, but *cōgnōrō, &c.*; *nōvisse, nōsse*.

891. The verbs in which *v* belongs to the root (864), are not thus shortened, except *moveō*, mostly in compounds. From *iuvō, iuerint* (Catull.), *adiuerō* (Enn.), once each, and twice *adiuerit* (Plaut., Ter.) are unnecessary emendations.

892. Contractions in the perfect before *-t* and *-mus* are rare: as, *inrītāt, disturbāt*; *suēmus* or *suēmus* (Lucr.), *nōmus* (Enn.), *cōnsuēmus* (Prop.).

893. (*b.*) In tenses formed from perfect stems in *-iv-*, *v* is often dropped before *-is-*, *-ēr-*, or *-er-*; but contraction is common only in the forms which have *-is-*: as,

*audīvistī, audīstī*; *audīvistis, audīstis*; *audīvērunt, audiērunt*; *audīverim, audierim, &c.*; *audīveram, audieram, &c.*; *audīvissem, audīssem, &c.*; *audīverō, audierō, &c.*; *audīvisse, audīsse*. Sometimes *audiī, audiit, audit*. Intermediate between the long and the short forms are *audierās* and *audierit*, once each (Ter.). In the perfect subjunctive, *sinō* has *sīverīs* (Plaut., Cato), *sīrīs* (Plaut., Cato, Liv.), *sīreis* (Pac.), or *seirīs* (Plaut.), *sīrit* (Plaut., Liv.), *sīrītis* (Plaut.), *sīverint* (Plaut., Curt.), *sierint* (Cic., Curt.), or *sīrint* (Plaut.). *dēsīnō* is thought to have *dēsīmus* in the perfect indicative a couple of times (Sen., Plin. *Ep.*).

## NOUNS OF THE VERB.

### INFINITIVE.

894. The active infinitive has the ending **-re** in the present, and **-isse** in the perfect: as,

dare; regere, capere; laudāre, monēre, audire. rēxisse; laudāvisse or laudāsse, monuisse, audīvisse or audīsse.

895. For **-rē** in old Latin, see 134, 2. The infinitive of **fīō**, *become*, ends in **-rī**, **fīerī**, with a passive ending (789); twice **fīere** (Enn. Laev.). An older form for **-re** is **-se**, found in **esse**, *to be*, **ēsse**, *to eat*, and their compounds. For **velle**, *to wish* (**mālle**, **nōlle**), see 166, 8. In the perfect, **eō**, *go*, sometimes has **-iisse** in compounds (766), and in poetry, **petō**, *go to*, has rarely **petiisse**.

896. The present infinitive passive of verbs in **-ere** has the ending **-ī**; that of other verbs has **-rī**: as,

regī, capī; laudārī, monērī, audīrī. ferō, *carry*, has ferī. The length of the **ī** is sometimes indicated by the spelling **ei** (29, 2): as, DAREI.

897. A longer form in **-ier** for **-ī**, and **-rier** for **-rī**, is common in old laws and dramatic verse, and occurs sometimes in other poetry: as, FIGIER, *to be posted*, GNOSCIER, *to be read* (inscr. 186 B.C.); dīcier, *to be said*, cūrārīer, *to be looked after* (Plaut.); dominārīer, *to be lord paramount* (Verg.).

898. The place of the perfect passive, future active, and future passive infinitive is supplied by a circumlocution, as seen in the paradigms. For the future perfect **-āssere**, see 887.

### GERUNDIVE AND GERUND.

899. The gerundive stem is formed by adding **-ndo-**, nominative **-ndus**, **-nda**, **-ndum**, to the present stem: as,

dandus, stem dando-; regendus, capiendus; laudandus, monendus, audiendus. Verbs in **-ere** and **-ire** often have **-undus**, when not preceded by **u** or **v**, especially in formal style: as, capiundus; **eō**, *go*, always has eundum, and orior, *rise*, oriundus. For the adjective use, see 288. The gerund is like the oblique cases of the neuter singular. For **-bundus**, see 289; **-cundus**, 290.

### SUPINE.

900. The supine stem is formed by the suffix **-tu-**, which is often changed to **-su-** (912).

This suffix is attached to a root or to a form of the present stem after the manner of the perfect participle (906): as, nūntiātum, *to report*, nūntiātū, *in reporting*, stem nūntiātu-. Many of the commonest verbs have no supine: as, sum, eō, ferō; regō, emō, tegō; amō, dēleō, doceō, &c., &c.

### PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

901. The present participle stem is formed by adding **-nt-** or **-nti-**, nominative **-ns**, to the present stem: as,

dāns, *giving*, stems dant-, danti-; regēns, capiēns; laudāns, monēns, audiēns.



902. The adjective *sontem* (accusative, no nominative), which was originally the participle of *sum*, has *o* before the suffix, and *absēns* and *praesēns* have *e*; the participle of *eō* has *ē* in the nominative singular, otherwise *u*, *iēns*, *euntis*, &c. *n* rarely drops before *-s* (63): *as*, *LIBES* (inscr.), *exsultās* (Enn.), *animās* (Lucr.).

903. Some adjectives which were originally present participles have no verb: *as*, *clēmēns*, *merciful*, *ēlegāns*, *choice*, *ēvidēns*, *clear*, *frequēns*, *thick*, *petulāns*, *wanton*, *recēns*, *fresh*, *repēns*, *sudden*, &c., &c. For *potēns*, *powerful*, see 922.

#### FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

904. The future participle suffix is *-tūro-*, nominative *-tūrus*, *-tūra*, *-tūrum*, which is often changed to *-sūro-*, nominative *-sūrus*, *-sūra*, *-sūrum* (912).

This suffix is added to a theme after the manner of the perfect participle (906): *as*, *rēctūrus*, *going to guide*; *laudātūrus*, *going to praise*.

905. Some future participles have a different formation from that of the perfect participle: *as*, *mortuus*, *dead*, *moritūrus*; see also in the dictionary *arguō*, *fruor*, *orior*, *ruō*, *secō*. And some verbs have two forms of the future participle: *as*, *āgnōscō*, *īgnōscō*, *hauriō*, *iuvō*, *pariō*. Some verbs which have no perfect participle have a future participle: *as*, *acquiēscō*, *appāreō*, *ardeō*, *caleō*, *careō*, *doleō*, *ēsuriō*, *fugiō*, *haereō*, *incidō*, *iaceō*, *-nuō*, *parcō*, *rauciō*, *recidō*, *sonō*, *stō*, *valeō*.

#### PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

906. The perfect participle suffix is *-to-*, nominative *-tus*, *-ta*, *-tum*, which is often changed to *-so-*, nominative *-sus*, *-sa*, *-sum* (912).

907. The perfect participle was originally active as well as passive, and some participles have retained the active meaning: *as*,

*adultus*, *grown up*; *ēmersus*, *rising out from*; *exōsus*, *perōsus*, *hating bitterly*; *placitus*, *engaging*; *iūrātus*, *sworn*, *coniūrātus*, *conspiring*; *prānsus*, *having lunched*, *cēnātus*, *having dined*, *pōtus*, *drunk*, &c. The perfect participles of deponents are usually active, but sometimes passive: *as*, *meditātus*, *having studied*, or *studied*. Many verbs are not accompanied by a perfect participle (811), particularly verbs in *-ēre*, with a parallel adjective in *-idus* (287). Intransitive verbs have usually only the neuter. A perfect active participle *meminēns* is said to have been used twice (Plaut., Laev.).

908. The perfect participle is formed in one of two separate ways:

909. (1.) From a theme consisting of a root; in this way the participles of most verbs in *-ere* and *-ēre* are formed: *as*,

*gestus*, *carried*, *aptus*, *fit*, *solūtus*, *loosed* (142), *iūctus*, *joined* (831), *sparsus*, *sprinkled* (170, 3); *doctus*, *taught*.

910. In some consonant root participles of verbs in *-ere*, *-āre*, or *-ēre*, which have the suffix *-u-* in the perfect stem (873), the *-to-* is preceded by a short *i*: *as*, *genitus*, *born* (971-976); *domitus*, *tamed* (993); *monitus*, *warned* (1003, 1004, 1009). In old Latin, *e* occurs: *as*, *MERETA* (41); *e* is retained in *vegetus*, *sprightly*. One participle has *-tuo-*: *mortuus*, *dead*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## LIST OF VERBS

ARRANGED ACCORDING TO THE PRINCIPAL PARTS.

920. I. The principal parts of root verbs and of verbs in *-ere* are formed in a variety of ways and are best learned separately for every verb (922-986).

921. II. The principal parts of verbs in *-āre*, *-ēre*, and *-īre*, are usually formed as follows :

laudō, <i>praise</i>	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātus
moneō, <i>advise</i>	monēre	monuī	monitus
audiō, <i>hear</i>	audīre	audīvī	audītus

For other formations, see 989-1022.

## I. PRIMITIVE VERBS.

## (A.) ROOT VERBS.

922. Root verbs have their principal parts as follows :

sum, <i>am</i>	esse	_____	_____
_____, <i>become, get, -am</i>	fore	fuī	_____

For *fuam*, &c., *forem*, &c., *fore*, see 750. *fuī*, &c., serves as the perfect system of *sum*.

pos-sum, <i>can</i>	pos-se	_____	_____
_____, <i>can</i>	_____	potuī	_____

*potuī*, &c., serves as the perfect system of *possum*. Of the present system of *potuī*, only *potēns*, *powerful*, is used, and only as an adjective.

dō, <i>give, put</i>	dare	dedī	datus
----------------------	------	------	-------

For compounds, see 757.

bibō, <i>drink</i>	bibere	bibī	pōtus
--------------------	--------	------	-------

So the compounds, with the reduplication preserved in the perfect system (860).

serō, <i>sow</i>	serere	sēvī	satus
------------------	--------	------	-------

Compounds have *i* for *a* in the perfect participle : as, *cōn-situs*.

sistō, <i>set</i>	sistere	-stitī, rarely stitī	status
inquam, <i>quoth I</i>	_____	inquiī once	_____
eō, <i>go</i>	īre	īī, very rarely īvī	itum, -itus
queō, <i>can</i>	quīre	quīvī	quitus
ne-queō, <i>can't</i>	ne-quīre	ne-quīvī	ne-quitus
edō, <i>eat</i>	ēsse	ēdī	ēsus
volō, <i>will, wish, want</i>	velle	voluī	_____
nōlō, <i>won't</i>	nōlle	nōluī	_____
mālō, <i>like better</i>	mālle	māluī	_____
ferō, <i>carry</i>	ferre	(tulī)	(lātus)

For *tulī*, old *tetulī*, and *lātus*, see 780 ; for the perfect of *re-ferō*, 861.

(B.) VERBS IN -ere.

(A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX.

923. (1a.) The following verbs in -ere have a reduplicated perfect stem (858), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus :

924. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

canō, <i>make music</i>	canere	cecinī	(cantātus)
-------------------------	--------	--------	------------

For con-cinō, oc-cinō, and prae-cinō, see 971 and 823.

tendō, <i>stretch</i>	tendere	tetendī	tentus
-----------------------	---------	---------	--------

For tennitur (Ter.), dis-tennite (Plaut.), see 166, 4 ; late participle tēnsus. Compounds have -tendī (860) and -tentus. But sometimes ex-lēnsus, and in late writers, dē-tēnsus, dis-tēnsus, os-tēnsus, and re-tēnsus.

925. (b.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by -o|e- (831).

pangō, <i>fix</i>	pangere	pepigī, <i>agreed</i>	pāctus
-------------------	---------	-----------------------	--------

In meaning, the perfect pepigī corresponds to pacīscor ; pānxit, *made, set in verse* (Enn.), pānxit, *set* (Col.), pēgit (Pac.), pēgerit (Cic.), *fixed*, once each. For com-pingo and im-pingō, see 938.

pungō, <i>punch</i>	pungere	pupugī	pūctus
---------------------	---------	--------	--------

For com-pungō and ex-pungō, see 954 and 823.

tangō, <i>touch</i>	tangere	tetigī	tāctus
---------------------	---------	--------	--------

In old Latin: tagō (Turp.), tagit, tagam (Pac.). Compounds have i for a in the present system: as, con-tingō, con-tingere, con-tigī (860), con-tāctus; in old Latin: at-tigās (Plaut., Ter., Acc., Pac.), at-tigat (Pac.), at-tigātis (Plaut., Pac.).

926. (c.) With the present stem in -lo|e- (833).

tollō, <i>take off</i>	tollere	(sus-tulī)	(sub-lātus)
------------------------	---------	------------	-------------

As the perfect and perfect participle of tollō are appropriated by ferō, tollō takes those of sus-tollō. The original perfect is tetulī (860).

927. (d.) With the present stem in -sc<sup>o</sup>|e- (834).

discō, <i>learn</i>	discere	didicī	_____
poscō, <i>demand</i>	poscere	poposcī	_____

For poposcī, see 855. For -didicī and -poposcī, see 860.

928. (e.) With the present stem in -io|e- (836).

pariō, <i>bring forth</i>	parere	peperī	partus
---------------------------	--------	--------	--------

For forms in -īre, see 791. com-periō, 1012; re-periō, 1011.

929. (1 b.) The following verbs in -ere have a reduplicated perfect stem (858), and the perfect participle, when used, is -sus (912).

930. (a.) With the present stem in -e|e- (829.)

cadō, <i>fall</i>	cadere	cecidī	-cāsus
-------------------	--------	--------	--------

Compounds have i for a in the present system: as, oc-cidō, oc-cidere, oc-cidī (860), oc-cāsus. Rarely e in the present and perfect systems (Enn. Lucr., Varr.): as, ac-cedere, ac-cedisset (109). For the perfect of re-cidō, see 861.

caedō, <i>fell, cut</i>	caedere	cecidī	caesus
-------------------------	---------	--------	--------

Compounds have ī for ae: as, ac-cidō, ac-cidere, ac-cidī (860), ac-cīsus.

parcō, *spare*

parcere

pepercī

—

pepercī, &c. (regularly in Cic., Caes., Hor., Ov., Mart.; Nep. once; also Plaut. twice, Ter. once). Old parsī, &c. (Plaut. 8, Cato, Ter., Nov., Nep., once each); once parcuī (Naev.). Compounds: com-perce (Plaut.), con-parsit (Ter.), in-perce, im-percitō, re-percis (Plaut.), re-parcent (Lucr.).

pendō, *weigh, pay*

pendere

pependī

pēnsus

931. (b.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by -o|e- (831).

tundō, *pound*

tundere

tutudī not used

tūnsus

For the perfect of re-tundō, see 861; other compounds have the perfect -tudī (861), but once con-tūdit (Enn.). Perfect participle, tūsus (Plin., Mart.); compounds: con-tūnsus (Plin.), con-tūsus (Cato, Varr., Caes., Lucr., Sal., Verg., &c.); ob-tūnsus (Plaut., Verg., Liv., Sen.), op-tūsus, ob-tūsus (Lucr., Sen., Quintil., Tac.); per-tūssus (Plaut.), per-tūsus (Cato, Lucr., Liv., Sen., &c.); re-tūnsus (Plaut., Verg.), re-tūsus (Cic., Lucr., Hor.); sub-tūsus (Tib.).

932. (c.) With the present stem in -ro|e-, or -lo|e- (833).

currō, *run*

currere

cucurri

cursum

For perfect of compounds, see 860.

fallō, *cheat*

fallere

fefelli

falsus

Compound re-fellō, re-fellere, re-felli (860), —.

pellō, *push*

pellere

pepulī

pulsus

For the perfect of re-pellō, see 861. Other compounds have -pulī (860).

933. (1 c.) The following verbs in -ere are without the reduplication (861):

934. (a.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by -o|e- (831).

findō, *split apart*

findere

-fidī, rarely fidī

fissus

scindō, *rend*

scindere

-scidī, rarely scidī

scissus

935. (b.) With the present stem in -lo|e- (833).

per-cellō, *knock down*

per-cellere

per-culī

per-culsus

936. (2 a.) The following verbs in -ere have a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel (862), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus:

937. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

agō, *drive*

agere

ēgī

āctus

Real compounds have i for a in the present system: as, ab-igō, ab-igere, ab-ēgī, ab-āctus; but per-agō retains a. cōgō and dēgō are contracted: cōgō, cōgere, co-ēgī, co-āctus; dēgō, dēgere, —, —.

emō, *take, buy*

emere

ēmī

emptus

co-emō retains e in the present system, and usually inter-emō and per-emō; other compounds have -imō. For-cōmō, dēmō, prēmō, and sūmō, see 952.

—, *strike*

—

īcī

ictus

Forms of the present system are icit (Plaut., Lucr.), icitur (Plin.), icimur (Lucr.).

legō, *pick up, read*

legere

lēgī

lēctus

Compounds with ad, inter, nec-, per, prae, and re-, have -legō in the present system, others -ligō. For dī-ligō, intel-legō, neg-legō, see 952.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

947. (2 c.) The following verbs in *-ere* (367) with the present stem in *-o|e-* (837, 840), have the perfect stem in *-u-* or in *-v-* of the theme (865), and the perfect participle, when used, in *-tus*:

<i>acuō, sharpen</i>	<i>acuere</i>	<i>acui</i>	<i>acūtus</i> adjective
<i>arguō, make clear</i>	<i>arguere</i>	<i>argui</i>	<i>argūtus</i> rare
<i>con-gruō, agree</i>	<i>con-gruere</i>	<i>con-grui</i>	—
<i>ex-uō, doff</i>	<i>ex-uere</i>	<i>ex-ui</i>	<i>ex-ūtus</i>
<i>im-buō, give a smack of</i>	<i>im-buere</i>	<i>im-bui</i>	<i>im-būtus</i>
<i>ind-uō, don</i>	<i>ind-uere</i>	<i>ind-ui</i>	<i>ind-ūtus</i>
<i>in-gruō, impend</i>	<i>in-gruere</i>	<i>in-grui</i>	—
<i>luō, pay, atone for</i>	<i>luere</i>	<i>lui</i>	<i>-lūtus, washed</i>
<i>metuō, fear</i>	<i>metuere</i>	<i>metui</i>	<i>metūtus</i> once
<i>-nuō, nod</i>	<i>-nuere</i>	<i>-nui</i>	—
<i>pluit, it rains</i>	<i>pluere</i>	<i>pluit, plūvit</i>	—
<i>ruō, tumble down</i>	<i>ruere</i>	<i>ruī</i>	<i>-rutus</i>
<i>so-lvō, loose</i>	<i>so-lvere</i>	<i>so-lvi</i>	<i>so-lūtus</i>
<i>spuō, spit</i>	<i>spuere</i>	<i>-spui</i>	—
<i>statuō, set</i>	<i>statuere</i>	<i>statui</i>	<i>statūtus</i>

Compounds have *i* for *a* throughout: as, *cōn-stituō, cōn-stituere, &c.*

<i>volvō, roll</i>	<i>volvere</i>	<i>volvi</i>	<i>volūtus</i>
<i>suō, sew</i>	<i>suere</i>	<i>-sui</i>	<i>sūtus</i>
<i>tribuō, assign</i>	<i>tribuere</i>	<i>tribui</i>	<i>tribūtus</i>

948. Two verbs in *-ere* with the present stem in *-nuo|e-* (833), have the perfect stem in *-nu-* (865), and the perfect participle, when used, in *-tus*:

<i>minuō, lessen</i>	<i>minuere</i>	<i>minui</i>	<i>minūtus</i>
<i>sternuō, sneeze</i>	<i>sternuere</i>	<i>sternui</i>	—

949. (3.) The following verbs in *-ere* have a perfect stem consisting of a root ending in two consonants (866), and the perfect participle in *-sus* (912):

950. (a.) With the present stem in *-o|e-* (829); most have a nasal (831).

<i>-cendō, light</i>	<i>-cendere</i>	<i>-cendi</i>	<i>-cēnsus</i>
<i>-fendō, hit</i>	<i>-fendere</i>	<i>-fendi</i>	<i>-fēnsus</i>
<i>mandō, chew</i>	<i>mandere</i>	<i>mandi</i> once	<i>mānsus</i>
<i>pandō, open</i>	<i>pandere</i>	<i>pandi</i>	<i>passus, pānsus</i>

For *dis-pennite* (Plaut.), see 166, 4. *dis-pandō, dis-pendō*, has perfect participle *dis-pēnsus* (Plaut., Lucr.), *dis-pānsus* (Lucr., Plin., Suet.).

<i>pre-hendō, seize</i>	<i>pre-hendere</i>	<i>pre-hendi</i>	<i>pre-hēnsus</i>
-------------------------	--------------------	------------------	-------------------

Rarely *prae-hendō*; but very often *prēndō, prēndere, prēndi, prēnsus*.

<i>scandō, climb</i>	<i>scandere</i>	<i>-scendi</i>	<i>-scēnsus</i>
----------------------	-----------------	----------------	-----------------

Compounds have *e* for *a* throughout: as, *dē-scendō, dē-scendere, &c.*

<i>vorrō, verrō, sweep</i>	<i>vorrere, verrere</i>	<i>-vorri, -verri</i>	<i>vorsus, versus</i>
<i>vortō, vertō, turn</i>	<i>vortere, vertere</i>	<i>vorti, verti</i>	<i>vorsus, versus</i>

951. (b.) With the present stem in *-lo|e-* (833).

<i>vollō, vellō, tear</i>	<i>vollere, vellere</i>	<i>vollī, velli</i>	<i>volsus, vulsus</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------	-----------------------

Late perfect *vulsī* (Sen., Luc.); *-vulsī* (Laber., Col., Sen., Luc.).

(B.) PERFECT STEM IN -s-, OR IN -v- OR -u-.

PERFECT STEM IN -s-.

952. (1a.) The following verbs in -ere have the perfect stem in -s- (867), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus:

953. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

carpō, <i>nibble, pluck</i>	carpere	carpsi	carptus
Compounds have e for a: as, dē-cerpō, dē-cerpere, dē-cerpsi, dē-cerptus.			
com-būrō, <i>burn up</i>	com-būrere	com-bussi	com-bustus
cōmō, <i>put up</i>	cōmere	cōmpsi	cōmptus
Compound of com- and emō (937, 823). See also dēmō, prēmō, sūmō.			
coquō, <i>cook</i>	coquere	coxi	coctus
dēmō, <i>take away</i>	dēmere	dēmpsi	dēmptus
dīcō, <i>say</i>	dīcere	dīxi	dictus
For dīc, see 846.			
dī-ligō, <i>esteem</i>	dī-ligere	dī-lēxi	dī-lēctus
Compound of dis- and legō (937, 823). See also intel-legō and neg-legō.			
dūcō, <i>lead</i>	dūcere	dūxi	ductus
For dūc, ē-dūc, see 846.			
-fligō, <i>smash</i>	-fligere	-fixi	-fictus
Of the simple verb, fligit occurs (L. Andr.), fligēbant (Lucr.), and fligi (L. Andr., Acc.).			
gerō, <i>carry</i>	gerere	gessi	gestus
intel-legō, <i>understand</i>	intel-legere	intel-lēxi	intel-lēctus
neg-legō, <i>disregard</i>	neg-legere	neg-lēxi	neg-lēctus
In the perfect system very rarely intel-lēgī and neg-lēgī (862, 823).			
nūbō, <i>veil, marry (a man)</i>	nūbere	nūpsi	nūpta
prēmō, <i>take out</i>	prēmere	prōmpsi	prōmptus
regō, <i>guide, rule</i>	regere	rēxi	rēctus
In the present system, con-rigō and ē-rigō; commonly por-rigō, sometimes porgō; rarely sur-rigō, commonly surgō; always pergō.			
rēpō, <i>creep</i>	rēpere	rēpsi	—
scalpō, <i>dig</i>	scalpere	scalpsi	scalptus
scribō, <i>write</i>	scribere	scripsi	scriptus
sculpō, <i>carve</i>	sculpere	sculpsi	sculptus
struō, <i>build up</i>	struere	strūxi	strūctus
sūgō, <i>suck</i>	sūgere	sūxi	suctus
sūmō, <i>take up</i>	sūmere	sūmpsi	sūmptus
tegō, <i>cover</i>	tegere	tēxi	tēctus
trahō, <i>drag</i>	trahere	trāxi	tractus
ūrō, <i>burn</i>	ūrere	ussi	ustus
vehō, <i>cart</i>	vehere	vēxi	vectus
vīvō, <i>live</i>	vivere	vixi	—



954. (b.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by -o|e- (831)

cingō, <i>gird</i>	cingere	cīnxī	cīnctus
com-pungō, <i>prick over</i>	com-pungere	com-pūnxī	com-pūnctus

A compound of pungō (925, 823).

ē-mungō, <i>clean out</i>	ē-mungere	ē-mūnxī	ē-mūnctus
ex-pungō, <i>prick out</i>	ex-pungere	ex-pūnxī	ex-pūnctus

A compound of pungō (925, 823).

fingō, <i>mould</i>	fingerere	fīnxī	fīctus
iungō, <i>join</i>	iungere	iūnxī	iūnctus
pingō, <i>paint</i>	pingere	pīnxī	pīctus
plangō, <i>beat</i>	plangere	plānxī	plānctus
stinguō, <i>poke, poke out</i>	stinguere	-stīnxī	-stīnctus
stringō, <i>peel, graze</i>	stringere	strīnxī	strīctus
tingō, <i>wet</i>	tingere	tīnxī	tīnctus
unguō, <i>anoint</i>	unguere	ūnxī	ūnctus

Sometimes unguō, ungere, &c., in the present system.

955. (c.) With the present stem in -n<sup>o</sup>|e- (833).

temnō, <i>scorn</i>	temnere	(con-temp <sup>sī</sup> )	(con-temptus)
---------------------	---------	---------------------------	---------------

956. (d.) With the present stem in -i<sup>o</sup>|e- (836).

ad-liciō, <i>lure</i>	ad-licere	ad-lexī	—
in-liciō, <i>inveigle</i>	in-licere	in-lexī	in-lectus
pel-liciō, <i>lead astray</i>	pel-licere	pel-lexī	pel-lectus
-spiciō, <i>spy</i>	-spicere	-spēxī	-spectus

Forms of the simple verb are old and rare: as, specitur, spicit, spece (Plaut.), specimus (Varr.), spiciunt (Cato), spēxit (Naev., Enn.).

957. (1 b.) The following verbs in -ere have the perfect stem in -s- (867), and the perfect participle, when used, in -sus (912):

958. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

cēdō, <i>move along</i>	cēdere	cessī	cessus
claudō, <i>shut</i>	claudere	clausī	clausus

Sometimes clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsus. Compounds have ū for au throughout.

di-vidō, <i>separate</i>	di-videre	di-vīsī	di-vīsus
fīgō, <i>pin</i>	fīgere	fīxī	fīxus, twice fīctus
fluō, <i>flow</i>	fluere	flūxī	fluxus adjective
laedō, <i>hurt</i>	laedere	laesī	laesus

Compounds have ī for ae throughout: as, in-līdō, in-lidere, &c.

lūdō, <i>play</i>	lūdere	lūsī	lūsus
mittō, <i>send</i>	mittere	mīsī	missus
mergō, <i>dip, duck</i>	mergere	mersī	mersus
plaudō, <i>clap</i>	plaudere	plausī	plausus

Also ap-plaudō, ap-plaudere, &c. Other compounds have usually ō for au throughout: as, ex-plōdō, &c.; but ex-plaudō (Lucr.).

premō, <i>squeeze</i>	premere	pressī	pressus
-----------------------	---------	--------	---------

Compounds have ī for e in the present system: as, com-primō, &c.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

965. (c.) With the present stem in -scō|e- (834).

crēscō, <i>grow</i>	crēscere	crēvī	crētus
nōscō, <i>get to know</i>	nōscere	nōvī	nōtus adjective

Compounds: ī-gnōscō, ī-gnōvī, ī-gnōtum; ā-gnōscō, ā-gnōvī, ā-gnītus; cō-gnōscō, cō-gnōvī, cō-gnītus; dī-nōscō, dī-nōvī, rarely dī-gnōscō, dī-gnōvī, —; inter-nōscō, inter-nōvī, —. Old passive infinitive GNOSCIER (inscr. 186 B. C.).

pāscō, <i>feed</i>	pāscere	pāvī	pāstus
scīscō, <i>enact</i>	scīscere	scīvī	scītus

966. (2 b.) The following verbs in -ere have the perfect stem in -v-, preceded by the long vowel of a presumed denominative stem (870), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus:

967. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

petō, <i>aim at</i>	petere	petivī	petītus
---------------------	--------	--------	---------

In the perfect, sometimes petiī (Cic., Ov., Liv., Val. Fl., Plin. *Ep.*), PETIEI (inscr.), petī late (Sen., Stat.); petiit (Cic., Hor., Tac., Suet.), petīt (Verg., Ov., Phaedr., Sen., Luc., Suet.), petiisse (Verg., Hor., Ov., Val. Fl., Stat.).

quaerō, <i>inquire</i>	quaerere	quaesivī	quaesītus
------------------------	----------	----------	-----------

Compounds sometimes retain ae in old Latin, but usually have ī for ae throughout: as, con-quirō, con-quirere, &c.

968. (b.) With the present stem in -scō|e- (834).

ab-olēscō, <i>vanish away</i>	ab-olēscere	ab-olēvī	————
ad-olēscō, <i>grow up</i>	ad-olēscere	ad-olēvī	ad-ultus
con-cupīscō, <i>hanker for</i>	con-cupīscere	con-cupīvī	con-cupītus
-dormīscō, <i>fall asleep</i>	-dormīscere	-dormīvī	————
ex-olēscō, <i>grow out</i>	ex-olēscere	ex-olēvī	ex-olētus
in-veterāscō, <i>get set</i>	in-veterāscere	in-veterāvī	————
obs-olēscō, <i>get worn out</i>	obs-olēscere	obs-olēvī	obs-olētus adj.
quiēscō, <i>get still</i>	quiēscere	quiēvī	quiētus adjective
re-sipīscō, <i>come to</i>	re-sipīscere	re-sipīvī	————
suēscō, <i>get used</i>	suēscere	suēvī	suētus
vesperāscit, <i>gets dusk</i>	vesperāscere	vesperāvit	————

969. (c.) With the present stem in -io|e- (836).

cupiō, <i>want</i>	cupere	cupīvī	cupītus
--------------------	--------	--------	---------

Once with a form in -īre (791), cupīret (Lucret.).

sapiō, <i>have a smack</i>	sapere	sapīvī	————
----------------------------	--------	--------	------

Compounds have i for a: as, re-sipiō, &c.

970. (d.) With the present stem in -ssō|e- (375).

ar-cēssō, <i>send for</i>	ar-cēssere	ar-cēssivī	ar-cēssītus
---------------------------	------------	------------	-------------

Sometimes ac-cersō, &c.; infinitive rarely ar-cēssirī or ac-cersirī.

capēssō, <i>undertake</i>	capēssere	capēssivī	————
facēssō, <i>do, make off</i>	facēssere	facēssivī	facēssītus

Perfect system rare: facēssieris or facēsseris (Cic.), facēssisset (Tac.).

in-cēssō, <i>attack</i>	in-cēssere	in-cēssivī	————
lacēssō, <i>provoke</i>	lacēssere	lacēssivī	lacēssītus

PERFECT STEM IN -U-.

971. (3.) The following verbs in -ere have the perfect stem in -u- (873), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus; in some participles -tus is preceded by a short i, thus, -itus (910):

972. (a.) With the present stem in -o|e- (829).

alō, <i>bring up</i>	alere	aluī	altus, rarely alitus
colō, <i>till, stay round, court</i>	colere	coluī	cultus
con-cinō, <i>chime with</i>	con-cinere	con-cinuī	————

A compound of canō (924, 823). See also oc-cinō and prae-cinō.

cōn-sulō, <i>consult</i>	cōn-sulere	cōn-suluī	cōn-sultus
depsō, <i>knead</i>	depsere	depsuī	depstus
fremō, <i>growl</i>	fremere	fremuī	————
gemō, <i>groan</i>	gemere	gemuī	————
molō, <i>grind</i>	molere	moluī	molitus
oc-cinō, <i>sing ominously</i>	oc-cinere	oc-cinuī	————

Once with reduplication, oc-cecinerit (Liv.).

oc-culō, <i>hide</i>	oc-culere	oc-culuī	oc-cultus
pīsō, pīnsō, <i>bray</i>	pīsere, pīnsere	pīnsuī, pīsivī	pistus

Once (818, 847) pīnsībart (Enn.). Perfect once pīnsuī (Pomp.), once (823, 893) pīsiērunt (Varr.). Perfect participle often pīnsitus (Col.), once pīnsus (Vitr.).

pōnō, <i>place</i>	pōnere	po-suī	po-situs
--------------------	--------	--------	----------

A compound of po- and sinō (964). Perfect in old Latin po-sivī (893); po-suī is first used by Ennius (875). Perfect participle in verse sometimes, po-stus, -po-stus; inf. inposisse (Plaut.).

prae-cinō, <i>play before</i>	prae-cinere	prae-cinuī	————
serō, <i>string</i>	serere	-seruī	sertus
stertō, <i>snore</i>	stertere	(dē-stertuī)	————
strepō, <i>make a racket</i>	strepere	strepuī	————
texō, <i>weave</i>	texere	texuī	textus
tremō, <i>quake</i>	tremere	tremuī	————
vomō, <i>throw up</i>	vomere	vomuī	————

973. (b.) With reduplication and -o|e- in the present stem (829).

gignō, <i>beget</i>	gignere	genuī	genitus
---------------------	---------	-------	---------

Present sometimes also without reduplication, genit, &c. (Varr., Lucr.).

974. (c.) With the present stem in a nasalized root followed by -o|e- (831).

ac-cumbō, <i>lie by</i>	ac-cumbere	ac-cubuī	ac-cubitus
-------------------------	------------	----------	------------

So also in-cumbō; dis-cumbō has dis-cubuī, dis-cubitum. Compounds with dē, ob, prō, re-, and sub, have -cubuī, ———.

975. (d.) With the present stem in -io|e- (836).

ē-liciō, <i>coax out</i>	ē-licere	ē-licuī	ē-licitus
rapīō, <i>seize</i>	rapere	rapuī	raptus

Compounds have i for a in the present and perfect systems, and e in the perfect participle: as, ē-ripīō, ē-ripere, ē-ripuī, ē-reptus. Old Latin has u in dē-rupier and in sub-rupīō, sub-rupere, sub-rupuī, sub-ruptus; shortened forms are: surpuit, surpuerit (Plaut.), surpit (Plaut. prol.), surpere (Lucr.), surpite, surpuerat (Hor.). For sub-repsit (Plaut.), see 887.

976. (e.) With the present stem in -scō|e- (835); for com-pēscuī, see 855

acēscō, <i>get sour</i>	acēscere	-acui	_____
alēscō, <i>grow up</i>	alēscere	(co-aluī)	(co-alitus)
ārēscō, <i>dry up</i>	ārēscere	-āruī	_____
calēscō, <i>get warm</i>	calēscere	-caluī	_____
candēscō, <i>get white</i>	candēscere	-canduī	_____
cānēscō, <i>get grey</i>	cānēscere	cānuī	_____
clārēscō, <i>get bright</i>	clārēscere	clāruī	_____
com-pescō, <i>check</i>	com-pescere	com-pescuī	_____
con-ticēscō, <i>get all still</i>	con-ticēscere	con-ticuī	_____

Also in the present system, con-ticiscō, con-ticiscere, &c.

crēbrēscō, <i>get common</i>	crēbrēscere	-crēbrui	_____
crūdēscō, <i>wax bad</i>	crūdēscere	(re-crūduī)	_____
-dolēscō, <i>get pained</i>	-dolēscere	-doluī	_____
dūrēscō, <i>get hard</i>	dūrēscere	dūruī	_____
ē-vilēscō, <i>get cheap</i>	ē-vilēscere	ē-viluī	_____
fervēscō, <i>boil up</i>	fervēscere	-ferbui, -fervi	_____
flōrēscō, <i>blossom out</i>	flōrēscere	-flōruī	_____
horrēscō, <i>bristle up</i>	horrēscere	-horruī	_____
languēscō, <i>get weak</i>	languēscere	languī	_____
latēscō, <i>hide away</i>	latēscere	-lituī	_____
liquēscō, <i>melt</i>	liquēscere	(dē-licuī)	_____
madēscō, <i>get moist</i>	madēscere	maduī	_____
marcēscō, <i>pine away</i>	marcēscere	(ē-marcuī)	_____
mātūrēscō, <i>ripen</i>	mātūrēscere	mātūruī	_____
nigrēscō, <i>get black</i>	nigrēscere	nigrui	_____
nōtēscō, <i>get known</i>	nōtēscere	nōtuī	_____
ob-mūtēscō, <i>get still</i>	ob-mūtēscere	ob-mūtui	_____
ob-surdēscō, <i>get deaf</i>	ob-surdēscere	ob-surduī	_____
oc-callēscō, <i>get hard</i>	oc-callēscere	oc-calluī	_____
pallēscō, <i>grow pale</i>	pallēscere	palluī	_____
pūtēscō, <i>get soaked</i>	pūtēscere	pūtui	_____
rigēscō, <i>stiffen up</i>	rigēscere	riguī	_____
rubēscō, <i>redde</i>	rubēscere	rubuī	_____
sānēscō, <i>get well</i>	sānēscere	-sanuī	_____
senēscō, <i>grow old</i>	senēscere	-senuī	_____
stupēscō, <i>get dazed</i>	stupēscere	(ob-stupuī)	_____

Also op-stipēscō or ob-stipēscō, op-stipuī or ob-stipuī.

tābēscō, <i>waste away</i>	tābēscere	tābui	_____
tepēscō, <i>get lukewarm</i>	tepēscere	tepuī	_____
-timēscō, <i>get scared</i>	-timēscere	-timuī	_____
torpēscō, <i>get numb</i>	torpēscere	torpuī	_____
tremēscō, <i>quake</i>	tremēscere	(con-tremuī)	_____

Also in the present system, con-tremiscō, con-tremiscere, &c.

tumēscō, <i>swell up</i>	tumēscere	-tumuī	_____
valēscō, <i>get strong</i>	valēscere	-valuī	_____
vānēscō, <i>wane</i>	vānēscere	(ē-vānuī)	_____



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## II. DENOMINATIVE VERBS.

987. Most verbs in *-āre*, *-ēre*, and *-īre* (or in *-ārī*, *-ērī*, and *-īrī*), are denominatives.

988. Some primitives from vowel roots have the form of denominatives in the present system, or throughout; and some verbs with a denominative present system have the perfect and perfect participle formed directly from a root.

(I.) VERBS IN *-āre*.

## (A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX.

989. (1.) The following verb in *-āre* has a reduplicated perfect stem (859):

<i>stō</i> , <i>stand</i>	<i>stāre</i>	<i>stetī</i>	_____
---------------------------	--------------	--------------	-------

For *-stitī*, see 860. The compound *prae-stō* has rarely the perfect participle *prae-stātus* (Brut., Plin.), and *prae-stitus* (Liv.).

990. (2.) The following verbs in *-āre* have a perfect stem consisting of a root which ends in *-v-* and has a long vowel (864), and the perfect participle in *-tus*:

<i>iuvō</i> , <i>help</i>	<i>iuvāre</i>	<i>iūvī</i>	<i>iūtus</i> once
---------------------------	---------------	-------------	-------------------

In the perfect system, *iuverint*, *adiuverō*, and *adiuverit* occur once each in Catull., Enn., Plaut., and Ter; see 891. Perfect participle usual only in the compound *ad-iūtus*.

<i>lavō</i> , <i>bathe</i>	<i>lavāre</i>	<i>lāvī</i>	<i>lautus</i>
----------------------------	---------------	-------------	---------------

Forms in *-ere* are very common in the present tense (820): *lavis* (Plaut., Hor.), *lavit* (Plaut., Lucr., Catull., Verg., Hor.), *lavimus* (Hor.), *lavitur* (Val. Fl.), *lavitō* (Cato), *lavere* often, *lavī* (Pomp.). Perfect participle often *lōtus* in writers of the empire; supine, *lautum*, *lavātum*.

(B.) PERFECT STEM IN *-v-* OR *-u-*.PERFECT STEM IN *-v-*.

991. (1a.) Two verbs in *-āre* have the perfect stem in *-v-* (869), and the perfect participle, when used, in *-tus*, both preceded by a long *-ā-* of the root:

<i>flō</i> , <i>blow</i>	<i>flāre</i>	<i>flāvī</i>	<i>flātus</i>
<i>nō</i> , <i>swim</i>	<i>nāre</i>	<i>nāvī</i>	_____

992. (1b.) Most verbs in *-āre* have the perfect stem in *-v-* (869), and the perfect participle in *-tus*, both preceded by a form of the present stem in long *-ā-*: as,

<i>laudō</i> , <i>praise</i>	<i>laudāre</i>	<i>laudāvī</i>	<i>laudātus</i>
<i>liberō</i> , <i>free</i>	<i>liberāre</i>	<i>liberāvī</i>	<i>liberātus</i>
<i>nōminō</i> , <i>name</i>	<i>nōmināre</i>	<i>nōmināvī</i>	<i>nōminātus</i>
<i>spērō</i> , <i>hope</i>	<i>spērāre</i>	<i>spērāvī</i>	<i>spērātus</i>

## PERFECT STEM IN -U-.

993. (2.) The following verbs in *-āre* have the perfect stem in *-u-* (874), and the perfect participle, when used, in *-tus*; in some participles, *-tus* is preceded by a short *i*, thus, *-itus* (910):

*crepō, rattle*                      *crepāre*                      *crepui*                      (*in-crepitus*)

Forms of the perfect system in *-v-* (823) are: *in-crepāvit* (Plaut.), *dis-crepāvit* (Varr.), *in-crepārit* (Suet.).

*cubō, lie*                              *cubāre*                      *cubui*                      \_\_\_\_\_

Forms of the perfect system in *-v-* (823) are: *ex-cubāverant* (Caes.), *cubāris* (Prop.), *in-cubāvēre* (Plin.), *cubāsse* (Quintil.). Compound perfect participle *in-cubitus* (Plin.).

*domō, tame*                              *domāre*                      *domui*                      *domitus*

*ē-necō, murder*                      *ē-necāre*                      *ē-necui*                      *ē-nectus*

The simple verb has *necāvī, necātus*; twice *necuit* (Enn., Phaedr.). *ē-necō* sometimes has *i* for *e* in the present and perfect system; once (823) *ē-nicāvit*, and once (887) *ē-nicāssō* (Plaut.); perfect participle also *ē-necātus* (Plin.).

*fricō, rub down*                      *fricāre*                      *fricui*                      *frictus*

Perfect participle also *fricātus* (Vitr.), *cōn-fricātus* (Varr., Plin.), *dē-fricātus* (Catull., Col., Plin.), *in-fricātus* (Col., Plin.), *per-fricātus* (Vitr., Plin.).

*micō, quiver*                              *micāre*                      *micui*                      \_\_\_\_\_

So the compounds; except *dī-micō, dī-micāvī, dī-micātum*; twice in pentameter verse (823) *dī-micuisse* (Ov.).

*-plicō, fold*                              *-plicāre*                      *-plicui*                      *-plicitus*

A few forms of the present system of the simple verb occur. In the perfect and perfect participle usually *-plicāvī, -plicātus*; but sometimes *ap-plicui* (Cic. once, Tib., Ov., Liv., Sen., &c.); *com-plicui* (Sen.), *ex-plicui* (Verg., Hor., Liv., Sen., &c.), *im-plicui* (Verg., Tib., Ov., Sen., &c.); *ap-plicitus* (Col., Quintil., Plin. *Ep.*), *ex-plicitus* (Caes., Sen., Plin. *Ep.*), *im-plicitus* (Plaut., Cic., Liv.); once *re-plicitus* (Stat.).

*secō, cut*                                      *secāre*                              *secui*                              *sectus*

The compound with *ex* sometimes has *i* for *e*; once (823) *exicāveris* (Cato).

*sonō, sound*                              *sonāre*                              *sonui*                              \_\_\_\_\_

Also (820) *sonit, sonunt* (Enn., Acc.), *sonere* (Acc., Lucr.); *re-sonunt* (Enn.). Perfect (823) *re-sonārint* (Hor.), *re-sonāvit* (Man.), *sonātūrus* (Hor.).

*tonō, thunder*                              *tonāre*                              *tonui*                              (*at-tonitus*)

Once (820) *tonimus* (Varr.). Perfect participle once *in-tonātus* (Hor.).

*vetō, forbid*                              *vetāre*                              *vetui*                              *vetitus*

In old Latin, *votō, &c.* (143). Perfect once (823) *vetāvit* (Pers.).

DEPONENTS IN *-ārī*.

994. There are many deponents in *-ārī*, with the perfect participle in *-ātus*: as,

*hortor, exhort*                              *hortārī*                              *hortātus*

For the primitive *fārī, speak*, and compounds, see the dictionary.



## (2.) VERBS IN -ēre.

## (A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX.

995. (1.) The following verbs in -ēre have a reduplicated perfect stem (859), and the perfect participle, when used, in -sus (912):

<i>mordeō, bite</i>	<i>mordēre</i>	<i>momordī</i>	<i>morsus</i>
---------------------	----------------	----------------	---------------

The compound *prae-mordeō* has once (823) *prae-morsisset* (Plaut.).

<i>pendeō, am hung</i>	<i>pendēre</i>	<i>pependī</i>	_____
------------------------	----------------	----------------	-------

The compound *prō-pendeō* has the perfect participle *prō-pēnsus*.

<i>spondeō, covenant</i>	<i>spondēre</i>	<i>spopondī</i>	<i>spōnsus</i>
--------------------------	-----------------	-----------------	----------------

For *dē-spondī* and *re-spondī*, see 860; rarely *dē-spopondī* (Plaut.).

<i>tondeō, shear</i>	<i>tondēre</i>	<i>-totondī, -tondī</i>	<i>tōnsus</i>
----------------------	----------------	-------------------------	---------------

For *dē-tondunt* (Varr.), see 821. Perfect only in the compounds *at-tondī* and *dē-tondī* (860); once *dē-totonderat* (Varr.), and perhaps *dē-totondit* (Enn.).

996. (2a.) The following verbs in -ēre have a perfect stem consisting of a root which ends in -v- and has a long vowel (864), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus:

<i>caveō, look out</i>	<i>cavēre</i>	<i>cāvī</i>	<i>cautus</i>
------------------------	---------------	-------------	---------------

<i>faveō, am friendly</i>	<i>favēre</i>	<i>fāvī</i>	_____
---------------------------	---------------	-------------	-------

<i>foveō, warm, cherish</i>	<i>fovēre</i>	<i>fōvī</i>	<i>fōtus</i>
-----------------------------	---------------	-------------	--------------

<i>moveō, move</i>	<i>movēre</i>	<i>mōvī</i>	<i>mōtus</i>
--------------------	---------------	-------------	--------------

For short forms in the perfect system, particularly in compounds, see 891.

<i>voveō, vow</i>	<i>vovēre</i>	<i>vōvī</i>	<i>vōtus</i>
-------------------	---------------	-------------	--------------

997. (2b.) Three verbs in -ēre have a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel (864), and the perfect participle in -sus (912):

<i>sedeō, sit</i>	<i>sedēre</i>	<i>sēdī</i>	<i>-sessus</i>
-------------------	---------------	-------------	----------------

Real compounds have *i* for *e* in the present system: as, *ob-sideō*, &c. Compounds with *dis-*, *prae*, and *re-* have no perfect participle.

<i>strīdeō, grate</i>	<i>strīdēre</i>	<i>strīdī</i>	_____
-----------------------	-----------------	---------------	-------

Often with a present system in -ere (821).

<i>videō, see</i>	<i>vidēre</i>	<i>vidī</i>	<i>visus</i>
-------------------	---------------	-------------	--------------

998. (3.) The following verbs in -ēre have a perfect stem ending in two consonants (866), and the perfect participle, when used, in -sus (912):

<i>ferveō, boil</i>	<i>fervēre</i>	<i>fervī, ferbui</i>	_____
---------------------	----------------	----------------------	-------

Sometimes with forms in -ere (821) in verse. The perfect system is rare.

<i>prandeō, lunch</i>	<i>prandēre</i>	<i>prandī</i>	<i>prānsus</i>
-----------------------	-----------------	---------------	----------------

## (B.) PERFECT STEM IN -s-, OR IN -v- OR -u-.

## PERFECT STEM IN -S-.

999. (1a.) The following verbs in -ēre have the perfect stem in -s- (868), and the perfect participle, when used, in -tus:



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

**1002.** (1*b.*) The following verb in *-ēre* has the perfect stem in *-v-* (869), preceded by long *-ī-*, and the perfect participle in *-tus*, preceded by short *-i-* of the root :

<i>cieō, set a going</i>	<i>ciēre</i>	<i>cīvī</i>	<i>citus</i>
--------------------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

Somewhat defective; also with a form in *-īre* (821). For the perfect participle of compounds, see 919.

**1003.** (1*c.*) The following verb in *-ēre* has the perfect stem in *-v-* (869), and the perfect participle in *-itus* (910) :

<i>ab-oleō, destroy</i>	<i>ab-olēre</i>	<i>ab-olēvī</i>	<i>ab-olitus</i>
-------------------------	-----------------	-----------------	------------------

#### PERFECT STEM IN *-u-*.

**1004.** (2*a.*) Most verbs in *-ēre* have the perfect stem in *-u-* (874), and the perfect participle, when used, in *-tus*, which is usually preceded by a short *i* (910) : as,

<i>doceō, teach</i>	<i>docēre</i>	<i>docuī</i>	<i>doctus</i>
<i>habeō, have</i>	<i>habēre</i>	<i>habuī</i>	<i>habitus</i>

So also *post-habeō*; other compounds have *i* for *a* : as, *pro-hibeō, pro-hibēre, pro-hibuī, pro-hibitus*; twice contracted, *prōbet, prōbeat* (Lucr.). Compounds with *dē* and *prae* are regularly contracted, *dēbeō, praebeō, &c.* : but in Plautus once *de-hibuistī*, and regularly *prae-hibeō, &c.*, throughout.

<i>mereō, earn</i>	<i>merēre</i>	<i>meruī</i>	<i>meritus</i>
--------------------	---------------	--------------	----------------

Often deponent (800) : *mereor, merērī, meritus*.

<i>misceō, mix</i>	<i>miscēre</i>	<i>miscuī</i>	<i>mixtus, mistus</i>
--------------------	----------------	---------------	-----------------------

The present stem is an extension of the suffix *-sc<sup>o</sup>|e-* (834); *-sc-* of the present runs over into the perfect.

<i>moneō, advise</i>	<i>monēre</i>	<i>monuī</i>	<i>monitus</i>
<i>placeō, am pleasing</i>	<i>placēre</i>	<i>placuī</i>	<i>placitus</i>

So the compounds *com-placeō* and *per-placeō*; *dis-pliceō* has *i* for *a* throughout.

<i>taceō, hold my tongue</i>	<i>tacēre</i>	<i>tacuī</i>	<i>tacitus</i> adjective
------------------------------	---------------	--------------	--------------------------

The compound *re-ticeō* has *i* for *a* and no perfect participle.

<i>teneō, hold</i>	<i>tenēre</i>	<i>tenuī</i>	<i>-tentus</i>
--------------------	---------------	--------------	----------------

Compounds have *i* for *e* in the present and perfect : as, *dē-tineō, dē-tinuī, dē-tentus*.

<i>terreō, scare</i>	<i>terrēre</i>	<i>terruī</i>	<i>territus</i>
<i>torreō, roast</i>	<i>torrēre</i>	<i>torruī</i>	<i>tostus</i>

**1005.** (2*b.*) The following verb in *-ēre* has the perfect stem in *-u-* (874), and the perfect participle in *-sus* (912) :

<i>cēseō, count, rate</i>	<i>cēnsēre</i>	<i>cēnsuī</i>	<i>cēnsus</i>
---------------------------	----------------	---------------	---------------

*The Verb: List of Verbs.* [1006-1008.]

1006. (3.) The following verbs in *-ēre* have the perfect stem in *-u-* (874), and no perfect participle (907):

<i>arceō, check</i>	<i>arcēre</i>	<i>arcuī</i>	_____
---------------------	---------------	--------------	-------

The compounds *co-erceō* and *ex-erceō* have *e* for *a*, and perfect participles *co-ercitus* and *ex-ercitus*.

<i>caleō, am warm</i>	<i>calēre</i>	<i>caluī</i>	_____
<i>candeō, glow white</i>	<i>candēre</i>	<i>canduī</i>	_____
<i>careō, have not</i>	<i>carēre</i>	<i>caruī</i>	_____
<i>doleō, ache</i>	<i>dolēre</i>	<i>doluī</i>	_____
<i>egeō, need</i>	<i>egēre</i>	<i>eguī</i>	_____

The compound *ind-igeō, ind-igēre, ind-iguī, \_\_\_\_\_*, has *i* for *e*.

<i>ē-mineō, stick out</i>	<i>ē-minēre</i>	<i>ē-minuī</i>	_____
<i>flōreō, bloom</i>	<i>flōrēre</i>	<i>flōruī</i>	_____
<i>horreō, bristle up</i>	<i>horrēre</i>	<i>horruī</i>	_____
<i>iaceō, lie</i>	<i>iacēre</i>	<i>iacuī</i>	_____
<i>lateō, lie hid</i>	<i>latēre</i>	<i>latuī</i>	_____
<i>liceō, am rated</i>	<i>licēre</i>	<i>licuī</i>	_____
<i>liqueō, am melted</i>	<i>liquēre</i>	<i>licuī</i>	_____
<i>madeō, am soaked</i>	<i>madēre</i>	<i>maduī</i>	_____
<i>niteō, shine</i>	<i>nitēre</i>	<i>nituī</i>	_____
<i>noceō, am hurtful</i>	<i>nocēre</i>	<i>nocuī</i>	_____
<i>oleō, smell</i>	<i>olēre</i>	<i>oluī</i>	_____

For forms in *-ere* in the present system, see 821.

<i>palleō, look pale</i>	<i>pallēre</i>	<i>palluī</i>	_____
<i>pāreō, wait on, am obedient</i>	<i>pārēre</i>	<i>pāruī</i>	_____
<i>pateō, am open</i>	<i>patēre</i>	<i>patuī</i>	_____
<i>rigeō, am stiff</i>	<i>rigēre</i>	<i>riguī</i>	_____
<i>sileō, am silent</i>	<i>silēre</i>	<i>siluī</i>	_____
<i>sorbeō, suck up</i>	<i>sorbēre</i>	<i>sorbuī</i>	_____

The perfect system of the simple verb is rare: *sorbuit, sorbuerint* (Plin.); also (823) *sorpsit* (Val. Max.); *ab-sorbeō* and *ex-sorbeō* have *-sorbuī*; but *ab-sorpsi* (Plin., Luc., Macr.), *ex-sorpsi* (Sen.).

<i>studeō, am eager</i>	<i>studēre</i>	<i>studuī</i>	_____
<i>stupeō, am dazed</i>	<i>stupēre</i>	<i>stupuī</i>	_____
<i>timeō, fear</i>	<i>timēre</i>	<i>timuī</i>	_____
<i>valeō, am strong</i>	<i>valēre</i>	<i>valuī</i>	_____
<i>vigeō, feel strong</i>	<i>vigēre</i>	<i>viguī</i>	_____

1007. For *audeō, gaudeō, and soleō*, see 801; for *lubet or libet, licet, miseret, oportet, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet*, see 815 and 816.

DEPONENTS IN *-ērī*.

1008. (1a.) The following deponent in *-ērī* has the perfect participle in *-tus*:

<i>reor, reckon, think</i>	<i>rērī</i>	<i>ratus</i>
----------------------------	-------------	--------------

**1009.** (1*b.*) The following deponents in *-ērī* have the perfect participle in *-tus*, which is preceded by a short *i* (910):

liceor, <i>bid</i>	licērī	licitus
misereor, <i>pity</i>	miserērī	miseritus

Perfect participle also *misertus* (Val. Max., Sen., Curt.). Active forms are: *miserēte*, *miserērent* (Enn.), *misereās* (Ter.), *miseret* (Lucr.), *miserent* (Val. Fl.). Passive forms are sometimes used impersonally (724): *as, miserētur, &c.*

tueor, <i>look to, protect</i>	tuērī	tuitus late
--------------------------------	-------	-------------

Forms in *-ī* also occur in verse (821). As perfect participle, generally *tūtātus*.  
*vereor, am awed at*                      *verērī*                      *veritus*

**1010.** (2.) One deponent in *-ērī* has the perfect participle in *-sus* (912):

fateor, <i>confess</i>	fatērī	fassus
------------------------	--------	--------

Compounds have *i* and *e* for *a*: *as, cōn-fiteor, cōn-fessus*.

### (3.) VERBS IN *-īre*.

#### (A.) PERFECT STEM WITHOUT A SUFFIX.

**1011.** (1*a.*) The following verb in *-īre* has a reduplicated perfect stem (861), and the perfect participle in *-tus*:

re-periō, <i>find</i>	rè-perīre	re-pperī	re-pertus
-----------------------	-----------	----------	-----------

**1012.** (1*b.*) The following verb in *-īre* has no reduplication in the perfect stem, and the perfect participle in *-tus*:

com-periō, <i>find out</i>	com-perīre	com-perī	com-pertus
----------------------------	------------	----------	------------

As deponent: *com-periar* (Ter.), *com-perior* (Sall., Tac.).

**1013.** (2.) The following verb in *-īre* has a perfect stem consisting of a consonant root with a long vowel (862), and the perfect participle in *-tus*:

veniō, <i>come</i>	venīre	vēnī	ventum, -ventus
--------------------	--------	------	-----------------

For *ē-venunt, ē-venat, ē-venant, ad-venat, per-venat*, see 822.

#### (B.) PERFECT STEM IN *-s-*, OR IN *-v-* OR *-u-*.

##### PERFECT STEM IN *-S-*.

**1014.** (1.) The following verbs in *-īre* have the perfect stem in *-s-* (868), and the perfect participle in *-tus*:

farcīō, <i>stuff</i>	farcīre	farsī	fartus
----------------------	---------	-------	--------

Compounds have usually *e* for *a* throughout.

fulciō, <i>prop</i>	fulcīre	fulsī	fultus
hauriō, <i>drain</i>	haurīre	hausī	haustus

A perfect subjunctive *haurierint* is quoted from Varro (823).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1021. (1b.) The following deponents in **-īrī** have the perfect participle in **-ītus**:

<b>blāndiōr</b> , <i>am agreeable</i>	<b>blāndīrī</b>	<b>blāndītus</b>
<b>largior</b> , <i>shower</i>	<b>largīrī</b>	<b>largītus</b>
<b>mentior</b> , <i>tell lies</i>	<b>mēntīrī</b>	<b>mentītus</b>
<b>mōlior</b> , <i>work hard</i>	<b>mōlīrī</b>	<b>mōlītus</b>
<b>partior</b> , <i>share</i>	<b>partīrī</b>	<b>partītus</b>
<b>sortior</b> , <i>draw lots</i>	<b>sortīrī</b>	<b>sortītus</b>

1022. (2.) The following deponents in **-īrī** have the perfect participle in **-sus** (912):

<b>mētior</b> , <i>measure</i>	<b>mētīrī</b>	<b>mēnsus</b>
<b>ōrdior</b> , <i>begin</i>	<b>ōrdīrī</b>	<b>ōrsus</b>

## PART SECOND *β* SENTENCES

---

### THE SIMPLE SENTENCE AND ITS PARTS.

**1023.** A SENTENCE is a thought expressed by means of a verb. The SUBJECT is that which is spoken of. The PREDICATE is that which is said of the subject.

**1024.** A SIMPLE SENTENCE is one which has only one subject and one predicate.

Thus, *Rhodanus fluit, the Rhone flows*, is a simple sentence: the subject is *Rhodanus* and the predicate is *fluit*.

**1025.** The sentence may be *declarative*, stating a fact, *exclamatory*, crying out about something, *interrogative*, asking a question, or *imperative*, giving a command.

### THE SUBJECT.

**1026.** The subject is a substantive, or any word or words having the value of a substantive.

**1027.** The subject of a verb is in the nominative case.

**1028.** The subject may be expressed, or may be merely indicated by the person ending.

**1029.** (1.) With the first or the second person, the subject is expressed by a personal pronoun (*ego tū, nōs vōs*) only when somewhat emphatic, or in an indignant question. Otherwise the verb of the first or second person is not attended by a personal pronoun: as, *eram, I was, erās, thou wert*.

**1030.** The subject is regularly omitted when it is general and indefinite, in the first person plural; as, *intellegimus, we understand*; and second person singular, as: *putārēs, you, or anybody would have thought*.

**1031.** The subject of the first or second person is sometimes a substantive, contrary to the English idiom: as, *Hannibal petō pācem, I Hannibal am suing for peace. pars spectātōrum scīs, a part of you spectators knows. exoriāre aliquis nostrīs ex ossibus ultor, from out our bones mayst some avenger spring. trecentī coniūrāvīmus, three hundred of us have sworn an oath together.*



1032. (2.) With the third person the subject is regularly expressed, unless the general 'he she it,' or 'they' implied in the person ending is definite enough.

1033. The third person plural often refers to people in general, particularly of verbs meaning *say, name or call, think*, and, with *volgō* added, of other verbs also: as, *ferunt, they say, people say, or the world says*. The singular verb *inquit*, is rarely used in the sense of *says somebody, it will be said, or quotha*.

1034. Some verbs have no subject at all in the third person singular; these are called *Impersonal*. Such are: a few verbs expressing 'operations of nature,' five verbs of 'mental distress,' and any verb used to denote merely the occurrence of action, without reference to any doer: as,

(a.) *lūcet, it is light, lūcēscit, it is getting light; pluit, it rains, fulget, it lightens, tonat, it thunders*. (b.) *miseret, it moves to pity, paenitet, it repents, piget, it grieves, pudet, it puts to shame, taedet, it bores*. (c.) *bene erat, it went well; pugnātur, there is fighting, pugnātum est, there was fighting*. See also 816.

### THE PREDICATE.

1035. The predicate is either a verb alone, or a verb of indeterminate meaning with a predicate nominative added to complete the sense.

Verbs of indeterminate meaning are such as mean *am* (something), *become, remain, seem, am thought, am called or named, am chosen*.

1036. The verb is sometimes omitted, when it is easily understood. So particularly such everyday verbs as mean *am, do, say, come, and go*, in proverbs and maxims, in short questions, and in emphatic or lively assertion or description: as,

*quot hominēs, tot sententiae, sc. sunt, as many men, so many minds. omnia praeclāra rāra, sc. sunt, all that's very fair is rare. mortuus Cūmīs, sc. est, he died at Cumae. bene mihi, sc. sit, be it well with me, i. e. a health to me. haec hāctenus, sc. dicam, thus much only, or no more of this.*

### ENLARGEMENT OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

1037. The parts of the simple sentence may be enlarged by additions. The commonest enlargements of the subject and of the predicate are the following.

1038. I. The subject may be enlarged by the addition of attributes, appositives, or objects.

1039. (I.) An **ATTRIBUTE** is an essential addition to a substantive, uniting with it as one idea. The attribute may be:

1040. (a.) Genitive of a substantive of different meaning, denoting the agent, possessor, or the like: as, *metus hostium, fear of the enemy, i. e. which they feel. hostium castra, camp of the enemy*.

1041. (b.) Genitive or ablative of a substantive with an adjective in agreement: as, *puer sēdecim annōrum, a boy of sixteen years; bovēs mirā speciē, kine of wondrous beauty*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

**1053.** (4.) An ADVERBIAL ADJUNCT is either an oblique case of a noun, often with a preposition, or an adverb denoting 'place, time, extent, degree, manner, cause,' or 'circumstances' generally: as,

*silentiō proficiscitur, he marches in silence. in eō flūmine pōns erat, over that river there was a bridge.*

**1054.** A predicate substantive may be modified like the subject. An adjective, either of the subject or of the predicate, may be modified by an oblique case or by an adverb.

### COMBINATION OF SENTENCES.

**1055.** Simple sentences may be combined in two different ways. The added sentence may be I. Coordinate; or II. Subordinate.

Thus, in *he died and we lived*, the two sentences are coordinate, that is, of equal rank. But in *he died that we might live*, the sentence beginning with *that* is subordinate. In either combination the separate sentences are often called *Clauses* or *Members*, in contradistinction to the more comprehensive sentence of which they are parts.

---

### I. THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

**1056.** A COMPOUND SENTENCE is one which consists of two or more coordinate simple sentences: as,

*tū mē amās, ego tē amō, Pl. Most. 305, thou art in love with me, I'm in love with thee. nox erat et caelō fulgēbat lūna serēnō inter minōra sīdera, H. Epod. 15, 1, 'twas night, and in a cloudless sky, bright rode the moon amid the lesser lights. ā tē petō, mē dēfendās, Fam. 15, 8, I ask it of you, protect me.*

**1057.** A compound sentence is usually abridged when the members have parts in common: as,

*valēbant precēs et lacrimae, Mil. 34, prayers and tears had weight, compound subject, for valēbant precēs et valēbant lacrimae. rogat ōratque tē, RA. 144, he begs and entreats you, compound predicate, for rogat tē ōratque tē. arma virumque canō, V. 1, 1, arms and the man I sing, compound object, for arma canō virumque canō. diū atque ācriter pugnātum est, 1, 26, 1, there was long and sharp fighting, for diū pugnātum est atque ācriter pugnātum est.*

---

### II. THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

**1058.** A COMPLEX SENTENCE is one which consists of a main and a subordinate sentence: as,

centuriōnēs praemittit (main sentence), quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant (subordinate sentence), 2, 17, 1, *he sends some officers ahead to select a suitable spot for the camp.* nunc scio (main sentence), quid sit Amor (subordinate sentence), V. E. 8, 43, *now, now I know what Eros is.* ā tē petō (main sentence), ut mē dēfendās (subordinate sentence), Fam. 15, 7, *I ask it of you that you protect me.*

**1059.** Several sentences are often subordinate to one and the same main sentence, and subordinate sentences may in their turn be main sentences to other subordinate sentences.

Thus, in the following sentence *b* is subordinate to *A*, and *c* to *Ab*:  
(*c.*) quālis esset nātūra montis, (*b.*) quī cōgnōscerent, (*A.*) mīsit, 1, 21, 1, *he sent some people to see what the character of the hill was.*

**1060.** Subordinate sentences may be coordinated with each other, as well as main sentences.

Thus, in the following sentence, *b* and *b* are both subordinate to *A*, but coordinate with each other: (*A.*) hīs rēbus fiēbat, (*b.*) ut et minus lātē vagārentur (*b.*) et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent, 1, 2, 4, *so it came to pass that, in the first place, they did not roam round much, and secondly, they could not so easily make aggressive war on their neighbours.*

**1061.** A subordinate sentence introductory in thought to the main sentence, though not necessarily first in the order of the words, is called a *Protasis*; the main sentence which completes the thought is called an *Apodosis*: as,

quom vidēbis (protasis), tum sciēs (apodosis), Pl. B. 145, *when thou see'st, then thou'lt know.* ut sēmentem fēceris (protasis), ita metēs (apodosis), DO. 2, 261, *as a man soweth, so shall he reap.* sī sunt dī (protasis), benefici in hominēs sunt (apodosis), Div. 2, 104, *if there are gods, they are kind to men.*

---

## AGREEMENT.

### (A.) OF THE VERB.

**1062.** A verb agrees with its subject in number and person: as,

praedia mea tū possidēs, ego aliēnā misericordiā vivō, RA. 145, *you, sir, hold my estates, it is by the compassion of other people that I am supported.* Rhodanus fluit, 1, 6, 2, *the Rhone flows.* nōs, nōs, dicō apertē, cōsulēs dēsumus, C. 1, 3, *it is ourselves, yes, ourselves, I will speak without reserve, the consuls, who fail in our duty.* vōs vōbīs cōsulite, 7, 50, 4, *do you look out for yourselves* diffūgēre nivēs, H. 4, 7, 1, *scattered and gone are snows.*

1063. With a compound subject, two constructions are admissible, as follows.

1064. (1.) With two or more singular subjects, the verb is often in the plural: as,

(a.) Without connectives: persons: *iisdem ferē temporibus fuērunt C. Cotta, P. Sulpicius, Q. Varius, Cn. Pompōnius, Br. 182, in about the same times lived Cotta, Sulpicius, Varius, and Pomponius.* Things: *fidēs Rōmāna, iūstitia imperātōris in forō et cūriā celebrantur, L. 5, 27, 11, the chivalrous principle of Rome and the square dealing of her captain are trumpeted in market place and council hall.* (b.) With *atque, et, or -que*: persons: *ex hīs Cotta et Sulpicius facile primās tulērunt, Br. 182, of these Cotta and Sulpicius indisputably bore the palm.* Things: *nox et amor vīnumque nihil moderābile suādent, O. Am. 1, 6, 59, darkness and love and wine to nothing governable tempt.* *cum senātus populusque Rōmānus pācem comprobāverint, L. 37, 45, 14, when the senate and the people of Rome sanction peace.* (c.) With *et . . . et*: persons: *et Q. Maximus et L. Paullus iīs temporibus fuērunt, Fam. 4, 6, 1, both Maximus and Paullus lived in such times.* Things: *utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae excitābant, 7, 80, 5, both of these eagerness for glory in the first place and secondly fear of disgrace spurred on.*

1065. The plural is sometimes demanded by the meaning of the verb: as, *iūs et iniūria nātūrā dīiūdicantur, Leg. 1, 44, right and wrong are naturally distinguished from each other.*

1066. (2.) Often, however, with two or more singular subjects, the verb is put in the singular: as,

(a.) Without connectives: persons: *tum Gorgiās, Thrasymachus, Prodicus, Hippiās in magnō honōre fuit, Br. 30, at that time Gorgias, Thrasymachus, Prodicus, and Hippias were in high renown.* Things: *persuāsit nox, amor, vīnum, adulēscentia, T. Ad. 470, the witchery was night, flirtation, wine, and youth.* (b.) With *atque, et, or -que*: persons: *cūr Lysiās et Hyperidēs amātur? Br. 68, why is a Lysias and a Hyperides idolized?* Things: *Gallōs ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dividit, 1, 2, 1, the Matrona and Sequana cut off the Gauls from the Belgians.* *senātus populusque Rōmānus voluit, L. 21, 40, 3, senate and people of Rome ordained.* (c.) With *et . . . et*: persons: *illam ratiōnem et Pompēius et Flaccus secūtus est, Flacc. 32, that rule both Pompey and Flaccus followed.* Things: *tālis senātōrum et dignitās et multitudō fuit, Ph. 13, 13, both the position and number of the senators was such.*

1067. With two or more singular subjects denoting things, and making a compound idea, a singular verb is very common, agreeing either with the subjects taken as a unit, or with the nearest: as,

(a.) *cum tempus necessitāsque postulat, dēcertandum manū est, Off. 1, 81, when the emergency requires, we must fight it out by hand.* *tanta laetitia ac grātulātiō fuit, L. 10, 26, 4, so great was the demonstration of joy.* (b.) *Cingetorigi principātus atque imperium est trāditum, 6, 8, 9, the headship and command was assigned to Cingetorix.*

1068. (3.) With mixed subjects, singular and plural, the verb may likewise be either plural or singular: as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1075. The singular imperative age is sometimes used in addressing more than one, particularly in old Latin: as, age licēminī, Pl. St. 221, *come, people, give a bid.* age igitur intrō abīte, Pl. MG. 928, *come then go in.* Similarly, cave dirumpātis, Pl. Poen. 117, *mind you don't break it off.* Similarly ain.

1076. If the subjects are of different persons, the first person is preferred to the second or the third, and the second to the third: as,

sī tū et Tullia, lūx nostra, valētis, ego et suāvissimus Cicerō valēmus, Fam. 14, 5, 1, *if you and Tullia, our sunbeam, are well, darling Cicero and I are well.* But sometimes in contrasts the verb agrees with the nearest person: as, quid indicat aut ipse Cornēlius aut vōs? Sull. 54, *what information does Cornelius himself give, or you people?*

## (B.) OF THE NOUN.

### (1.) THE SUBSTANTIVE.

1077. A substantive which explains another substantive referring to the same thing is put in the same case.

This applies to the substantive used as attribute, appositive, or predicate. The two substantives often differ in gender or number, or both. (a.) Attribute: tirōne exercitū, Fam. 7, 3, 2, *with a raw army.* ā mīmā uxōre, Ph. 2, 20, *from an actress-wife.* mendicōs hominēs, Pl. St. 135, *beggar-men.* oculī hominis histriōnis, DO. 2, 193, *the eyes of an actor man.* nēminī hominī, Pl. As. 466, *to no human being.* servom hominem, T. Ph. 292, *a servant man.* hominēs sicāriōs, RA. 8, *professional bravoos.* (b.) Appositive: quid dīcam dē thēsaurō rērum omnium, memoriā? DO. 1, 18, *what shall I say of that universal storehouse, the memory?* duo fulmina nostrī imperī, Cn. et P. Scīpiōnēs, Balb. 34, *the two thunderbolts of our realm, the Scipios, Gnaeus and Publius.* (c.) Predicate: ira furor brevis est, H. E. 1, 2, 62, *wrath is a madness brief.* Dolābellā hoste dēcrētō, Ph. 11, 16, *Dolabella having been voted a public enemy.* Some apparent exceptions will be noticed from time to time hereafter.

1078. Mobile substantives take also the gender and number of the masculines or feminines they explain: as,

stilus optimus dīcendī magister, DO. 1, 150, *pen is the best professor of rhetoric.* vīta rūstica parsimōniae magistra est, RA. 75, *country life is a teacher of thrift.* fluviōrum rēx Ēridanus, V. G. 1, 482, *Eridanus, of rivers king.* et genus et fōrmam rēgina pecūnia dōnat, H. E. 1, 6, 37, *both birth and shape the almighty dollar gives.* ut omittam illās omnium doctrīnārum inventricēs Athēnās, DO. 1, 13, *to say nothing of the great originator of all intellectual pursuits, Athens.*

1079. A substantive explaining two or more substantives, is put in the plural: as,

foedus inter Rōmam Lāvīniumque urbēs renovātum est, L. 1, 14, 3, *the treaty between the cities of Rome and Lavinium was renewed.* Cn. et P. Scīpiōnēs, Balb. 34, *the Scipios, Gnaeus and Publius.*

1080. A plural subject, expressed or implied, is sometimes defined by a singular word, which is generally a collective or distributive: as,

ut ambō exercitūs suās quisque abirent domōs, L. 2, 7, 1, *so that both armies went back to their respective homes.* uterque eōrum ex castris exercitum ēdūcunt, Caes. C. 3, 30, 3, *they bring their army out of camp, each of them.* heus forās exite hūc aliquis, Pl. E. 398, *hallo, you boys, come out of doors here, somebody.* alius alium percontāmur, Pl. St. 370, *we ask of one another.* cum accidisset ut alter alterum vidērēmus, Fin. 3, 8, *when it came to pass that we each saw the other.* The verb sometimes agrees with the defining singular: as, quandō duo cōsulēs, alter morbō, alter ferrō periisset, L. 41, 18, 16, *since the two consuls had died, one a natural death, the other by the sword.*

1081. A substantive in the accusative or nominative is sometimes in apposition to a thought or clause: as,

manūs intentantēs, causam discordiae, Ta. 1, 27, *shaking their fists, a provocation to quarrel.* pars ingenti subiēre feretrō, triste ministerium, V. 6, 222, *a part put shoulder to the mighty bier, a service sad.* nec Homērum audiō, quī Ganymēdēn ab dīs raptum ait propter fōrmam; nōn iūsta causa cūr Lāomedontī tanta fieret iniūria, TD. 1, 65, *nor will I lend an ear to Homer, who asserts that Ganymede was carried off by the gods for his beauty; no just reason for doing Laomedon such injustice.*

## (2.) THE ADJECTIVE.

1082. An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, agrees with its substantive in number, gender, and case: as,

vir bonus, H. Ep. 1, 16, 40, *a good man,* bona uxor, Pl. MG. 684, *a good wife,* oleum bonum, Cato, RR. 3, *good oil.* Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs, I, 1, 1, *Gaul, including everything under the name, is divided into three parts.* et variae volucrēs nemora āvia pervolitantēs āera per tene-rum liquidis loca vōcibus opplent, Lucr. 2, 145, *and motley birds, in pathless woods that flit through lither sky, fill space with carols clear.*

1083. An adjective or participle, either attributive or predicate, sometimes takes the number and gender of the persons or things implied in the substantive: as,

(a.) concursus populī mirantium quid rēi esset, L. 1, 41, 1, *a gathering of the public, wondering what was the matter.* (b.) pars subeuntium obrutī, pars cōfixī, Ta. H. 2, 22, *a part of those who came up were crushed, a part were run through.* Samnitium caesi tria milia ducentī, L. 10, 34, 3, *of the Samnites were slain three thousand two hundred*

1084. (1.) An attributive adjective referring to several substantives is commonly expressed with one only, generally with the first or the last: as,



rēs erat multae operae et labōris, 5, 11, 5. *it was a job that required much work and trouble.* semper amāvī ingenium, studia, mōrēs tuōs, O. 33, *I have always admired your ability, your scholarly tastes, and your character.* In lively style, the adjective is often used with every substantive.

1085. Two or more attributive adjectives in the singular connected by a conjunction may belong to a plural substantive: as,

circā portās Collinam Ēsquilīnamque, L. 26, 10, 2, *about the gates, the Colline and the Esquiline.* But the substantive may also be in the singular: as, inter Ēsquilīnam Collīnamque portam, L. 26, 10, 1, *between the Esquiline and the Colline gate.*

1086. The combined idea of a substantive with an attributive adjective may be qualified by one or more adjectives: as,

nāvis longās trīgintā veterēs, L. 27, 22, 12, *thirty old men-of-war.* privāta nāvis onerāria māxima, V. 5. 136, *a very large private freighting vessel.* āter aliēnus canis, T. Ph. 706, *a strange black dog.*

1087. (2.) A predicate adjective or participle referring to two or more substantives is usually in the plural; its gender is determined as follows:

1088. (a.) If the substantives denote persons of the same gender, that gender is used; if they denote persons of different gender, the masculine is used: as,

venēnō absūptī Hannibal et Philopoemēn, L. 39. 52, 8, *it was by poison that Hannibal and Philopoemen were taken off.* quam pridem pater mihi et māter mortuī essent, T. Eu. 517, *how long my father and my mother had been dead.*

1089. (b.) If the substantives denote things, and are of different genders, the neuter plural is used; also commonly when they are feminines denoting things: as,

mūrus et porta dē caelō tācta erant, L. 32, 29, 1, *the wall and town-gate had been struck by lightning.* ira et avāritia imperiō potentiōra erant, L. 37, 32, 13, *hot blood and greed proved stronger than authority.*

1090. (c.) If the substantives denote both persons and things, either the gender of the substantives denoting persons is used, or the neuter. The gender of the substantives denoting things is very rarely used: as,

et rēx rēgiaque classis unā profectī, L. 21, 50, 11, *the king too and the king's fleet set sail in his company.* inimica inter sē liberam civitatem et rēgem, L. 44. 24, 2, *that a free state and a monarch were irreconcilable things.* Dolopas et Athamāniam ēreptās sibi querēns, L. 38, 10, 3, *complaining that the Dolopians and Athamania were wrested from him.*

1091. When the verb is attached to the nearest only of two or more subjects, a predicate participle or adjective naturally takes the gender of that substantive: as, ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus ē filiis captus est, 1, 26, 5, *there the daughter of Orgetorix and one of the sons too was made prisoner.* ut brachia atque umeri liberi esse possent, 7, 56, 4, *so that their arms and shoulders might be unhampered.*

1092. The ablative singular *absente* is used once each by Terence and Afranius with a plural substantive: *absente nobis*, T. Eu. 649, *while we were out.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



## THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

### (A.) USE OF THE NOUN.

---

#### NUMBER AND GENDER.

**1099.** The singular of a word denoting a person is sometimes used in a collective sense.

This singular is generally a military designation: as, *mīles*, *eques*, *pedes*, *hostis*, *Rōmānus*, *Poenus*. But other substantives and adjectives are occasionally thus used.

**1100.** A substantive or adjective denoting a person is often used in the singular as representative of a class, particularly when two persons are contrasted: as,

*sī tabulam dē naufrāgiō stultus adriperit, extorquēbitne eam sapiēns?* *Off.* 3, 89, *if a fool has seized a plank from a wreck, will the sage twitch it away?*

**1101.** The neuter singular of certain adjectives is used as an abstract substantive.

These adjectives have commonly stems in -o-, and are often used in the partitive genitive (1250). The nominative is rare, also the accusative and ablative, except in prepositional constructions. Such are: *bonum*, *malum*; *rēctum*, *prāvum*; *decōrum*, *indecōrum*; *honestum*; *vērum*, *falsum*; *iūstum*, *iniūstum*; *aequum*; *ambiguum*; *rīdiculum*. *ūtile*, *ināne*, *commūne*, *insigne*, *simile*, &c.

**1102.** Certain adjectives, which originally agreed with an appellative denoting a thing, have dropped the appellative and become substantives.

Such are: *Āfricus*, sc. *ventus*; *Āfrica*, sc. *terra*; *calda*, sc. *aqua*; *cānī*, sc. *capillī*; *circēnsēs*, sc. *lūdī*; *decuma*, sc. *pars*; *fera*, sc. *bēstia*; *hīberna*, sc. *castra*; *merum*, sc. *vīnum*; *nātālis*, sc. *diēs*; *patria*, sc. *terra*; *praetexta*, sc. *toga*; *summa*, sc. *rēs*; *trirēmī*, sc. *nāvis*, and many others.

**1103.** Certain adjectives denoting relationship, friendship, hostility, connection, or age, may be used in both numbers as substantives.

Such are: (a.) *adfīnis*, *cōgnātus*, *cōnsanguineus*, *gentīlis*, *necessārius*, *propīnquus*; (b.) *adversārius*, *amīcus*, *inimīcus*, *familiāris*, *hostis*, *intimus*, *invidus*, *socius*, *sodālis*; (c.) *contubernālis*, *manipulāris*, *vīcīnus*; (d.) *adulēscēns*, *aequālis*, *iuvenis*, *senex*.

**1104.** The masculine plural of many adjectives is used substantively to denote a class.

Such are: *bonī*, *the good, the well-disposed, conservatives, patriots, our party*; *improbī*, *the wicked, the dangerous classes, revolutionists, anarchists, the opposite party*; *doctī*, *indoctī*; *piī*, *impiī*, and the like.

1105. Proper names of men are used in the plural to denote different persons of the same name, or as appellatives to express character, oftenest good character: as,

duo Metellī, Celer et Nepōs, *Br.* 247, *the two Metelluses, Celer and Nepos.* quid Crassōs, quid Pompēiōs ēvertit? *J.* 10, 108, *what overthrew a Crassus, Pompey what?* i. e. men like Crassus and Pompey.

1106. The neuter plural of adjectives of all degrees of comparison is very often used as a substantive.

Such adjectives are usually in the nominative or accusative, and may have a pronoun, a numeral, or an adjective, agreeing with them. In English the singular is often preferred. Such are: bona, mala; vĕra, falsa; haec, *this*; omnia, *everything*; haec omnia, *all this*, &c., &c.

1107. Names of countries are sometimes used in the plural when the country consists of several parts which are called by the same name as the whole country: as, Galliae, *the Gauls*; Germāniae, *the Germanies*.

1108. Material substantives are often used in the plural to denote different sorts of the substance designated, its constituent parts, or objects made of it: as,

aera, *lumps of bronze, bronzes, coppers.* aquae, *water in different places, medicinal springs.* cĕrae, *pieces of wax, tablets, wax masks, waxworks.* marmora, *kinds of marble, blocks of marble, works of marble.* nivĕs, *snowflakes, snowdrifts, snowstorms, repeated snows.* spūmae, *masses of foam.* sulphura, *lumps of sulphur.* vīna, *wines, different kinds of wine.*

1109. Abstract substantives are often used in the plural to denote different kinds or instances of the abstract idea, or an abstract idea pertaining to several persons or things: as,

sunt domesticae fortitūdinēs nōn inferiōrēs mīlitāribus, *Off.* 1, 78, *there are cases of heroism in civil life fully equal to those in war.* tĕ cōnscentiae stimulant maleficiōrum tuōrum, *Par.* 18, *you are tormented by pricks of conscience for your sins.* propter siccitatēs palūdum, 4, 38, 2, *because the swamps were dry everywhere.*

1110. The plural is sometimes used in generalizations, and in poetry to magnify a single thing, to give mystery to the statement, or often merely for metrical convenience: as, advēnisse familiārēs dicitō, *Pl. Am.* 353, *say that the people of the house are come*, the plural familiārēs denoting one person. Priamī dum rēgna manēbant, *V.* 2, 22, *while Priam's realms still stood.* externōs optāte ducēs, *V.* 8, 503, *choose captains from a foreign strand*, i. e. Aeneas.

---

## C A S E.

1111. There are two groups of cases, the principal and the secondary.

1112. The principal cases are the nominative and the accusative. The principal cases, which have more complete inflections than the secondary, express the two chief relations of the noun in the sentence, those of the subject and of the object. The secondary cases are used to express subordinate or supplementary relations.

## THE NOMINATIVE.

1113. The nominative is principally used as the subject or predicate noun of a verb or of an infinitive. Besides this use, the nominative occurs in titles, exclamations, and addresses (1114-1123).

### THE NOMINATIVE OF TITLE.

1114. The nominative is used in inscriptions, notices, titles, or headings: as,

L · CORNELIVS · CN · F · CN · N · SCIPIO, CIL. I, 34, on a tomb, *Lucius Cornelius Scipio, son (filius) of Gnaeus, grandson (nepōs) of Gnaeus.* LABYRINTHVS HIC HABITAT MINOTAVRVS, CIL. IV, 2331, on a plan of the Labyrinth scratched by a Pompei schoolboy, *The Maze. Here lives Minotaur.* PRIVATVM PRECARIO ADEITVR, CIL. I, 1215, *Private Grounds. No Admittance without leave.* Themistoclēs, Neocli filius, Athēniēnsis, N. 2, 1, *Themistocles, son of Neocles, of Athens.*

1115. The title proper of a book is often put in the genitive, dependent on liber or libri: as, *Cornēli Tacitī Historiārum Liber Primus, Tacitus's Histories, Book First.* Or prepositional expressions are used: as, *M. Tullī Cicerōnis dē Fātō Liber, Cicero, Fate, in One Book.* *Cornēli Tacitī ab Excessū divī Augustī Liber Primus, Tacitus's Roman History from the Demise of the sainted Augustus, Book First.*

1116. Sometimes the nominative of a title or exclamation is retained in a sentence for some other case: as, *Gabiniō cōgnōmen 'Cauchius' ūsurpāre concessit, Suet. Cl. 24, he allowed Gabinius to take the surname 'Cauchius;'* (compare *Catō quasi cōgnōmen habēbat Sapientis, L. 6, Cato had the virtual surname of the Wise.*) *'Marsya' nōmen habet, O. 6, 400, it has the name of 'Marsyas;'* (compare *nōmen Dānūvium habet, S. Fr. 3, 55, it has the name Danube.*) *resonet mihi 'Cynthia' silvae, Prop. 1, 18, 31, let woods reecho 'Cynthia' for me; (compare tū, Tityre, fōrmōsam resonāre docēs Amaryllida silvas, V. E. 1, 4, thou, Tityrus, dost teach the woods to echo Amaryllis Fair).*

### THE NOMINATIVE OF EXCLAMATION.

1117. The nominative is sometimes used in exclamations: as, *fortūnae filius, omnēs, H. S. 2, 6, 49, 'the child of Fortune,' all exclaim.* This nominative is often accompanied by an interjection, such as *ecce, ēn, heu, ō, prō, vāh:* as, *ēn Priamus, V. 1, 461, lo, Priam here. ō fēstus diēs, T. Eu. 560, oh day of cheer.* For *eccilla*, see 667.

### THE VOCATIVE NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE PROPER.

1118. The vocative nominative is used when a person or thing is addressed: as,

*quō usque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? C. 1, 1, in heaven's name, how long, Catiline, wilt trifle with our patience? valēte, dēsideria mea, valēte, Fam. 14, 2, 4, good bye, my absent loves, good bye.* Instead of a proper name, an emphatic *tū* is often used: as, *advorte animum sis tū, Pl. Cap. 110, just pay attention, sirrah, please.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1127. Two or even three accusatives are sometimes used with one and the same verb: see 1167-1174.

1128. The accusative is sometimes disengaged from the verb, with which it originally stood, and used with a noun or a preposition.

1129. (1.) With substantives, the accusative is rare; it is used (*a.*) in a few attributive expressions, chiefly old set forms, and rarely to denote (*b.*) aim of motion.

Thus (*a.*) the predicative *id aetātis*, in *id aetātis iam sumus*, *we are now of that age*, becomes attributive in *hominēs id aetātis*, *people of that age*. And (*b.*) as *domum*, *home*, is used with the verb *redeō*, *go back*, so also rarely with the substantive *reditiō*, *a return*.

1130. With adjectives, the accusative is commonly that of extent: so with *altus*, *high*, *lātus*, *wide*, and *longus*, *long*, sometimes with *crassus*, *thick*.

Thus, in *eōs surculōs facitō sint longī pedēs bīnōs*, *see that the scions be two feet long*, the accusative *pedēs*, which belongs with the predicate *sint longī*, may be used with the attributive adjective *longus* alone, thus: *surculī longī pedēs bīnōs*, *scions two feet long*.

1131. (2.) The accusative is used with many prepositions: see 1410.

---

## I. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT.

1132. The object of a verb is put in the accusative: as,

(*a.*) *oppida sua omnia incendunt*, 1, 5, 3, *they set all their towns afire*. *cōspexit adrāsum quendam*, H. E. 1, 7, 49, *he spied a man all shaven and shorn*. (*b.*) *duās fossās perdūxit*, 7, 72, 3, *he made two trenches*. This accusative, is, as may be seen above, either (*a.*) receptive, i. e. existing independently of the action of the verb, and only affected or apprehended by it; or (*b.*) of product, i. e. produced by the action of the verb.

1133. Verbs thus used with an object are said to be *used transitively*. Such verbs may also be used intransitively, that is without an object, when stress is put on the action merely: thus,

(*a.*) Transitively: *tū mē amās*, *ego tē amō*, Pl. *Most.* 305, *thou lovest me, and I love thee*. *nova dīruunt*, *alia aedificant*, S. C. 20, 12, *they pull down new structures, and build up others*. (*b.*) Intransitively: *amō*, Pl. *B.* 511, *I'm in love*. *dīruit*, *aedificat*, H. E. 1, 1, 100, *it pulleth down, it buildeth up*.

1134. Some verbs, in addition to the accusative, often take an infinitive also: thus, *eum vident sedēre*, V. 5, 107, *they see him sit, they see that he is sitting*. Here the accusative *eum*, originally the object, *they see him*, becomes at the same time the subject of the new statement appended, *sedēre*, *sit*, thus giving rise to the construction known as the *accusative with the infinitive*.

1135. Instead of the proper accusative of the object, another accusative is sometimes substituted, denoting the ultimate result: as,

*rūpēre viam*, L. 2, 50, 10, *they broke a path*, i. e. *they broke through the obstacles, and so made a path*. *foedusque ferī*, E. 33, *and strike a covenant*, i. e. *strike a victim, and so make a covenant*.

1136. In Plautus, *quid tibi* with a substantive of action in *-tiō* and *est*, has an accusative like a verb used transitively : as, *quid tibi hanc cūratiōst rem?* Pl. *Am.* 519, *what business hast thou with this?*

1137. Many verbs ordinarily used intransitively, particularly verbs of motion, have a transitive use when compounded with a preposition.

Such prepositions are, *ad*, *circum*, *ex*, *in*, *ob*, *per*, *prae*, *praeter*, *trāns*, and some others : as, *plūrēs paucōs circumstēbant*, 4, 26, 2, *a good many took their stand round a few.* *Caesar omnem agrum Picēnum percurrit*, *Caes. C.* 1, 15, 1, *Caesar runs over the whole Picene territory.* *praeterire nēmō pristrinum potest*, Pl. *Cap.* 808, *no man can pass the mill.* *flūmen trāsiērunt*, 4, 4, 7, *they crossed the river.*

1138. A few verbs with a transitive use, have, when compounded with *circum* and *trāns*, besides the accusative of the object, a second accusative of the thing to which the preposition refers : as, *istum circumdūce hāsce aedis*, Pl. *Most.* 843, *take that man round this house.* *Caesar funditōrēs pontem trādūcit*, 2, 10, 1, *Caesar takes the slingers over the bridge.* *trānsfer limen aureolōs pedēs*, *Cat.* 61, 166, *over the threshold put thy little golden foot.* In the passive, the accusative connected with the preposition is sometimes retained : as, *Apollōniam praetervehuntur*, *Caes. C.* 3, 26, 1, *they sail by Apollonia.*

1139. Verbs of weeping and wailing, and some other verbs of feeling, which commonly have an intransitive use, sometimes have a transitive use with an accusative : as,

(a.) *lūget senātus*, *maeret equester ōrdō*, *Mil.* 20, *the senate is in mourning, the equestrian order betrays its sadness.* (b.) *mātrōnae eum lūxērunt*, *L.* 2, 7, 4, *the married women wore mourning for him.* *maereō cāsum eius modī*, *Fam.* 14, 2, 2, *I cannot help showing my grief over a misfortune of such a kind.* *quid mortem congemis ac flēs*, *Lucr.* 3, 934, *why dost thou death bewail and weep?* Such verbs are *fleō*, *weep*, *gemō*, *wail*, *lāmentor*, *queror*, *bewail*, *doleō*, *am distressed*, *lūgeō*, *mourn*, *maereō*, *betray sadness.* Similarly, *horreō*, *shudder*, *reformidō*, *am in dread*, *fastidiō*, *feel disdain*, *rīdeō*, *laugh*, &c., &c. The object is oftener a thing than a person, and passive constructions are rare, and mostly confined to poetry.

## THE EMPHASIZING OR DEFINING ACCUSATIVE.

1140. The meaning of a verb, even of one ordinarily intransitive, may be emphasized or more exactly defined by an accusative of kindred derivation added.

(a.) Seldom without an adjective : as, *dum vītam vivās*, Pl. *Per.* 494, *as long as life thou liv'st*, i. e. as long as you ever live and breathe. *quōrum maiōrum nēmō servitūtem servivit*, *T.* 29, *of whose ancestors not one has served servitude*, i. e. been a regular slave. *vidē nē facinus faciās*, *Fin.* 2, 95, *mind you don't do a deed*, i. e. a misdeed. (b.) Commonly with an adjective : as, *scelestam servitūtem serviunt*, Pl. *Cu.* 40, *a wicked servitude they serve.* *facinus memorābile fēcistis*, *L.* 24, 22, 16, *you have done a deed well worth mentioning.* *mīrum atque īscītum somniāvī somnium*, Pl. *R.* 597, *a strange and silly dream dreamed I.*



1141. The verb sometimes has an accusative of kindred meaning, but of different derivation: as,

ut vivās aetātem miser, Pl. *Am.* 1023, *that thou mayst live thy days in woe.* nōn pugnāvit ingēns Īdomeneus Sthenelusve sōlus dicenda Mūsīs proelia, H. 4, 9, 19, *not towering Idomeneus nor Sthenelus alone has battles fought for Muses to rehearse.*

1142. The neuter singular accusative of a descriptive adjective is used, particularly by the poets, to denote manner: as,

magnum clāmat, Pl. *MG.* 823, *he's bellowing big.* suāve locus vōcī resonat conclūsus, H. S. 1, 4, 76, *sweet to the voice the pent-up place rings back.* suāve rubēns hyacinthus, V. E. 3, 63, *sweet-blushing hyacinth.* cūr tam cernis acūtum? H. S. 1, 3, 26, *why dost thou see so sharp?* The plural is not so common: as, asper, acerba tuēns, Lucr. 5, 33, V. 9, 794, *rough, staring savageness.*

1143. Some verbs of smell and of taste have an accusative defining what the smell or the taste is: as, pāstillōs Rūfillus olet, Gargōnius hircum, H. S. 1, 2, 27, *of lozenges Rufillus smells, Gargonius of the goat.* doctrīnam redolet puerilem, *DO.* 2, 109, *it smacks of A B C studies.* nōn omnēs possunt olere unguenta exōtica, Pl. *Most.* 42, *not every man can of imported ointments reek.* meliōra unguenta sunt quae terram quam quae crocum sapiunt, Cic. in Plin. *NH.* 17, 5, 3, 38, *essences that smell of earth are better than those that smell of saffron.*

1144. Any verb or verbal expression may be defined in a general way by the neuter accusative of a pronoun or of an enumerative word. as,

id gaudeō, T. *Andr.* 362, *I'm glad of that.* id maestast, Pl. *R.* 397, *she's mournful over this.* id prōdeō, T. *Eu.* 1005, *I'm coming out for this.* cētera adsentior Crassō, *DO.* 1, 35, *on all the other points I agree with Crassus.* So also quod, *for which, on account of which,* aliquid, quicquam, nihil, &c., &c., and particularly quid, *why, in what respect, wherein, what, or what . . . for:* as, quid vēnistī, Pl. *Am.* 377, *why art thou come?* quid tibi obstō, *RA.* 145, *wherein do I stand in your way?*

1145. The accusative of an appellative is rarely used adverbially: as, magnam partem ex iambis nostra cōstat orātiō, O. 189, *our own speech is made up a great deal of iambs.* maximam partem lacte vivunt, 4, 1, 8, *they live on milk the most part, i. e. chiefly.* Prepositional expressions are commoner: as, magnā ex parte, 1, 16, 6, *principally.* For vicem, *instead of, for, or like,* see the dictionary.

1146. The accusative is sometimes disengaged from a verb, and qualifies a substantive as an attribute, chiefly in a few set expressions (1129): as, orātiōnēs aut aliquid id genus, *Att.* 13, 12, 3, *speeches or something that kind.* aucupium omne genus, Cat. 114, 3, *fowling of every kind.* nūgās hoc genus, H. S. 2, 6, 43, *small talk — this kind.* hoc genus in rēbus, Lucr. 6, 917, *in matters of this kind.* cum id aetātis filiō, *Clu.* 141, *with a son of that age.* Similarly diēs quīdecim supplicātiō, 2, 35, 4, *a fortnight thanksgiving.*

## THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE PART CONCERNED.

1147. Poets use the accusative to express the part concerned, especially a part of the human body: as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

(a.) *mīlia passuum xx prōcēdit*, 5, 47, 1, *he pushes on twenty miles. trīduī viam prōgressī*, 4, 4, 4, *having advanced three days journey. aggerem lātum pedēs CCCXXX, altum pedēs LXXX exstrūxērunt*, 7, 24, 1, *they built up a mound three hundred and thirty feet wide, and eighty feet high* (1130). (b.) *mātrōnae annum lūxērunt*, L. 2, 7, 4, *the married women wore mourning a year. ūndēvigintī annōs nātus erat*, Br. 229, *he was nineteen years old. secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs*, 4, 34, 4, *there followed a good many days a succession of storms. triennium vagātī*, 4, 4, 2, *having led a nomad life three years. ūnum diem supplicātiō habita est*, L. 10, 47, 7, *a thanksgiving was held one day. diēs quīndecim supplicātiō*, 2, 35, 4, *a fortnight thanksgiving* (1129). Sometimes *per* is added: as, *lūdī per decem diēs factī sunt*, C. 3, 20, *games were celebrated ten days long.*

1152. The idea of traversing is sometimes not expressed: as, *mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit*, 1, 22, 5, *he pitches camp three miles away from their camp. quadrīngentōs inde passūs cōstituit signa*, L. 34, 20, 4, *four hundred paces from there he set up the standards.* See 1399.

1153. With *absum* and *distō*, the ablative of amount of difference is sometimes used (1393): as, *certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlibus passuum quattuor et xx abesse*, 1, 41, 5, *he was informed that Ariovistus's troops were four and twenty miles away from ours.* If the place is not mentioned from which distance is reckoned, *ab* or *ā* is sometimes used before the expression of distance: as, *positis castris ā mīlibus passuum xv*, 6, 7, 3, *pitching camp fifteen miles away.*

1154. The accusative is used with *abhinc*, *ago*: as, *quaestor fuistī abhinc annōs quattuordecim*, V. 1, 34, *you were a quaestor fourteen years ago.* Rarely the ablative (1393): as, *quō tempore? abhinc annīs xv*, RC. 37, *when? fifteen years ago*; and once or twice with *abhinc*, meaning *before* (1393): as, *comitiīs abhinc diēbus trīgintā factis*, V. 2, 130, *the election having been held thirty days before.*

1155. The accusative singular is used with ordinals, to show the number of days, months, or years since a particular event, including the day, month, or year of the event itself: as, *quod annum iam tertium et vicēsimum rēgnat*, IP. 7, *the circumstance that he has now been on the throne two and twenty years.*

1156. The accusative in some pronominal expressions and adverbs passes over from 'time through which' to a loose 'time at which': as, *id temporis*, RA. 97, *at that time. hoc noctis*, Pl. Am. 163<sup>b</sup>, *at this time of night. tum, then, num, nunc, now, nunc ipsum*, Pl. B. 940, Att. 10, 4, 10, *this very minute, commo-dum, just in time.* For the locative ablative exceptionally used to denote duration, see 1355.

## THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE AIM OF MOTION.

1157. (1.) Proper names of towns and of little islands or peninsulas are put in the accusative to denote the aim with expressions of motion: as,

*Labiēnus Lutetiam proficiscitur*, 7, 57, 1, *Labiēnus starts for Lutetia. Leucadem vēnimus*, Fam. 16, 9, 1, *we came to Leucas. nocturnus introitus Zmyrnam*, Ph. 11, 5, *the entrance into Smyrna by night* (1129). Plautus uses *Accherūns* a few times like a town name: as, *vivom mē accersunt Accheruntem mortuī*, Most. 509, *the dead are taking me to Acheron alive.*

1158. With singular names of towns and little islands, Plautus has the accusative alone twenty times, and twenty times with *in*; Terence has, including *Lēmnum*, *Ph.* 567, and *Cyprum*, *Ad.* 224, 230, the accusative alone six times, and twice with *in*, *in Lēmnum*, *Ph.* 66, and *in Cyprum*, *Ad.* 278. Plural town names never have *in*.

1159. An appellative *urbem* or *oppidum* accompanying the accusative of a town name is usually preceded by *in* or *ad*: as, *ad urbem Fīdēnās tendunt*, *L.* 4, 33, 10, *they make for the city of Fidenae*. *Iugurtha Thalam pervēnit, in oppidum magnum*, *S. I.* 75, 1, *Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a large town*.

1160. When merely 'motion towards' or 'nearness' is meant, *ad* is used: as, *trēs viae sunt ad Mutinam*, *Ph.* 12, 22, *there are three roads to Mutina*. *mīles ad Capuam profectus sum*, *CM.* 10, *I went to the war as a private, to the region round about Capua*.

1161. Proper names of countries are also sometimes put in the accusative in poetry, to denote aim of motion: as, *abiit Alidem*, *Pl. Cap.* 573, *he went away to Elis*. So in prose also, *Aegyptus* in Cicero, Caesar, Nepos, Livy, and Tacitus: as, *Germānicus Aegyptum proficiscitur*, *Ta.* 2, 59, *Germanicus sets out for Egypt*. Rarely and in poetry names of peoples: as, *sitientis ibimus Afrōs*, *V. E.* 1, 64, *to thirst-parched Afrians we shall go*. In general the accusative of country names is preceded by *in* or *ad*, as are also appellatives regularly in prose; but in poetry, even appellatives without a preposition are common.

1162. (2.) The accusatives *domum*, *rūs*, and *forās*, are used like proper names of towns: as,

(a.) *eō domum*, *Pl. Mer.* 659, *I'm going home*. *equitēs domum contendērunt*, 2, 24, 4, *the cavalry hurried home*. *domum reditiōnis spē sublātā*, 1, 5, 3, *the hope of a return home being out of the question* (1129). (b.) *rūs ibō*, *T. Eu.* 216, *I shall go out of town*. (c.) *effūgī forās*, *T. Eu.* 945, *I ran out of doors*.

1163. The singular *domum* is always retained by Caesar, even when two or more separate persons or parties are spoken of. Plautus, Sallust, and Nepos, have the plural *domōs* once each, and Cicero and Livy use it occasionally.

1164. The accusative *domum* or *domōs* sometimes has an attribute, usually a possessive pronoun: as, *domum suam quemque revertī*, 2, 10, 4, *for every man to go back to his home*. *alius alium domōs suās invitant*, *S. I.* 66, 3, *they invite each other to their homes*. *aurum domum rēgiam comportant*, *S. I.* 76, 6, *they bring all the gold to the house royal*. *cum domum rēgis dēvertisēs*, *D.* 17, *when you went to stay at the king's palace*. The preposition *in* is sometimes used when the attribute is a genitive or a possessive pronoun, and commonly when it is any adjective but a possessive pronoun.

1165. (3.) In old Latin, *exsequiās* and *īnfitiās* are also used with *eō*, and sometimes *malam crucem* and *malam rem*, though these last more commonly have *in*: as,

*exsequiās Chremētī ire*, *T. Ph.* 1026, *to go to Chremes's funeral*. *ut eās malam crucem*, *Pl. Men.* 328, *that thou mayst get thee to the accursed cross*. Later writers, as Nepos, Livy, and Quintilian, use *īnfitiās eō* again, and, from Sallust on, *vēnum eō* and *vēnum dō* sometimes occur for *vēneō* and *vēndō*.

1166. With the accusative in *-tum* (or *-sum*), called the supine, the idea of 'aim' passes over into that of 'purpose': as *militātum abiit*, *T. Hau.* 117, *he's gone away a soldiering* (2270).

## TWO ACCUSATIVES COMBINED.

## OBJECT AND PREDICATE.

**1167.** Many verbs may take two accusatives, an object and a predicate.

Such are verbs signifying *make, keep, choose, name or call, have, think, recognize or find, show oneself, &c., &c.*: as, *longiōrem mēsem faciunt*, *V. 2, 129, they make the month longer.* *eum certiōrem faciunt*, *5, 37, 7, they let him know.* *Ancum Mārcium rēgem populus creāvit*, *L. 1, 32, 1, the people made Ancus Marcius king.* *mē cēpēre arbitrum*, *l. Hau. 500, they've chosen me as referee.* *Duellium 'Bellium' nōmināvērunt*, *O. 153, Duellius they named 'Bellius.'* *vicinam Capreis insulam 'Aprāgopolim' appellābat*, *Suet. Aug. 98, the island next to Capreae he called 'the Castle of Indolence.'* *conlēgās adiūtōrēs habēbat*, *Sest. 87, he had his colleagues as assistants.* *tē sapientem existimant*, *L. 6, they consider you a sage.* *quem virum P. Crassum vīdimus*, *CM. 61, what a man we saw in Crassus.* *sevērūm mē praebeō*, *C. 4, 12, I show myself stern.* In the passive both the object and the predicate become nominatives: as, *Caesar certior factus est*, *3, 19, 5, Caesar was informed.*

**1168.** In the sense of *consider as equivalent to*, *dūcō* and *habeō*, less frequently *putō*, have the ablative with *prō*. Other constructions with these and the above verbs may be found in the dictionary.

## PERSON AND THING.

**1169.** (1.) Some verbs of teaching and hiding, demanding and questioning, may take two accusatives, one of a person and one of a thing.

The commonest of these verbs are *doceō* and its compounds, and *cēlō*; *flāgitō*, *ōrō*, *poscō*, and *rogō*, *interrogō*. The thing is usually the neuter of a pronoun or enumerative word (1144): as, (a.) *peior magister tē istaec docuit, nōn ego*, *Pl. B. 163, a worse instructor taught thee that, not I.* *quid tē litterās doceam?* *Pis. 73, why should I teach you your A B C's?* (b.) *nōn tē cēlāvī sermōnem T. Ampii*, *Fam. 2, 16, 3, I have not kept you in the dark about the talk with Ampius.* (c.) *interim cōtīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre*, *1, 16, 1, meantime Caesar every day a dunning the Aeduans for the grain.* *Milēsiōs nāvem poposcit*, *V. 1, 86, he called on the Miletus people for a vessel.* *quid me istud rogās?* *Fin. 5, 83, why do you ask me that?* *Racilius mē sententiam rogāvit*, *QFr. 2, 1, 3, Racilius asked me my opinion.*

**1170.** With *doceō*, meaning *inform*, *cēlō*, *rogō*, and *interrogō*, the ablative of the thing with *dē* is also used. And with *flāgitō* and *poscō*, sometimes the ablative of the person with *ab*, with *cēlō* the ablative of the person with *dē*.

**1171.** In the passive the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective is retained: as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1177. (1.) The ESSENTIAL COMPLEMENT is a dative of the person or thing added to an idea which is felt as incomplete without the dative (1180).

Thus, *pāret*, *he is obedient*, is a statement which is felt as incomplete without a dative added to denote what it is he is obedient to, in the sentence *pāret senātui*, *he is obedient to the senate*. But when stress is put on the action merely, without reference to its bearing, such a verb may be used without a dative: as, *pāret*, *he is obedient*, *he yields obedience*.

1178. (2.) The OPTIONAL COMPLEMENT, that is, the dative of interest, advantage, or disadvantage, adds something to an idea that is already complete in itself (1205).

Thus, *carmina cantō*, *I chant verses*, is a statement entirely complete in itself; it may be modified or not, at option, by a dative, thus: *carmina virginibus puerisque cantō*, *verses for maids and boys I chant*.

1179. II. The dative of certain substantives is used predicatively (1219).

---

## I. THE COMPLEMENTARY DATIVE.

### (1.) THE ESSENTIAL COMPLEMENT

#### THE DATIVE WITH VERBS.

1180. Many verbs require a dative to complete their meaning.

#### WITH VERBS OF INTRANSITIVE USE.

1181. (1.) Many verbs of intransitive use, particularly such as denote a state, disposition, feeling, or quality, take the dative: as,

*quodne vōbīs placeat, displiceat mihi?* Pl. *MG.* 614, *shall that which pleases you, displeasing be to me?* *sī Asiciō causa plūs prōfuit quam invidia nocuit*, *Cael.* 23, *if his case has been more helpful to Asicius than the hostility has been damaging.* *imperat aut servit collēcta pecūnia cuique*, *H. E.* 1, 10, 47, *for every man his garnered hoard or master is or slave.* *nōne huic lēgī resistētis?* *Agr.* 2, 85, *will you not stand out against this law?* *gymnasiīs indulgent Graeculī*, *Traj. in Plin. Ep.* 40 [49], 2, *our Greek cousins are partial to gymnasiums.* *ignōscās velim huic festinātiōnī meae*, in a letter, *Fam.* 5, 12, 1, *please excuse haste.* *huic legiōnī Caesar cōfidēbat maximē*, 1, 40, 15, *Caesar trusted this legion most of all.* *an C. Treboniō ego persuāsī? cui nē suādēre quidem ausus essem*, *Ph.* 2, 27, *or was it I that brought conviction to Trebonius? a man to whom I should not have presumed even to offer advice.* In the passive, such verbs are used impersonally, the dative remaining (1034); personal constructions are rare and poetical.

1182. This dative is used with such verbs or verbal expressions as mean *am pleasing or displeasing, helpful or injurious, command, yield, or am obedient, am friendly, partial, or opposed; spare, pardon, threaten, trust, advise, persuade, happen, meet.* But the English translation is not a safe guide: many of the verbs used with a dative are represented transitively in English; and some verbs of the meanings above are used transitively in Latin: as, *dēlectō, iuvō, laedō, &c., &c.*

1183. The dative is rarely used with a form of *sum* and a predicate noun corresponding in meaning with the verbs above (1181): as, *quid mihi scelestō tibi erat auscultātiō?* Pl. R. 502, i. e. *quid tibi auscultābam?* *why did I, ill-starred wretch, lend ear to thee?* *quī studiōsus rēi nūllī aliaest,* Pl. MG. 802, i. e. *quī studet,* *who lends his soul to nothing else.* Or immediately with a noun: as, *servitūs opulentō hominī,* Pl. Am. 166, *slavery to a millionaire.* *optemperātiō lēgibus,* Leg. 1, 42, *obedience to the laws.* *aemula labra rosīs,* Mart. 4, 42, 10, *lips rivalling the rose.*

1184. Some verbs have a variable use without any difference of meaning: thus, *cūrō, decet,* and *vītō,* have sometimes the dative in old Latin, but usually the accusative. In Cicero, *adūlor* has the accusative; from Nepos on, the dative as well. *medeor, medicor,* and *praestōlor* take either the accusative or the dative.

1185. Some verbs have an accusative with one meaning, a dative of the complement, essential or optional, with another: see *aemulor, caveō, comitor, cōsulō, conveniō, cupiō, dēspērō, maneō, metuō, moderor, prōspiciō, temperō, timeō,* and the different uses of *invidēō,* in the dictionary.

1186. In poetry, verbs of union, of contention, and of difference, often take a dative: as, (a.) *haeret laterī lētālis harundō,* V. 4, 73, *sticks to her side the deadly shaft.* So with *coēō, concurrō, haereō,* and similarly with *iungō, misceō.* (b.) *quid enim contendat hirundō cyncnīs?* Lucr. 3, 6, *for how can swallow cope with swans?* So with *bellō, certō, contendō, pugnō.* (c.) *infidō scurrae distābit amicus,* H. E. 1, 18, 4, *a friend will differ from a faithless hanger-on.* So with *differō, discrepō, dissentiō, distō.*

1187. A verb often takes the dative, when combined with *adversum, obviam,* or *praestō,* also with *bene, male,* or *satis,* and the like: as,

*fit ob viam Clōdiō,* Mil. 29, *he runs across Clodius.* *cui bene dixit unquam bonō?* Sest. 110, *for what patriot had he ever a good word?* *nōs, virī fortēs, satis facere rēi pūblicaē vidēmur,* C. 1, 2, *we doughty champions flatter ourselves we are doing our whole duty by the state.* Similarly with verbs of transitive use.

1188. (2.) Many verbs of intransitive use compounded with a preposition take a dative connected in sense with the preposition: as,

*manus extrēma nōn accessit operibus eius,* Br. 126, *the last touch was not put upon his works.* *omnibus adfuit hīs pugnīs Dolābella,* Ph. 2, 75, *Dolabella was on hand in all these battles.* *pontō nox incubat ātra,* V. 1, 89, *over the deep, night broodeth black.* *cōgnitiōnibus dē Christiānīs interfui numquam,* Plin. Ep. ad Trai. 96 [97], 1, *I have never been to any of the trials of the Christians.*

1189. The prepositions are chiefly *ad, ante, com-, in, inter, ob, prae, sub,* or *super.* In many compounds of these prepositions, however, the dative is due to the general meaning of the verb, as in *cōnfidit mihi,* *he puts all trust in me* (1181), as contrasted with *cōnsentit mihi,* *he feels with me,* nearly equivalent to *sentit mēcum* (1188).



1190. Instead of the dative, such verbs often have a prepositional construction, particularly when place, literal or figurative, is distinctly to be expressed: as,

*accēdere in fūnus*, *Leg. 2, 66, to go to a funeral.* *in morbum incidit*, *Clu. 175, he fell ill.*

1191. Some verbs of intransitive use take, when compounded, either the dative or the accusative. See *adiaceō*, *antecēdō*, *anteeō*, *praecurrō*, *praestō*, *incēdō*, *inlūdō*, *īnsultō*, *invādō*, in the dictionary. And some compounds acquire a transitive use altogether, as *obeō*, *oppugnō*: see 1137.

#### WITH VERBS OF TRANSITIVE USE.

1192. (1.) Many verbs of transitive use take the dative: as,

*ēi filiam suam in mātrimōnium dat*, 1, 3, 5, *he gives this person his own daughter in marriage* *decima legiō ēi grātias ēgit*, 1, 41, 1, *the tenth legion gave him thanks* *huic fert subsidium Pulio*, 5, 44, 13, *to him Pulio brings aid.* *multis idem minātur Antōnius*, *Ph. 11, 2, to many Antony threatens the same.* *reliqui sēsē fugae mandārunt*, 1, 12, 3, *the rest betook themselves to flight.* *commendō vōbis meum parvum filium*, *C. 4, 23, unto your keeping do I commit the little son of mine.* *multī sē aliēnissimīs crēdiderunt*, 6, 31, 4, *many people put themselves in the hands of utter strangers* *equitēs imperat civitātibus*, 6, 4, 6, *he issues orders to the communities for horse.*

1193. This dative is used with such verbs as *dō*, *trādō*, *tribuō*, *dīvidō*, *ferō*, *praebeō*, *praestō*, *polliceor*, *prōmittō*, *dēbeō*, *negō*, *mōnstrō*, *dīcō*, *nārrō*, *mandō*, *praecipio*, &c., &c. In the passive construction, the accusative becomes nominative, the dative remaining.

1194. (2.) Many verbs of transitive use compounded with a preposition take a dative connected in sense with the preposition: as,

*nihil novī vōbis adferam*, *RP. 1, 21, I shall not lay any novelty before you.* *lēgēs omnium salūtem singulōrum salūtī antepōnunt*, *Fin. 3, 64, the law always puts the general safety before the safety of the individual.* *timōrem bonis iniēcistis*, *Agr. 1, 23, you have struck terror into the hearts of patriots.* *nōluērunt feris corpus obicere*, *RA. 71, they would not cast his person before ravenous beasts.* *nēmīnem huic praeferō*, *N. 8, 1, 1, there is nobody I put before him.* *hibernis Labiēnum praeposuit*, 1, 54, 2, *he put Labienus over the winter-quarters.* *animum ova gallinis saepe suppōnimus*, *DN. 2, '124' we often put ducks' eggs under hens.*

1195. The prepositions are *circum*, *dē*, *ex*, *post*, or those named in 1189. In many compounds of transitive use, however, the dative is due to the general meaning of the verb, as with those spoken of in 1189.

1196. With these verbs, a prepositional construction is often used, as with the verbs of intransitive use (1190): as,

*iam diū nihil novī ad nōs adferēbātur*, *Fam. 2, 14, no news has got to us this long time.* For compounds of *circum* and *trāns* with two accusatives, see 1138.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## (2.) THE OPTIONAL COMPLEMENT.

**1205.** The dative of a person or thing interested, benefited, harmed, may be added at option to almost any verb: as,

*cōservāte parentī filium, parentem filiō, Cael. 80, save the son for the father, the father for the son. mea domus tibi patet, mihi clausa est, RA. 145, the very house I own is open for you, is shut upon me. cui flavam religas comam, simplex munditiis? H. 1, 5, 4, for whom bind'st thou in wreaths thy golden hair, plain in thy neatness? nōn auderet facere haec viduae mulierī, quae in mē fecit, T. Hau. 953, he durst not to an unprotected female do what he hath done towards me.*

**1206.** The place of a verb with the dative of interest is sometimes filled by an interjection, *ecce, ei, em, or vae*: as, *ei mihi quālis erat, E. 1, 7, V. 2, 274, ah me, how ghastly he did look. vae victis, Pl. Ps. 1317, said by Brennus, 390 B. C., L. 5, 48, 9, woe worth the worsted. vae capiti atque aetati tuae, Pl. R. 375, a murrain on thy head and life.*

**1207.** The dative is often added to the entire sentence, where either a genitive or a possessive pronoun limiting a substantive might be used.

In such cases the dative expresses interest, advantage, or disadvantage, while the genitive would simply indicate the owner or the object: as, *trānsfigitur scūtum Pulioni, 5, 44, 7, unfortunately for Pulio, his shield gets pierced through and through. militanti in Hispaniā pater ei moritur, L. 29, 29, 6, while serving in Spain he had the misfortune to lose his father. huic ego mē bellō ducem profiteor, C. 2, 11, I here proclaim myself captain for this war. sese Caesari ad pedes proiecerunt, 1, 31, 2, they cast themselves at Caesar's feet. nostris militibus spem minuit, 5, 33, 5, it dashed the hopes of our soldiers. exterge tibi manus, Pl. Most. 267, wipe off thy hands. vellunt tibi barbam lascivi pueri, H. S. 1, 3, 133, the wanton gamins pull thy beard, poor soul.*

**1208.** This dative is sometimes detached from the verb, and used immediately with a substantive, instead of the genitive: as, *Philocomasio custos, Pl. MG. 271, the keeper for Philocomasium. rector iuveni, Ta. 1, 24, a mentor for the young man.* So particularly with a gerundive in official expressions: as, *curator muris reficiendis, OG. 19, commissioner for rebuilding the walls.*

**1209.** Verbs of warding off sometimes take a dative, especially in poetry, also those of robbing and ridding: as, (a.) *hunc quoque arcēbis gravidō pecori, V. G. 3, 154, him also wilt thou for the pregnant herd keep far. solstitium pecori defendite, V. E. 7, 47, the summer's heat keep distant for the flock.* (b.) *torquem detraxit hosti, Fin. 1, 35, he pulled a torque away from his enemy. eripies mihi hunc errorem, Att. 10, 4, 6, you will rid me of this mistake.*

**1210.** With verbs of motion the dative of the person interested denotes in poetry the end of motion also: as, *multos Danaum demittimus Orcō, V. 2, 398, we send down many a Danaan for the nether king.* So also the dative of personified words of place: as, *it clamor caelo, V. 5, 451, up goes a shout for heaven, i. e. heaven hears a shout. sedibus hunc refer ante suis, V. 6, 152, first bear him duly to his place of rest, i. e. let his expectant grave receive him.*

### THE EMOTIONAL DATIVE.

1211. The dative of the personal pronoun is often used with expressions of emotion, interest, surprise, or derision: as,

quid mihi Celsus agit? *H. E.* 1, 3, 15, *how fares me Celsus?* Tongilium mihi eduxit, *C.* 2, 4, *he took out Tongilius, bless my soul.* at tibi repente, cum minimē expectārem, vēnit ad mē Caninius māne, *Fam.* 9, 2, 1, *but bless you, sir, when I least dreamt of it, who should drop in on me all at once but Caninius, bright and early.*

### THE DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR.

1212. The dative is used with forms of *sum* to denote the possessor: as,

est hominī cum deō similitūdō, *Leg.* 1, 25, *man has a resemblance to god.* an nescis longās rēgibus esse manūs? *O. E.* 16, 166, *dost possibly not know kings have long arms?* suos quoque mōs, *T. Ph.* 454, *to every man his own pet way.* So also with the compounds *absum*, *dēsum*, *supersum*: as, hoc ūnum Caesarī dēfuit, 4, 26, 5, *this was all Caesar lacked.*

1213. (1.) With *mihi est nōmen*, the name is put either in the dative or in the nominative: as,

mihi nōmen est Iūliō, or mihi nōmen est Iūlius, *Gell.* 15, 29, 1, *my name is Julius.* In old Latin and in Sallust, the dative: as, nōmen Mercuriōst mihi, *Pl. Am. prol.* 19, *my name is Mercury*; later the nominative: as, canibus pigris nōmen erit Pardus, Tigris, Leo, *J.* 8, 34, *the craven cur shall sport the name of 'Lion, Tiger, Pard.'* Cicero uses the nominative or rarely the dative, Livy oftener the dative than the nominative. Tacitus puts adjectives in the dative, substantives in the nominative, rarely in the genitive. Caesar does not use the construction.

1214. (2.) With the actives *nōmen dō*, *indō*, *pōnō*, *tribuō*, &c., the name may be in the dative or in the accusative; with the passive of these expressions, the name may be in the dative or in the nominative: as,

quī tibi nōmen insānō posuēre, *H. S.* 2, 3, 47, *who've put on thee the nickname Crank.* quī filiīs Philippum atque Alexandrum nōmina imposuerat, *L.* 35, 47, 5, *who had given his sons the names Philip and Alexander.* A genitive dependent on *nōmen* is used once by Tacitus and in very late Latin.

1215. With a gerundive, the dative of the possessor denotes the person who has the action to do: see 2243. For the ablative with *ab*, or for *habēō*, see 2243, 2245.

1216. This dative is sometimes used with the perfect participle, and the tenses formed with it: as, mihi est ēlabōrātum, *Caecil.* 40, *I have it all worked out.* carmina nūlla mihi sunt scripta, *O. Tr.* 5, 12, 35, *no poetry have I ready made.* Rarely with passives of the present system: as, nūlla placēre diū nec vivere carmina possunt, quae scribuntur aquae pōtōribus, *H. E.* 1, 19, 2, *no verse can take or be longlived that by teetotallers is writ.*

## THE DATIVE OF RELATION.

1217. The dative may denote the person viewing or judging: as, *eris mihi magnus Apollō*, *V. E.* 3, 104, *thou shalt to me the great Apollo be*. *Quintia fōrmōsa est multis, mihi candida, longa, rēcta est*, *Cat.* 86, 1, *in many eyes is Quintia fair, to me she's bonny, tall, and straight*. From Caesar on, participles are often used to denote the person viewing or judging: as, *est urbe ēgressis tumulus*, *V.* 2, 713, *there is, as you get out of town, a mound*. *in ūniversum aestimantī*, *Ta. G.* 6, *looking at it generally*.

1218. In imitation of a Greek idiom, *volēns*, *cupiēns*, or *invītus*, is used by Sallust and Tacitus in agreement with a dative dependent on a form of *sum*, the combination being equivalent to a subject with a form of *volō*, *cupiō*, or *invītus sum*, respectively: as, *cēteris remanēre volentibus fuit*, *Ta. H.* 3, 43, i. e. *cēterī remanēre voluērunt*, *the rest were minded to bide where they were*. Once in Livy.

## II. THE PREDICATIVE DATIVE.

## THE DATIVE OF TENDENCY OR RESULT.

1219. (1.) Certain datives are used with a form of *sum* to denote what a thing tends to, proves, or is. This dative is generally accompanied by a dative of the person interested: as,

*auxiliō is fuit*, *Pl. Am. prol.* 92, *he was a help to them*. *odiō sum Rōmānis*, *L.* 35, 19, 6, *I am an abomination in the eyes of Rome*. *potestne bonum cuiquam malō esse?* *Par.* 7, *can good prove bad for any human being?* *L. Cassius identidem quaerere solēbat, cui bonō fuisset*, *RA.* 84, *Cassius used to ask for ever and ever, who the person benefited was, or who the gainer was*. *nēminī meus adventus labōri aut sūmptuī fuit*, *V.* 1, 16, *my visit did not prove a bother or an expense to a soul*. *rēs et fortunae tuae mihi maximae cūrae sunt*, *Fam.* 6, 5, 1, *your money-matters are an all-absorbing interest to me*.

1220. There are many of these datives, mostly abstracts and all singular, some of the commonest are *cūrae*, *ūsui*, *praesidiō*, *cordī*, *odiō*, *auxiliō*, *impediētō*, *salūtī*, *voluptātī*. The adjectives *magnus*, *maior*, *maximus*, or *tantus* and *quantus*, are sometimes used in agreement with them; and the dative *frūgī* sometimes has *bonae*.

1221. Instead of the dative of tendency, a predicative nominative or accusative is rarely used: thus, *possessiōnem liberam Dardaniae solāciō fore*, *L.* 40, 57, 9, *that the unrestricted occupancy of Dardania would prove comforting*, but, *domestica quiēs solācium fuit*, *L.* 6, 30, 9, *the peace that prevailed at home was a solid comfort*. Prepositional expressions with *prō* and *in* also occur.

1222. (2.) The dative is also used with a few verbs of considering or accounting to denote what a thing is accounted.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1228. Two or even three genitives expressing different relations, sometimes limit one substantive: as, *superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō*, 3, 18, 6, *Sabinus's dilatoriness in days preceding*. *eōrum diērum cōnsuetūdine itineris nostri exercitūs perspectā*, 2, 17, 2, *studying up the order of march followed by our army in those days*.

1229. The limited substantive is often omitted, when it is obvious from the context: as, *ventum erat ad Vestae*, sc. *aedem*, H. S. 1, 9, 35, *to Vesta's were we come*, i. e. to her temple. *ab eram bīduī*, sc. *iter*, Att. 5, 17, 1, *I was two days distant*. Usually so, when it is expressed with another genitive, which generally precedes: as, *quis est, quī possit cōferre vitam Trebōnī cum Dolābellae?* Ph. 11, 9, *who is there that can compare the life of Trebonius with Dolabella's?*

1230. Instead of the genitive depending on a substantive, an equivalent adjective or a prepositional expression is often used. Such substitutions will be mentioned below in their appropriate places.

1231. The relations expressed by the limiting genitive vary very much according to the context. These relations may be put in classes, as below (1232-1260). But it must be remembered that as the genitive connects substantives in a loose way, the same construction may sometimes be referred to more than one head.

## THE GENITIVE OF THE SUBJECT, CAUSE, ORIGIN, OR OWNER.

1232. (1.) The genitive is used to denote that which does the action, or which causes, originates, or possesses the object designated by the substantive it limits: as,

*metus hostium*, Gell. 9, 12, 13, *the fear of the enemy*, i. e. which they feel. *adventus Caesaris*, 6, 41, 4, *the arrival of Caesar*. *bellum Venetōrum*, 3, 16, 1, *the war with the Venetans*. *illud Solōnis*, CM. 50, *Solon's memorable words*. *Canachī signa*, Br. 70, *statues by Canachus*. *Cupidinis signum*, V. 4, 135, *the statue representing Cupid*. *huius signis*, V. 3, 9, *with statues belonging to this man*. *pācem Ariovistī*, 1, 37, 2, *a peaceful policy on Ariovistus's part*. *Cannārum pugna*, L. 23, 43, 4, *the battle of Cannae (1427)*. *abacī vāsa omnia*, V. 4, 35, *all the vessels on the sideboard*. *prīdiē eius diēi*, 1, 47, 2, *the day before that day (1413)*. *labrōrum tenuis*, Lucr. 1, 940, *the length of the lips (1420)*.

1233. Instead of the genitive, an adjective is often used to express such relations; less frequently a prepositional construction: as,

(a.) *odium paternum*, N. 23, 1, 3, *the hatred felt by his father*. *servīlī tumultū*, 1, 40, 5, *in the slave insurrection*. *bellō Cassiānō*, 1, 13, 2, *in the war with Cassius*. *illud Cassiānum, cui bonō fuerit*, Ph. 2, 35, *Cassius's test question, 'who the gainer was.'* *erilis patria*, Pl. B. 170, *my master's birthplace*. *intrā domesticōs parietēs*, C. 2, 1, *within the walls of our houses*. So usually with names of countries and of towns: as, *anus Corinthia*, T. Hau. 600, *an old woman of Corinth*. *pugna Cannēnsis*, L. 22, 50, 1, *the battle of Cannae*. Often in a generalizing sense: as, *paternus maternus-que sanguis*, RA. 66, *the blood of a father and of a mother*. (b.) *ad Cannās pugnam*, L. 22, 58, 1, *the battle of Cannae*.

**1234.** The possessive pronoun is regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of a personal or reflexive pronoun (1230) : as,

*mea domus, RA. 145, my own house. in tuā quādam epistolā, Att. 9, 10, 3, in a letter of yours.* But sometimes, for emphasis, the genitive of the personal or reflexive is used : as, *magnō suī cum periculō, 4, 28, 2, with great personal risk ; commonly so with omnium or utriusque : as, voluntātī vestrūm omnium pārui, DO. 3, 208, I yielded to your joint wish ; see however 1235.*

**1235.** A word in apposition with the possessive pronoun is put in the genitive : as, *meā ūnius operā, Pis. 6, by my sole instrumentality. ad vestram omnium caedem, C. 4, 4, for the murder of you all (1230).* So particularly *ipse, omnis, sōlus, and ūnus.*

**1236.** The genitive is often used predicatively with verbs meaning *am, belong, become, make, seem, am accounted, &c., &c. :* as,

*litterārii ista sunt lūdī, Quint. 1, 4, 27, such questions belong to the infant school. hic versus Plauti nōn est, hic est, Fam. 9, 16, 4, this line is not Plautus's, this one is. omnia, quae mulieris fuērunt, viri fiunt, Top. 23, everything which was the woman's becomes the man's. neque sē iudicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populī Rōmāni, 1, 45, 1, and that he did not think Gaul was any more Ariovistus's than it was the Romans'. hostiumst potita, Pl. E. 562, into the foemen's hands she fell.*

**1237.** The possessive genitive of a person or of an abstract is particularly common when the subject of the verb is an infinitive or sentence : as,

(a.) *scyphis pugnāre Thrācum est, H. 1, 27, 1, to fight with bowls is Vandal work. erat āmentis, cum aciem vidērēs, pācem cōgitāre, Lig. 28, it was a madman's act, dreaming of peace when you saw the troops in battalia. temporī cēdere semper sapientis est habitum, Fam. 4, 9, 2, shaping your course to circumstance has always passed as the sign of a wise man. mentiri nōn est meum, l. Hau. 549, telling lies is not my style (1234).* (b.) *nōn est pudōris meī, mē prōpugnātōrem P. Scīpiōnis profitēri, V. 4, 80, it is not in keeping with my delicacy to set up as the champion of Scipio. hārum rērum esse dēfēnsōrem magnī animī est, Sest. 99, to be the defender of these interests takes heroism. hoc sentire prūdētiaē est, facere fortitudinis, Sest. 86, to think thus shows wisdom, to act thus, courage. negāvit mōris esse Graecōrum, ut in conviviō virōrum accumberent mulierēs, V. 1, 66, he said it was not manners among the Greeks to have women at table at a men's dinner-party.*

**1238.** With the possessive genitive, the limited substantive is sometimes defined by *commūnis, proprius* or *aliēnus, sacer, or tōtus* added : as, *hoc proprium virtūtis existimant, 6, 23, 2, this they consider a special characteristic of bravery. omnia quae nostra erant propria, RA. 150, everything which was our peculiar property (1234). illa īnsula eōrum deōrum sacra putātur, V. 1, 48, that island is considered the hallowed property of those gods. iam mē Pompēi tōtum esse scīs, Fam. 2, 13, 2, you are aware that I am become Pompey's, out and out.*

## THE GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

**1239.** (2.) The genitive with an adjective in agreement is used to denote quality, either attributively or predicatively : as,



(a.) Attributively : *magnī ponderis saxa*, 2, 29, 3, *stones of great weight*. *summae speī adulēscētēs*, 7, 63, 9, *young men of high promise*. *diērum vīgintī supplicātiō*, 4, 38, 5, *a twenty day thanksgiving*. *bēlua multōrum es capitum*, H. E. 1, 1, 76, *a many-headed beast art thou*. *eius modī cōnsiliū*, 5, 29, 5, *such a plan*. *dēmittō auriculās ut inīquae mentis asellus*, II. S. 1, 9, 20, *I drop my ears like Neddy in the sulks* (269). *vāllō pedum IX*, 5, 42, 1, *with a nine foot palisade*. (b.) Predicatively : *magnae habitus auctoritātis*, 7, 77, 3, *passing for a man of great influence*. *flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium*, 2, 18, 3, *the depth of the river was about three feet*. The genitive of quality resembles the ablative of quality (1375); the two are sometimes combined : as, *hominem maximī corporis terribilīque faciē*, N. 15, 4, 1, *a man of gigantic frame and with an awe-inspiring presence*. But the genitive is common in designations of size and number.

1240. A substantive expressing quality with *aequus*, *pār*, *similis*, or *dissimilis* in agreement, is put not in the genitive, but in the ablative, by Cicero, Caesar, Nepos, and Livy.

### THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

1241. (3.) The partitive genitive denotes a whole of which the limited substantive denotes a part. There are two kinds of partitive genitive, the numerical and the quantitative : as,

(a.) *militum pars*, 6, 40, 8, *part of the soldiers*, numerical partitive (1242).  
(b.) *multum aestātis*, 5, 22, 4, *much of the summer*, quantitative partitive (1247).

1242. (a.) The numerical partitive is a plural or a collective, limiting a word expressing part of the number : as,

*militum pars*, 6, 40, 8, *part of the soldiers*. *pars equitātūs*, 4, 16, 2, *part of the cavalry*. *alter cōsulum*, L. 6, 35, 5, *one of the two consuls*. *uter est insānior hōrum?* H. S. 2, 3, 102, *which of these two is crazier?* *eōrum neuter*, Pis. 62, *neither of the two*. *multae istārum arborum*, CM. 59, *many of the trees you see there*. *quis omnium mortālium?* V. 5, 179, *who among all the sons of men?* *nēmō nostrūm*, RA. 55, *not one of us*. *nihil hōrum*, RA. 138, *none of these things*. *Stertinius, sapientum octāvōs*, H. S. 2, 3, 296, *Stertinius, of sages eighth*. *ō maior iuvenum*, H. AP. 366, *O elder of the youths*. *hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae*, I, 1, 3, *of all these the stoutest fighters are the Belgians*. Also with superlative adverbs : as, *deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt*, Ta. G. 9, *of the gods, they revere Mercury most*. *minimē gentium*, Pl. Poen. 690, I. Eu. 625, *no, never in the world*.

1243. *uterque*, *each*, *both*, often takes the genitive plural of a pronoun : as, *quōrum uterque*, *uterque eōrum*, *hōrum*, *nostrūm*, &c. ; sometimes of a substantive and pronoun combined : as, *utriusque hārum rērum*, TD. I, 65, *of each of these things*. *quārum civitātum utraque*, V. 5, 56, *each of these communities*. With a substantive alone, it is oftener attributive : as, *uterque dux*, Marc. 24, *each commander*, and sometimes with neuter pronouns : as, *quod utrumque*, Brut. in Fam. II, 1, 1, N. 25, 2, 4. The plural *utrisque* is used both ways : as, *ab utrisque vestrūm*, Fam. II, 21, 5, and *ab utrisque nobīs*, Brut. in Fam. II, 20, 3.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1251. The partitive construction sometimes extends to the predicate: as, *id erit signi mē invitum facere*, *RA.* 83, *this will be something of an indication that I act with reluctance*; *signi* is here in the predicate, and yet made dependent on *id*. *quid ergo est tui cōsili?* *Brut.* in *Fam.* 11, 1, 3, *what then is your advice?* *quid sui cōsili sit ostendit*, 1, 21, 2, *he explains what his plan is*. *quid est enim huic reliqui?* *Sull.* 89, *for what is there left for my client?* *hi milites nihil reliqui victis fecere*, *S. C.* 11, 7, *these soldiers left nothing over to the conquered*. *nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt*, 2, 26, 5, *as for speed, they left no effort unspared*.

1252. The accusative with a preposition also sometimes has the genitive: as, *id redactus sum loci*, *T. Ph.* 979, *I am reduced to such a strait*. *ad id loci*, *S. C.* 45, 3, *to that spot*. *ad id locorum*, *S. I.* 63, 6, *up to that time*. *in multum diei*, *L.* 9, 44, 11, *till late in the day*. In Cicero, also the ablatives *eō*, *eodem*, and *quō*, with *loci*: as, *eō loci*, *Sest.* 68, *in that position*. And in later writers, other ablatives, with or without a preposition, also have a genitive.

1253. Some appellatives of place are put in the genitive with adverbs of place: as, *ubinam gentium?* *Pl. Mer.* 434, *C.* 1, 9, *where in the world?* *nusquam gentium*, *T. Ad.* 540, *nowhere in the world*. Similarly, *loci* with adverbs of time or order, as with *interea* in Plautus and Terence, *postidea* in Plautus, *postea* in Sallust, and *inde* in Lucretius; also *locorum* with *adhuc* and *postid* in Plautus.

1254. In Sallust, Livy, and Tacitus, genitives of abstracts are used with the adverbs *eō*, *quō*, and *huc*: as, *eō miseriarum*, *S. I.* 14, 3, *to that pitch of distress*. Once with *ut*: *ut quisque audentiae habuisset, adcurrerent*, *Ta.* 15, 53, *they should run up, with a speed commensurate in every case to their daring*.

## THE GENITIVE OF DEFINITION.

1255. (4.) The genitive is used to define that of which a thing consists: as,

*magna multitudō perditōrum hominum*, 3, 17, 4, *a perfect swarm of desperadoes*. *innumerābile pondus auri*, *Sest.* 93, *a weight of gold too great to count*. *mille numerō nāvium clāsem*, *V.* 1, 48, *an armada a thousand sail strong*.

1256. The genitive of an explicit word containing the leading idea is sometimes used to define a more general word; as,

*praedae pecudum hominumque*, *L.* 24, 20, 5, *booty consisting of cattle and human beings*. *pignora coniugum ac liberōrum*, *L.* 2, 1, 5, *pledges in the shape of wives and children*. *cōfusus mūnitiōne fossae*, *Caes. C.* 1, 42, 3, *relying on the defensive works in the shape of a moat*. Rarely in poetry and late prose, the proper name of a place, with *urbs*, *prōmunturium*, &c.: as, *urbem Patavi*, *V.* 1, 247, *the city of Patavium* (1045). Particularly with the words *vōx*, *nōmen*, *genus*, and especially *causa*: as, *haec vōx voluptātis*, *Fin.* 2, 6, *this word 'pleasure'*. *nōmen amicitiae*, *Fin.* 2, 78, *the name 'friendship'*. Compare *nōmen frāternum*, 1, 36, 5, *the name of brothers* (1233). *haec ignōminiae causa*, *Clu.* 120, *this reason, namely the censor's stigma*. *parvulae causae vel falsae suspiciōnis vel terrōris repentini*, *Caes. C.* 3, 72, 4, *insignificant causes, as for instance ungrounded suspicion or a panic*. *propter eam causam sceleris istius*, *V.* 4, 113, *for this reason, namely the crime of the defendant*.

1257. The genitive of definition is very common with *causā*, less common with *grātiā*, to define what the motive or cause is: as,

*amicitiae causā*, I, 39, 2, *from motives of friendship*. Compare *vestrā magis hoc causā volēbam, quam meā*, *DO.* I, 164, *I wished this more for your sake than for my own* (I 4). *honestātis amplitūdinisque grātiā*, *RA.* 15, *in compliment to their respectability and high social standing*. So also sometimes with *nōmine*, and in old or official Latin, with *ergō*.

1258. Conversely, the genitive of a generic word denoting a person is sometimes added to a leading word defining the kind of a person: as, *frūstum puerī*, *Pl. Per.* 849, *thou bit of a boy*. *mōnstrum hominis*, *T. Eu.* 696, *thou fiend in human shape*. *quaedam pestēs hominum*, *Fam.* 5, 8, 2, *some regular plagues in the shape of men*.

1259. *quidquid est, quantum est, quod est, or quodcumque est*, with a genitive, is equivalent to an emphatic *omnis*: as, *quidquid patrum est*, *L.* 3, 17, 5, *whatever there is in the shape of senators, i. e. every single senator*. *quod est pecūniae, trādit*, *Caes. C.* 2, 20, 8, *what there is in the way of money, he hands over*. Similarly *tantum* for *tot*: as, *tantum hominum*, *Pl. Poen.* 619, *such a mass of men*.

## THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

1260. (5.) The objective genitive denotes the object of the action expressed in the limited substantive: as,

*metus hostium*, *Gell.* 9, 12, 13, *the fear of the enemy, i. e. which is felt towards them*. *vēnditiō bonōrum*, *RA.* 110, *sale of the goods*. *lūctū filī*, *DO.* 2, 193, *from grief for his son*. This construction is freely used, even when the parallel verb has a dative, an ablative, or a prepositional expression: as, *fidūciā locī*, 7, 19, 2, *from confidence in the position*. *liberātiōnem culpae*, *Lig.* 1, *acquittal from guilt*. *mīlitiae vacātiōnem*, 6, 14, 1, *exemption from military service*. *opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus*, 5, 48, 1, *disappointed in his hope of three legions*. *deōrum opīniō*, *TD.* 1, 30, *a conception of the gods*. *miserrima est contentiō honōrum*, *Off.* 1, 87, *a scramble for office is a pitiful thing*.

1261. Instead of the objective genitive, a prepositional expression is sometimes used with greater precision: as,

*metus ā vī atque irā deōrum*, *DN.* 1, 45, *fear of the might and wrath of the gods*. So especially the accusative, usually denoting a person, with *in*, *ergā*, or *adversus*, combined with substantives denoting feeling: as, *odium in hominum ūniversum genus*, *TD.* 4, 25, *hatred to all mankind*. *vestra ergā mē voluntās*, *C.* 4, 1, *your good-will towards me*.

1262. A possessive pronoun or adjective is sometimes used for the objective genitive: as,

(a.) *odiō tuō*, *T. Ph.* 1016, *from hate to thee*. *tuā fidūciā*, *V.* 5, 176, *from his reliance on you*. *aspectūque suō*, *Lucr.* 1, 91, *and at the sight of her*.  
(b.) *metus hostilis*, *S. I.* 41, 2, *fear felt of the enemy*. *servilis percontātiō*, *DO.* 2, 327, *crossquestioning of the servant-girls*. *firmus adversus militārem largitiōnem*, *Ta. H.* 2, 82, *dead-set against any largess to the military*.

## II. THE GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

1263. (1.) The genitive is used with many adjectives to denote the object.

Such are chiefly adjectives meaning (a.) *desirous*, (b.) *knowing*, or *remembering*, (c.) *participating*, *controlling*, or *guilty*, (d.) *full*, and most of their opposites: as, (a.) *aurī cupidus*, Pl. *Poen.* 179, *eager for gold*. *sapientiae studiōsōs*, id est enim philosophōs, TD. 5, 9, *devotees of wisdom, for that is what 'philosophers' means*. So also *aemulus*, *avidus*, *fastidiōsus*, *invidus*. (b.) *gnārus rēi pūblicaē*, Br. 228, *familiar with government*. *rēi militāris perītissimus*, I, 21, 4, *a master of the art military*. *hominēs adulēscētulōs*, *inperītōs rērum*, T. *Andr.* 910, *mere hobbledehoys, not up in the world's ways*. *imperītus mōrum*, RA. 143, *behind the times*. *immemor beneficiōrum*, *memor patriae*, Ph. 2, 27, *forgetful of kindnesses, never forgetting his country*. So also *cōnsciūs*, *cōnsultus*, *īnsciūs*, *īnsolēns*, *īnsolītus*, *īnsuētus*, *iēiūnus*, *prōvidus*, *prūdēns*, *rudis*. (c.) *praedae participēs*, Caes. C. 3, 82, 1, *sharing in the booty*. *manifestus tantī sceleris*, S. I. 35, 8, *caught in committing this atrocious crime*. *expers glōriaē*, IP. 57, *without a share in the glory*. So also *adfinis*, *compos*, *cōsors*, *exhērēs*, *potēns*, *reus*. (d.) *negōtī plēnus*, Pl. *Ps.* 380, *full of business*. *fōns plēnissimus piscium*, V. 4, 118, *a fountain swarming with fish*. *refertō praedōnum mari*, IP. 31, *when the sea was crammed with corsairs*. So also *fertilis*, *inops*, *liberālis*, *nūdus*, *prōfūsus*.

1264. In poetry and late prose, a great many other adjectives of these meanings, besides those mentioned above, are also used with the genitive. Such are principally: (a.) *avārus*, *cūriōsus*, *īncūriōsus*, *sēcūrus*. (b.) *nesciūs*, *praesāgus*, *praesciūs*, *scītus*. (c.) *exsors*, *immūnis*, *impos*, *īmpotēns*, *īnocēns*, *īnoxius*, *īnsōns*, *noxius*, *suspectus*. (d.) *abundāns*, *dīves*, *egēnus*, *īnānis*, *īndīgus*, *lārgus*, *parcus*, *pauper*, *prōdīgus*, *sterilis*, *vacuus*.

1265. With *cōnsciūs* and the genitive of a thing, the dative of a person is sometimes added: as, *tot flāgitiōrum exercitūi meō cōnsciūs*, Ta. 1, 43, *a participant with my army in so many outrages*. Sometimes *cōnsciūs* has the dative of a thing: as, *mēns cōnscīa factis*, Lucr. 3, 1018, *the mind of guilt aware*.

1266. (2.) The genitive of the object is often used with present participles which express permanent condition.

These participles are chiefly from verbs which have a transitive use. Not common in old Latin: as, *amantem uxōris*, Pl. *As.* 857, *devoted to his wife*. *fugitāns litium*, T. *Ph.* 623, *inclined to dodge a suit at law*. Very common in Cicero: as, *semper appetentēs glōriaē praeter cēterās gentis fuistis*, IP. 7, *you have always been more hungry for glory than any other nation*. Especially in set expressions: as, *homo amantissimus patriae*, Sull. 34, *vir amantissimus rēi pūblicaē*, C. 4, 13, *ever a devoted patriot*. *negōtī gerentēs*, Sest. 97, *business men*. *aliēni appetēns*, DO. 2, 135, S. C. 5, 4, *always hankering after other people's things*. In Caesar seldom: as *fugiēns labōris*, C. 1, 69, 3, *apt to shirk exertion*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1272. In expressions of worthlessness, other genitives are also used thus; such are nihilī, or, usually with a negative, āssis, floccī, naucī, pili, teruncī: as, nōn āssis facis? Cat. 43, 13, *car'st not a doit?* So also huius: as, huius nōn faciam, T. Ad. 163, *I shall not care a snap.*

1273. With aestimō, the ablatives magnō and permagnō are sometimes used: as, quid? tū ista permagnō aestimās? V. 4, 13, *tell me, do you rate that sort of thing very high yourself?* Compare 1390.

1274. The genitives tantī and quantī, plūris and minōris are also used with verbs of buying and selling, hiring and letting, and costing. But other words are put in the ablative with these verbs: see 1391. For magnī, &c., with rēfert and interest, see 1279.

1275. A similar genitive occurs in one or two set forms, such as aequī bonique dīcō, or faciō, aequī faciō, and bonī cōsulō: as, istūc, Chremēs, aequī bonique faciō, T. Hau. 787, *I count that, Chremes, fair and good.* aequī istūc faciō, Pl. MG. 784, *that's all the same to me.*

### THE VERBS rēfert AND interest.

1276. rēfert and interest, *it concerns*, are much alike in meaning and in construction. But the use of rēfert is characteristic of old Latin and poetry; in prose from Cicero on it is almost supplanted by interest, especially where persons are concerned.

1277. (1.) With rēfert and interest, a first or second person concerned is denoted by the possessive pronoun forms meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā; and, from Cicero on, the third person reflexive by suā: as,

(a.) quid id rēfert meā? Pl. Cur. 395, *what's that to me?* tuā istūc rēfert maxumē, Pl. Tri. 319, *that is of most concern to thee.* nōn suā rēferre, Quinct. 19, *that it did not concern him.* nōn nostrā magis quam vestrā rēfert vōs nōn rebellāre, L. 34, 17, 7, *it is not more for our interest than for your own that you should not make war again.* Without the verb: as, quid istūc nostrā, or quid id nostrā? T. Ph. 800, 940, *what's that to us?*  
 (b.) tuā et meā maximē interest tē valēre, Fam. 16, 4, 4, *your health is a matter of the highest importance to you and to me.* vestrā hōc maximē interest, Sull. 79, *this is of vital moment to you.*

1278. (2.) With interest, from Cicero on, a third person or thing concerned is denoted by the genitive. Also with rēfert, a few times from Sallust on: as,

(a.) quid eius intererat? RA. 96, *what concern was it of his?* interesse rēi pūblīcae sē cum Pompēiō colloquī, Caes. C. 1, 24, 5, *that it was of importance to the common weal that he should have a parley with Pompey.*  
 (b.) faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse vidērētur, S. I. 111, 1, *that he must do something which should seem more for the other side's good than his own.* For the accusative with ad with these verbs, or for the dative with rēfert, see the dictionary.

1279. The matter of concern is expressed by a sentence or infinitive, or by a neuter pronoun; rarely by an appellative: as, *nōn quō meā interesset loci nātūra*, *Att.* 3, 19, 1, *not that the character of the place concerned me*. The degree of concern is expressed by an adverb, as *magnopere*, by a neuter accusative, as *multum*, or by a genitive of estimation, *magnī, permagnī, plūris, parvī, tantī, quantī* (1271).

### JUDICIAL VERBS.

1280. Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting, take a genitive of the charge: as,

*C. Verrem insimulat avāritiae*, *V.* 1, 128, *he charges Verres with avarice*. *accūsātus est prōditiōnis*, *N.* 1, 7, 5, *he was charged with treason*. *capitis arcēssere*, *D.* 30, *accuse on a capital charge*. *prōditiōnis damnātus est*, *N.* 2, 8, 2, *he was convicted of treason*. *Pollis pecūniae pūblicaē est condemnātus*, *Flacc.* 43, *Pollis was condemned for embezzlement of government money*. *maiestātis absolūtī sunt permultī*, *Clu.* 116, *a good many were acquitted of high treason*. With this genitive, an ablative, *crimine, iūdicīō, nōmine*, or *lēge*, is sometimes expressed (1377): as, *nē quem umquam innocentem iūdicīō capitis arcēssās*, *Off.* 2, 51, *that you are never to accuse any innocent man on a charge affecting his status as a citizen*.

1281. The charge is sometimes denoted by a prepositional construction: as, *sescentī sunt, quī inter sicāriōs et dē venēficiis accūsābant*, *RA.* 90, *there are hundreds and hundreds that brought charges of murder, by steel and by poison*. So also *dē āleā*, *of gambling*, in Cicero regularly *dē pecūniis repetundis*, *of extortion*, and necessarily *dē vī*, *of an act of violence*, as *vīs* has no genitive. For the neuter accusative, see 1172.

1282. The penalty also is sometimes denoted by the genitive: as, *cupiō octuplī damnārī Aprōnium*, *V.* 3, 28, *I want to have Apronius condemned to a payment of eightfold*. *damnātusque longī Sisyphus Aeolidēs labōris*, *H.* 2, 14, 19, *and Sisyphus the Aeolid, amerced with penance long*. Sometimes by the ablative: as, *capite*, *V.* 5, 109. So usually from Livy on, when the penalty is a definite sum of money or fractional part of a thing.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS OF MENTAL DISTRESS.

1283. A genitive of the thing, commonly with an accusative of the person, is used with five impersonals of mental distress:

*miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet*: as,

*tūi mē miseret, mēi piget*, *E.* in *Div.* 1, 66, *I pity thee, I loathe myself*. *frātris mē pudet pigetque*, *T. Ad.* 391, *my brother stirs my shame and my disgust*. *mī pater, mē tūi pudet*, *T. Ad.* 681, *dear father, in thy presence I'm abashed*. *galeātum sēro duellī paenitet*, *J.* 1, 169, *too late, with casque on head, a combatant repenteth him of war*. So also *miserētur*, and in old Latin inceptively, *miserēscit, commiserēscit*.

1284. These verbs sometimes have a sentence or a neuter pronoun as subject: as, *nōn tē haec pudet?* *T. Ad.* 754, *does not this make thee blush for shame?* Rarely an appellative: as, *mē quidem haec condiciō nōn paenitet*, *Pl. St.* 51, *for my part, with my wedded state I'm well content*. Or a person: as, *pudeō*, *Pl. Cas.* 877, *I feel ashamed*. For participles and gerundives, see 817.



1285. The genitive is used with the personals *misereor* or *misereō*, and in poetry with *miserēscō*: as,

*aliquandō miserēminī sociōrum*, *V. 1, 72*, do take pity on your allies, it is high time. *nēminis miserēre certumst, quia mēi miseret nēminem*, *Pl. Cap. 764*, I'm bound to care for nobody, as no one cares for me. *Arcadii miserēscite rēgis*, *V. 8, 573*, take pity on the king of Arcady.

1286. Personal verbs of desiring, loathing, admiring, and dreading, sometimes take the genitive: as, *pol, quamquam domī cupiō, opperiar*, *Pl. Tri. 841*, although I yearn for home, I vow I'll wait (1263). *fastīdit mēi*, *Pl. Aul. 245*, he views me with disdain (1263). *iūstītiaene prius mīrer, bellīne labōrum?* *V. 11, 126*, thy justice first shall I admire? thy toils in war? *nē tuī quidem testimōnī veritus*, *Att. 8, 4, 1*, not having any awe about your recommendation either.

### VERBS OF MEMORY.

1287. The genitive is used with verbs of remembering and forgetting when they denote an inherent state of memory or of forgetfulness: as,

*faciam ut mēi memineris dum vītam vīvās*, *Pl. Per. 494*, I'll make you remember me as long as you live. *num potuī magis oblivīscī temporum meōrum, meminisse āctiōnum?* *Fam. 1, 9, 8*, could I have been more forgetful of my present interests, more mindful of my past career? *reminīscerētur incommodī populī Rōmānī*, *1, 13, 4*, he had better bear in mind the rebuff dealt out to Rome. *oblītusque meōrum oblivīscendus et illis*, *H. E. 1, 11, 10*, of friends forgetful and by friends forgot. See 1263.

1288. The accusative is used with these verbs when they denote the mere intellectual exercise of memory or a failure to remember: as,

*equid meministī tūōm parentum nōmina?* *Pl. Poen. 1062*, do you remember your parents' names? *Cinnam meminī vidī Sūllam*, *Ph. 5, 17*, I can remember Cinna, I have seen Sulla. *utinam mēmet possim oblivīscier!* *Accius ap. Non. 500, 5*, oh that myself I could forget! *subitō tōtam causam oblītus est*, *Br. 217*, suddenly he forgot the whole case.

1289. *recordor* has once the genitive (*Pis. 12*), but from its meaning *bring to heart* it is naturally found oftener with the accusative. With it and with *meminī*, the ablative with *de* also occurs. The rare *reminīscor* has the genitive once each in Caesar and Nepos; twice later; oftener the accusative. Neuter pronouns are in the accusative with all these verbs.

1290. The impersonal *venit in mentem* also takes the genitive: as, *venit mihī Platōnis in mentem*, *Fin. 5, 2*, Plato comes into my head; very exceptionally the ablative with *dē*. But the verb in this combination is often used personally, with the thing occurring to the mind as the subject, and regularly in Cicero, when it is *rēs* or *genus*, or a neuter pronoun.

1291. Verbs of reminding take the accusative of a person and sometimes with it the genitive of a thing: as,

*admonēbat alium egestātis, alium cupiditātis suae*, *S. C. 21, 4*, he reminded one man of his beggary, another of his greed. So also *commoneō*, *commonēfaciō*, and, in Tacitus only, *moneō*. Oftener however the thing is in the ablative with *dē*, or, if it is a neuter pronoun or adjective, in the accusative (1172). Rarely a substantive equivalent to a neuter pronoun: as, *eam rem nōs locus admonuit*, *S. I. 79, 1*, the place has reminded me of that.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

The ablative proper is often accompanied by the prepositions *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, *prae*, *prō*, *sine*, or *tenus*.

1298. With the ablative proper two other cases, originally distinct, a locative case and an instrumental case, were confounded, and merged under the common name of the ablative.

1299. II. The LOCATIVE case denotes the place in, at, or on which action occurs. A few forms of the locative proper are still preserved (1331). But the place where is ordinarily denoted by the locative ablative (1342).

The locative ablative is often accompanied by the prepositions *in* or *sub*.

1300. III. The INSTRUMENTAL case denotes that by which or with which a main person or thing is attended (1356).

The instrumental ablative is often accompanied by the prepositions *cum* or *cōram*.

1301. The ablative or locative is sometimes attached immediately to a substantive.

Thus, (a.) sometimes to a substantive which denotes or implies action: as, *interitus ferrō*, *destruction with the sword*, like *intereō ferrō*; see 1307, 1331, 1342, 1376, 1377. (b.) In constructions in which the ablative is due to an older combination with a verb: as, *vir singulārī virtūte*, *a man of unexampled bravery*. See 1309 and 1375.

## I. THE ABLATIVE PROPER.

### THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION AND WANT, AND OF DEPARTURE.

1302. Verbs of separation take an ablative of the thing from which separation takes place: as,

(a) *caruit forō posteā Pompēius*, *caruit senātū*, *caruit pūblicō*, *Mil. 18*, *after that Pompey had to keep away from the market place, from the senate, from highways and byways.* *adhūc Q. Ligārius omnī culpā vacat*, *Lig. 4*, *thus far Ligarius proves devoid of any guilt.* *egeō cōsiliō*, *Att. 15, 1, A. 5*, *I need advice* (1305). (b.) *Ītaliā prohibētur: nōn tū eum patriā privāre, quā caret, sed vitā vīs*, *Lig. 11*, *he is kept out of Italy; you want to deprive him not of his country, from which he is debarred, but of life.* *liberēmus cūrā populum Rōmānum*, *L. 39, 51, 9*, *Hannibal's words when he took poison, 183 B. C., let me relieve Rome of anxiety.*

1303. This ablative is used (a.) with such verbs as mean *abstain*, *abstineō*, *dēsistō*, *supersedeō*; *am devoid of*, *careō*, *vacō*; *need*, *egeō*; and in addition to the accusative of the object, (b.) with verbs used transitively, such as mean *keep off*, *arceō*, *exclūdō* and *interclūdō*, *prohibeō*; *drive away*, *remove*, *pellō*, *moveō*, and their compounds; *free*, *expediō*, *liberō*, *levō*, *solvō* and *exsolvō*; *deprive*, *orbō*, *privō*, *spoliō*, *nūdō*, *fraudō*.

1304. A preposition, *ab* or *ex*, is often used with these verbs, and regularly when the ablative denotes a person. But *careō* and *egeō*, and *exsolvō* and *levō*, never have a preposition.

1305. With *egeō*, the genitive is sometimes used, and often with *indigeō*: see 1293. Also in poetry, with verbs of abstaining and separating: see 1294.

1306. The ablative of separation is sometimes used with such adjectives as *aliēnus*, *expers*, *liber*, *nūdus*, *vacuus*, &c.: as, *negant id esse aliēnum maiestāte deōrum*, *Div. 2, 105*, they maintain that this is not at variance with the greatness of the gods. *vacuī cūrīs*, *Fin. 2, 46*, devoid of cares. *arce et urbe orba sum*, *E. Tr. 114*, of tower and town bereft am I. But sometimes the genitive: see 1263 and 1264; sometimes also prepositional constructions: for these, and particularly for the different constructions of *aliēnus*, see the dictionary.

#### TOWN AND ISLAND NAMES.

1307. (1.) Proper names of towns and of little islands are put in the ablative with verbs of motion, to denote the place from which motion proceeds: as,

*Dāmarātus fūgit Tarquiniōs Corinthō*, *TD. 5, 109*, Damaratus ran away from Corinth to Tarquinii. *signum Carthāgine captum*, *V. 4, 82*, the statue carried off from Carthage. *Megaribus*, *Pl. Per. 137*, from Megara. *Lēmnō*, *Pl. Tru. 90*, from Lemnos. *Rōmā accēperam litterās*, *Att. 5, 8, 2*, I had got a letter from Rome. Rarely with a substantive of motion (1301): as, *dē illius Alexandrēa discessū*, *Att. 11, 18, 1*, about his departure from Alexandria. Also in dating letters: as, *v kal. Sextil.*, *Rēgiō*, *Fam. 7, 19*, Regium, 28 July; less often the locative: as, *Īdibus Iūniis*, *Thessalonicae*, *QFr. 1, 3, 10*, Thessalonica, 13 June. Like a town name: *Ācherunte*, poet. in *TD. 1, 37*, from Acheron. With an attribute: *ipsā Samō*, *V. 1, 51*, from Samos itself. *Teānō Sidicinō*, *Att. 8, 11, B, 2*, from Sidicinian Teanum.

1308. Singular town or island names sometimes have *ex* in old Latin: thus, *Carystō*, *Pl. Ps. 730*, from Carystus, or, *ex Carystō*, *Ps. 737*, indifferently. *ex Andrē*, *T. Andr. 70*, from Andros. In classical Latin, town names rarely have *ab*: as, *ab Athēnis proficīscī*, *Serv. in Fam. 4, 12, 2*, to start from Athens; chiefly of neighbourhood: as, *ab Gergoviā*, *7, 43, 5*; *7, 59, 1*, from camp at Gergovia; or direction: as, *ā Salōnis ad Ōricum*, *Caes. C. 3, 8, 4*, from Salonae to Oricum; regularly with *longē*: as, *longē ā Syracūsīs*, *V. 4, 107*, far from Syracuse.

1309. The ablative of a town or country name is rarely attached immediately to a substantive, to denote origin: as, *Periphanēs Rhodō mercātor dives*, *Pl. As. 499*, Periphanes from Rhodes a chapman rich. *videō ibī hospitem Zacynthō*, *Pl. Mer. 940*, I see the friend there from Zacynthus. Rarely in Cicero: as, *Teānō Āpulō laudātōrēs*, *Clu. 197*, eulogists from Apulian Teanum; in Caesar twice. In Livy with *ab* only: as, *Turnus ab Ariciā*, *L. 1, 50, 3*. Turnus from Aricia. But the Roman tribe one belongs to, is regularly in the ablative: as, *Q. Verrem Rōmiliā*, sc. *tribū*, *V. a. pr. 1, 23*, Verres of the tribe Romilia.

1310. With a verb, country names regularly have a preposition, and always in Cicero, Sallust, and Livy: as, *ē Ciliciā dēcēdēns*, *Br.* 1, *going away from Cilicia*. The ablative alone is rare: as, *Aegyptō adveniō domum*, *Pl. Most.* 440, *from Egypt I come home*. Chiefly in Tacitus: as, *Aegyptō remeāns*, 2, 69, *coming back from Egypt*. In Caesar, by attraction: *cōgēbantur Corcyrā atque Acarnāniā pābulum supportāre*, *C.* 3, 58, 4, *they were forced to fetch fodder from Corcyra and even Acarnania*.

1311. (2.) The ablatives *domō* and *rūre*, and in poetry *humō*, are used like proper names of towns: as,

(a.) *domō excesserant*, 4, 14, 5, *they had gone away from home*. Also metaphorically: as, *domō doctus*, *Pl. Mer.* 355, *by home-experience taught*.  
 (b.) *rūre rediit uxor mea*, *Pl. Mer.* 705, *my wife's come back from out of town*.  
 (c.) *humō*, in Vergil first: as, *vix oculōs attollit humō*, *O.* 2, 448, *scarce from the ground her eyes she lifts*.

### THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE, STUFF, OR MATERIAL.

1312. The verb *nāscor* and participles of origin take an ablative to denote parentage or rank in life.

Such participles are: *nātus*, *prōgnātus*, and *ortus*; in poetry and late prose, also *crētus*, *ēditus*, *generātus*, *genitus*, *satus*, and *oriundus*: as, (a.) *Rōmulus deō prōgnātus*, *L.* 1, 40, 3, *Romulus, sprung from a god*. *dīs genite*, *V.* 9, 642, *thou sired of gods*. Of a parent, *ex* is sometimes used: as *ex mē hic nātus nōn est*, *T. Ad.* 40, *he's not my son*; and of remoter ancestors, *ab*. (b.) *locō nātus honestō*, 5, 45, 2, *respectably descended*. *summō locō nātus*, 5, 25, 1, *of high birth*. *familiā antiquissimā nātum*, 7, 32, 4, *a member of an old family*. Rarely with *dē*: as, *quō dē genere gnātust Philocratēs?* *Pl. Cap.* 277, *what is the parentage of Philocrates?*

1313. The ablative with an attribute, attached to a substantive, sometimes denotes stuff or material: as, *aere cavō clipeum*, *V.* 3, 286, *a targe of hollow bronze*. *perennī fronde corōnam*, *Lucr.* 1, 118, *a crown of amaranthine leaf*. *solidōque adamante columnae*, *V.* 6, 552, *and pillars of the solid adamant*. This construction borders closely on the ablative of quality (1375). Rarely without an attribute: as, *pictās abiete puppīs*, *V.* 5, 663, *painted sterns of fir*.

1314. A substantive denoting stuff or material is generally put in the ablative with *dē* or *ex*; thus,

(a.) Directly with a substantive: *pōcula ex aurō*, *V.* 4, 62, *cups of gold*.  
 (b.) Oftener with an auxiliary verb or participle: *signum erat hoc Cupīdinis ē marmore*, *V.* 4, 5, *this statue of Cupid was made of marble*. *scūtīs ex cortice factīs*, 2, 33, 2, *with long shields made out of bark*. *ex unā gemmā pergrandī trūlla excavāta*, *V.* 4, 62, *a ladle scooped out of a single enormous semi-precious stone*.

1315. The ablative with forms of *faciō* and *sum* denotes that with which or to which something is done: as, *quid hōc homine faciās?* *Sest.* 29, *what can you do with such a fellow?* *quid mē fiet?* *T. Andr.* 709, *what will become of me?* But often the dative (1205): as, *quid tibi faciam?* *Att.* 7, 3, 2, *what shall I do to you?* Or the ablative with *dē*: as, *dē frātre quid fiet?* *T. Ad.* 996, *as to my brother, what will come to pass?*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

Such an ablative is translated by *than*: as, (a.) *lūce sunt clāriōra nōbīs tua cōnsilia*, C. 1, 6, *your schemes are plainer to us than day*. *ō mātrepulchrā filia pulchrior*, H. 1, 16, 1, *O daughter fairer than a mother fair*. Particularly in sentences of negative import: as, *quis Karthāginiēnsium plūris fuit Hannibale?* Sest. 142, *of all the sons of Carthage, who was rated higher than Hannibal?* *nec mihi est tē iūcundius quicquam nec cārius*, Fam. 2, 10, 1, *and there is nothing in the world nearer and dearer to me than you*. (b.) *illud cōgnōscēs profectō, mihi tē neque cāriōrem neque iūcundiōrem esse quemquam*, Fam. 2, 3, 2, *one thing I am sure you will see, that there is nobody nearer and dearer to me than you*.

1321. (2.) The ablative of comparison is similarly used when the first member of comparison is an accusative of the object: as,

*exēgī monumentum aere perennius*, H. 3, 30, 1, *I have builded up a monument more durable than bronze*. Particularly so in sentences of negative import: as, *hōc mihi grātius facere nihil potes*, Fam. 13, 44, *you can do nothing for me more welcome than this*. Also with predicate adjectives dependent on a verb of thinking (1167): as, *Hērodotum cūr vērāciōrem dūcam Enniō?* Div. 2, 116, *why should I count Herodotus any more truthful than Ennius?* Regularly when the second member of comparison is a relative: as, *quā pecude nihil genuit nātūra fēcundius*, DN. 2, 160, *nature has created nothing more prolific than this animal, i. e. the sow*.

1322. (3.) In poetry, the ablative of comparison may be used with the first member of comparison in any case: as, *Lūcili ritū, nostrū meliōris utrōque*, H. S. 2, 1, 29, *after Lucilius's way, a better man than thou or I*.

1323. (4.) In sentences of negative import, the ablative is sometimes used with *alter* and *alius*, as with a comparative: as, *neque mēst alter quisquam*, Pl. As. 492, *and there's no other man than I*. *nec quicquam aliud libertāte commūni quaesisse*, Brut. and Cass. in Fam. 11, 2, 2, *and to have aimed at nothing else than freedom for all*. But in prose, *quam* is commonly used.

1324. (1.) The second member of comparison is often introduced by *quam*, *than*, or in poetry by *atque* or *ac*. This member, whatever the case of the first member, is sometimes made the subject of a form of *sum* in a new sentence: as,

*meliōrem quam ego sum suppōnō tibi*, Pl. Cur. 256, *I give you as a substitute a better than I am myself*. *verba M. Varrōnis, hominis quam fuit Claudius doctiōris*, Gell. 10, 1, 4, *the words of Varro, a better scholar than Claudius ever was*. *ut tibi maiōri quam Africānus fuit, mē adiūctum esse patiāre*, Fam. 5, 7, 3, *so that you will allow me to be associated with you, a bigger man than Africanus ever was*.

1325. (2.) When the first member is in the nominative or accusative, *quam* is commonly a mere coordinating word, with both members in the same case: as,

(a.) *plūris est oculātus testis ūnus quam auriti decem*, Pl. Tru. 490, *a single witness with an eye rates higher than a dozen with the ear*. (b.) *tū velim existimēs nēminem cuiquam neque cāriōrem neque iūcundiōrem umquam fuisse quam tē mihi*, Fam. 1, 9, 24, *I hope you will be convinced that nobody was ever nearer and dearer to anybody than you to me*.

1326. An introductory ablative of a demonstrative or relative pronoun sometimes precedes the construction with *quam*: as, *quid hōc est clārius, quam omnīs Segestae mātrōnās et virginēs convēnisse?* *V.* 4, 77, *what fact is there better known than this, to wit, that all the women in Segesta, married and single, came streaming together?*

1327. The ablative is sometimes used with comparative adverbs also.

So particularly in sentences of negative import: as, *nihil lacrimā citius arēscit*, *Corn.* 2, 50, *nothing dries up quicker than a tear*. Less frequently in positive sentences in prose: as, *fortūna, quae plūs cōsilīs hūmānīs pollet, contrāxit certāmen*, *L.* 44, 40, 3, *fortune, who is mightier than the devices of man, precipitated the engagement*. Very commonly, however, *quam* is used with comparative adverbs.

1328. Designations of number or extent are often qualified by *amplius*, *longius*, or *plūs*, *over*, or by *minus*, *under*.

The word thus qualified is put in the case which the context would require without any such qualification: as, *plūs septingentī captī*, *L.* 41, 12, 8, *over seven hundred were taken prisoners*. *tēcum plūs annum vīxit*, *Q.* 41, *he lived with you over a year* (1151). *cum equīs plūs quīngentīs*, *L.* 40, 32, 6, *with over five hundred horses*. Less frequently with *quam*. When these words are felt as real substantives in the nominative or accusative, the ablative of comparison may be used (1320): as, *plūs trīduō*, *RA.* 74, *more than three days*.

1329. In expressions of age with *nātus*, the adjectives *maior* and *minor* are used as well as *amplius* and *minus*, and with the same construction (1328): as, *annōs nātus maior quadrāgintā*, *RA.* 39, *over forty years old*. For other constructions, see the dictionary. Similarly *conlēctus aquae digitum nōn altior ūnum*, *Lucr.* 4, 414, *a pool no deeper than a finger's breadth* (1130). But commonly with comparative adjectives of extent, *quam* is used, or the ablative (1320): as, *palūs nōn lātior pedibus quīnquāgintā*, 7, 19, 1, *a marsh not wider than fifty feet*.

1330. With a comparative adjective or adverb, the ablatives *opīniōne*, *exspectātiōne*, and *spē*, and some others, chiefly in poetry, take the place of a sentence with *quam*: as,

*opīniōne melius*, *Pl. Cas.* 338, *better than you thought*. *minōra opīniōne*, *Caes. C.* 2, 31, 5, *more insignificant than is thought*. *lātius opīniōne dissēminātum est hoc malum*, *C.* 4, 6, *this infection is more sweeping than anybody dreams*. *spē omnium sērius*, *L.* 2, 3, 1, *later than was generally expected*.

## II. THE LOCATIVE ABLATIVE.

### (A.) THE LOCATIVE PROPER.

1331. (1.) Singular proper names of towns and of little islands are put in the locative to denote the place in or at which action occurs: as,



quid Rōmae faciam? mentīri nescio, J. 3, 41, *what can I do in Rome? I don't know how to lie.* Corinthī et Karthāginī, Agr. 2, 90, *at Corinth and at Carthage.* Lacedaemonī, N. praef. 4, *in Lacedaemon.* Tiburī, Att. 16, 3, 1, *at Tibur.* Rhodī, Fam. 4, 7, 4, *at Rhodes.* mānsiōnēs diutinae Lēmnī, T. Ph. 1012, *protracted stays at Lemnos (1301).* Sometimes in dates: as, data Thessalonicae, Att. 3, 20, 3, *given at Thessalonica (1307).* The locative rarely means *near*: as, Antiī, L. 22, 1, 10, *round about Antium.* In Plautus only two singular town names with consonant stems occur, and these regularly in the locative, Carthāginī and Sicyōnī, three times each; once in a doubtful example, Sicyōne, Cist. 128. Terence has no examples of these stems. From Cicero on, the locative ablative is commoner with them (1343).

1332. With an adjective attribute also, the locative is used: as, Teānī Āpulī, Clu. 27, *at the Apulian Teanum.* Suessae Auruncae, L. 32, 9, 3, *at the Auruncan Suessa.* The appellative forum, *market place*, used, with an attribute, as a proper name, is sometimes put in the accusative with ad: as, Claterna, ad Forum Cornēlium, Fam. 12, 5, 2, *at Claterna and at Forum Cornelium*; sometimes in the locative ablative: Forō Iūli, Plin. Ep. 5, 19, 7.

1333. When the locative is further explained by an appellative following, the appellative is put in the locative ablative, either alone, or with in: as, Antiochiāe, celebrī quondam urbe, Arch. 4, *at Antioch, once a bustling town.* Neāpolī, in celeberrimō oppidō, RabP. 26, *at Neapolis, a town swarming with people.* An appellative in the ablative with in may be further defined by a proper name in the locative: as, duābus in insulis, Melitae et Samī, V. 5, 184, *in two islands — at Melita and Samos.* in oppidō, Antiochiāe, Att. 5, 18, 1, *within town walls — at Antioch.* in sēcessū, Apollōniae, Suet. Aug. 94, *out of town — at Apollonia.* Or in the ablative: as, in oppidō Citiō, N. 5, 3, 4, *in the town of Citium.* in urbe Rōmā, L. 39, 14, 7, *in the city of Rome.*

1334. In Plautus, singular town names with stems in -ā- or -o- are put in the locative ten or twelve times, in the ablative with in some fifteen times. Three such have only in, never the locative: in Anactoriō, Poen. 896, in Seleuciā, Tri. 901, in Spartā, Poen. 663; furthermore, in Epidamnō, Men. 267, 380 twice, in Ephesō, B. 309, MG. 441, 778, and in Epidaurō, Cur. 341, 429, E. 540, 541, 554, but also Epidamni, Men. prol. 51, Ephesī, B. 336, 1047, MG. 648, and Epidaurī, E. 636. Terence, who has only -o- stems, uses the locative six times, the ablative with in four times: only with in: in Andrō, Andr. 931, in Imbrō, Hec. 171. Furthermore in Lēmnō, Ph. 873, 1004, but also Lēmnī, Ph. 680, 942, 1013. Also Milētī, Ad. 654, Rhodī, Eu. 107, Sūniī, Eu. 519.

1335. A town name is sometimes put in the ablative with in by assimilation with a parallel in: as, in Illyricō, in ipsā Alexandrēā, Att. 11, 16, 1, *in Illyricum, and at Alexandria itself.* Antiochum in Syriā, Ptolemaeum in Alexandriā esse, L. 42, 26, 7, *that Antiochus was in Syria, Ptolemy at Alexandria.* in mōnte Albānō Lāviniōque, L. 5, 52, 8, *on the Alban mount and at Lavinium.* Also without assimilation: as, nāvis et in Caiētā est parāta nōbis et Brundusī, Att. 8, 3, 6, *we have a vessel all chartered, one in Cajeta and one at Brundisium.* in Hispalī, Caes. C. 2, 18, 1, *in Hispalis.*

1336. With country names, the locative is very exceptional: as, Chersonēsī, N. 1, 2, 4, *at the Peninsula.* Aegyptī, Val. M. 4, 1, 15, *in Egypt.* Similarly Accheruntī, Pl. Cap. 689, 998, Mer. 606, Tru. 749, *in Acheron*; Accherunte however once: Accheruntest, Pl. Poen. 431. In Sallust, Rōmae Numidiaeque, I. 33, 4, with assimilation of Numidiae to Rōmae.

1337. (2.) The locatives domī, rūri, humī, and rarely orbī, are used like proper names of towns: as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



1343. (2.) Singular proper names of towns with consonant stems are oftener put in the locative ablative than in the locative proper: as,

adulēscēntium gregēs Lacedaemone vidimus, *TD.* 5, 77, *we have seen the companies of young men in Lacedaemon.* Karthāgine, *Att.* 16, 4, 2, *at Carthage.* Tibure, *H. E.* 1, 8, 12, *at Tibur.* Nārbōne, *Ph.* 2, 76, *at Narbo.* See 1331. So also Acherunte, *Lucr.* 3, 984, *in Acheron.* Calydōne et Naupāctō, *Caes. C.* 3, 35, 1, *at Calydon and Naupactus,* with Naupāctō attracted by Calydōne. With an attribute: Carthāgine Novā, *L.* 28, 17, 11, *at New Carthage.* Acherunte profundō, *Lucr.* 3, 978, *in vasty Acheron.*

1344. (3.) A few general appellatives are used in the locative ablative without an attribute, especially in set expressions, to denote the place where: as,

terrā marique, *IP.* 48, *by land and sea*; less commonly marī atque terrā, *S. C.* 53, 2, *by sea and land.* dextrā Pīraeus, sinistrā Corinthus, *Cael. in Fam.* 4, 5, 4, *Piraeus on the right, Corinth on the left.* Rarely, rūre, *Pl. Cas.* 110, *H. E.* 1, 7, 1, *in the country,* for rūri (1337). So animō, animīs, with verbs of feeling: as, angor animō, *Br.* 7, *I am distressed in soul,* or *I am heart-broken.* Metaphorically: locō, (a.) *in the right place,* also suō locō, or in locō. (b.) locō, *instead*; numerō, *in the category,* both with a genitive. principiē, initiō, *in the beginning.*

1345. Certain appellatives, with an attribute, often denote the place where by the locative ablative; so especially locō, locīs, rūre, librō, librīs, parte, partibus: as, remōtō, salūbrī, amoenō locō, *Fam.* 7, 20, 2, *in a sequestered, healthy, and picturesque nook.* idōneō locō, 3, 17, 5, *in an advantageous spot.* iniquō locō, 5, 51, 1, *on unsuitable ground.* campestribus ac dēmissis locīs, 7, 72, 3, *in level and sunken places.* rūre meō, *H. E.* 1, 15, 17, *at my own country box.* rūre paternō, *H. E.* 1, 18, 60, *J.* 6, 55, *on the ancestral farm.* aliō librō, *Off.* 2, 31, *in another book.*

1346. Substantives are often used in the locative ablative with tōtus in agreement, less often with cūctus, omnis, or medius, to denote the place where: as, tōtā Galliā, 5, 55, 3, *all over Gaul.* tōtis trepidātur castrīs, 6, 37, 6, *there is a panic all over the camp.* omnibus oppidīs, *V.* 2, 136, *in all the towns.* omnibus oppidīs maritimīs, *Caes. C.* 3, 5, 1, *in all the seaports.* mediā urbe, *L.* 1, 33, 8, *in the heart of Rome.* But sometimes in is used, or the accusative with per.

1347. (4.) With country names and most appellatives, the place where is generally expressed by the ablative with in. But even without an attribute, the ablative alone is sometimes used, especially in poetry: as,

Italiā, *V.* 1, 263, *in Italy,* litore, *V.* 1, 184, *upon the beach,* corde, *V.* 1, 209, *in heart,* pectore, *V.* 1, 657, *in breast,* thalamō, *H.* 1, 15, 16, *in bower,* umerō, *V.* 1, 501, *on shoulder,* Esquiliīs, *DN.* 3, 63, *on the Esquiline.* Once in Plautus *Alide*, *Cap.* 330, *in Elis,* but eight times in *Alide.*

1348. The locative ablative is sometimes used with such verbs as teneō and recipiō: as, (a.) Ariovistus exercitum castrīs continuit, 1, 48, 4, *Ariovistus kept his infantry in camp.* oppidō sēsē continēbant, 2, 30, 2, *they kept inside the town.* (b.) oppidīs recipere, 2, 3, 3, *to receive inside their towns.* rēx ecquis est, qui senātōrem tēctō ac domō nōn invitet? *V.* 4, 25, *is there a monarch in the wide world that would not welcome a senator to house and home?*

1349. The locative ablative is used with *fīdō* and *cōnfīdō*, *glōrior*, *laetor*, *nītor*, *stō*, and with *frētus*: as, *barbarī cōnfīsī locī nātūrā in aciē permānsērunt*, 8, 15, 1, *the natives, trusting in the nature of their position, kept their stand in battle array.* *superiōribus victōriīs frētī*, 3, 21, 1, *relying on their former victories.* For other constructions with these words, see the dictionary.

### TIME AT WHICH OR TIME WITHIN WHICH.

1350. (1.) The locative ablative is used to denote the point of time at which action occurs.

So particularly of substantives denoting periods or points of time, thus: *hieme*, 5, 1, 1, *in the winter.* *Kalendīs*, H. *Epod.* 2, 70, *upon the first*, i. e. of the month. Generally with an attribute: as, *primē vēre*, 6, 3, 4, *in the first month of spring.* *Mārtiīs Kalendīs*, H. 3, 8, 1, *upon the first of March.* With a parallel locative (1341): *vesperī eōdem diē*, Att. 8, 5, 1, *the evening of the same day.*

1351. Words not in themselves denoting periods or points of time, are in the same way put in the ablative: as,

*patrum nostrōrum memoriā*, 1, 12, 5, *in the memory of our fathers.* *nōn modo illīs Pūnicīs bellīs, sed etiam hāc praedōnum multitūdine*, V. 4, 103, *not only in the Punic wars of yore, but also in the present swarm of pirates.* *proxumīs comitiīs*, 7, 67, 7, *at the last election.* *spectāculīs*, Att. 2, 19, 3, *at the shows.* Especially substantives of action in -tus or -sus (235): as, *sōlis occāsū*, 1, 50, 3, *at sunset.* *adventū in Galliam Caesaris*, 5, 54, 2, *at Caesar's arrival in Gaul.* *eōrum adventū*, 7, 65, 5, *after these people came.* *discessū cēterōrum*, C. 1, 7, *when the rest went away.*

1352. (2.) The locative ablative is used to denote the space of time within which action occurs: as,

*paucīs diēbus opus efficitur*, 6, 9, 4, *the job is finished up in a few days.* *tribus hōris Aduātucam venīre potestis*, 6, 35, 8, *in three hours you can get to Aduatuca.* *quae hic mōnstra fiunt, annō vix possum ēloquī*, Pl. *Most.* 505, *what ghost-transactions take place here I scarce could tell you in a year.* *cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodūnum vēnisset, id bīduō circumvāllāvit*, 7, 11, 1, *arriving at Vellaunodunum, a town of the Senons, in two days time he invested it.* *quicquid est, bīduō sciēmus*, Att. 9, 14, 2, *whatever it may be, we shall know in a couple of days.*

1353. The ablative of the time at or within which action occurs is sometimes accompanied by *in*: as, *in bellō*, 6, 1, 3, *in the war.* *in tempore*, T. *Hau.* 364, *in the nick of time.* *in adulēscentiā*, Pl. *B.* 410, *in my young days.* *in tāli tempore*, Lucr. 1, 93, L. 22, 35, 7, *in such a stress, at such an hour.* *in hōc trīduō*, Pl. *Ps.* 316, *within the next three days.* Especially of repeated action, in the sense of *a* or *every*, with numerals: as, *ter in annō*, Pl. *B.* 1127, *RA.* 132, *three times a year.* *in hōrā saepe ducentōs versūs dictābat*, H. *S.* 1, 4, 9, *two hundred verses in an hour he'd often dictate off.* But occasionally without *in*: as, *mē deciēns diē ūnō extrūdit aedibus*, Pl. *Aul.* 70, *ten times a day he thrusts me from the house.* *septiēns diē*, L. 28, 6, 10, *seven times a day.*

1354. An ablative of the time within which action occurs is sometimes followed by a relative pronoun sentence, with the relative pronoun likewise in the ablative: as, *quadrīduō, quō haec gesta sunt, rēs ad Chrȳsogonum dēfertur*, *RA.* 20, *within the four days space in which this occurred, the incident is reported to Chrysogonus*, i. e. four days after this occurred. *diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat conportārī, omnī opere effectō*, 4, 18, 1, *the job being all done ten days after the carting of the stuff had begun.*

1355. The ablative is exceptionally used to denote duration of time: as, *tōtā nocte continenter iērunt*, 1, 26, 5, *they went on and on all night without interruption.* Regularly, however, the accusative (1151); but the ablative is common in inscriptions.

### III. THE INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

#### (A.) THE ABLATIVE OF ATTENDANCE.

#### THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

1356. A few indefinite designations of military forces denote accompaniment by the ablative alone, or oftener with *cum*: as,

(a.) *ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt*, 2, 7, 3, *they marched upon Caesar's camp with all their forces.* *omnibus cōpiīs ad Ilerdam proficiscitur*, *Caes. C.* 1, 41, 2, *he marches before Ilerda, horse, foot, and dragoons.* (b.) *is civitatī persuāsit, ut cum omnibus cōpiīs exirent*, 1, 2, 1, *well, this man induced the community to emigrate in a body, bag and baggage.*

1357. The participles *iūctus* and *coniūctus* take the ablative of the thing joined with: as, *dēfēsiōne iūcta laudātiō*, *Br.* 162, *a eulogy combined with a defence.* But sometimes the ablative with *cum* is used, or the dative (1186).

#### THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER.

1358. (1.) Certain substantives without an attribute are put in the ablative alone to denote manner; but usually substantives without an attribute have *cum*.

(a.) Such adverbial ablatives are *iūre* and *iniūriā*, *ratione et viā*, *silentiō*, *vitiō*, *ordine*, *sponte*, *cōsuētūdine*, &c.: as, *Arātus iūre laudātur*, *Off.* 2, 81, *Aratus is justly admired.* *iniūriā suspectum*, *C.* 1, 17, *wrongfully suspected.* *in omnibus, quae ratione docentur et viā*, *O.* 116, *in everything that is taught with philosophic method.* *silentiō ēgressus*, 7, 58, 2, *going out in silence.* *cēnsōrēs vitiō creatī*, *L.* 6, 27, 5, *censors irregularly appointed.* *ordine cūcta exposuit*, *L.* 3, 50, 4, *he told the whole story from beginning to end*, i. e. with all the particulars. (b.) With *cum*: *face rem hanc cum cūrā gerās*, *Pl. Per.* 198, *see that this job with care thou dost.* *cum virtūte vivere*, *Fin.* 3, 29, *to live virtuously.*

1359. (2.) The ablative of a substantive with an attribute is often used to denote manner, sometimes with *cum*: as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

brevitatem secutus sum te magistrō, *Fam.* 11, 25, 1, *I aimed at brevity with you as a teacher.* natus dis inimicis, *Pl. Most.* 563, *born under wrath of gods.* M. Messalā et M. Pisone consulibus, 1, 2, 1, *in the consulship of Messala and Piso.* isto praetore venit Syracūsas, *V.* 4, 61, *in the defendant's praetorship he came to Syracuse.*

1366. The nominative quisque, plerique, or ipse, sometimes accompanies the ablative absolute: as, causā ipse pro se dictā, damnatur, *L.* 4, 44, 10, *he is condemned after pleading his case in person.*

1367. The ablative absolute may denote in a loose way various relations which might be more distinctly expressed by subordinate sentences.

So particularly: (a.) Time: as, tertiā initā vigiliā exercitum edūcit, *Caes. C.* 3, 54, 2, *at the beginning of the third watch he leads the army out.* (b.) Cause or means: as, C. Flāminium Caelius religiōne neglētā cecidisse apud Trāsumēnum scribit, *DN.* 2, 8, *Caelius writes that Flaminius fell at Trasumene in consequence of his neglect of religious observances.* (c.) Concession: as, id paucis dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit, 2, 12, 2, *though the defenders were few, he could not take it by storm.* (d.) Hypothesis: as, quae potest esse vitae iūcunditās sublātis amicitiiis? *Pl.* 80, *what pleasure can there be in life, if you take friendships away?* (e.) Description: as, domum venit capite obvolūtō, *Ph.* 2, 77, *he came home with his head all muffled up.*

1368. It may be seen from the examples above that a change of construction is often desirable in translating the ablative absolute. Particularly so in many set idiomatic expressions: as, nullā interpositā morā, *Caes. C.* 3, 75, 1, *without a moment's delay, instantly.* equō admissō, 1, 22, 2, equō citātō, *Caes. C.* 3, 96, 3, *full gallop.* clamōre sublātō, 7, 12, 5, *with a round of cheers.* bene rē gestā salvos redeō, *Pl. Tri.* 1182, *crowned with success I come back safe and sound.*

1369. The substantive of the ablative absolute usually denotes a different person or thing from any in the main sentence. But exceptions to this usage sometimes occur: as,

quibus audītis, eōs domum remittit, 4, 21, 6, *after listening to these men, he sends them home again.* si ego mē sciente paterer, *Pl. MG.* 559, *if I should wittingly myself allow, more emphatic than sciēns.* sē iūdice nemo nocēns absolvitur, *J.* 13, 2, *himself the judge, no criminal gets free.*

1370. Two ablatives absolute often occur together, of which the first indicates the time, circumstances, or cause of the second: as, exaudītō clamōre perturbātis ordinibus, 2, 11, 5, *the ranks being demoralized from hearing the shouts.* cōsumptis omnibus telis gladiis dēstrictis, *Caes. C.* 1, 46, 1, *drawing their swords after expending all their missiles.*

1371. The substantive is sometimes omitted in the ablative absolute, particularly when it is a general word for a person or a thing which is explained by a relative: as, praemissis, qui repurgarent iter, *L.* 44, 4, 11, *sending sappers and miners ahead to clear a way.* relātis ordine, quae vidissent, *L.* 42, 25, 2, *telling circumstantially all they had seen.*

1372. The ablative neuter of some perfect participles is used impersonally (1034). This use is rare in old Latin, in classical Latin commonest in Cicero, and afterwards in Livy: as, auspiciātō, *DN.* 2, 11, *with auspices taken.* sortitō, *V.* 2, 126, *lots being drawn, or by lot.* Such ablatives readily become adverbs (704). Substantives are also sometimes used alone: as, austrō, *Div.* 2, 58, *when the wind is south.* tranquillitāte, *Plm. Ep.* 8, 20, 6, *when it is calm.* serēnō, *L.* 37, 3, 3, *the day being clear.*

1373. The ablative neuter of some perfect participles is occasionally used in agreement with a sentence or an infinitive: as, *cōgnitō vivere Ptolomaeum*, L. 33, 41, 5, *it being known that Ptolomy was alive*. This construction is not used in old Latin, and is rare in classical Latin, but common in Livy and Tacitus. So adjectives also: as, *incertō quid vitārent*, L. 28, 36, 12, *it not being obvious what they were to steer clear of*.

1374. The ablative absolute is sometimes attended, especially in Livy and Tacitus, by an explanatory word, such as *etsi*, *tamen*, *nisi*, *quasi*, *quamquam*, or *quamvis*: as, *etsi aliquō acceptō detrīmentō, tamen summā exercitūs salvā*, Caes. C. 1, 67, 5, *though with some loss, yet with the safety of the army as a whole*.

### THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

1375. The ablative with an adjective in agreement or with a limiting genitive is used to denote quality, either predicatively or attributively: as,

(a.) Predicatively: *capillō sunt prōmissō*, 5, 14, 3, *they have long hair, or let their hair grow long*. *singulārī fuit industriā*, N. 24, 3, 1, *he had unparalleled activity*. *animō bonō's*, Pl. Aul. 732, *be of good cheer*. *ad flūmen Genusum, quod ripis erat impeditis*, Caes. C. 3, 75, 4, *to the river Genusus, which had impracticable banks*. (b.) Attributively: *difficilī trānsitū flūmen ripisque praeruptis*, 6, 7, 5, *a river hard to cross and with steep banks*. *interfectus est C. Gracchus, clārissimō patre, avō, maiōribus*, C. 1, 4, *Gracchus was done to death, a man with an illustrious father, grandfather, and ancestors in general* (1044). *bōs cervi figurā*, 6, 26, 1, *an ox with the shape of a stag*. Compare the genitive of quality (1239).

### THE ABLATIVE OF THE ROUTE TAKEN.

1376. The instrumental ablative is used with verbs of motion to denote the route taken: as.

*Aurēliā viā profectus est*, C. 2, 6, *he has gone off by the Aurelia Road*. *omnibus viis sēmitisque essedariōs ex silvis ēmittēbat*, 5, 19, 2, *he kept sending his chariot men out by all possible highways and byways*. *his pontibus pābulātum mittēbat*, Caes. C. 1, 40, 1, *by these bridges he sent foraging*. *frūmentum Tiberī vēnit*, L. 2, 34, 5, *some grain came by the Tiber*. *lupus Esquilīna portā ingressus per portam Capēnam prope intāctus ēvāserat*, L. 33, 26, 9, *a wolf that came in town by the Esquiline gate had got out through the Capene gate, almost unscathed*. This construction gives rise to some adverbs: see 707. The ablative of the route is sometimes used with a substantive of action (1301): as, *nāvigātiō inferō*, Att. 9, 5, 1, *the cruise by the lower sea*. *eōdem flūmine invectiō*, Fin. 5, 70, *entrance by the same river*.

### (B.) THE INSTRUMENTAL PROPER.

#### THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT OR MEANS.

1377. The ablative is used to denote the instrument or means: as,



pugnābant armīs, H. S. 1, 3, 103, *they fought with arms.* clārē oculis videō, sum pernīx pedibus, manibus mōbilis, Pl. MG. 630, *I can see distinctly with my eyes, I'm nimble with my legs, and active with my arms.* iuvābō aut rē tē aut operā aut cōnsiliō bonō, Pl. Ps. 19, *I'll help thee either with my purse or hand or good advice.* lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestitī, 5, 14, 2, *they live on milk and meat, and they are clad in skins.* contentus paucīs lēctōribus, H. S. 1, 10, 74, *content with readers few.* centēnāque arbore flūctum verberat, V. 10, 207, *and with an hundred beams at every stroke the wave he smites.* Rarely with substantives denoting action (1301): as, gestōrēs linguīs, audītōrēs auribus, Pl. Ps. 429, *reporters with their tongues and listeners with their ears.* teneris labellis mollēs morsiunculae, Pl. Ps. 67<sup>a</sup>, *caressing bites with velvet lips.*

1378. When the instrument is a person, the accusative with *per* is used: as, haec quoque per explorātōrēs ad hostēs dēferuntur, 6, 7, 9, *this too is reported to the enemy through the medium of scouts.* Or a circumlocution, such as virtūte, beneficiō, benignitāte, or especially operā, with a genitive or possessive; as, deūm virtūte multa bona bene parta habēmus, Pl. Tri. 346, *thanks to the gods, we've many a pretty penny prettily put by.* meā operā Tarentum recēpisti, CM. 11, *it was through me you got Tarentum back.* Rarely the ablative of a person, the person being then regarded as a thing: as, iacent suis testibus, Mil. 47, *they are cast by their own witnesses.*

1379. The instrumental ablative is used with the five deponents *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *ūtor*, *vēscor*, and several of their compounds, and with *ūsus est* and *opus est*: as,

pāce numquam fruēmur, Ph. 7, 19, *we never shall enjoy ourselves with peace, i. e. we never shall enjoy peace.* fungar vice cōtis, H. AP. 304, *I'll play the whetstone's part.* castrīs nostrī potitī sunt, 1, 26, 4, *our people made themselves masters of the camp.* vestrā operā ūtar, L. 3, 46, 8, *I will avail myself of your services.* carne vēscor, TD. 5, 90, *I live on meat.* opust chlamyde, Pl. Ps. 734, *there is a job with a cloak, i. e. we need a cloak.*

1380. Instead of the instrumental ablative, some of the above verbs take the accusative occasionally in old and post-Augustan Latin: thus, in Plautus, Terence, Cato, always *abūtor*, also *fungor*, except once in Terence; *fruor* in Cato and Terence, and *perfungor* in Lucretius, once each; *potior* twice in Plautus and three times in Terence, often also the genitive (1292). The gerundive of these verbs is commonly used personally in the passive, as if the verbs were regularly used transitively (2244).

1381. *ūtor* often has a second predicative ablative: as, administrīs druidibus ūtuntur, 6, 16, 2, *they use the druids as assistants.* facilī mē ūtētur patre, T. Hau. 217, *an easy-going father he will find in me.*

1382. *ūsus est* and *opus est* sometimes take a neuter participle, especially in old Latin: as, visō opust cautōst opus, Pl. Cap. 225, *there's need of sight, there's need of care.* Sometimes the ablative with a predicate participle: as, celēriter mī eō homine conventōst opus, Pl. Cur. 302, *I needs must see that man at once.*

1383. With *opus est*, the thing wanted is often made the subject nominative or subject accusative, with *opus* in the predicate: as, dux nōbīs et auctor opus est, Fam. 2, 6, 4, *we need a leader and adviser.* Usually so when the thing needed is a neuter adjective or neuter pronoun: as, multa sibi opus esse, V. 1, 126, *that he needed much.* A genitive dependent on *opus* is found once or twice in late Latin (1227).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

(a.) quod magnōs hominēs virtūte mētīmur, N. 18, 1, 1, *because we gauge great men by their merit.* (b.) nēmō nisi victor pāce bellum mūtāvit, S. C. 58, 15, *nobody except a conqueror has ever exchanged war for peace.* (c.) haec signa sēstertiūm sex millibus quingentis esse vēdita, V. 4, 12, *that these statues were sold for sixty-five hundred sesterces.* aestimāvit dēnāriis III, V. 3, 214, *he valued it at three denars.* trīgintā millibus dixistis eum habitāre, Cael. 17, *you have said he pays thirty thousand rent.* quod nōn opus est, āsse cārum est, Cato in Sen. Ep. 94, 28, *what you don't need, at a penny is dear.* hem, istūc verbum, mea voluptās, vīlest vīgintī minīs, Pl. Most. 297, *bless me, that compliment, my charmer, were at twenty minas cheap.*

1389. With mūtō and commūtō, the ablative usually denotes the thing received. But sometimes in Plautus, and especially in Horace, Livy, and late prose, it denotes the thing parted with: as, cūr valle permūtem Sabinā dīvitias operōsiōres? H. 3, 1, 47, *why change my Sabine dale for wealth that brings more care?* Similarly with cum in the prose of Cicero's age: as, mortem cum vitā commūtāre, Sulp. in Fam. 4, 5, 3, *to exchange life for death.*

1390. The ablative of price or value is thus used chiefly with verbs or verbal expressions of bargaining, buying or selling, hiring or letting, costing, being cheap or dear. Also with aestimō, of a definite price, and sometimes magnō, permagnō (1273).

1391. The ablatives thus used, are (a.) those of general substantives of value and price, such as pretium, (b.) numerical designations of money, or (c.) neuter adjectives of quantity, magnō, permagnō, quam plūrimō, parvō, minimō, nihilō, nōnnihilō: as, magnō decumās vēdidī, V. 3, 40, *I sold the tithes at a high figure.* For tantī and quantī, plūris and minōris, see 1274.

1392. The ablative is also used with dignus and indignus: as, dignī maiōrum locō, Agr. 2, 1, *well worthy of the high standing of their ancestors.* nūlla vōx est audīta populī Rōmānī maiestāte indigna, 7, 17, 3, *not a word was heard out of keeping with the grandeur of Rome.* See also dignor in the dictionary. Similarly in Plautus with condignē, decōrus, decet, aequē, aequos. For the genitive with dignus, see 1269; for the accusative with dignus and a form of sum, 1144.

## THE ABLATIVE OF THE AMOUNT OF DIFFERENCE.

1393. The instrumental ablative is used to denote the amount of difference.

This ablative is used with any words whatever of comparative or of superlative meaning: as, ūnō diē longiōrem mēnsem faciunt aut bīduō, V. 2, 129, *they make the month longer by a day, or even by two days.* ubī adbibit plūs paulō, T. Hau. 220, *when he has drunk a drop too much.* nummō dīvitior, Pl. Ps. 1323, *a penny richer.* bīduō post, 1, 47, 1, *two days after.* multīs ante diēbus, 7, 9, 4, *many days before.* paucīs ante diēbus, C. 3, 3, *a few days ago.* nimīō praestat, Pl. B. 396, *'t is ever so much better.* multō mālim, Br. 184, *I would much rather.* multō maxima pars, C. 4, 17, *the largest part by far.*

1394. In expressions of time, the accusative is sometimes used with *post*, less frequently with *ante*, as prepositions, instead of the ablative of difference: as, *post paucōs diēs*, L. 21, 51, 2, *post diēs paucōs*, L. 37, 13, 6, *paucōs post diēs*, L. 33, 39, 2, *after a few days*. *paucōs ante diēs*, L. 39, 28, 4, *diēs ante paucōs*, L. 31, 24, 5, *a few days before*. With this prepositional construction, ordinals are common: as, *post diem tertium*, 4, 9, 1, *after the third day*, according to the Roman way of reckoning, i. e. the next day but one.

1395. (1.) When the time before or after which anything occurs is denoted by a substantive, the substantive is put in the accusative with *ante* or *post*: as,

*paulō ante tertiam vigiliam*, 7, 24, 2, *a little before the third watch*.  
*bīduō ante victōriam*, *Fam.* 10, 14, 1, *the day but one before the victory*.  
*paucīs diēbus post mortem Africānī*, L. 3, *a few days after the death of Africanus*.

1396. Sometimes in late writers, as Tacitus, Pliny the younger, and Suetonius, a genitive is loosely used: as, *sextum post clādis annum*, *Ta.* 1, 62, i. e. *sextō post clādem annō*, *six years after the humiliating defeat*. *post decimum mortis annum*, *Plin. Ep.* 6, 10, 3, *ten years after his death*. Similarly *intrā sextum adoptiōnis diem*, *Suet. Galb.* 17, *not longer than six days after the adoption-day*.

1397. (2.) When the time before or after which anything occurs is denoted by a sentence, the sentence may be introduced:

(a.) By *quam*: as, *post diem tertium gesta rēs est quam dixerat*, *Mil.* 44, *it took place two days after he said it*. With *quam*, *post* is sometimes omitted. Or (b.) less frequently by *cum*: as, *quem trīduō, cum hās dabam litterās, exspectābam*, *Planc. in Fam.* 10, 23, 3, *I am looking for him three days after this writing* (1601). For a relative pronoun sentence, see 1354.

1398. Verbs of surpassing sometimes have an accusative of extent (1151): as, *mīrāmur hunc hominem tantum excellere cēterīs?* *IP.* 39, *are we surprised that this man so far outshines everybody else?* With comparatives, the accusative is rare: as, *aliquantum inīquior*, *T. Hau.* 201, *somewhat too hard*. Similarly *permultum ante*, *Fam.* 3, 11, 1, *long long before*.

1399. In numerical designations of distance, the words *intervāllum* and *spatium* are regularly put in the ablative: as, *rēx vi mīlium passuum intervāllō ā Saburrā cōnsēderat*, *Caes. C.* 2, 38, 3, *the king had pitched six miles away from Saburra*. So sometimes *mille*: as, *mīlibus passuum vi a Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit*, 1, 48, 1. See 1152.

## TWO OR MORE ABLATIVES COMBINED.

1400. Two or more ablatives denoting different relations are often combined in the same sentence: as,

*Menippus, meō iūdicīō* (1385) *tōtā Asiā* (1346) *illīs temporibus* (1350) *disertissimus*, *Br.* 315, *Menippus, in my opinion the most gifted speaker of that day in all Asia*. *hāc habitā orātiōne* (1362) *mīlitibus studiō* (1316) *pugnae ardentibus* (1370) *tubā* (1377) *sīgnum dedit*, *Caes. C.* 3, 90, 4, *seeing that his soldiers were hot for battle after this speech, he gave the signal by trumpet*.

## USE OF CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

1401. Two cases, the accusative and the ablative, are used with prepositions.

1402. Prepositions were originally adverbs which served to define more exactly the meaning of a verb.

Thus, *endo*, *in*, *on*, the older form of *in*, is an adverb, in an injunction occurring in a law of the Twelve Tables, 451 B.C., *manum endo iacitō*, *let him lay hand on*. Similarly, *trāns*, *over*, in *trānsque datō*, *and he must hand over*, i. e. *trāditōque*.

1403. In the course of time such adverbs became verbal prefixes; the verbs compounded with them may take the case, accusative or ablative, required by the meaning of the compound. Thus, *amicōs adeō*, *I go to my friends* (1137); *urbe exeō*, *I go out of town* (1302).

1404. For distinctness or emphasis, the prefix of the verb may be repeated before the case: as, *ad amicōs adeō*; *ex urbe exeō*. And when it is thus separately expressed before the case, it may be dropped from the verb: as, *ad amicōs eō*; *ex urbe eō*.

1405. The preposition thus detached from the verb becomes an attendant on a substantive, and serves to show the relation of the substantive in a sentence more distinctly than the case alone could.

1406. A great many adverbs which are never used in composition with a verb likewise become prepositions: as, *apud*, *circiter*, *infrā*, *iūxtā*, *pōne*, *propter*, &c., &c. The inflected forms of substantives, *prīdiē*, *postrīdiē* (1413), *tenus* (1420), and *fīnī* (1419), are also sometimes used as prepositions. And *vicem* (1145), *causā*, *grātiā*, *nōmine*, *ergō* (1257), resemble prepositions closely in meaning.

1407. A trace of the original adverbial use of prepositions is sometimes retained, chiefly in poetry, when the prefix is separated from its word by what is called *Tmesis*: as, *ire inque gredi*, i. e. *ingredique*, *Lucr.* 4, 887, *to walk and to step off*. *per mihi mirum visum est*, *DO.* 1, 214, *passing strange it seemed to me*.

1408. Even such words as are used almost exclusively as prepositions sometimes retain their original adverbial meaning also: as, *adque adque*, *E.* in *Gell.* 10, 29, 2, *and up and up, and on and on, or and nearer still and still more near*. *occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor*, 2, 33, 5, *about four thousand men being killed*. *susque deque*, *Att.* 14, 6, 1, *up and down, topsy turvy, no matter how*.

1409. On the other hand, some verbal prefixes are never used as separate prepositions with a substantive. These are called *Inseparable Prepositions*; they are: *amb-*, *round*, *an-*, *up*, *dis-*, *in two*, *por-*, *towards*, *rēd-*, *back*. Usually also *sēd-*, *apart* (1417).

---

PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

1410. The accusative is accompanied by the following prepositions:



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1418. Prepositions which accompany the ablative may be easily remembered in this order:

abs (ab, ā), cum, cōram, dē,  
prae, prō, sine, ex (or ē).

1419. The ablative *finī*, *as far as*, is used in old Latin as a preposition with the ablative: *as, osse finī*, Pl. *Men.* 859, *down to the bone*. *operitō terrā rādīcibus finī*, Cato, *RR.* 28, 2, *cover with loam the length of the roots*. Also, as a real substantive, with a genitive (1255): *as, ānsārum infimārum finī*, Cato, *RR.* 113, 2, *up to the bottom of the handles*. Rarely *finē*, and before the genitive: *as, finē genūs*, O. 10, 537, *as far as the knee*.

1420. *tenus*, *the length*, was originally a substantive accusative (1151). From Cicero on, it is used as a preposition with the ablative, and standing after its case: *as, Taurō tenus*, D. 36, *not further than Taurus*. *pectoribus tenus*, L. 21, 54, 9, *quite up to the breast*. *hāctenus*, *thus far, only thus far*. Also, as a real substantive, with a genitive, usually a plural, mostly in verse (1232): *as, labrōrum tenus*, Lucr. 1, 940, *the length of the lips, up to the lips*. *Cūmārum tenus*, Cael. in *Fam.* 8, 1, 2, *as far as Cumae*.

1421. The adverbs *palam*, *in presence of*, *procul*, *apart from*, either *near* or *far*, *simul*, *with*, are rarely used in poetry and late prose as prepositions with the ablative. *coram* occurs but once as a preposition (inscriptional) before Cicero's time. *absque* with the ablative occurs once each in Cicero and Quintilian; in Plautus and Terence only in a coordinate protasis (1701; 2110).

## PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE OR THE ABLATIVE.

1422. Two cases, the accusative and the ablative, are accompanied by the prepositions *in*, older *endo*, *indu*, *into*, *in*, *sub*, *under*, and *super*, *over*, *on*.

1423. (1.) *in* and *sub* accompany the accusative of the end of motion, the locative ablative of rest: *as*,

(a.) *in cūriam vēnimus*, V. 4, 138, *we went to the senate-house*. *in vincla coniectus est*, V. 5, 17, *he was put in irons*. *hic pāgus eius exercitum sub iugum miserat*, I. 12, 5, *this canton had sent his army under the yoke*. (b.) *erimus in castrīs*, Ph. 12, 28, *we shall be in camp*. *viridī membra sub arbutō strātus*, H. 1, 1, 21, *stretched out — his limbs — all under an arbut green*.

1424. Verbs of rest sometimes have *in* with the accusative, because of an implied idea of motion. And, conversely, verbs of motion sometimes have *in* with the ablative, because of an implied idea of rest: *as*,

(a.) *mihi in mentem fuit*, Pl. *Am.* 180, *it popped into my head*, i. e. came in and is in (compare *venit hoc mī in mentem*, Pl. *Aul.* 226. *in eius potestātem venīre nōlēbant*, V. 1, 150. *in eōrum potestātem portum futūrum intellegēbant*, V. 5, 98, *they knew full well the haven would get under the control of these people*). (b.) *Caesar exercitum in hibernīs conlocāvit*, 3, 29, 3. *Caesar put the army away in winter quarters*, i. e. put them into and left them in. *eam in lectō conlocārunť*, T. *Eu.* 593, *they laid the lady on her couch*. So commonly with *locō*, *conlocō*, *statuō*, *cōstituō*, *pōnō*, and its compounds. For *expōnō* and *impōnō*, see the dictionary.

1425. (2.) *super* accompanies the ablative when it has colloquially the sense of *dē*, *about*, *in reference to*: as, *hāc super rē scribam ad tē Rēgiō*, *Att.* 16, 6, 1, *I'll write you about this from Regium*. In other senses, the accusative, but sometimes in poetry the ablative, chiefly in the sense of *on*: as, *ligna super focō large reponēns*, *H.* 1, 9, 5, *piling on hearth the faggots high*. *nocte super mediā*, *V.* 9, 61, *at dead of night*. *paulum silvae super hīs*, *H. S.* 2, 6, 3, *a bit of wood to crown the whole*.

### COMBINATION OF SUBSTANTIVES BY A PREPOSITION.

1426. (1.) Two substantives are sometimes connected by a preposition, to indicate certain attributive relations (1043); such are particularly:

(a.) Place: as, *illam pugnam nāvālem ad Tenedum*, *Mur.* 33, *the sea-fight off Tenedus*. *excessum ē vitā*, *Fin.* 3, 60, *the departure from life*.  
 (b.) Source, origin, material: as, *ex Aethiopiā ancillulam*, *T. Eu.* 165, *a lady's maid from Aethiopia*. *pōcula ex aurō*, *V.* 4, 62, *bowls of gold* (1314).  
 (c.) Direction of action, connection, separation: as, *amor in patriam*, *Fl.* 103, *love of country*. *vestra ergā mē voluntās*, *C.* 4, 1, *your good will towards me*. *proelium cum Tūscīs ad Iāniculum*, *L.* 2, 52, 7, *the battle with the Tuscans at Janiculum*. *vir sine metū*, *TD.* 5, 48, *a man devoid of fear* (1043).

1427. (2.) Very commonly, however, other constructions are used, even to indicate the relations above: as,

*bellum Venetōrum*, 3, 16, 1, *war with the Venetans* (1231). *bellō Casiānō*, 1, 13, 2, *in the war with Cassius* (1233). *in aureīs pōculīs*, *V.* 4, 54, *in golden bowls* (1233). *scūtīs ex cortice factīs*, 2, 33, 2, *with long shields made out of bark* (1314). *post victōriam eius bellī, quod cum Persīs fuit*, *Off.* 3, 49, *after the victory in the war with the Persians*.

1428. Prepositional expressions are sometimes used predicatively: as, *sunt omnēs sine maculā*, *Pl.* 6, 14, *they are all without spot or blemish*. And sometimes they are equivalent to adjectives: as, *contrā nātūram*, *TD.* 4, 11, *unnatural*, *suprā hominem*, *DN.* 2, 34, *superhuman*. Or to substantives: as, *sine pondere*, *O.* 1, 20, *things without weight*. Or to adverbs: as, *sine labōre*, *Pl. R.* 461, *easily*.

### REPETITION OR OMISSION OF A PREPOSITION WITH SEVERAL SUBSTANTIVES.

1429. (1.) A preposition is often repeated with emphasis before two or more substantives: as,

*in labōre atque in dolōre*, *Pl. Ps.* 685, *in toil and in trouble*. Particularly so with *et . . . et*, *aut . . . aut*, *nōn solum . . . sed etiam*, *nōn minus . . . quam*, &c., &c.: as, *et ex urbe et ex agrīs*, *C.* 2, 21, *from Rome and from the country too*.

1430. (2.) A preposition is often used with the first only of two or more substantives: as, *in labōre ac dolōre*, *TD.* 5, 41, *in toil and trouble*. *incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus*, *N.* 5, 3, 1, *he fell under the selfsame ban as his father*. Particularly when the second is in apposition: as, *cum duōbus ducibus, Pyrrhō et Hannibale*, *L.* 28, *with two commanders, Pyrrhus and Hannibal*.



## TWO PREPOSITIONS WITH ONE SUBSTANTIVE.

1431. (1.) When two prepositions belong to one and the same substantive, the substantive is expressed with the first. With the second, the substantive is repeated, or its place is taken by a pronoun : as,

*contrā lēgem prōque lēge*, L. 34, 8, 1, *against the law and for the law*. *partim contrā Avitum, partim prō hōc*, *Clu.* 88, *partly against Avitus, partly for him*. If, however, the two prepositions accompany the same case, the substantive need not be repeated: as, *intrā extrāque mūnitiōnēs*, *Caes. C.* 3, 72, 2, *inside and outside the works*.

1432. (2.) The second preposition is often used adverbially, without any substantive: as, *et in corpore et extrā*, *Fin.* 2, 68, *both in the body and outside*.

## POSITION OF PREPOSITIONS.

1433. In general a preposition precedes its case: see 178.

1434. Disyllabic prepositions sometimes follow their substantives. Thus, in Cicero, *contrā*, *ultrā*, and *sine*, sometimes stand after a relative; so likewise *inter* in Cicero, Caesar, and Sallust; occasionally also *penes* and *propter*. For *versus*, see 1414; for *finī*, 1419; for *tenus*, 1420.

1435. Of monosyllables, *ad* and *dē* often follow a relative. Also *cum* often in Cicero and Sallust, and regularly in Caesar. With a personal or a reflexive pronoun, *cum* regularly follows, as *mēcum*, *nōbiscum*, *sēcum*.

1436. In poetry and late prose, prepositions are freely put after their cases.

1437. In oaths and adjurations, *per* is often separated from its proper accusative by the accusative of the object: as, *per tē deōs orō*, *T. Andr.* 538, *I beg thee by the gods, in the gods' name*.

## USE OF ADVERBS.

1438. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, or adverbs.

(a.) With verbs, all sorts of adverbs are used: as, of Place: *quis istic habet?* *Pl. B.* 114, *who lives in there?* Time: *tum dentēs mihi cadēbant primulum*, *Pl. Men.* 1116, *my teeth were just beginning then to go*. Number: *bis cōsul fuerat P Africānus*, *Mur.* 58, *Africanus had twice been consul*. Degree, Amount: *Ubiī magnopere orābant*, 4, 16, 5, *the Ubians earnestly entreated*. *Dumnorix plūrimum poterat*, 1, 9, 3, *Dumnorix was all-powerful*. Manner: *bene quiēvit, libenter cibum sūmpsit*, *Plin. Ep.* 3, 16, 4, *he has slept beautifully, he has relished his food*. (b.) With adjectives and adverbs, oftenest adverbs of degree or amount only, or their equivalents, such as *bene*, *ēgregiē*, &c. as, *valdē diligēns*, *Ac.* 2, 98, *very particular*. *ēgregiē fortis*, *DO.* 2, 268, *exceptionally brave*. Adverbs of manner, however, are also used, especially in poetry: as, *turpiter hirtum*, *H. E.* 1, 3, 22, *disreputably rough*, i. e. disreputable and rough.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1446. A form *nec* is used rarely in old Latin in the sense of *nōn*: as, *tū dīs nec rēctē dicis*, Pl. *B.* 119, *thou dost abuse the gods*, i. e. *nōn rēctē* or *male dicis*. After Plautus's time, *nec* for *nōn* occurs in a few set combinations, such as *nec opināns*, *not expecting*, and, from Livy on, *necdum*, *not yet*, i. e. *nōndum*.

1447. The form *nē* usually introduces an imperative or a subjunctive, as will be explained further on. But *nē* is also used in the combination *nē . . . quidem*, *not even, not . . . either*, with the emphatic word between *nē* and *quidem*: as, *nē tum quidem*, 1, 50, 2, *not even then*. *nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē vāllō continet*, 5, 44, 6, *Vorenius did not keep inside the palisade either*.

1448. The adjective *nūllus* is sometimes used, chiefly in colloquial language, for *nōn* or *nē* (1051): as, *Philotīmus nūllus vēnit*, Att. 11, 24, 4, *no Philotimus has shown himself*. *nūllus crēduās*, Pl. *Tri.* 606, *you needn't believe it at all*.

1449. (2.) The negative *haut* or *haud*, *not*, is used principally with adjectives and adverbs, less frequently with verbs: as,

(a.) *haut mediocris vir*, *RP.* 2, 55, *no ordinary man*. *rem haut sānē difficilem*, *CM.* 4, *a thing not particularly hard*. *haut procul*, *CM.* 15, *not far*. In all periods of the language often combined with *quisquam*, *ūllus*, *umquam*, *usquam*. (b.) In old Latin *haut* is freely used with all sorts of verbs, especially with *possum*. In Cicero, it occurs here and there with a few verbs, such as *adsentior*, *errō*, *ignōrō*, *nītor*, *amō*, but is principally confined to *sciō*, in the combination *haut sciō an*, *I don't know but* (1782). Caesar uses *haut* once only, and then in this combination.

1450. A shorter form, *hau*, occurs often in old Latin, and a few times in the classical period: as, *heic est sepulcrum hau pulcrum pulcraī fēminae*, *CL.* I, 1007, 2, on the burial site of a woman, *here is the site not sightly of a sightly dame*. In Plautus it is juxtaposed with *sciō*, making *hausciō*, i. e. *nesciō*.

1451. (3.) Negation may also be intimated by such words as *vix*, *hardly*, *parum*, *not . . . enough, not quite*, *minus*, *less, not*, *minimē*, *least of all*, *male*, &c.

1452. Two negatives in the same sentence are usually equivalent to an affirmative.

Thus, with *nōn* first, an indefinite affirmative: as, *nōn nēmō*, *somebody, a certain gentleman, one or another*. *nōn nūllus*, *some*. *nōn nihil*, *something, somewhat*. *nōn numquam*, *sometimes*. With *nōn* second, a universal affirmative: as, *nēmō nōn*, *everybody, every human being*. *nūllus nōn*, *every*. *nihil nōn*, *every thing*. *numquam nōn*, *always*. *nōn possum nōn cōfiterī*, *Fam.* 9, 14, 1, *I must confess*. *nēmō ignōrat*, *V.* 2, 111, *everybody knows*.

1453. Sometimes, however, in old Latin, a second negation is used merely to emphasize the negative idea: as, *lapideō sunt corde multī, quōs nōn miseret nēmīnis*, E. in *Fest.* p. 162, *there's many a man with heart of stone, that feels for nobody*. For doubled negatives in compound sentences, see 1660.

## USE OF DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

### THE POSITIVE.

1454. The positive sometimes expresses an idea of disproportion: as, *prō multitūdine hominum angustōs sē finis habēre arbitrābantur*, 1, 2, 5, *in view of their large numbers they thought they had a cramped place to live in*. Generally, however, disproportion is expressed as in 1460 or 1461.

THE COMPARATIVE.

1455. When two things only are compared, the comparative is used: as,

uter igitur melior? *Div. 2, 133, which of the two then is the better?* uter est insānior hōrum? *H. S. 2, 3, 102, which of these two is crazier?* uter erātis, tūn an ille, maior? *Pl. Men. 1119, you were — which of the two the bigger, thou or he?*

1456. The superlative is sometimes loosely used when only two things are meant: as, Numitōrī, quī stirpis maximus erat, rēgnum lēgat, *L. 1, 3, 10, to Numitor, who was the eldest of the family, he bequeaths the crown, of two brothers, Numitor and Amulius.* id meā minumē rēfert, quī sum nātū maxumus, *T. Ad. 881, that is of small concern to me, who am the eldest son, says Demea, who has only one brother.*

1457. From Cicero on, an adjective or adverb is sometimes compared with another adjective or adverb. In such comparisons quam is always used.

In this case: (a.) Both members may have the positive form, the first with magis: as, Celer disertus magis est quam sapiēns, *Att. 10, 1, 4, Celer is more eloquent than wise.* magis audācter quam parātē, *Br. 241, with more assurance than preparation.* Or (b.) Both members may have the comparative suffix: as, lubentius quam vērīus, *Mil. 78, with greater satisfaction than truth.* pestilentia minācior quam perniciōsior, *L. 4, 52, 3, a plague more alarming than destructive.*

1458. But sometimes the second member is put in the positive, even when the first has the comparative suffix: as, ācrius quam cōsīderātē, *Ta. H. 1, 83, with more spirit than deliberation.* And sometimes both members: as, clārīs maiōribus quam vetustīs, *Ta. 4, 61, of a house famous rather than ancient.*

1459. The comparative may be modified by ablatives of difference, such as multō, *far*, aliquantō, *considerably*, paullō or paulō, *a little*, nimiō, *too much, ever so much* (1393). Also by etiam, *even, still*, and in Catullus, Sallust, Vergil, and later Latin by longē, *far*, adhūc, *still*.

1460. The comparative of an adjective or adverb often denotes that which is more than usual or more than is right: as,

solēre aiunt rēgēs Persārum plūrēs uxōrēs habēre, *V. 3, 76, they say the Persian kings generally have several wives.* senectūs est nātūrā loquācior, *CM. 55, age is naturally rather garrulous.* stomachābātur senex, si quid asperius dīxeram, *DN. 1, 93, the old gentleman always got provoked if I said anything a bit rough.*

1461. The comparative of disproportion is often defined by some added expression: as,

privātis maiōra focīs, *J. 4, 66, something too great for private hearths* (1321). flāgrantior aequō nōn dēbet dolor esse virī, *J. 13, 11, the indignation of a man must not be over hot* (1330). In Livy and Tacitus by quam prō with the ablative: see the dictionary. Sometimes a new sentence is added: as, sum avidior, quam satis est, glōriae, *Fam. 9, 14, 2, I am over greedy of glory.* For quam ut or quam quī, see 1896.

1462. The comparative with a sentence of negative import is often preferred to the superlative with a positive sentence: as,

elephantō bēluārum nūlla prūdentior, *DN.* 1, 97, *of the larger beasts not one is more sagacious than the elephant, or the elephant is the most sagacious of beasts.* sequāmur Polybium, quō nēmō fuit diligentior, *RP.* 2, 27, *let us follow Polybius, the most scrupulous of men.* For nēmō or quis, the more emphatic nihil or quid is often used: as, Phaedrō nihil ēlegantius, nihil hūmānius, *DN.* 1, 93, *Phaedrus was the most refined and sympathetic of men.*

1463. In colloquial language, a comparative suffix is sometimes emphasized by the addition of magis: as, mollior magis, *Pl. Aul.* 422, *more tenderer.* And sometimes by a mixture of construction, the comparative is modified by aequē, like the positive: as, homo mē miserior nūllus est aequē, *Pl. Mer.* 335, *there's not a man so woebegone as I, for miserior alone, or aequē miser.*

1464. The comparative with the ablative is particularly common, when a thing is illustrated by some striking typical object, usually an object of nature. In such illustrations, the positive with *as* is commonly used in English: as, lūce clārius, *V.* 2, 186, *plain as day.* ō fōns Bandusiae, splendidior vitrō, *H.* 3, 13, 1, *ye waters of Bandusia, as glittering as glass.* melle dulcior ōrātiō, *E. in CM.* 31, *words sweet as honey.* ventis ōcior, *V.* 5, 319, *quick as the winds.* vacca candidior nivibus, *O. Am.* 3, 5, 10, *a cow as white as driven snow.* caelum pice nigrius, *O. H.* 17, 7, *a sky as black as pitch.* dūrior ferrō et saxō, *O.* 14, 712, *as hard as steel and stone.*

## THE SUPERLATIVE.

1465. When more than two things are compared, the superlative is used to represent a quality as belonging in the highest degree to an individual or to a number of a class: as,

proximī sunt Germānis, 1, 1, 3, *they live the nearest to the Germans.* hōrum omnium fortissimī, 1, 1, 3, *the bravest of these all.*

1466. The superlative may be strengthened by the addition of such words as ūnus, *preeminently*, usually with a genitive, maximē, quam, with or without a form of possum, *as possible, &c., &c.* (1892). In old Latin by multō; from Cicero on, by longē, *far*, and vel, *perhaps, even*: as,

cōfirmāverim rem ūnam esse omnium difficillimam, *Br.* 25, *I am not afraid to avouch it is the one hardest thing in the world.* longē nōbilissimus, 1, 2, 1, *the man of highest birth by far.* quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam contendit, 1, 7, 1, *he pushes into Gaul by the quickest marches he can.* quam mātūrrimē, 1, 33, 4, *as early as possible.*

1467. The superlative is also used to denote a very high degree of the quality.

This superlative, called the *Absolute Superlative*, or the *Superlative of Eminence*, may be translated by the positive with some such word as *most, very*: as, homo turpissimus, *V.* 4, 16, *an utterly unprincipled man.* Often best by the positive alone: as, vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquitānus, 4, 12, 4, *the heroic Piso of Aquitain* (1044).

1468. In exaggerated style, the superlative of eminence may be capped by a comparative: as, stultior stultissimō, *Pl. Am.* 907, *a greater than the greatest fool.* ego miserior sum quam tū, quae es miserrima, *Fam.* 14, 3, 1, *I am myself more unhappy than you, who are a most unhappy woman.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

**1476.** The person by whom the action is done is put in the ablative with *ab* or *ā* (1318); the thing by which it is done is put in the instrumental ablative (1377); as,

(a.) *nōn numquam latrō ā viātōre occīditur*, *Mil.* 55, *once in a while the robber gets killed by the wayfurer.* *respondit, ā cīve sē spoliārī malle quam ab hoste vēnīre*, *Quintil.* 12, 1, 43, *he said in reply that he would rather be plundered by a Roman than sold by an enemy* (1471). (b.) *ūnius virī prūdentiā Graecia liberāta est*, *N.* 2, 5, 3, *Greece was saved from slavery by the sagacity of a single man, i. e. Themistocles.* Very often, however, the person or thing is not expressed, particularly with impersonals.

**1477.** When the person is represented as a mere instrument, the ablative is used without *ab* (1378); and when collectives, animals, or things without life are personified, the ablative takes *ab* (1318): as,

(a.) *neque vērō minus Platō dēlectātus est Diōne*, *N.* 10, 2, 3, *and Plato on his part was just as much bewitched with Dion.* (b.) *eius orātiō ā multitūdine et ā forō dēvorābātur*, *Br.* 283, *his oratory was swallowed whole by the untutored many and by the bar.*

**1478.** Sometimes the person by whom the action is done is indicated by the dative of the possessor: see 1216. And regularly with the gerund and gerundive construction (2243).

**1479.** Only verbs of transitive use have ordinarily a complete passive. Verbs of intransitive use have only the impersonal forms of the passive (1034): as,

*diū atque ācritēr pugnātum est*, 1, 26, 1, *there was long and sharp fighting.* *tōtis trepidātur castrīs*, 6, 37, 6, *all through the camp there was tumult and affright.* *mihī quidem persuādērī numquam potuit, animōs ēmorī*, *CM.* 80, *for my part, I never could be convinced that the soul becomes extinct at death* (1181). Similarly verbs which have a transitive use may also be used impersonally: as, *diēs noctisque ēstur, bibitur*, *Pl. Most.* 235, *there is eating and drinking all day and all night* (1133).

**1480.** The complementary dative of a verb in the active voice is in poetry very rarely made the subject of a passive verb: as, *invideor*, *H. AP.* 56, *I am envied.* *imperator*, *H. E.* 1, 5, 21, *I charge myself.*

**1481.** The passive had originally a reflexive meaning, which is still to be seen in the passive of many verbs: as,

*exercēbātur plūrimū currendō et lūctandō*, *N.* 15, 2, 4, *he took a great deal of exercise in running and wrestling.* *dēnsōs fertur in hostīs*, *V.* 2, 511, *he tries to charge upon the serried foes.* *quod semper movētur, aeternum est*, *TD.* 1, 53, *anything that is always moving, is eternal.*

**1482.** The present participle of reflexives is sometimes used in a reflexive sense: as, *exercēns*, *exercising oneself, exercising*, *ferēns*, *tearing along*, *vehēns*, *riding*, and *invehēns*, *mounted on*, *pāscēns*, *browsing*, *versāns*, *playing*, *being*, *volvēns*, *rolling*. Also the gerund: as, *iūs vehendī*, *the privilege of riding*.

**1483.** Passive forms of *coepī* and *dēsīnō* are commonly used in the perfect system, when a dependent infinitive is passive: as,

**litteris orātiō est coepta mandārī, Br. 26, oratory began to be put in black and white. veterēs orātiōnēs legī sunt dēsitae, Br. 123, the old speeches ceased to be read.** But the active forms are sometimes used by Cor. nificius, Sallust, and Livy, and regularly by Tacitus. The active forms are used with fierī also, which is not passive (789); but even with fierī, Livy uses the passive forms.

1484. Similar attractions with a passive infinitive occur in *potestur, &c., quītur* and *quitus sum, nequītur, &c.*, rarely, and mostly in old Latin: as, *fōrma in tenebris nōscī nōn quitast, T. Hec. 572, her shape could hardly be distinguished in the dark.*

1485. Some perfect participles have an active meaning: as, *adultus, grown up.* See 907, and also in the dictionary *cautus, cōsultus, concrētus, dēflāgrātus, incōsiderātus, occāsus, nūpta.*

### DEPONENTS.

1486. Many verbs have only passive inflections, but with the meaning of active inflections. Such verbs are called *Deponents*.

1487. In many deponents, a reflexive, passive, or reciprocal action is still clearly to be seen: as,

*nāscor, am born; moror, delay myself, get delayed; ūtor, avail myself; amplectimur, hug each other; fābulāmur, talk together; partimur, share with one another.*

1488. Some verbs have both active and deponent inflections: as, *adsentiō, agree, more commonly adsentior. mereō, earn, and mereor, deserve.* See also in the dictionary *altercor, auguror, comitor, cōnflīctor, fabricor, faeneror, mūneror, ōscitor, palpor, popolor, revertor.* The following have active inflections in the present system and deponent inflections in the perfect system: *audeō, cōnfidō and diffidō, gaudeō, soleō*: see also 801.

1489. In old Latin especially, many verbs which afterwards became fixed as deponents occur with active inflections also: as, *adūlō, arbitrō, aucupō, auspicō, lūctō, lūdificō, morō, partiō, venerō, &c., &c.*

1490. Verbs which are usually deponent are rarely found with a passive meaning: as, *Sūllānās rēs dēfendere crīminor, LAgr. 3, 13, I am charged with defending Sulla's policy.*

1491. When it is desirable to express the passive of a deponent, a synonyme is sometimes used: thus, the passive of *mīror, admire,* may sometimes be represented by *laudor, am praised.* Or some circumlocution: as, *habet venerātiōnem quidquid excellit, DN. 1, 45, anything best in its kind is looked on with respect,* as passive of *veneror. familia in suspiciōnem est vocāta, V. 5, 10, the household was suspected,* as passive of *suspīcor.*

1492. The perfect participle of deponents is sometimes used with a passive meaning. Some of the commonest of these participles are: *adeptus, commentus, complexus, cōfessus, ēmentitus, expertus, meditātus, opīnātus, pactus, partitus, testātus, &c., &c.*



## M O O D.

## THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

## DECLARATIONS.

**1493.** The indicative mood is used in simple, absolute declarations: as,

*arma virumque canō*, V. 1, 1, *arms and the man I sing*. *leve fit quod bene fertur onus*, O. A. 4, 2, 10, *light gets the load that's bravely borne*.

**1494.** The negative used with the indicative is commonly *nōn*, *not* (1443). For other negative expressions, see 1445-1451.

**1495.** Certain verbs and verbal expressions denoting ability, duty, propriety, necessity, and the like, mostly with an infinitive, are regularly put in the indicative, even when the action of the infinitive is not performed.

This applies to declarations, questions, or exclamations: as, (a.) *possum dē ichneumonum ūtilitāte dicere, sed nōlō esse longus*, DN. 1, 101, *I might expatiate on the usefulness of the ichneumon, but I do not care to be long-winded*. *inter ferās satius est aetātem dēgere quam in hāc tantā immanitāte versārī*, RA. 150, *it would be better to pass your days in the midst of howling beasts than to live and move among such brutish men*. (b.) *stultī erat sperāre*, Ph. 2. 23, *it would have been folly to hope*. *quid enim facere poterāmus?* Pis. 13, *for what else could we have done?* (c.) *licuit uxōrem genere summō dūcere*, Pl. MG. 680, *I might have married a wife of high degree*. *nōn potuit pictor rēctius dēscribere eius fōrmam*, Pl. As. 402, *no painter could have hit his likeness more exactly*. (d.) *quantō melius fuerat prōmissum patris nōn esse servātum*, Off. 3, 94, *how much better it would have been, for the father's word not to have been kept*.

**1496.** The principal verbs and verbal expressions thus used are: (a.) *possum*, *licet*, *dēbeō*, *oportet*, *convenit*, *decet*. (b.) *aequum*, *aequius*, *iūstum*, *fās*, *necesse est*; *cōsentāneum*, *satis*, *satius*, *optābile*, *optābilius est*; *ūtilius*, *melius*, *optimum*, *pār*, *rēctum est*; *facile*, *difficile*, *grave*, *infinitum*, *longum*, *magnum est*; *est* with the predicative genitive, or a possessive pronoun (1237). (c.) Similarly, but without an infinitive, forms of *sum* with a gerund, a gerundive, or a future participle.

**1497.** The imperfect of most of the above verbs and verbal expressions often relates to action not performed at the present time: as,

*hīs aliās poteram subnectere causās; sed eundum est*, J. 3, 315, *to these I might add other grounds; but I must go*. The context must determine whether the imperfect relates (a.) to action not performed either in the present as here, or in the past as in 1495, or (b.) to action performed in the past: as, *sollicitāre poterat, audēbat*, C. 3, 16, *he had at once the assurance and the ability to play the tempter's part*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



(a.) valen? Pl. *Tri.* 50, *art well?* habētīn aurum? Pl. *B.* 269, *have you got the gold?* (b.) iussīn in splendōrem dari bullās hās foribus? Pl. *As.* 426, *didn't I give orders to polish up the bosses of the door?* facitne ut dixī? Pl. *Am.* 526, *isn't he acting as I said?* (c.) istō immēnsō spatiō quaerō, Balbe, cūr Pronoea vestra cessāverit. labōremne fugiēbat? *DN.* 1, 22, *I want to know, Balbus, why your people's Providence lay idle all that immeasurable time; it was work she was shirking, was it?* quid, mundum praeter hunc umquamne vīdistī? negābis, *DN.* 1, 96, *tell me, did you ever see any universe except this one? you will say no.*

1505. Sometimes the -ne of an interrogative sentence is transferred to a following relative, chiefly in Plautus and Terence: as, rogās? quīne arrabōnem ā mē accēpistī ob mulierem? Pl. *R.* 860, *how can you ask, when you have got the hansel for the girl from me?* Similarly, ō sērī studiōrum, quīne putētis difficile, H. *S.* 1, 10, 21, *what laggards at your books, to think it hard, i. e. nōnne estis sērī studiōrum, quī putētis difficile?* Compare 1569.

1506. To a question with nōnne, a positive answer is usually expected, seldom a negative: as,

(a.) nōnne meministī? :: meminī vērō, *TD.* 2, 10, *don't you remember? :: oh yes.* Sometimes a second or third question also has nōnne, but oftener nōn: as, nōnne ad tē L. Lentulus, nōn Q. Sanga, nōn L. Torquātus vēnit? *Pis.* 77, *did not Lentulus and Sanga and Torquatus come to see you?* (b.) nōnne cōgitās? *RA.* 80, *do you bear in mind?* nōnne is rare in Plautus, comparatively so in Terence, but very common in classical Latin.

1507. To a question with num a negative answer is generally expected. Less frequently either a positive or a negative answer indifferently: as,

(a.) num negāre audēs? *C.* 1, 8, *do you undertake to deny it?* num, tibi cum faucēs ūrit sitis, aurea quaeris pōcula? H. *S.* 1, 2, 114, *when thirst thy throat consumes, dost call for cups of gold?* Rarely numne: as, quid, deum ipsum numne vīdistī? *DN.* 1, 88, *tell me, did you ever see god in person?* (b.) sed quid ais? num obdormivistī dūdum? Pl. *Am.* 620, *but harkee, wert asleep a while ago?* numquid vīs? Pl. *Tri.* 192, *has any further wish?*

1508. A question with an, less often anne, or if negative, with an nōn, usually challenges or comments emphatically on something previously expressed or implied: as,

an habent quās gallīnae manūs? Pl. *Ps.* 29, *what, what, do hens have hands?* an is also particularly common in argumentative language, in anticipating, criticising, or refuting an opponent: as, quid dīcis? an bellō Siciliam virtūte tuā liberātam? *V.* 1, 5, *what do you say? possibly that it was by your prowess that Sicily was rid of the war?* at vērō Cn. Pompēi voluntātem ā mē aliēnābat ōrātiō mea. an ille quemquam plūs dilēxit? *Ph.* 2, 38, *but it may be urged that my way of speaking estranged Pompey from me. why, was there anybody the man loved more?* In old Latin, an is oftener used in a single than in an alternative question, while in classical Latin it is rather the reverse.

1509. (3.) Yes or No questions are sometimes introduced by ecquis, ecquō, ecquandō, or ēn umquam: as,

heus, ecquis hīc est? Pl. *Am.* 420, *hollo, is e'er a person here?* ecquid animadvertis hōrum silentium? *C.* 1, 20, *do you possibly observe the silence of this audience?* (1144). ō pater, ēn umquam aspiciam tē? Pl. *Tri.* 588, *O father, shall I ever set mine eyes on thee?*

1510. (4.) In Plautus, *satin* or *satin ut*, *really, actually*, sometimes becomes a mere interrogative or exclamatory particle: as, *satin abiit ille?* Pl. *MG.* 481, *has that man really gone his way?*

### POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE ANSWERS.

1511. There are no two current Latin words corresponding exactly with *yes* and *no* in answers.

1512. (1.) A positive answer is expressed by some emphatic word of the question, repeated with such change as the context may require: as,

*an nōn dixī esse hoc futūrum?* :: *dixī*, T. *Andr.* 621, *didn't I say that this would be?* :: *you did.* *hūc abiit Clitiphō* :: *sōlus?* :: *sōlus*, T. *Hau.* 904, *here Clitiphō repaired* :: *alone?* :: *alone.* The repeated word may be emphasized by *sānē*, *vērō*: as, *dāsne manēre animōs post mortem?* :: *dō vērō*, TD. 1, 25, *do you grant that the soul lives on after death?* :: *oh yes.* Often, however, adverbs are used, without the repetition, such as *certē*, *certō*, *etiam*, *factum*, *ita*, *ita enim vērō*, *ita vērō*, *sānē*, *sānē quidem*, *scilicet*, *oh of course*, *vērō*, rarely *vērūm*.

1513. (2.) A negative answer is expressed by a similar repetition, with *nōn* or some other negative added: as,

*estne frāter intus?* :: *nōn est*, T. *Ad.* 569, *is brother in?* :: *he's not.* Or, without repetition, by such words as *nōn*, *nōn ita*, *nōn quidem*, *nōn hercle vērō*, *minimē*, *minimē quidem*, *minimē vērō*, *nihil minus*.

1514. *immō* introduces a sentence rectifying a mistake, implied doubt, or understatement in a question: as, *nūllane habēs vitia?* :: *immō alia, et fortasse minōra*, H. *S.* 1, 3, 20, *have you no faults?* :: *I beg your pardon, other faults, and peradventure lesser ones.* *causa igitur nōn bona est?* *immō optima*, Att. 9, 7, 4, *is n't the cause a good one then? good? yes, more than good, very good.*

### ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS.

1515. The alternative question belongs properly under the head of the compound sentence. But as the interrogative particles employed in the single question are also used in the alternative question, the alternative question is most conveniently considered here.

1516. In old English, the first of two alternative questions is often introduced by the interrogative particle *whether*, and the second by *or*: as, *whether is it casier to say, Thy sins be forgiven thee, or to say Arise?* In modern English, *whether* is not used thus.

1517. The history of the Latin alternative question is just the reverse of the English. In old Latin, the first question is very often put without any interrogative particle. Later, in the classical period, the use of *-ne*, or oftener of *utrum*, etymologically the same as *whether*, is overwhelmingly predominant.

1518. In the simplest form of the alternative sentence, neither question is introduced by an interrogative particle: as,

*quid agō? adeō, maneō?* T. *Ph.* 736, *what shall I do? go up and speak, or wait?* (1531).

1519. Of two alternative questions, the first either has no interrogative particle at all, or is more commonly introduced by *utrum*, *-ne*, or *-n*. The second is introduced by *an*, rarely by *anne*, or if it is negative, by an *nōn*: as,

(a.) *album an ātrum vīnum pōtās?* Pl. *Men.* 915, *do you take light wine or dark?* *Tacitus es an Plīnius?* Plin. *Ep.* 9, 23, 3, *are you Tacitus or Pliny?* *sortiētur an nōn?* PC. 37, *will he draw lots or not?* (b.) *iam id porrō utrum libentēs an invitī dabant?* V. 3, 118, *then furthermore did they offer it voluntarily or did they consent to give it under stress?* *utrum cētera nōmina in cōdicem acceptī et expēnsī digesta habēs an nōn?* RC. 9, *have you all other items methodically posted in your ledger or not?* (c.) *servosne es an liber?* Pl. *Am.* 343, *art bond or free?* *esne tū an nōn es ab illō militī Macedoniō?* Pl. *I's.* 616, *art thou or art thou not the Macedonian captain's man?* *videōn Clīniam an nōn?* T. *Hau.* 405, *do I see Clinia or not?*

1520. *necne* for an *nōn* is rare: as, *sēmina praetereā linquontur necne animā corpore in exanimō?* Lucr. 3, 713, *are seeds moreover left or not of soul within the lifeless frame?* Twice in Cicero: as, *sunt haec tua verba necne?* TD. 3, 41, *are these your words or not?* But *necne* is common in indirect questions.

1521. Instead of a single second question with *an*, several questions may be used if the thought requires it, each introduced by *an*.

1522. Sometimes an introductory *utrum* precedes two alternative questions with *-ne* and *an*: as, *utrum tū māsne an fēmina's?* Pl. *R.* 104, *which is it, art thou man or maid?* This construction has its origin in questions in which *utrum* is used as a live pronoun: as, *utrum māvis? statimne nōs vēla facere an paululum rēmigāre?* TD. 4, 9, *which would you rather do, have us make sail at once, or row just a little bit?* In Horace and late prose, *utrumne . . . an* is found a few times.

1523. Sometimes a second alternative question is not put at all: as, *utrum hōc bellum nōn est?* Ph. 8, 7, in old English, *whether is not this war?*

1524. Two or more separate questions asked with *-ne . . . -ne*, or with *num . . . num*, must not be mistaken for alternative questions: as, *num Homērum, num Hēsiodum coēgit obmūtēscere senectūs?* CM. 23, *did length of days compel either Homer or Hesiod to hush his voice?* (1692).

1525. An alternative question is answered by repeating one member or some part of it, with such changes as the context may require.

## PRONOUN QUESTIONS.

1526. Pronoun questions or exclamations are introduced by interrogative pronouns, or words of pronoun origin.

Such words are: (a.) *quis quī, quoius, uter, quālis, quantus, quotus*: as, *quid ridēs?* H. S. 2, 5, 3, *why dost thou laugh?* (1144). *uter est insānior hōrum?* H. S. 2, 3, 102, *which of these is the greater crank?* *hōra quota est?* H. S. 2, 6, 44, *what's o'clock?* (b.) Or *unde, ubī, quō, quōr* or *cūr, quī* ablative, *how, quīn, why not, quam, how, quandō, quotiēns*: as, *unde venīs et quō tendis?* H. S. 1, 9, 62, *whence dost thou come, and whither art thou bound?* *deus fallī quī potuit?* DN. 3, 76, *how could a god have been taken in?* (1495). *quam bellum erat cōfiterī nescīre,* DN. 1, 84, *how pretty it would have been to own up that you did not know* (1495).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1533. A question is sometimes united with a participle, or an ablative absolute, or thrown into a subordinate sentence: as,

quem fructum petentēs scire cupimus illa quō modō moveantur? *Fin. 3, 37, with what practical end in view do we seek to know how yon bodies in the sky keep in motion?* quā frequentiā prōsequente crēditis nōs illinc profectōs? *L. 7, 30, 21, by what multitudes do you think we were seen off when we left that town?* 'hominēs' inquit 'ēmisti.' quid utī faceret? *Sest. 84, 'you bought up men' says he; with what purpose?*

### THE INFINITIVE OF INTIMATION.

1534. The infinitive is principally used in subordination, and will be spoken of under that head. One use, however, of the present infinitive in main sentences, as a kind of substitute for a past indicative, requires mention here.

1535. In animated narration, the present infinitive with a subject in the nominative sometimes takes the place of the imperfect or perfect indicative: as,

interim cōtidiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, *1, 16, 1, there was Caesar meantime every day dunning and dunning the Aeduans for the grain.* Diodōrus sordidātus circum hospitēs cursāre, rem omnibus nārrāre, *V. 4, 41, Diodorus kept running round in sackcloth and ashes from friend to friend, telling his tale to everybody.* intereā Catilīna in primā aciē versāri, labōrantibus succurrere, *S. C. 60, 4, Catiline meantime bustling round in the forefront of battle, helping them that were sore bestead.* tum vērō ingentī sonō caelum strepere, et micāre ignēs, metū omnēs torpēre, *L. 21, 58. 5, at this crisis the welkin ringing with a dreadful roar, fires flashing, everybody paralyzed with fear.* This infinitive occurs in almost all writers, for instance, Plautus, Terence, Cicero, Horace, and particularly Sallust, Livy, and Tacitus. Less commonly in Caesar. Usually two or more infinitives are combined, and infinitives are freely mixed with indicatives. The subject is never in the second person.

1536. This infinitive is used to sketch or outline persistent, striking, or portentous action, where description fails; and as it merely intimates the action, without distinct declaration, and without notation of time, number, or person, it is called the *Infinitive of Intimation*. It cannot be adequately represented in English.

1537. The infinitive of intimation is sometimes used without a subject, when emphasis centres in the action alone; as,

ubī turrim procul cōstituī vidērunt, inridēre ex mūrō, *2, 30, 3, when they saw the tower planted some way off, jeer after jeer from the wall.* tum spectāculum horribile in campis patentibus: sequī fugere, occidī capi, *S. I. 101, 11, then a heartrending spectacle in the open fields: chasing and racing, killing and catching.*

1538. Terence and Petronius have it in questions: as, rēx tē ergō in oculis :: scilicet :: gestāre? :: vērō, *T. Eu. 401, your king then always bearing you :: of course, of course :: in eye! :: oh yes.* quī morī timōre nisi ego? *Petr. 62.*

1539. It may be mentioned here, that the infinitive of intimation is sometimes used from Sallust on in relative clauses and with *cum*, *when*. Also by Tacitus in a temporal protasis with *ubi*, *ut*, *dōnec*, or *postquam*, coordinated with a present or imperfect indicative protasis: as,

(a.) *cingēbātur interim milite domus, cum Libō vocāre percussōrem*, *Ta.* 2, 31, *the house meantime was encompassed with soldiers, when Libo called for somebody to kill him* (1869). (b.) *ubi crūdēscere sēditiō et ā conviciis ad tēla trānsībant, inīcī catēnās Flāvianō iubet*, *Ta. H.* 3, 10, *when the riot was waxing hot, and they were proceeding from invectives to open violence, he orders Flavian to be clapped in irons* (1933).

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### DECLARATIONS.

#### I. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE.

##### (A.) WISH.

1540. The subjunctive may be used to express a wish.

Wishes are often introduced by *utinam*, in old and poetical Latin also by *utī*, *ut*, and curses in old Latin by *quī*; these words were originally interrogative, *how*. Sometimes the wish is limited by *modo*, *only*. In negative wishes *nē* is used, either alone, or preceded by *utinam* or *modo*; rarely *nōn*, or the old-fashioned *nec*, *not* (1446).

1541. (1.) The present and perfect represent a wish as practicable; although a hopeless wish may, of course, if the speaker chooses, be represented as practicable: as,

(a.) *tē spectem, suprēma mihi cum vēnerit hōra*, *Tib.* 1, 1, 59, *on thee I'd gaze, when my last hour shall come*. *utinam illum diem videam*, *Att.* 3, 3, *I hope I may see the day*. (b.) *utinam cōnēre*, *Ph.* 2, 101, *I hope you may make the effort*. (c.) *dī vortant bene quod agās*, *T. Hec.* 196, *may gods speed well what'er you undertake*. *quī illum dī omnēs perduint*, *T. Ph.* 123, *him may all gods fordo*. *ō utinam hibernae duplicentur tempora brūmae*, *Prop.* 1, 8, 9, *oh that the winter's time may doubled be*. *utinam reviviscat frāter*, *Gell.* 10, 6, 2, *I hope my brother may rise from his grave*. *nē istūc Iuppiter sirit*, *L.* 28, 28, 11, *now Jupiter forefend*. The perfect is found principally in old Latin.

1542. The present is very common in asseveration: as,

*peream, nisi sollicitus sum*, *Fam.* 15, 19, 4, *may I die, if I am not worried*. *sollicitat, ita vivam, me tua valētūdō*, *Fam.* 16, 20, *your state of health worries me, as I hope to live*. *ita vivam, ut maximōs sūmptūs faciō*, *Att.* 5, 15, 2, *as I hope to be saved, I am making great outlays*. See also 1622.



1543. The perfect subjunctive sometimes refers to past action now completed. as, *utinam abierit malam crucem*, Pl. *Poen.* 799, *I hope he's got him to the bitter cross* (1165). *utinam spem implēverim*, Plin. *Ep.* 1, 10, 3, *I hope I may have fulfilled the expectations.*

1544. (2.) The imperfect represents a wish as hopeless in the present or immediate future, the pluperfect represents it as unfulfilled in the past: as,

(a.) *tēcum lūdere sicut ipsa possem*, Cat. 2, 9, *could I with thee but play, e'en as thy mistress' self*, to Lesbia's sparrow. *utinam ego tertius vō-bis amicus adscriberer*, *TD.* 5, 63, *would that I could be enrolled with you myself, as the third friend*, says tyrant Dionysius to Damon and Phintias. (b.) *utinam mē mortuum prius vīdissēs*, *QFr.* 1, 3, 1, *I wish you had seen me dead first.* (c.) *utinam nē in nemore Pēliō secūribus caesa accēdisset abiēgna ad terram trabēs*, E. in *Cornif.* 2, 34, *had but, in Pelion's grove, by axes felled, ne'er fallen to the earth the beam of fir*, i. e. for the Argo. *utinam ille omnis sēcum cōpiās ēdūxisset*, *C.* 2, 4, *I only wish the man had marched out all his train-bands with him.*

1545. In old or poetical Latin, the imperfect sometimes denotes unfulfilled past action, like the usual pluperfect; as, *utinam in Siciliā perbīterēs*, Pl. *R.* 494, *would thou hadst died in Sicily.* *utinam tē dī prius perderent*, Pl. *Cap.* 537, *I wish the gods had cut thee off before.* See 2075.

1546. In poetry, a wish is sometimes thrown into the form of a conditional protasis with *sī* or *ō sī*: as, *ō sī urnam argentī fōrs quae mihi mōnstret*, H. S. 2, 6, 10, *oh if some chance a pot of money may to me reveal.*

## (B.) EXHORTATION, DIRECTION, STATEMENT OF PROPRIETY.

1547. The subjunctive may be used to express an exhortation, a direction, or a statement of propriety.

The subjunctive of exhortation is sometimes preceded in old Latin by *utī* or *ut*, originally interrogative. In negative exhortations or directions, *nē*, *nēmō*, *nihil*, or *numquam*, &c., is used, rarely *nōn*.

1548. (1.) The present expresses what is to be done or is not to be done in the future: as,

(a.) *hoc quod coepī primum ēnārrem*, T. *Hau.* 273, *first let me tell the story I've begun.* *taceam nunc iam*, Pl. *B.* 1058, *let me now hold my tongue.* *cōsīdāmus hīc in umbrā*, *Leg.* 2, 7, *let us sit down here in the shade.* *nē difficilia optēmus*, *V.* 4, 15, *let us not hanker after impossibilities.* (b.) *HAICE · VTEI · IN · COVENTIONID · EXDEICATIS*, CIL. I, 196, 23, *this you are to proclaim in public assembly.* (c.) *nōmina dēclīnāre et verba in prīmīs puerī sciant*, Quintil. 1, 4, 22, *first and foremost boys are to know how to inflect nouns and verbs.* *utī adserventur magnā dīligentiā*, Pl. *Cap.* 115, *let them be watched with all due care.* *nē quis tamquam parva fastīdiat grammaticēs elementa*, Quintil. 1, 4, 6, *let no man look down on the rudiments of grammar, fancying them insignificant.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

In some of its applications, this subjunctive is often more exactly defined by an expression of doubt or of assurance: as, *fors fuat an* in Plautus, *forsitan* from Terence on (rarely *forsan*, *fors*), *fortasse*, *may be*, *perhaps*; *opīnor*, *haud sciō an*, *I fancy*; *facile*, *easily*, *sine ūllā dubitātiōne*, *unhesitatingly*, &c., &c. The negative used with this subjunctive is *nōn*.

1555. This subjunctive is particularly common in guarded or diffident statements: thus, *velim*, *I could wish*, *nōlim*, *I should not be willing*, *mālim*, *I would rather*, *dīxerim*, *I should say*, are often preferred to a blunter *volō*, *I insist*, *nōlō*, *I won't*, *mālō*, *I prefer*, or *dīcō*, *I say*.

1556. The present denotes action in an indefinite future: as,

(a.) *ego forsitan in grege adnumerer*, *RA.* 89, *as for me, I might perhaps be counted in the common herd.* *mūtuom argentum rogem*, *Pl. Tri.* 758, *money I might borrow.* *haud sciō an rēctē dīcāmus*, *Sest.* 58, *I rather think we may say with propriety.* (b.) The second person singular generally has an imaginary subject (1030): as, *dīcās hīc forsitan*, *J.* 1, 150, *here peradventure thou mayst say*, i. e. anybody may say. *rogēs mē quid sit deus, auctōre ūtar Simōnidē*, *DN.* 1, 60, *you may ask me what god is; I should follow the lead of Simonides.* *migrantīs cernās*, *V.* 4, 401, *thou canst descry them on the move* (1635). Often with some generalizing word, such as *saepe*, *numquam*, *plūrēs*: as, *saepe videās*, *H. S.* 1, 4, 86, *thou oft canst see.* *Fortūnam citius reperiās quam retineās*, *Publil. Syr.* 168, *dame Fortune thou mayst sooner find than bind.* (c.) *nunc aliquis dīcat mihi*, *H. S.* 1, 3, 19, *now somebody may say to me* (more commonly *dīcet aliquis*, *dīcēs*, 1620). *forsitan aliquis dīcat*, *L.* 5, 52, 5, *perhaps somebody may say.* *hoc vōbis incredibile videātur*, *V.* 3, 109, *this may seem incredible to you.*

1557. (1.) The perfect seldom occurs in old Latin. Later, it is rarely used of past time. In this use it resembles the perfect of concession (1553): as,

(a.) *forsitan temere fēcerim*, *RA.* 31, *peradventure I may have acted rashly.* *errāverim fortasse*, *Plin. Ep.* 1, 23, 2, *I may have been mistaken perhaps.* (b.) *concēdō*; *forsitan aliquis aliquandō eius modī quippiam fēcerit*, *V.* 2, 78, *I grant it; perhaps somebody, at some time or other, may have done something of the sort.* *haec ipsa forsitan fuerint nōn necessāria*, *Br.* 52, *even this may perhaps have been superfluous.*

1558. (2.) The perfect is oftenest used with a future meaning, and particularly the first person singular active of verbs meaning *think* or *say*: as,

(a.) *nōn facile dīxerim*, *TD.* 5, 121, *I could not readily say.* *hoc sine ūllā dubitātiōne cōfirmāverim*, *Br.* 25, *this I can assert without any hesitation.* *pāce tuā dīxerim*, *TD.* 5, 12, *by your leave I would say.* The first person plural occurs first in Cornificius, and is rare: as, *hunc deum rīte beātum dīxerimus*, *DN.* 1, 52, *such a god we should be right in pronouncing happy.* (b.) *plānē perfectum Dēmōsthenem facile dīxeris*, *Br.* 35, *you would readily pronounce Demosthenes absolutely perfect* (1030). *tū vērō eum nec nimis valdē umquam nec nimis saepe laudāveris*, *Leg.* 3, 1, *oh no, rest assured you never can praise him too emphatically nor too often.* *conluviem istam nōn nisi metū coērcueris*, *Ta.* 14, 44, *such a motley rabble you can only keep under by terrorism.* (c.) *forsitan quispiam dīxerit*, *Off.* 3, 29, *perhaps somebody may say.*

1559. (1.) The imperfect properly denotes action which might have taken place in the past: as,

(a.) *nōn ego hoc ferrem calidus iuventā cōsule Plancō*, H. 3, 14, 27, *this I should not have brooked in my hot youth, in Plancus' consulate.*

(b.) The second person singular, particularly of verbs meaning *see, make out, think, say*, generally has an imaginary subject (1030): as, *vidērēs*, H. S. 2, 8, 77, *thou mightst have seen.* *cernerēs*, L. 22, 7, 12, *you might have descried.* *nescirēs*, L. 3, 35, 3, *you could not have told.* *tē columen rēi pūblicae dīcerēs intuērī*, Sest. 19, *you would have sworn you were gazing on a pillar of the state.* (c.) *quī vidēret, urbem captam dīceret*, V. 4, 52, *anybody who saw it, would have said it was a captured city.* *dīcī hoc in tē nōn potest, posset in Tarquiniō, cum rēgnō esset expulsus*, TD. 1, 88, *this cannot be said in your case; it might have been said in Tarquin's, when he was driven from the throne.* *numquam faceret*, T. Ph. 121, *he never would have done it.*

1560. (2.) The imperfect often denotes action not performed at the present time; so especially *vellem (nōllem, māllem)*: as,

(a.) *nimis vellem habēre perticam*, Pl. As. 589, *I wish so much I had a stick.* *vellem adesse posset Panaetius; quaererem ex eō*, TD. 1, 81, *I only wish Panaetius could be with us: I should ask him (Panaetius was dead).* *cuperem voltum vidēre tuum*, Att. 4, 16, 7, *I should like to see the expression of your face.* *māllem Cerberum metuerēs*, TD. 1, 12, *I would rather you stood in dread of Cerberus.* *possem idem facere*, TD. 1, 84, *I could do the same.* (b.) *melius sequerēre cupidine captam*, O. 14, 28, *better for thee it were a loving bride to woo.* (c.) *in hāc fortūnā perūtilis eius opera esset*, Att. 9, 17, 2, *in the present pinch his services would be extremely valuable.*

1561. The pluperfect represents action which did not take place in the past: as,

(a.) *vellem quidem licēret: hoc dīxissem*, RA. 138, *I only wish it were allowed; I should have said so and so.* (b.) *dedissēs huic animō pār corpus, fēcisset quod optābat*, Plin. Ep. 1, 12, 8, *you might have given this spirit a body to match; he would have done what he craved to do.* (c.) *urbēs et rēgna celeriter tanta nēquitia dēvorāre potuisset*, Ph. 2, 67, *such colossal prodigality might have been capable of swallowing down cities and kingdoms speedily.* *vicissent inprobōs bonī; quid deinde?* Sest. 43, *the good might have overpowered the bad; what next?*

1562. It may be mentioned here, that the subjunctive of action conceivable often extends to subordinate sentences: see 1731.

## QUESTIONS.

1563. I. The subjunctive is often used to ask what action or whether any action is desired, commanded, proper, or necessary.

In many instances a negative answer or no answer at all is expected. The negative is *nē*, sometimes *nōn*.

(a.) quō mē vertam? *Scaur.* 19, *which way shall I turn?* quid faciam, praescribe :: quiēscās :: nē faciam, inquis, omninō versūs? *H. S.* 2, 1, 5, *lay down the law, what I'm to do :: keep still :: wilt have me write, sayst thou, no verse at all?* quid igitur faciam? nōn eam? *T. Eu.* 46, *what then am I to do? not go?* quid nī meminērim? *DO.* 2, 273, *why should not I remember? or of course I remember.* huic cēdāmus? huius condiciōnēs audiāmus? *Ph.* 13, 16, *shall we bow the knee to him? shall we listen to his terms?* (b.) quid tandem mē facere decuit? quiēscerem et paterer? *L.* 42, 41, 12, *what in the world ought I to have done? keep inactive and stand it?*

1564. Such questions sometimes have the alternative form: as, *Corinthiis bellum indicāmus, an nōn?* *Inv.* 1, 17, *are we to declare war against Corinth, or not?* utrum indicāre mē eī thēnsaurum aequom fuit, an ego alium dominum paterer fieri hīsce aedibus? *Pl. Tri.* 175, *should I have pointed out the hoard to him, or should I have allowed another to become the owner of this house?* here paterer is equivalent to aequom fuit patī (1495).

1565. II. The subjunctive is often used to ask whether action is conceivable: as,

(a.) quis putet celeritātem ingenī *L. Brūtō* dēfuisse? *Br.* 53, *who can suppose that Brutus lacked ready wit?* i. e. nēmō putet (1556), putābit (1620), or putāre potest. sī enim *Zēnōnī* licuit, cūr nōn liceat *Catōnī*? *Fin.* 3, 15, *for if it was allowed Zeno, why should not it be allowed Cato?* (b.) hoc tantum bellum quis umquam arbitrārētur ab ūnō imperātōre cōfici posse? *IP.* 31, *who would ever have dreamed that this stupendous war could be brought to a close by a single commander?* The imperfect sometimes denotes action not performed at the present time (1560): quis enim civis rēgī nōn favēret? *D.* 6, *for what Roman would not feel for the king?* (c.) ego tē vidēre nōluerim? *QFr.* 1, 3, 1, *I have objected to seeing you?*

1566. The subjunctive is often used in interrogative outbursts of surprise, disapprobation, indignation, or captious rejoinder. In such questions a pronoun, ego, tū (ille), is usually expressed. The negative is nōn.

This subjunctive occurs in Plautus and Terence, in Cicero, oftenest the letters, in Horace, Vergil, and Livy. Not in Caesar nor Sallust.

1567. (1.) The question may have no interrogative word, or may have -ne, especially in comedy: as,

(a.) nōn tacēs? :: taceam? *T. Ph.* 987, *you hold your tongue :: I hold my tongue?* nē flē :: egone illum nōn fleam? *Pl. Cap.* 139, *weep not :: what, I not weep for him?* tū pulsēs omne quod obstat? *H. S.* 2, 6, 30, *what, you, sir, punch whatever's in your way?* faveās tū hostī? ille litterās ad tē mittat? *Ph.* 7, 5, *you, sir, sympathize with the enemy? he correspond with you?* sapiēnsne nōn timeat? *Ac.* 2, 135, *a sage not be afraid?* (b.) ego mihi umquam bonōrum praesidium dēfutūrum putārem? *Mil.* 94, *could I have dreamed that I should ever lack the protection of the patriotic?* (c.) 'apud exercitum mihi fueris' inquit 'tot annōs?' *Mur.* 21, 'to think of your having been with the army, bless my soul,' says he, 'so many years.' (d.) mihi cuiusquam salūs tantī fuisset, ut meam neglegerem? *Sull.* 45, *could anybody's safety have been so important in my eyes as to make me disregard my own?*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1572. The imperative is often softened by the addition of *amābō*, *obsecrō*, *quaesō*, *pr̄ithee*, *I beg*, or *sīs*, *sultis*, *sōdēs*, *please* (97). It is sharpened by *age*, *agedum* or *agidum*, *age sīs*, *mark me*, or *ī*, *go*, *come on*, or by *modo*, *only*. The concessive imperative sometimes has *sānē*, *for all me*.

1573. In Plautus and Terence, the enclitic *dum*, *a while*, *a minute*, *just*, is often attached to the imperative: as, *manedum*, Pl. *As.* 585, *wait a minute*. In classical Latin, *dum* is retained with *age* and *agite*: as, *agedum cōnferte cum illius vitā P. Sūllae*, *Sull.* 72, *come now, compare Sulla's life with that man's* (1075).

1574. It may be mentioned here, that the imperative is often used in the protasis of a conditional sentence: as,

*tolle hanc op̄iniōnem, lūctum sustuleris*, *TD.* 1, 30, *do away with this notion, and you will do away with mourning for the dead*. Once only in old Latin, but often in late Latin, with a copulative: as, *perge, ac facile ecfēceris*, Pl. *B.* 695, *start on, and you will do it easily*.

1575. (1.) The third person, and the longer forms of the second person, are used particularly in laws, legal documents, and treaties, and also in impressive general rules and maxims: as,

(a.) *rēgiō imperiō duō suntō*, *Leg.* 3, 8, *there shall be two men vested with the power of kings*. *amicitia rēgi Antiochō cum populō Rōmānō his lēgibus estō*, L. 38, 38, 1, *there shall be amity between king Antiochus and Rome on the following terms*. (b.) *vicinīs bonus estō*, *Cato, RR.* 4, *always be good to your neighbours*. *mōribus vivitō antīquis*, Pl. *Tri.* 295, *live thou in old-time ways*. The longer forms are often called the *Future Imperative*.

1576. (2.) The longer forms of the second person are also sometimes used in the ordinary speech of everyday life: as, *cavētō*, *QFr.* 1, 3, 8, *beware*. In old Latin, often *ēs*, *be thou*, but in classical Latin, oftener *estō* (or *sīs*). Usually *habētō*, meaning *keep*, or *consider*. regularly *scītō*, *scītōte*, *you must know* (846). In verse, the long forms may sometimes be due to the metre: as, *hīc hodiē cēnātō*, Pl. *R.* 1417, *take dinner here today*. *pār prō pari refertō*, T. *Eu.* 445, *pay til for tat*. But also without such necessity: as, *aufertō intrō*, Pl. *Tru.* 914, *take it within*. *quiētus estō, inquam*, T. *Ph.* 713, *be not concerned, I say*.

1577. (3.) It may be mentioned here, that the longer forms are very often used in the apodosis of a complex sentence, particularly with a future or a future perfect protasis: as,

*sī iste ībit, itō*, Pl. *Ps.* 863, *if he shall go, go thou*. *medicō mercēdis quantum poscet, prōmittī iubētō*, *Fam.* 16, 14, 1, *you must order your medical man to be promised all he shall charge in the way of a fee*. *ubī nihil erit quod scribās, id ipsum scribitō*, *Att.* 4, 8 b, 4, *when you don't have anything to write, then write just that*. *cum ego P. Grānium testem prōdūxerō, refellitō, sī poteris*, *V.* 5, 154, *when I put Granius on the witness stand, refute him if you can*.

1578. In such combinations, however, the shorter forms are sometimes found: as, *ubi volēs, accerse*, T. *Andr.* 848, *fetch me when you will*. And conversely the longer forms are also found with a present protasis: as, *ūnum illud vidētō, sī mē amās*, *Fam.* 16, 1, 2, *attend to this one thing, an thou lovest me*.

1579. A command is sometimes expressed by the subjunctive, accompanying *fac*, *facitō*, *fac ut*, *facitō ut*, *cūrā ut*, *cūrātō ut*, *vidē*, *vidē ut*, *volō*, or particularly *velim*: as,

magnum fac animum habeās et spem bonam, *QFr.* 1, 2, 16, *see that you keep up an heroic soul and unabated hope* (1712). fac cōgitēs, *Fam.* 11, 3, 4, *see that you bear in mind.* cūrā ut valeās, *Fam.* 12, 29, 3, *take good care of yourself.* velim existimēs, *Fam.* 12, 29, 2, *I should like to have you consider.* For commands in the subjunctive alone, see 1547; in the future indicative, 1624; in the form of a question, 1531.

1580. A periphrastic perfect passive form is rare: as, iūre caesus estō, Twelve Tables in *Macrob. Sat.* 1, 4, 19, *he shall be regarded as killed with justifying circumstances.* probē factum estō, *L.* 22, 10, 6, *let it be considered justified.* at vōs admonitī nostrīs quoque cāsibus este, *O. Tr.* 4, 8, 51, *but be ye warned by our misfortunes too.*

## PROHIBITION.

1581. (1.) In prohibitions with the second person, the imperative with *nē* is used in old Latin, and with *nēve* as a connective, rarely *neque*: as,

*nē flē*, *Pl. Cap.* 139, *weep not.* *nē saevī tantō opere*, *T. Andr.* 868, *be not thus wroth.* Sometimes in classical poetry also, in imitation of old style: as, *nē saevī, magna sacerdos*, *V.* 6, 544, *rave not, thou priestess grand.* Once in Livy: *nē timēte*, 3, 2, 9, *be not afraid.*

1582. From Ovid on, *nōn* is used a few times for *nē*: as, *nōn cārīs aurēs onerāte lapillīs*, *O. AA.* 3, 129, *load not with precious stones your ears.*

1583. (2.) Prohibitions in the second person are usually expressed by *nōlī* or *nōlite* with the infinitive, particularly in classical prose: as,

*obiūrgāre nōlī*, *Att.* 3, 11, 2, *don't scold.* *nōlite id velle quod fierī nōn potest*, *Ph.* 7, 25, *don't yearn after the unattainable.*

1584. In poetry, equivalents for *nōlī* are sometimes used with the infinitive, such as *fuge*, *parce* or *comperce*, *conpesce*, *mitte* or *omitte*, *absiste*: as, *quid sit futūrum crās, fuge quaerere*, *H.* 1, 9, 13, *what fate the morrow brings, forbear to ask.* Livy has once *parce*, 34, 32, 20.

1585. (3.) A prohibition in the second person is often expressed by the subjunctive accompanying *cavē*, *fac nē*, *vidē nē*, *vidētō nē*, *cūrā nē*, *cūrātō nē*, or *nōlim*, and in old Latin *cavē nē*: as,

*cavē festinēs*, *Fam.* 16, 12, 6, *don't be in a hurry.* *cavētō nē suscēnseās*, *Pl. As.* 372, *see that thou beest not wroth.* *hoc nōlim mē iocārī putēs*, *Fam.* 9, 15, 4, *I should hate to have you think I am saying this in fun.* For prohibitions in the second person with *nē* and the present or perfect subjunctive, see 1551. For the subjunctive coordinated with *cavē*, see 1711.

1586. In law language, prohibitions are expressed by the third person of the imperative with *nē*, and with *nēve* as a connective: as,

*hominem mortuom in urbe nē sepelitō nēve ūritō*, Twelve Tables in *Leg.* 2, 58, *he shall not bury nor yet shall he burn a dead man in town.* *mulierēs genās nē rāduntō nēve lessum fūneris ergō habentō*, Twelve Tables in *Leg.* 2, 59, *women shall not tear their cheeks nor shall they keen in lamentation for the dead* (1257). Likewise with *nēmō*: as, *nēminī pārentō*, Twelve Tables in *Leg.* 3, 8, *they shall not be subject to anybody.* See also 1548.



TENSE.

---

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

THE PRESENT TENSE.

1587. The present indicative represents action as going on at the time of speaking or writing: as,

scribō, *I write, or I am writing.* nunc primum audiō, T. Andr. 936, *for the first time I hear.* notat ad caedem unum quemque nostrum, C. 1, 2, *he is marking us out for death, each and all.* domus aedificatur, Att. 4, 2, 7, *the house is building.*

1588. The present is used to denote action customary or repeated at any time, or a general truth: as,

agri culturae non student, 6, 22, 1, *they do not apply themselves to farming.* viri in uxores vitae necisque habent potestatem, 6, 19, 3, *the married men have power of life and death over their wives.* probitas laudatur et alget, J. 1, 74, *uprightness gets extolled, and left out in the cold.* dum vitant stulti vitia, in contraria currunt, H. S. 1, 2, 24, *while fools essay a vice to shun, into its opposite they run.* mors sola fatetur quantula sint hominum corpuscula, J. 10, 172, *death is the only thing that tells what pygmy things men's bodies be.* stultorum plena sunt omnia, Fam. 9, 22, 4, *the world is full of fools.* risu inepto res ineptior nullast, Cat. 39, 16, *there's nothing sillier than a silly laugh.*

1589. The present, when accompanied by some expression of duration of time, is often used to denote action which has been going on some time and is still going on.

This present is translated by the English perfect: as, Lilybaei multos iam annos habitat, V. 4, 38, *he has lived at Lilybaeum this many a year.* iam dudum ausculto, H. S. 2, 7, 1, *I have been listening for an age.* satis diu hoc iam saxum vorsō, T. Eu. 1085, *I've trundled at this boulder long enough as 'tis.* nimium diu te castra desiderant, C. 1, 10, *the camp has felt your absence altogether too long.* iam diu ignoro quid agas, Fam. 7, 9, 1, *I have not known this long time how you are getting on.* This use extends to the subjunctive and to nouns of the verb also. But if the action is conceived as completed, the perfect is used: as, sero resistimus ei, quem per annos decem aluimus, Att. 7, 5, 5, *it is too late to oppose a man whom we have been supporting ten long years.*

1590. The present is often used to represent past action as going on now. This is called the *Present of Vivid Narration*: as,

transfigitur scutum Pulioni et verutum in balteo defigitur. avertit hic casus vaginam, ineditumque hostes circumstant, 5, 44, 7, *Pulio has his shield run through, and a javelin sticks fast in his sword belt. This mischance puts his scabbard out of reach, and the enemy encompass him in this hampered condition.* This present often stands side by side with a past tense. It is common in subordinate sentences also.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1597. The imperfect, when accompanied by some expression of duration of time, is used to denote action which had been going on for some time, and was still going on.

This imperfect, which is translated by the English pluperfect, is analogous to the present in 1589: as, *pater grandis nātū iam diū lectō tenēbātur*, *V. 5, 16, his aged father had long been bedridden.* *hōram amplius iam permultī hominēs mōliēbantur*, *V. 4, 95, something over an hour a good many men had been prizing away.* But if the action is conceived as completed at a past time, the pluperfect is used: as, *diem iam quīntum cibō caruerat*, *6, 38, 1, four whole days he had gone without eating.*

1598. In a few examples, the imperfect is used to denote action suddenly recognized, though going on before: as, *ehem, Parmenō, tūn hīc erās?* *T. Hec. 340, why bless me, Parmeno, were you here all this time?*

1599. In descriptions of place or in general truths, where the present might be expected, the imperfect is sometimes used, by assimilation to past action in the context: as, *ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summō*, *7, 69, 1, Alesia proper was situated on the top of a hill.* Often also in subordinate sentences.

1600. For the imperfect indicative of certain verbs relating to action not performed at the present time, see 1497; for the conative use, see 2302.

1601. In letters, the imperfect may denote action at the time of writing, the writer transferring himself to the time of the reader: as,

*haec tibi dictābam post fānum putre Vacūnae*, *H. E. 1, 10, 49, I dictate this for thee behind Vacuna's crumbling shrine.* *nihil habēbam quod scriberem*, *Att. 9, 10, 1, I have nothing to write.* Similarly in the delivery of messages: as, *scribae orābant*, *H. S. 2, 6, 36, the clerks request.* The present, however, is very often used where the imperfect would be applicable. Compare 1616.

## THE PERFECT TENSE.

1602. The Latin perfect indicative represents two English tenses: thus, the preterite, *I wrote*, and the perfect, *I have written*, are both expressed by the perfect *scripsī*. In the first sense, this perfect is called the *Historical Perfect*: in the second sense, it is called the *Perfect Definite*.

## THE HISTORICAL PERFECT.

1603. The historical perfect simply expresses action as having occurred at an indefinite past time, without implying anything as to the duration of the action: as,

*scripsī, I wrote.* *vēnī, vīdī, vīcī, Caesar in Suet. Iul. 37, came, saw, overcame.* *apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix*, *1, 2, 1, among the Helvetians, the man of highest birth by all odds was Orgetorix.* *Diodōrus prope triennium domō caruit*, *V. 4, 41, for nearly three years Diodorus had to keep away from home.* *in Graeciā mūsicī flōruērunt, discēbantque id omnēs*, *TD. 1, 4, in Greece musicians stood high, and everybody studied the art (1596).*

1604. It may be mentioned here, that in subordinate sentences the historical perfect is sometimes loosely used from the writer's point of view, instead of the more exact pluperfect demanded by the context: as, *aliquantum spatii ex eō locō, ubi pugnātum est, aufūgerat*, L. 1, 25, 8, *he had run off some distance from the spot where the fighting had occurred.* See 1925.

### THE PERFECT DEFINITE.

1605. The perfect definite expresses action which is already completed at the present time, and the effects of which are regarded as continuing: as,

*scripsī, I have written. dixerunt, Clu. 73, dixerē, Quintil. 1, 5. 43, they have finished speaking. spectatōrēs, fābula haec est ācta, Pl. Most. 1181, ladies and gentlemen, this play is done.*

1606. In old Latin, *habēō* with the perfect participle is sometimes equivalent to a periphrastic perfect: as, *illa omnia missa habēō*, Pl. *Ps. 602, I've dropped all that, i. e. misi.* But in classical Latin, the participle and a tense of *habēō* are more or less distinct in their force: as, *Caesar aciem instrūctam habuit*, 1, 48, 3, *Caesar kept his line drawn up, not had drawn up.* Compare 2297.

1607. With verbs of inceptive meaning the perfect definite is equivalent to the English present: as,

*cōsistō, take my stand, cōstitī, stand, cōsuēscō, get used, cōsuēvī, am used, nōscō, learn, nōvī, know.* Similarly *meminī, remember, and ōdī, hate.* The pluperfect of such verbs is represented by the English imperfect, and the future perfect by the English future.

1608. The perfect often denotes a present resulting state: as, *vicīne, periī, interiī*, Pl. *Most. 1031, my neighbour, I am dead and gone.* Particularly in the passive voice: as, *Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs*, 1, 1, 1, *Gaul, including everything under the name, is divided into three parts.* Compare 1615.

1609. In the perfect passive, forms of *fui*, &c., are sometimes used to represent a state no longer existing: as, *monumentō statua superimposita fuit, quam dēiectam nūper vidimus ipsī*, L. 38, 56, 3, *on the monument there once stood a statue which I saw not long ago with my own eyes, lying flat on the ground.* Similarly, in the pluperfect, *fueram*, &c.: as, *arma quae fixa in parietibus fuerant, ea sunt humi inventa*, Div. 1, 74, *the arms which had once been fastened on the walls were found on the floor.* Sometimes, however, forms of *fui*, &c., *fueram*, &c., and *fuerō*, &c., are used by Plautus, Cicero, especially in his letters, Nepos, Sallust, and particularly Livy, in passives and deponents, quite in the sense of *sum*, &c.

1610. The perfect of some verbs may imply a negative idea emphatically by understatement, as:

*fuit Ilium*, V. 2, 325, *Ilium has been, i. e. Ilium is no more.* *viximus, florūimus, Fam. 14, 4. 5, we have lived our life, we have had our day.* *filium unicum adulēscētulum habēō. āh, quid dixī? habēre mē? immō habuī*, T. *Hau. 93, I have one only son, a growing boy. Ah me, what did I say, I have? Oh no, have had.*

1611. The perfect may denote an action often done, or never done: as,  
 iam saepe hominēs patriam cārōsque parentēs prōdiderunt, *Lucr.* 3, 85, *time and again have men their land betrayed and parents dear.* nōn  
 aeris acervus et auri dēdūxit corpore febrīs, *H. E.* 1, 2, 47, *no pile of*  
*brass and gold hath fevers from the body drawn.* multī, cum obesse vellent,  
 prōfuērunt et, cum prōdesse, obfuērunt, *DN.* 3, 70, *many a man has done*  
*good, when he meant to do harm, and when he meant to do good, has done harm.*  
 Common from Cicero, Sallust, and Catullus on, especially in poetry.

1612. The perfect is sometimes used as a lively future perfect to express  
 completed future action: as,

quam mox coctumst prandium? *Pl. R.* 342, *how soon is lunch all cooked?*  
 cui sī esse in urbe licēbit, vicimus, *Att.* 14, 20, 3, *if he shall be allowed to*  
*stay in town, the day is ours.* periī, sī mē aspexerit, *Pl. Am.* 320, *I'm gone,*  
*if he lays eyes on me.*

1613. It may be mentioned here, that the perfect is regularly used in a  
 subordinate sentence denoting time anterior to a present of repeated action  
 (1588). In such sentences the present is preferred in English: as,

reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt, 4, 1, 5, *the others,*  
*that stay at home, always support themselves and the above-mentioned also.* sī  
 quī aut privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs in-  
 terdicunt, 6, 13, 6, *if any man or any community does not abide by their decree,*  
*they always debar them from sacrifices.* So also with quom or cum, quo-  
 tiēns, simul atque, ubī. Compare 1618.

### THE PLUPERFECT TENSE.

1614. The pluperfect indicative expresses past ac-  
 tion, completed before another past action expressed or  
 understood: as,

scripseram, *I had written.* Pyrrhī temporibus iam Apollō versūs  
 facere dēsierat, *Div.* 2, 116, *in Pyrrhus's day Apollo had quite given up*  
*making poetry.* mortuus erat Agis rēx. filium reliquerat Leōtychidem,  
*N.* 17, 1, 4, *Agis the king had died; he had left a son Leotyichides.*

1615. The pluperfect often expresses a past resulting state: as,  
 castra oportūnīs locīs erant posita, 7, 69, 7, *the camp was pitched on*  
*favourable ground.* ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs aestus complēverat,  
 et onerāriās tempestās adflīctābat, 4, 29, 2, *thus at one and the same time*  
*the tide had filled the men-of-war, and the gale of wind kept knocking the trans-*  
*ports about.* This use is analogous to that of the perfect in 1608.

1616. In letters, the pluperfect is sometimes used to denote action occur-  
 ring previous to the time of writing, the writer transferring himself to the  
 time of the reader: as,

ūnam adhūc ā tē epistolam accēperam, *Att.* 7, 12, 1, *I have only had*  
*one letter from you thus far.* This use is analogous to that of the imperfect  
 in 1601, and very often, where this pluperfect would be applicable, the perfect  
 is used.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1623. The future is sometimes used in questions of deliberation or appeal: as, *dēdēmus ergō Hannibalem?* L. 21, 10, 11, *are we then to surrender Hannibal?* *hancine ego ad rem nātam memorābō?* Pl. R. 188, *am I to say that I was born for such a fate?* Oftener the present subjunctive (1563), or sometimes the present indicative (1531).

1624. The future is sometimes used, particularly in the second person, to express an exhortation, a direction, a request, a command, or with *nōn* a prohibition: as,

*crās ferrāmenta Teānum tollētis*, H. E. 1, 1, 86, *tomorrow to Teanum you will take your tools.* *bonā veniā mē audiēs*, DN. 1, 59, *you will listen to me with kind indulgence.* *tū intereā nōn cessābis*, Fam. 5, 12, 10, *meanwhile you will not be inactive.* *haec igitur tibi erunt cūrae*, Fam. 3, 9, 4, *you will attend to this then, i. e. haec cūrābis.*

1625. It may be mentioned here, that the future is used in sentences subordinate to a future, an imperative, or a subjunctive implying a future: as,

*profectō nihil accipiam iniūriae, si tū aderis*, Att. 5, 18, 3, *I am sure I shall suffer no harm, if you are with me.* *ut mēd esse volēs, ita erō*, Pl. Ps. 239, *as you will have me be, so will I be.* *ut is quī audiet, cōgitet plūra, quam videat*, DO. 2, 242, *so that the hearer may imagine more than he sees.* But sometimes a present is used (1593).

### THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

1626. The future perfect indicative expresses completed future action: as,

*scripserō*, *I shall have written, or I will have written.* The future perfect is very common in Latin, particularly in protasis with a relative, with *cum*, *ubi*, &c., with *antequam* or *priusquam*, with *ut* (. . . *ita*), *as* (. . . *so*), or with *si*, to express action anterior in time to a future; in English, this future perfect is usually represented by a loose present or perfect: as, *quicquid fēceris, adprobābō*, Fam. 3, 3, 2, *whatever you do, I shall think right.* Examples will be given further on, in speaking of the complex sentence.

1627. It may be mentioned here that the future perfect in protasis and apodosis both denotes two actions occurring at one and the same time; these actions are usually identical: as,

*quī Antōnium opprēsserit, is hoc bellum taeterrimum cōfēcerit*, Fam. 10, 19, 2, *the man that puts down Antony will put an end to this cruel war, i. e. putting down Antony will be ending the war.* *respirārō, si tē viderō*, Att. 2, 24, 5, *I shall take breath again, if I set eyes on you.*

1628. The future perfect sometimes denotes a future resulting state: as, *molestus certē eī fuerō*, T. Andr. 641, *at all events I shall have proved a bane to him.* *meum rēi pūblicaē atque imperātōri officium praestiterō*, 4, 25, 3, *I will have my duty all done to country and commander too.*

1629. The future perfect is sometimes used to express rapidity of future action, often with the implication of assurance, promise, or threat: as,

*abierō*, Pl. Most. 590, *I'll instantly be gone.* *iam hūc revēnerō*, Pl. MG. 863, B. 1066, *I'll be back here again forthwith.* *primus impetus castra cēperit*, L. 25, 38, 17, *the first rush will see the camp carried.*

**1630.** The future perfect often denotes action postponed to a more convenient season, or thrown upon another person.

Often thus with *post*, *aliās*, and particularly *mox*: as, *vōbīs post nār. rāverō*, Pl. *Ps.* 721, *I'll tell you by and by*, i. e. I won't tell you now. *ad frātre[m] mox ierō*, Pl. *Cap.* 194, *I'll to my brother's by and by*, i. e. not yet. *fuerit ista eius dēliberātiō*, L. 1, 23, 8, *that is a question for him to settle*, i. e. not me. Especially *vīderō*: as, *quae fuerit causa, mox vīderō*, *Fin.* 1, 35, *what the reason was, I won't consider now*. *rēctē secusne aliās vīderimus*, *Ac.* 2, 135, *whether right or not, we will consider some other time*, i. e. never. *vōs vīderitis*, L. 1, 58, 10, *that is a question for you*, i. e. not me.

**1631.** The future perfect sometimes denotes action which will have occurred while something else takes place: as,

*nōn erō vōbīs morae: tībīcen vōs intereā hic dēlectāverit*, Pl. *Ps.* 573\*, *I will not keep you long; meantime the piper will have entertained you here*. *tū invitā mulierēs, ego acciverō puerōs*, *Att.* 5, 1, 3, *do you, sir, invite the ladies, and I will meantime have fetched the children*.

**1632.** The future perfect is often not perceptibly different from the future, especially in the first person singular in old Latin: as,

*ego mihi prōvīderō*, Pl. *Most.* 526, *I'll look out for myself*. *erōs in obsidiōne linquet, inimicūm animōs auxerit*, Pl. *As.* 280, *he'll leave his owners in a state of siege, he'll swell the courage of the enemy*. Similarly Cicero, in the protases *sī potuerō, sī voluerō, sī licuerit, sī placuerit*.

## THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE WITH *sum*.

**1633.** The future active participle combined with the tenses of *sum* expresses action impending, resolved on, or destined, at the time indicated by the tense of the verb: as,

*cum hōc equite pugnātūrī estis*, L. 21, 40, 10, *with this kind of cavalry are you going to fight*. *bellum scriptūrus sum, quod populus Rōmānus cum Iugurthā gessit*, *Sall. I.* 5, 1, *I purpose to write the history of the war that the people of Rome carried on with Jugurtha*. *fiet illud, quod futūrum est*, *Div.* 2, 21, *whatever is destined to be, will be*. *Delphōs petiit, ubi columnās, quibus impositūrī statuās rēgis Persei fuerant, suis statuis dēstināvit*, L. 45, 27, 6, *he went to Delphi, where he appropriated for his own statues the pillars on which they had intended to put statues of king Perses*.

## THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**1634.** In simple sentences, the tenses of the subjunctive correspond in general to the same tenses of the indicative. But the present has a future meaning; the imperfect sometimes expresses past, sometimes present action; and the perfect sometimes expresses past action, and sometimes future action.

**1635.** The present subjunctive is sometimes used in reference to past action, like the indicative present of vivid narration (1590): as, *migrantis cernās*, *V.* 4, 401, *you can descry them swarming out* (1556). *comprehendī iussit; quis nōn pertimēscat?* *V.* 5, 14, *he ordered them to be arrested; who would not be thoroughly scared?* (1565). See also 2075.



THE COMPOUND SENTENCE, OR COORDINATION.

1636. Two or more independent simple sentences may be coordinated to form a compound sentence in one of two ways: either without a connective, or with a connective.

What applies to the coordination of sentences, also applies to the coordination of the parts of sentences in abridged sentences (1057).

(A.) WITHOUT A CONNECTIVE.

1637. When simple sentences or parts of sentences are coordinated without any connective, this mode of arrangement is called *Asyndetic Coordination* or *Asyndeton*.

Asyndeton, whether in unabridged or in abridged sentences, is more usual with three or more members than with two. It occurs particularly often in Plautus, Terence, Ennius, and Cato, also in Cicero, especially in his early works and letters.

1638. The sentences in which asyndeton occurs are commonly such as might be connected by words meaning *and* or *but*; less often by words meaning *as*, *for*, &c. Asyndeton is especially common:

1639. (a.) In animated narration of events happening at the same moment, in description, and in climaxes. Also in mention of colleagues in office, and in many set phrases and formulas: as,

vēnī, vidī, vicī, Caesar in Suet. *Iul.* 37, *came, saw, overcame.* nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōscendunt, 5, 39, 3, *our men rush speedily to arms, clamber up the palisade.* huic s. c. intercessit C. Caelius, C. Pānsa, tribūnī pl., *Fam.* 8, 8, 7, *this decree of the senate was objected to by Caelius and Pansa, tribunes of the commons.* hī ferre agere plēbem, L. 3, 37, 7, *there were these people worrying and harrying the commons* (1535).

1640. (b.) In contrasts or antitheses: as,

opiniōnis commenta dēlet diēs, nātūrae iūdicia cōfirmat, *DN.* 2, 5, *the fictions of speculation are swept away by time, but the judgements of nature are confirmed.* Particularly when either member is positive, the other negative: vincere scis, Hannibal, victōriā ūtī nescis, L. 22, 51, 4, *you know how to conquer, Hannibal, but not how to use victory,* says Maharbal after Cannae, 216 B. C.

1641. Asyndeton is very common with two or more imperatives: as, ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna, liberā rem pūblicam metū, in exsilium proficiscere, C. 1, 20, *go forth from Rome, Catiline, relieve the commonwealth from its fear, depart into exile.* Particularly when the first is *age*, *come on*, *mark me*, or *ī*, *go* (1572). But from Horace on, *ī nunc*, *go to now*, is followed by *et* with a second imperative in derisive orders. In old Latin, the imperatives may be joined by *et* or even *atque*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



## 1648-1654.] Sentences: The Coordinate Sentence.

---

1648. *et* has sometimes the meaning of *also* or of *and also*, particularly when there is a change of speakers, or before a pronoun: as, *et hoc sciō*, Plin. *Ep.* 1, 12, 11, *I know that too*. Sometimes also after *vērūm*, *nam*, and *simul*, especially when a pronoun follows. Not in Caesar.

1649. (2.) *-que*, *and*, combines members which belong together and make a whole, though they may be different or opposed to each other; the second member is often a mere appendage: as,

*rogat oratque tē*, RA. 144, *he begs and entreats you, or he earnestly entreats you*. *libertī servolique nōbilitium*, RA. 141, *the freedmen and slaves of the great, or retainers, bond and free*. *omnēs ea, quae bona videntur, sequuntur fugiuntque contrāria*, TD. 4, 12, *everybody runs after what seems good and avoids the opposite*. *-que* is usually put after the first word of the new member. It is particularly common in old or legal style.

1650. The combination *-que . . . -que*, *both . . . and*, is very common in poetry: as, *noctēsque diēsque*, E. in CM. 1, *both night and day*. In prose, it is used by Sallust when the first word is a pronoun: as, *mēque rēgnumque meum*, I. 10, 2, *both myself and my throne*; and by Livy to connect two relative sentences: as, *omnēs quique Rōmae quique in exercitū erant*, 22, 26, 5, *everybody, both people in Rome and people in the army*.

1651. After two members without a connective, a third member is sometimes appended by *-que*: as,

*satis habēbat hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre*, 1, 15, 4, *he was satisfied with keeping the enemy from plundering, foraging, and ravaging*.

1652. (3.) *atque*, or before any consonant except *h* often *ac*, *and*, *and besides*, adds something belonging essentially to what goes before, but more important as a supplement or extension; as,

*sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit*, 4, 25, 4, *he sprang overboard and furthermore proceeded to bear the eagle upon the enemy*. *magna dīs immortālibus habenda est atque huic Iovī Statōrī grātia*, C. 1, 11, *we owe a great debt of gratitude to the gods immortal in general, and to you Jove the Stayer in particular*. *atque . . . atque* occurs for *et . . . et* once in Vergil, and once in Silius Italicus.

1653. *atque* is used in comparisons, after words of likeness and unlikeness: as,

*parī spatiō trānsmisus, atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam*, 5, 13, 2, *the journey across is just as long as it is from Gaul to Britain*. *idemque iussērunt simulācrum Iovis facere maius et contrā, atque antea fuerat, ad orientem convertere*, C. 3, 20, *and they furthermore gave orders to make a statue of Jupiter, a bigger one, and to turn it round to the east, the opposite of the way it originally faced*. Sometimes *et* is thus used after *alius*, *aliter*, *aequē*, *pariter*, &c.: see the dictionary.

1654. With adjectives and adverbs in the comparative degree, *atque* sometimes takes the place of *quam* *than*, when the first member of comparison is negative (1895): as, *amicior mihi nūllus vivit atque is est*, Pl. *Mer.* 897, *I have no greater friend alive than that man is*. So in Plautus, Terence, Lucretius, Catullus, Vergil, rarely in Cicero, and in Horace even when the first member is positive.

1655. A sentence is often introduced by *et*, *-que*, or *atque*, where *but* would be used in English, particularly so when a positive sentence follows a negative one: as,

*Sōcratēs nec patrōnum quaesivit nec iūdicibus supplex fuit adhibuitque liberam contumāciam*, *TD.* 1, 71, *Socrates did not try to find an advocate nor bow the knee to his judges, but he was plain-spoken and defiant.* *nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt*, 4, 35, 2, *the enemy could not stand the dash of our people, but turned their backs.* *hominis nē Graecī quidem ac Mysi potius*, *QFr.* 1, 1, 19, *a creature who is not even a Greek, but more of a Mysian.*

1656. Two sentences, one of which would ordinarily be introduced by a subordinating temporal conjunction, are sometimes, mostly in poetry, coordinated by *et* or *-que*: as, *dixit et in silvam pennīs ablāta refūgit*, *V.* 3, 258, *she spake, and on her pinions sweeping, vanished to the wood*, i. e. *simul atque dixit, refūgit.*

1657. (4.) *neque* or *nec*, *neither, nor, and . . . not, but . . . not*, is used as a negative copulative, sometimes as a negative adversative: as,

*opiniōnibus volgī rapimur in errōrem nec vēra cernimus*, *Leg.* 2, 43, *we are swept into error by the delusions of the world and cannot make out the truth.* *nōn enim temere nec fortuitō creati sumus*, *TD.* 1, 118, *for we were not created at adventure nor by accident.* *subsidiō suis iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum militum impetum sustinēre potuērunt*, 7, 62, 8, *they went to aid their people and carried the hill, but they could not stand the fiery onset of our soldiers.* *neque* or *nec* is often repeated: as, *nec meliōrēs nec beātiōrēs esse possumus*, *RP.* 1, 32, *we can neither be better nor wiser.*

1658. *nec* is rarely used in the sense of *nē . . . quidem*, *not even, not . . . either*: as, *nec nunc*, *H. S.* 2, 3, 262, *not even now*, a free quotation of *nē nunc quidem*, *T. Eu.* 46. *nec . . . quidem*, *and not even*, is used once or twice for the common *ac nē . . . quidem* or *et nē . . . quidem*.

1659. Instead of *neque* or *nec*, *and not*, the copulatives *et*, *atque*, rarely *-que*, followed by a negative, *nōn*, *nēmō*, *nihil*, &c., are sometimes used in Cicero and Livy, less often in old Latin, and rarely in Caesar and Sallust: as, *quid tū fēcissēs, si tē Tarentum et nōn Samarobrīvam mīsissem?* *Fam.* 7, 12, 1, *what would you have done, if I had sent you to Tarentum, and not to Samarobriva?* Particularly thus *et nōn*, or oftener *ac nōn*, in corrections. But ordinarily *neque* or *nec* is preferred to *et nōn*, and *nec quisquam*, &c., to *et nēmō*, &c. (1445).

1660. When *neque* is followed by another negative, the assertion is positive (1452): as,

*nec hoc ille nōn vīdit*, *Fin.* 4, 60, *and the man did not fail to see this.* This positive use begins with Varro. In old Latin two negatives, and particularly *neque . . . haud*, are often used, as in old English, to strengthen the negation (1453).

1661. After a general negative, a word may be emphasized by *nē . . . quidem* or *nōn modo*, or the parts of a compound sentence may be distributed by *neque . . . neque*, without destroying the negation: as,

nihil in locis commūnibus, nē in fānīs quidem, nihil istum neque privātī neque pūblicī tōtā in Siciliā reliquisse, *V. 4, 2, that the defendant has left nothing untouched in public places, no, not even in the temples, nothing either in the way of private or of public property, in all Sicily.* Similarly when a coordinate member is appended with neque: as, nequeō satis mirārī neque conicere, *T. Eu. 547, I can't quite puzzle out or guess.*

---

### COMBINATION OF DIFFERENT COPULATIVES.

1662. Different copulatives are sometimes combined, as follows.

1663. (1.) The affirmative copulatives et and -que are sometimes combined, particularly in abridged sentences: as,

et Epaminōndās praeclārē cecinisse dicitur, Themistoclēsque est habitus indoctor, *TD. 1, 4, Epaminondas in the first place is said to have played beautifully, and Themistocles was not considered exactly an educated man.* This combination is used by Cicero rarely, by Horace in the satires, and rarely by late writers.

1664. The sequence -que . . . et is rare in old Latin, and not used by Caesar, Vergil, or Horace. -que . . . atque is first used by Lucretius, then by Vergil, Ovid, Livy, and Tacitus.

1665. (2.) Affirmative and negative copulatives are sometimes combined. Thus neque or nec combined with et, in the sequences neque . . . et and et . . . neque, which is rare in old Latin, is common in Cicero: as,

nec miror et gaudeō, *Fam. 10, 1, 4, in the first place I am not surprised, and in the second place I feel glad; neque . . . et nōn, however, is rare. patēbat via et certa neque longa, Ph. 11, 4, there lay a road open at once plain and not long. neque . . . -que begins with Cicero, but is rare (1655), neque . . . ac begins with Tacitus.*

1666. Of all the Latin writers, Tacitus aims most at variety by combination of asyndeton and by the use of different copulatives: as, rēgem Rhamsēn Libyā Aethiopiā Mēdisque et Persis et Bactriānō ac Scythā potitum, 2, 60, *that king Rhamses got control of Libya and Aethiopia and the Medes and Persians, and the Bactrian and Scythian.*

### (b.) DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

1667. Disjunctive conjunctions connect the sentences, but disconnect the meaning. They are aut, vel, sive or seu, -ve, and an, or. Of these conjunctions, aut, vel, and sive, are often placed before two or more members of a sentence in the sense of *either . . . or*. And in poetry, -ve . . . -ve sometimes occurs.

1668. (1.) aut, or, sometimes *or even, or at least*, is used between two members which are to be represented as essentially different in meaning, and of which one excludes the other: as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum, quae pars calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit, 1, 12, 6, *thus, no matter whether from chance or through special providence, the part which had done damage to Rome was the first to pay penalty in full.*

1674. (4.) -ve rarely connects main sentences, usually only the less important parts of the sentence, or, oftener still, subordinate sentences: as,

cūr timeam dubitemve locum dēfendere? J. 1, 103, *why should I fear or hesitate to stand my ground?* Appius ad mē bis terve litterās miserat, Att. 6, 1, 2, *Appius had written me two or three times.* With nē it forms nēve or neu, which is used as a continuation of nē or ut: see 1581; 1586; 1947.

1675. (5.) The interrogative particle an sometimes becomes a disjunctive conjunction, or, or possibly, or perhaps: as, Simōnidēs an quis alius, Fin. 2, 104, *Simonides or possibly somebody else.* Common in Cicero, though not so in his speeches, and in Livy, commonest in Tacitus.

### (c.) ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

1676. Adversative conjunctions connect the sentences, but contrast the meaning. They are autem, *on the other hand*, sed, vērūm, cēterum, *but*, vērō, *but, indeed*, at, *but*, tamen, nihilō minus, *nevertheless*.

Of these conjunctions, autem and vērō are put after one word, or sometimes after two closely connected words; tamen is put either at the beginning, or after an emphatic word.

1677. (1.) autem, *again, on the other hand, however*, simply continues the discourse by a statement appended to the preceding, without setting it aside: as,

hōrum principibus pecūniās, civitātī autem imperium tōtius provinciae pollicētur, 7. 64, 8, *to the chieftains of this nation on the one hand he promises moneys, and to the community on the other hand the hegemony of the whole province.* The opposition in a sentence introduced by autem, *again*, is often so weak that a copulative, *and*, might be used: as, ille quī Dīogenem adulēscēns, post autem Panaetium audierat, Fin. 2, 24, *the man who in his early youth had sat at the feet of Diogenes, and afterwards of Panaetius.* autem is oftenest used in philosophical or didactic discourse, less frequently in history, oratory, or poetry.

1678. autem is often used in questions: as, metuō crēdere :: crēdere autem? Pl. Ps. 304, *I am afraid to trust: trust, do you say?*

1679. (2.) sed or set, and vērūm, *but*, are used either in restriction, or, after a negative, in direct opposition: as,

vēra dicō, sed nēquiquam, quoniam nōn vīs crēdere, Pl. Am. 835, *I tell the truth, but all in vain, since you are bent not to believe.* nōn ego eris tibi, sed servos sum, Pl. Cap. 241, *I am not your master, but your slave.*

1680. nōn modo, or nōn solum, *not only, not alone*, is followed by sed etiam or vērūm etiam, *but also*, by sed . . . quoque, *but . . . as well*, or sometimes by sed or vērūm alone: as,

quī nōn solum interfuit hīs rēbus, sed etiam praefuit, *Fam.* 1, 8, 1, *who has not had a hand only in these matters, but complete charge.* quī omnibus negōtiis nōn interfuit solum, sed praefuit, *Fam.* 1, 6, 1. nōn tantum is sometimes used by Livy, and once or twice by Cicero, but not by Caesar or Sallust, for nōn modo. Livy and Tacitus sometimes omit sed or vērūm.

1681. nōn modo has sometimes the meaning of nōn dicam : as, nōn modo ad certam mortem, sed in magnum vitāe discrimen, *Sest.* 45, *I won't say to certain death, but to great risk of life.*

1682. nōn modo or nōn solum, when attended by another negative, may also be followed by sed nē . . . quidem, *but not even*, or sed vix, *but hardly* : as,

nōn modo tibi nōn irāscor, sed nē reprehendō quidem factum tuum, *Sull.* 50, *so far from being angry with you I do not even criticise your action.* When both members have the same predicate, usually placed last, the negation in nē . . . quidem or vix usually applies to the first member also : as, tālis vir nōn modo facere, sed nē cōgitāre quidem quicquam audēbit, quod nōn audeat praedicāre, *Off.* 3, 77, *a man of this kind will not only not venture to do, but not even to conceive anything which he would not venture to trumpet to the world, or will not venture to conceive, much less do.*

1683. (3.) cēterum is sometimes used in the sense of sed, in Terence, Sallust, and Livy. Sometimes also in the sense of sed rē vērā, in Sallust and Tacitus, to contrast reality with pretence.

1684. (4.) vērō, *but, indeed*, introduces an emphatic contrast or a climax : as,

sed sunt haec leviōra, illa vērō gravia atque magna, *Pl.* 86, *however, all this is less important, but the following is weighty and great.* scimus mūsicēn nostris mōribus abesse ā principis persōnā, saltāre vērō etiam in vitiis pōnī, *N.* 15, 1, 2, *we know that, according to our Roman code of ethics, music is not in keeping with the character of an eminent man, and as to dancing, why that is classed among vices.* In Plautus, vērō is only used as an adverb ; its use as an adversative conjunction begins with Terence. In the historians, vērō is often equivalent to autem.

1685. (5.) at, *but*, denotes emphatic lively opposition, an objection, or a contrast : as,

brevis ā nātūrā nōbīs vita data est ; at memoria bene redditae vitae sempiterna, *Ph.* 14, 32, *a short life hath been given by nature unto man ; but the memory of a life laid down in a good cause endureth for ever.* at is often used before a word indicating a person or a place, to shift the scene, especially in history. In law language, ast sometimes occurs, and ast is also sometimes used, generally for the metre, in Vergil, Horace, and late poetry.

1686. (6.) tamen, nihilō minus, *nevertheless.*

accūsātus capitis absolvitur, multātur tamen pecūniā, *N.* 4, 2, 6, *he is accused on a capital charge and acquitted, but is nevertheless fined in a sum of money.* minus dolendum fuit rē nōn perfectā, sed poeniendum certē nihilō minus, *Mil.* 19, *there was less occasion for sorrow because the thing was not done, but certainly none the less for punishment.*



(2.) OTHER WORDS AS CONNECTIVES.

1687. Instead of a conjunction, other words are often used as connectives: as, *pars . . . pars, aliū . . . aliī*; adverbs of order or time: as, *primum, first, or primō, at first . . . deinde . . . tum, &c.*; and particularly adverbs in pairs: as, *modo . . . modo, tum . . . tum*, less frequently *quā . . . quā, simul . . . simul*: as,

*multitūdō pars prōcurrit in viās, pars in vestibulīs stat, pars ex tēctis prōspectant, L. 24, 21, 8, part of the throng runs out into the streets, others stand in the fore-courts, others gaze from the house-tops. prōferēbant aliī purpuram, tūs aliī, gemmās aliī, V. 5, 146, they produced some of them purple, others frankincense, others precious stones. primō pecūniae, deinde imperī cupidō crēvit, S. C. 10, 3, at first a love of money waxed strong, then of power. tum hoc mihi probābilius, tum illud vidētur, Ac. 2, 134, one minute this seems to me more likely, and another minute that.*

1688. Simple sentences may also be coordinated by words denoting inference or cause, such as *ergō, igitur, itaque, therefore*; *nam, namque, enim, for, etenim, for you see*: as,

*adfectus animi in bonō virō laudābilis, et vīta igitur laudābilis boni viri, et honesta ergō, quoniam laudābilis, TD. 5, 47, the disposition in a good man is praiseworthy, and the life therefore of a good man is praiseworthy, and virtuous accordingly, seeing it is praiseworthy.* Of these words, *nam, namque, and itaque* are usually put first in the sentence; *enim* and *igitur* usually after one word, rarely after two. But in Plautus regularly, and generally in Terence, *enim* has the meaning of *indeed, verily, truly, depend upon it*, and may stand at the beginning.

1689. In Plautus, the combination *ergō igitur* occurs, and in Terence and Livy, *itaque ergō*: as, *itaque ergō cōsulibus diēs dicta est, L. 3, 31, 5, accordingly then a day was set for the trial of the consuls.*

1690. The interrogative *quippe, why?* losing its interrogative meaning, is also used as a coordinating word, *why, or for*: as, *hōc genus omne maestum ac sollicitum est cantōris morte Tigellī: quippe benignus erat, H. S. 1, 2, 2, such worthies all are sad, are woebegone over Tigellius the minstrel's death; why he was generosity itself.*

1691. Simple sentences may also be coordinated by pronominal words, such as *hinc, inde, hence, eō, ideō, idcirco, propterea, so, on that account, &c.*: as,

*nocte perveniēbant; eō custodiās hostium fallēbant, L. 23, 19, 10, they got there in the night; in that way they eluded the enemy's pickets.* But *eō* and *ideō* are not used thus by Cicero, Caesar, or Sallust, or *idcirco* and *propterea* by Cicero or Caesar.

1692. In animated rhetorical discourse any word repeated with emphasis may serve as a copulative; this is called *Anaphora*: as,

*miles in forum, miles in cūriam comitābātur, Ta. 1, 7, soldiers went with him to the forum, soldiers to the senate chamber. ērepti estis ex interitū, ērepti sine sanguine, sine exercitū, sine dīmiciatione, C. 3, 23, you are rescued from death, rescued without bloodshed, without an army, without a struggle.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1699. (4.) The coordinated member may represent a subordinate temporal member: as,

vēnit hiemps, teritur Sicyōnia bāca trapētis, V. G. 2, 519, *has winter come, in mills is Sicyon's olive ground* (1860). vix prōram attigerat, rumpit Sātūrnia fūnem, V. 12, 650, *scarce had he touched the prow, Saturnia snaps the rope, i. e. cum rumpit* (1869). lūcēbat iam ferē, prōcēdit in medium, V. 5, 94, *it was just about light, when he presents himself before them*. fuit ōrnandus in Māniliā lēge Pompēius; temperātā ōrātiōne ōrnandī cōpiam persecūtī sumus, O. 102, *when I had to glorify Pompey in the matter of the Manilius law, I went through the ample material for glorification in moderate language*.

1700. (5.) The coordinated member may be equivalent to a member with ut, expressing result (1965): as,

iam faxō sciēs, T. Eu. 663, *I'll let you know at once, i. e. sciās* (1712) or ut sciās (1965). iam faxō hīc erunt, Pl. B. 715, *I'll warrant they shall soon be here*. adeō rēs rediit, adulēscentulus victus est, T. Hau. 113, *things came to such a pass the youngster was put down*. cētera dē genere hōc, adeō sunt multa, loquācem dēlassāre valent Fabium, H. S. 1, 1, 11, *the other cases of the kind, so plentiful are they, might tire the gabbling Fabius out*. ita haec ūmōre tigna pūtent, nōn videor mihi sarcire posse aedīs meās, Pl. Most. 146, *so sopping rotten are these joists, I don't think I can patch my house*. ita avidō ingeniō fuit, numquam indicāre id filiō voluit suō, Pl. Aul. prol. 9, *so niggardly was he, he'd never point it out to his own son*. tanta incepta rēs est, haud somniculōsē hoc agundumst, Pl. Cap. 227, *so big a job have we begun, not drowsily must this be done*.

1701. (6.) The coordinated member may be equivalent to a conditional protasis: as,

(a.) filiam quis habet, pecūniā opus est, Par. 44, *a man has a daughter, he needs money*. tristis es, indignor, O. Tr. 4, 3, 33, *if you are sad, I feel provoked*. (b.) sī iste ībit, itō; stābit, astātō simul, Pl. Ps. 863, *if he shall move, move thou; but shall he stand, stand by his side*. in caelum, iusseris, ībit, J. 3, 78, *say but the word, he'll mount the sky*. (c.) subdūc cibum ūnum diem āthlētae, Iovem Olympium inplōrābit, TD. 2, 40, *cut off an athlete from his food just a day, he will pray to Jupiter aloft in Olympus* (1574). (d.) Zēnōnem rogēs, respondeat totidem verbis, Fin. 4, 69, *you may ask Zeno, he would answer in just as many words* (1556). (e.) tū quoque magnam partem opere in tantō, sineret dolor, Icare, habērēs, V. 6, 31, *thou too a goodly space in work so vast, had grief allowed, O Icarus, hadst filled* (1559). at darēs hanc vim M. Crassō, in forō saltāret, Off. 3, 75, *but had you given this chance to Crassus, he would have capered in the market place* (1559). nam absque tē esset, hodiē numquam ad sōlem occāsum viverem, Pl. Men. 1022, *for were it not for you, I ne'er should live this blessed day till set of sun* (1560, 2110). (f.) ūnā fuissēmus, cōnsilium certē nōn dēfuisset, Att. 9, 6, 6, *had we been together, we certainly should not have lacked a programme* (1561).

1702. (7.) The coordinated member may be equivalent to a concession: as,

id fortasse nōn perfēcimus, cōnātī quidem sumus, O. 210; *though we have perhaps not attained unto this, yet we have attempted it*. ergō illī intellegunt quid Epicūrus dīcat, ego nōn intellegō? Fin. 2, 13, *do those gentlemen then understand what Epicurus means, and I not?*

## The Intermediate Coordinate Sentence. [1703-1707.]

---

1703. (8.) The coordinated member may denote efficient cause or reason: as,

peregrinus ego sum, Sauream nōn nōvī, Pl. *As.* 464, *I am a stranger, and I don't know Saurea.* mulier es, audācter iūrās, Pl. *Am.* 836, *because you are a woman, you are bold to swear.* tacent, satis laudant, T. *Eu.* 476, *their silence is sufficient praise.*

1704. (9.) The coordinated member may represent the protasis of a comparative sentence with ut (1937): as,

ita mē dī ament, honestust, T. *Eu.* 474, *so help me heaven, he is a proper man.* sollicitat, ita vivam, mē tua, mī Tirō, valētūdō, *Fin.* 16, 20, *your health, dear Tiro, keeps me fidgety, as I hope to live.*

1705. II. The subordinate idea is often indicated by the subjunctive of desire coordinated with another verb, usually with one which has a different subject.

Thus, the combination amēs: oportet, *you should love; it is right* (1547), in which the two verbs are used separately, blends into one whole, amēs oportet, *Fin.* 2, 35, *it is right you should love.* The verb with which the subjunctive is coordinated specifies more exactly the general idea of desire contained in the subjunctive itself. The tense of the coordinate subjunctive is regulated by that of the other verb.

1706. The negative employed with coordinated subjunctives is the adverb nē, *not.*

Thus, the combination vidē: nē mē lūdās, *see to it; don't you fool me* (1547), in which the two verbs are used separately, blends into one whole, vidē nē mē lūdās, Pl. *Cur.* 325, *see to it you don't fool me.* Similarly, metuō: nē peccet, *I am afraid; let her not slip up* (1548), becomes metuō nē peccet, Pl. *Per.* 624, *I am afraid she may slip up.* From its frequent use in sentences of subordinate meaning, nē came at an early period to be regarded as a subordinating conjunction also, *lest, that . . . not*, as well as an adverb, and took the place of the less usual ut nē. Hence members with nē are more conveniently treated under the head of subordination (1947).

1707. (1.) The subjunctive is often coordinated with verbs of wishing. Such are volō, nōlō, rarely mālō, optō, placet, &c.: as,

animum advortās volō, Pl. *Cap.* 388, *I wish you would pay heed* (1548). quid vīs faciam? T. *Hau.* 846, *what wilt thou I should do?* (1563). vin conmutēmus? tuam ego dūcam et tū meam? Pl. *Tri.* 59, *would you like to swap? I take your wife, and you take mine?* (1563). mālō tē sapiēns hostis metuat, quam stultī civēs laudent, L. 22, 39, 20, *I would rather a wise enemy should fear you, than stupid fellow-citizens admire you* (1548). Coordination is the rule with velim, vellem, &c., used in the sense of utinam (1540). as, dē Menedēmō vellem vērūm fuisset, dē rēginā velim vērūm sit, *Att.* 15, 4, 4, *about Menedemus I could wish it had been true, about the queen I hope it may be true.* tellūs optem prius ima dehīscat, V. 4, 24, *I would the earth to deepest depths might sooner yawn.* L. Domitius dixit placēre sibi sententiās dē singulis ferrent, *Caes. C.* 3, 83, 3, *Domitius said his view was they should vote on the men separately.*

1708. (2.) The subjunctive is often coordinated with verbs of request, entreaty, encouragement, exhortation, charge, direction, command. Such are *precor*, *rogō*, *ōrō*, *petō*, *hortor*, *postulō*, *moneō*, *cēseō*; *mandō*, *imperō*, *praecipio*, *dēcernō*; and chiefly in old Latin, *iubeō*: as,

(a.) *reddās incolumem precor*, H. 1, 3, 7, *deliver him up safe I pray*. *rogat finem ōrandī faciat*, 1, 20, 5, *he requests him to make an end of entreaty*. *ā tē id quod suēstī petō, mē absentem dēfendās*, *Fam.* 15, 8, *I ask you to do as you always do, stand up for me when I am away*. *nōn hortor solum sed etiam rogō atque ōrō, tē colligās virumque praebeās*, *Fam.* 5, 18, 1, *I not only exhort you, but more than that I beg and entreat you, pull yourself together and quit you like a man*. *postulō etiam atque etiam cōsiderēs quō prōgrediāre*, L. 3, 45, 10, *I charge you think again and again what you are coming to*. *tē moneō videās, quid agās. magnō opere cēseō, dēsistās*, *V.* 5, 174, *I advise you to consider what you are doing. I earnestly recommend you to stop*. *hunc admonet iter cautē faciat*, 5, 49, 3, *he warns him he must pursue his march with care*. (b.) *huic mandat Rēmōs adeat*, 3, 11, 2, *he directs him to go to the Remans*. *praecipit ūnum omnēs peterent Indutiomarum*, 5, 58, 5, *he says they must all concentrate their attack on Indutiomarus*. *huic imperat quās possit adeat civitatēs*, 4, 21, 8, *he orders him to visit such communities as he can*. *senātus dēcrēvit darent operam cōsulēs nē quid rēs pūblica dētrimentī caperet*, S. C. 29, 2, *the senate decreed the consuls must see to it that the commonwealth received no harm*. *iube maneat*, *T. Hau.* 737, *tell her she must stay*. *militēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium*, 3, 5, 3, *he tells the soldiers they must stop fighting a little while*. *abī, nūntiā patribus urbem Rōmānam mūniant*, L. 22, 49, 10, *go tell the fathers they must fortify Rome town*. *dixī equidem in carcerem irēs*, *Pl. St.* 624, *I'm sure I told you you must go to jail*. *scribit Labiēnō cum legiōne veniat*, 5, 46, 3, *he writes to Labienus he must come with a legion*. *lēgatiōnem mittunt si velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibī remittat*, 3, 8, 5, *they send an embassy, if he wishes to get his own men back, he must send back the hostages to them*.

1709. (3.) The subjunctive is often coordinated with expressions of propriety or necessity. Such are *oportet*, *optimum est*, *opus est*, *decet*, *neesse est*.

*mē ipsum amēs oportet, nōn mea*, *Fin.* 2, 85, *it is myself you should love, not my possessions*. *quoniam habēs istum equom, aut ēmeris oportet, aut hērēditāte possideās, aut surripueris necesse est*, *Inv.* 1, 84, *since you are in possession of that horse, you must either have bought him or inherited him, or else you must necessarily have stolen him*. *sed taceam optimumst*, *Pl. E.* 60, *but I'd best hold my tongue*. *nihil opust resciscat*, *Pl. Mer.* 1004, *she need n't find it out at all*. *condemnētur necesse est*, *RA.* 111, *be condemned he needs must*.

1710. (4.) The subjunctive is sometimes coordinated with verbs of permission or concession. Such are *permittō* in Sallust and Livy, *concēdō*, also *sinō*, mostly in the imperative, chiefly in old Latin and poetry, and the impersonal *licet* (used thus often in Cicero, rarely before or after): as,

*supplēmentum scriberent cōsulēs, permissum*, L. 27, 22, 11, *leave was given that the consuls might fill up the army*. *sine sciam*, L. 2, 40, 5, *let me know*. *sine modo adveniat senex*, *Pl. Most.* 11, *let but the old man come*. *fremant omnēs licet, dicam quod sentiō*, *DO.* 1, 195, *though everybody may growl, I will say what I think*. See 1904.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1716. Subordinate sentences which express time or place, are called *Temporal* or *Local* sentences; comparison or manner, *Comparative* or *Modal* sentences; condition, cause, or concession, *Conditional*, *Causal*, or *Concessive* sentences; purpose, *Final* sentences; result, *Consecutive* sentences.

1717. In a main sentence, the indicative present, future, and future perfect, and the imperative, are called *Primary Tenses*; the indicative imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect, and the infinitive of intimation, are called *Secondary Tenses*. The perfect definite and the present of vivid narration are sometimes regarded as primary tenses, oftener as secondary tenses.

1718. Verbs which have an implication of futurity, such as those meaning *can*, *ought*, *must*, &c., with an infinitive, also subjunctives of wish (1540) or of exhortation (1547), may be called *Virtual Futures*.

1719. Sometimes the subjunctive serves as a main sentence: see 1762; sometimes a noun of the verb: see 1766.

---

## MOOD OF THE SUBORDINATE SENTENCE.

1720. The indicative and the subjunctive are both used in subordinate sentences, as will be shown in the treatment of the several words of subordination. Some general uses may be mentioned collectively here.

---

### THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

1721. The indicative is ordinarily used in sentences introduced by a relative pronoun, or by a causal conjunctive word other than *cum*.

*pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī, 1, 7, 2, he orders the bridge which was near Geneva torn up. concēdō, quia necesse est, RA. 145, I give up, because I have to.* In sentences of this class, however, the subjunctive is often required, particularly in indirect discourse (1722), or in cases of attraction (1728).

---

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE AND OF ATTRACTION.

1722. The subjunctive is used in relative, causal, temporal, and conditional sentences in indirect discourse, and in cases of attraction.

## Mood of the Subordinate Sentence. [1723-1728.]

1723. A direct quotation or question gives the words of the original speaker without alteration. When the original words of a quotation or question are changed to conform to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted, it is called *Indirect Discourse*.

1724. In the complete form of indirect discourse, the subjunctive is subordinate to an infinitive or an accusative with the infinitive, dependent on a verb of saying or thinking (2175): as,

negat Epicūrus iūcundē posse vivī, nisi cum virtūte vivātur, *TD.* 3, 49, *Epicurus avers there is no living happily, without living virtuously*; directly, iūcundē vivī nōn potest, nisi cum virtūte vivitur. Sōcratēs dicere solēbat, omnēs in eō quod scirent, satis esse ēloquentēs, *DO.* 1, 63, *Socrates used to maintain that all men were eloquent enough in a matter they knew*; directly, omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt ēloquentēs.

1725. The idea of saying or thinking is often not formally expressed in the main sentence, and the indirect discourse is intimated by the subordinate subjunctive only: as,

noctū ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs, quod somnum capere nōn posset, *TD.* 4, 44, *Themistocles used to walk the streets nights, 'because he could not sleep,'* given as Themistocles's reason; the writer's would be poterat. Paetus omnēs librōs, quōs frāter suus reliquisset, mihi dōnāvit, *Att.* 2, 1, 12, *Paetus made me a present of all the books 'that his brother had left.'* dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, in ancoris expectāvit, 4, 23, 4, *he waited at anchor till the rest of the vessels should gather there* (2005). pervēnit priusquam Pompēius sentire posset, *Caes. C.* 3, 67, 4, *he got there before Pompey should be able to learn of his coming* (1919). Xerxēs praemium prōposuit, quī invēnisset novam voluptātem, *TD.* 5, 20, *Xerxes offered a reward to anybody who should devise a new form of entertainment* (2110).

1726. A speaker or writer may quote his own thoughts in the indirect form, like another person's: as, haec tibi dictābam post fānum putre Vacūnae, exceptō quod nōn simul essēs, cētera laetus, *H. E.* 1, 10, 49, *I write thee this behind Vacuna's mouldering pile, in all else well, except that thou'rt not here the while* (1601).

1727. Instead of an intimation of indirect discourse by a mere subjunctive, a verb of thinking or saying is sometimes introduced by quī, or especially quod, sometimes by cum, and put illogically itself in the subjunctive: as, litterās, quās mē sibi mīsisse diceret, recitāvit, *Ph.* 2, 7, *he read off a letter, which he said I sent him, i. e. quās mīsissem.* impetrāre nōn potui, quod religione sē impediri dicerent, *Sulpicius in Fam.* 4, 12, 3, *I could not get leave, because they said they were hampered by religious scruple, i. e. quod impedirentur.* cum diceret, *DN.* 3, 83, *saying as he did.* This construction is common in Cicero, somewhat so in Caesar, rare in Sallust.

1728. The subjunctive is used in sentences expressing an essential part of the thought, which are subordinate to another subjunctive, or to an infinitive. This is called the *Subjunctive of Attraction, or of Assimilation*: as,



## 1729-1731.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

---

**vereor nē, dum minuere velim labōrem, augeam, Leg. 1, 12, I am afraid I may make the work harder, while I am aiming to make it less. sī sōlōs eōs dīcerēs miserōs, quibus moriendum esset, nēminem eōrum, quī vīverēt exciperēs, TD. 1, 9, if you should pronounce only such people unhappy as had to die, you would not except one of those who were living. mōs est Syrācūsīs, ut sī quā dē rē ad senātum referātur, dīcat sententiam quī velit, V. 4, 142, it is the custom at Syracuse, that if any question is discussed in the senate, anybody who pleases may express his opinion. sapiēns nōn dubitat, sī ita melius sit, migrāre dē vitā, Fin. 1, 62, the sage does not hesitate, if this be the better course, to withdraw from life. mōs est Athēnīs laudārī in cōtiōne eōs, quī sint in proeliīs interfectī, O 151, it is the custom in Athens to eulogize in public assembly such as have fallen in action.**

**1729.** The indicative is kept in subordinate statements added or vouched for by the person reporting, and also in circumlocutions equivalent to a substantive: as,

**nūntiātum est Ariovistum ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, 1, 38, 1, it was reported that Ariovistus was pressing on to seize Vesontio, which is the most considerable town of the Sequans. prūdētissima civitās Athēniēnsium, dum ea rērum potita est, fuisse trāditur, RA. 70, Athens is said to have been passing wise, as long as she held the hegemony. vīs, quae restant, mē loquī? T. Andr. 195, wilt have me tell the rest? i. e. relicua. fieri potest, ut id quod sentit politē ēloquī nōn possit, TD. 1, 6, it may be that he cannot express his thought in polished style, i. e. sententiam suam.**

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPEATED ACTION.

**1730.** The subjunctive is sometimes used in relative, temporal, or conditional sentences, to express action repeated or occurring at no particular time: as,

**(a.) neque aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habet auctōritātem, 6, 11, 4, and if he does not do this, he never has any ascendancy at all over his people. With the present and perfect, however, this subjunctive is confined principally to the indefinite second person singular (1030): as, bonus sēgnior fit, ubī neglegās, S. I. 31, 28, the good man always gets slacker, when you are neglectful. sī quōi mūtuum quid dederis, fit prō propriō perditum, Pl. Tri. 1050, if you've lent anything to any man, 't is not your own, but lost. (b.) The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive begin with Catullus and Caesar, and get to be common with Livy and Tacitus: as, sī quis prehenderetur, cōsēnsū militum ēripiēbatur, Caes. C. 3, 110, 4, every time a man was taken up, he was rescued by the joint action of the rank and file. quemcumque lictor prēndisset, tribūnus mitti iubēbat, L. 3, 11, 2, every man the lictor arrested, a tribune would order released.**

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE AS IN THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

**1731.** The subjunctive of wish, of action conceivable, or of interrogation, is sometimes used in a subordinate sentence exactly as in main sentences: as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## 1736-1739.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

---

quod est, eō decet ūtī, *CM.* 27, *what you have, that you should avail yourself of.* hōrologium mittam, sī erit sūdum, *Fam.* 16, 18, 3, *I will send the clock, if it is pleasant* (1625). paulātīm dabis, sī sapiēs, *T. Hau.* 870, *you'll give in driblets, if you are wise.* cum relaxāre animōs volent, caveant intemperantiam, *Off.* 1, 122, *when they want to unbend, let them beware of excess* (1625; 1718). omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, 4, 29, 4, *they were out of everything that was serviceable for repairing their vessels.*

1736. (b.) Action antecedent to a main present is expressed by a perfect, to a main future or virtual future by a future perfect, to a main secondary tense by a pluperfect: as,

quōcumque aspexistī tuae tibi occurrunt iniūriae, *Par.* 18, *wherever you turn your gaze, you are confronted by your own abominable acts.* cum posuī librum, adsēnsiō omnis ēlābitur, *TD.* 1, 24, *when I drop the book, all assent melts away* (1860). quicquid fēceris, adprobābō, *Fam.* 3, 3, 2, *no matter what you do, I shall think it well* (1626). ut quisque istius animū offenderat, in lautumiās statim coniciēbātur, *V.* 5, 143, *any man that wounded his sensibilities was always flung into the quarries without any ado.*

1737. (c.) Action subsequent to a main present is expressed by the future participle with a present form of *sum*, to a main future or virtual future by the future participle with a future form of *sum*, and to a main secondary tense by the future participle with an imperfect form of *sum*: as,

decem diēs sunt ante lūdōs, quōs Cn. Pompēius factūrus est, *V. a. pr.* 31, *there are ten days before the shows which Pompey is to manage.* attentōs faciēmus, sī dēmōnstrābimus ea, quae dictūrī erimus, magna esse, *Inv.* 1, 23, *we shall make people attentive if we show that what we are going to say is important.* rēx, quia nōn interfutūrus nāvālī certāminī erat, *Magnēsiam concessit*, *L.* 36, 43, 9, *as the king was not to have a hand in the action at sea, he moved off to Magnesia.*

1738. II. A subordinate indicative tense is said to be *Independent* when it simply expresses time of its own, without any close relation to the time of the main action.

Such independent tenses may denote general present action: as, *ībam forte viā sacrā, sicut meus est mōs*, *H. S.* 1, 9, 1, *in Sacred Street, as is my wont, I happened to be promenading* (relatively, *erat mōs*, 1735). *nōn mē appellābis, sī sapis*, *Pl. Most.* 515, *you won't address me, if you have sense* (relatively, *sī sapiēs*, 1735). Or past action, either continuous, completed, or indefinite: as, *ut mōs fuit Bīthyniae rēgibus, lecticā ferēbātur*, *V.* 5, 27, *he regularly rode in a litter, as was the practice of the despots of Bithynia*; here *fuit* denotes action simply as past, without further definition of time (1603), whereas *erat*, relative to the time of *ferēbātur*, would imply *which was then the practice* (1595).

1739. With *dum*, *in the time while*, an independent present is used: see 1995. With *postquam*, &c., *after*, an independent perfect is used of a single action; see 1925.

### THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1740. Subordinate subjunctive sentences were originally independent coordinate sentences, in the tense required to express the thought. By degrees the subordinate sentence blended closely with the main sentence, and the combination of the two was regarded as one whole.

1741. I. The time of the subordinate subjunctive is usually *Relative*, that is either contemporaneous, antecedent, or subsequent, in relation to that of the main action.

1742. Action contemporaneous with the main action is expressed by a present or imperfect subjunctive. Action antecedent is expressed by a perfect or a pluperfect subjunctive. Action subsequent is expressed by the future participle with a form of *sim* or of *essem*.

1743. Subordinate sentences with verbs of will or aim, with verbs of fear, also final sentences and many consecutive sentences are expressed in Latin as contemporaneous with the main action, not as subsequent to it.

1744. II. The main and subordinate sentences may express wholly different spheres of time by tenses not commonly used together, when the thought requires it. In such cases the tense of the subordinate member is called *Independent*, like the analogous tenses of the indicative (1738).

1745. The use of subordinate subjunctive tenses relatively to the main tense, or what is commonly called the *Sequence of Tenses*, is as follows :

#### TENSE SUBORDINATE TO AN INDICATIVE.

1746. (I.) The present, or perfect subjunctive, or the future participle with a form of *sim*, is used in sentences subordinate to a primary tense (1717): as,

(a.) *tē hortor, ut Rōmam pergās, QFr. 1, 3, 4, I urge you to repair to Rome. cūrā, ut quam primum veniās, Fam. 4, 10, 1, mind that you come as soon as you can. ego quid accēperim sciō, RA. 58, I know what I have received. quam sum sollicitus quidnam futūrum sit, Att. 8, 6, 3, how anxious I am to know what in the world is to come. (b.) in eum locum rēs dēducta est ut salvī esse nequeāmus, Fam. 16, 12, 1, to such a pass has it come that we cannot be saved. an oblītus es quid initiō dixerim? DN. 2, 2, have you possibly forgotten what I said at the start? quoniam in eam ratiōnem vitae nōs fortūna dēdūxit, ut sempiternus sermō dē nōbis futūrus sit, caveāmus, QFr. 1, 1, 38, since fortune has set us in such a walk of life that we are to be eternally talked about, let us be on our guard. (c.) efficiam, ut intellegātis, Clu. 7, I will see that you understand. dicent quid statuerint, V. 2, 175, they will tell what they decided on. quae fuerit causa, mox viderō, Fin. 1, 35, what the reason was I won't consider till by and by (1630). tē disertum putābō, si ostenderis quō modō sis eōs inter sicāriōs dēfēnsūrus, Ph. 2, 8, I shall think you a most effective speaker, if you show how you are going to defend them on the charge of murder.*

1747. (2.) The imperfect, or pluperfect subjunctive, or the future participle with a form of *essem*, is used in sentences subordinate to a secondary tense (1717) : as,

(a.) *hīs rēbus fiēbat, ut minus lātē vagārentur*, 1, 2, 4, *so it came to pass that they did not roam round much.* *docēbat, ut tōtius Galliae principātum Aeduī tenuissent*, 1, 43, 6, *he showed how the Aeduans had had the mastery over all Gaul.* *Flaccus quid aliī postea factūri essent scire nōn poterat*, *Fl.* 33, *Flaccus could not tell what other people would do in the future.* (b.) *is civitātī persuāsit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exirent*, 1, 2, 1, *this man prevailed on his community to emigrate from their place of abode, bag and baggage.* *quās rēs in Hispāniā gessisset, disseruit*, *L.* 28, 38, 2, *he discoursed on his military career in Spain.* *an Lacedaemoniī quaesivērunt num sē esset mori prohibiturus?* *TD.* 5, 42, *did the Spartans ask whether he was going to prevent them from dying?* (c.) *Ariovistus tantōs sibī spīritūs sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur*, 1, 33, 5, *Ariovistus had put on such high and mighty airs that he seemed intolerable.* *hīc pāgus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā*, *L.* *Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat*, 1, 12, 5, *this canton, sallying out from home in our fathers' recollection, had put Cassius, the consul, to death.* *illud quod mihi extrēmum prōposueram, cum essem de bellī genere dictūrus*, *IP.* 17, *the point I had reserved till the end, when I was going to discourse on the character of the war.*

1748. With any kind of a secondary main sentence, a subordinate general truth usually stands in the past, contrary to the English idiom : as,

*hīc cōgnōscī licuit, quantum esset hominibus praesidi in animi firmitūdine*, *Caes. C.* 3, 28, 4, *here there was a chance to learn what a bulwark man has in courage.* In the direct form *est* (1588).

1749. A subsequent relation is sometimes loosely suggested by a simple subjunctive; necessarily so with verbs which lack the future participle, or which are in the passive : as, *sum sollicitus quidnam de prōvinciīs dēcernātur*, *Fam.* 2, 11, 1, *I am anxious to see what in the world may be decided on about the provinces.*

1750. In a single example, a future perfect of resulting state is represented in subordination as follows : *nec dubitō quin cōfecta iam rēs futūra sit*, *Fam.* 6, 12, 3, *and I have no doubt the job will soon be completely finished up*, directly, *sine dubiō cōfecta iam rēs erit.*

1751. (1.) An imperfect subjunctive expressing a particular past result, cause, reason, &c., is sometimes connected with a main general present tense (1744) : as,

*cuius praecepti tanta vis est, ut ea Delphicō deō tribuerētur*, *Leg.* 1, 58, *the power of this rule is so mighty that it was ascribed to the Delphic god.* *cuius rei tanta est vis, ut Ithacam illam sapientissimus vir immortalitātī antepōneret*, *DO.* 1, 196, *so irresistible is the power of this sentiment that the shrewdest of men loved his little Ithaca better than life eternal ;* of Ulixes. *laudantur orātōrēs veterēs quod crimina diluere dilucidē solērent*, *V.* 2, 191, *the orators of old are admired 'because they were always clear in explaining accusations away.'* The secondary sequence is also sometimes exceptionally used with ordinary presents.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1757. (2.) Often in consecutive sentences: as,

(a.) in prōvinciā Siciliā, quam iste per triennium ita vexāvit, ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullō modō possit, *V. a. pr.* 12, in the province of Sicily, which the defendant so effectually tormented three years running that it cannot be restored at all to its original estate. priōrēs ita rēgnārunt, ut omnēs conditōrēs partium certē urbis numerentur, *L. 2, 1, 2*, such was the administration of the monarchs preceding, that they are all accounted founders of parts at least of Rome. (b.) The perfect subjunctive sometimes represents the time of the perfect definite: as, tantum in aerarium pecūniae invēxit, ut ūnius imperātōris praeda finem attulerit tribūtōrum, *Off. 2, 76*, he conveyed such quantities of money into the treasury, that the plunder turned in by a single commander has put an end to tribute for good and all. eō usque sē praebēbat patientem atque impigrum, ut eum nēmō umquam in equō sedentem viderit, *V. 5, 27*, he showed himself so indefatigably active that no human being has ever seen him astride a horse. Sometimes the time of the historical perfect: as, temporis tanta fuit exiguitās, ut ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuerit, *2, 21, 5*, so scant was the time that they had not time to put their helmets on. hīc ita quiēvit, ut eō tempore omnī Neāpolī fuerit, *Sull. 17*, this man held so quiet that he staid all that time at Neapolis. In Cicero a negative subordinate perfect is not uncommon; an affirmative one is very rare. This construction is more common in Nepos, Livy, and Tacitus, and is the prevalent one in Suetonius.

1758. The imperfect only is used in complementary sentences with past verbs of happening, such as accidit, contigit, &c. (1966).

1759. When two consecutive subjunctives are coordinated, they usually have the same tense. Sometimes however the first is perfect and the second imperfect, or the reverse.

1760. (3.) An indirect question in the present or perfect sometimes retains its original tense with a main secondary tense (1744): as,

hīc quantum in bellō fortūna possit, cōgnōscī potuit, *6, 35, 2*, here there was a chance to see how potent dame Fortune is in war. Here possit represents potest of a general truth (1588); but usually general truths have the regular sequence (1748). cūr abstinerit spectāculō ipse, variē trahēbant, *Ta. 1, 76*, why the emperor did not go to the show, they accounted for in this way and that, representing cūr abstinuit? quō cōsiliō redierim initiō audistis, post estis expertī, *Ph. 10, 8*, what my idea was in coming back, you learned first by hearsay, afterwards by personal observation, representing quō cōsiliō rediī?

1761. The subordinate subjunctive has sometimes the sequence of the nearest verb, instead of that of its proper verb: as, cūrāvit, quod semper in rē publicā tenendum est, nē plūrimū valeant plūrimī, *RP. 2, 39*, he arranged it so, a point which is always to be held fast in government, that the greatest number may not have the greatest power.

## TENSE SUBORDINATE TO A SUBJUNCTIVE.

1762. When the leading verb is a subjunctive, the present is regarded as primary, and the imperfect and pluperfect as secondary: as,

(a.) *exspectō eius modi litterās ex quibus nōn quid fiat, sed quid futūrum sit sciam, Att. 5, 12, 2, I am expecting a letter of a kind to let me know not what is going on, but what will be going on. quid prōfēcerim faciās mē velim certiōrem, Fam. 7, 10, 3, how far I have succeeded I wish you would let me know. (b.) quālis esset nātūra montis qui cognoscerent mīsit, 1, 21, 1, he sent some scouts to find out what the character of the mountain was. quid mē prohibēret Epicūrēum esse, si probārem quae diceret, Fin. 1, 27, what would prevent me from being an Epicurean, if I accepted what he said? quae si bis bīna quot essent didicisset Epicūrus, certē nōn diceret, DN. 2, 49, Epicurus would certainly not say this, if he had ever been taught how much twice two is (1748).*

1763. An imperfect subjunctive of action non-occurrent at the present time has occasionally the present sequence: as, *mīrārēris, si interessēs, quā patientiā valētūdinem toleret, Plin. Ep. 1, 22, 7, you would be amazed to find, if you were with him, with what dogged endurance he bears up under his illness. But the secondary sequence is far more common.*

1764. (1.) The perfect subjunctive in independent main sentences of prohibition (1551) or of action conceivable (1558) is regarded as a primary tense: as,

*nē dubitārīs quīn id mihi futūrum sit antiquius, Att. 7, 3, 2, don't entertain any doubt that this course will be preferable in my eyes. quid nōn sit citius quam quid sit dīxerim, DN. 1, 60, I could sooner tell what is not, than what is.*

1765. (2.) In subordinate sentences, the perfect subjunctive has the main sequence when it represents the indicative perfect definite, and the secondary when it represents the indicative historical perfect or the imperfect: as,

(a.) *nēmō ferē vestrūm est, quīn, quem ad modum captae sint Syracūsae saepe audierit, V. 4, 115, there is hardly a man of your number but has heard over and over again how Syracuse was taken. (b.) quā rē acciderit ut id suspicārēre quod scrībīs nesciō, Fam. 2, 16, 1, how it came to pass that you suspected what you write, I can't imagine.*

## TENSE SUBORDINATE TO A NOUN OF THE VERB.

1766. (1.) A subjunctive subordinate to one of the nouns of the verb, except the perfect infinitive or the perfect participle, follows the sequence of the verb: as,

*dēsīnō quaerere cūr ēmeris, V. 4, 10, I cease to ask why you bought. nēmīnem tam āmentem fore putāvērunt, ut emeret argentum, V. 4, 9, they did not dream anybody would be crazy enough to buy plate. secūrī percussī, adeō torpentibus metū quī aderant, ut nē gemitus quidem exaudīrētur, L. 28, 29, 11, they were beheaded, everybody there being so completely paralyzed with fear that not even a groan could be heard. Q. Fabius Pictor Delphōs missus est sciscitātum, quibus precibus deōs possent plācāre, L. 22, 57, 5, Fabius Pictor was sent to Delphi to find out by what sort of prayers they could get the ear of the gods. cupidō incessit animōs iuvenum sciscitandī ad quem eōrum rēgnūm esset ventūrum, L. 1, 56, 10, the youths were possessed with a desire to find out to which one of their number the throne was to fall.*



## 1767-1772.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

---

1767. (2.) With a perfect infinitive or perfect participle, the subordinate subjunctive may be in the imperfect or pluperfect, even with a primary leading verb: as,

satis mihi multa verba fecisse videor, qua re esset hoc bellum necessarium, *IP.* 27, *I fancy I have said enough to show why this war is unavoidable.* hunc isti aiunt, cum taurum immolavisset, mortuum concidisse, *Br.* 43, *your gentlemen say that this man, after sacrificing a bull, tumbled down dead.* viator bene vestitus causa grassatori fuisse dicetur cur ab eo spoliaretur, *Fut.* 34, *a well-dressed traveller will be said to have been a temptation for a footpad to rob him.* versabor in re saepe quaesita, suffragia clam an palam ferre melius esset, *Leg.* 3, 33, *I shall be working on a question that has often been put, whether it was better to vote secretly or openly.*

1768. The sequence with a perfect infinitive is, however, often primary: as, hic si finem faciam dicendi, satis iudici fecisse videar cur secundum Roscium iudicari debeat, *RC.* 14, *if I should stop speaking here, I should feel I had made it plain enough to the court why a judgement should be rendered for Roscius.*

1769. The secondary sequence is used with meminī, *remember*, even when it has the present infinitive (2220): as, L. Metellum meminī ita bonis esse viribus extremō tempore aetatis, ut adulescentiam non requireret, *CM.* 30, *I can remember Metellus's being so good and strong in the very last part of his life that he did not feel the want of youth.*

---

1770. Sentences with a subjunctive due to another subjunctive or to an infinitive are put as follows:

1771. (1.) Sentences of relative time express contemporaneous, antecedent, and subsequent action like corresponding indicative sentences, with the appropriate sequence: as,

vereor, nē, dum minuere velim laborem, augeam, *Leg.* 1, 12, *I am afraid that while I wish to make the work less, I may make it more.* crocodilos dicunt, cum in terrā partum ediderint, obruere ova, *DN.* 2, 129, *they say that the crocodile, after laying on land, buries her eggs.* dicebam quoad metuerēs, omnia tē promissurum: simul ac timere desisses, similem tē futurum tui, *Ph.* 2, 89, *I said that as long as you were afraid, you would promise everything; the moment you ceased to fear, you would be just like yourself.* constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparare, *I.* 3, 1, *they resolved to get such things ready as were necessary for the march.* erat scriptum: nisi domum reverteretur, se capitis eum damnaturus, *N.* 4, 3, 4, *it stood written that, if he did not come back home, they would condemn him to death (direct form nisi revertēris, damnabimus).* legati venerunt, qui se ea, quae imperasset, facturūs pollicerentur, 4, 22, 1, *some envoys came, to engage to do what he ordered (direct form quae imperāris, faciemus).* Veneti confidebant Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere navium, neque eorum locorum ubi bellum gesturi essent portus novisse, 3, 19, 6, *the Venetians felt assured that the Romans had not any proper supply of ships, and were not acquainted with the ports in the places where they were to fight.*

1772. (2.) Sentences with independent time retain the independent time in the subjunctive in primary sequence (1744); in secondary sequence the present becomes imperfect, and the perfect becomes pluperfect: as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

### ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS.

1778. Indirect alternative questions are introduced like direct questions (1519). But when the second member is negative, it has oftener *necne* than an *nōn*: as,

*hoc quaerāmus, vērum sit an falsum, Clu. 124, let us ask this question, whether it is true or false. quaesivī ā Catilinā in conventū fuisset, necne, C. 2, 13, I asked Catiline whether he had been at the meeting or not. permultum interest utrum perturbātiōne animī, an cōsultō fiat iniūria, Off. 1, 27, it makes a vast difference whether wrong be done in heat of passion, or with deliberate intent. quaerō, eum Brūtine similem mālīs an Antōniī, Ph. 10, 5, I ask whether you would rather have him like Brutus or like Antony.*

1779. An introductory *utrum* preceding an alternative question with *-ne* and *an* occurs a few times in Plautus and Cicero; *utrumne* . . . *an* occurs once in Cicero, and twice in Horace and Tacitus each; compare 1522. After *utrum*, a second alternative is sometimes suppressed, as in the direct question (1523).

1780. *-ne* in the second member only of an alternative question is rare, and not used by Caesar or Sallust: as, *sine sciam captiva māterne sim, L. 2, 40, 5, let me know whether I am a captive or a mother.*

1781. (1.) A few times in Plautus and Terence, the second member only of an alternative question is expressed with *quī sciō an?* or *quī scīs an?* equivalent to *perhaps*: as, *quī scīs an quae iubeam faciat? T. Eu. 790, perhaps she'll do as I direct.* Horace has once *quī scīs an, AP. 462, in the sense of perhaps*, and once *quis scit an, 4, 7, 17, in the sense of perhaps not.*

1782. (2.) The second member only of an alternative question is often expressed after *haud sciō an, I don't know but, possibly, perhaps*, with *nōn, nēmō, nūllus, &c.*, if the sentence is negative: as,

*haud sciō an fierī possit, V. 3, 162, I don't know but it is possible.* Similarly, though not often, with *nesciō an, haud sciam an, dubitō an, dubitārim an, dubium an, incertum an, &c.*: as, *ēloquentiā nesciō an habuisset parem nēminem, Br. 126, in oratory I fancy he would have had no peer.* This use, in which *haud sciō an* becomes adverbial, and the subjunctive approaches closely that of modest assertion, is principally confined to Cicero. In later Latin, *haud sciō an, &c.*, sometimes has a negative sense, *I don't know whether*, with *ūllus, &c.*

1783. From Curtius on, *an* is used quite like *num* or *-ne*, in a single indirect question, without implication of alternatives.

1784. Two alternatives are rarely used without any interrogative particles at all: as, *velit nōlit scīre difficile est, QFr. 3, 8, 4, will he nill he, it is hard to know, i. e. whether he will or not.* Compare 1518.

### PRONOUN QUESTIONS.

1785. Indirect pronoun questions are introduced by the same pronominal words that are used in direct pronoun questions (1526): as,

*cōgnōscit, quae gerantur, 5, 48, 2, he ascertains what is going on. vidētis ut omnēs dēspiciat, RA. 135, you can see how he looks down on everybody. quid agās et ut tē oblectēs scīre cupiō, QFr. 2, 3, 7, I am eager to know how you do and how you are amusing yourself.*

ORIGINAL SUBJUNCTIVES.

1786. Questions already in the subjunctive may also become indirect.

Thus, *quō mē vertam?* *V.* 5, 2, *which way shall I turn?* (1563) becomes indirect in *quō mē vertam nesciō*, *Clu.* 4, *I don't know which way I am to turn.* *quid faciam?* *H. S.* 2, 1, 24, *what shall I do?* (1563) becomes indirect in *quid faciam*, *praescribere*, *H. S.* 2, 1, 5, *lay down the law, what I'm to do.* *neque satis cōstābat quid agerent*, 3, 14, 3, *and it was not at all clear what they had best do.* *dubitāvī hōsce hominēs emerem an nōn emerem*, *Pl. Cap.* 455, *I had my doubts, whether to buy these men or not to buy* (1564):

INDICATIVE QUESTIONS APPARENTLY INDIRECT.

1787. In old Latin, the indicative occurs often in connections where the subjunctive would be used in classical Latin: as,

*dīc, quis est*, *Pl. B.* 558, *say, who is it?* whereas *dīc quis sit* would mean *say who it is*. In such cases the question is not subordinate, but coordinate, usually with an imperative (1697), or with some such expression as *tē rogō*, *volō scīre*, *scīn*, or the like. Such coordination occurs exceptionally in the classical period: as, *et vidē, quam conversa rēs est*, *Att.* 8, 13, 2, *and observe, how everything is changed.* *adspice, ut ingreditur*, *V.* 6, 856, *see, how he marches off.*

1788. The indicative is used with *nesciō* followed by a pronominal interrogative, when this combination is equivalent to an indefinite pronoun or adverb: as,

*prōdit nesciō quis*, *T. Ad.* 635, *there's some one coming out.* This is a condensed form for *prōdit nesciō quis sit*, *there's coming out I don't know who it is*, the real question, *sit*, being suppressed, and *nesciō quis* acquiring the meaning of *aliquis*, *somebody*. Similarly *nesciō* with *unde*, *ubī*, *quandō*, *quot*, &c., in writers of all ages. Plautus uses *sciō quid*, *sciō ut*, &c., somewhat in this way once or twice with the indicative: as, *scio quid agō*, *B.* 78, *I'm doing I know what.*

1789. This combination often expresses admiration, contempt, or regret: as, *contendō tum illud nesciō quid praeclārum solēre existere*, *Arch.* 15, *I maintain that in such a combination the beau ideal of perfection always bursts into being.* *paulum nesciō quid*, *RA.* 115, *an unconsidered trifle.* *dīvisa est sententia, postulante nesciō quō*, *Mil.* 14, *the question was divided, on motion of what's his name.* *nesciō quō pactō*, *C.* 31, *unfortunately.*

1790. The indicative is used in like manner with many expressions, originally exclamatory, which have become adverbs: such are *immāne quantum*, *prodigiously*, *mīrum quantum*, *wonderfully*, *sānē quam*, *immensely*, &c., &c. See 712 and the dictionary.

1791. Relative constructions often have the appearance of indirect questions, and care must be taken not to confound the two. Thus, *ut* is a relative in *hanc rem, ut factast, ēloquar*, *Pl. Am.* 1129, *I'll tell this thing as it occurred*, i. e. not *how it occurred*. *nōstī quae sequontur*, *TD.* 4, 77, *you know the things that follow*, i. e. not *what follows*.

## THE RELATIVE SENTENCE.

1792. Relative sentences are introduced by relative words, the most important of which is the pronoun *quī*, *who*, *which*, or *that*. The relative pronoun may be in any case required by the context, and may represent any of the three persons.

1793. The relative adverbs, *ubī*, *quō*, *unde*, often take the place of a relative pronoun with a preposition, chiefly in designations of place, and regularly with town and island names. Less frequently of persons, though *unde* is not uncommonly thus used.

1794. In a wider sense, sentences introduced by any relative conjunctive particle, such as *ubī*, *when*, are sometimes called relative sentences. Such sentences, however, are more conveniently treated separately, under the head of the several conjunctive particles.

1795. (1.) The relative pronoun, like the English relative *who*, *which*, was developed from the interrogative. Originally, the relative sentence precedes, and the main sentence follows, just as in question and answer.

Thus, *quae mūtāt, ea corrumpit*, *Fin. 1, 21*, *what he changes, that he spoils*, is a modification of the older question and answer: *quae mūtāt? ea corrumpit*, *what does he change? that he spoils*. With adjective relatives, the substantive is expressed in both members, in old or formal Latin: as, *quae rēs apud nostrōs nōn erant, eārum rērum nōmina nōn poterant esse ūsitāta*, *Cornif. 4, 10*, *what things did not exist among our countrymen, of those things the names could not have been in common use*.

1796. (2.) The relative sentence may also come last. As early as Plautus, this had become the prevalent arrangement, and the substantive of the main sentence is called the *Antecedent*: as,

*ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit*, *1, 49, 1*, *beyond the place in which place the Germans had established themselves, he selected a suitable spot for his camp*. The three words *diēs*, *locus*, and *rēs*, are very commonly expressed thus both in the antecedent and the relative sentence. This repetition is rare in Livy, and disappears after his time.

1797. In old Latin, rarely in classical poetry, a sentence sometimes begins with an emphasized antecedent put before the relative, and in the case of the relative: as, *urbem quam statuō vostra est*, *V. 1, 573*, *the city which I found is yours*; for *quam urbem statuō, ea vostra est*. In the main sentence, *is*, *hīc*, *iste*, or *ille*, is often used; less frequently, as in this example, an appellative.

1798. The main sentence often has the determinative or demonstrative, or the substantive, or both omitted: as,

(a.) *ubī intellēxit diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēret*, *1, 16, 5*, *when he saw the day was drawing nigh, on which day the grain was to be measured out to his men*. (b.) *quōs āmisimus civīs, eōs Mārtis vīs perculit*, *Marc. 17*, *what fellow-citizens we have lost, those the fury of the War-god smote down*. (c.) *Sabīnus quōs tribūnōs militum circum sē habēbat, sē sequī iubet*, *5, 37, 1*, *Sabinus ordered what tribunes of the soldiers he had about him, to follow him*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

equitatum praemittit qui videant, 1, 15, 1, *he sends the cavalry ahead, for them to see* (1095). unus ex eo numero, qui ad caedem parati erant, S. I. 35, 6, *one of the number that were ready to do murder* (1095). duo prodigia, quos improbitas tribuno constrictos addixerat, Sest. 38, *a pair of monstrosities, whom their depravity had delivered over in irons to the tribune*. scriba pontificis, quos nunc minores pontifices appellant, L. 22, 57, 3, *a clerk of the pontiff, which clerks they call nowadays lesser pontiffs, i. e. quos scribas*. Veiens bellum exortum, quibus Sabini arma coniunxerant, L. 2, 53, 1, *a Veian war broke out, with whom the Sabines had allied themselves, i. e. bellum cum Veientibus*.

1805. A relative referring to a proper name and explanatory appellative combined, may take the gender of either: as, flumine Rheno, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit, 1, 2, 3, *by the river Rhine, which is the boundary between Helvetians and Germans*. ad flumen Scaldem quod influit in Mosam, 6, 33, 3, *to the river Scheldt, that empties itself into the Maas*.

1806. With verbs of indeterminate meaning (1035), the relative pronoun sometimes agrees with the predicate substantive: as, Thebae ipsae, quod Boeotiae caput est, L. 42, 44, 3, *Thebes itself, which is the capital of Boeotia*. Often, however, with the antecedent: as, flumen quod appellatur Tamesis, 5, 11, 8, *the river which is called the Thames*.

1807. When the relative is subject, its verb agrees with the person of the antecedent: as,

haec omnia is feci, qui sodalis Dolabellae eram, Fam. 12, 14, 7, *all this I did, I that was Dolabella's bosom friend*. iniquos es, qui me tacere postules, T. Hau. 1011, *thou art unfair, expecting me to hold my tongue*. So also when the antecedent is implied in a possessive: as, cum tu nostra, qui remansissimus, caede te contentum esse dicebas, C. 1, 7, *when you said you were satisfied with murdering us, who had staid behind*.

1808. For an accusative of the relative with an ablative antecedent the ablative is rarely used: as, notante iudice quo nosti populo, H. S. 1, 6, 15, *the judge condemning — thou know'st who — the world*. This represents the older interrogative conception: notante iudice — quo? — nosti, populo (1795).

1809. A new substantive added in explanation of an antecedent is put after the relative, and in the same case: as, ad Amanum contendit, qui mons erat hostium plenus, Att. 5, 20, 3, *I pushed on to Amanus, a mountain that was packed with the enemy*. This use begins with Cicero: but from Livy on, the explanatory word is also put as an appositive, with the relative following: as, Decius Magius, vir cui nihil defuit, L. 23, 7, 4, *Magius, a man that lacked nothing*.

1810. An adjective, especially a comparative, superlative, or numeral, explanatory of a substantive in the main sentence, is often put in the relative sentence: as,

palus quae perpetua intercidebat Romanos ad insequendum tardabat, 7, 26, 2, *a morass, that lay unbroken between, hindered the Romans from pursuit*.

1811. When reference is made to the substance of a sentence, the neuter quod is used, or more commonly id quod, either usually in parenthesis: as,

intellegitur, id quod iam ante dixi, imprudente L. Sullā scelera haec fieri, *RA.* 25, *it is plain, as I have said once before, that these crimes are committed without the cognizance of Sulla.* In continuations, quae rēs: as, nāvēs removēri iussit, quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostris fuit, 4, 25, 1, *he ordered the vessels to be withdrawn, a course which proved very advantageous for our people.*

### MOODS IN THE RELATIVE SENTENCE.

1812. The relative is sometimes equivalent to a conditional protasis. When thus used, it may have either the indicative or the subjunctive, as the sense requires: as,

(a.) quod beātum est, nec habet nec exhibet cuiquam negōtium, *DN.* 1, 85, *whatsoever is blessed, has no trouble and makes none to anybody.* quisquis hūc vēnerit, pugnōs edet, *Pl. Am.* 309, *whoever comes this way, shall have a taste of fists (1796).* omnia mala ingerēbat quemquem adspexerat, *Pl. Men.* 717, *she showered all possible bad names on every man she saw (1795).* (b.) haec quī videat, nōnne cōgātur cōfiteri deōs esse, *DN.* 2, 12, *whoso should see this would be forced, wouldn't he? to admit the existence of gods.* quī vidēret, equom Trōiānum intrōductum diceret, *V.* 4, 52, *whoever saw it would have sworn it was the Trojan horse brought in (1559).*

### THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

1813. The indicative is used in simple declarations or descriptions introduced by a relative: as,

quem dī diligunt, adulēscēns moritur, *Pl. B.* 816, *whom the gods love, dies young.* reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē alunt, 4, 1, 5, *the others, that stay at home, support themselves (1736).* quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, his subsidia submittēbat, 4, 26, 4, *to such as he saw in stress, he kept sending reinforcements (1736).* tū quod volēs faciēs, *QFr.* 3, 4, 5, *do what you like (1735).*

1814. The indicative is also used with indefinite relative pronouns and adverbs: as, quidquid volt, valdē volt, *Att.* 14, 1, 2, *whatever he wants. he wants mightily.* quisquis est, *TD.* 4, 37, *whoever he may be.* quācumque iter fēcit, *V.* 1, 44, *wherever he made his way.* In later writers the imperfect or pluperfect is often in the subjunctive: see 1730.

1815. An original indicative often becomes subjunctive, particularly in indirect discourse (1722); or by attraction (1728); or to indicate repeated action (1730). See also 1727 and 1731.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1816. Relative pronoun sentences take the subjunctive to denote (1.) a purpose, (2.) a characteristic or result, (3.) a cause, reason, proof, or a concession.



## SENTENCES OF PURPOSE.

1817. (1.) Relative sentences of purpose are equivalent to subjunctive sentences introduced by *ut, in order that, to* (1947): as,

*ea quī cōficeret, C. Trebōnium relinquit, 7, 11, 3, he left Trebonius to manage this. quālis esset nātūra montis, quī cōgnōscerent, misit, 1, 21, 1, he sent some scouts to ascertain what the character of the mountain was. haec habuī dē amicitia quae dicerem, L. 104, this was what I had to say of friendship.* Sentences of purpose are an extension of the subjunctive of desire (1540).

## SENTENCES OF CHARACTERISTIC OR RESULT.

1818. (2.) Relative sentences of characteristic or result are equivalent to subjunctive sentences introduced by *ut, so as to, so that* (1947).

The main sentence sometimes has a word denoting character, such as *is, eius modī, rarely tālis*: as, *neque is sum, quī mortis periculō terrear, 5, 30, 2, but I am not the man to be scared by danger of death, no not I.* Often, however, character is intimated by the mood alone: as, *secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castris continērent, 4, 34, 4, there followed a succession of storms to keep our people in camp. quod miserandum sit labōrātis, DN. 3, 62, you struggle away to a pitiable degree.* Sentences of result are an extension of the subjunctive of action conceivable (1554).

1819. The subjunctive with *quī* is often used with *dignus, indignus, or idōneus*, usually with a form of *sum*: as, *Liviānae fābulae nōn satis dignae quae iterum legantur, Br. 71, Livy's plays are not worth reading twice. nōn erit idōneus quī ad bellum mittātur, IP. 66, he will not be a fit person to be sent to the war.* Twice thus, *aptus*, once in Cicero, once in Ovid. In poetry and late prose these adjectives sometimes have the infinitive. *dignus* and *indignus* have also *ut* in Plautus, Livy, and Quintilian.

1820. Relative subjunctive sentences are sometimes coordinated by *et* or *sed*, with a substantive, adjective, or participle: as, *audāx et coetūs possit quae ferrē virōrum, J. 6, 399, a brazen minx, and one quite capable of facing crowds of men.*

1821. Relative sentences after assertions or questions of existence or non-existence, usually take the subjunctive: as,

*sunt quī putent, TD. 1, 18, there be people to think, there be who think, or some people think. nēmō est quī nesciat, Fam. 1, 4, 2, there is nobody that does n't know. sapientia est ūna quae maestitiam pellat ex animis, Fin. 1, 43, wisdom is the only thing to drive sadness from the soul.*

1822. Such expressions are: *est (exsistit, exortus est), quī; sunt (reperiuntur, nōn dēsunt), quī; nēmō est, quī; quis est, quī; sōlus or ūnus est, quī; est, nihil est, quod; quid est, quod? habeō, nōn habeō, nihil habeō, quod, &c., &c.* Indefinite subjects are sometimes used with these verbs: as, *multī, quīdam, nōnnūllī, aliī, paucī; sometimes appellatives: as, hominēs, philosophī.*

1823. The indicative, however, is not infrequently found in affirmative sentences, particularly in old Latin and in poetry: as, *sunt quōs sciō esse amicōs. Pl. Tri. 91, some men there are I know to be my friends. interdum volgus rēcturū videt, est ubi peccat, H. E. 2, 1, 63, sometimes the world sees right, there be times when it errs. sunt item, quae appellantur alcēs, 6, 27, 1, then again there are what they call elks.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



quod sciam, *Pl. Men.* 500; *T. Ad.* 641; *RA.* 17, to the best of my knowledge and belief. quod sine molestiā tuā fiat, *Fam.* 13, 23, 2, as far as may be without trouble to yourself. quī is often followed by quidem: as, omnium oratorum, quōs quidem ego cōgnoverim, acūtissimum iūdicō Q. Sertorium, *Br.* 180, of all orators, at least of all that I have made the acquaintance of myself, I count Sertorius the sharpest.

1830. The indicative, however, is used in quod attinet ad, as to, and usually with quantum, and with forms of sum and possum: as, quod sine molestiā tuā facere poteris, *Att.* 1, 5, 7, as far as you can without troubling yourself.

### CORRELATIVE SENTENCES.

1831. Sentences are said to be *correlative*, when a relative pronoun or adverb has a corresponding determinative or demonstrative pronoun or adverb in the main sentence.

Thus, the ordinary correlative of quī is is, less frequently hīc, ille, idem. Similarly tot . . . quot are used as correlatives; also quō . . . eō, quantō . . . tantō; quantum . . . tantum; tam . . . quam; totiēns . . . quotiēns; tālis . . . quālis; ubī . . . ibī; ut . . . ita, sic, or item; cum . . . tum.

### RELATIVE SENTENCES COMBINED.

#### (A.) COORDINATION OF A RELATIVE.

1832. (1.) When two coordinate relative sentences would have the second relative in the same case as the first, the second relative is usually omitted: as,

Dumnorigi quī principātum optinēbat, ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, persuādet, 1, 3, 5, he prevails with Dumnorix, who held the headship, and was popular with the commons.

1833. (2.) When two coordinate relative sentences require two different cases of the relative, the relative is usually expressed with both, or else the second relative, which is usually nominative or accusative, is omitted, or is, hīc, ille, or idem, is substituted for it: as,

(a.) cūr loquimur dē eō hoste, quī iam fatētur sē esse hostem, et quem nōn timeō? *C.* 2, 17, why am I talking about an enemy who admits himself he is an enemy, and whom I do not fear? (b.) Bocchus cum pedibus, quōs Volux addūxerat, neque in priōre pugnā adfuerant, *S. I.* 101, 5, Bocchus with the infantry whom Volux had brought up, and who had not been engaged in the first skirmish. (c.) Viriāthus, quem C. Laelius frēgit, ferōcitātemque eius repressit, *Off.* 2, 40, Viriathus, whom Laelius crushed, and curbed his fiery soul. This last use is chiefly limited to old Latin, Cicero, and Lucretius.

#### (B.) SUBORDINATION OF A RELATIVE.

1834. A sentence consisting of a main and a relative member, may be further modified by a more specific relative sentence: as,

proximī sunt Germānis quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt (general), quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt (specific), 1, 1, 3, *they are nearest to the Germans that live beyond the Rhine, with whom they carry on uninterrupted hostilities.* idem artifex Cupīdinem fēcit illum quī est Thespiīs (general), propter quem Thespieae vīsuntur (specific), V. 4, 4, *the selfsame artist made the world-renowned Cupid at Thespieae, which is the attraction for tourists in Thespieae.*

---

### THE RELATIVE INTRODUCING A MAIN SENTENCE.

1835. Besides the ordinary use of the relative, to introduce a subordinate sentence, it is often used like *hīc*, or *is*, or like *et is*, *is autem*, *is enim*, or *is igitur*, to append a fresh main sentence or period to the foregoing: as,

cōnsiliō convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit, quō in cōnsiliō nōnnullae huius modī sententiae dicēbantur, 3, 3, 1, *calling a council of war, he proceeded to ask their opinion, and in this council some opinions of the following import were set forth.* centuriōnēs hostēs vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō, 5, 43, 6, *the officers proceeded to call the enemy; but not a man of them ventured to step forward.* perūtilēs Xenophōntis librī sunt; quos legite studiōsē, CM. 59, *Xenophon's works are extremely profitable reading; so do read them attentively.* In Plautus this use is rare; but it becomes more and more prevalent, and in the time of Cicero the relative is one of the commonest connectives.

1836. From this use of the relative come many introductory formulas, such as *quō factō*, *quā rē cōgnitā*, *quae cum ita sint*, &c., &c.

1837. A connective *quod* is often used before *sī*, *nisi*, or *etsī*, less frequently before *quia*, *quoniam*, *utinam*, *quī*, &c.

This *quod* may be translated *so*, *but*, *now*, *whereas*, *as to that*, &c., or it is often best omitted in translation. See 2132.

---

### THE CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLE SENTENCE.

*quod.*

1838. The conjunctive particle *quod*, originally the neuter of the relative pronoun, has both a declarative sense, *that*, and a causal sense, *because*. In both senses it regularly introduces the indicative (1721). For special reasons, however, the subjunctive is often used, and particularly in indirect discourse (1722).

1839. In some of its applications, particularly in old Latin, the conjunctive particle *quod* can hardly be distinguished from the pronoun *quod*, as follows:

## 1840-1845.] Sentences: The Subordinate Sentence.

---

1840. (1.) In old Latin, *quod*, *why, for what*, is sometimes used with *veniō* and *mittō*. Thus, as in *id vēnimus*, Pl. *MG.* 1158, *that's why we've come*, *id* is used to define the purpose of the motion (1144), so also *quod*, in *quod vēnī, ēloquar*, T. *Hau. prol.* 3, *what I've come for, I'll set forth*. Instead of *quod*, more explicitly *quam ob rem*: as, *quam ob rem hūc sum missa*, Pl. *R.* 430, *what I am sent here for*.

1841. (2.) *quod*, *why, for what*, is used in such expansions as *quid est quod?* *quid habēs quod?* or *nihil est quod*: as,

*quid est quod mē excīvistī?* Pl. *E.* 570, *why is it that you've called me out?* (1144). Usually with the subjunctive (1563): as, *quid est quod plūra dicāmus?* *Clu.* 59, *what reason is there for saying more?* For *quod*, sometimes *quā rē, quam ob rem, cūr, &c.* \_ The question itself is also sometimes varied: as, *quid fuit causae, cūr in Africam Caesarem nōn sequerēre?* *Ph.* 2, 71, *what earthly reason was there, why you should not have followed Caesar to Africa?*

1842. (3.) *quod*, *as to what, or that*, is used, especially at the beginning of a sentence, to introduce a fact on which something is to be said, often by way of protest or refutation: as,

*vērūm quod tū dīcis, nōn tē mī irāscī decet*, Pl. *Am.* 522, *but as to what you say, it is n't right that you should get provoked with me.* *quod multitudinē Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī causā facere*, 1, 44, 6, *as to his moving a great many Germans over to Gaul, that he did for self-protection* (1722). This construction is particularly common in Caesar, and in Cicero's letters.

1843. When *quod*, *in case, suppose, although*, introduces a mere conjecture or a concession, the subjunctive is used (1554): as, *quod quispiam ignem quaerat, extingui volō*, Pl. *Aul.* 91, *in case a man may come for fire, I want the fire put out*. This use is principally found in old Latin, but once or twice also in Cicero.

1844. *quod*, *that, the fact that*, is often used in subordinate sentences which serve to complete the sense of the main sentence.

1845. The sentence with *quod* may represent a subject, as with *accēdit*; an object, as with *praetereō*, &c.; or any case of a substantive; frequently it is in apposition with a demonstrative or an appellative: as,

(a.) *accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs dolēbant*, 3, 2, 5, *there was added this fact, that they lamented that their own children were torn from them; or less clumsily, then too they lamented.* *praetereō, quod eam sibi domum sēdemque dēlēgit, in quā cōtīdiē viri mortis indicia vidēret*, *Clu.* 188, *I pass over the fact that she picked out a house to live in, in which she would see, day in day out, things to remind her of her husband's death.* *illud minus cūrō, quod conguessistī operāriōs omnēs*, *Br.* 297, *I am not particularly interested in the fact that you have lumped together all sorts of cobblers and tinkers.* (b.) *Caesar senātūs in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū*, 1, 43, 4, *Caesar told off the kindnesses of the senate to the man, the fact that 'he had been styled king by the senate'* (1722). *quō factō duās rēs cōsecūtus est, quod animōs centuriōnum*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

**1853.** Causal *quod*, *owing to the fact that, because*, introduces an efficient cause, or a reason or motive: as,

(a.) in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, 4, 20, 1, *in these parts the winter sets in early, owing to the fact that Gaul in general lies to the north.* Helvētīi reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cōtīdiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, 1, 1, 4, *the Helvetians outshine the rest of the Gauls in bravery, because they do battle with the Germans almost every day.* hōrum fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod a cultū prōvinciae longissimē absunt, 1, 1, 3, *of these the stoutest fighting-men are the Belgians, for the reason that they live furthest away from the comforts of the province.* (b.) T. Mānlius Torquātus filium suum, quod is contrā imperium in hostem pugnāverat, necārī iussit, S. C. 52, 30, *Torquatus ordered his own son to be put to death, because the young man had fought with the enemy contrary to orders.* exōrāvit tyrannum ut abire liceret, quod iam beātus nōllet esse, TD. 5, 62, *he induced the monarch to let him go, 'because he didn't care to be Fortune's pet any longer'* (1725). Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō arbitriō bellum esse gestūrōs dicerent, 7, 75, 5, *the Bellovacans would not put in their proper quota, saying they meant to make war on their own responsibility* (1727).

**1854.** *quod* often has a correlative in the main sentence, such as *eō, ideō, idcirco, proptereā*. In Sallust, *eā grātiā*. In Plautus, causal *quod* is very rare compared to causal *quia*.

**1855.** An untenable reason is introduced in Plautus by *nōn eō quia*, in Terence by *nōn eō quō*; in Cicero very rarely by *neque* or *non eō quō*, usually by *nōn quod* or *nōn quō*; by *nōn quia* rarely in classical Latin, but commonly from Livy on. The valid reason follows, with *sed quod*, *sed quia*, or with *sed* and a fresh main sentence.

The mood is usually subjunctive (1725): as, pugilēs ingemiscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia prōfundendā vōce omne corpus intenditur, TD. 2, 56, *boxers grunt and groan, not because they feel pain, but because by explosion of voice the whole system gets braced up.* Sometimes, but very rarely in classical prose, the indicative. Correlatives, such as *idcirco, ideō, &c.*, are not uncommon. Reversed constructions occur, with *magis* followed by *quam*, as: *magis quod, quō, or quia, followed by quam quō, quod, or quia.* The negative *not that . . . not*, is expressed by *nōn quod nōn, nōn quō nōn, or nōn quin.*

---

**quia.**

**1856.** *quia*, a neuter accusative plural of the relative stem (701) is used in both a declarative and a causal sense, like *quod* (1838). It is, however, more prevalent in Plautus, less so from Terence on.

**1857.** For the uses of declarative *quia*, see under 1848, 1850, 1851.

**1858.** Causal *quia*, with or without a correlative, such as *ideō, eō, proptereā, &c.*, is common in old Latin (1854) and poetry, unusual in prose (once in Caesar) before Tacitus. For *nōn quia, &c.*, see 1855.

quom or cum.

1859. quom or cum (157, 711), used as a relative conjunctive particle (1794), has a temporal meaning, *when*, which readily passes over to an explanatory or causal meaning, *in that, since* or *although*. In both meanings it introduces the indicative in old Latin. In classical Latin, temporal cum in certain connections, and causal cum regularly, introduces the subjunctive. The subjunctive is also used with cum for special reasons, as in the indefinite second person (1731), by attraction (1728), and commonly by late writers to express repeated past action (1730). cum, *when*, is often used as a synonym of si, *if*, and may then introduce any form of a conditional protasis (2016, 2110).

(A.) TEMPORAL cum.

WITH THE INDICATIVE.

1860. cum, *when, whenever, if*, of indefinite time, may introduce any tense of the indicative required by the context: as,

facile omnēs, quom valēmus, rēcta cōnsilia aegrōtis damus, T. *Andr.* 309, *we all, when well, give good advice to sick folk easily*. Rōmae videor esse, cum tuās litterās legō, Att. 2, 15, 1, *I always fancy myself in Rome, when I am reading a letter from you*. cum posuī librum, adsēnsiō omnis ēlābitur, TD. 1, 24, *when I drop the book, all assent melts away* (1613). incenderis cupiditāte libertātis, cum potestātem gustandī fēceris, RP. 2, 50, *you will inspire them with a passion for freedom, when you give them a chance to taste it* (1627). his cum fūnēs comprehēnsī adductique erant, praerumpēbantur, 3, 14, 6, *every time the lines were caught by these and hauled taut, they would part* (1618). The subjunctive is used, chiefly by late writers, rarely by Cicero and Caesar, to express repeated past action (1730): as, cum in convīvium vēnisset, si quicquam caelātī adspexerat, manūs abstinēre nōn poterat, V. 4, 48, *when he went to a dinner party, if he ever caught sight of a bit of chased work, he never could keep his hands off* (2050).

1861. cum, *when*, of definite time, regularly introduces the indicative in old Latin, even where the subjunctive is required in classical Latin (1872): as,

nam illa, quom tē ad sē vocābat, mēmet esse crēdidit, Pl. *Men.* 1145, *for when that lady asked you in, she thought 't was I*. postīculum hoc recēpit, quom aedis vēndidit, Pl. *Tri.* 194, *this back part he excepted, when he sold the house*.

1862. cum, *when*, of definite time, regularly introduces the indicative of any action, not of past time: as,

sed dē his etiam rēbus, ōtiōsī cum erimus, loquēmur, *Fam.* 9, 4, *but we will talk of this when we have time*. cum ego P. Grānium testem prōdūxerō, refellitō, si poteris, V. 5, 154, *when I put Granius on the witness stand, refute him if you can*.



1863. With *cum*, *when*, the indicative is used of definite past time to date the action of the main clause, as follows:

1864. (1.) The indicative imperfect is regularly used with *cum*, *when*, to denote a continued action parallel and coincident in duration with another continued action, also in the imperfect: as,

quom pugnābant maxumē, ego tum fugiēbam maxumē, Pl. Am. 199, *while they were fighting hardest, then I was running hardest.* tum cum rem habēbās, quaesticulus tē faciēbat attentiorē, Fam. 9, 16, 7, *as long as you were a man of substance, the fun of making money made you a little close.*

1865. (2.) The indicative imperfect is often used with *cum*, *when*, denoting a continued action, to date an apodosis in the perfect: as,

legiōnēs quom pugnābant maxumē, quid in tabernāclō fēcistī? Pl. Am. 427, *what did'st thou in the tent what time the legions fought their mightiest?* his librīs adnumerandī sunt sex dē rē pūblicā, quōs tum scripsimus cum gubernācula rēi pūblicae tenēbāmus, Div. 2, 3, *to these books are to be added the six On the State, which I wrote at the time I was holding the helm of state.* But when the object of the clause is not distinctly to date the apodosis, its verb is in the subjunctive (1872).

1866. (3.) The indicative perfect or present of vivid narration is used with *cum*, *when*, to date an apodosis in the perfect or present of vivid narration: as,

'per tuās statuās' vērō cum dixit, vehementius risimus, DO. 2, 242, *but when he uttered the words 'by your statues,' we burst into a louder laugh.* cum occiditur Sex. Rōscius, ibidem fuērunt, RA. 120, *when Roscius was murdered, they were on the spot.* cum diēs vēnit, causā ipse prō sē dictā, damnātur, L. 4, 44, 10, *when the day of the trial came, he spoke in his own defence and was condemned.* The present is particularly common in old colloquial Latin: as, vivom, quom abīmus, liquimus, Pl. Cap. 282, *we left him alive when we came away.* For *cum* primum in narration, see 1925; for *cum* extemplō, 1926.

1867. (4.) The indicative perfect or present of vivid narration is regularly used with *cum*, *when*, to denote a momentary action when the apodosis denotes continued action: as,

cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquani, 6, 12, 1, *when Cuesar came to Gaul, the leaders of one party were the Aeduans, of the other the Sequanians.* eō cum veniō, praetor quiēscēbat, V. 4, 32, *when I got there, the praetor was taking a nap.*

1868. An emphatic indicative clause with *cum*, *while*, often follows the main action.

The clause with *cum* is usually inconsistent with the main action, and *cum* is often attended by *intereā*, *interim*, *all the time*, *etiam tum*, *still*, *nōndum*, *hauddum*, *not yet*, *no longer*, *quidem*, *by the way*, or *tamen*, *nihilominus*, *nevertheless*: as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1872. With *cum*, *when*, the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used to describe the circumstances under which the action of the main clause took place: as,

*cum rēx Pyrrhus populō Rōmānō bellum intulisset cumque dē imperiō certāmen esset cum rēge potenti, perfuga ab eō vēnit in castra Fabriciī, Off. 3, 86, king Pyrrhus having made war on the Roman nation, and there being a struggle for sovereignty with a powerful king, a deserter from him came into Fabricius's camp. eōdem tempore Attalus rēx moritur alterō et septuāgēsīmō annō, cum quattuor et quadrāgintā annōs rēgnāset, L. 33, 21, 1, the same year Attalus the king dies, in his seventy-second year, having reigned forty-four years. hic pāgus, cum domō exisset patrū nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat, I, 12, 5, this canton, sallying out from home in our fathers' recollection, had put Cassius, the consul, to death. nam cum inambulārem in xystō, M. ad mē Brūtus vēnerat, Br. 10, for as I was pacing up and down my portico, Brutus had come to see me. Antigonus in proeliō, cum adversus Seleucum et Lysimachum dīmīcāret, occisus est, N. 21, 3, 2, Antigonus was killed in battle fighting against Seleucus and Lysimachus. haec cum Crassus dīxisset, silentium est cōsecūtum, DO. 1, 160, a deep silence ensued after Crassus had finished speaking. cum annōs iam complūris societās esset, moritur in Galliā Quīnctius, cum adesset Naevius, Quinct. 14, the partnership having lasted several years, Quinctius died in Gaul, Naevius being there at the time.*

In this use, as the examples show, *cum* with the subjunctive is often equivalent to a participle or an ablative absolute. The use is not found in Plautus (1861). Ennius and Terence have possibly each an instance (disputed) of it, but it was certainly rare until the classical period, when it became one of the commonest of constructions. It must not be confounded with the special uses of the subjunctive mentioned in 1859.

1873. The difference in meaning between *cum* with the indicative and *cum* with the subjunctive may be illustrated by the following examples:

*Gallō nārrāvī, cum proximē Rōmae fuī, quid audissem, Att. 13, 49, 2, I told Gallus, when I was last in Rome, what I had heard (1866). a. d. III kal. Maiās cum essem in Cūmānō, accēpī tuās litterās, Fam. 4, 2, 1, I received your letter on the twenty-eighth of April, being in my villa at Cumae (1872). cum vāricēs secābantur C. Mariō, dolēbat, TD. 2, 35, while Marius was having his varicose veins lanced, he was in pain (1864). C. Marius, cum secārētur, ut suprā dīxī, vetuit sē adligārī, TD. 2, 53, Marius being under the surgeon's knife, as above mentioned, refused to be bound (1872). num P. Decius, cum sē dēvovēret et in mediam aciem inruēbat, aliquid dē voluptātibus suis cōgitābat? Fin. 2, 61, did Decius, offering himself up, and while he was dashing straight into the host, have any thought of pleasures of his own? (1872, 1864).*

(B.) EXPLANATORY AND CAUSAL cum.

1874. The indicative is often used with explanatory cum when the action of the protasis is coincident with that of the apodosis (1733).

In this use cum passes from the meaning of *when* to *that*, *in that*, or *in* or *by* with a verbal in *-ing*: as, hoc verbum quom illi quoidam dicō, prae-mōstrō tibi, Pl. Tri. 342, *in laying down this lesson for your unknown friend I'm warning you.* cum quiēscunt, probant, C. 1, 21, *their inaction is approval.* Denoting the means: as, tūte tibi prōdes plūrumum, quom servitūtem ita fers ut ferri decet, Pl. Cap. 371, *you do yourself most good by bearing slavery as it should be borne.* For similar uses of quod, quia, and quī, see 1850.

1875. Explanatory cum is also used with verbs of emotion; likewise with grātulor and grātiās agō: as, quom tu's liber, gaudeō, Pl. Men. 1148, *that you are free, I'm glad.* grātulor tibi, cum tantum valēs apud Dolābellam, Fam. 9, 14, 3, *I give you joy that you stand so well with Dolabella.* tibi maximās grātiās agō, cum tantum litterae meae potuērunt, Fam. 13, 24, 2, *I thank you most heartily in that my letter had such influence.* For similar uses of quod and quia, see 1851, 1852.

1876. Explanatory cum is also used in the sense of *since*, *although*, or *even though*. In these meanings it introduces the indicative in old Latin (1878): as,

Denoting cause: istō tū pauper es, quom nimis sāctē piū's, Pl. R. 1234, *that's why you are poor yourself, since you are over-scrupulously good.* quom hoc nōn possum, illud minus possem, T. Ph. 208, *since this I can't, that even less could I.* Adversative cause: insānīre mē aiunt, quom ipsi insāniunt, Pl. Men. 831, *they say I'm mad, whereas they are mad themselves.* Concession: sat sic suspectus sum, quom careō noxiā, Pl. B. 1005, *I am enough distrusted as it is, even though I'm void of wrong.*

1877. cum, *since*, *although*, *even though*, usually introduces the subjunctive: as,

Denoting cause: cum in commūnibus suggestis cōsistere nōn auderet, contionārī ex turri altā solēbat, TD. 5, 59, *since he did not dare to stand up on an ordinary platform, he always did his speaking from a lofty tower*, of Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse. Aeduī cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, I, 11, 2, *since the Aeduans could not defend themselves, they sent ambassadors to Caesar.* Adversative cause: fuit perpetuō pauper, cum dīvitissimus esse posset, N. 19, 1, 2, *he was always poor, whereas he might have been very rich*, of Phocion. Pyladēs cum sis, dicēs tē esse Orestē? Fin. 2, 79, *whereas you are Pylades, will you declare yourself Orestes?* Concession: ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, 5, 40, 7, *Cicero himself, though he was in extremely delicate health, did not allow himself even the night-time for rest.* ille Catō, cum esset Tusculi nātus, in populī Rōmānī civitātem susceptus est. Leg. 2, 5, *the great Cato, though born at Tusculum, was received into the citizenship of the Roman nation.*

1878. This use of the subjunctive is not found in Plautus. It is thought to have begun in the time of Terence, who may have a couple of instances (disputed). Thereafter, it grew common and was the regular mood used with explanatory and causal *cum* in the classical period.

1879. Explanatory *cum* is sometimes introduced by *quippe*, rarely by *ut pote*, *naturally*: as,

*tum vērō gravior cūra patribus incessit, quippe cum prōdī causam ab suis cernerent*, L. 4, 57, 10, *then the senators were still more seriously concerned, and naturally enough, since they beheld their cause betrayed by their own people.* *valētūdō, ē quā iam ēmereram, ut pote cum sine febrī labōrāssem*, Att. 5, 8, 1, *an illness from which I had already recovered, naturally, since it was unaccompanied by fever.* *quippe cum* occurs in Cicero, Nepos, and Livy; *ut pote cum* is used once in Cicero's letters, once by Pollio to Cicero, and in late writers. For *quippe* and *ut pote* with a causal relative, see 1827.

1880. The adversative idea is often emphasized by the use of *tamen* in the main clause: as, *cum primī ordinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant*, 7, 62, 4, *though the front ranks of the enemy had fallen, yet the rest made a most spirited resistance.*

### (C.) *cum* . . . *tum*.

1881. A protasis with *cum* is often followed by an emphatic apodosis introduced by *tum*.

The protasis denotes what is general or common or old; the apodosis what is special or strange or new. In classical Latin *tum* is often emphasized by *maximē*, *in primis*, *vērō*, &c.

In this use the mood is more commonly the indicative and the time of the two verbs is apt to be identical: as, *quom mihi paveō, tum Antiphō mē excruciat animī*, T. Ph. 187, *whilst for myself I tremble, Antipho puts me in a perfect agony of soul.* But *cum antea* *distinēbar maximis occupātiōnibus, tum hōc tempore multō distineor vehementius*, Fam. 12, 30, 2, *I was distracted by most important engagements before, but now I am very much more distracted.* Less frequently the subjunctive, to denote cause or concession (1877): as, *cum tē ā pueritiā tuā dilēxerim, tum hōc multō ācrius diligō*, Fam. 15, 9, 1, *whereas I have always loved you from your boyhood, for this I love you with a far intenser love.* By abridgement of the sentence (1057), *cum . . . tum* come to be copulative conjunctions (1687): as, *mōvit patrēs cōscriptōs cum causa tum auctor*, L. 9, 10, 1, *both the cause and its supporter touched the conscript fathers.*

---

### *quoniam*.

1882. *quoniam*, compounded of *quom* and *iam*, *when now*, refers primarily to time, but is seldom so used and only by early writers. The temporal meaning passed early into an exclusively causal meaning, *since*. In both meanings it regularly introduces the indicative (1721). For special reasons, however, the subjunctive is used, as in indirect discourse (1725), or by attraction (1728).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## quam.

1888. *quam*, *as* or *than*, introduces an indicative protasis in periods of comparison. For special reasons, however, the subjunctive is used, as by attraction (1728), or of action conceivable (1731); see also 1896, 1897.

But usually periods of comparison are abridged (1057) by the omission of the verb or of other parts in the protasis (1325).

## WITH THE INDICATIVE.

1889. (1.) *quam*, *as*, is used in the protasis of a comparative period of equality, generally with *tam* as correlative in the apodosis: *as*,

*tam facile vincēs quam pirum volpēs comēst*, Pl. *Most.* 559, *you'll beat as easily as Reynard eats a pear.* *tam excoctam reddam atque ātram quam carbōst*, T. *Ad.* 849, *I'll have her stewed all out and black as is a coal.* From Cicero on, the apodosis is in general negative or interrogative: *as*, *quōrum neutrum tam facile quam tū arbitrāris concēditur*, *Div.* 1, 10, *neither of these points is as readily granted as you suppose.* *quid est orātōri tam necessārium quam vōx?* *DO.* 1, 251, *what is so indispensable to the speaker as voice?* Otherwise *nōn minus . . . quam*, *no less than, just as much*, or *nōn magis . . . quam*, *just as little or just as much*, is often preferred to *tam . . . quam*: *as*, *accēpī nōn minus interdum orātōrium esse tacēre quam dicere*, Plin. *Ep.* 7, 6, 7, *I have observed that silence is sometimes quite as eloquent as speech.* *nōn magis mihi deerit inimicus quam Verri defuit*, V. 3, 162, *I shall lack an enemy as little as Verres did.* *domus erat nōn dominō magis ornāmētō quam civitātī*, V. 4, 5, *the house was as much a pride to the state as to its owner.*

1890. Instead of *tam*, another correlative is sometimes used in the apodosis. Thus, *aequē . . . quam* occurs in Plautus and in Livy and later writers, generally after a negative expression; *perinde . . . quam* in Tacitus and Suetonius; *iūxtā . . . quam* once in Livy. Sometimes the apodosis contains no correlative.

1891. *tam . . . quam* become by abridgement coordinating words: *as*, *tam vēra quam falsa cernimus*, *Ac.* 2, 111, *we make out things both true and false.*

1892. The highest possible degree is expressed by *tam . . . quam quī* and a superlative without a verb; or by *quam* and a superlative with or without a form of *possum* (1466); sometimes by *quantus* or *ut*: *as*,

(a.) *tam sum misericors quam vōs*; *tam mītis quam quī lēnissimus*, *Sull.* 87, *I am as tender-hearted as you; as mild as the gentlest man living.* *tam sum amicus rēi pūblicaē quam quī maximē*, *Fam.* 5, 2, 6, *I am as devoted a patriot as anybody can be.* (b.) *quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam contendit*, 1, 7, 1, *he pushes into Gaul by as rapid marches as he can.* *cōstituērunt iūmentōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere*, 1, 3, 1, *they determined to buy up the greatest possible number of beasts of burden.* (c.) *tanta est inter eōs, quanta maxima potest esse, mōrum distantia*, L. 74, *there is the greatest possible difference of character between them.* Or without any superlative: *fuge domum quantum potest*, Pl. *Men.* 850, *run home as quick as e'er you can.* *ut potuī accurātissimē tē tūtātus sum*, *Fam.* 5, 17, 2, *I defended you as carefully as I could.*

## Conjunctive Sentences: *quam*. [1893–1896.]

1893. *quam* . . . *tam*, with two comparatives or superlatives, is equivalent to the more common *quō* . . . *eō* with two comparatives (1973): as,

(a.) *magis quam id reputō, tam magis ūror*, Pl. *B.* 1091, *the more I think it over, the sorer do I feel*. This use is found in Plautus, Lucretius, and Vergil. (b.) *quam quisque pessumē fēcit, tam maxumē tūtus est*, S. *I.* 31, 14, *the worse a man has acted, the safer he always is*. This use is found in Plautus, Terence, Cato, Varro, and Sallust.

1894. (2.) *quam*, *than*, is used in the protasis of a comparative period of inequality, with a comparative in the apodosis: as,

*melīōrem quam ego sum suppōnō tibi*, Pl. *Cu.* 256, *I give you in my place a better man than I am*. *plūra dixi quam volui*, V. 5, 79, *I have said more than I intended*. *Antōniō quam est, volō peius esse*, Att. 15, 3, 2, *I hope Antony may be worse off than he is*. *doctrīna paulō dūrior quam nātūra patitur*, Mur. 60, *principles somewhat sterner than nature doth support*. *potius sērō quam numquam*, L. 4, 2, 11, *better late than never*. *corpus patiēns algōris suprā quam cuiquam crēdibile est*, S. *C.* 5, 3, *a constitution capable of enduring cold beyond what anybody could believe*. *suprā quam* is found in Cicero, Sallust, and often in late writers; *infrā* and *ultrā quam* in Cicero, Livy, and late writers (*infrā quam* also in Varro); *extrā quam* in Ennius, Cato, and in legal and official language in Cicero and Livy.

1895. *quam* is also used with some virtual comparatives: thus, *nihil aliud, nōn aliud quam*, *no other than*, often as adverb, *only*; *secus quam* with a negative, *not otherwise than*; *bis tantō quam*, *twice as much as*; and *prae quam* in old Latin, *in comparison with how*; and similar phrases: as,

(a.) *per bīdium nihil aliud quam stetērunt parātī ad pugnandum*, L. 34, 46, 7, *for two days they merely stood in battle array*. This use occurs first in Sallust, then in Nepos, Livy, and later writers. (b.) *mihī erit cūrae nē quid fiat secus quam volumus*, Att. 6, 2, 2, *I will see to it that nothing be done save as we wish*. This use occurs in Plautus, Terence, Sallust, Cicero, Livy, and later writers. With both *aliud* and *secus* the clause is rarely positive, with *aliud* not before Livy. For *atque (ac)* instead of *quam* when the first clause is negative, see 1654. (c.) *bis tantō valeo quam valui prius*, Pl. *Merc.* 207, *I am twice as capable as I was before*. (d.) *nil hoc quidem est trīgintā minae, prae quam aliōs sūmptūs facit*, Pl. *Most.* 981, *oh, this is nothing, thirty minae, when you think what other sums he spends*. *prae quam* is found only in Plautus rarely. Similar phrases are: *contra quam*, in Cicero, Livy, and later writers; *praeter quam*, in Plautus, Naeuius, and frequently in other writers when followed by *quod* (1848); *super quam quod* (1848) and *insuper quam* in Livy; *pro quam* in Lucretius; *advorsum quam*, once in Plautus. *prae quam* is sometimes followed by a relative clause: as, *prae quam quod molestumst*, Pl. *Am.* 634, *compared with what is painful*. For *ante (or prius)* and *post quam*, see 1911, 1923.

### WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1896. The subjunctive is used with *quam* or *quam ut* after comparatives denoting disproportion (1461): as,



quicquid erat oneris Segestānis impōnēbat, aliquantō amplius quam ferre possent, *V. 4, 76, he would impose every possible burden on the Segestans, far too much for them to bear.* quis nōn intellegit Canachī signa rigidiora esse, quam ut imitentur vērītatem? *Br. 70, who does not feel that the statues of Canachus are too stiff to be true to nature?* clārior rēs erat quam ut dissimulārī posset, *L. 26, 51, 11, the thing was too notorious to be hushed up.* Instead of ut, quī is also used by Livy and later writers: as, maior sum quam cui possit Fortūna nocēre, *O. 6, 195, too strong am I for Fortune to break down,* says infatuated Niobe. All these sentences are extensions of the subjunctive of action conceivable (1554, 1818).

1897. The subjunctive is used in clauses introduced by potius quam, *rather than*, to denote action merely assumed. citius, ante, or prius, *sooner*, is sometimes used in the sense of potius: as,

potius quam tē inimicum habeam, faciam ut iusseris, *T. Eu. 174, rather than make you my enemy, I will do as you tell me.* dēpugnā potius quam serviās, *Att. 7, 7, 7, fight it out rather than be a slave.* potius vituperātiōnem incōstantiae suscipiam, quam in tē sim crūdēlis, *V. 5, 105, I will submit to the charge of inconsistency rather than be cruel towards you.* animam omittunt prius quam locō dēmigrent, *Pl. Am. 240, they lose their lives sooner than yield their ground.* Livy has also potius quam ut. All these sentences are extensions of the subjunctive of desire (1540, 1817).

### WITH THE INFINITIVE.

1898. When the main clause is an infinitive, quam is often followed by an infinitive: as,

mālim morīrī meōs quam mendicārier, *Pl. Vid. 96, better my bairns be dead than begging bread.* vōcēs audiēbantur prius sē cortice ex arboribus victūrōs, quam Pompēium ē manibus dīmissūrōs, *Caes. C. 3, 49, 1, shouts were heard that they would live on the bark of trees sooner than let Pompey slip through their fingers.*

---

### quamquam.

1899. (1) quamquam is used in old Latin as an indefinite adverb, *ever so much, however much*: as,

quamquam negōtiumst, sī quid veis, Dēmiphō, nōn sum occupātus umquam amicō operam dare, *Pl. Mer. 287, however busy I may be (1814), if anything you wish, dear Demipho, I'm not too busy ever to a friend mine aid to lend.* id quoque possum ferre, quamquam iniūriumst, *T. Ad. 205, that also I can bear, however so unfair.* From an adverb, quamquam became a conjunction, *although*.

1900. (2.) quamquam, *although*, introduces the indicative in the concession of a definite fact. In the later writers it is also sometimes used with the subjunctive, sometimes with a participle or an adjective.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

Instead of *vīs*, other forms are sometimes used: as, *volumus*, *volent*, *velit*, &c.: thus, *quam volent facētī sint*, *Cael.* 67, *they may be as witty as they please* (1735). *quam volet Epicūrus iocētur et dicat sē nōn posse intellegere, numquam mē movēbit*, *DN.* 2, 46, *Epicurus may joke and say he can't understand it as much as he likes, he will never shake me*. From an adverb, *quam vīs* became a conjunction, *however much, even if*.

1905. (2.) The subjunctive with the conjunction *quamvīs*, *however much, even if, though*, denotes action merely assumed; when the action is to be denoted as real, *ut* or *sicut* or the like, with the indicative, usually follows in the best prose (1943): as,

(a.) *quamvīs sint hominēs quī Cn. Carbōnem ōderint, tamen hī dēbent quid metuendum sit cōgitāre*, *V.* 1, 39, *though there may be men who hate Carbo, still these men ought to consider what they have to fear*. *nōn enim possis, quamvīs excellās*, *L.* 73, *you may not have the power, however eminent you may be*. This use begins with Cicero and Varro, and gets common in late writers. Not in Livy. (b.) *illa quamvīs rīdícula essent, sicut erant, mihī tamen rīsum nōn mōvērunt*, *Fam.* 7, 32, 3, *droll as this really was, it nevertheless did not make me laugh*. *quamvīs enim multīs locīs dicat Epicūrus, sicutī dicit, satis fortiter dē dolōre, tamen nōn id spectandum est quid dicat*, *Off.* 3, 117, *even though Epicurus really does speak in many places pretty heroically about pain, still we must not have an eye to what he says*. In the Augustan poets rarely, and often in Tacitus, the younger Pliny, and late writers, the subjunctive, without a parenthetical phrase introduced by *ut* or the like, is used of an action denoted as real: as, *expalluit notābiliter, quamvīs palleat semper*, *Plin. Ep.* 1, 5, 13, *he grew pale perceptibly, though he is always a pale man*. *maestus erat, quamvīs laetitiam simulāret*, *Ta.* 15, 54, *sad he was, though he pretended to be gay*.

1906. *quamvīs*, *even if, though*, is also sometimes used with the indicative (1900): as,

*erat dignitāte rēgiā, quamvīs carēbat nōmine*, *N.* 1, 2, 3, *he had the authority of a king, though not the title*. *quamvīs tacet Hermogenēs, cantor est*, *H. S.* 1, 3, 129, *though he open not his mouth, Hermogenes remains a singer still*. This use occurs twice in Lucretius, once in Cicero, Nepos, and Livy each, in Varro, in the Augustan poets, and sometimes in late writers. Not in Tacitus, Pliny the younger, Juvenal, Martial, or Suetonius.

1907. It may be mentioned here that the indefinite adverb *quamlibet*, *however you please*, is used in subjunctive clauses of concession or permission (1904) once or twice by Lucretius, Ovid, and Quintilian. Velleius has it with the participle, a construction sometimes found with *quamvīs* in late writers.

### —◆—

### tamquam.

1908. *tamquam*, *just as*, introduces an indicative protasis in periods of comparison.

The *tam* properly belongs to the apodosis and is attracted to the protasis. *tamquam* has sometimes as correlative *sic* or *ita*.

*tē hortor ut tamquam poētae bonī solent, sic tū in extrēmā parte mūneris tui diligentissimus sis, Qfr. 1, 1, 46, I urge you to be very particular at the end of your task, just as good poets always are. tamquam philosophōrum habent disciplinae ex ipsīs vocābula, parasitī ita ut Gnathōnici vocentur, T. Eu. 263, that so parasites may be called Gnathonites even as schools of philosophy are named from the masters. Usually, however, ut (1944) or quemadmodum is used in this sense; and tamquam occurs oftenest in abridged sentences (1057), particularly to show that an illustration is untrue or figurative: as, Odyssia Latīna est sic tamquam opus aliquod Daedalī, Br. 71, the Odyssey in Latin is, you may say, a regular work of Daedalus. oculī tamquam speculātōrēs altissimum locum obtinent, DN. 2, 140, the eyes occupy the highest part, as a sort of watchmen.*

1909. In late writers, especially in Tacitus, *tamquam* is often used to introduce a reason or motive, or a thought indirectly expressed: as,

*invisus tamquam plūs quam cīvilia agitāret, Ta. 1, 12, hated on the ground that his designs were too lofty for a private citizen (1725). lēgātōs increpuit, tamquam nōn omnēs reōs perēgissent, Plin. Ep. 3, 9, 36, he reproved the embassy 'for not having completed the prosecution of all the defendants' (1852, 1725). suspectus tamquam ipse suās incenderit aedīs, J. 3, 222, suspected of having set his own house afire.*

1910. For *tamquam* instead of *tamquam sī*, see 2118; with a participle, 2121.

---

### *antequam, priusquam.*

1911. *antequam* and *priusquam* accompany both the indicative and the subjunctive.

*ante* and *prius* properly belong to the apodosis, and regularly stand with it if it is negative; but otherwise they are usually attracted to the protasis.

*antequam* is very seldom found in old Latin, and it is in general much rarer than *priusquam*, except in Tacitus.

#### IN GENERAL STATEMENTS.

1912. In general present statements, *antequam* and *priusquam* regularly introduce the perfect indicative or the present subjunctive: as,

*membris ūtimur priusquam didicimus cuius ea causā ūtilitātis habēamus, Fin. 3, 66, we always use our limbs before we learn for what purposes of utility we have them (1613). priusquam lūcet, adsunt, Pl. MG. 709, before 'tis light they're always here; here lūcet is equivalent to inlūxit. ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus, Sen. QN. 2, 12, 6, we always see the flash before we hear the sound. priusquam sēmen mātūrum siet, secātō, Cato, RR. 53, always cut before the seed is ripe (1575). With the perfect subjunctive in the indefinite second person (1030): as, hoc malum opprimit *antequam* prōspicere potueris, V. 1, 39, this calamity always overwhelms you before you can anticipate it (1731, 1558). For *priusquam*, sooner than, see 1897.*

1913. The future indicative is used a few times in general statements by old and late writers, and the perfect subjunctive after a negative clause rarely by Tacitus: as, *bovēs priusquam in viam agēs, pice cornua infima unguītō*, Cato, *RR.* 72, *always smear the hoofs of your oxen with pitch before you drive them on the road* (1625, 1577). *deūm honor principī nōn ante habētur quam agere inter hominēs dēsierit*, Ta. 15, 74, *divine honours are not paid to an emperor before he has ceased to live among men*. Cicero has the perfect subjunctive in a definition: thus, *prōvidentia, per quam futūrum aliquid vidētur antequam factum sit*, *Inv.* 2, 160, *foresight is the faculty through which a future event is seen before it has taken place*. He also has the present indicative once: *Div.* 1, 120.

1914. In general past statements *antequam* and *priusquam* introduce the subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect; but this use is very rare: as, *dormire priusquam somni cupidō esset*, *S. C.* 13, 3, *a-sleeping always before they felt sleepy*. *ita saepe magna indolēs virtūtis, priusquam rēi pūblicae prōdesse potuisset, extincta est*, *Ph.* 5, 47, *thus character of unusual promise was oftentimes cut off, before it could do the government any good*.

#### IN PARTICULAR STATEMENTS.

1915. In particular present or future statements, *antequam* and *priusquam* introduce a present, either indicative or subjunctive; in future statements the future perfect is also used, and regularly when the main verb is future perfect: as,

*antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dīcam*, *C.* 4, 20, *before I come back to the motion, I will say a little about myself* (1593). *est etiam prius quam abis quod volo loquī*, *Pl. As.* 232, *there's something else I want to say before you go*. *antequam veniat in Pontum, litterās ad Cn. Pompeium mittet*, *Agr.* 2, 53, *before he reaches Pontus, he will send a letter to Pompey*. *prius quam ad portam veniās, est pistrilla*, *T. Ad.* 583, *there's a little bakery just before you get to the gate*. *nihil contrā disputābō priusquam dixerit*, *Fl.* 51, *I will not argue to the contrary before he has spoken* (1626). *neque prius, quam dēbellāverō, absistam*, *L.* 49, 39, 9, *and I will not leave off before I have brought the war to an end*. *sī quid mihi acciderit priusquam hōc tantum malī viderō*, *Mil.* 99, *if anything shall befall me before I see this great calamity*. *neque prōmittō quicquam neque respondeō prius quam gnātum viderō*, *T. Ph.* 1044, *I'm not promising anything nor making any answer before I see my son* (1593). Tacitus uses neither the present indicative nor the future perfect.

1916. In old Latin the future and the perfect subjunctive also occur: as, *prius quam quoiquam convivae dabis, gustātō tūte prius*, *Pl. Ps.* 885, *before you help a single guest, taste first yourself*; but Terence does not use the future, and it is found only once or twice later. *nūllō pactō potest prius haec in aedis recipī, quam illam amiserim*, *Pl. MG.* 1095, *on no terms can I take my new love to the house, before I've let the old love drop*; but usually the perfect subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

1917. In particular past statements *antequam* and *priusquam* introduce the perfect indicative, especially when the apodosis is negative. The imperfect subjunctive rarely occurs, chiefly in late writers.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

posteā quam or postquam.

ubī, ut, cum primum, simul atque.

1923. With posteā quam, postquam (posquam), *after*, the following words may conveniently be treated: ubī, ut, *when*; ubī primum, ut primum, cum primum, *when first*, and in Plautus quom extemplō; simul atque (or ac, less frequently et or ut, or simul alone), *at the same time with, as soon as*.

postquam, ubī, ut, cum primum, simul atque, accompany the indicative.

For examples of the use of tenses, see 1924-1934.

1924. In clauses introduced by posteā quam or postquam, the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, found a dozen times in the manuscripts of Cicero's works and elsewhere, is generally corrected in modern editions or usually the conjunctive particle is emended to posteā quom (cum). But the subjunctive may of course be used with this and the other particles mentioned in 1923 for special reasons, as with the indefinite second person (1731), by attraction (1728), and in indirect discourse (1725). For the subjunctive of repeated past action with ubī and ut, see 1932. The infinitive of intimation occurs in Tacitus (1539): as, postquam exuī aequālitās, prōvēnere dominātiōnēs, *Ta. 3, 26, after equality between man and man was dropped, there came a crop of tyrants*.

1925. In narration the perfect indicative is regularly used in clauses introduced by postquam, ubī, ut, cum primum, simul atque (1739): as,

postquam tuās litterās lēgī, Postumia tua mē convēnit, *Fam. 4, 2, 1, after I read your letter, your Postumia called on me.* postquam aurum abstulimus, in nāvem cōscendimus, *Pl. B. 277, after we got away the money, we took ship.* ubī ad ipsum vēni dēvorticulum, cōstitī, *T. Eu. 635, when I came exactly to the side street, I pulled up.* ubī sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit, graviter eōs accūsāt, 1, 16, 5, *when he came to see that he was put off a good while, he takes them roundly to task.* quī ut perōrāvit, surrēxit Clōdius, *QFr. 2, 3, 2, when he had finished speaking, up jumped Clodius.* ut abīi abs tē, fit forte obviam mihi Phormiō, *T. Ph. 617, when I left you, Phormio happened to fall in my way.* crimen eius modī est, ut, cum primum ad mē dēlātum est, ūsūrum mē illō nōn putārem, *V. 5, 158, the charge is of such a sort that, when first it was reported to me, I thought I should not use it.* cum primum Crētae litus attigit, nūntiōs mīsit, *L. 37, 60, 4, as soon as he touched the shore of Crete, he sent messengers.* ut primum loquī posse coepī, inquam, *RP. 6, 15, as soon as I began to be able to speak, I said.* quem simul atque oppidānī cōspexērunt, mūrū complēre coepērunt, 7, 12, 5, *as soon as the garrison espied him, they began to man the wall.* at hostēs, ubī primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt, 4, 12, 1, *but as soon as the enemy caught sight of our cavalry, they attacked and threw our men into disorder.* The conjunction simul atque is very rarely found in old Latin.

1926. The present indicative of vivid narration (1590) sometimes occurs: as,

postquam iam pueri septuennēs sunt, pater onerāvit nāvim magnam, Pl. Men. prol. 24, *after the boys were seven year olds, their father freighted a big ship.* quid ait, ubi mē nōminās, T. Hau. 303, *what sayeth she when you name me?* ubi neutri trāseundī initium faciunt, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit, 2, 9, 2, *neither party taking the initiative in crossing, Caesar marched his men back to camp.* Verbs of perceiving, especially videō, occur oftenest in this use, which is common in Plautus and Terence: as, postquam videt nūptiās adparārī, missast ancilla ilicō, T. Andr. 513, *after she sees a marriage on foot, her maid is sent forthwith.* abeō ab illis, postquam videō mē lūdificārier, Pl. Cap. 487, *seeing myself made game of, I leave them.* quem posteā quam videt nōn adesse, ardēre atque furere coepit, V. 2, 92, *seeing that the man does not appear, he began to rage and fume.* ubi hoc videt, init cōsiliū importūnī tyrannī, V. 5, 103, *seeing this, he adopted the policy of a savage tyrant.* Plautus uses also quom extemplō. Such protases often take on a causal sense (see also 1930).

1927. The present or perfect with postquam or ut is sometimes used in expressions equivalent to an emphasized accusative or ablative of time, the main verb being est or sunt: as, septingentī sunt annī postquam inclita condita Rōma est, E. in Varro, RR. 3, 1, 2, *'tis seven hundred years since glorious Rome was founded.* domō ut abiērunt hic tertius annus, Pl. St. 29, *this is the third year since they left home.* annus est octāvus ut imperium obtinēs, Ta. 14, 53, *it is the eighth year since you acquired empire.* For a similar use of cum, see 1871.

1928. The pluperfect with postquam, denoting resulting state (1615), occurs less frequently: as,

tum cum P. Africānus, posteā quam bis cōsul fuerat, L. Cottam in iūdicium vocābat, Caecil. 69, *at the time when Africanus, after he had twice been consul, was bringing Cotta to judgement.* postquam omnium oculōs occupāverat certāmen, tum āversam adoriuntur Rōmānam aciem, L. 22, 48, 4, *when every eye was fairly riveted on the engagement, that instant they fell upon the Romans in the rear.* Not in Plautus, once in Terence, and rare in classical writers.

1929. The pluperfect, less frequently the perfect, with postquam is used attributively with nouns denoting time.

In this use post is often separated from quam, and two constructions are possible: (a.) Ablative: annō post quam vōta erat aedēs Monētae dēdicātur, L. 7, 28, 6, *the temple of Moneta is dedicated a year after it was vowed.* Without post: quadringentēsīmō annō quam urbs Rōmāna condita erat, patriciī cōsulēs magistrātum iniēre, L. 7, 18, 1, *four hundred years after Rome town was founded, patrician consuls entered into office.* (b.) Accusative, with an ordinal, and post as a preposition, or, sometimes, intrā: post diem tertium gesta rēs est quam dixerat, Mil. 44, *the deed was done the next day but one after he said it.* See 2419.

1930. The imperfect with postquam expresses action continuing into the time of the main action. Such a protasis, especially when negative, usually denotes the cause of the main action: as,

Appius, postquam nēmō adībat, domum sē recēpit, L. 3. 46, 9, *Appius, finding that nobody presented himself, went back home.* posteā quam ē scaenā explōdēbātur, cōfūgit in huius domum, RC. 30, *after being repeatedly hissed off the stage, he took refuge in my client's house.*



In old Latin this use is found only once, in Plautus; it is most common in Livy, but occurs frequently in Tacitus. So occasionally the present, generally when the main action is present (see also 1926): as, *postquam nec ab Rōmānis vōbīs ūlla est spēs, nec vōs moenla dēfendunt, pācem adferō ad vōs*, L. 21, 13, 4, *now that it has become plain that you have no hope from the Romans, and that your walls are no protection to you, I bring peace unto you.* *postquam liberast, ubī habitet dīcere admodum incertē sciō*, Pl. E. 505, *now that she's free, I'm quite too ill informed to say where she lives.* *quae omnia intellegit nihil prōdesse, postea quam testibus convincitur*, V. 5, 103, *he knows that all this is fruitless, now that he is being refuted by witnesses.* The perfect with *postquam* or *ut* occurs occasionally in this use with the present in the main clause: as, *animus in tūtō locōst, postquam iste hinc abiit*, Pl. Ps. 1052, *my mind is easy, now that fellow's gone.* *nam ut in nāvī vecta's, crēdō timida's*, Pl. B. 106, *for after your voyage, of course you're nervous.*

1931. *postquam* and *ut* have sometimes the meaning of *ever since* or *as long as*: as,

*postquam nātus sum, satur numquam fui*, Pl. St. 156, *since I was born I've never had enough to eat.* *tibī umquam quicquam, postquam tuos sum, verbōrum dedi?* Pl. Most. 925, *have I once ever cheated you as long as I have been your slave?* *neque meum pedem intulī in aedīs, ut cum exercitū hinc profectus sum*, Pl. Am. 733, *I have n't set foot in the house ever since I marched out with the army.* *ut illōs dē rē pūblicā librōs ēdidisti, nihil ā tē postea accēpimus*, Br. 19, *we have had nothing from you since you published the work On the State.*

### ubī, ut, simul atque.

1932. *ubī, ut, or simul atque* (ac) often introduces a clause denoting indefinite or repeated action: as,

*adeō obcaecat animōs fortūna, ubī vim suam refringī nōn vult*, L. 5, 37, 1, *so completely does fortune blind the mind when she will not have her power thwarted.* *ubī salūtātiō dēflūxit, litterīs mē involvō*, Fam. 9, 20, 3, *when my callers go, I always plunge into my book* (1613). *omnēs profectō mulierēs tē amant, ut quaeque aspexit*, Pl. MG. 1264, *all the ladies love you, every time one spies you.* *simul atque sē inflēxit hīc rēx in dominātum iniūstiōrem, fit continuō tyrannus*, RP. 2, 48, *for the moment our king turns to a severer kind of mastery, he becomes a tyrant on the spot.* *Messānam ut quisque nostrūm vēnerat, haec vīsere solēbat*, V. 4, 5, *any Roman, who visited Messana, invariably went to see these statues* (1618). *hostēs, ubī aliquōs singulārēs cōspexerant, adoriēbantur*, 4, 26, 2, *every time the enemy saw some detached parties, they would charge.* The imperfect in this use is not common in classical writers, and occurs but once, with *ubī*, in old Latin; the pluperfect is rare before the silver age. Clauses with *ut* generally contain some form of *quisque* (2396). Plautus uses *quom extemplō* with the present and perfect. The subjunctive is found with *ubī* and *ut quisque* in cases of repeated past action (1730).

1933. *ubī, ut, or simul atque* rarely introduces an imperfect or pluperfect of definite time: as,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

*perge ut instituisti, RP. 2, 22, go on as you have begun. ut volēs mēd esse, ita erō, Pl. Ps. 240, as you will have me be, so will I be (1625). ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs, DO. 2, 261, as you sow, y'are like to reap (1626). ut nōn omnem frūgem in omnī agrō reperire possīs, sic nōn omne facinus in omnī vitā nāscitur, RA. 75, every crime does not start into being in every life, any more than you can find every fruit in every field (1731). Also in asseverations: ita mē dī amābunt, ut ego hunc auscultō lubēns, Pl. Aul. 496, so help me heaven, as I am glad to hear this man (1622).*

1938. *ut . . . ita or sic, as . . . so, often stand where concessive and adversative conjunctions might be used; while . . . nevertheless, although . . . yet, certainly . . . but: as,*

*ut nihil bonī est in morte, sic certē nihil malī, L. 14, while there is nothing good after death, yet certainly there is nothing bad. quō factō sicut glōriam auxit, ita grātiā minuit, Suet. Oth. 1, by this action he increased his reputation, but lessened his popularity. nec ut iniūstus in pāce rēx, ita dux bellī prāvus fuit, L. 1, 53, 1, but while he was an unjust king in peace, he was not a bad leader in war. This adversative correlation is found sometimes in Cicero, but is far more common in late writers.*

1939. *ut quisque, commonly with a superlative expression, is used in the protasis of a comparative period of equality, with ita or sic and commonly another superlative expression in the apodosis: as,*

*ut quaeque rēs est turpissima, sic maximē vindicanda est, Caec. 7, the more disgraceful a thing is, the more emphatically does it call for punishment. ut quisque optimē Graecē scīret, ita esse nēquissimum, DO. 2, 265, that the better Greek scholar a man was, the greater rascal he always was (1722). This construction is often abridged: as, sapientissimus quisque aequissimō animō moritur, CM. 83, the sage always dies with perfect resignation. optimus quisque praeceptor frequentīā gaudet, Quint. 1, 2, 9, the best teachers always revel in large classes. See 2397.*

1940. *ut often introduces a parenthetical idea, particularly a general truth or a habit which accounts for the special fact expressed in the main sentence: as,*

*nēmō, ut opīnor, in culpā est, Clu. 143, nobody, as I fancy, is to blame. excitābat flūctūs in simpulō, ut dīcitur, Grātīdīus, Leg. 3, 36, Gratidius was raising a tempest in a teapot, as the saying is. paulisper, dum sē uxor, ut fit, comparat, commorātus est, Mil. 28, he had to wait a bit, as is always the case, while his wife was putting on her things. hōrum auctōritāte adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita cōnsilia, Trebium retinent, 3, 8, 3, influenced by these people they detain Trebius, as might have been expected, sudden resolutions being always characteristic of the Gauls. sēditiōne nūntiātā, ut erat laenā amictus, ita vēnit in cōntiōnem, Br. 56, an outbreak was reported, and he came to the meeting all accoutred as he was, with his sacrificial robe on. Often elliptically: as, acūtī hominis, ut Siculī, TD. 1, 15, a bright man, of course, being a Sicilian. Aequōrum exercitus, ut quī permultōs annōs imbellēs cōgissent, trepidāre, L. 9, 45, 10, the army of the Aequians alarmed and irresolute, and naturally, since they had passed a great many years without fighting (1824, 1827).*

1941. *ut, as for example, is used in illustrations, particularly in abridged sentences (1057): as,*

genus est quod plūrēs partēs amplectitur, ut 'animal.' pars est, quae subest generi, ut 'equos,' *Inu.* 1, 32, a class is what embraces a number of parts, as 'living thing'; a part is what is included in a class, as 'horse.' sunt bēstiae in quibus inest aliquid simile virtūtis, ut in leōnibus, ut in canibus, *Fin.* 5, 38, there are brutes in which there is a something like the moral quality of man, as for instance the lion and the dog.

1942. The parenthetical clause with ut or prout sometimes makes an allowance for the meaning of a word, usually an adjective, in the main sentence: as,

civitās ampla atque flōrēs, ut est captus Germānōrum, 4, 3, 3, a grand and prosperous community, that is according to German conceptions. ut captus est servōrum, nōn malus, *T. Ad.* 480, not a bad fellow, as slaves go. Sthenius ab adulēscientiā haec comparārat, supellēctilem ex aere ēlegantiōrem, tabulās pictās, etiam argentī bene factī prout Thermī-tāni hominis facultātēs ferēbant, satis, *V.* 2, 83, Sthenius had been a collector from early years of such things as artistic bronzes, pictures; also of curiously wrought silver a goodly amount, that is as the means of a Thermae man went. Often in abridged sentences: as, scriptor fuit, ut temporibus illis, lūcū-lentus, *Br.* 102, he was a brilliant historian for the times. multae etiam, ut in homine Rōmānō' litterae, *CM.* 12, furthermore, extensive reading, that is for a Roman. ut illis temporibus, praedives, *L.* 4, 13, 1, a millionaire, for those times.

1943. ut, as indeed, as in fact, with the indicative, is used to represent that an action supposed, conceded, or commanded, really occurs: as,

sit Ennius sānē, ut est certē, perfectior, *Br.* 76, grant, for aught I care, that Ennius is a more finished poet, as indeed he is. utī erat rēs, Me-tellum esse ratī, *S. I.* 69, 1, supposing that it was Metellus, as in fact it was. This use begins in the classical period. It is found particularly with quamvis, 1905; with si, see 2017.

1944. ut, as, like, sometimes shows that a noun used predicatively is not literally applicable, but expresses an imputed quality or character: as,

Cicerō ea quae nunc ūsū veniunt cecinit ut vātēs, *N.* 25, 16, 4, Cicero foretold what is now actually occurring, like a bard inspired. canem et faelem ut deōs colunt. *Leg.* 1, 32, they bow the knee to dog and cat as gods. quod mē sicut alterum parentem diligit, *Fam.* 5, 8, 4, because he loves me like a second father. rēgiae virginēs, ut tōnstriculae, tondēbant barbam patris, *TD.* 5, 58, the princesses used to shave their father, just like common barber-girls. In an untrue or a merely figurative comparison tamquam (1908) or quasi is used.

1945. In old Latin, prae is combined with ut: praeut, compared with how: as, parum etiam, praeut futūrumst, praedicās, *Pl. Am.* 374, you say too little still compared with how 'twill be. praeut is sometimes followed by a relative clause: as, lūdum iocumque dīcet fuisse illum alterum, praeut huius rabiēs quae dabit, *T. Eu.* 300, he'll say the other was but sport and play, compared with what this youth will in his frenzy do.

1946. In Plautus sicut, with the indicative, has once or twice the meaning of since: as, quīn tū illam iubē abs tē abire quō lubet: sicut soror eius hūc gemina vēnit Ephesum, *MG.* 974, why, bid her go away from you wherever she may choose, since her twin sister here to Ephesus is come.

WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

utī or ut.

NEGATIVE ut nē, nē, or ut nōn.

1947. The subjunctive with *ut* is: (A.) That of action desired (1540), in clauses of purpose; in these the negative is *nē*, or sometimes *ut nē*, and *and that not*, *nēve* or *neu*, rarely *neque* or *nec*. *ut nē*, though used at all periods (not by Caesar, Sallust, or Livy), is chiefly found in older Latin; afterwards *nē* alone took its place (1706). *ut nōn* is used when the negative belongs to a single word. (B.) That of action conceivable (1554), in clauses of result; in these the negative is *ut nōn*, *ut nēmō*, *ut nūllus*, &c.; or with emphasis on the negative, *nēmō ut*, *nūllus ut*, *nihil ut*; also *vix ut*, *paene ut*, *prope ut*.

1948. Final and consecutive clauses with *ut* are of two classes: I. Complementary clauses, that is, such as are an essential complement of certain specific verbs or expressions; such clauses have the value of a substantive, and may represent a subject, an object, or any oblique case. II. Pure final or consecutive clauses, in which the purpose or result of any action may be expressed, and which are not essential to complete the sense of a verb.

(A.) PURPOSE.

I. COMPLEMENTARY FINAL CLAUSES.

1949. (1.) The subjunctive with *ut* or *nē* is used in clauses which serve to complete the sense of verbs of will or aim.

1950. (a.) Verbs of will include those of desire, request, advice, resolution, stipulation, command, or permission.

Will may be suggested by a general verb or expression: as, *dīcō*, *respondeō*, *nūntiō*, &c.; or denoted by specific ones, of which some of the commonest are: desire: *volō* (*mālō*), *concupiscō*, *optō*. request: *petō*, *postulō*, *flāgitō*, *ōrō*, *rogō*, *precor*, *obsecrō*, *implōrō*, *īnstō*, *urges*, *invītō*. advice: *suādeō*, *persuādeō*, *persuade*, *moneō*, *bid*, *admoneō*, *hortor*, *cēnseō*, *propose*, *vote*. resolution, stipulation: *dēcernō*, *statuō*, *decree*, *cōstituō*, *placet*, *sanciō*, *paciscor*, *pepigī*. command: *imperō*, *praecipio*, *praescribō*, *mandō*, *negōtium dō*, *ēdicō*, *ferō*, *caveō*, *interdicō*. permission: *concēdō*, *allow*, *permittō*, *committō*, *potestātem faciō*, *veniam dō*, *sinō*, *nōn patior*.

1951. (b.) Verbs of aim include those of striving, accomplishing, or inducing; such are:

striving: *agō* or *id agō*, *animum indūcō*, *temptō*, *operam dō*, *labōrō*, *nītor*, *ēnītor*, *mōlior*, *videō*, *prōspiciō*, *cūrō*, *nihil antiquius habeō quam*, *contendō*, *studeō*, *pūgnō*. accomplishing: *faciō* (*efficiō*, *perficiō*), *praestō*; *mereō*; *impetrō*, *adsequor*, *cōsequor*, *adipiscor*. inducing: *moveō*, *excitō*, *incitō*, *impellō*, *perpellō*, *cōgō*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

So with words like *iūs*, *lēx*, *mūnus*, &c.: as, *iūs esse bellī ut qui vicissent hīs quōs vicissent imperārent*, 1, 36, 1, *that rules of war entitled conquerors to lord it over conquered*. *quis nescit primam esse historiae lēgem, nē quid falsi dicere audeat?* *DO.* 2, 62, *who does not know that the first rule of history is that it shall not venture to say anything false?* *iūstī-tiae primum mūnus est ut nē cui quis noceat*, *Off.* 1, 20, *the first duty of justice is that a man harm nobody*. *nam id arbitror adprimē in vitā esse ūtile, 'ut nē quid nimis,' T. Andr.* 60, *for this I hold to be a rule in life that's passing useful, 'naught in overplus.'*

1957. (2.) The subjunctive with *ut* or *nē* is used in clauses which complete expressions of fear, anxiety, or danger.

*ut*, *that not*, *may not*, and *nē*, *lest*, *may*, were originally signs of a wish (1540): thus, *vereor, ut fiat, I am afraid; may it come to pass*, acquires the meaning of *I am afraid it may not come to pass* (1706); and *vereor, nē fiat, I am afraid; may it not come to pass*, of *I am afraid it may come to pass*. *metuō ut* is common in old Latin, and is used by Horace, but not by Caesar or Sallust, once by Cicero in the orations. *timeō ut* is rare, and first used by Cicero. *vereor ut* is not uncommon.

as *at vereor ut plācārī possit*, *T. Ph.* 965, *but I'm afraid she can't be reconciled*. *nē uxor resciscat metuit*, *Pl. As.* 743, *he is afraid his wife may find it out*. *ō puer, ut sis vitālis metuō, et maiōrum nē quis amicus frīgore tē feriat*, *H. S.* 2, 1, 60, *my boy, you'll not see length of days I fear, and that some grander friend may with his coldness cut you dead*. *nēquid summā dēperdat metuēns aut ampliēt ut rem*, *H. S.* 1, 4, 31, *in dread lest from his store he something lose or may not add to his estate*. *metuō nē nōs nōs-met perdiderimus uspiam*, *Pl. MG.* 428, *I'm afraid we've lost ourselves somewhere*. *sollicitus nē turba perēgerit orbem*, *J.* 5, 20, *apprehensive that the throng may have finished its round*. *nē nōn* is often, though rarely in old Latin, used for *ut*, and regularly when the expression of fear is negative: as, *nōn vereor nē hoc officium meum P. Serviliō nōn probem*, *V.* 4, 82, *I have no fear but I may make my services acceptable in the eyes of Servilius*. For *nōn metuō quīn*, see 1986.

1958. *vereor nē* is often equivalent to *I rather think*, and *vereor ut* to *hardly*. *vidē* (*videāmus*, *videndum est*) *nē*, and similar expressions, are sometimes used for *vereor nē*, to introduce something conjectured rather than proved: as,

*vereor nē barbarōrum rēx fuerit*, *RP.* 1, 58, *I rather think he was king over savages*. *vidē nē mea coniectūra multō sit vērīor*. *Clu.* 97, *I rather think my conjecture is in better keeping with the facts*.

1959. Other constructions with expressions of fear are: (a.) Indirect question. (b.) Accusative with infinitive. (c.) Complementary infinitive: as,

(a.) *erī semper lēnitās verēbar quorsum ēvāderet*, *T. Andr.* 175, *I was afraid how master's always gentleness would end*. *timeō quid sit*, *T. Hau.* 620, *I have my fears what it may be*. *timeō quid rērum gesserim*, *Pl. MG.* 397, *I am concerned to think what capers I have cut*. *metuō quid agam*, *T. Hau.* 720, *I'm scared and know not what to do* (1731). (b.) *ego mē cupiditātis rēgnī crīmen subitūrum timērem?* *L.* 2, 7, 9, *was I to fear being charged with aspiring to a throne?* (c.) *vereor cōram in ōs tē laudāre*, *T. Ad.* 269, *I am afraid to disgrace you with praise to the face* (2168).

1960. (3.) The subjunctive with *nē* is used in clauses which serve to complete the sense of verbs of avoiding, hindering, and resisting.

Such are: avoiding: *caveō, mē ēripiō, vitō*. hindering: *intercedō, interdico, recūsō, repugnō, temperō*; also the following which often have *quōminus* (1977): *dēterreō, impediō, obsistō, obstō, officiō, prohibeō, teneō*. resisting: *resistō, repugnō, recūsō*; with these last often *quōminus*. Some of the above verbs when preceded by a negative also take *quīn* (1986); *prohibeō* and *impediō* have also the accusative with the infinitive (2203). For the subjunctive coordinated with *cavē*, see 1711.

*nē quid eis noceātur neu quis invitus sacramentum dicere cōgātur ā Caesare cavētur*, *Caes. C. 1, 86, 4*, all precaution is taken by Caesar that no harm be done them, and that nobody be compelled to take the oath against his will. *per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit*, *1, 4, 2*, thanks to this display of retainers he succeeded in avoiding trial. *plūra nē scribam, dolore impediōr*, *Att. 11, 13, 5*, grief prevents me from writing more. *nē qua sibi statua pōnerētur restitit*, *N. 25, 3, 2*, he objected to having a statue erected in his honour.

## II. PURE FINAL CLAUSES.

1961. The subjunctive with *ut* or *nē* is used to denote the purpose of the main action.

The purpose is often indicated in the main sentence by an expression like *ideō, idcirco, propterea, eā mente, &c.*

*vigilās dē nocte, ut tuis cōsultōribus respondeās*, *Mur. 22*, you have to get up early in the morning to give advice to your clients. *maiōrēs nostrī ab arātrō addūxērunt Cincinnātum, ut dictātor esset*, *Fin. 2, 12*, our fathers brought Cincinnatus from his plough, to be dictator. *dicam auctiōnis causam, ut damnō gaudeant*, *Pl. St. 207*, I'll tell the reason for the sale, that o'er my losses they may gloat. *quīn etiam nē tōnsōrī collum committeret, tondēre fillās suās docuit*, *TD. 5, 58*, why, he actually taught his own daughters to shave, so as not to trust his throat to a barber. *Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, ad exercitum proficiscitur*, *4, 6, 1*, to avoid facing war on a more formidable scale, Caesar goes to the army. *tē ulciscar, ut nē inpūne in nōs inlūseris*, *T. Eu. 941*, I'll be revenged on you, so that you shan't play tricks on me for nothing (1947). *nē ignōrārētis esse aliquās pācis vōbis condiōnēs, ad vōs vēnī*, *L. 21, 13, 2*, I have come to you to let you know that you have some chances of peace (1754). *ita mē gessi nē tibi pudōrī essem*, *L. 40, 15, 6*, I comported myself in such a way that I might not be a mortification to you. *Mariōnem ad tē eō mīsī, ut tēcum ad mē venīret*, *Fam. 16, 1, 1*, I sent Mario to you with the intention of having him come with you to me. *idcirco nēmō superiōrum attigit, ut hīc tolleret? ideō C. Claudius rettulit, ut C. Verrēs posset auferre? V. 4, 7*, was that the reason why no former officials laid a finger on it, that this man might swoop it away? was that why Claudius returned it, that a Verres might carry it off? *danda opera est, ut etiam singulis cōsulātur, sed ita, ut ea rēs aut prōsit aut certē nē obsit rēi pūblicaē*, *Off. 2, 72*, we must be particular in regarding the interests of individuals as well, but with this restriction, that our action may benefit, or at any rate may not damage the country.



1962. The subjunctive with *ut* or *nē* is often used not to express the purpose of the main action, but in a parenthetical clause, as though dependant upon some verb unexpressed: as,

*ut in pauca cōferam, testāmentō factō mulier moritur, Caec. 17, to cut a long story short, the woman makes her will and dies. sed ut hīc nē ignōret, quae rēs agātur: dē nātūrā agēbāmus deōrum, DN. 1, 17, but that our friend here may know what is up: we were just on the nature of the gods. The tense is present, in late writers the perfect, as ut sic dixerim, Quint. 1, 6, 1. Here may also be mentioned the use of nēdum (rarely nē or, from Livy on, nēdum ut) with the present subjunctive (rarely the imperfect): as, satrapa numquam sufferre eius sūmptūs queat: nēdum tū possis, T. Hau. 452, a prince could n't stand her extravagance, much less could you. This is found in Terence and Lucretius once each, in Cicero, and later; not in Caesar. The preceding clause is negative or involves a negative idea. From Livy on, the verb may be omitted: as, vix clāmōrem eōrum, nēdum impetum tulēre, L. 34, 20, 7, they hardly stood their war cry, much less their charge.*

1963. The subjunctive is used in an assumption or concession with *ut* or *nē*, or if the negation belongs to a single word, with *ut nōn*, *nēmō*, &c.: as,

*ut taceam, quoivīs facile scitū est quam fuerim miser, T. Hec. 296, even supposing I say nothing, anybody can understand how unhappy I was. sed ut haec concēdantur, reliqua quī concēdī possunt? DN. 3, 41, but even supposing this be admitted, how can the rest be admitted? nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, TD. 2, 14, grant that suffering is not the chiefest evil, an evil it assuredly is (1553). vērūm ut hoc nōn sit, tamen praeclārum spectāculum mihi prōpōnō, Att. 2, 15, 2, but suppose this be not the case, still I anticipate a gorgeous show. ac iam ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimū nāvibus posse perspiciebant, 3, 9, 6, and even supposing everything turned out contrary to expectation, still they saw clearly that they had the advantage by sea. ut enim nēmīnem alium nisi T. Patinam rogāset, scire potuit prōdī flāminem necesse esse, Mil. 46, for even supposing he had asked nobody but Patina, he might have known that a priest must be appointed. This use is common in Cicero; not found in Plautus or Sallust.*

1964. The subjunctive with *ut* or *nē*, generally with *ita* as a correlative, sometimes has the force of a proviso: as,

*ita probanda est clēmentia, ut adhibeātur sevērītās, Off. 1, 88, mercy is to be commended, provided that strictness is employed. satis memoriae meae tribuent, ut maiōribus meis dignum crēdant, Ta. 4, 38, they will pay respect enough to my memory, provided they consider me worthy of my ancestors.*

## (B.) RESULT.

### I. COMPLEMENTARY CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

1965. The subjunctive with *ut* or *ut nōn* is used in clauses which serve to complete the sense of certain verbs and expressions, chiefly of bringing to pass, happening, and following.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiū id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant, 1, 5, 1, *after his death the Helvetians attempted just the same to carry out their resolution of moving out of their abodes* (1752). omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētiū fēcērint, ut domō ēmigrant, 1, 31, 14, *that all the Gauls must do just as the Helvetians had done and move away from home.* Helvētiū, cum id, quod ipsi diēbus XX aegerrimē cōfēcērant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs mittunt, 1, 13, 2, *when the Helvetians learned that the Roman commander had done in a single day what they had found it hard themselves to do in twenty, namely cross the river, they sent deputies* (1752). id aliquot dē causis acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī cōsilium caperent, 3, 2, 2, *it was due to a variety of reasons that the Gauls suddenly conceived the idea of making war again* (1758). hocine bonī esse officium servī exīstumas, ut erī suī corrumpat et rem et filium? Pl. *Most.* 27, *is this what you think the duty of a good slave, to waste his own master's property and corrupt his son?*

1969. tantum abest, *so far from*, is sometimes followed by a double ut, the first introducing an unreal, and the second a real action: as,

tantum abest ut haec bēstiārum causā parāta sint, ut ipsās bēstiās hominum grātiā generātās esse videāmus, *DN.* 2, 158, *so far from these things being made for brutes, we see that brutes themselves were created for man.* This use, very rarely personal, begins with Cicero, and is common in his writings and in Livy. Not in Caesar, Sallust, or Tacitus. Sometimes instead of ut the second sentence is coordinated (1700): tantum abfuit ut inflammārēs nostrōs animōs, somnum vix tenēbāmus, *Br.* 278, *so far from your firing our heart, we could hardly keep awake.* Or, the idea is expressed by ita nōn . . . ut: as, erat ita nōn timidus ad mortem, ut in aciē sit ob rem pūblicam interfectus, *Fin.* 2, 63, *so far from being afraid of death, he fell in battle for his country.*

## II. PURE CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

1970. The subjunctive is used with ut or ut nōn to denote result.

The result may be the result of an action or of a thing named in the main sentence. The main sentence often has a correlative to ut, expressing (a.) degree: as; tantus, *so great*, tam, *so* (with adjectives or adverbs). adeō, tantopere. (b.) quality: as, is (hic, ille, iste), *such*, tālis, ita, sic.

mōns altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent, 1, 6, 1, *an exceeding high mountain hung over, so that a very few could block the way.* dictitābant sē domō expulsōs, omnibus necessāriis egēre rēbus, ut honestā praescriptiōne rem turpissimam tegerent, *Caes. C.* 3, 32, 4, *they stoutly declared that they were driven out of house and home, and lacked the necessaries of life, thus veiling dishonour under the name of respectability.*

(a.) Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur, 1, 33, 5, *Ariovistus had put on such high and mighty airs as to seem intolerable.* adeō angustō mari cōflīxit, ut eius multitūdō nāvium explicārī nōn potuerit, *N.* 2, 4, 5, *he went into action in such cramped sea-room, that his armada could not deploy, of Xerxes* (1757).

(b.) eōs dēdūxī testēs ut dē istius factō dubium esse nēmini possit, *V. 4, 91, I have brought such witnesses that nobody can entertain a doubt of the defendant's guilt.* ita sē recipiēbat ut nihil nisi dē perniciē populī Rōmānī cōgitāret, *Ph. 4, 4, he retreated, it is true, but retreated with his mind running on nothing but how to ruin the country.* illa, ex tūribulīs quae ēvellerat, ita scītē in aureīs pōculīs inligābat, ut ea ad illam rem nāta esse dicerēs, *V. 4, 54, what he had torn from the censers he attached to golden cups so cunningly that you would have said it was just made for that very purpose* (1731, 1559).

For the imperfect subjunctive connected with a main general present, see 1751; for the independent present or perfect subjunctive with a main secondary tense, see 1757.

—◆—  
ubī.

1971. ubī, in the sense of *where* (709), has the ordinary construction of a relative (1812-1831). For ubī, *when*, see 1923-1926 and 1932-1934; as a synonym of sī, *if*, see 2110.

—◆—  
quō or quī.

1972. quō, *whereby, wherewith*, or in old Latin sometimes quī (689), is the instrumental ablative from the relative and interrogative stem quī-. Combined with minus, *the less, not*, quō gives quōminus.

WITH THE INDICATIVE.

1973. The indicative is used with quō and a comparative in the protasis of a comparative period, with eō or hōc and a comparative as correlative (1393): as,

quō dēlictum maius est, eō poena est tardior, *Caec. 7, the greater the sin is, the slower is the punishment.* The eō or hōc is sometimes omitted: as, quō plūrēs sumus, plūribus rēbus egēbimus, *L. 34, 34, 6, the more numerous we are, the more things we shall need.* In late writers, the comparative is sometimes omitted in the main clause, very rarely in the subordinate clause. quantō . . . tantō are also used like quō . . . eō: as, quantō diūtius cōsiderō, tantō mihi rēs vidētur obscurior, *DN. 1, 60, the longer I puzzle over it, the more incomprehensible the question seems to me.* quanto magis exergeō, tenuius fit, *Pl. R. 1301, the more I polish, the slimmer it gets.* This form is sometimes used with quisque or quis of indefinite persons, instead of the commoner ut . . . ita or sic (1939): as, quō quisque est sollertior, hōc docet labōriōsius, *RC. 31, the brighter a man is, the more wearisome he finds teaching.* quō quisque est maior, magis est plācābilis irae, *O. Tr. 3, 5, 31, the greater be the man, the easier 'tis his anger to appease.*

WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1974. The subjunctive is used with *quō* to express purpose.

*quō* differs but little in meaning from *ut* of purpose. It is used (a.) particularly in clauses containing a comparative expression, or (b.) in solemn law language.

(a.) *equitēs omnibus in locis pugnant, quō sē legiōnāriūs mīlitibus praeferrēt, 2, 27, 2, the troopers fought on every kind of ground, hoping to outshine the regular infantry thereby. medicō putō aliquid dandum esse, quō sit studiōsior, Fam. 16, 4, 2, I think it would be well to see your medical man, to make him more attentive. id amābō adiūtā mē quō id fiat facilius, T. Eu. 150, help me in that, I pray, that it may be the easier done. sublāta erat celebritās virōrum ac mulierum, quō lāmentātiō minuerētur, Leg. 2, 65, the large attendance of both sexes was done away with, to make the weeping and wailing less harrowing. (b.) hominī mortuō nē ossa legitō, quō pos fūnus faciat, Twelve Tables in Leg. 2, 60, he shall not gather up the bones of a dead man, with intent to celebrate the funeral a second time (1586). quī eōrum coiit, coierit, quō quis iūdicīō pūblicō condemnārētur, law in Clu. 148, whosoever of that number conspired or shall have conspired to have anybody condemned in a criminal court. Otherwise rarely used without a comparative expression, yet occasionally found thus in Plautus, Terence, Sallust, and Ovid: as, hanc simulant parere quō Chremētem absterreant, T. Andr. 472, they're pretending that she's lying in, to frighten Chremes off. So often in Tacitus.*

1975. *quō nē*, in a negative clause of purpose, is found in a disputed passage in Horace, but not again until late Latin. For *nōn quō*, *nōn eō quō*, introducing an untenable reason, see 1855.

1976. In old Latin *quī*, *whereby*, *wherewith*, *withal*, is partly felt as a live relative pronoun in the ablative, and partly as a mere conjunction of purpose; as a pronoun it may even take a preposition; as a conjunction, it may refer to a plural antecedent (689): as, *quasi patriciīs pueris aut monērolae aut anitēs aut cōturnicēs dantur, quicum lūsitent: itidem mī haec upupa, quī mē dēlectem datast, Pl. Cap. 1002, as to the sons of gentlemen or daws or ducks or quails are given, wherewith to play; just so to me this crow is given, to entertain myself withal. enim mihi quidem aequomst dari vehicla quī vehar, Pl. Aul. 500, in sooth 't were fair that carriages be given me, to ride withal. The indicative occurs where the subjunctive would be used in classical Latin: as, *multa concurrunt simul, quī coniectūram hanc faciō, T. Andr. 511, a thousand things combine whereby I come to this conjecture.**

---

*quōminus.*

1977. The subjunctive with *quōminus* (1972) is used to complete the sense of verbs of hindering or resisting.

Such verbs are: *impediō*, *teneō*, *hinder*, *interclūdō*, *dēterreō*, *obstō*, *obsistō*, *resistō*, *repugnō*, *nōn recūsō*; these verbs often have a subjunctive with *nē* (1960). Cicero rarely and Caesar never uses *quōminus* with *impediō* or *prohibeō*. For the accusative and infinitive with these verbs, see 2203. *quōminus* is also used with *moveor*, *am influenced*, *fit, it is owing to*, *stat per aliquem*, *somebody is responsible*, or indeed any expression implying hindrance. When the verb of hindering has a negative with it, *quīn* is often used; see 1986.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

1984. *mīrum quīn* with the subjunctive is used by Plautus in sarcastic expressions where *mīrum* is ironical: as, *mīrum quīn tū illō tēcum dīvitiās ferās*, Pl. *Tri.* 495, *strange enough, how you can't take your money there with you*, that is to Hades.

1985. The subjunctive with *quīn* (or *ut nōn*) is used after *nōn possum*, or *nōn possum* with an infinitive, usually *facere*, and with *fierī nōn potest*: as,

*nōn enim possum quīn exclāmem, eugē, eugē, Lysitelēs, πάλιν*, Pl. *Tri.* 705, *upon my word I must cry bravo, bravo, Lysiteles; encore!* *facere nōn potuī quīn tibi sententiam dēclārārem*, *Fam.* 6, 13, 1, *I could not help giving you my views.* *fierī nūllō modō poterat, quīn Cleomenī parcerētur*, *V.* 5, 104, *it was impossible not to spare Cleomenes.* *ēheu, nequeō quīn fleam, quom abs tē abeam*, Pl. *MG.* 1342, *O well-a-day, I needs must weep, for that from thee I part.* *nōn potuisti ūllō modō facere, ut mihi illam epistulam nōn mitterēs*, *Att.* 11, 21, 1, *you could not get along at all without writing me that letter* (1965).

1986. The subjunctive with *quīn* is used in clauses which complete the sense of verbs of restraining, abstaining, delaying, or doubting, when such verbs have a negative, expressed or implied.

Such verbs are (a.) restraining: *temperō mihi, teneō, restrain, retineō, contineō, dēterreō, reprimō.* abstaining: *praetermittō, intermittō.* delaying: *cunctor, differō, expectō, recūsō; nōn multum, nihil, paulum abest.* (b.) doubting: *dubitō, dubium est*; a doubt may also be implied in other words, or forms of words: as, *nōn metuō, nōn abest suspiciō, &c.*

(a.) *neque sibi hominēs barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat, quīn in prōvinciam exirent*, 1, 33, 4, *and he thought, as they were savages, they would not restrain themselves, but would sally out into the province.* *vix mē contineō quīn involem mōnstrō in capillum*, *T. Eu.* 859, *I scarce can keep from flying at the caitiff's hair.* *nihil praetermisi, quīn Pompēium ā Caesaris coniūctiōne āvocārem*, *Ph.* 2, 23, *I left no stone unturned to prevent Pompey from joining Caesar.* *abstinēre quīn attingās nōn queās*, Pl. *B.* 915, *you can't keep from touching it.* (b.) *nōn dubitat, quīn tē ductūrum negēs*, *T. Andr.* 405, *he does n't doubt that you'll refuse to marry.* *quis dubitet, quīn in virtūte dīvitiae sint?* *Par.* 48, *who can doubt that there is money in virtue?* *neque abest suspiciō quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit*, 1, 4, 4, *and ground is not wanting for the belief that he made away with himself.*

1987. *nōn dubitō* has other constructions: (a.) Indirect question. (b.) Accusative with the infinitive (in some authors: chiefly Nepos and Livy and later writers). (c.) Meaning *not hesitate*, the infinitive alone (2169). *quīn* seldom follows this meaning.

(a.) *nōn dubitō, quid nōbis agendum putēs*, *Att.* 10, 1, 2, *I have no doubt about what you think is our duty to do.* (b.) *neque enim dubitābant hostem ventūrum*, *L.* 22, 55, 2, *for they firmly believed the enemy would come.* (c.) *quid dubitāmus pultāre?* Pl. *B.* 1117, *why do we hesitate to knock?* *nōlite dubitāre quīn huic crēdātis omnia*, *IP.* 68, *do not hesitate to trust all to him.*

1988. The subjunctive with *quīn* is often used after general negative assertions, or questions implying a negative: as,

nēmō fuit omninō militum quī vulnerārētur, *Caes. C. 3, 53, 3, there was absolutely not a single soldier but was wounded.* nūllus Ephesī quī sciat, *Pl. B. 336, there's not a soul at Ephesus but knows.* quis in circum vēnit, quī is unōquōque gradū dē avāritiā tuā commonērētur? *V. 1, 154, who came to the circus without being reminded of your avarice at each and every step?* nūlla fuit civitās quī partem senātūs Cordubam mitteret, nōn civis Rōmānus quī conveniret, *Caes. C. 2, 19, 2, there was not a community but sent a part of its local senate to Corduba, not a Roman citizen, but went to the meeting.* For quī nōn after such expressions, see 1821. The main sentence often has tam, ita, sic, or tantus: as, nēmō est tam fortis, quī rēi novitāte perturbētur, *6, 39, 3, there was nobody so brave but was demoralized by the strangeness of the situation.* nīl tam difficilest quī quaerendō investigārī possiet, *T. Hau. 675, there's naught so hard but may by searching be tracked out.* Instead of quī, ut nōn or quī nōn is often used in such combinations (1821).

1989. The subjunctive in an untenable reason, negatively put, is sometimes introduced by nōn quī instead of nōn quod nōn or nōn quō nōn (1855): as, nōn quī parī virtūte aliī fuerint, *Ph. 7, 6, not that others may not have been his peers in virtue.*

1990. quī is used very rarely instead of quōminus to introduce clauses completing the sense of verbs which have no negative expressed or implied: as, once each in the *Bellum Alexandrinum*, in Tacitus, and in Seneca's prose.

### dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū.

1991. With the temporal particles dum, *while, until*, and dōnec, *until* (in old Latin dōnicum and in Lucretius dōnique), may be conveniently treated the relative quoad or quoad (that is quā or quō combined with ad), *while, until*, and the comparative quamdiū, *as long as*.

1992. dum, *while*, means originally *a while* (1151): as, circumspice dum, *Pl. Tri. 146, look round you a while, a minute, just look round* (1573). dum servī mei perplacet mihi cōsiliū, dum haud placet, *Pl. Merc. 348, one while my slave's plan suits me completely, another while it does n't suit.* dum . . . dum, *Accius in DN. 2, 89, one while . . . another.*

1993. As a pure conjunctive particle, dum, *while*, means either (A.) *in the time while*, or (B.) *all the time while*; in the latter sense quoad and quamdiū are also used. From *all the time while*, dum comes to mean (C.) *as long as, provided*; and (D.) *until*; in this sense quoad and dōnec are also used.

1994. The indicative is used in a protasis introduced by dum, quoad, or quamdiū, *while*; and the subjunctive in a protasis introduced by dum, *provided, or until*.

The subjunctive is also used for special reasons, as in indirect discourse (1725), by attraction (1728), of action conceivable (1731), or by late writers to express repeated past action (1730). See also 1997 and 2009, end.



(A.) dum, in the time while.

1995. The present indicative is regularly used with dum. *in the time while* (1739).

dum sometimes has as correlative *subitō, repente*; *iam, intereā, &c.*

The main verb may be present, future, or past; as, *dum haec dicit, abiit hōra*, T. *Eu.* 341, *while he thus prated, sped an hour away*. *inficī dēbet iis artibus quās sī, dum est tener, combiberit, ad maiōra veniet parā-tior*, *Fin.* 3, 9, *he should be imbued with such arts as will, if absorbed while he is young, render him the better equipped to deal with weightier business*. *nunc rem ipsam, ut gesta sit, dum breviter vōbīs dēmōnstrō, attendite*, *Tul.* 13, *now give your attention to the case itself, while I set forth to you briefly how it occurred*. *dum in his locis Caesar morātur, ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt*, 4, 22, 1, *while Caesar tarried in these regions, some envoys came to him*. *dum haec aguntur, vōce clārā exclāmat*, *Pl. Am.* 1120, *while this was going on, with clarion voice he cries aloud*. *haec dum aguntur, intereā Cleomenēs iam ad Helōrī litus pervēnerat*, *V.* 5, 91, *while this was going on, Cleomenes meantime had already arrived at the shore of Helorum*. The phrase *dum haec geruntur, meanwhile*, is often used by the historians to shift the scene: as, *dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit*, 3, 17, 1, *while this was going on among the Veneti, Sabinus arrived in the territory of the Venelli*. The present indicative is sometimes retained in indirect discourse, chiefly in poetry or late prose: as, *dīc, hospes, Spartaē nōs tē hic vīdisse iacentis, dum sāctis patriae lēgibus obsequimur*, *TD.* 1, 101, *tell it at Sparta, friend, that thou hast seen us lying here, obedient to our country's holy laws*. *dīcit sēsē illī ānulum, dum lūctat, dētrāxisse*, *T. Hec.* 829, *he says that, in the struggle, he pulled off her ring*.

1996. The future is rare and chiefly confined to old Latin: as,

*animum advortite, dum huius argūmentum ēloquar cōmoediae*, *Pl. prol. Am.* 95, *attention lend, while I set forth the subject of this comedy*. *dum pauca dīcam, breviter attendite*, *V.* 3, 163, *while I speak briefly, give me your attention a few moments*.

1997. The imperfect indicative is rare; the imperfect subjunctive is sometimes used, chiefly by the poets and historians: as,

(a.) *dum haec Vēis agēbantur, interim capitōlium in ingentī perīculō fuit*, *L.* 5, 47, 1, *while this was going on at Vei, the capitol meanwhile was in terrible peril*. The pluperfect of resulting state is rarer: as, *dum in unam partem oculōs hostium certāmen āverterat, plūribus locis capitur mūrus*, *L.* 32, 24, 5, *while the eyes of the enemy were turned away in one direction toward the fight, the wall is carried in several places* (1615). (b.) *dum se rēx āverteret, alter ēlātam secūrim in caput dēiēcit*, *L.* 1, 40, 7, *while the king was looking another way, the second man raised his axe and brought it down on his head*.

1998. The clause with *dum* often denotes the cause of the main action, particularly when the subjects of both verbs are the same and the action of the protasis is coincident with that of the apodosis (1733).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



(c.) *Massiliēnsēs quoad licēbat, circumvenīre nostrōs contendēbant*, *Caes. C. 1, 58, 1, as long as the Massilia people had a chance, they kept trying to surround our men. dum necesse erat, rēsque ipsa cōgēbat, ūnus omnia poterat*, *RA. 139, as long as it had to be, and circumstances demanded, one man controlled the world (1733)*. From Sallust on, the present of vivid narration (1590) is occasionally found with *dum* in this sense.

2002. In poetry and in late prose writers, beginning with Lucretius and Livy, *dōnec* is used in the sense of *all the time while*, usually with the indicative, but sometimes with the subjunctive of repeated past action: as, *dōnec grātus eram tibi, Persārūm viguī rēge beātor*, *H. 3, 9, 1, as long as I was loved of thee, I flourished happier than the Persians' king. dōnec armātī cōfertique abībant, peditum labor in persequendō fuit*, *L. 6, 13, 4, as long as they were moving off under arms and in close array, the task of pursuit fell to the infantry. vulgus trucidātum est dōnec ira et diēs permānsit*, *Ta. 1, 68, the rank and file were butchered as long as wrath and daylight held out. nihil trepidābant, dōnec continentī velut ponte agerentur*, *L. 21, 28, 10, the elephants were not a bit skittish as long as they were driven along what seemed a continuous bridge (1730)*. The future is rare: as, *nātus enim dēbet quicumque est velle manēre in vitā, dōnec retinēbit blanda voluptās*, *Lucr. 5, 177, who'er is born must wish in life to abide, so long as him fond pleasure shall detain. dōnec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amicōs*, *O. Tr. 1, 9, 5, as long as fortune smiles, thou troops shalt count of friends*.

(C.) *dum, as long as, provided, so.*

2003. The present and imperfect subjunctive are used in *provisos* introduced by *dum, as long as, provided, so*.

*dum* is sometimes accompanied by *modo, only*, or *quidem, that is*; or (from Terence on) *modo* is used without *dum*. The negative is *nē* (from Ovid on, sometimes *nōn*); *nē* sometimes has as correlative *ita*.

*ōderint dum metuant*, *Poet. in Suet. Cal. 30, let them hate, so they fear. absit, dum modo laude partā domum recipiat sē*, *Pl. Am. 644, let him go, so only he come home with glory won. postulābant prō homine miserrimō, quī vel ipse sēsē in cruciātum darī cuperet, dum dē patris morte quaerētur*, *RA. 119, they made the request in behalf of a pitiable wretch, who would be only too glad to be put to the rack himself, so his father's death might be investigated. itaque dum locus comminus pugnandī darētur, aequō animō singulās binīs nāvibus obiciēbant*, *Caes. C. 1, 58, 4, therefore, so a chance was given to fight hand to hand, they did not mind pitting one of their vessels against two of the enemy's. sī ēī permissum esset, ita id sacrum faceret, dum nē plūs quīnque sacrificiō interessent*, *L. 39, 18, 9, if he were allowed, he might perform the sacrifice far better, provided that not more than five people should have a part in the ceremonial. dum quidem nēquid percontēris quod nōn lubeat prōloquī*, *Pl. Aul. 211, provided at least you ask nothing that I may not like to disclose. volet, civis modo haec sit*, *T. Eu. 889, he'll consent, only let her be a free born maid. magnō mē metū liberābis, dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit*, *C. 1, 10, you will relieve me of great fear, provided only there be a wall interposed between you and myself*.

(D.) *dum, quoad, dōnec, until.*

2004. *dum, quoad* or *dōnec, until*, often has as correlative *usque, usque eō, usque ad eum finem* or *tamdiū*.

*dum, until.*

2005. The subjunctive present is used in a protasis introduced by *dum, until*, when the main verb denotes either indefinite or present time, and the subjunctive imperfect when the main verb is past.

The subjunctive is an extension of the subjunctive of desire (1540); the clause denotes something expected or proposed.

is *dum veniat sedens ibi opperibere*, Pl. *B.* 48, *you shall sit there waiting till he comes.* *orandi sunt, ut si quam habent ulciscendi vim, differant in tempus aliud, dum defervescat ira*, *T.D.* 4, 78, *we must always ask such people, if they have any chance to take vengeance, to put it off to some other time, till their rage cool down.* *censeo latendum tantisper ibidem, dum effervescit haec gratulatio et simul dum audiamus, quemadmodum negotium confectum sit*, *Fam.* 9, 2, 4, *I advise lying low where you are, while the present congratulation excitement is cooling off, and at the same time till we may hear how the job was done.* *dum reliquae navee eo convenirent, in ancoris expectavit*, 4, 23, 4, *he waited at anchor till the rest of the vessels should gather there* (1725). *Verginius dum collegam consuleret moratus, dictatorem dixit*, *L.* 4, 21, 10, *Verginius, after waiting till he should consult his colleague, appointed a dictator.* *observavit dum dormitaret canes*, Pl. *Tri.* 170, *he watched till the dog should be napping.*

2006. The present indicative with *dum, while*, is sometimes used where the subjunctive might be expected with *dum, until* (1593). Other indicative tenses are rarely thus used: as,

(a.) *expectabo, dum venit*, *T. Eu.* 206, *I will wait while he comes.* *ego hic tantisper, dum exis, te opperiar*, Pl. *Most.* 683, *I'll wait for you here a while till you come out.* *ego in Arcano opperior, dum ista cognosco*, *Att.* 10, 3, *for myself I am waiting at the Arcae place, till I ascertain this.* (b.) *mihi quidem usque curae erit, quid agas, dum quid egeris, sciero*, *Fam.* 12, 19, 3, *for me I shall be anxious all the time to know what you are doing, till I know what you have done.* *mansit in condicione usque ad eum finem dum iudices reiecti sunt*, *V. a. pr.* 16, *he stuck to his bargain till the jurors were challenged.*

*quoad, donec, until.*

2007. *quoad* or *donec, until*, introduces a protasis in the present subjunctive when the main verb is present or future; and in the perfect indicative when the main verb is past or a general present.

*quoad* is found once in Plautus with the imperfect subjunctive (2008); in other authors here and there with both moods; not in Tacitus. With *donec* the present subjunctive is found once in Plautus, rarely in late Latin and in poetry; the perfect indicative is found at all periods; the present indicative (1590), found once in Plautus, is poetic and late. But *donec* is rarely used by Cicero, and never by Caesar or Sallust. *donecum* is found in old Latin (not in Terence) with the indicative (2009), and once in Nepos with the subjunctive of indirect discourse. *doneque* is found four times in Lucretius with the indicative, always before vowels (2009). *doneque* and *doneque cum* seem to occur a few times in Vitruvius.

(a.) ego hīc cōgitō commorārī, quoad mē reficiam, *Fam.* 7, 26, 2, *I am thinking of staying here till I feel better.* ea continēbis, quoad ipse tē videam, *Att.* 13, 21, 4, *you will keep this back till I see you myself.* expergēfactique secuntur inānia saepe cervōrum simulācra, dōnec discussis redeant errōribus ad sē, *Lucr.* 4, 995, *and when awakened, often they still keep hunting the shadowy forms of stags, until the delusion is shaken off and they come to themselves.* magnus mirandusque cliēns sedet ad praetōria rēgis, dōnec Bithynō libeat vigilāre tyrannō, *J.* 10, 160, *a vassal great and strange he sits in the king's gate, till it may suit his oriental majesty to wake.* inter eadem pecora dēgunt, dōnec aetās sēparēt ingenuōs, *Ta. G.* 20, *they always live among the same flocks and herds, till maturity puts the free-born by themselves.*

(b.) nostrī reppulērunt neque finem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad equitēs praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, 5, 17, 3, *our people routed them and did not give up the pursuit till the cavalry drove the enemy headlong.* Milō cum in senātū fuisset eō diē quoad senātus est dīmissus, domum vēnit, *Mil.* 28, *after staying in the senate that day till the senate adjourned, Milo went home.* numquam dēstitit ōrāre usque adeō dōnec perpulit, *T. Andr.* 660, *he never ceased to tease until he gained his point.* usque eō timuī, dōnec ad rēiciundōs iūdicēs vēnimus, *V.* 1, 17, *I was afraid all the time till we came to challenging jurors.* The present indicative of vivid narration (1590) is found in Vergil and Livy: as, sociī cōnsurgere tōnsīs, dōnec rōstra tenent siccum et sēdere carinae omnēs innocuae, *V.* 10, 299, *with one accord the shipmates rose to ours, until the beaks dry land attain, and keels all sat unscathed.*

2008. An imperfect subjunctive is rarely found with quoad, until (1725): as, haec diēs praestitūtast, quoad referret, *Pl. Ps.* 623, *this day was set by which he was to pay.* exercēbātur currendō et lūctandō ad eum finem, quoad stāns complectī posset, *N.* 15, 2, 5, *he used to practise running and wrestling, till he could give a grip standing.* For dōnec, see 2009 at the end.

2009. Other constructions occur, chiefly in old Latin or poetry, with dōnec, or dōnicum, until. (a.) The future perfect: as, haud dēsīnam, dōnec perfēcērō hōc, *T. Ph.* 419, *I shall not stop till I have finished this.* dēlicta maiōrum luēs, dōnec templa refēcēris, *H.* 3, 6, 1, *for sins of sires thou shalt atone, till thou hast shrines repaired.* (b.) The future: coquitō usque dōnec conmadēbit bene, *Cato, RR.* 156, 5, *boil until it is very soft.* ter centum rēgnābitur annōs, dōnec geminam partū dabit Ilia prōlem, *V.* 1, 272, *for thrice a hundred years there will be kings, till Ilia gives birth to twins.* (c.) The perfect indicative, less frequently the present, introductory to a general present: impedit piscīs usque adeō, dōnicum ēdūxit forās, *Pl. Tru.* 38, *he always draws his net about the fish, until he's brought them out* (1613). usque mantant neque id faciunt, dōnicum parietēs ruont, *Pl. Most.* 116, *they keep waiting and don't do it until the walls are falling.* (d.) The pluperfect indicative: horrifēris accībant vōcibus Orcum, dōnique eōs vitā privārant vermina saeva, *Lucr.* 5, 996, *with horrid cries on Death they'd call till gripings sore had set them free from life.* The imperfect indicative is found once in Tacitus, who also has the infinitive of intimation (1539) once or twice. An imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive sometimes occurs where purpose is intimated, and in Livy and late Latin to express repeated past action: as, dōnec ēgregius properāret exsul, *H.* 3, 5, 45, *till he could hasten forth a peerless exile.* trepidātiōnis aliquantum ēdēbant, dōnec quiētem ipse timor fēcisset, *L.* 21, 28, 11, *the elephants always displayed some nervousness, till terror itself restored quiet* (1730). But the habit of using the imperfect subjunctive is very common in Tacitus where neither purpose nor repetition is intimated: as neque proelium omisit dōnec caderet, *Ta.* 3, 20, *he ceased not fighting till he fell.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2014. *quandōque*, *inasmuch as*, is used a few times in a formal or legal sense in Cicero and Livy: *as, quandōque hīsce hominēs iniussū populī Rōmānī Quiritium foedus ictum iri spoponderunt*, L. 9, 10, 9, *inasmuch as these persons have promised that a covenant should be made, without the order of the Roman nation of Quirites.*

---

sī.

2015. *sī*, in early Latin *sei*, is originally a locative, meaning *under those circumstances, so*. With the enclitic *-ce*, it forms *sīce* or *sīc*, *so*. The two are sometimes found as correlatives in colloquial style: *as, sīc scribēs aliquid, sī vacābis*, *Att.* 12, 38, 2, *so you shall have time, so you will write something*. See 708.

### CONDITIONAL PERIODS.

2016. A protasis introduced by *sī*, *so, if*, or *nisi, unless, if not*, states a condition; the apodosis states action occurring under that condition. The conditional protasis and apodosis combined make a *Conditional Period*.

Thus, *sī diēs est, if it is day*, is a conditional protasis; combined with an apodosis, *lūcet, it is light*, it makes a conditional period: *sī diēs est, lūcet*, *Inv.* I, 86, *if it is day, it is light*.

2017. A parenthesis with *ut* (1943) is added when the speaker asserts that the action of the protasis is not only assumed, but actually occurs: *as, sī virtūs digna est glōriātiōne, ut est, beātus esse poterit virtūte unā praeditus*, *Fin.* 4, 51, *if virtue is entitled to glorification, as it really is, he will find it possible to be happy in the possession of virtue alone*. *sī nox opportūna est ēruptiōnī, sicut est, haec profectō noctis aptissima hōra est*, L. 7, 35, 10, *if night is always favourable for a sortie, and it always is, this particular hour of the night is surely the very best time*.

2018. The apodosis is usually declarative. Often, however, it is interrogative, exclamatory, or imperative, or it may take any other form which the thought or the context may require. The apodosis has rarely a correlative to *sī*: *as, igitur, it follows that, idcirco, for all that, tum, then, ita, sīc, only, eā condiōne, on condition; at, but, tamen, nevertheless, certē, saltem, at any rate, tum dēnique, tum dēmum, then and not till then*.

2019. *sī* is sometimes followed by *quidem* or, from Cicero on, by *modo*: *sī quidem, that is if, since, even if, sī modo, if only*. *sī tamen, at least if*, is found in Lucretius, Sallust, the Augustan poets and in late writers. *sive . . . sive (seu . . . seu) or, in old Latin, sī . . . sive, whether . . . or*, with the indicative or the subjunctive of the indefinite second person (1556), leaves a choice between two cases possible. By abbreviation of the protasis *sive* becomes a coordinating particle: see 1672.

2020. The negative of *sī* is *sī nōn*, *if not* (*sī nēmō*, *sī nūllus*, &c.), or *nisi*, *unless, if not*, used especially of an exception or after a negative. *nisi sī*, chiefly in old, colloquial, or late Latin, or, particularly in solemn language or poetry, *nī* is sometimes used for *nisi*. A restriction, usually an ironical afterthought, may be introduced by *nisi forte* (rare before Cicero) or *nisi vērō* (in Cicero and Pliny the Younger) with the indicative.

*nisi* is sometimes found in an adversative sense in old and colloquial Latin, especially after *nesciō*; from Cicero on, it may be strengthened by *tamen*. For *nisi quod*, see 1848.

2021. When a second conditional period is opposed to a first, it is sometimes introduced by *sī* (or *sī autem*), but usually by *sīn* (or *sīn autem*). If the second period is negative, and its verb is not expressed, *minus* or *aliter* is preferred to *nōn*.

## CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL PROTASES.

2022. Conditional protases may be divided into two classes :

2023. I. INDETERMINATE protases, that is such as merely suppose an action, without implying either its occurrence or its non-occurrence ; these may take :

(A.) Any tense of the indicative required by the sense ; or (B.) the present subjunctive, less frequently the perfect subjunctive, to express a condition in the future.

2024. II. Protases of ACTION NON-OCCURRENT, that is such as suppose action not taking place. These take the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

Thus, in the period *sī diēs est, lūcet*, *Inv.* 1, 86, *if it is day, it is light*, the protasis *if it is day* is indeterminate, neither implying that *it is*, or *is not day*. But in *sī viveret, verba eius audirētis*, *if he were alive, you would hear his evidence*, *RC.* 42, the protasis denotes action non-occurrent, *if he were alive*, implying *but he is not*. The whole period, like the protasis, is either an *Indeterminate Period* or a *Period of Action non-occurrent*.

## I. INDETERMINATE PROTASES.

### (A.) INDICATIVE USE.

2025. The indicative in a conditional protasis may state present, past, or future time.

The mood and tense of the apodosis are determined by the sense. The following combinations occur :



## (1.) PROTASIS IN THE PRESENT.

2026.

## (a.) Apodosis in the Present.

*sī sunt dī, beneficiī in hominēs sunt, Div. 2, 104, if there are gods, they are kind to men. sī nescīs, tibī ignōscō, Fam. 10, 26, 3, if you do not know, I pardon you. deus sum, sī hoc itast, T. Hec. 843, I am a god, if this is so. erus sī tuos domist, quīn prōvocās? Pl. Ps. 638, in case your master is at home, why don't you call him out? hōc mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, dē principātū contendunt, 6, 13, 9, when this man dies, if there is any one of the rest superior in position, he always takes his place; or if there are several with equal claims, they have a contest about the supremacy. sī vīs, potes, H. S. 2, 6, 39, you can, if you will. in corpore sī quid eius modī est quod reliquō corporī noceat, id ūrī secārique patimur, Ph. 8, 15, in the human body if there is anything likely to damage the rest of the body, we always allow it to be cauterized and cut. sī cui vēnae sic moventur, is habet febrim, Fat. 15, if a man's pulse beats thus and so, he always has fever. The present is sometimes loosely used of future time (1593): as, sī illum relinquō, eius vitāe timeō, T. Andr. 210, if I desert him, I tremble for his life. assequor omnia, sī properō; sī cunctor, āmittō, Att. 10, 8, 5, I shall compass all my ends, if I hurry; if I delay, I shall lose everything. castra nunc vōbīs hostium praedae dō, sī mihi pollicemini vōs fortiter operam nāvātūrōs, L. 7, 16, 4, I give you the camp of the enemy as booty now, if you promise me you will quit you like men.*

2027.

## (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect.

*sī hominēs ratiōnem ā dīs datam in fraudem convertunt, nōn dari illam quam dari hūmānō generī melius fuit, DN. 3, 78, if men apply reason, the gift of the gods, to purposes of mischief, it would have been better it should not be given to the human race than given (1495). The perfect of the apodosis is ordinarily used of future time (1612): as, occidī, sī tū vēra memorās, Pl. Most. 369, I'm a dead man, if what you say is true. nunc sī indicium faciō, interiī; sī taceō, interiī tamen, Pl. MG. 306, now if I tell, I'm dead and gone; if I keep dark, I'm dead and gone the same. nī illōs hominēs expellō, ego occidī plānissimē, Pl. St. 401, if I don't drive those people off, all's up with me. nam sī argentum prius adfert, continuō nōs ambō exclūsī sumus, Pl. As. 360, for if he brings the money first, then we're at once left out in the cold.*

2028.

## (c.) Apodosis in the Imperfect.

*sed sī domist, Dēmaenetum volēbam, Pl. As. 452, but if he is at home, Demaenetus I wanted. iam tum erat senex, senectūs sī verēcundōs facit, T. Ph. 1023, he was already old, if age is what makes shamefastness. sī singula vōs forte nōn movent, ūniversa certē tamen movēre dēbēbant, DN. 2, 163, if these points taken severally do not affect you, yet collectively they surely should have done sō (1495).*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



## 2033. (h.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

*sī quid habēs certius, velim scīre, Att. 4, 10, 1, if you have anything more definite, I should like to know (1554). sīn aliter animātus es, bene, quod agās, ēveniat tibi, Pl. Tri. 715, but if you're minded otherwise, may all you do betide you well (1540). quod sī nōn possumus facere, moriāmur, Ph. 7, 14, if we cannot do it, let us die (1547). sī mihi filius genitur, isque prius moritur, et cētera, tum mihi ille sit hērēs, DO. 2, 141, if a son is born to me, and the boy dies before &c., &c., then so and so is to be my heir (1593, 1548). sī est spēs nostrī reditūs, eam cōfirmēs, Fam. 14, 4, 3, if there is a hope of my coming back, strengthen that hope (1550). eum sī reddis mihi, praetereā ūnum nummum nē duīs, Pl. Cap. 331, if you restore my boy to me, you need n't give one penny more (1551). sī hic pernoctō, causae quid dicam? T. Ad. 531, if I sleep here, what reason can I give (1563)?*

## (2.) PROTASIS IN THE PERFECT.

## 2034. (a.) Apodosis in the Present.

*sī quid vēnāle habuit Hejus, sī id quantī aestimābat, tantī vēndidit, dēsino quaerere cūr ēmeris, V. 4, 10, if Hejus had anything for sale, if he sold it at his own valuation, I stop enquiring why you bought. sī vēre est ā nōbīs philosophia laudāta, eius trāctātiō optimō quōque dignissima est, Ac. 2, 6, if philosophy has been extolled by me with justice, its study is eminently worthy of the good. sī honōris causā statuam dedērunt, inimicī nōn sunt, V. 2, 150, if they contributed a statue as a compliment, they are not enemies. postēs quousmodī? . . . etiam nunc satis bonī sunt, sī sunt inductī pice, Pl. Most. 818, what think you of the posts? . . . they're pretty good even now, if they are only smeared with pitch. This combination is common in general conditional periods (1613): as, hominēs aegrī sī aquam gelidam bibērunt, primō relevārī videntur, C. 1, 31, if sick people drink cold water, at first they always seem refreshed. sī quod est admissum facinus, idem dēcernunt, 6, 13, 5, if a crime has been committed, they also act as judges. abiūrant, sī quid crēditumst, Pl. Cur. 496, they always swear they haven't it, if anything is trusted them. sī puer parvus occidit, aequō animō ferendum putant, TD. 1, 93, if a baby dies, they always think the affliction should be borne with resignation.*

## 2035. (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect.

*sī peccāvī, insciēns fēcī, T. Hau. 631, if I've done wrong, it was in ignorance. haec bona in tabulās pūblicās sī rediērunt, tabulae pūblīcae conruptae sunt, RA. 128, if this property has been entered on the state books, then the state books have been tampered with. quō in bellō sī fuit error, commūnis ēi fuit cum senātū, Ph. 11, 34, if there was a mistake in this war, it was common to him and the senate. interiī, sī abiit, Pl. Ps. 910, I'm lost, if he has gone (1608). Also in general periods (1613): as, animī sī quandō vēra vidērunt, ūsī sunt fortunā atque cāsū, Div. 2, 108, if the mind has ever seen the truth, it has used in every case luck and chance. studiōsē equidem ūtor nostrīs poētīs, sed sicubi illī dēfēcērunt, vertī multa dē Graecīs, TD. 2, 26, I use our own poets carefully, it is true; but whenever they have failed me, I have always translated a great deal from Greek.*

2036. (c.) Apodosis in the Pluperfect.

*sī illud iūre rogātum dicere ausi sunt, oblitine erant?* *PC. 15, if they ventured to say that that measure was brought forward in due form, had not they forgotten?*

2037. (d.) Apodosis in the Future.

*sī quis oriente caniculā nātus est, is in mari nōn moriētur*, *if anybody is born when the dogstar is rising, he will never die at sea* (general): *sī Fabius oriente caniculā nātus est, Fabius in mari nōn moriētur*, *Fat. 12, if Fabius was born when the dogstar was rising, Fabius will not die at sea* (particular). *sī parum intellēxti, dicam dēnuō*, *Pl. R. 1103, if you don't understand, I'll say again*. *nōn ūtar eā cōnsuētūdine, sī quid est factum clēmenter, ut dissolūtē factum crīminer*, *V. 5, 19, I will not avail myself of the common practice, and if a thing has been done in a spirit of mercy, charge that it was done in a lax way*. *nisi iam factum aliquid est per Flaccum, fiet ā mē*, *Fam. 3, 11, 3, unless something or other has been done already through Flaccus, it will be done by me*.

2038. (e.) Apodosis in the Imperative.

*sī plūs minusve secuērunt, sē fraude estō*, *Twelve Tables in Gell. 20, 1, 49, if they cut too much or too little, it shall be without penalty* (1613). *sī vidistis, dīcite*, *Pl. R. 323, if ye have seen, declare*. *sī quid est peccātum ā nōbis, prōfer*, *T. Hec. 253, declare it, if we've erred at all*. *sī numquam avārē pretium statui arti meae, exemplum statuete in mē*, *T. Hau. 48, if never like a miser I have set a price upon my art, a pattern set in me*. *sī quōs propinquus sanguis patrōnōs dedit, iuvāte periclitantem*, *Ta. 3, 12, if relationship has made any of you his advocates, help him in his straits*.

2039. (f.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

*sī nūlla colōris prīncipiis est reddita nātūra, extemplō ratiōnem reddere possis*, *Lucr. 2, 757, if atoms have no colour, you might explain at once* (1556). *meritō maledicās mī, sī nōn id ita factumst*, *Pl. Am. 572, you might with perfect right abuse me, if it is not so* (1556).

2040. (g.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

*sī nēmō hāc praeteriit, postquam intrō abiī, cistella hic iacēret*, *Pl. Cist. 683, if nobody has passed along this way, since I went in, a casket must have been lying here* (1560). *nam cūr tam variae rēs possent esse requirō, ex ūnō sī sunt igni pūrōque creātae?* *Lucr. 1, 645, for how could things so molley be, I ask, if they are made of pure and simple fire* (1565)?

2041. (h.) Apodosis in the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

*sī Antōniō Crassus ēloquēns visus nōn est, tibi numquam Cotta visus esset*, *O. 106, if Antony did not hold Crassus eloquent, you would never have held Cotta so* (1561).

(3.) PROTASIS IN THE IMPERFECT.

2042. (a.) Apodosis in the Present.

*sī tum nōn pertimēscēbās, nē nunc quidem perhorrēscis?* *V. 4, 78, if you were not getting afraid then, are you not getting scared even now?* *sī quī senēs ac dēfōrmēs erant, eōs in hostium numerō dūcit, V. 5, 64, if any were old and homely, he considers them in the light of enemies (1590).* *sī ad illum hērēditās veniēbat, vērī simile est ab illō necātum, Inv. 1, 89, if the inheritance was coming to so and so, it is likely that the murder was committed by that man.* *adulēscētī nihil est quod suscēseam, sī illum minus nōrat, T. Ph. 361, I have no cause for anger with the youth, if he was not acquainted with the man.*

2043. (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect.

*sed sī properābās magis, prīdiē nōs tē hūc dūxisse oportuit, Pl. Poen. 525, but if you were in greater haste, you should have brought us here the day before.*

2044. (c.) Apodosis in the Imperfect.

This combination is used chiefly of contemporaneous action (1732), in general conditional periods: *as, sī quod erat grande vās, laetī adferēbant, V. 4, 47, if any good-sized vase was ever found, they would always bring it to him in high glee.* *atque ea sī erant, magnam habēbās dīs grātiā, Pl. As. 143, and if them you ever had, you were monstrous grateful to the gods.* *sī quae rēs erat maior, populus commovēbātur, Sest. 105, if a thing of more than ordinary importance occurred, the populace was always aroused.* *hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, I, 48, 6, whenever there was any pretty sharp work, these men would always fall to.* For the subjunctive in such protases, see 2071.

2045. (d.) Apodosis in the Future.

*flēbunt Germānicum etiam ignōtī: vindicābitis vōs, sī mē potius quam fortūnam meam fovēbātis, Ta. 2, 71, as for weeping for Germanicus, that will be done by strangers too; vengeance will be yours, if you honoured in me more the man than the position.* See *Att. 14, 1, 1.*

2046. (e.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

*fac animō magnō sīs, et sī turbidissima sapienter ferēbās, tranquillōra laetē ferās, Fam. 6, 14, 3, be of great heart, and if you bore anarchy like a stoic, bear a more orderly condition of things with good cheer (1550).*

2047. (f.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

*sī amābās, invenirēs mūtūom, Pl. Ps. 286, you should have borrowed, if you were in love (1559).* *quod sī meīs incommodīs laetābantur, urbis tamen periculō commovērentur, Sest. 54, if they did exult over my mishaps, still they ought to have been touched by the danger to Rome (1559).*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## 2053. (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect.

quam nisi dēfendēs, Rōmulus nōn bene vidit avēs, Prop. 4 (5), 6, 43, *unless thou savest her, 'twas ill that Romulus espied his birds.* āctumst, sī quidem tū mē hīc lūdificābere, T. Eu. 717, *all's up, that is in case you fool me here* (1612). cui sī esse in urbe licēbit, vīcimus, Att. 14, 20, 3, *if he shall be allowed to stay in town, the day is ours* (1612).

## 2054. (c.) Apodosis in the Future.

sī erum insimulābis malitiae, male audiēs, T. Ph. 359, *you'll hear what you won't like, if you insinuate anything wrong against master.* vīcīnis bonus estō : sī tē libenter vīcīnitās vidēbit, facilius tua vēndēs ; sī aedificābis, operis, iūmentis, māteriē adiuvābunt, Cato, RR. 4, *be obliging to your neighbours : if the neighbourhood looks on you with favour, you will find a readier sale for your produce ; if you fall to building, they will help you with labour, draught animals, and building material.* sī id audēbis dīcere, causam inimicī tuī sublevābis, Caecil. 12, *if you venture to say that, you will promote the cause of your enemy.* sī fortūna volet, fīēs dē rhētoře cōsul ; sī volet haec eadem, fīēs dē cōnsule rhētor, J. 7, 197, *if fortune shall ordain, a magnate from a teacher thou shalt be ; again shall she ordain, a teacher from a magnate shalt thou be.* nōn modo nōn laedētur causa nōbilitātis, sī istis hominibus resistētis, vērūm etiam ōrnābitur, RA. 138, *the interests of the nobility will not be damaged, if you resist those creatures ; oh no, on the contrary, they will be promoted.* The clause with sī is apt to take the future perfect (2061). The future in the apodosis often denotes action holding good at all times : as, dēfēnsor p̄rimūm, cī poterit, dēbēbit vitam eius, quī insimulābitur, quam honestissimam dēmōnstrāre, Inv. 2, 35, *the advocate ought in the first place, if he can, to prove that the life of the accused is eminently respectable.* quod adsequēmur, sī cavēbimus nē in perturbātiōnēs incidāmus, Off. 1, 131, *we shall attain this end if we take care not to be subject to fits of passion.* Sometimes in exemplifications : sī patriam prōdere cōnābitur pater, silēbitne filius ? Off. 3, 90, *if a father shall try to betray his country, will the son keep silent ?* But see 2090.

## 2055. (d.) Apodosis in the Future Perfect.

oculum ego ecfodiam tibi : : dicam tamen ; nam sī sic nōn licēbit, luscus dīxerō, Pl. Tri. 463, *I'll dig your eye out : : but I'll speak, nathless ; for if I may not as I am, I'll say my say as one-eyed man.* sed sī tē aequō animō ferre accipiet, neclegentem fēceris, T. Andr. 397, *but if he sees you take it placidly, you'll have him off his guard.* The more usual combination is as in 2062.

## 2056. (e.) Apodosis in the Imperative.

vir tuos sī veniet, iube domī opperīrier, Pl. Cist. 592, *in case your husband comes, tell him to wait at home.* Almost always the second imperative is used (1577) : as, sī volet, suō vivitō, Twelve Tables in Gell. 20, 1, 45, *if the prisoner wish, he may subsist on his own food.* sī veniet nūntius, facitō ut sciam, Pl. St. 148, *if a messenger shall come, be sure you let me know.* sī dē mē ipsō plūra dīcere vidēbor, ignōscitōte, Sest. 31, *if I seem to harp too much on myself, you must excuse me.*

2057. (f.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

*sī* quid erit, quod scribendum putēs, velim faciās, *Att.* 11, 13, 5, *if there shall be anything which you think worth writing, I wish you would write* (1555). *nam sī altera illaec magis instābit, forsitan nōs reiciat*, *T. Ph.* 717, *for if the other lady presses more, perhaps he'll throw us out* (1554). *pe-ream, sī tē ferre poterunt*, *Brut. in Fam.* 11, 23, 2, *may I die, if they shall find it possible to endure you* (1541). *sī quandō illa dīcet 'Phaedriam intrō mittāmus,' Pamphilam cantātum prōvocēmus*, *T. Eu.* 441, *if ever she shall say 'let us have Phaedria in,' then let us call out Pamphila to sing* (1548). *habeat, sī argentum dabit*, *Pl. R.* 727, *she's welcome to them, if she pays the cash* (1548).

2058. (g.) Apodosis in the Perfect Subjunctive.

*sī mē audiētis, adulēscentēs, sōlem alterum nē metuerītis*, *RP.* 1, 32, *if you will hearken to me, my young friends, never fear a double sun* (1551). *sīn erit ille gemitus ēlāmentābilis, vix eum virum dīxerim*, *TD.* 2, 57, *but if his groan be a long-drawn wail, I could scarcely call him a man* (1558).

(6.) PROTASIS IN THE FUTURE PERFECT.

2059. (a.) Apodosis in the Present.

*salvae sunt, sī istōs flūctūs dēvitāverint*, *Pl. R.* 168, *they are saved, if they escape those waves* (1593). *rēx sum, sī ego illum hominem adlexerō*, *Pl. Poen.* 671, *I'm a millionaire, if I allure the man* (1593). *crīmen probāre tē cēnsēs posse, sī nē causam quidem malefici prōtuleris?* *RA.* 72, *do you think you can prove your charge, if you do not even bring forward a motive for the crime?* *quod sī meam spem vīs improbōrum fefellerit, commendō vōbis meum parvum filium*, *C.* 4, 23, *but if the might of the wicked disappoints my hope, unto your keeping do I commend the little son of mine.*

2060. (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect.

*victus sum, sī dīxeris*, *Pl. Am.* 428, *I am beaten if you tell* (1612). *sī sēnsērit, perīi*, *T. Andr.* 213, *if he scents it, I'm done for* (1612). *sī cōn-servātus erit, vīcimus*, *Fam.* 12, 6, 2, *if he is saved, our success is assured* (1612). *tum, hercule, illō diē quō ego cōnsul sum creātus, male gesta rēs pūblica est, sī tuleritis*, *L.* 3, 19, 11, *in that case it was indeed a bad day for the country when I was made consul, if you make the proposition* (1608).

2061. (c.) Apodosis in the Future.

*perībō, sī nōn fēcerō, sī faxō vāpulābō*, *Pl. in Gell.* 3, 3, 8, *I shall be done for if I don't do it, if I do, I shall be done up too* (1626). *oculum ego ecfo-diam tībī, sī verbum addideris*, *Pl. Tri.* 463, *I'll gouge your eye out for you, if you say another word.* *sī tē interfici iusserō, residēbit in rē pūblicā reliqua coniūrātōrum manus*, *C.* 1, 12, *if I order you to be dispatched, the rest of the gang of conspirators will be left in the state.*



2062. (d.) Apodosis in the Future Perfect.

*sī dixerō mendācium, solēns meō mōre fēcerō, Pl. Am. 198, if fiction I relate, I shall have done but in my usual way. sī tū argentum attuleris, cum illō perdidērō fidem, Pl. Ps. 376, if you, sir, bring the cash, I'll break my word to him. respirārō, sī tē viderō, Att. 2, 24, 5, I shall be myself again, if I see you. pergrātum mihi fēceris, sī de amicitia disputāris, L. 16, you will do me a very great favour, if you will discourse on friendship.*

2063. (e.) Apodosis in the Imperative.

Generally the longer forms of the imperative are used (1577): *patrōnus sī clientī fraudem fēcerit, sacer estō, Twelve Tables in Serv. to V. 6, 609, if a patron shall cheat his client, let him be doomed. servitum tibi mē abdūcitō, nī fēcerō, Pl. Ps. 520, if I don't do it, take me off to be your slave. hoc sī effēceris, quodvis dōnum ā mē optātō, l. Eu. 1056, if you do this, ask any gift you please of me. sī mē adsequi potueris, ut tibi vidēbitur, sepelitō, TD. 1, 103, if you can ever find me, then bury me as you think best. Rarely the shorter forms: inpinge pugnū, sī muttiverit, Pl. B. 800, drive your fist into him if he says booh. sī tumidōs accēdere fastūs sēseris, inceptō parce referque pedem, O. AA. 1, 715, if thou shalt see disdain come swelling high, give o'er and beat retreat.*

2064. (f.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

*sibi habeat, sī nōn extemplō ab eō abdūxerō, Pl. Per. 164, he may keep her, if I don't carry her off that minute (1548). caecum mē ferrī cōnfitear, sī tē potuisse superārī dixerō, Planc. 6, if I say that you can be surpassed, I should own myself swept along like a blind man (1556). tum magis adsentiāre, sī ad maiōra pervēnerō, RP. 1, 62, you would agree all the more if I come at once to weightier points (1556).*

SOME SPECIAL USES.

2065. An indicative protasis with *sī* is often used to assume a general truth as a proof either for another general truth, or for a particular fact.

(a.) *sī voluptātis sēsum capit, dolōrēs etiam capit, DN. 3, 32, if it is susceptible of pleasure, it is also susceptible of pain. sī omnēs, quī rēi pūblīcae cōsulunt, cārī nōbīs esse dēbent, certē in primis imperātōrēs. sī ferae partūs suōs diligunt, quā nōs in liberōs nostrōs indulgentiā esse dēbēmus, DO. 2, 168, if all people who are devoted to the public service are dear to us, then assuredly our military men ought always to be particularly dear. If wild beasts always love their young, how kind ought we always to be to our own children.* (b.) *sī pietātī summa tribuenda laus est, dēbētis movērī, cum Q. Metellum tam piē lūgēre videātis, DO. 2, 167, if filial affection is always to be held in high honour, you ought to be touched in this instance, seeing such affectionate grief in Metellus. sī nox opportūna est ēruptiōnī, sicut est, haec profectō noctis aptissima hōra est, L. 7, 35, 10, if night is always favourable for a sortie, and it always is, this particular hour of the night is the very best time.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



## THE SUBJUNCTIVE FOR THE INDICATIVE.

2069. The indicative in the protasis is occasionally replaced by the subjunctive, as follows :

2070. (1.) The present or perfect subjunctive is sometimes used in general present suppositions, regularly in the indefinite second person singular, rarely with other persons (1730): as,

(a.) *nam dolī nōn dolī sunt nisi astū colās, sed malum maxumum, sī id palam prōvenit, Pl. Cap. 221, for tricks are never tricks, unless you handle them with craft, but damage dire, in case the thing gets out; here the indicative prōvenit shows that colās is due to the person. nec calidae citius dēcēdunt corpore febrēs, textilibus sī in pīctūrīs ostrōque rubentī iactēris, quam sī in plēbēiā veste cubandum est, Lucr. 2, 34, nor sooner will hot fevers leave the limbs, if on gay tapestries and blushing purple you should toss, than if perforce your bed you make on pallet rude. quod est difficile, nisi speciem prae tē bonī virī ferās, Off. 2, 39, and this is a hard thing, unless you have the exterior of a good man. nec habēre virtūtem satis est nisi ūtāre, RP. 1, 2, and to have virtue is not enough, unless one use it. sīquomūtuom quid dederis, fit prō propriō perditum, Pl. Tri. 1051, if aught you've lent to anyone, 't is not your own, but lost. nam nūllae magis rēs duae plūs negōtī habent, sī occēperis exōrnāre, Pl. Poen. 212, for no two things give more trouble if you once begin to fit them out. nūlla est excūsatiō peccātī, sī amīcī causā peccāveris, L. 37, it is no excuse for a sin if you have sinned from friendship.*

(b.) *suōs quisque opprimī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habet auctōritātem, 6, 11, 4, nobody suffers his vassals to be put down, and if he ever act otherwise, he has no influence among his people. laeduntur artēriae, sī acri clāmōre compleantur, Cornif. 3, 21, it always hurts the windpipe, if it be filled out with a sharp scream. turpis excūsatiō est, sī quis contrā rem pūblicam sē amīcī causā fēcisse fateātur, L. 40, it is always a discreditable apology, if a man confess that he has been unpatriotic from motives of friendship. Britannī iniūncta imperiī mūnera impigrē obeunt, sī iniūriae absint, Ta. Agr. 13, the Britons are always perfectly ready to perform the duties enjoined on them by the Roman government, if they be not maltreated.*

2071. (2.) The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is sometimes used in general past suppositions (1730).

This use begins with Catullus and Caesar, the indicative being the regular classical construction (2044, 2050).

*chommoda dīcēbat, sī quandō commoda vellet dīcere Arrius, Cat. 84, 1, had advantages said Arrius, if advantages he ever meant to say. sī quis prehenderētur, cōnsēnsū militum ēripiēbātur, Caes. C. 3, 110, 4, every time a man was taken up, he was rescued by the joint action of the rank and file. sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur, neque coniecta tēla vitāre poterant, 5, 35, 4, but if on the other hand they undertook to hold their position, there was never any opening for bravery, nor could they ever dodge the shower of missiles. sīn Numidae propius accessissent, ibī virtūtem ostendere, S. I. 58, 3, they showed forth their valour every time the Numidians drew near (1535).*

(B.) SUBJUNCTIVE USE.

2072. The present or perfect subjunctive may be used in a conditional protasis of future time.

2073. The apodosis is usually in the present subjunctive, less frequently in the perfect subjunctive. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are rare (2089).

2074. The indicative is sometimes used in the apodosis, especially in expressions of ability, duty, &c. (1495); *nōn possum* is regularly in the indicative when the protasis is also negative. For the future indicative the periphrastic form is sometimes used.

2075. In the early period, before the imperfect subjunctive had been shifted to denote present time in conditional sentences (2091), the present subjunctive was used to express action non-occurrent in present time. Examples of this use are found in Plautus: *as, sī honestē cēseam tē facere posse, suādeam; vērūm nōn potest; cave faxis, Pl. MG. 1371, if I thought that you could do the thing with credit to yourself, I should advise you to; but 'tis impossible; so don't you do it. vocem tē ad cēnam, nisi egomet cēnem foris, Pl. St. 190, I should ask you home to dine, if I were not dining out myself.* Such sentences must not be confused with those in which an action from the nature of things impossible is represented as of possible occurrence.

(I.) PROTASIS IN THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

2076. (a.) Apodosis in the Present Subjunctive.

*at pigeat postea nostrum erum, sī vōs eximat vinculis, Pl. Cap. 203, but it may rue our master by and by, if he should take you out of bonds. quid sī eveniat dēsubitō prandium, ubī ego tum accumbam? Pl. B. 79, suppose a lunch should suddenly come off, where is your humble servant then to lie (1563)? hanc viam sī asperam esse negem, mentiar, Sest. 100, if I say that this path is not rough, I should not tell the truth. sī deus tē interroget, quid respondeās? Ac. 2, 80, if a god ask you, what would you answer? haec sī tēcum patria loquātur, nōne impetrāre dēbeat? C. 1, 19, if thy country plead with thee thus, ought she not to carry her point? sī existat hodiē ab inferis Lycūrgus, sē Spartam antiquam agnōscere dicat, L. 39, 37, 3, if Lycurgus rise this day from the dead, he would say that he recognized the Sparta of yore. eōs nōn cūrāre opīnor, quid agat hūmānum genus; nam sī cūrent, bene bonis sit, male malis, quod nunc abest, E. in Div. 2, 104, DN. 3, 79, but little care the gods, I trow, how fares the race of man; for should they care, the good were blest, the wicked curst; a thing that really cometh not to pass.*

## 2077. (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect Subjunctive.

*sī aequom siet mē plūs sapere quam vōs, dederim vōbīs cōnsilium catum, Pl. E. 257, if it becoming be for me to have more wit than ye, sage counsel might I give (1558). aufūgerim potius quam redeam, sī eō mihi redeundum sciam, T. Hec. 424, I'd run away sooner than go back, if I should hear I had to (1558). nec satis sciō, nec sī sciam, dīcere ausim, L. praef. 1, in the first place I do not know very well, and secondly if I should know, I should not venture to say (1555). iniussū tuō extrā ordinem numquam pugnāverim, nōn sī certam victōriam videam, L. 7, 10, 2, without orders from you I never should fight out of ranks, no, not if I saw victory was certain (1558). tum vērō nēquiquam hāc dextrā capitōlium servāverim, si cīvem commilitōnemque meum in vincula dūcī videam, L. 6, 14, 4, upon my word, in that case I should prove to have saved the capitol in vain, if I saw a townsman and brother-in-arms of mine haled to jail. multōs circā ūnam rem ambitūs fēcerim, sī quae variant auctōrēs omnia exequī velim, L. 27, 27, 12, I should make a long story about one subject, if I should undertake to go through all the different versions of the authorities.*

## 2078. (c.) Apodosis in the Present Indicative.

*quī sī decem habeās linguās, mūtum esse addecet, Pl. B. 128, if you should have a dozen tongues, 'tis fit you should be dumb (2074). sī prō peccātis centum dūcat uxōrēs, parumst, Pl. Tri. 1186, if he should wed a hundred wives in payment for his sins, 'tis not enough. intrāre, sī possim, castra hostium volō, L. 2, 12, 5, I propose to enter the camp of the enemy, if I be able. tē neque dēbent adiuvāre, sī possint, neque possunt, sī velint, V. 4, 20, they ought not to help you, if they could, and cannot, if they would. sī vōcem rērum nātūra repente mittat, quid respondēmus? Lucr. 3, 931, if Nature of a sudden lift her voice, what answer shall we make? sī quaerātur, idemne sit pertinācia et perseverantia, dēfīnitiōnibus iūdicandum est, T. 87, if it be asked whether obstinacy and perseverance are the same, it must be settled by definitions (2074).*

## 2079. (d.) Apodosis in the Future.

*quadrīgās sī incendās Iovis atque hinc fugiās, ita vix poteris effugere infortūnium, Pl. Am. 450, Jove's four-in-hand if you should mount, and try to flee from here. even so you'll scarce escape a dreadful doom. sīquidem summum Iovem tē dīcās dētīnuisse, malam rem effugiēs numquam, Pl. As. 414, e'en shouldst thou say imperial Jove detained thee, chastisement thou'lt ne'er avoid. sī frāctus inlābātur orbis, inpavidum ferient ruīnae, H. 3, 3, 7, should heaven's vault crumbling fall, him all undaunted will its ruin strike. neque tū hoc dīcere audēbis, nec sī cupiās, licēbit, V. 2, 167, you will not dare to say this, sir, nor if you wish, will you be allowed.*

## 2080. (e.) Apodosis in the Future Perfect.

*nōn tantum, sī proeliō vincās, glōriae adiēceris, quantum adēmeris, sī quid adversī ēveniat, L. 30, 30, 21, you will not acquire as much glory, if you succeed in battle, as you will lose, if any reverse occur.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2087. (d.) Apodosis in the Periphrastic Future.

sī Vēis incendium ortum sit, Fīdēnās inde quaesītūrī sumus? L. 5, 54, 1, *if a fire break out at Vei, are we going to move from there to Fidenae?*

2088. (e.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

sīquis hoc gnātō tuō tuos servos faxit, quālem habērēs grātiam? Pl. Cap. 711, *suppose a slave of yours has done this for a son of yours, how grateful should you have been?*

### CONVERSION TO PAST TIME.

2089. An indeterminate subjunctive protasis is rarely thrown into the past, the present and perfect becoming respectively imperfect and pluperfect. In this case the form is the same as that of a protasis of action non-occurrent (2091), and the conversion occurs only when it is evident from the context that past action is supposed, which may or may not have occurred: as,

cūr igitur et Camillus dolēret, sī haec post trecentōs et quīnquāgintā ferē annōs ēventūra putāret, et ego doleam, sī ad decem mīlia annōrum gentem aliquam urbe nostrā potītūrā putem? TD. 1, 90, *why then would Camillus have fretted, if he thought this would occur after a lapse of some three hundred and fifty years, and why should I fret, if I think that some nation may seize Rome some ten thousand years hence?* erat sōla illa nāvis cōnstrāta; quae sī in praedōnum pugnā versārētur, urbis instar habēre inter illōs pīrāticōs myoparōnēs vidērētur, V. 5, 89, *this was the only vessel with a deck; and supposing she figured in the engagement with the corsairs, she would have loomed up like a town, surrounded by those pirate cock-boats.* Sardus habēbat ille Tigellius hoc; Caesar sī peteret nōn quicquam prōficeret, H. S. 1, 3, 4, *Tigellius the Sardinian had this way; supposing Caesar asked him, naught had he availed.*

### PERIODS OF EXEMPLIFICATION.

2090. The present subjunctive is particularly common in exemplification. The perfect is sometimes used in the protasis, rarely in the apodosis: as,

sī pater fāna expilet, indicetne id magistrātibus filius? Off. 3, 90, *if a father should plunder temples, would the son report it to the magistrates?* sī quis pater familiās supplicium nōn sūmpserit, utrum is clēmēns an crūdēlissimus esse videātur? C. 4, 12, *assume for the sake of argument that a householder have not inflicted punishment, would he seem merciful, or a monster of cruelty?* sī scieris aspidem occultē latēre uspiam, et velle aliquem imprudentem super eam adsidere, improbē fēceris, nisi monueris nē adsīdat, Fin. 2, 59, *suppose a man should know, e.g. that there was a snake hiding somewhere, and that somebody was going to sit down on the snake unawares; he would do wrong, if he did not tell him he must not sit down there.* In such periods the future is also used, but less frequently: see 2054

II. PROTASES OF ACTION NON-OCCURRENT.

2091. A conditional period in which the non-occurrence of the action is implied takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive both in the protasis and in the apodosis. The imperfect usually denotes present or indefinite time, and the pluperfect denotes past time.

For the present subjunctive in such conditions, see 2075.

2092. The imperfect sometimes denotes past time (1559). When future time is referred to, the protasis is usually in the imperfect of the periphrastic future, commonly the subjunctive, but sometimes the indicative (2108).

2093. The apodosis is very rarely in the present subjunctive (2098). The periphrastic future is sometimes used, commonly in the indicative (2097, 2100).

(I.) PROTASIS IN THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

2094. (a.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

(a.) Protasis and apodosis both denoting present action; this is the usual application: *sī intus esset, ēvocārem*, Pl. Ps. 640, *I should call him out, if he were in.* *is iam pridem est mortuus. sī viveret, verba eius audirētis*, RC. 42, *that person has long been dead; if he were alive, you would hear his evidence.* *adnuere tē videō; prōferrem librōs, sī negārēs*, DN. 1, 113, *I see you nod assent; I should bring out the books, if you maintained the opposite.* *sī L. Mummius aliquem istōrum vidēret Corinthium cupidissimē trāctantem, utrum illum civem excellentem, an ātriēnsē diligētem putāret?* Par. 38, *if Mummius should see one of your connoisseurs nursing a piece of Corinthian, and going into perfect ecstasies over it, what would he think? that the man was a model citizen or a thoroughly competent indoor-man?* *quod sī semper optima tenēre possēmus, haud sanē cōsiliō multum egērēmus*, OP. 89, *now if we could always be in possession of what is best, we should not ever stand in any special need of reasoning.*

(b.) Protasis and apodosis both denoting past action: *haec sī neque ego neque tū fēcimus, nōn siit egestās facere nōs; nam sī esset unde id fieret, facerēmus; et tū illum tuom, sī essēs homō, sinerēs nunc facere*, l. Ad. 103, *if neither you nor I have acted thus, 'twas poverty that stinted us; for if we'd had the means, we should have done so too; and you would let that boy of yours, if you were human, do it now.* Here *esset* refers to past time, *essēs* to present. *num igitur eum, sī tum essēs, temerārium civem putārēs?* Ph. 8, 14, *would you therefore have thought him, if you had lived then, a hotheaded citizen?* *sī ūniversa prōvincia loquī posset, hāc vōce ūterētur; quoniam id nōn poterat, hārum rērum āctōrem ipsa dēlēgit*, Caecil. 19, *if the collective province could have spoken, she would have used these words; but since she could not, she chose a manager for the case herself.*



2095. (b.) Apodosis in the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

invēnissēmus iam diū, sei vīveret, Pl. *Men.* 241, *were he alive, we should have found him long ago.* sī mihi secundae rēs dē amōre meō essent, iam dūdum sciō vēnissent, T. *Hau.* 230, *if everything were well about my love, I know they would have been here long ago.* quae nisi essent in senibus, nōn summum cōsilium maiōrēs nostrī appellāssent senātum, *CM.* 19, *unless the elderly were in general characterized by these qualities, our ancestors would not have called the highest deliberative body the body of elders.*

2096. (c.) Periphrastic Apodosis.

quibus, sī Rōmae esset, facile contentus futūrus erat, *Att.* 12, 32, 2, *with which, if he were in Rome, he would readily be satisfied* (2093). quōs ego, sī tribūnī mē triumphāre prohibērent, testēs citātūrus fui rērum ā mē gestārum, L. 38, 47, 4, *the very men whom I was to call to bear witness to my deeds, if the tribunes should refuse me a triumph.*

(2.) PROTASIS IN THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

2097. (a.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Subjunctive.

(a.) Protasis denoting past, apodosis present action: sī ante voluissēs, essēs; nunc sērō cupis, Pl. *Tri.* 568, *if you had wished it before, you might be; as it is, you long too late.* sī nōn mēcum aetātem ēgisset, hodiē stulta vīveret, Pl. *MG.* 1320, *if she had n't spent her life with me, she'd be a fool to-day.* sī tum illī respondēre voluissem, nunc rēi pūblicaē cōsulere nōn possem, *Ph.* 3, 33, *if I had chosen to answer the man then, I should not be able to promote the public interest now.* quō quidem tempore sī meum cōsilium valuisset, tū hodiē egērēs, nōs liberī essēmus, *Ph.* 2, 37, *if by the way at that time my counsel had been regarded, you, sir, would be a beggar to-day and we should be free.*

(b.) Protasis and apodosis both referring to past: olim sī advēnissem, magis tū tum istūc dīcerēs, Pl. *Cap.* 871, *if I had come before, you'd have said so then all the more.* num igitur, sī ad centēsimum annum vīxisset, senectūtis eum suae paenitēret? *CM.* 19, *suppose therefore he had lived to be a hundred, would he have regretted his years?* Indōs aliāsque sī adiūnxisset gentēs, impedimentum maius quam auxilium traheret, L. 9, 19, 5, *if he had added the Indians and other nations, he would have found them a hindrance rather than a help in his train.*

2098. (b.) Apodosis in the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

sī appellāssēs, respondisset nōminī, Pl. *Tri.* 927, *if you had called him, he'd have answered to his name.* nisi fūgissem, medium praemorsisset, Pl. in *Gell.* 6, 9, 7, *if I had n't run away, he'd have bitten me in two.* sī vēnissēs ad exercitum, ā tribūnīs visus essēs; nōn es autē ab hīs visus;



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

(b.) Of past action: *quid enim poterat Heius respondere, si esset improbus?* *V. 4, 16, for what answer could Hejus have given, if he were an unprincipled man?* *si sordidam vestem habuissent, lugentium Persei casum praebere speciem poterant,* *L. 45, 20, 5, if they had worn dark clothing, they might have presented the mien of mourners for the fall of Perseus.*

## 2103. (b.) Apodosis in the Perfect Indicative.

*non potuit reperire, si ipsi soli quaerendas daret, lepidiores duas,* *Pl. MG. 803, if you assigned the search to Sol himself, he could not have found two jollier girls.* *quo modo pultare potui si non tangerem?* *Pl. Most. 462, how could I have knocked, if I had not touched the door?* *licitumst, si velles,* *Pl. Tri. 566, you might have been, if you'd wished.* *si meum imperium exsequi voluisses, interemptam oportuit,* *T. Hau. 634, if you had been willing to follow my commands, she should have been dispatched.* *consul esse qui potui, nisi eum vitae cursum tenuissem a pueritia?* *RP. 1, 10, how could I have been consul unless from boyhood I had taken that line in life?* *si eum captivitas in urbem pertraxisset, Caesarem ipsum audire potuit,* *Ta. D. 17, if captivity had carried him to the city, he could have heard Caesar himself.* *Antoni gladios potuit contemnere, si sic omnia dixisset,* *J. 10, 123, Antonius' swords he might have scorned, if all things he had worded so.* *si unum diem morati essetis, moriendum omnibus fuit,* *L. 2, 38, 5, if you had staid one day, you must all have died.*

2104. (2.) Other verbs also sometimes have a past indicative apodosis, usually an imperfect or pluperfect, to denote an action very near to actual performance, which is interrupted by the action of the protasis.

Naturally such a protasis generally contains an actual or a virtual negative; but positive protases are found here and there, chiefly in late writers.

## 2105. (a.) Apodosis in the Perfect Indicative.

*paene in foveam decidi, nisi hic adesses,* *Pl. Per. 594, I had almost fallen into a snare, unless you were here.* *nec veni, nisi fata locum sedemque dedissent,* *V. 11, 112, nor had I come, unless the fates a place and seat had given.* *pons sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, nisi unus vir fuisset Horatius Cocles,* *L. 2, 10, 2, the pile-bridge all but gave a path to the enemy, had it not been for one heroic soul, Horatius Cocles.*

## 2106. (b.) Apodosis in the Imperfect Indicative.

*quin laber longius, nisi me retinuissem,* *Leg. 1, 52, why, I was going to drift on still further, if I had not checked myself.* *si per L. Metellum licitum esset, matres illorum veniebant,* *V. 5, 129, if Metellus had not prevented, the mothers of those people were just coming; here the protasis may be held to contain a virtual negative; so in the last example on this page.* *castra excindere parabant, nisi Mucianus sextam legionem opposuisset,* *Ta. H. 3, 46, they were preparing to destroy the camp, had not Mucianus checked them with the sixth legion.* *si destinata provenissent, regno imminabat,* *Ta. H. 4, 18, had his schemes succeeded, he was close upon the throne.*

2107. (c.) Apodosis in the Pluperfect Indicative.

quingentōs simul, nī hebes machaera foret, ūnō ictū occiderās, Pl. MG. 52, five hundred, had your glaiwe not blunted been, at one fell swoop you'd slain. praeclārē vicerāmus, nisi Lepidus recēpisset Antōnium, *Ann.* 12, 10, 3, we had gained a splendid victory, if Lepidus had not taken Antony under his protection. quod ipsum fortūna ēripuerat, nisi ūnīus amīcī opēs subvēnissent, *KubP.* 48, even this boon fortune had wrenched from him, unless he had been assisted by a single friend. sī gladium nōn strinxissem, tamen triumphum merueram, L. 38, 49, 12, if I had not drawn my sword, I had still earned my triumph. perierat imperium, sī Fabius tantum ausus esset quantum ira suādēbat, *Sen. de Ira*, I, 11, 5, the empire had been lost, if Fabius had ventured as far as passion urged.

2108. (3.) PERIPHRASTIC PROTASIS.

(a.) ac sī tibi nēmō respōnsūrus esset, tamen causam dēmōnstrāre nōn possēs, *Caecil.* 43, and even supposing that nobody were going to answer you, still you would not be able to make the case good (2092). plūribus vōs, militēs, hortārer, sī cum armātis dīmīcātiō futūra esset, L. 24, 38, 9, I should exhort you at greater length, my men, if there was to be a tug with armed men (2092). (b.) sī domum tuam expugnātūrus eram, nōn temperāssem vīnō in ūnum diem? L. 40, 14, 4, if I intended to capture your house, should I not have abstained from wine for a day (2092)?

VARIATION OF THE PROTASIS.

2109. Instead of a conditional protasis with sī or nisi, equivalents are often used.

2110. Thus, the protasis may be coordinated (1701), or be introduced by a relative pronoun (1812), by quod (1843), cum (1859, 1860), ubī (1932), ut or nē (1963), dum, dum modo, modo (2003), or quandō (2011). Or the protasis may be intimated by sine, without, cum, with, by a participle or ablative absolute, by a wish, or otherwise: as,

(a.) nēmō umquam sine magnā spē immortālītātis sē prō patriā offerret ad mortem, *TD.* 1, 32, nobody would ever expose himself to death for his country without a well-grounded conviction of immortality. cum hāc dōte poteris vel mendicō nūbere, *Pl. Per.* 396, with such a dowry you can e'en a beggar wed. Sūlla, crēdō, hunc petentem repudiāset, *Arch.* 25, Sulla, I suppose, would have turned my client away, if he petitioned him. quae legentem fefellissent, trānsferentem fugere nōn possunt, *Plin. Ep.* 7, 9, 2, what would have escaped a reader can't escape a translator. vivere ego Britannicō potiente rērum poteram? *Ta.* 13, 21, as for me, could I live, if Britannicus were on the throne (2102)? nisi tē salvō salvī esse nōn possumus, *Marc.* 32, without you safe, safe we cannot be. aspicerēs utinam, Sātūrnīa: mītor essēs, *O.* 2, 435, would thou couldst see, Saturnia: thou wouldst gentler be.

(b.) *habet orationem talem consul, qualem numquam Catilina victor habuisset, Sest. 28, he makes a speech — yes, and he a consul — such as a Catiline would never have made, if flushed with success. revereāris occursum, nōn reformidēs, Plin. Ep. 1, 10, 7, you might well be abashed in his presence, but you would not be afraid. dī immortalēs mentem illi perditō ac furiōsō dedērunt ut huic faceret insidiās; aliter perire pestis illa nōn potuit, Mil. 88, the immortal gods inspired that mad miscreant to waylay my client; otherwise, that monster could not have been destroyed. For the use of absque in a coordinate protasis in Plautus and Terence, see 1701, 1421.*

2111. The verb of the protasis is sometimes omitted: as in abridged sentences (1057), or when it may be easily supplied (1036).

*aut enim nēmō, aut sī quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit, L. 9, for either nobody or, if anybody, that was a wise man. sī eveniet, gaudēbimus: sīn secus, patiēmur, Pl. Cas. 377, if it shall come to pass, glad shall we be; if else, we shall endure. mē voluisse, sī haec civitās est, civem esse mē; sī nōn, exsullem esse, Fam. 7, 3, 5, that I wished, if this is a commonwealth, to be a citizen of it; if it is not, to be an exile. sūmeret alicunde . . . sī nullō aliō pactō, faenore, T. Ph. 299, he could have got it from somebody or other . . . if in no other way, on usury (2113).*

#### VARIATION OF THE APODOSIS.

2112. The apodosis is sometimes represented by the accusative of exclamation (1149), or the vocative: as,

*mortālem graphicum, sī servat fidem, Pl. Ps. 519, O what a pattern creature, if he keeps his word. ō miserum tē, sī intellegis, miserōrem, sī nōn intellegis, hoc litteris mandārī, Ph. 2. 54, wretched man if you are aware, more wretched if you are not aware, that all this is put down in black and white. inimice lāmnæ, Crispe Sallustī, nisi temperātō splendeat ūsū, H. 2, 2, 2, thou foe to bullion, Crispus Sallustius, so it shine not with tempered use. Also the future participle in poetry and in prose from Livy on.*

2113. The verb of the apodosis, or the entire apodosis, is often omitted. In the latter case an appended verb might easily be mistaken for the apodosis.

*quid sī caelum ruat? T. Hau. 719, what if the sky should fall? quō mihi fortunam, sī nōn concēditur ūtī? H. E. 1, 5, 12, why wealth for me, if wealth I may not use? nisi restituissent statuās, vehementer minātur, V. 2, 162, he threatens vengeance dire, if they did not put the statues back in their place. quae supplicatiō sī cum ceteris cōferātur, hoc interest, C. 3, 15, if this thanksgiving be compared with all others, there would be found the following difference. nōn edepol ubi terrārum sim sciō, sī quis roget, Pl. Am. 336, upon my word I don't know where on earth I am, if anyone should ask. sī Valeriō quī crēdat, quadrāgintā milia hostium sunt caesa, L. 33, 10, 8, if anybody believe such a man as Valerius, there were forty thousand of the enemy slain. A clause with sī or nisi is often used parenthetically: as, sī placet, sī vidētur, sīs, sultis, if you please, sī quaeris, if you must know, in fact, sī dīs placet, please heaven, nisi mē fallit, if I am not mistaken, &c., &c. For wishes introduced by ō sī, without an apodosis, see 1546.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## CONDITIONAL COMPARISONS.

quasi (quam sī), tamquam sī, ut or velut sī.

2117. sī following a word meaning *than* or *as* is used with the subjunctive in conditional comparisons.

In this use, quasi (quam sī twice in Tacitus) and tamquam sī are found at all periods. ut sī is found in Terence once, in Cicero (not in the orations), once in Livy, sometimes in later writers. velut sī begins with Caesar; not in Cicero. ac sī is found once in the *Bell. Hisp.* and in late Latin.

2118. sī is often omitted after tamquam, and (from Livy on) sometimes after velut. After quasi it is sometimes inserted in Plautus, Lucretius, and late Latin. ceu is sometimes used, chiefly in poetry, for tamquam sī. The main clause often has as correlative ita, sīc, perinde, proinde, similiter, or nōn secus.

2119. The tense of the subjunctive is usually regulated by the sequence of tenses, in Cicero nearly always with quasi and tamquam sī.

quid mē sīc salūtās quasi dūdum nōn videris? *Pl. Am.* 682, *why dost thou greet me thus as if but now thou hadst not looked on me?* quid ego hīs testibus ūtor, quasi rēs dubia sit? *Caecil.* 14, *why do I employ these witnesses, as if it were a case involving doubt?* tamquam sī claudus sim, cum fūstist ambulandum, *Pl. As.* 427, *I have to take my walks with a stick, as if I were a lame man.* tamquam extrūderētur, ita cucurrit, *Ph.* 10, 10, *he rushed away as if he had been kicked out.* quod absentis Ariovisti crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, 1, 32, 4, *because they trembled at Ariovistus's barbarity, absent as he was, just as if he stood before their eyes.* mē quoque iuvat, velut ipse in parte labōris ac periculī fuerim, ad finem bellī Pūnicī pervēnisse, *L.* 31, 1, 1, *I feel glad myself at having finally reached the end of the Punic war, as if I had had a direct hand in the work and the danger.*

2120. The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is sometimes used, even when the leading verb is in a primary tense, to mark action more distinctly as non-occurrent (2091): as,

eius negōtium sīc velim suscipiās, ut sī esset rēs mea, *Fam.* 2, 14, *I wish you would undertake his business, just as if it were my own affair.* mē audiās, precor, tamquam sī mihī quirītanti intervēnissēs, *L.* 40, 9, 7, *listen to me, I pray you, as if you had come at a cry from me for help.* iūs iūrandum perinde aestimandum quam sī Iovem fefellisset, *Ta.* 1, 73, *as for the oath, it must be counted exactly as if he had broken one sworn on the name of Jupiter.* This is the more usual way in Cicero with ut si.

2121. quasi, ut, or, from Livy on, tamquam or velut, *as if*, is sometimes used with participle constructions, nouns, and abridged expressions: as,

quasi temere dē rē pūblicā locūtus in carcerem coniectus est, *DN.* 2, 6, *on the ground that he had been speaking without good authority about a state matter, he was clapped in jail.* restitēre Rōmānī tamquam caelestī vōce iussī, *L.* 1, 12, 7, *the Romans halted as if bidden by a voice from heaven.* laetī, ut explorātā victōriā, ad castra pergunt, 3, 18, 8, *in high spirits, as if victory were assured, they proceeded to the camp.*

2122. In old Latin, *quasi* is found a few times for the original *quam si* after a comparative: as, *mē nēmō magis respiciet, quasi abhinc ducentōs annōs fuerim mortuos*, Pl. *Tru.* 340, *nobody will pay any more attention to me than if I had been dead two centuries*. It is also used (once in classical Latin, *CM.* 71) in periods of actual comparison, like *tamquam* (1908), with the indicative: as, *senex ille illi dīxit, quasi ego nunc tibi dīcō*, Pl. *St.* 545, *that old man said to him, as I now say to you*. For its use in figurative comparisons, see 1908, 1944. For *tamquam* introducing a reason &c., see 1909, a late usage found rarely with *quasi* and *ut*.

## CONNECTION OF SEPARATE SENTENCES OR PERIODS.

2123. Separate sentences or periods have a connective more commonly in Latin than in English. Sometimes, however, like the members of single periods, they are for special reasons put *asyndetically* (1637).

### (A.) WITHOUT A CONNECTIVE.

2124. Asyndeton is common with two or more separate sentences or periods:

2125. (a.) To represent a series of actions as occurring at the same moment: as,

*hic diffisus suae salutī ex tabernāculō prōdit; videt imminēre hostēs; capit arma atque in portā cōsistit; cōsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs; relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus*, 6, 38, 2, *despairing of his life, he comes out of the tent; sees the enemy close at hand; seizes arms and takes his stand at the gate; the centurions rally round him; Sextius becomes unconscious, receiving severe wounds*.

2126. (b.) When an occurrence is represented as consisting of many successive actions: the *Enumerative Asyndeton*: as,

*perōrāvit aliquandō, adsēdit. surrēxī ego. respirāre vīsus est, quod nōn alius potius dīceret. coepī dīcere. usque eō animadvertī, iūdicēs, eum aliās rēs agere, antequam Chrīsogonum nōmināvi; quem simul atque attigī, statim homō sē ērēxit, mirārī vīsus est. intellēxī quid eum pupugisset*, *RA.* 60, *after a while he wound up, took his seat; up rose your humble servant. He seemed to take courage from the fact it was nobody else. I began to speak. I noticed, gentlemen, that he was inattentive all along till I named Chrysogonus; but the moment I touched on him, the creature perked up at once, seemed to be surprised. I knew what the rub was*.

2127. (c.) When the last sentence sums up the result of the preceding with emphasis: the *Asyndeton of Summary*: as,



hī dē suā salūte dēspērāntēs, aut suam mortem miserābantur, aut parentēs suōs commendābant. plēna erant omnia timōris et lūctūs, *Caes. C. 2, 41, 8, despairing of their lives, they either bewailed their own death, or strove to interest people in their parents. In short, it was one scene of terror and lamentation.*

## (B.) WITH A CONNECTIVE.

2128. Separate sentences or periods may be connected: (1.) by pronominal words: (a.) demonstrative or determinative; (b.) relative; (2.) by conjunctions and adverbs.

## (I.) PRONOMINAL WORDS.

## (a.) DEMONSTRATIVE AND DETERMINATIVE WORDS AS CONNECTIVES.

2129. *hic* and *is* serve as connectives at the beginning of a new period. In English the equivalent word is usually placed not at the beginning as a connective, but after some words.

Gallia est dīvisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam Celtae. hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt, 1, 1, 1, *Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which is occupied by Belgians, another by Aquitanians, and the third by Kells. In language, customs, and laws these are all different from each other.* apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. is M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōsulibus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, 1, 2, 1, *among the Helveticans the man of highest rank was Orgetorix. In the consulship of Messala and Piso he got up a conspiracy among the nobles.* angustōs sē finis habēre arbitrābantur. hīs rēbus adductī cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre. ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt. ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. is sibi lēgātiōnem suscepit, 1, 2, 5, *they thought they had a narrow territory; so they resolved in consequence to make such preparations as were necessary for a move. They considered two years ample to do this. Orgetorix is chosen to do this. He took upon himself the office of envoy.*

2130. Particularly common are demonstrative words at the beginning of a new period, to show that the first action necessarily took place or was natural.

Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsīs expulsus Corinthī puerōs docēbat; usque eō imperiō carere nōn poterat, *TD. 3. 27, after his expulsion from Syracuse, the tyrant Dionysius kept school at Corinth; so incapable was he of getting along without governing.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## 2136-2142.] *Seniences : Connection of Sentences.*

---

2136. *et, and strange to say, and if you'd believe it,* introduces something unexpected: as,

*iamque trēs laureātae in urbe statuae, et adhūc raptābat Āfricam Tacfarinās, Ta. 4, 23, there were already three triumphal statues in Rome, and, strange to say, Tacfarinas was still harrying Africa.*

2137. *et, and really, and in fact, and to be sure;* in this sense it is usually followed immediately by the verb: as,

*multa quae nōn volt videt. et multa fortasse quae volt! CM. 25, one sees much that one would not. Aye, and much perhaps that one would!*

2138. *et* introducing a sentence explaining in detail a general idea before given may be translated *namely*: as,

*cōsulēs religiō tenēbat, quod prōdigiīs aliquot nūntiātis, nōn facile litābant. et ex Campāniā nūntiāta erant Capuae sepulchra aliquot dē caelō tācta, L. 27, 23, 1, the consuls were detained by scruple, because several prodigies were reported, and they could not readily obtain good omens; namely from Campania it was reported that at Capua several tombs were struck by lightning.*

2139. *et, and also, and besides*: as,

*Pūnicæ quoque victōriæ signum octō ducti elephantī. et nōn minimum fuere spectāculum præcēdentēs Sōsis et Moericus, L. 26, 21, 9, as an emblem of the Punic victory also, elephants to the number of eight marched in parade. And furthermore not the least attractive part of the pageant were Sosis and Moericus, moving at the head of the line.*

2140. *et, and yet,* introduces a contrast or opposition: as,

*canōrum illud in vōce splendēscit etiam in senectūte, quod equidem adhūc nōn āmisi; et vidētis annōs, CM. 28, the musical element in the voice actually improves in old age, and this I have not yet lost. And yet you see my years.*

### *neque or nec.*

2141. *nec, and really . . . not, and in fact . . . not*: as,

*magnō cum periculō suō, quī forte patrum in forō erant, in eam turbam incidērunt. nec temperātum manibus foret, nī properē cōsulēs intervēnissent, L. 2, 23, 9, it was with great personal risk to such of the fathers as happened to be in the market place, that they got into the crowd. And in fact acts of violence would have occurred, unless the consuls had made haste to interfere.*

2142. *nec, and to be sure . . . not*: as,

*centum viginti lictōrēs cum fascibus secūrēs inligātās præferēbant. nec attinuisse dēmī secūrem, cum sine prōvocātiōne creati essent, interpretābantur, L. 3, 36, 4, a hundred and twenty lictors with rods displayed axes bound in them. And to be sure they explained the matter thus, that there would have been no propriety in having the axe taken out, since the officers were appointed without any appeal.*

## Concessive and Adversative. [2143-2150.]

---

2143. *nec, not . . . either, nor either, neither* : as,

*eō annō vis morbi levāta. neque ā pēnūriā frūmenti periculum fuit, L. 4, 25, 6, that year the violence of the plague grew less. Nor was there any danger from lack of grain either.*

2144. *nec, but . . . not* : as,

*missi tamen fētiālēs. nec eōrum verba sunt audīta, L. 4, 30, 14, however the fetials were sent. But they were not listened to.*

-que.

2145. *-que, and likewise* : as,

*huic duōs flāminēs adiēcit. virginēsque Vestae lēgit, L. 1, 20, 2, to this god he assigned two special priests. And he likewise chose maids for Vesta.*

2146. *-que, and in fact, and so, and in general* : as,

*tum quoque male pugnātum est. obsessaque urbs foret, nī Horātius esset revocātus, L. 2, 51, 2, then also there was an unsuccessful engagement. And in fact Rome would have been besieged, unless Horatius had been recalled.*

atque or ac.

2147. *atque, and besides, and more than that, and actually* : as,

*ex quō efficitur animantem esse mundum. atque ex hōc quoque intellegī poterit in eō inesse intellegentiam, quod certē est mundus melior quam ūlla nātūra, DN. 2, 32, from which it follows that the universe is alive. And more than that, we can see that it has sense from the following circumstance, that the universe is certainly superior to any element of the universe.*

2148. *atque, and so, and consequently* : as,

*impedior religiōne quōminus expōnam quam multa P. Sēstius sēnsit. atque nihil dicō praeter ūnum, Sest. 8, I am prevented by scruples from setting forth how much Sestius was aware of. And so I will only say one thing.*

aut.

2149. *aut* is used to add a new sentence in the sense of *aliōquī, or else, otherwise, or as if nisi, unless*, preceded : as,

*omnia bene sunt ēī dicenda, aut ēloquentiae nōmen relinquendum est, DO. 2, 5, he must be able to speak well on all subjects, or else he must waive the name of an eloquent man.*

### (b.) CONCESSIVE AND ADVERSATIVE.

2150. A new concessive period is introduced by *sānē, quidem, omninō, to be sure, or fortasse, perhaps* : as,

Plinius et Cluvius nihil dubitatum de fide praefecti referunt. sane Fabius inclinatus ad laudes Senecae, Ta. 13, 20, *Pliny and Cluvius say that there was no doubt about the loyalty of the prefect. Fabius, it must be admitted, is always inclined to eulogize Seneca.* id fortasse non perfecimus; conati quidem saepissimum sumus, O. 210, *perhaps we have not attained to it; still we have very often made the attempt.*

2151. A new adversative sentence is introduced by *autem, again, sed, verum, but, vero, but, indeed, at, but, or tamen, nihilominus, nevertheless.*

These words when used to connect sentences have the same meaning as when used to connect the parts of a sentence (1676).

2152. *atque*, rarely *atquein*, *and yet, but*, is used chiefly in dialogue. It introduces a strong objection, sometimes in the form of a conditional protasis. From Cicero on, it is sometimes found after a question, to introduce an earnest denial.

*non sum apud me: : atque opus est nunc quomaximum ut sis*, T. Ph. 204, *I'm all abroad: : but that's just exactly where you mustn't be now.* *non vereor condiscipulorum ne quis exaudiat: : atque cavendum est*, Leg. 1, 21, *I'm not afraid of being overheard by any of my fellow-students: : and yet you must be on your guard.* *sine veniat. atque si illam digito attigerit uno, oculi ilico excidentur*, T. Eu. 739. *let him come on. But if he lays a finger on the maid, we'll scratch his eyes out on the spot.* *quid vero? modum statuarum haberi nullum placet? atque habeatur necesse est*, V. 2, 144, *what? is there, think you, to be no end to your statues? Yet there must be.*

2153. *quamquam, etsi, tametsi, though, and nisi, but*, are sometimes used to coordinate a new period, correcting the preceding: as,

*carere sentientis est, nec sensus in mortuo, ne carere quidem igitur in mortuo est. quamquam quid opus est in hoc philosophari? TD. 1, 88, foregoing requires a sentient being, and there is no sensation in a dead man; therefore there is no foregoing either in a dead man. And yet what is the use of philosophizing over this? utram malis vide; etsi consilium quod cepi rectum esse scio*, T. Hau. 326, *of these two states choose which you will; though I am sure my plan's the right one.* *cum ego non adsum? tametsi hoc minimum tibi deest*, Fam. 2, 7, 2, *why am I not with you? though this is the very last thing you need.* *sperebam defuisse adolescentiam: ecce autem de integro! nisi quidquid est, volo hominem convenire*, T. Ad. 152, *I hoped his youthful passion had cooled down; yet here it is afresh! But be it what it may, I want to see the fellow.*

### (c.) CAUSAL AND ILLATIVE.

2154. *nam, enim, for, or namque, etenim, for you see*, introduces a new period which gives the reason of the foregoing: as,

*qua quidem ex re hominum multitudino cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus munitionem perfecerunt*, 5. 42, 4, *and from this by the way their numbers could be gauged; for they made a breastwork in less than three hours.* *quem meminisse potestis: anno enim undevicesimo post eius mortem hi consules facti sunt*, CM. 14, *you can remember him: for the present consuls were created only nineteen years after his death.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## NOUNS OF THE VERB.

### THE INFINITIVE.

2160. The infinitive is in its origin a verbal substantive.

2161. The present infinitive active is an ancient dative, closely resembling in meaning and use the English infinitive with *to*. It originally marked action merely in a general way, without indication of voice or tense. In virtue of this original timeless character, the present often represents action which is really past or future; in such cases the time must be inferred from the context.

2162. The present infinitive active gradually approached the character of a verb, and the original substantive nature being forgotten, it was supplemented by a passive, and by forms for completed and for future action, active and passive.

2163. The infinitive has furthermore two other properties of the verb: (*a.*) it is modified by an adverb, not by an adjective; and (*b.*) it is followed by the construction of its verb.

---

## OLD AND POETICAL USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

### THE INFINITIVE OF PURPOSE.

2164. The infinitive denotes purpose: (*a.*) when loosely added to a substantive in old Latin, (*b.*) with verbs of motion, *eō. veniō, currō, mittō*, in old or poetical Latin, and (*c.*) in the combination *dō bibere, give to drink*, in old, colloquial, or poetical Latin: as,

(*a.*) *occāsiō benefacta cumulāre*, Pl. *Cap.* 423, *a chance to pile up kindnesses*. Parallel with a gerund: *summa elūdendī occāsiōst mihi nunc senēs et Phaedriae cūram adimere argentāriam*, T. *Ph.* 885, *I've now a splendid chance the greybeards of eluding and Phaedria to rescue from his money cares*. (*b.*) *recurre petere rē recentī*, Pl. *Tri.* 1015, *run back to get it ere it is too late*. *voltisne eāmus visere?* T. *Ph.* 102, *do you think we'd better go to call?* *parasitum mīsi nudiusquārtus Cāriam petere argentum*, Pl. *Cur.* 206, *my parasite I sent four days ago to Caria, to fetch the cash*. *nec dulcēs occurrent oscula nātī praeripere*, Lucr. 3. 895, *nor shall thy children dear come running kiss on kiss to snatch*. *nōn nōs ferrō Libycōs populāre penātis vēnimus*, V. 1, 527, *we are not come with steel to harry Libya's hearths*. (*c.*) *bibere dā usque plēnis cantharis*, Pl. *Per.* 821, *keep giving on to drink with brimming bowls*. *bibere* is thus used by Plautus, Terence, Cato, and Livy, and by Cicero once with *ministrō*. In classical prose, purpose is expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* or a relative pronoun, or by a gerund or gerundive with *ad* or *causā*.

2165. In poetry, the infinitive of purpose is used with synonymes of *dō* also, and with verbs of leaving, taking away, taking up, &c.

huic lōricam dōnat habēre, V. 5, 259, *on him a corselet he bestows to wear.* trīstitiam et metūs trādam protervis in mare Crēticum portāre ventīs, H. 1, 26, 1, *sadness and fears I'll to the wanton winds consign, to sweep into the Cretic sea.* quis sibi rēs gestās Augustī scribere sūmit? H. E. 1, 3, 7, *who takes it on himself Augustus' deeds to pen?* quem virum aut hērōa lyrā vel ācrī tibiā sūmis celebrāre? H. 1, 12, 1, *what hero or what demigod dost thou take up, to ring his praises on the rebec or the piercing pipe?*

### THE INFINITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

2166. The infinitive is sometimes used with adjectives, chiefly by poets of the Augustan age, and late prose writers, often in imitation of a Greek idiom: as,

indoctum iuga ferre nostra, H. 2, 6, 2, *not taught our yoke to bear.* avidī committere pugnam, O. 5, 75, *hot to engage in fight.* sōlī cantāre perītī Arcades, V. E. 10, 32, *Arcadians alone in minstrelsy are skilled.* vitulus niveus vidēri, H. 4, 2, 59, *a bullock snow-white to behold, i. e. vīsū (2274).* These infinitives are of different kinds, some of them resembling a complementary infinitive, others a gerund or gerundive construction, the supine in -tū (-sū), &c., &c.

### THE ORDINARY USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

2167. The infinitive is ordinarily used either as object or as subject of a verb.

#### (A.) THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT.

##### THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

2168. The present infinitive is often used to complete the meaning of certain kinds of verbs which imply another action of the same subject: as,

prō Pompēiō ēmori possum, Fam. 2, 15, 3, *I could die the death for Pompey (1495).* quid habēs dicere? Balb. 33, *what have you to say?* scīre volēbat, V. 1, 131, *he wanted to know.* hoc facere dēbēs, RabP. 7, *you ought to do this.* Caesar Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat, 4, 17, 1, *Caesar had resolved to cross the Rhine.* fugā salūtem petere contendērunt, 3, 15, 2, *they tried to save themselves by flight.* num negāre audēs? C. 1, 8, *do you dare deny it?* vereor dicere, T. Andr. 323, *I am afraid to tell.* num dubitās id facere? C. 1, 13, *do you hesitate to do that?* mātūrat ab urbe proficisci, 1, 7, 1, *he makes haste to leave Rome.* Diviciācus Caesarem obsecrāre coepit, 1, 20, 1, *Diviciacus began to entreat Caesar.* Dolābella iniūriam facere persevērat, Quint. 31, *Dolabella persists in doing wrong.* illī pecūniam pollicēri nōn dēsistunt, 6, 2, 1, *these people did not stop offering money.* diem ēdictī obire neglēxit, Ph. 3, 20, *he failed to keep the day named in the edict.* irāscī amicis nōn temere soleō, Ph. 8, 16, *I am not apt to get provoked with friends without just cause.* illī rēgibus pārere didicerant, Ph. 3, 9, *the men of old were trained to bow the knee to kings (1615).* dextram cohibēre mementō, J. 5, 71, *remember that you keep hands off.*



2169. The verbs or verbal expressions which are supplemented by an infinitive are chiefly such as mean *can, will or wish, ought, resolve, endeavour, dare, fear, hesitate, hasten, begin, continue, cease, neglect, am wont, learn, know how, remember, forget, seem*. The infinitive in this combination contains the leading idea. For the occasional use of the perfect infinitive with some of these verbs, see 2223.

Some of the commonest of these verbs are *possum, queō, nequeō; volō, nōlō, mālō, cupiō, studeō; dēbeō; cōgitō, meditor, statuō, cōstituō, dēcernō, parō; cōnor, nītor, contendō; audeō; vereor; cunctor, dubitō, festīnō, mātūrō, instituō, coepī, incipiō, pergō, persevērō, dēsīnō, dēsistō, omittō, supersedeō, neglegō, nōn cūrō; soleō, adsuēscō, cōnsuēscō; discō, sciō, nesciō, recordor, meminī, oblivīscor; videor*.

2170. The infinitive is also used with many verbal expressions equivalent to the above verbs, such as *habeō in animō, cōsilium est, certum est, parātus sum, &c., &c.*, or with *parātus* alone, *adsuēfactus, &c., &c.* Furthermore, in poetry and late prose, the place of many of the above verbs is often taken by livelier or fresher synonymes, such as *valeō* for *possum*, from Lucretius on, *ardeō, burn*, for *volō, cupiō*, or *absiste, fuge, parce, &c.*, for *nōlī* (1584), &c., &c.

2171. A predicate noun used in the construction of the complementary infinitive, is put in the nominative: as,

*Aelius Stōicus esse voluit, Br. 206, Aelius wanted to be a Stoic. esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat, S. C. 54, 6, he chose to be good rather than seem good.*

## THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE.

2172. A very common form of a dependent sentence is that known as the *Accusative with the Infinitive*.

Thus, of the two coordinate sentences *sciō: iocāris tū nunc, Pl. Most. 1081, I know: you are jesting now*, the second may be put in a dependent form, the two sentences blending into one: *sciō iocārī tē nunc, I know you to be jesting now*.

2173. The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative.

Thus, in *eum vident, they see him*, *eum* is the object of *vident* (1134). If *sedēre* is added, *eum vident sedēre, V. 5. 107, they see him sit, or they see that he is sitting*, *eum* is at the same time the object of *vident* and the subject of *sedēre*. But the accusative by degrees becoming detached from the main verb, and closely interlocked with the infinitive, the combination is extended to cases where the main verb is intransitive or passive.

2174. A predicate noun referring to a subject accusative is itself put in the accusative: as,

*tē esse arbitror puerum probum, Pl. Most. 949, I think you are a good boy. nēminem vīvum capī patiuntur, 8. 35, 5, they do not allow anybody to be made prisoner alive* (2198).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## 2180-2186.] Sentences: Nouns of the Verb.

---

2180. (3.) In the perfect system, and also usually in the gerundive construction (2246), verbs of this class are commonly impersonal: as,

*trāditum est Homērum caecum fuisse, TD. 5, 114, the tradition is that Homer was blind. ubī tyrannus est, ibī dīcendum est nūllam esse rem pūblicam, RP. 3, 43, wherever there is an absolute ruler, there we must maintain there is no commonwealth.*

2181. (4.) With some verbs of this class, the impersonal construction is preferred even in the present system. Thus, commonly *intellegitur, it is understood*, as impersonal; regularly in classical Latin *crēditur*; with a dative in Cicero and Caesar *dīcitur, nūntiātur*. The impersonals *cernitur, fertur, memorātur, prōditur, vidētur*, are rare.

2182. The personal construction is sometimes extended to other verbs or verbal expressions, especially in poetry: as, *colligor, O. A. 2, 6, 61, I am inferred, for colligitur. nōnnūllīs magistrātūs veniēbant in suspiciōnem nōs dē-morātī esse, Lentulus in Fam. 12, 15, 5, the magistrates were suspected by some of having delayed us (1491).*

2183. With verbs of thinking and saying the subject accusative is sometimes omitted.

(a.) Oftenest thus *mē nōs, tē vōs, or sē*: as, *stultē fēcisse fateor, i. e. mē, Pl. B. 1013, I own I've acted like a fool. cōnfītēre vēnisse, i. e. tē, RA. 61, confess you came. quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt, i. e. sē, 2, 32, 3, they said they would do as ordered (2221). Often the future without esse: as, refrāctūrōs carcerem minābantur, i. e. sē, L. 6, 17, 6, they threatened to break the jail open. (b.) Less frequently an accusative of *is*: as, *oblitum crēdidī, i. e. eum, Fam. 9, 2, 1, I imagined he had forgotten. Such omissions are common in old Latin, Cicero, Caesar, Livy, and in poetry.**

2184. When the accusative is not expressed, a predicate noun is sometimes put in the nominative, chiefly in poetry, in imitation of a Greek idiom: as,

*phasēlus ille quem vidētis, hospitēs, ait fuisse nāvium celerrimus, Cat. 4, 1, the clipper you see yonder, friends, says she was once the fleetest of the fleet. uxor invictī Iovis esse nescīs, H. 3, 27, 73, thou knowest not thou art the bride of the unconquerable Jove. Similarly with verbs of emotion (2187): as, gaudent esse rogātae, O. AA. 1, 345, they are glad to have been asked. gaudent perfūsī sanguine frātrum, V. G. 2, 510, they're glad to have been imbued with brothers' blood.*

### VERBS OF ACCUSING.

2185. The verbs of accusing, *arguō* and *insimulō*, take the accusative with the infinitive like verbs of saying: as,

*civīs Rōmānōs necātōs esse arguō, V. 5, 140, my accusation is that Romans have been slain. occīdisse patrem Sex. Rōscius arguitur, RA. 37, Roscius is charged with the murder of his father. insimulāre coepērunt Epicratem litterās pūblicās corrūpisse, V. 2, 60, they began to accuse Epicrates of having falsified records of state.*

### VERBS OF HOPING, PROMISING, AND THREATENING.

2186. The accusative with the future infinitive is used with verbs of hoping, promising, and threatening: as,

id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant, 7, 26, 2, *they hoped to carry it out.* pol-  
licentur sēsē ēī dēditūrōs, 5, 20, 2, *they volunteer to surrender to him.* But  
sometimes the present infinitive alone: see 2236.

### VERBS OF EMOTION.

2187. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes used with  
verbs of joy, grief, surprise, or wonder: as,

venire tū mē gaudēs, Pl. B. 184, *thou art glad I'm come.* dolui pācem  
repudiārī, Marc. 14, *I felt sorry peace was rejected.* These verbs often have  
the construction with quod, or in old Latin with quia (1851).

2188. Some of the commonest of these verbs are doleō, gaudeō, laetor,  
mīror, &c., &c.; and from Cicero on, angor, indignor, lūgeō, sollicitō.

### VERBS OF DESIRE.

2189. (1.) The accusative with the infinitive is commonly used  
with volō (mālō, nōlō), and cupiō, when the subject of the infinitive  
is not the same as that of the verb: as,

Catilīnam perire volui, Ph. 8, 15, *I wished Catiline to die.* māluit ho-  
minēs peccāre quam deōs, V. 2, 22, *he wanted men to sin rather than gods.*  
tē tuā frui virtūte cupimus, Br. 331, *we wish you to reap the benefit of your  
high character.*

2190. (2.) Even when the subjects denote the same person, the accusa-  
tive is sometimes used with the infinitive: as,

ēmori mē mālim, Pl. As. 810. mori mē mālim, T. Eu. 66, *I'd rather  
die.* magnificē volō mē virōs summōs accipere, Pl. Ps. 167, *I'm going  
to entertain some highborn gentlemen in style.* Oftenest when the infinitive  
is esse, vidērī, putārī, or dīcī: as, cupiō mē esse clēmentem, cupiō mē  
nōn dissolūtum vidērī, C. 1, 4, *I wish to play the man of mercy, and yet I  
do not wish to seem over lax.* Rarely thus with dēsiderō, nōlō, optō, and  
studeō, and in Sallust with properō.

2191. For the perfect active with these verbs, see 2228; for the perfect passive,  
2229.

2192. volō, mālō, and cupiō are often coordinated with the subjunctive of  
desire (1707). volō and mālō often have the subjunctive with ut, particularly in  
old Latin (1950).

2193. Verbs of resolving sometimes take the accusative with the infinitive: as,  
certum offirmāre est viam mē, T. Hec. 454, *I am resolved to hold the way.*  
So, from Cicero on, sometimes cēseō, dēcernō, and sentiō, in the exceptional  
sense of volō or iubeō, *think it best*: as, velle et cēserē eōs ab armīs dis-  
cēdere, S. I. 21, 4, *that they wished and thought it best for those people to give up  
fighting.*

2194. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes used with verbs of demand-  
ing: as, hau postulō equidem mēd in lectō accumbere, Pl. Sr. 488, *I  
can't expect, not I, to sprawl upon a couch.* hīc postulat sē absolvi? V. 3, 138,  
*does this man ask to be acquitted?* Similarly with ōrō and praecipio in late  
writers.

2195. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes found with *suādeō* and *persuādeō* in Terence, Lucretius, and Vergil, and with *precor* in Ovid and late prose.

### VERBS OF ACCOMPLISHING.

2196. Verbs of accomplishing rarely have the accusative with the infinitive: as, *tālīs ōrātōrēs vidērī facit, quālīs ipsī sē vidērī volunt*, *Br.* 142, of delivery, *it makes orators appear just as they wish to appear themselves.* Oftenest in poetry. In prose usually the subjunctive with *ut* (1951).

### VERBS OF TEACHING AND TRAINING.

2197. The verbs of teaching and training, *doceō* and *adsuēfaciō*, may take an accusative of a substantive and an infinitive expressing the thing taught: as,

*quīn etiā tondēre filiās suās docuit*, *TD.* 5, 58, *why more than that, he actually taught his own daughters to shave*, of Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse. *equōs eōdem remanēre vestigiō adsuēfēcērunt*, 4, 2, 3, *they have their horses trained to stand stock-still* (1608). Compare 1169.

### VERBS OF BIDDING AND FORBIDDING AND OF ALLOWING.

2198. The accusative with the infinitive is used with *iubeō* and *vetō*, *sinō* and *patior*: as,

*militēs ex oppidō exire iussit*, 2, 33, 1, *he ordered the soldiers to go out of the town.* *pontem iubet rescindī*, 1, 7, 2, *he orders the bridge torn up.* *lēx peregrīnum vetat in mūrū ascendere*, *DO.* 2, 100, *it is against the law for a foreigner to get up on the wall.* *castra vāllō mūnīrī vetuit*, *Caes.* *C.* 1, 41, 4, *he gave orders that the camp should not be fortified with a palisade.* *vīnum ad sē inportārī nōn sinunt*, 4, 2, 6, *wine they will not allow to be brought into their country.* Cicero is the first to use *vetō* thus. Other constructions also occur with these words: see 1708, 1950, 1953, &c.

2199. The person ordered or forbidden is often omitted, when stress is laid on the action merely, or when the person is obvious from the context: as, *castra mūnīre iubet*, i. e. *militēs*, 2, 5, 6, *he gives orders to construct a camp.* *iussērunt prōnūntiāre*, i. e. *tribūnōs et centuriōnēs*, 5, 33, 3, *they gave orders to proclaim.* *īdemque iussērunt simulācrum Iovis facere maius*, i. e. *cōsulēs*, *C.* 3, 20, *and they furthermore gave directions to make a statue of Jupiter, a bigger one.*

2200. *iubeō* is sometimes coordinated with the subjunctive, especially in old Latin (1708). Sometimes it has the subjunctive with *ut*, especially in resolves of the people.

2201. In the passive, *iubeō*, *vetō*, and *sinō* are used personally, the accusative of the person ordered or forbidden becoming nominative: as, *iubentur scribere exercitum*, *L.* 3, 30, 3, *they are ordered to raise an army.* *Nōlānī mūrōs adire vetitī*, *L.* 23, 16, 9, *the men of Nola were not allowed to go to the walls.* *hīc accūsāre eum nōn est situs*, *Sest.* 95, *this man was not allowed to accuse him.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2208. The infinitive is used as the subject (*a.*) with impersonal verbs, (*b.*) with *est*, *putātur*, *habētur*, &c., and an abstract substantive, a genitive, or a neuter adjective in the predicate.

2209. (*a.*) Some of the commonest impersonal verbs are *appāret*, *decet*, *expedit*, *licet*, *lubet*, *oportet*, *praestat*, *pudet*, *rēfert*. Also in classical Latin, *attinet*, *condūcit*, *cōnstat*, *dēdecet*, *existit*, *fallit*, *interest*, *iuvat*, *liquet*, *obest*, *paenitet*, *patet*, *pertinet*, *placet*, *displicet*, *prōdest*, which are used as live verbs by Lucretius and Sallust also. Similarly in Plautus and Terence *fortasse*.

2210. The infinitive is occasionally used as a subject with verbs other than the above (2209): as, *nōn cadit invidēre in sapientem*, *TD.* 3, 21, *envy does not square with our ideas of a sage.* *carēre hoc significat, egēre eō quod habēre velis*, *TD.* 1, 88, *careō means not having what you would like to have.*

2211. (*b.*) Some of the commonest abstracts used thus with *est* are *fāma*, *fās* and *nefās*, *fidēs*, *iūs*, *laus*, *opus*, *mōs*, *tempus*. From Cicero on, *opiniō* and *prōverbium*. In Plautus, *audācia*, *cōfidentia*, *miseria*, *negōtium*, *scelus*, &c. For genitives, see 1237. Neuter adjectives are such as *aequum*, *iniquum*, *cōsentāneum*, *crēdibile*, *incrēdibile*, *manifestum*, *necesse*, *pār*, *rēctum*, &c., &c.

2212. The accusative is not expressed when it is indefinite, *you*, *a man*, *a person*, *anybody*, frequently also when it is implied in some other case in the sentence: as,

*nōn tam praeclārum est scīre Latīnē quam turpe nescīre*, *Br.* 140, *it is not so creditable to be a Latin scholar as it is disreputable not to be.* *mihī inter virtūtēs grammaticī habēbitur aliqua nescīre*, *Quintil.* 1, 8, 21, *in my eyes it will be one merit in a classical scholar not to be omniscient.* *temporī cēdere semper sapientis est habitum*, *Fam.* 4, 9, 2, *bowing to the inevitable has always passed as a mark of wisdom.* *peccāre licet nēminī*, *Pur.* 20, *no man is at liberty to sin.* An indefinite *hominem*, *aliquem*, or *tē*, is rare: as, *illa laus est, liberōs hominem educāre*, *Pl. MG.* 703, *it is a crown of glory for a man a family to rear.*

2213. (1.) A predicate noun referring to the unexpressed indefinite subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative: as,

*nōn esse cupidum pecūnia est, nōn esse emācem vectigal est, contentum vērō suis rēbus esse maximae sunt dīvitiae*, *Pur.* 51, *for a man not to have desires, is money down, not to be eager to buy is an income; but to be satisfied with what you have is the greatest possible wealth.* A plural predicate is rare: as, *esset ēgregium domesticis esse contentōs*, *O.* 22, *it would be a grand thing for people to be satisfied with home examples.*

2214. (2.) When the subject of the infinitive is implied in a dative, a predicate noun may also be in the dative. as,

*mihī negligentī esse nōn licet*, *Att.* 1, 17, 6, *it will not do for me to be careless.* With a dative and *licet*, however, the predicate is sometimes in the accusative: as, *quod sī civī Rōmānō licet esse Gādītānum*, *Balb.* 29, *now if a Roman is allowed to be a Gaditanian.* Regularly so, when the subject is indefinite and not expressed (2212): as, *haec praescripta servantem licet magnificē vivere*, *Off.* 1, 92, *a man who holds to these rules may live a noble life.*

2215. The infinitive, used as a substantive in the nominative or accusative sometimes has a neuter attribute.

Chiefly thus *ipsum, hoc ipsum, tōtum hoc*: as, *ipsum Latīnē loquī est in magnā laude pōnendum*, *Br.* 140, *just the mere ability of talking good Latin is to be accounted highly creditable*. Rarely a possessive, *meum, tuum*: as, *ita tuom cōfertō amāre nē tibi sit probrō*, *Pl. Cur.* 28, *so shape thy wooing that it be to thee no shame*.

### THE INFINITIVE OF EXCLAMATION.

2216. The infinitive alone, or the accusative with the infinitive, is sometimes used in exclamations of surprise, incredulity, disapproval, or lamentation: as,

*nōn pudēre*, *T. Ph.* 233, *not be ashamed*. *sedēre tōtōs diēs in villā*, *Att.* 12, 44. 2, *sitting round whole days and days at the country place*. *at tē Rōmae nōn fore*, *Att.* 5, 20, 7, *only to think you won't be in Rome*. *hoc posteris memoriae trāditum irī*, *L.* 3, 67, 1, *to think this will be passed down to generations yet unborn*. Often with a *-ne*, transferred from the unexpressed verb on which the infinitive depends (1503): as, *tēne hoc*, *Accī, dīcere, tālī prūdentiā praeditum*, *Clu.* 84, *what? you to say this, Accius, with your sound sense*. The exclamatory infinitive is chiefly confined to Plautus, Terence, and Cicero.

### THE INFINITIVE OF INTIMATION.

2217. This infinitive has already been spoken of; see 1535-1539.

### THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

2218. The present infinitive represents action as going on, the perfect as completed, and the future as not yet begun, at the time of the action of the verb to which the infinitive is attached.

The forms of the infinitive are commonly and conveniently called tenses, though this designation is not strictly applicable.

### THE PRESENT TENSE.

2219. In itself, the present infinitive denotes action merely as going on, without any reference to time. With some verbs, however, which look to the future, the present relates to action in the immediate future. With verbs of perceiving, knowing, thinking, and saying, it denotes action as going on at the time of the verb: as,



(a.) *facinus est vincire civem Romanum*, *V.* 5, 170, *it is a crime to put a Roman in irons.* (b.) *audire cupio*, *Caec.* 33, *I am eager to hear.* *Antium me recipere cogito a. d. v Non. Mai.*, *Att.* 2, 9, 4, *I am meditating going back to Antium the third of May.* (c.) *errare eos dicunt*, 5, 41, 5, *they say those people are mistaken.* *tempus dixi esse*, *T. Hec.* 687, *I said it was time.* *dicēs tibi Siculos esse amicos?* *V.* 2, 155, *will you say the Sicilians are friends of yours?*

2220. The present infinitive is sometimes used with *memini*, *recordor*, *memoria teneo*, and with some analogous expressions, such as *accepimus*, *fertur*, &c., to represent merely the occurrence of action really completed, without indicating its completion: as,

*memini ad me te scribere*, *D.* 38, *I remember your writing to me.* *meministis fieri senatus consultum*, *Mur.* 51, *you remember a decree of the senate being passed.* *sed ego idem recordor longe omnibus anteferre Demosthenem*, *O.* 23, *and yet I remember putting Demosthenes far above everybody else.* *hanc accepimus agras et nemora peragrare*, *HR.* 24, *we have heard of this goddess's scouring fields and groves.* *Q. Maximum accepimus facile celare, tacere*, *Off.* 1, 108, *we have heard of Fabius's ready cleverness in keeping dark and holding his tongue.* But the perfect is used when the action is to be distinctly marked as completed: as, *meministis me ita distribuere causam*, *RA.* 122, *you remember that I arranged the case thus.* Sometimes present and perfect are united: as, *Helenae capere arma fertur, nec fratres erubuisse deos*, *Prop.* 3, 14, 19 (4, 13, 19), *Helen is said to fly to arms, and not to have blushed in presence of her brother gods.* Here *capere* relates to the same completed action as the more exact *erubuisse*.

2221. With verbs of saying, used in the narrower sense of promising, the present infinitive sometimes stands for the future (2236): as,

*cras mane argentum mihi miles dare se dixit*, *T. Ph.* 531, *the soldier spoke of paying me the money early in the morning.* *me aiabat accersere*, *Pl. Ps.* 1118, *he said he'd fetch me* (2186). *quae imperarentur facere dixerunt*, 2, 32, 3, *they agreed to do what was commanded.*

2222. The present infinitive dependent on a past tense of *debeo*, *oportet*, *possum*, often requires the English perfect infinitive in translation: as, *quid enim facere poteramus?* *Pis.* 13, *for what else could we have done?* See, however, 1495. For the infinitive perfect, see 2230.

## THE PERFECT TENSE.

2223. (1.) The perfect active infinitive sometimes serves as a complement of *debeo*, *volō*, *possum*, &c. (2168): as,

*tametsi statim vicisse debeo, tamen de meo iure decedam*, *RA.* 73, *though I am entitled to come off victorious at once, yet I will waive my right;* compare *vici*, *I am victorious*, 1608. *nil vetitum fecisse volet*, *J.* 14, 185, *nothing forbidden will he wish to have done;* compare *feci*, *I am guilty.* *unde illa potuit didicisse?* *Div.* 2, 51, *from what source could he have all that information acquired?* *bellum quod possumus ante hiemem perfecisse*, *L.* 37, 19, 5, *the war which we can have ended up before winter.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2230. The perfect infinitive passive or deponent, commonly without *esse*, is often used in Plautus, Terence, and Cicero, by assimilation with past tenses of verbs of propriety, such as *aequum est*, *convenit*, *decet*, and *oportet*: as, *nōn oportuit relictās*, T. *Hau.* 247, *they should n't have been left*. *tē Iovī precātam oportuit*, Pl. *Am.* 739, *you should have said your prayers to Jove*. The perfect active is less common: as, *cāvisse oportuit*, Pl. *Am.* 944, *you should have been upon your guard*. For *volō*, *cupiō*, *nōlō*, see 2229.

2231. The perfect infinitive of completed action is very common with such expressions as *satis est*, *satis habeo*, *iuvat*, *melius est*, *paenitet*, &c., also with verbs of emotion, such as *gaudeō*, &c.: as, *mē quoque iuvat ad finem bellī Pūnicī pervēnisse*, L. 31, 1, 1, *I am delighted myself to have reached the end of the Punic war*. Oftentimes, however, in verse, the use of the perfect is partly due to the metre.

### THE FUTURE TENSE.

2232. The future infinitive is only used as a representative of the indicative, and not as a substantive.

2233. For the future infinitive active or passive, a circumlocution with *fore* or *futūrum esse* with *ut* and the subjunctive present or imperfect is often used. This construction is necessary when the verb has no future participle or supine: as,

*spērō fore ut contingat id nōbis*, TD. 1, 82, *I hope we may be so fortunate*. *clāmābant fore ut ipsī sē dī ulciscerentur*, V. 4, 87, *they cried out that the gods would avenge themselves*.

2234. *fore* with the perfect participle of a passive or deponent, represents the future perfect of direct discourse: as, *dēbellātum mox fore rēbantur*, L. 23, 13, 6, *they thought the war would soon be over*.

2235. (1.) The future infinitive is commonly used with *iūrō*, *minor*, *polliceor*, *prōmittō*, and *spērō*, especially when the leading verb and the infinitive have the same subject: as,

*iūravit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum*, Caes. C. 3, 87, 5, *he swore he would not come back to camp except as a victor*. *quod sē factūrōs minābantur*, Caes. C. 2, 13, 4, *which they threatened they would do*. *obsidēs datūrōs pollicitī sunt*, 4, 27, 1, *they volunteered to give hostages*.

2236. (2.) A looser present infinitive is sometimes used with the above verbs, especially in old Latin, generally without a subject accusative. Thus with *iūrō* by Cato and Plautus, and with *minor*, *proclaim with threats*, by Lucretius. Similarly *dare pollicentur*, 6, 9, 7, *they offer to give*. *reliquōs dētterrēri spērāns*, Caes. C. 3, 8, 3, *hoping that the rest were scared*. *spērō nostram amicitiam nōn egēre testibus*, Fam. 2, 2, *I trust our friendship needs no witnesses*. As *possum* has no future infinitive, the present of this verb is necessarily used: as, *tōtīus Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant*, 1, 3, 8, *they hope to be able to get the control of the whole of Gaul*.

## THE GERUNDIVE AND GERUND.

2237. The gerundive is a verbal adjective (899). The gerund is a neuter verbal substantive, used only in the oblique cases of the singular. Both gerundives and gerunds express, in a noun form, the uncompleted action of the verb.

2238. Gerundives and gerunds, like the English verbal in *-ing*, were originally neither active nor passive (288), but might stand for either an active or a passive. In time a prevailing passive meaning grew up in the gerundive, and a prevailing active meaning in the gerund.

A gerund may be followed by the same case as its verb; but for the gerund of verbs of transitive use, see 2242, 2255, 2259, 2265.

2239. Both gerundives and gerunds are modified like verbs, by adverbs, not by adjectives.

### (1.) THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.

2240. The gerundive expresses, in an adjective form, the uncompleted action of a verb of transitive use exerted on a substantive object, the substantive standing in the case required by the context, and the gerundive agreeing with it.

In this construction, which is called the *gerundive construction*, the substantive and gerundive blend together in sense like the parts of a compound.

male gerendō negotiō in aere aliēnō vacillant, *C.* 2, 21, *owing to bad business-managing they are staggering under debts.* studium agrī colendī, *CM.* 59, *the occupation of land-tilling.* vir regendae rēi pūblicae scientissimus, *DO.* 1, 214, *a man of great experience in state-managing.*

### (2.) THE GERUND.

2241. The gerund expresses, in a substantive form, the uncompleted action of a verb which has no direct object.

ars vivendī, *Fin.* 1, 42, *the art of living.* nōn est locus ad tergiversandum, *Att.* 7, 1, 4, *'tis no time for shill-I-shall-I-ing.* sum dēfessus quaeritandō, *Pl. Am.* 1014, *I'm all worn out with hunting.* sē experiendō didicisse, *Ta.* 1, 11, *he had learned by experience.*

2242. Gerunds of verbs of transitive use are exceptionally found with a substantive object (2255, 2259, 2265), and regularly with neuter pronouns and neuter plural adjectives to avoid ambiguity (1106). See also 2247.

agendī aliquid discendīque causā, *Fin.* 5, 54, *for the sake of doing or learning something.* faciendī aliquid vel nōn faciendī vērā ratiō, *Plin. Ep.* 6, 27, 4, *the true ground for doing or not doing a thing.* artem sē trādere vērā ac falsa dīiudicandī, *DO.* 2, 157, *that he passed along the art of distinguishing between the true and the false.* regendī cūncta onus, *Ta.* 1, 11, *the burden of governing the world.*

## CASES OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

### NOMINATIVE.

2243. The nominative of the gerundive construction, as the subject of *sum*, denotes action which is to be done.

The combination acquires the meaning of obligation or propriety, and this meaning also passes over to the accusative with *esse*. The person who has the action to do is put in the dative of the possessor (1215). Instead of the dative, the ablative with *ab* is sometimes used, particularly where the dative would be ambiguous.

tibī haec cūra suscipienda est, *V.* 4, 69, *the undertaking of this care exists for you, i.e. you must undertake this charge.* Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, signum dandum, 2, 20, 1, *for Caesar there was everything to be done at the same moment: the standard to be raised, bugle call given, soldiers summoned in from their work, line of battle to be formed, soldiers harangued, signal given for engagement.* quaerenda pecūnia primum est; virtūs post nummōs, *H. E.* 1, 1, 53, *there is money-making to be the first aim: character second to dollars.* adeundus mihi illic est homō, *Pl. R.* 1298, *I must draw near this fellow.* Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse transeundum, 4, 16, 1, *Caesar made up his mind that he must cross the Rhine.* ego istum iuvenem domi tenendum censeō, *L.* 21, 3, 6, *for my part, I think that young man ought to be kept at home.* ēi ego ā mē referendam grātiā nōn putem? *Planc.* 78, *should I not think that I ought to show my gratitude to him?* quid ā mē amplius dicendum putātis? *V.* 3, 60, *what more do you think that I need say?*

2244. fruendus, fungendus, potiendus, ūtendus, vēscendus, are also used in this construction, chiefly in the oblique cases; in the nominative the impersonal construction (2246) is usual. These verbs sometimes have a transitive use in old Latin (1380).

nōn paranda nobis solum ea, sed fruenda etiam est, *Fin.* 1, 3, *that is a thing which we must not only obtain, but enjoy as well, of wisdom.* nec tamen est potiunda tibi, *O.* 9, 754, *she is not to be won by thee.* Examples of the oblique cases in this use are cited below.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## ACCUSATIVE.

2250. (1.) The accusative of the gerundive construction is used with *locō* and *condūcō*, with *suscipiō*, *habeō*, and *cūrō*, and with verbs of giving or assigning.

With the verbs of giving or assigning (such as *dō*, *trādō*, *committō*, *attribuō*, *dīvidō*, *relinquō*, *permittō*, *dēnotō*), the emphasis often gravitates towards the substantive, and the gerundive, as an explanatory appendage, acquires the meaning of purpose. So in Plautus with the verbs of asking (*rogō* and *petō*); in Cicero with *posco*.

(a.) *caedundum condūxī ego illum :: tum optimumst locēs efferendum*, Pl. *Aul.* 567, *I engaged him for killing :: then you'd better contract for his funeral* (1709). *signum conlocandum cōsulēs locāverunt*, *Cat.* 3, 20, *the consuls let out the erecting of the statue*. *redemptor qui columnam illam condūxerat faciendam*, *Div.* 2, 47, *the contractor who had undertaken the making of that pillar*. *vellem suscepissēs iuvenem regendum*, *Att.* 10, 6, 2, *I wish you had undertaken training the young man*. *aedem habuit tuendam*, *V.* 1, 130, *he had the looking after the temple*. *agrum dē nostrō patre colendum habēbat*, *T. Ph.* 364, *he had the tilling of a farm from my father*.

(b.) *COIRAVIT · BASILICAM · CALECANDAM*, *CIL.* I, 1166, *he superintended the town hall plastering*. *pontem faciendum cūrat*, *I.* 13, 1, *he attends to a bridge's being made, i. e. has it made*. *cōsulibus senātus rem pūblicam dēfendendam dedit*, *Ph.* 8, 15, *the senate entrusted the defence of the state to the consuls*. *agrōs plēbī colendōs dedit*, *RP.* 3, 16, *he gave lands to the common people to till*. *Antigonus Eumenem propīnquīs sepeliendum trādīdit*, *N.* 18, 13, 4, *Antigonus delivered Eumenes to his kinsfolk to be buried*. *attribuit nōs trucidandōs*, *C.* 4, 13, *us he handed over to be slaughtered*. *sauciōs militēs cūrandōs dīvidit patribus*, *L.* 2, 47, 12, *he apportioned the wounded soldiers among the senators to cure*. *haec porcīs comedenda relinquēs*, *H. E.* 1, 7, 19, *you'll leave them to the pigs to eat*. *cīvis Rōmānōs trucidandōs dēnotāvit*, *IP.* 7, *he specified Romans for slaughter*.

(c.) *quae ūtenda vāsa semper vicīnī rogant*, Pl. *Aul.* 96, *traps that the neighbours are always asking the use of*. *artoptam ex proximō ūtendam petō*, Pl. *Aul.* 400, *I'm going for the use of a breadpan from next door*.

2251. When such a verb is passive, the accusative becomes nominative.

*simulācrum Dīānae tollendum locātur*, *V.* 4, 76, *the moving of the statue of Diana is let out*. *dīlaceranda ferīs dabor ālitibusque praeda*, *Cat.* 64, 152, *I shall be given a prey for beasts and birds to tear*. *trādītique fētiālibus Caudium dūcendī*, *L.* 9, 10, 2, *and they were delivered to the fetials to be taken to Caudium*.

2252. (2.) The accusative of the gerundive construction or gerund is used with a preposition, usually *ad*. If the verb is of transitive use, the gerundive is proper, not the gerund (2240).

This construction is used with verbs (including verbs of hindering), with substantives generally to denote purpose, and with adjectives which have the meaning of *capable*, *fit*, *easy*, *useful*, &c., &c.

(a.) hic in noxiāst, ille ad dicendam causam adest, T. Ph. 266, when A's in trouble, B turns up to make excuses for him. ad pācem petendam ad Hannibalem vēnit, L. 21, 13, 1, he is come to Hannibal to sue for peace. ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur, I, 3, 3, Orgetorix is chosen to do this. dant sē ad lūdendum, Fin. 5, 42, they devote themselves to playing. palūs Rōmānōs ad insequendum tardābat, 7, 26, 2, a morass hindered the Romans from pursuit. ut peditēs ad trāseundum impedirentur, Caes. C. 1, 62, 2, so that the infantry were hampered in crossing. (b.) causa ad obiūrgandum, T. Andr. 150, a reason for finding fault. spatium sūmāmus ad cōgitandum, Fin. 4, 1, let us take time for thought. alter occāsiōnem sibi ad occupandam Asiam oblātam esse arbitrātur, IP. 4, the other thinks a chance is given him for seizing all Asia. (c.) homo nōn aptissimus ad iocandum, DN. 2, 46, a man not very well fitted to be a joker. nimis doctus illest ad male faciendum, Pl. E. 378, too well the fellow's trained at playing tricks. ūtēbātur eō cibō quī esset facillimus ad concoquendum, Fin. 2, 64, he made use of the sort of food which was easiest to digest.

2253. Other prepositions are sometimes used: as, inter, in old Latin, Vergil, Livy, and later writers; ob, once in Ennius, rarely in Cicero and Sallust; in very rarely, but even in Cicero; ante (Vergil, Livy), circā (post-Augustan), propter (Varro, Val. Max.), all rare.

mōrēs sē inter lūdendum dētegunt, Quintil. 1, 3, 12, character discovers itself during play. ob rem iūdicandam pecūniam accipere, V. 2, 78, to take money for passing judgement on a case.

## DATIVE.

2254. The dative of the gerundive construction is used with adjectives, verbs, and phrases of ability, attention, and adaptation, with titles of office, and with comitia, election.

This construction is not very common in classical Latin, where few verbs and substantives take it instead of the usual ad and the accusative (2252). In old Latin, it is also joined to adjectives and participles; in Cicero it is thus used only with accommodātus. From Livy on, the construction becomes a very favourite one. Caesar has it only as below and 3, 4, 1.

tālis iactandis tuae sunt cōsuētae manūs, Pl. Vid. 33, your hands are used to throwing dice. optimum operi faciundō, Pl. R. 757, most suitable for carrying on his trade. praeesse agrō colendō, RA. 50, to superintend farm managing. cum diēs vēnisset rogātiōnī ferendae, Att. 1, 14, 5, when the day came for proposing the bill. hibernis oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, 5, 27, 5, that this was the day set for attacking the winter quarters. cōsul plācandis dis habendōque dilēctū dat operam, L. 22, 2, 1, the consul devotes himself to prostituting the gods and raising troops. Dēmosthenēs cūrātor mūrīs reficiendis fuit, OG. 19, Demosthenes was commissioner for repairing the walls. IIIvirī rēi publicae cōstituendae, L. Epit. 120, a commission of three for reorganizing the state. comitia collēgae subrogandō habuit, L. 2, 8, 3, he held an election for appointing a colleague.

2255. In the dative, a transitive gerund with an object in the accusative is found four times in Plautus; in Ovid, Livy, and Vitruvius once each.



## 2256-2259.] Sentences: Nouns of the Verb.

---

2256. Late writers sometimes use the dative of the gerundive construction instead of a final clause (1961): as,

subdūcit ex aciē legiōnem faciendīs castrīs, *Ta.* 2, 21, *he withdraws a legion from the field to build a camp.* nīdum mollibus plūmīs cōsternunt tepēfaciendīs ōvīs, simul nē dūrus sit infantibus pullis, *Plin. NH.* 10, 92, *they line the nest with soft feathers to warm the eggs, and also to prevent it from being uncomfortable to their young brood.*

2257. The dative of the gerund is used chiefly by old and late writers, and is confined in the best prose to a few special phrases.

ōsculandō meliust pausam fierī, *Pl. R.* 1205, *'tis better that a stop be put to kissing.* tū nec solvendō erās, *Pl.* 2, 4, *you were neither solvent.* SC·ARF, i. c. scribendō arfuērunt, *CIL.* I, 196, 2, *there were present when the document was put in writing.* quod scribendō adfuistī, *Fam.* 15, 6, 2, *because you were present at the writing.*

### GENITIVE.

2258. (1.) The genitive of the gerundive construction or gerund is used with substantives or adjectives.

(a.) tacendī tempus est, *Pl. Poen.* 741, *it's time to be still.* spēs potiundī oppidī, 2, 7, 2, *the hope of overpowering the town* (2244). summa difficultās nāvigandī, 3, 12, 5, *the greatest difficulty in sailing.* proeliī committendī signum dedit, 2, 21, 3, *he gave the signal for beginning the battle.* exemplō eōrum clādēs fuit ut Mārsī mitterent ōrātōrēs pācis petendae, *L.* 9, 45, 18, *their downfall was a warning to the Marsians to send envoys to sue for peace.* sive nāvēs dēciendī operis essent missae, 4, 17, 10, *or if vessels for breaking down the works had been sent.* Particularly with causā, grātiā, or rarely ergō (1257), to denote purpose: as, frūmentandī causā, 4, 12, 1, *for foraging.* vitandae suspiciōnis causā, *C.* 1, 19, *to avoid suspicion.* mūneris fungendī grātiā, *RP.* 1, 27, *for the sake of doing one's duty.* illiusce sacri coercendī ergō, *Cato, RR.* 139, *because of thinning out you hallowed grove.*

(b.) quam cupida eram hūc redeundī, *T. Hec.* 91, *how eager I was to return here.* homine peritō dēfīniendī, *Off.* 3, 60, *a man accomplished in drawing distinctions.* perpessus est omnia potius quam cōsciōs dēlendae tyrannidis indicāret, *TD.* 2, 52, *he stood out against the worst sooner than betray his confederates in the overthrow of the tyranny.* insuētus nāvigandī, 5, 6, 3, *unused to sailing.* studiōsus audiendī, *N.* 15, 3, 2, *an eager listener.* nescia tolerandī, *Ta.* 3, 1, *ignorant what patience was.* nandī pavidus, *Ta. H.* 5, 14, *afraid to swim.* With adjectives, the gerundive construction is not found in Plautus and Terence, and the gerund not in Plautus. Terence has the gerund with cupidus, Cato with studiōsus. The construction is of slow growth before Tacitus, who greatly developed it.

2259. In the genitive, a transitive gerund with an object in the accusative is rare except in Plautus; ordinarily the gerundive is used (2240).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## ABLATIVE.

2265. In the ablative a transitive gerund with a substantive object is not uncommon.

*frātre* laudandō, *Leg.* 1, 1, in quoting your brother. *largē partiendō praedam*, L. 21, 5, 5, by a lavish distribution of the spoil. This use is particularly common in Livy. Not in Caesar.

2266. (1.) The ablative of the gerundive construction or gerund denotes means, less often cause, rarely manner and circumstances, or time, or respect.

Means: *Caesar dandō sublevandō ignoscundō, Catō nihil largiundō glōriam adeptus est*, S. C. 54, 3, Caesar gained reputation by giving, helping, and pardoning, Cato by lavishing no gifts. *opprimi sustentandō ac prolātandō nullō pactō potest*, C. 4, 6, it cannot be crushed by patience and procrastination. Livy has this ablative with the adjective *contentus* (1377): *nec iam possidendis publicis agris contentos esse*, 6, 14, 11, that they were no longer satisfied with the occupation of the public lands. Cause: *aggerundā curvom aquā*, Pl. *Cas.* 124, bowed with water carrying. *flendō turgidulī rubent ocellī*, Cat. 3, 18, with weeping red and swollen are her eyes. Manner and circumstances: rare in old Latin and Cicero: not in Caesar: *bellum ambulandō confecerunt*, Caelius in *Fam.* 8, 15, 1, they strolled through the war. *senex vincendō factus*, L. 30, 28, 5, maturing in victories. Time: *cum plausum meō nōmine recitandō dedissent*, *Att.* 4, 1, 6, when they had applauded on the reading of my name. *partibus dividendis ipsi regiō ēvenit*, L. 25, 30, 6, at the distribution, the district fell to him. Respect: *Latinē loquendō cuius erat pār*, *Br.* 128, in his use of Latin he was a match for anybody.

2267. (2.) The ablative of the gerundive construction or gerund is also accompanied by a preposition, *ab*, *dē*, *in*, or *ex*; rarely by *prō*.

*nullum tempus illi umquam vacabat aut a scribendō aut a cogitandō*, *Br.* 272, he never had any time free from writing or from thinking. *quod verbum ductum est a nimis intuendō fortunam alterius*, *TD.* 3, 20, a word which is derived from 'looking too closely at' another's prosperity, of the word *invidia*. *consilium illud dē occludendis aedibus*, *T. Eu.* 784, that idea about barring up the house. *nihil dē causā discendā praecipiant*, *DO.* 2, 100, they give no instruction about studying up a case. *vostra oratio in rē incipiundā*, *T. Ph.* 224, your remarks when we started in with this affair. *Africanī in rē gerundā celeritatem*, *V.* 5, 25, Africanus's swiftness in execution. *vix ex gratulandō eminebam*, Pl. *Cap.* 504, I barely got my head above their congratulations. *quae virtus ex providendō est appellata prudentia*, *Leg.* 1, 60, a virtue which from 'foreseeing' is called foresight. *prō liberandā amicā*, Pl. *Per.* 426, for setting free a woman. *prō ope ferendā*, L. 23, 28, 11, instead of going to the rescue. In this use *ab* is not found in Plautus or Terence, nor *prō* in Terence. *cum* is found in Quintilian, *super* once in Horace, then in Tacitus, *sine* once in Varro.

2258. With a comparative expression, the ablative of the gerundive is found once: *nūllum officium referendā grātiā magis necessārium est*, *Off.* 1, 47, *no obligation is more binding than the returning of a favour*. The gerundive construction in the ablative of separation (1302) is found rarely in Livy and Pliny the younger; Livy has also the gerund: as, *Verminam absistere sequendō cōegit*, *L.* 29, 33, 8, *he forced Vermina to abandon his pursuit*.

## THE SUPINE.

2269. The supine is a verbal substantive. The form in *-um* is an accusative. The form in *-ū* is used sometimes as a dative, sometimes as an ablative.

### THE SUPINE IN *-um*.

2270. The supine in *-um* denotes purpose with verbs of motion (1166): as,

*abiit piscatum*, *Pl. R.* 898, *he's gone a fishing*. *neu noctū irem obambulatum*, *Pl. Tri.* 315, *not to go a prowling by night*. *legione unā frumentatum missā*, 4, 32, 1, *one legion being sent a foraging*. *sessum it praetor*, *DN.* 3, 74, *the praetor is going to take his seat*. *spectatum veniunt*, *veniunt spectentur ut ipsae*, *O. AA.* 1, 99, *they come to see and eke for to be seen*. This use is very common in Plautus and Terence, less common in Cicero and Caesar. It is found not infrequently in Sallust and particularly in Livy; sporadically in the Augustan poets. In late prose it is almost confined to archaistic writing. In classical Latin, purpose is more commonly expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* or a relative pronoun, or by a gerundive or gerund with *ad* or *causā*. See also 2164.

2271. The most common supines in *-um* are *cubitum*, *dormitum*, *ēreptum*, *frumentatum*, *gratulatum*, *nūntiatum*, *oppugnatum*, *oratum*, *pastum*, *perditum*, *petitum*, *salutatūm*, *sessum*, *supplicatum*. They are found chiefly with *eō* and *veniō*. *nūptum* is also common with *dō*, *collocō*, &c., and supines are occasionally found with other verbs implying motion.

2272. The supine in *-um* may be followed by the same construction as its verb: as,

(a.) Accusative: *deōs salutatum atque uxorem modo intrō devortor domum*, *Pl. St.* 534, *I'll just turn in home to greet my gods and my wife*. *lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium*, 1, 11, 2, *they send envoys to Caesar to beg aid*. *oppugnatum patriam nostram veniunt*, *L.* 21, 41, 13, *they come to assail our country*. Classical writers generally avoid this use of the accusative. (b.) Dative: *servitum tibi mē abdūcitō*, *Pl. Ps.* 520, *take me away to slave for you*. *nōn ego Grāis servitum mātribus ibō*, *V.* 2, 786, *not I shall go to be the serf of Grecian dames*. (c.) Subordinate clause: *lēgātī veniēbant: Aeduī questum quod Harūdēs finēs eōrum populārentur*, 1, 37, 1, *envoys came: the Aeduans to complain 'because the Harudians were laying their country waste'* (1853). *lēgātōs ad Caesarem miserunt oratum nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret*, 6, 32, 1, *they sent envoys to Caesar to beg that he would not regard them in the light of enemies*.

## 2273-2277.] Sentences: Nouns of the Verb.

---

2273. The supine in -um followed by *īrī* forms the future passive infinitive: as,

*eum exceptum īrī putō*, *Att.* 7, 22, 1, *I think that there is a going to capture him, i. e. that he is going to be captured.* Here *īrī* is used impersonally and *eum* is the object of *exceptum*. This infinitive is found half a dozen times in old Latin, often in Cicero, rarely in other writers; not in the Augustan poets. For the common periphrasis, see 2233.

### THE SUPINE IN -Ū.

2274. The supine in -ū is used with *fās*, *nefās*, and adjectives, chiefly of such meaning as *easy*, *good*, *pleasant*, *strange*, or their opposites.

Only a few supines in -ū are found; the commonest are *auditū*, *cōgnitū*, *dictū*, *factū*, *inventū*, *memorātū*, *nātū*, *visū*.

*sī hoc fās est dictū*, *TD.* 5, 38, *if heaven allows us to say so.* *difficile dictū est dē singulīs*, *Ham.* 1, 7, 2, *it is hard to say in the case of individuals.* *quaerunt quod optimum factū sit*, *V.* 1, 68, *they ask what the best thing is to do.* *quid est tam iocundum cōgnitū atque auditū?* *DO.* 1, 31, *what pleasure is greater to mind and ear?* *palpebrae mollissimae tactū*, *DN.* 2, 142, *the eyelids are very soft to the touch.* With such adjectives the dative is commonly used (1200); or, particularly with *facilis* or *difficilis*, the gerundive construction with *ad* (2252); for the infinitive, see 2166. The supine in -ū is found chiefly in Cicero and Livy. Very rare in old Latin, Sallust, Caesar (who has only *factū* and *nātū*), and the poets. From the elder Pliny and Tacitus on, it gets commoner.

2275. The supine in -ū sometimes introduces a subordinate sentence, but it is never used with an object in the accusative.

*quoivīs facile scītū est quam fuerim miser*, *T. Hec.* 296, *anybody can easily understand how unhappy I was.* *incrēdibile memorātū est quam facile coaluerint*, *S. C.* 6, 2, *it is an incredible tale how readily they grew into one.* *vidētis nefās esse dictū miseram fuisse tālem senectūtem*, *CM.* 13, *you see that it were a sin to say that an old age like his was unhappy.*

2276. The supine in -ū is found rarely with *opus est* (1379), *dignus* and *indignus* (1392): as,

*ita dictū opus est*, *T. Hau.* 941, *thus thou must needs say.* *nihil dignum dictū āctum his cōsulibus*, *L.* 4, 30, 4, *nothing worth mentioning was done this year.* For *dignus* with *quī* and the subjunctive, see 1819; for *opus est* with the infinitive, 2211.

2277. In Plautus and Cato, the supine in -ū is very rarely used like an ablative of separation (1302): as, *nunc opsonātū redeō*, *Pl. Men.* 288, *I'm only just back from catering.* *prīmus cubitū surgat, postrēmus cubitū eat*, *Cato, RR.* 5, 5, *let him be first to get up from bed and last to go to bed.* Statius imitates this use in *Ach.* 1, 119.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## THE ATTRIBUTIVE PARTICIPLE.

2282. The present or perfect participle is often used as an adjective to express a permanent condition : as,

acrem orātōrem, incēsum et agentem et canōrum forī strepitus dēsiderat, *Br.* 317, *the noisy forum requires an impetuous speaker, inspired and dramatic and sonorous.* L. Abuccius, homo adprimē doctus, Varro, *RR.* 3, 2, 17, *Abuccius, an eminently learned man.* alii facētī, flōrentēs etiam et ornātī, *O.* 20, *others are brilliant, even bright and elegant.* id tibi renūntiō futūrum ut sis sciēns, *T. Andr.* 508, *I give you notice this will happen, that you may be prepared.*

2283. The future participle is found as an adjective in the Augustan poets and in late writers. Cicero, however, has futūrus in this use with rēs and a few other words, and has ventūrus once.

dā mānsūram urbem, *V.* 3, 85, *grant a city that shall abide.* firmus pariēs et dūrātūrus, *Ta. D.* 22, *a strong and durable wall.* signa ostenduntur ā dīs rērum futūrārum, *DN.* 2, 12, *signs of future events are disclosed by the gods.* For the future participle with forms of sum, see 1633.

2284. Many participles have become complete adjectives, and as such are capable of composition or comparison, or take the case required by an adjective.

(a.) nōmen invictī imperātōris, *V.* 4, 82, *the invincible general's name.* pūrus et insōns sī vivō, *H. S.* 1, 6, 69, *pure and guiltless if I live* (749). (b.) solūtus venēficae scientiōris carmine, *H. Epod.* 5, 71, *freed by some craftier witch's charm.* homo ērudītissimus, *Verrēs, V.* 4, 126, *Verres, most accomplished of men.* (c.) tibi sum oboediēns, *Pl. MG.* 806, *I 'm your obedient* (1200). tē cōnfidō ea factūrum quae mihi intellegēs maximē esse accommodāta, *Fam.* 3, 3, 2, *I feel confident that you will do what you shall feel most appropriate to my interests* (1201). For the genitive with such participles, see 1266.

2285. A perfect participle in agreement with a substantive often contains the leading idea, and may be translated like an abstract substantive with a genitive dependent. The nominative is rarely thus used. The present participle in this use is rare, the future late.

This construction expresses the completed action of the verb in precisely the same way that the gerundive construction (2240) expresses uncompleted action.

(a.) Joined with substantives : iniūriae retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, 3, 10, 2, *the outrages of Roman knights detained, i. e. in the detention of Roman knights.* servātī cōsulis decus, *L.* 21, 46, 10, *the credit of saving the consul.* male administrātae prōvinciae urgēbātur, *Ta.* 6, 29, *he was charged with maladministration of his province.* ō quid solūtis est beātius cūris? *Cat.* 31, 7, *oh what is sweeter than the putting off of care?*

(b.) Joined with prepositions : ab conditā urbe ad liberātam, *L.* 1, 60, 3, *from the foundation of the city to the liberation thereof.* post nātōs hominēs improbissimus, *Br.* 224, *the greatest reprobate since the creation of man.* ante civitātem datam, *Arch.* 9, *before the gift of the citizenship.*

(c.) In the nominative: very rare before Livy: *dēpressa hostium classis, Arch. 21, the sinking of the enemy's fleet. angēbant ingentis spīritūs virum Sicilia Sardiniaque āmissae, L. 21, 1, 5, what tortured the high-souled hero was the loss of Sicily and Sardinia. cuius turbāvit nitidōs exstīnctus passer ocellōs, J. 6, 7, whose sparkling eyne the sparrow's death bedimmed.*

2286. This use of the participle, though old, is not common before Livy, who, like Tacitus, has it frequently, both with substantives and with prepositions. Very rare in Caesar, rare in Cicero, who, however, uses it both with substantives and with a few prepositions. In old Latin (not in Terence), it is found with the substantives *opus* and *ūsus*, in Cato with *post*, in Varro with *propter*: *as, mī homine conventōst opus, Pl. Cur. 302, I needs must see the man. propter mare congelātum, Varro, RR. 1, 2, 4, by reason of the freezing of the sea water.* For the participle alone with *ūsus est* and *opus est*, see 1382.

### THE SUBSTANTIVE PARTICIPLE.

2287. Participles sometimes become substantives, especially the perfect participle: *as,*

*vīvit gnāta, T. Ph. 749, your daughter's alive. dē dēmēnsō suō, T. Ph. 43, out of his allowance. institūtum tenēbimus, TD. 4, 7, we will hold to our fundamental idea.* Adverbs, not adjectives, are commonly used to qualify perfect participles used as substantives; for examples, see 1440. The masculine singular is rarely used as a substantive; the neuter, both singular and plural, is common, particularly with prepositions.

2288. The masculine plural of the perfect participle, when used as a substantive, generally denotes a definite class of persons: *as,*

*ut damnātī in integrum restituantur, vīnctī solvantur, V. 5, 12, that the condemned go scot-free, the imprisoned are set at liberty. Catilina cum expeditīs in primā aciē vorsārī, S. C. 60, 4, Catiline bustling round in the van with the light infantry. ēvocātīs equōs sūmit, 7, 65, 5, he took away the veterans' horses.* Rarely not denoting a definite class: *as, missī intercipiuntur, 5, 40, 1, the men who had been sent (i.e. on a particular occasion) are cut off.*

2289. The perfect participle alone sometimes serves as the subject of a sentence instead of an abstract substantive (2285): *as,*

*nōtum furēns quid fēmina possit, V. 5, 6, the knowledge of what a woman in her wrath can do. prōnūntiātum repente nē quis violārētur, multitudinem exuit armīs, L. 4, 59, 7, the sudden proclamation that nobody was to be harmed, deprived the people of their weapons.* This use is found chiefly in Livy, once or twice in Cicero; not in Caesar or Sallust. See 1382.

2290. The present participle is rarely a substantive in the nominative and ablative singular, but often in the other cases.

*in cōnstituentibus rem pūblicam, Br. 45, among the founders of a state. multae insectantēs dēpellunt, DN. 2, 127, many drive off their pursuers. nec praeterita nec praesentia abs tē, sed futūra expectō, Fam. 2, 8, 1, I do not expect from you the past or the present, but the future.*



2291. The genitive plural of the present participle is often best translated by an English abstract: as,

*cachinnōs inridentium commovēbat*, *Br.* 216, *he provoked guffaws of derision.* *mixtōs terrentium paventiumque clāmōrēs*, *L.* 22, 5, 4, *mingled cries of exultation and terror.* *primō gaudentium impetū*, *Ta. H.* 1, 4, *in the first outburst of joy.*

2292. The future participle is very rarely used as a substantive.

*audītūrum dictūri cūra dēlectat*, *Quintil.* 11, 3, 157, *deliberation on the part of one who is on the point of speaking attracts his prospective hearer.* *havē, imperātor, moritūri tē salūtant*, *Suet. Claud.* 21, *emperor, all hail! the doomed give thee greeting.* This use is found in late writers, as in Tacitus and Curtius once each, and half a dozen times in Pliny the younger. Cicero and Sallust have *futūrus* thus (2283): as, *abs tē futūra exspectō*, *Fam.* 2, 8, 1, *from you I expect the future.* *supplicia in post futūrōs composuit*, *S. Fr. Lep.* 6, *he invented penalties for men unborn.*

### THE APPOSITIVE PARTICIPLE.

2293. The appositive participle is a loose substitute for a subordinate sentence introduced by a relative or by a conjunctive particle.

2294. (1.) The appositive participle may represent a relative sentence: as,

*nōvī ego Epicūrēōs omnia sigilla venerantēs*, *DN.* 1, 85, *why, I know Epicureans who bow the knee to all sorts of graven images.* *Conōn mūrōs dirutōs ā Lysandrō reficiendōs cūrat*, *N.* 9, 4, 5, *Conon superintended the rebuilding of the walls which had been destroyed by Lysander.* The future participle is poetic and late (2283): as, *servēs itūrum Caesarem in Britannōs*, *H.* 1, 35, 29, *guard Caesar who against the Britons is to march.*

2295. (2.) The appositive participle, representing other sentences, may express various relations: as, (a.) time, (b.) cause or means, (c.) purpose, (d.) concession, (e.) hypothesis, (f.) description or the manner of an action, like an adverb.

For the ablative absolute in such relations, see 1362-1374, particularly 1367.

(a.) Time: *vehemēns sum exoriēns, quom occidō vehementior*, *Pl. R.* 71, *furious am I at my rising, when I set more furious still.* *occīsus est ā cēnā rediēns*, *RA.* 97, *he was murdered on his way home from a dinner-party.* *ūnam noctem sōlarū praedōnēs commorātī, accēdere incipiunt Syracūsās*, *V.* 5, 95, *the freebooters, after tarrying but one night, began to draw near Syracuse.* The future is late (2283): as, *primum omnium virōrum fortium itūri in proelia canunt*, *Ta. G.* 3, *as the chief of all brave heroes, they sing of him when they are on the point of going to battle, of Hercules.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



2296. The participle with a negative may be translated by *without*: as, *id illa ūniversum abripiet haud existumāns quantō labōre partum*, T. Ph. 45, *my lady 'll grab it all without a thought of all the toil it cost to get.* *nōn rogātōs ultrō offerre auxilium*, L. 34, 23, 3, *that without being asked, they offer assistance of their own accord.*

### THE PREDICATIVE PARTICIPLE.

2297. *habeō* is sometimes used with certain perfect participles to express an action continuing in its consequences. *faciō*, *dō*, and in old Latin *reddō* and *cūrō*, with a perfect participle, are emphatic substitutes for the verb to which the participle belongs.

(a.) *quae nōs nostramque adulēscēntiam habent dēspicātam et quae nōs semper omnibus cruciant modīs*, T. Eu. 383, *who hold us and our youth in scorn and torment us in every way.* *in eā prōvinciā pecūniās magnās collocātās habent*, IP. 18, *they have invested large funds in that province.* *Clōdii animum perspectum habeō, cōgnitum, iūdicātum*, ad Br. I, I, I, *Clodius's mind I have looked into thoroughly, probed, formed a judgement on.* *clausum lacū ac montibus et circumfūsum suis cōpiīs habuit hostem*, L. 22, 4, 5, *his enemy he had shut in by lake and mountains and surrounded by his troops.* See also 1606.

(b.) *missa haec face*, T. Ad. 906, *let this pass.* *vērūm haec missa faciō*, RA. 76, *but I let this pass.* *Mānlium missum fēcit*, Off. 3, 112, *he let Manlius go.* *factum et cūrātum dabō*, Pl. Cas. 439, *I'll have it done and seen to.* *strātās legiōnēs Latinōrum dabō*, L. 8, 6, 6, *I will lay the Latin legions low.* *ego iam tē commōtum reddam*, T. Andr. 864, *I'll soon have you worked up.* *inventum tibi cūrābō tuōm Pamphilum*, T. Andr. 684, *I'll have your Pamphilus looked up for you.* In classical writers, *faciō* only is found in this use and only with the participle of *mittō*; *dō* occurs in late writers; *reddō* and *cūrō* only in old Latin. All these verbs are usually in the future tense or its equivalent. For *volō*, *cupiō*, and *nōlō* with the infinitive passive without *esse*, see 2229.

2298. The present participle is used predicatively with verbs signifying *represent*, and with verbs denoting the exercise of the senses or mind: as,

*facit Sōcratem disputantem*, DN. I, 31, *he represents Socrates discussing.* *quasi ipsōs indūxī loquentēs*, L. 3, *I have brought on the men themselves as speaking.* *nōn illum miserum, ignārum cāsūs suī, redeuntem ā cēnā vidētis?* RA. 98, *do you not see the poor man, little dreaming of his fate, returning from the dinner?* *nōn audīvit dracōnem loquentem*, Div. 2, 141, *he did not hear the serpent speaking.* This use is found in Plautus, Terence, Cicero, Sallust, Horace, Nepos, Vitruvius, and Livy. Once in Piso (consul 133 B.C.), as cited by Gellius, 7, 9, 6. Verbs denoting the exercise of the senses or mind take the accusative with the infinitive to denote the fact or action; see 2175. For *audiō* with *cum*, see 1870. For the infinitive without *esse* with verbs of emotion, see 2184.

2299. A passive with a verb meaning *represent* is expressed, for lack of a present passive participle, by the infinitive (2175). The infinitive active is rare.

---

(a.) cōstruī ā deō atque aedificārī mundum facit, *DN.* 1, 19, *he represents the world being put together and built by the gods.* (b.) poētae impendēre saxum Tantalō faciunt, *TD.* 4, 35, *the poets represent a rock hanging over Tantalus.* Rarely the participle (2298) and the infinitive are united: as, Polyphēmum Homērus cum ariete conloquentem facit eiusque laudāre fortūnās, *TD.* 5, 115, *Homer represents Polyphemus chatting with the ram and his envy of the ram's estate.* But the perfect infinitive active must be used when the action is to be distinctly marked as completed, for lack of a perfect active participle: as, fēcit Dolābella Verrem accēpisse, *V.* 1, 100, *Dolabella represented Verres as having received.*

---





**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

### THE CAUSATIVE USE.

2304. A verb is sometimes used to denote not what the subject actually does himself, but what he has another do. This is called the *Causative Use* of the verb: as,

animī causā mihi nāvem faciam, Pl. R. 932, *just for diversion I'll build me a yacht.* cum vellet sibi ānulum facere, aurificem iussit vocārī, V. 4, 56, *wanting to make him a ring, he ordered a goldsmith to be called.* complūrēs pauperēs mortuōs suō sūmptū extulit, N. 5, 4, 3, *he buried a good many poor dead people at his own expense, i. e. had them buried.* Also in the passive: as, tondēmur, Quintil. 1, 6, 44, *we get shaved.* When greater exactness is required, having a thing done may be expressed more distinctly by faciō (1965), by cūrō (2250), or by iubeō.

### THE POTENTIAL USE.

2305. A verb is sometimes used to indicate action that can be done, and especially action that can be done at any time. This is called the *Potential Use* of the verb: as,

clārē oculis videō, Pl. MG. 630, *I can see distinctly.* proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit isque nōnnūllis locis vadō trānsitur, 1, 6, 2, *because the Rhone runs between the district of the Helvetians and Allobrogans, and the river in some places can be forded, or is fordable.* Particularly with a negative: as, apertē adūlantem nēmō nōn videt, L. 99, *an open flatterer anybody can see through.* nōn facile dīiudicātur amor vērū et fictus, Fam. 9, 16, 2, *real love and pretended love cannot easily be told apart.* ubi Crassus animadvertit, suās cōpiās nōn facile dīdūcī, nōn cunctandum existimāvit, 3, 23, 7, *when Crassus saw that his forces could not easily be divided, he thought he ought to lose no time.* quoniam prōpositum nōn tenuerat, Caes. C. 3, 65, 4, *seeing that he had not succeeded in carrying out his plan.* Sometimes this idea is expressed by the subjunctive (1554).

### THE OBLIGATORY USE.

2306. A verb is sometimes used to denote obligatory action. This is called the *Obligatory Use* of the verb: as,

paulisper commorātus est, Mil. 28, *he had to wait.* aegra trahēbant corpora, V. 3, 140, *they had to drag their sickly frames along.* carui patriā, Sest. 145, *I had to keep away from the country of my birth.* senātor populī Rōmānī pernoctāvit in pūblicō, V. 4, 25, *a senator of Rome was fain to sleep in the streets.* serēmus aliquid in dērelictō solō, Br. 16, *we shall have to sow something in an abandoned field.* erat summa inopia pābulī, adeō ut foliīs equōs alerent, Caes. C. 3, 58, 3, *there was an utter lack of fodder, so that they were fain to feed their horses on leaves.*

## THE PERMISSIVE USE.

2307. A verb is sometimes used to denote permitted action. This is called the *Permissive Use* of the verb: as,

*Verrēsne habēbit domī suae candēlābrum Iovis?* *V.* 4, 71, *shall Verres be allowed to have at his house a candelabra of Jupiter?* *petit ut ipse dē eū statuat,* 1, 19, 5, *he asks to be allowed to sit in judgement himself on the man.* *Pisō orāvit ut manēret,* *Ta.* 2, 81, *Piso asked to be allowed to stay.*



## (B.) INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

### (*Ōrātiō Obliqua.*)

2308. The speech or thought of another, quoted in his own words, is called *Direct Discourse* (1723).

2309. The speech or thought of another, dependent on a verb of saying or thinking, is called *Indirect Discourse* (1723).

One may, of course, quote his own words or thoughts indirectly, as well as those of another (1726).

2310. The verb of thinking or saying is often not distinctly expressed, but only implied in the context (1725).

2311. The principles which govern the change of direct discourse into indirect discourse have been already set forth in the foregoing pages; but, for the convenience of the learner, they are here put together.

## MOOD.

### (A.) MAIN SENTENCES.

2312. Declarative sentences of direct discourse are put in the accusative with the infinitive, and interrogative and imperative sentences of direct discourse are put in the subjunctive, in indirect discourse.

(a.) For examples of declarative sentences, see 2175-2184.



(b.) Interrogative (1773): *quid vellet? cūr in suās possessionēs veniret?* 1, 44, 7, *what did he mean? why this movement into his property?* from Ariovistus's reply to Caesar. *dictātor litterās ad senātum misit: deum benignitate Veiōs iam fore in potestate populī Rōmānī; quid dē praedā faciendum cēnsērent?* L. 5, 20, 1, *the dictator sent this letter to the senate: through the bounty of the gods Vei would soon belong to the Roman nation; what did they think should be done about the booty?*

(c.) Imperative (1547): *Cicerō respondit: sī ab armis discēdere velint, sē adiūtore ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant,* 5, 41, 7, *Cicero replied: if they wished to lay down their arms, let them take his advice and send envoys to Caesar. nūntius ēī domō vēnit: bellum Athēniēnsēs et Boeōtōs indixisse Lacedaemoniīs; quārē venire nē dubitāret,* N. 17, 4, 1, *a message reached him from home: the Athenians and Boeotians had declared war on the Lacedaemonians; so he was to come without delay.* See also 1707, 1708.

**2313.** Rhetorical questions (that is, declarations made for effect in the form of questions) in the first or third person in the direct discourse are put in the accusative with the infinitive in indirect discourse: as,

*sī veteris contumēliae obliviscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarum memoriam dēpōnere posse?* 1, 14, 3, *if he were inclined to disregard the old affront, could he also forget their fresh insults?* from Caesar's reply to the Helvetians. *haud mirum esse Superbō ēī inditum Rōmae cōgnōmen: an quicquam superbius esse quam lūdificārī sic omne nōmen Latīnum? cui nōn appārere adfectāre eum imperium in Latīnōs?* L. 1, 50, 3, *no wonder Rome dubbed him 'the Proud': could there be a greater sign of pride than this mockery of the whole Latin nation? who did not see that he aspired to dominion over the Latins?* This use is not found in old Latin. It occurs once or twice in Cicero's letters and a few times in Caesar. In Livy and late writers, it is not uncommon. Such questions in the second person require the subjunctive (2312).

**2314.** Questions which are in the subjunctive in direct discourse retain the subjunctive in indirect discourse: as,

*quod vērō ad amicitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī quis patī posset?* 1, 43, 8, *who could allow them to be stripped of what they had possessed when they became the friends of the Roman nation?* (1565).

## (B.) SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

**2315.** The verb of a subordinate sentence, introduced by a relative word or a conjunctive particle, stands in the subjunctive in indirect discourse (1722).

For the indicative with *dum*, *in the time while*, retained in indirect discourse, see 1995.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

numquis, quod bonus vir esset, grātiās dīs ēgit umquam? *DN.* 3, 87, *did anybody ever thank the gods 'because he was a good man'?* (1853). *mihī loquitur nec rēctē quia tibi aurum reddidī et quia nōn tē dēfraudāverim*, *Pl. B.* 735, *he's always pitching into me because I returned you the money and 'because I did n't do you out of it'* (1856, 1853). *aedem Dīiovi vōvit, sī eō diē hostēs fūdisset*, *L.* 31, 21, 12, *he vowed a temple to infernal Jove, 'if he should rout the enemy on that day.'* For other examples, see 1725, 1852, 1853, 1884, &c.

2320. Sometimes a verb of saying or thinking is added, and is itself irrationally put in the subjunctive. For examples, see 1727.

## (2.) TENSE.

### (A.) OF THE INFINITIVE.

2321. The tenses of the infinitive follow their usual law (2218), representing the action as present, past, or future, from the speaker's point of view.

*nūntiātum est Ariovistum ad occupandum Vesontiōnem contendere trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōfēcisse*, *I.* 38, 1, *it was reported that Ariovistus was pressing on (2219) to seize Vesontio, and that he had done a three days' journey from his own borders (2226).* *fāma est āram esse in vestibulō templi*, *L.* 24, 3, 7, *rumour has it that there is an altar in the vestibule of the temple (2219).* *lēgātī haec sē ad suos relātūrōs dixērunt*, *4.* 9, 1, *the envoys said they would report this to their countrymen (2232).* For other examples, see 2175-2203; for the infinitive equivalent of the indicative imperfect and pluperfect, see 2226, 2227.

### (B.) OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

2322. The tenses of the subjunctive follow the law of the sequence of tenses; see 1745.

The tenses are usually imperfect or pluperfect, as the verb introducing a quotation is usually past.

*Sōcratēs dicere solēbat, omnēs in eō quod scīrent, satis esse ēloquentēs*, *DO.* 1, 63, *Socrates used to maintain that all men were eloquent enough in a matter which they understood (1766).* *dicēbam quoad metuerēs, omnia tē prōmissūrum*, *Ph.* 2, 89, *I said that as long as you were afraid, you would promise everything (1771).* *cōgnōvit Suēbōs postēā quam pontem fierī comperissent, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse*, *4.* 19, 2, *he ascertained that after the Suebans had learned of the building of the bridge, they had sent out messengers in every direction (1772).* For other examples, see 1746-1772.

2323. But the present and perfect subjunctive are often used, especially when the main verb is present, or for vividness after a secondary tense.

Alexandrum Philippus accūsat quod largitiōne benevolentiam Macedonum cōsectetur, *Off.* 2, 53, *Philip accuses Alexander of courting the favour of the Macedonians by the use of money* (1746, 1853). initium quod huic cum mātē fuerit simultātis audistis, *Clu.* 17, *you have heard the origin of the enmity which was between the defendant and his mother* (1746). Ariovistus respondit: stipendium capere iūre bellī quod victōrēs victis imponere cōsuerint, 1, 44, 1, *Ariovistus answered that it was by the laws of war that he took the tribute which victors were wont to lay upon the vanquished* (1755). For other examples, see 1746-1772.

2324. The future of direct discourse is represented in indirect discourse by the imperfect, and the future perfect by the pluperfect subjunctive.

sē quod ē rē pūblicā esset factūrum, L. 28, 45, 3, *that he would do what should be for the interests of the state* (1766). sē nōn ante coeptūrum quam ignem in rēgiis castris cōspexisset, L. 30, 5, 5, *that he would not begin before he saw fire in the royal camp* (1766, 1921). The present or perfect subjunctive also is found when the main verb requires. For other examples, see 1746-1772.

### (3.) PRONOUN.

2325. ego and nōs, of direct discourse, are represented by sē in indirect discourse, and meus and noster by suus. tū and vōs, of direct discourse, are represented in indirect discourse by ille, or, when less emphatic, by is.

For the use of the reflexive pronoun, see 2338-2342.

sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum, 1, 44, 7, *that he came into Gaul before the Roman nation*, said Ariovistus of himself. sē ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse, 1, 13, 6, *that they had learned from their fathers and ancestors*, said the Helvetians of themselves. trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, 1, 44, 1, *that he had crossed the Rhine not of his own accord*, was the assertion of Ariovistus. quī nisi dēcēdat, sēsē illum nōn prō amicō sed hoste habitūrum. quod sī eum interfēcerit, multis sēsē principibus populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum, 1, 44, 11, *that unless he withdrew, he should consider him not a friend but a foe. Why, if he killed him, he should do a favour to numerous leading men in the Roman nation.* Here Ariovistus is reported as speaking to Caesar.

## CONDITIONAL PERIODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

### (A.) PROTASIS.

2326. The protasis of every kind (2023, 2024) has the verb in the subjunctive in indirect discourse (2315).

2327. The tense of the protasis is generally imperfect or pluperfect (2322): as,

Ariovistus respondit: si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet, nōn oportere sēsē ā populō Rōmānō impediri, I, 36, 1, *Ariovistus answered: if he did not dictate to the Roman nation, no more ought the Roman nation to interfere with him* (2026). quae si fēcisset, Pompēium in Hispāniās itūrum, *Caes. C. 1, 10, 3, if he did that, Pompey would go to the Spains* (2061).

2328. But indeterminate protases (2023) are sometimes put in the present or perfect subjunctive in indirect discourse, even with a main secondary tense: as,

Ariovistus respondit: si iterum experiri velint, sē parātum esse dēcertāre, I, 44, 1, *Ariovistus answered that if the Romans wanted to try again, he was ready to fight it out* (2026). quī nisi dēcēdat, sēsē illum prō hoste habitūrum, I, 44, 11, *that unless he withdrew, he should consider him an enemy* (2054).

2329. Protases of action non-occurrent (2024) remain in the imperfect or pluperfect, even with a main primary tense.

licet Varrō Mūsās, Aelī Stilōnis sententiā, Plautinō dicat sermōne locutūrās fuisse si Latīnē loquī vellent, *Quintil. 10, 1, 99, though Varro, following Stilo's dictum, may say that the Muses would have spoken in the style of Plautus, if they had wanted to speak Latin* (2095). quaeret ab accūsātōribus quid factūrī essent, si in eō locō fuissent, *Cornif. 2, 22, he will ask the accusers what they would have done if they had been in that predicament* (2099).

## (B.) APODOSIS.

2330. In indeterminate conditional periods (2023), the apodosis simply follows the general rule (2312): as,

Iovem sic aiunt philosophi, si Graecē loquātur, loqui, *Br. 121, the philosophers say that this is Jove's style of speaking, if Jove speaks Greek* (2026). sin bellō persequi perseverāret, reminiscerētur pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum, I, 13, 4, *if he persisted in following them up with war, let him call to mind the old time valour of the Helvetians* (2056). in prōvinciīs intellegēbant si is qui esset cum imperiō emere vellet, fore uti quod quisque vellet quantū vellet auferret, *V. 4, 10, in the provinces they saw that if a man clothed in authority should wish to be a buyer, he would carry off every time whatever he wished at what he wished* (2233; 2054 or 2076). futūrum esse, nisi prōvisum esset, ut Rōma caperētur, *Div. 1, 101, that unless precaution was taken, Rome would be captured* (2233, 2061). For other examples, see 2327, 2328.

2331. In conditional periods of action non-occurrent (2024), the future participle with fuisse, is used in apodoses of the active voice: as,

an Cn. Pompēium cēnsēs maximārum rērum glōriā laetātūrum fuisse, si sciret sē in sōlitūdine Aēgyptiōrum trucidātum iri, *Div. 2, 22, do you suppose that Pompey would have taken any pleasure in the fame which his peerless exploits brought him if he had known that he was going to be butchered in the wilds of Egypt?*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

nēmō nostrūm, *RA.* 55, *not one of us* (1242). ab utrisque vestrūm, *Fam.* 11, 21, 5, *by each of you* (1243). grāta mihi vehementer est memoria nostrī tua, *Fam.* 12, 17, 1, *your remembrance of me is exceedingly agreeable to me* (1260). nostrī nōsmet paenitet, *T. Ph.* 172, *we're discontented with our lot* (1283). For the adjective instead of the possessive or objective genitive, see 1234, 1262.

### THE REFLEXIVE SĒ AND SUUS.

2336. The reflexive regularly refers to the subject of the verb: as,

fugae sēsē mandābant, 2, 24, 2, *they betook themselves to flight*. animō servit, nōn sibi, *Pl. Tr.* 308, *he serves his passions, not his better self*. est amāns suī virtūs, *L.* 98, *virtue is fond of itself*. dūcit sēcum unā virginem, *T. Eu.* 229, *he is leading a girl along with him*. Caesar cōpiās suās dīvisit, *Caes. C.* 3. 97. 3, *Caesar divided his forces*. For sē ipse, see 2376; for sē or suus quisque, 2397.

2337. The reflexive sometimes refers to a word not the subject, when that word is specially emphasized or easily made out from the context. This holds chiefly of suus, which is used with great freedom: as,

Alexandrum uxor sua occīdit, *Inv.* 2, 144, *Alexander was murdered by his own wife*. dēsinant insidiārī domī suae cōsulī, *C.* 1, 32, *let them cease to waylay the consul in his own house and home*. suās rēs Syrācūsānīs restituit, *L.* 29, 1, 17, *he restored their property to the Syracuse people*.

2338. In the construction of the accusative with the infinitive (2175), the reflexive is regularly used when the subject of the infinitive refers to the subject of the verb: as,

Vārus imperium sē habēre dīxit, *Lig.* 22, *Varus said that he had authority*. id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant, 7, 26, 2, *they hoped to accomplish it* (2235).

2339. The reflexive, in this construction, sometimes refers to an emphasized word not the formal subject of the verb: as,

canum custōdia quid sīgnificat aliud nisi sē ad hominum commoditātēs esse generātōs? *DN.* 2, 158, *the watchfulness of the dog—does not it show that he was created for the convenience of man?*

2340. When the subject of the infinitive is different from that of the verb, the reflexive sometimes refers to the subject of the verb, sometimes to that of the infinitive: as,

Ariovistus respondit omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse, 1, 44. 1, *Ariovistus answered that all the states of Gaul had come to attack him, i.e. Ariovistus*. nēmīnem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse, 1, 36, 6, *that no man had contended with him without his own undoing*; sēcum refers to Ariovistus, the subject of the main verb respondit, suā to nēmīnem.

2341. In subordinate subjunctive clauses of purpose, indirect discourse, or indirect question, the reflexive refers to the subject of the main sentence: as,

huic mandat, ut ad sē quam primum revertātur, 4, 21, 2, *he instructs him to come back to himself as soon as possible.* excruciat mē erus, quia sibi nōn dixerim, Pl. *M.G.* 859, *my master 'll torture me 'because I have not told him.'* Paetus omnis librōs, quōs frāter suus reliquisset, mihi dōnāvit, *Att.* 2, 1, 12, *Paetus made me a present of all the books 'that his brother left.'* For the use of *is* for *sē*, see 2370.

2342. The reflexive, in such subordinate clauses, sometimes refers to an emphatic word not the main subject: as,

identidem fēlicem Priamum vocābat, quod superstes omnium suōrum exstitisset, *Suet. Tib.* 62, *he was for ever calling Priam 'Fortune's darling, because he outlived all his kith and kin.'*

2343. The reflexive referring to the main subject is sometimes irregularly used in subordinate indicative clauses.

Epaminōndās ēi, quī sibi successerat, exercitum nōn trādedit, *Inv.* 1, 55, *Epaminondas did not deliver the army to his successor.* centum bovēs militibus dōnō dedit, quī sēcum fuerant, *L.* 7, 37, 3, *he gave a hundred oxen to the soldiers who had been with him.*

### EQUIVALENTS FOR A RECIPROCAL PRONOUN.

2344. The place of a reciprocal pronoun, *each other*, is supplied by *inter nōs*, *inter vōs*, *inter sē*, or by *alter* or *alius* followed by another case of the same word: as,

*inter nōs nātūrā cōniūcti sumus*, *Fin.* 3, 66, *we are united with each other by nature.* *Cicerōnēs pueri amant inter sē*, *Att.* 6, 1, 12, *the Cicero boys are fond of each other.* *cum alius aliī subsidium ferret*, 2, 26, 2, *when they were helping each other.* For *uterque*, see 2400. The reciprocal idea is sometimes expressed by the form of the verb: as, *fulvā lūctantur harēnā*, *V.* 6, 643, *they wrestle with each other on the yellow sand* (1487).

2345. From Livy on, *invicem inter sē*, *invicem sē*, or *invicem* alone, is often used in the expression of reciprocal relations: as,

*invicem inter sē grātantēs*, *L.* 9, 43, 17, *mutually congratulating each other.* *invicem sē antepōnendō*, *Ta. Agr.* 6, *mutually preferring one another.* *ut invicem ardentius diligāmus*, *Plin. Ep.* 7, 20, 7, *that we may love each other more ardently.*

### THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

2346. The possessive of the personal and reflexive pronoun is regularly omitted, unless it is required for emphasis or contrast: as,

*ōra manūque tuā lavimus*, *Fērōnia, lymphā*, *H. S.* 1, 5, 24, *our hands and faces in thy rill, Feronia, we bathe.* The possessive sometimes has the meaning of *proper*, *appropriate*, *favourable*; as, *suō locō dicam*, *Quintil.* 1, 1, 36, *I shall tell in the proper place.* For the possessive pronoun used instead of the possessive or objective genitive, see 1234, 1262.



## THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

## hic.

2347. *hic* points out what is near the speaker in place, time, or thought: as,

*hi domum mē ad sē auferent*, Pl. *Men.* 847, *these fellows will hale me off to their house.* *nōn mē existimāvi in hōc sermōne usque ad hanc aetatem esse ventūrum*, Br. 232, *I did not think that in this discourse I should get down to the present generation.* *reliquum omne tempus huius anni*, V. 1, 30, *all the rest of this year.*

2348. *hic* sometimes points out the speaker with pathos, or with emphasis, particularly in comedy.

*haec arma et hunc militem propitiō flūmine accipiās*, L. 2, 10, 11, *receive these arms and this soldier in thy gracious stream*, the prayer of Horatius Cocles to Father Tiber. *tibi erunt parāta verba, huic hominī verbera*, T. *Hau.* 356, *you'll get a chiding, this child a hiding.* *fēcisset nī haec praesensisset canēs*, Pl. *Tri.* 172, *and he'd have done it, unless this dog had got scent of it in time*, where the speaker means himself.

2349. The neuter plural *haec* sometimes means *the realm, our country, our state, the [Roman] world*: as,

*haec, quae iam pridem vastāre studēs*, C. 1, 21, *the realm which you have long sought to lay in ruins.* *quī haec dēlere cōnātī sunt*, C. 4, 7, *who have tried to destroy the state.* *servus est nēmō quī nōn haec stāre cupiat*, C. 4, 16, *there lives no slave that wills not our country should abide.*

2350. *hic*, as expressing a familiar, every-day thing, occasionally has a shade of contempt, either alone, or with *volgāris, cottidiānus* or the like: as,

*mittit hominī mūnera satis largē, haec ad ūsum domesticum*, V. 4, 62, *he sent him some presents — pretty liberal ones, commonish things for household use.* *mittō hāsce artis volgāris, coquōs, pistōrēs*, RA. 134, *I'll skip your everyday common occupations — such as cooks, bakers, &c., &c.* *taedet cottidiānārum hārum fōrmārum*, T. *Eu.* 297, *I'm sick of your everyday beauties.*

2351. When *hic* relates to the words of a sentence, it points out what has preceded or is to follow, or emphasizes a word referred to by a preceding relative.

For *hic* used to introduce a new sentence, see 2129.

*haec habui dē senectūte quae dicerem*, CM. 85, *this was what I had to say on Old Age.* *sed haec hāctenus; nunc ad ostenta veniāmus*, Div. 2, 53, *so much for this; let us now go on to portents.* *fēcit pācem his conditionibus*, N. 8, 3, 1, *he made peace on the following terms.* *dicitur locūtus in hanc ferē sententiam esse*, L. 6, 40, 2, *it is said that he spoke to somewhat the following effect.* *quaesierat ex mē Scipiō quidnam sentirem dē hōc quod duo solēs visōs esse cōstāret*, RP. 1, 19, *Scipio had asked me what I thought about this, that it was generally agreed that two suns had been seen.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



2357. From its use in addressing opponents or in talking at them, *iste* is common in contemptuous phrases: as,

*tū istis faucibus, istis lateribus, istā gladiātōriā tōtius corporis firmitāte*, *Ph.* 2, 63, *you with that gullet of yours, those swollen flanks, that prizefighter's bulky make-up. nōn erit ista amicitia, sed mercātūra quaedam*, *ND.* 1, 122, *such a thing will not be a friendship, but a sort of traffic.*

### ille.

2358. *ille* points to what is remote in place, time, or thought: as.

*ergō illi intellegunt quid Epicūrus dicat, ego nōn intellegō?* *Fin.* 2, 13, *do those gentlemen then understand what Epicurus means and I not?* *populus Rōmānus nihil aequē atque illam veterem iūdiciorum vim gravitātemque requirit*, *Caecil.* 8, *the Roman people miss nothing so much as the ancient vigour and firmness attaching to public trials. his autem de rebus sol mē ille admonuit ut brevior essem*, *DO.* 3, 209, *but on these topics yonder sun has warned me to be pretty brief.* For other examples, see 2352-2355.

2359. *ille* is used to point out a celebrity, often one of the past. So, particularly without a proper name, in allusive style, referring to what is famed in story.

(a.) *hic est ille Dēmosthenēs*, *TD.* 5, 103, *this is the famous Demosthenes. Athēniēnsis ille Themistoclēs*, *DO.* 2, 299, *Themistocles the great, of Athens. illud Solōnis*, *CM.* 50, *Solon's memorable words. Mēdēa illa*, *IP.* 22, *Medea famed in story.* (b.) *viribus ille cōnfisus periit*, *J.* 10, 10, *the man in the story lost his life through confidence in his strength. illae rēgiae lacrimae*, *Plin. Ep.* 3, 7, 13, *the monarch's historic tears, of Xerxes.*

2360. Indicating change of subject, *ille* is *this other man*. In such cases it is often best expressed in English by a proper name or a descriptive word.

*ad sē adulēscēntem iussit venīre. at ille, ut ingressus est, cōnfestim gladium dēstrinxit*, *Off.* 3, 112, *he gave orders to admit the young man. But this other, the moment he entered, drew his sword. rūsticus expectat dum dēfluat amnis: at ille lābitur et lābētur*, *H. E.* 1, 2, 42, *he is a peasant waiting for the river to go down: but the river flows and will flow on.*

2361. In concessions, *ille* often precedes *quidem*; in translation no pronoun is required.

*libri scripti incōnsideratē ab optimis illis quidem viris, sed nōn satis ēruditis*, *TD.* 1, 6, *books rashly written by men respectable enough but of insufficient education. est tarda illa medicīna, sed tamen magna*, *TD.* 3, 35, *it is a powerful remedy, though slow in its working. hic, is, and iste are used rarely in this way.*

2362. In poetry *ille* may serve: (1.) To repeat a thing with emphasis: as,

*arma virumque canō Trōiae quī primus ab ōris Ītaliā vēnit, multum ille et terris-iactātus et altō*, *V.* 1, 1, *arms and the man I sing, from Troja's shore the first to come to Italy, much tossed that man by land and sea.*

2363. (2.) To emphasize the second of two ideas : as,

nunc dextrā ingemināns ictūs, nunc ille sinistrā, V. 5, 457, *now with his right redoubling blows, now mighty with his left.* nōn tamen Euryalī, non ille oblitus amōrum, V. 5, 334, *still not Euryalus forgetting, no, not he his love!*

2364. (3.) As a provisional subject, to anticipate the real subject, and keep the attention in suspense till the real subject comes with emphasis : as,

ac velut ille canum morsū dē montibus altis āctus aper substitit, V. 10, 707, *and e'en as he, goaded by bite of hounds from mountains high, the boar hath paused.*

## THE DETERMINATIVE PRONOUN.

is.

2365. *is* refers to something named in the context. When some feeling is to be expressed, such as admiration, or oftener contempt, *homō* is often put for *is*.

(a.) *petit ā rēge et eum plūribus verbīs rogat ut id ad sē mittat*, V. 4, 64, *he solicits the king and begs him at considerable length to send it to him.* *nōndum mātūrus imperiō Ascanius erat, tamen id imperium ēī ad pūberem aetātem incolume mānsit*, L. 1, 3, 1, *Ascanius was not yet old enough for the throne, but that throne was kept safe for him till he came of age.* (b.) *ego hominem callidiōrem vidī nēminem quam Phormiōnem. veniō ad hominem, ut dicerem argentum opus esse*, T. Ph. 591, *a shrewder man than Phormio I never saw, not I! I went to him to tell him that I needed money.* *nēquam esse hominem et levem sciēbam*, Sest. 22, *I knew the fellow was worthless and frivolous.*

2366. (1.) *is* refers to something named before or after : as,

*eius omnis orātiō versāta est in eō, ut scriptum plūrimum valēre oportēre dēfenderet*, DO. 1, 244, *his whole speech turned on the contention that the written word should be paramount.* *Melitēnsis Diodōrus est; is Lilybaei multōs iam annōs habitat*, V. 4, 38, *Diodorus is from Melita; he has lived many years at Lilybaeum.* For other examples of *is* used to connect sentences, see 2129.

2367. With a connective, *is* denotes an important addition : as,

*vincula et ea sempiterna*, C. 4, 7, *imprisonment and that too perpetual.* *annura iam audientem Cratippum idque Athēnis*, Off. 1, 1, *after a year's study under Cratippus, and that too in Athens.* *erant in eō plūrimae litterae nec eae volgārēs*, Br. 265, *he was a man of very deep reading and that of no common sort either.*

2368. (2.) *is* indicates something explained or restricted by a relative or indefinite, *quī, quicumque, sī quis* : as,

haec omnia is fēcī, quī sodālis Dolābellae eram, *Fam.* 12, 14, 7, *all this I did, I that was Dolabella's bosom friend* (1807). ūnus ex eō numerō quī ad caedem parātī erant, *S. I.* 35, 6, *one of the number that were ready to do murder* (1804). neque is sum quī mortis periculō terrear, 5, 30, 2, *but I am not the man to be scared by danger of death, no, not I* (1818). quicumque is est, ēī mē profiteor inimicum, *Fam.* 10, 31, 3, *whoever he may be, I proclaim myself his enemy* (1814). cum ipse Aliēnus ex eā facultāte, sī quam habet, aliquantum dētrāctūrus sit, *Caecil.* 49, *seeing that even Alienus is to suppress some part of that eloquence, if any he may have.* See also 1795, 1798. For id quod, see 1811.

2369. For the use of is instead of a relative repeated in a different case, see 1833.

2370. is sometimes is loosely used for the reflexive sē (2341); here the point of view of the writer shows itself.

Milēsiōs nāvem poposcit, quae eum Myndum prōsequerētur, *V.* 1, 86, *he asked the Milesians for a ship to escort him to Myndus.* suōs omnēs castrīs continuit ignēsque fierī prohibuit, quō occultior esset eius adventus, *Caes. C.* 3, 30, 5, *he confined his troops to camp and forbade the kindling of fires, in order to keep his coming a greater secret.*

## THE PRONOUN OF IDENTITY.

### idem.

2371. *idem*, *the same*, often connects two different predicates to the same person or thing. In this case, it may be variously rendered by *likewise*, *also*, *all the same*, *on the other hand*, *at once*, *very*, *nevertheless*.

ūtēbātur eō cibō quī et suāvissimus esset et idem facillimus ad concoquendum, *Fin.* 2, 64, *he made use of such food as was both very dainty and likewise very easy to digest.* ita fiet ut nōn omnēs quī Atticē, eidem bene dīcant, *Br.* 291, *so it will be found that not all who speak Attic are also good speakers.* multī quī ut iūs suum et libertātem tenērent volnera excēpērunt fortiter et tulērunt, idem omissā contentiōne dolōrem morbī ferre nōn possunt, *TD.* 2, 65, *many who have met heroically and endured wounds, to preserve their rights and their freedom, are nevertheless, when no contest is involved, unable to bear the pain of a disease.*

2372. *idem* is often used with other pronouns, hīc, iste, istūc, ille : as,

haec eadem centuriōnibus mandābant, 7, 17, 8, *they confided these same sentiments to their centurions.* multae aliae idem istuc cupiunt, *Pl. MG.* 1040, *many other ladies want just what you want.*

2373. *The same as* is expressed by *idem* followed by quī, atque or ac, ut, quasi, cum, sometimes in poetry by the dative.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

pertimuērunt nē ab ipsis dēscisceret et cum suis in grātiā redīret, N. 7, 5, 1, *they were much afraid that he would abandon them and come into favour with his compatriots again.* ea molestissimē ferre hominēs dēbent, quae ipsōrum culpā contrācta sunt, QFr. 1, 1, 2, *people should be most vexed at things which are brought about through fault of their own.*

2378. ipse is used in many combinations where *self* is an inadequate translation. It may sometimes be translated by:

2379. (1.) *Actual, positive, even.*

habet certōs suī studiōsōs, quōs valētūdō modo bona sit, tenuitās ipsa dēlectat, Br. 64, *he has a clique of admirers, who are charmed by positive scragginess, provided the health be good.* hōc ipsum ēlegantius pōnī meliusque potuit, Fin. 2, 100, *even this might have been put more logically and better.*

2380. (2.) *Regular, proper, real.*

flagrantem invidiā propter interitum C. Gracchī ipse populus Rōmānus periculō liberāvit, Sest. 140, *though greatly detested in consequence of the death of Gracchus, he was acquitted by the Roman people proper.* civēs Rōmānī permulti in illō oppidō cōniūctissimō animō cum ipsis Agrigentinis vivunt, V. 4, 93, *a great many Romans live in that town in most friendly relations with the natives of Agrigentum.*

2381. (3.) *As well, likewise, too,* for which, from Livy on, et ipse is used.

hoc Rīpheus, hoc ipse Dymās, omnisque iuventūs laeta facit, V. 2, 394, *this Rīpheus doth, this Dymas too, and all the youth alert.* cōgitātiō Locrōs urbem recipiendī, quae sub dēfectiōnem Ītaliae dēsciverat et ipsa ad Poenōs, L. 29, 6, 1, *a project for recovering the city of Locri, which, on the revolt of Italy, had likewise gone over to the Carthaginians.*

2382. (4.) *Alone, mere.*

nōn solum adventus malī, sed etiam metus ipse adfert calamitātem, IP. 15, *not only the coming of misfortune, but even the mere dread of it brings disaster.*

2383. (5.) *Exactly, just,* with numerals and dates, or *right,* of place.

annis LXXXVI ipsis ante mē cōsulem, Br. 61, *exactly 86 years before my consulship.* Kalendīs ipsis Novembribus, C. 1, 8, *on the 1st of November precisely.* in ipsō vadō dēprehēnsus Indutiomarus interficitur, 5. 58, 6, *right at the ford Indutiomarus is caught and killed.* suprā ipsum balneum habitō, Sen. Ep. 56, 1, *I live right over a bath.*

2384. (6.) *Of oneself, voluntarily, of one's own motion.*

valvae subitō sē ipsae aperuērunt, Div. 1, 74, *the temple-door suddenly opened of itself.* Catilinam vel ēiēcimus vel ēmisimus vel ipsum ēgredientem verbis prōsecūtī sumus, C. 2, 1, *we have driven Catiline out, or let him out, or, when he was going out of his own motion, wished him god-speed.*

## THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

## uter and quis.

2385. *uter*, *whether? which?* is used in questions about two things; *quis* and *quī*, *who? what?* in questions about more than two, though sometimes loosely of two things.

*uter est insānior hōrum?* H. S. 2, 3, 102, *which of these is the greater crank?* *praeclārē apud eundem est Platōnem, similiter facere eōs quī inter sē contenderent uter potius rem pūblicam administrāret, ut sī nautae certārent quis eōrum potissimum gubernāret,* Off. 1, 87, *in the same Plato is the excellent saying that for people to fall out with one another about which of two men should manage a state, were just as if the crew of a ship should quarrel about which of them should be pilot.* *ut quem velis, nesciās,* Att. 16, 14, 1, *so that you don't know which to choose, as between Octavian and Antony.*

2386. *quis* and *quid* ask to have a thing named; *quī* and *quod* to have it described. But see 685.

*quis Diōnem Syrācosium doctrīnis omnibus expolivit? nōn Platō?* DO. 3, 139, *who refined Syracusan Dio with learning of every sort? was it not Plato?* *quid ridēs,* H. S. 2, 5, 3, *why dost thou laugh?* (1144). *quis fuit igitur? : : iste Chaerea. : : quī Chaerea?* T. Eu. 823, *who was he then? : : your precious Chaerea. : : what Chaerea?* *quem frūctum petentēs scire cupimus illa quō modō moveantur?* Fin. 3, 37, *with what practical end in view do we seek to know how you bodies in the sky keep in motion?*

## THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

2387. The relative pronoun has already been treated; see 1792-1837.

## THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

*quis* or *quī*; *quispiam*.

2388. *quis* or *quī*, *a, some, somebody*, always stands after one or more words of the sentence. *quis* or *quī* is used after *sī* (*nisi, sive*), *nē*, *num*, *utrum*, *an*, *quō*, or *quandō*, in preference to *aliquis*, unless emphasis is intended.

*dixerit quis,* Off. 3, 76, *somebody may say.* *malum quod tibi dī dabunt,* Pl. Am. 563, *some curse the gods will bring upon thee.* *hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī equō dēciderat, circumstībant,* 1, 48, 6, *if there was ever any sharpish work, these men would rally; if a man fell from his horse, they would close round him.* *praecipit atque interdicit ūnum omnēs peterent Indutiomarum, neu quis quem vulneret,* 5. 58, 4, *he charges them and forbids them; they were all to assail Indutiomarus alone; and nobody was to wound anybody* (2402).



**2389. quispiam, a, some, one or another.**

forsitan quispiam dixerit, *Off.* 3, 29, *peradventure somebody may say.*  
 quispiam dicet, *V.* 3, 111, *somebody will say.* cum quaequam cohors impetum fecerat, hostes velocissimè refugièbant, *5,* 35, 1, *every time one or another cohort charged, the enemy fled back quick speed (2394).*

**aliquis.**

**2390. aliquis or aliqui some one, some one or other, has always some affirmative emphasis, and is opposed to the idea of all, much, none :** as,

nōn enim declamātorem aliquem de ludō, sed perfectissimum quaerimus, *O.* 47, *for it is not some spouter from school that we aim to find, but the ideal orator.* omnēs ut aliquam perniciosam bestiam fugièbant, *Clu.* 41, *everybody avoided him, like some dangerous wild animal or other.* audē aliquid Gyaris dignum si vis esse aliquid, *J.* 1, 73, *venture some deed that deserves transportation, if you care to be something grand.* nōn sine aliqua spē, *D.* 7, *not without some hope.* quaerō sitne aliqua actio an nulla, *Caec.* 33, *I ask whether there is some ground for an action or none.* num igitur aliquis dolor post mortem est? *TD.* 1, 82, *is there, then, some sense of pain after death?* With emphasis after si (2388): si aliquid de summā gravitate Pompēius, multum de cupiditate Caesar remisisset, aliquam rem publicam nobis habere licuisset, *Ph.* 13, 2, *if Pompey had sacrificed really something of his importance, and Caesar a good deal of his ambition, we might have had what would have been to some degree a commonwealth.*

**2391. aliquis is sometimes equivalent to aliquis alius :** as,

cum M. Pisone et cum Q. Pompeio aut cum aliquo, *Br.* 310, *with Piso or Pompey or some other man.* ea mihi cottidie aut ture aut vino aut aliqui semper supplicat, *Pl. Aul. prol.* 23, *she always offers me incense or wine or something else every day.*

**quidam.**

**2392. quidam, a, a certain, denotes a thing which we cannot describe or do not care to.**

nōn inridiculè quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit: plūs quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere, 1, 42, 6, *one of the privates of the Tenth said a very dry thing: that 'Caesar was doing more than he engaged to.'* accurrit quidam notus mihi nomine tantum, *H. S.* 1, 9, 3, *up trots a man I knew by name alone.* assimilis quidam mugitui sonus, *Suet. Galb.* 18, *a mysterious sound like the lowing of a cow.* videmus naturam suo quodam itinere ad ultimum pervenire, *DN.* 2, 35, *nature reaches perfection by a kind of road of her own.* Often in translations from Greek: as, aliis libris rationem quandam per omnem naturam rerum pertinentem vi divinā esse adfectam putat, *DN.* 1, 36, *in other works he supposes 'a kind of Reason pervading all nature and endowed with divine power, of Zeno's doctrine.'*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



ipse sē quisque dīligit, *L.* 80, a man always loves his own self. suos quoique mōs, *T. Ph.* 454, every man his own way. huic prō sē quisque nostrū medērī velle dēbēmus, *L. Agr.* 1, 26, this evil we ought to wish to remedy, according to our several abilities. optimum quidque rārissimum est, *Fin.* 2, 81, ever the fairest is the rarest. nam in forō vix decumus quisquest, quī ipsus sēsē nōverit, *Pl. Ps.* 973, for in the marketplace there's scarce one man in every ten that knows himself. quīntō quōque annō Sicilia tōta cēnsētur, *V.* 2, 139, at the end of every four years all Sicily is assessed. quamquam primum quidque explicēmus, *Fam.* 12, 1, 1, but stay — let me explain things successively; or, one thing after another. litterās mīsit, ut is ānulus ad sē primō quōque tempore adferrētur, *V.* 4, 58, he sent a letter directing said ring to be sent to him without delay.

2398. In old Latin quisque is sometimes equivalent to quicumque or quisquis, *whoever*: as, quisque obviam huic occesserit irātō, vāpulābit, *Pl. As.* 404, whoever meets him in his wrath will catch it. In cuiusque generis and cuiusque modī, it means *any and every*: as, tot hominēs cuiusque modī, *V.* 4, 7, so many people of every sort, i. e. cuicumodī. The neuter quidquid for quidque is not uncommon: as, cum prōcessit paulum et quātenus quicquid sē attingat perspicere coepit, *Fin.* 5, 24, when it has progressed a little and has begun to discover how far each thing affects it. Masculine quisquis for quisque is doubtful (see *Fam.* 6, 1, 1).

### uterque.

2399. uterque, *each*, is used of two individuals, and utrīque of two sets or parties. But sometimes utrīque is used of two individuals.

(a.) ut illa nātūra caelestis et terrā vacat et ūmōre, sic utriusque hārum rērum hūmānus animus est expers, *T.D.* 1, 65, even as the heavenly nature is free from the earthy and the humid, so the soul of man has no part in either of these qualities (1243). nūtū tremefactus uterque est polus, *O. F.* 2, 489, at his nod trembled each pole (1243). Aetoliōrum utraeque manūs Hēraclēam sēsē inclūsērunt, *L.* 36, 16, 5, both bands of the Aetolians shut themselves up in Heraclea. (b.) sex filiī nōbīs, duae filiae sunt, utraeque iam nūptae, *L.* 42, 34, 4, we have six sons and two daughters, both already married.

2400. Reciprocal relations (2344) are sometimes expressed by uterque followed by a different case of alter; rarely by uterque and a different case of the same word.

(a.) quōrum uterque contempsit alterum, *Off.* 1, 4, each of whom lightly esteemed the other. (b.) abdūcī nōn potest: : quī nōn potest? : : quia uterque utrīquest cordī, *T. Ph.* 799, she's not to be taken from him: : why is n't she? : : because they're heart to heart. This doubling of uterque is found only half a dozen times; not in Cicero.

### quivīs and quīlibet; utervīs and uterlibet.

2401. quivīs and quīlibet, *any you please*, are used either in affirmative or negative sentences. When two are spoken of, utervīs or uterlibet is used.

(a.) ut quīvis intellegere posset, *V.* 5, 17, so that any fool might know. faciat quidlibet, *T. Hau.* 464, let him do anything he likes. (b.) quī utramvis rēctē nōvit, ambās nōverit, *T. Andr. prol.* 10, who knows either well, knows both. utrumlibet ēlige, *Quinct.* 81, choose either you like.

### quisquam and ūllus.

2402. quisquam (692), a single one, any one at all, and ūllus, any, are used chiefly in negative sentences or in interrogative, conditional, and comparative sentences implying negation, or with sine.

vēnī Athēnās, neque mē quisquam ibī adgnōvit, *TD.* 5, 104, I came to Athens and not a person there knew me (1659). interdicit omnibus, nē quemquam interficiant, 7, 40, 4, he warns them collectively against killing any man at all (2388). hunc suā quisquam sententiā ex hāc urbe expellet? *Mil.* 104, will anybody at all, by his vote, banish this man from Rome? quis hoc fēcit ūllā in Scythiā tyrannus? *Pis.* 18, what tyrant ever did this in any Scythia? sī quisquam est timidus, is ego sum, *Fam.* 6, 14, 1, if anybody is timid, I am the man. quī saepius cum hoste cōflīxit quam quisquam cum inimicō concertāvit, *IP.* 28, who has measured swords oftener with the enemy than anybody ever wrangled with an opponent in private life. sine ūllō metū in ipsum portum penetrāre coepērunt, *V.* 5, 96, without a bit of fear they began to make their way right into the harbour. nēmō quisquam and nihil quicquam are old and late: as, lepidiōrem uxōrem nēmō quisquam habet, *Pl. Cas.* 1008, nobody has a jollier wife. noster malī nīl quicquam primō, *T. Ph.* 80, our young master did n't make any trouble at first.

2403. nēmō is generally used for nōn quisquam, nēmō umquam for numquam quisquam, nihil for nōn quicquam, and nūllus for nōn ūllus. If only two are spoken of, neuter is used. The plural neutri is used of two parties.

nēmōst miserior mē, *T. Hau.* 263, no man's unhappier than I. nēmō igitur vir magnus sine aliquō adflātū dīvinō umquam fuit, *DN.* 2, 167, nobody who is a great man was ever without some divine inspiration. ab nūllō ille liberālius quam ā Cluentiō trāctātus est, *Clu.* 161, by no man has he been treated more generously than by Cluentius. neutrum eōrum contrā alterum iuvāre, *Caes. C.* 1, 35, 5, to help neither of them against the other. neutri alterōs primō cernēbant, *L.* 21, 46, 4, neither party saw the others at first.

### (D.) NUMERALS.

2404. Numerals are divided into Adjectives: Cardinal, ūnus, one, duo, two, &c.; Ordinal, primus, first, secundus, second, &c.; Distributive, singulī, one each, binī, two each, &c.; and Numeral Adverbs: semel, once, bis, twice, &c.

For the inflection of numerals, see 637-643.

ARABIC.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	ūnus, <i>one</i> (638)	prīmus, <i>first</i> (643)
2	duo, <i>two</i> (639)	secundus, <i>second</i>
3	trēs, <i>three</i> (639)	tertius, <i>third</i>
4	quattuor, <i>four</i>	quārtus, <i>fourth</i>
5	quīnque, <i>five</i>	quīntus, <i>fifth</i>
6	sex, <i>six</i>	sextus, <i>sixth</i>
7	septem, <i>seven</i>	septimus, <i>seventh</i>
8	octō, <i>eight</i>	octāvus, <i>eighth</i>
9	novem, <i>nine</i>	nōnus, <i>ninth</i>
10	decem, <i>ten</i>	decimus, <i>tenth</i>
11	ūndecim, <i>eleven</i>	ūndecimus, <i>eleventh</i>
12	duodecim	duodecimus
13	tredecim	tertius decimus
14	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17	septendecim	septimus decimus
18	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus
19	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus
20	vīgintī, <i>twenty</i>	vicēsīmus, <i>twentieth</i>
21	vīgintī ūnus or ūnus et vīgintī	vicēsīmus prīmus or ūnus et vicēsīmus
22	vīgintī duo or duo et vīgintī	vicēsīmus alter or alter et vicēsīmus
28	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsīmus
29	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsīmus
30	trīgintā	tricēsīmus
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
99	ūndēcentum	ūndēcentēsīmus
100	centum, <i>one hundred</i>	centēsīmus, <i>one hundredth</i>
101	centum ūnus or centum et ūnus	centēsīmus prīmus or cen- tēsīmus et prīmus
200	ducentī (641)	ducentēsīmus
300	trecentī	trecentēsīmus
400	quadrīngentī	quādrīngentēsīmus
500	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus
600	sescentī	sescentēsīmus
700	septīngentī	septīngentēsīmus
800	octīngentī	octīngentēsīmus
900	nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus
1,000	mīlle, <i>thousand</i> (642)	mīllēsīmus, <i>thousandth</i>
2,000	duo mīllia	bis mīllēsīmus
5,000	quīnque mīllia	quīnquiēns mīllēsīmus
10,000	decem mīllia	deciēns mīllēsīmus
50,000	quīnquāgintā mīllia	quīnquāgiēns mīllēsīmus
100,000	centum mīllia	centiēns mīllēsīmus
1,000,000	deciēns centēna mīllia	deciēns centiēns mīllēsīmus



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

• NOTATION.

2406. Numbers are noted by combinations of the characters I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; ↓, later ↯, ⊥, or L = 50; C = 100; D = 500; ⊕ or ∞, post-Augustan M = 1000.

2407. Of these signs, V seems to be the half of X, which may be Etruscan in origin. The original signs for 50 and 1000 were taken from the Chalcidian Greek alphabet (18 .9), in which they represented sounds unknown to early Latin. Thus, ↓, in the Chalcidian alphabet representing *ch* (49), was used by the early Romans for 50, and became successively ↯, ⊥, and L. The form ↓, is found very rarely, ↯ oftener, in the Augustan period; ⊥ is common during the last century of the republic and in the early empire; L, due to assimilation with the Roman letter, appears in the last century of the republic. The sign for 1000 was originally ⊕ (Chalcidian *ph*); it became ∞ (the common classical form), ∞, or ∞; the form M as a numeral appears in the second century A. D., although M is found much earlier as an abbreviation for *millia* in M · P, that is *millia passuum*. For 100, the sign ⊖ (Chalcidian *th*) may have been used originally; but C (the abbreviation for *centum*) came into use at an early period. The sign D, = 500, is the half of ⊕.

2408. To denote 10,000 the sign for 1000 was doubled: thus, ⊕⊕, written also ⊕↓, ↯↓, ↑↓. Another circle was added to denote 100,000: thus, ⊕⊕, written also ⊕↓, ↯↓, ↑↓. The halves of these signs were used for 5000 and 50,000: thus, ⊕ and ↯; variations of these last two signs are found, corresponding to the variations of the signs of which they are the halves.

2409. From the last century of the republic on, thousands are sometimes indicated by a line drawn above a numeral, and hundreds of thousands by three lines enclosing a numeral: as,  $\overline{V} = 5000$ ;  $\overline{\overline{X}} = 1,000,000$ .

2410. To distinguish numerals from ordinary letters, a line is often drawn above them: as,  $\overline{VI} = 6$ . This practice is common in the Augustan period; earlier, a line is sometimes drawn across the numeral, as,  $\text{H} = 2$ ;  $\text{B} = 500$ .

2411. Of the two methods of writing the symbols for 4, 9, 14, 19, &c., the method by subtraction (IV, IX, XIV, XIX, &c.) is rarer, and is characteristic of private, not public inscriptions.

### SOME FORMS OF NUMERALS.

2412. *quīnctus*, the older form of *quīntus* (170, 4) is sometimes found in old and even in classical writers. Instead of *septimus* and *decimus*, the older *septumus* and *decumus* are not uncommon (28).

2413. In the ordinals from *twentieth* upwards, the older forms *vicēsumus* or *vicēsimus*, *tricēsumus* or *tricēsimus*, &c., &c., are not infrequently found instead of *vicēsimus*, *tricēsimus*, &c., &c. (63; 28).

2414. In the numeral adverbs from *quīnquiēns* upwards, later forms in *-iēs* (63) are often found: as, *quīnquiēs*, *deciēs*, &c., &c.

2415. In cardinals and ordinals from *thirteen* to *seventeen* inclusive, the larger number sometimes comes first, and in cardinals *et* is sometimes used, though rarely in Cicero.

decem trēs, L. 37, 30, 7, *thirteen*. fundōs decem et trēs reliquit, *RA.* 20, *he left thirteen farms*. Rarely the smaller number comes first with *et*: as, dē tribus et decem fundīs, *RA.* 99, *of the thirteen farms*.

2416. Numbers from 18 to 99 inclusive which end in 8 or 9 are usually expressed by subtraction, as in the list (2405); less frequently (not in Cicero, rarely in classical writers) by addition: as, decem et octō, 4, 19, 4; decem novem, *Ta. H.* 2, 58.

2417. In compound numbers from *twenty-one* to *ninety-seven* inclusive, except those which end in *eight* or *nine* (2416), the smaller number with *et* usually comes first or the larger number without *et*, as in the list. But rarely the larger number comes first with *et*: as, viginti et septem, *V.* 4, 123, *twenty and seven*.

2418. In numbers from a *hundred and one* upwards, the larger number comes first, either with or without *et*; but with distributives *et* is not used. With cardinals and ordinals the smaller number sometimes comes first with *et*; as, iis rēgiis quadrāgintā annis et ducentis praeteritis, *RP.* 2, 52, *after these two hundred and forty years of monarchy were ended*.

## SOME USES OF NUMERALS.

### CARDINALS AND ORDINALS.

2419. Dates are expressed either by cardinals with a plural substantive or by ordinals with a singular substantive: as,

dictātor factus est annis post Rōmam conditam ccccxv, *Fam.* 9, 21, 2, *he was made dictator 415 U. C. (1393)*. annō trecentēsimo quinquāgēsimo post Rōmam conditam, Nōnis Iūnis, *RP.* 1, 25, *on the 5th of June, 350 U. C. (1350)*. The ordinal is also used with a substantive not used in the singular: as, mancipia vēnībant Sāturnālibus tertiis, *Att.* 5, 20, 5, *the slaves were sold on the third day of the Saturnalia*. As the Romans, however, had no fixed official era, they had no dates in the modern sense, and marked the year by the names of the consuls.

### DISTRIBUTIVES.

2420. Distributives are used to denote an equal division among several persons or things, and in expressions of multiplication: as,

binī senātōrēs singulis cohortibus praepositī, L. 3, 69, 8, *two senators were put over every cohort*: sometimes when *singulī* is added, the cardinal is used, thus: singulis cēnsōribus dēnārii trecentī imperātī sunt, *V.* 2, 137, *every censor was assessed 300 denars*. bis bīna, *DN.* 2, 49, *twice two*. Poets use multiplication freely, partly for variety, but mainly from metrical necessity.



2421. Distributives are also used with substantives which have no singular, or which have a different meaning in the singular; but in this use *one* is always *ūnī*, not *singulī*, and *three* is often *trīnī*, not *ternī*: as,

ut *ūna castra iam facta ex binīs vidērentur*, Caes. C. 1, 74, 4, *so that one camp seemed now to have been formed out of two*. *trīnīs catēnīs vinctus*, I, 53, 5, *in triple irons*. Similarly with things in pairs, as: *bovēs binī*, Pl. *Fers.* 317, *a yoke of oxen*.

2422. Poets sometimes use the singular of distributives: as, *centēnāque arbore flūctum verberat*, V. 10, 207, *and with a hundred beams at every stroke the wave he smites*. *duplicī nātūrā et corpore binō*, Lucr. 5, 879, *twynatured and of body twain*. The plural is sometimes used in verse for the cardinal: *centum bracchia . . . centēnāsque manūs*, V. 10, 565, *a hundred arms . . . and hundred hands*.

### OTHER NUMERALS.

2423. Other numerical adjectives are *multiplicatives*, ending in *-plex*; they are: *simplex*, *onefold*, *simple*, *sēscuplex*, *one and a half fold*, *duplex*, *triplex*, *quadruplex*, *quīncuplex*, *septemplex*, *decemplex*, *centuplex*; and *proportionals*, used mostly in the neuter as substantives: *duplus*, *twice as great*, *triplus*, *three times as great*, *quadruplus*, *septuplus*, *octuplus*. Besides these there are other adjectives derived from numerals: as, *primānus*, *soldier of the first*: *primārius*, *first rate*: *bīmus*, *twinter*, *two-year-old*; &c., &c.

### EXPRESSION OF FRACTIONS.

2424. *One half* may be expressed by *dīmidium* or *dīmidia pars*; other fractions with 1 as a numerator by ordinals, with or without *pars*: as, *tertia pars* or *tertia*,  $\frac{1}{3}$ .

2425. If the numerator is greater than 1 it is usually expressed by the cardinal feminine, with the ordinal feminine for the denominator: as, *duae septimae*,  $\frac{2}{7}$ . But besides these forms there are others, namely:

2426. (1.) Fractions with a numerator less by 1 than the denominator, except  $\frac{1}{2}$ , may be expressed by cardinals with *partēs*, as, *duae partēs*,  $\frac{2}{3}$ ; *trēs partēs*,  $\frac{3}{4}$ ; *quattuor partēs*,  $\frac{4}{5}$ .

2427. (2.) Fractions with 12 or its multiples as a denominator are expressed in business language by the parts of an *ās*: thus,

$\frac{1}{12}$ , uncia	$\frac{1}{8}$ , triēns	$\frac{7}{12}$ , septunx	$\frac{5}{6}$ , dēxtāns
$\frac{1}{6}$ , sextāns	$\frac{5}{12}$ , quīncunx	$\frac{2}{3}$ , bēs	$\frac{11}{12}$ , deūnx
$\frac{1}{4}$ , quadrāns	$\frac{1}{2}$ , sēmis	$\frac{8}{12}$ , dōdrāns	$\frac{12}{12}$ , ās

*ex āsse hērēs*, Quintil. 7, 1, 20, *heir to the whole*; *reliquit hērēdēs ex bēsse nepōtem*, *ex tertiā parte neptem*, Plin. *Ep.* 7, 24, 2, *she left her grandson heir to  $\frac{2}{3}$ , her granddaughter to  $\frac{1}{3}$* . *hērēdem ex dōdrante*, N. 25, 5, 2, *heir to  $\frac{3}{4}$* .

2428. Sometimes fractions are expressed by addition: as, *dīmidia et quarta*,  $\frac{7}{8}$ ; *pars tertia et septima*,  $\frac{11}{12}$ ; sometimes by division of the denominator: as, *dīmidia quinta*,  $\frac{1}{10}$ .



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

**Exceptions.**

2435. (a.) Nine perfects have the penult short (859-861):  
**bibī, -fidī dedī, scidī stetī, stitī tulī, -tudī, per-culī.**

2436. (b.) Ten perfect participles have the penult short (918; see also 919):  
**citus, datus itum, ratus -rutus, satus situs, status litus, quitus.**

**FINAL SYLLABLES.**

**(I.) ENDING IN A VOWEL.**

2437. In words of more than one syllable, final **a** and **e** are short; final **o**, **u**, and **i**, are long: as,

(a.) N. **aquila**; Pl. N. and Ac. **oppida, cētera, omnia.**

(b.) N. **ille**; N. and Ac. **rēte**; **impūne** (701); V. **bone**; Ab. **tempore**; Inf. **prōmere**; Imperat. **rege** (826); Pres. Ind. and Imperat. **querere**; Perf. **rēxere.**

(c.) N. **sermō**; D. and Ab. **verbō**; **vērō** (704). **iō. regō, erō, amābō, rēxerō** (826); **estō.**

(d.) N. and Ac. **cornū** (587); D. and Ab. **metū** (590, 425, 593); **diū.**

(e.) G. **frūmentī**; V. **Vergilī** (459); G. **domī** (594); D. **nūllī, orbī**; Ab. **sitī** (554). Imperat. **vestī** (845). Inf. **querī, locārī**; Ind. Perf. **rēxī** (856), **rēxistī.**

**Exceptions in a.**

2438. (a.) Final **a** is long in the ablative, in indeclinable words, and in the imperative: as,

(a.) Ab. **mēnsā** (426).

(b.) **quadrāgintā**; many indeclinable words are ablatives: as, **contrā, iūxtā**, (707). The indeclinable **heia, ita, and quia** (701), have short **a**.

(c.) Imperat. **locā** (845). But **puta**, for instance, has short **a**. (130, 4).

2439. (b) Final **a** is long in some Greek nominatives and vocatives: as, N. **Ēlectrā**; V. **Aenēā, Pallā.**

**Exceptions in e.**

2440. (a.) Final **e** is long in cases of nouns with stems in **-ē-** (596), in adverbs from stems in **-o-**, and in the imperative singular active of verbs in **-ēre**: as,

(a.) **diē** (G., D., or Ab.), **hodiē, prīdiē**; see also 603.

(b.) **altē** (705); also **ferē, fermē** and **ohē** or **ōhē**; but **e** is always short in **bene** and **male**; **inferne** and **superne.**

(c.) **docē** (845); for **cave**, see 130, 4.

2441. (*b.*) Final *e* is long in the endings of some Greek nouns: as, N. *crambē*, *Circē*; V. *Alcidē*; Ne. Pl. N. and Ac. *cētē*, *melē*, *pelagē*, *tempē*.

**Exceptions in o.**

2442. (*a.*) Final *o* is short in the nominatives *ego*, *duo*. It is sometimes shortened in *homo* (130, 3) and in the nominative of other stems in *-n-* (484, 485): as, *mentio*, *Nāso*, *virgo*. *o* is regularly short in *endo*, in the ablatives *cito* and *modo*, used as adverbs, and in many other words in late poetry: as, *ilico*, *immo*, *ergo*, *quando*, *octo*, &c.; very rarely in the ablative of the gerund.

2443. (*b.*) Before Ovid. *o* of the present indicative is regularly long. It is shortened only in the following words (130, 3): in

*volo*, six times (Cat., 4 times; Hor., Prop.).

*scio*, twice (Verg.).

*nescio*, six times (Verg., twice; Hor., twice; Tib., Prop.);

and once each in *eo* and *veto* (Hor.), *dēsino* (Tib.), and *findo* (Prop.). From Ovid on, short *o* is not uncommon.

Short *o* in other forms of the verb is rare: as, *dīxero* (Hor.); *esto*, *ero*, *dabo* (Ov.); but *o* is always short in the imperative *cedo*, *give*, *tell*.

**Exceptions in u.**

2444. Final *u* is short in *indu* and *noenu*.

**Exceptions in i.**

2445. (*a.*) Final *i* is short in *nisi*, *quasi*, and *sicuti*; also in the endings of some Greek nouns: as N. and Ac. *sināpi*; V. *Pari*, *Amarylli*; D. *Paridi*, *Minōidi*; Pl. D. *Trōasi*.

2446. (*b.*) Final *i* is common in *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*; *ibī*, *ubī* (129, 2).

(2.) ENDING IN A SINGLE CONSONANT NOT S.

2447. A final syllable ending in a single consonant not *s* has its vowel short: as,

*dōnec*. *illud*. *animal* (536); *semel*. *agmen*. *calcar* (537); *soror*, *stultior* (132). *moror*, *loquar*, *fatēbor* (132); *regitur*, *regimur*, *reguntur*. *regit* (826); *amat*, *sciat*, *pōnēbat*; *tinnit*, *possit*; *iacet*, *neget*, *esset* (132).

**Exceptions.**

2448. (*a.*) The last vowel is long in *allēc*, and in compounds of *pār*; in the contracted genitive plural of stems in *-u-*: as *currūm*; in all cases of *illic* and *istic* except the nominative masculine, in the adverbs *illūc* and *istūc*, and sometimes in *nihīl*. Also in the endings of some Greek nouns: as, N. *āēr*, *aethēr*, *sīrēn*; Ac. *Aenēān*.

2449. (*b.*) In the short form of the genitive plural of stems in *-o-* and *-ā-*, the vowel was originally long, but afterwards short: as, *dīvōm* (462), *caelicolūm* (439).

2450. (*c.*) The last vowel is long in *iīt* and *petiīt* and their compounds.

(3.) ENDING IN **s**.

**2451.** Final syllables in **is** and **us** have the vowel short; those in **as**, **es**, and **os**, have the vowel long: **as**,

(*a.*) N. **lapis**, **fīnis**; G. **lapidis**, **fīnis**; **magis**. Indic. Pres. **regis** (826); Fut. **eris** (851, 826), **eritis**, **locābis** (853, 826), **locābitis**.

(*b.*) N. **dominus**; **currus**; N. and Ac. **tempus**; **prius**; **rēgibus**; **īmus**; **regimus**.

(*c.*) **aetās**; Pl. Ac. **mēnsās** (424). Indic. Pres. **locās** (840); Imp. **erās** (848); **regēbās** (847); Plup. **rēxerās** (880); Subj. Pres. **regās**, **vestiās**, **doceās** (842).

(*d.*) N. **hērēs**; **sēdēs**; **nūbēs**; **Cerēs**; **fidēs**; Pl. N. and Ac. **rēgēs** (424); Indic. Pres. **docēs** (840); Fut. **regēs** (852); Subj. Pres. **siēs** (841); **locēs** (843); Imp. **essēs** (850); **regerēs** (849); Plup. **rēxissēs** (881).

(*e.*) N. **custōs**; **arbōs**; Pl. Ac. **ventōs** (424).

Exceptions in **is**.

**2452.** (*a.*) Final **is** has **ī** in all plural cases: **as**,

N. and Ac. **omnīs**; D. and Ab. **viīs**, **locīs** (108, *a*), **vōbīs**. Also in the nominatives singular **Quirīs** and **Samnīs**, usually in **sanguīs** (486), and twice in **pulvīs**.

**2453.** (*b.*) Final **is** has **ī** in the second person singular of verbs in **-īre**, in **māvīs**, in compounds of **sīs**, and in all present subjunctives singular: **as**, **duīs**, **edīs**, **velīs**, **mālīs**, **nōlīs**. For **-rīs** of the perfect subjunctive and the future perfect, see 877, 878, 883, 884.

Exceptions in **us**.

**2454.** **u** is long in the nominative singular of consonant stems with **ū** before the final stem consonant: **as**, **tellūs**, stem **tellūr-**; **palūs**, once **palus** (Hor.), stem **palūd-**; in the genitive singular and nominative and accusative plural of nouns with stems in **-u-**: **as**, **frūctūs**; and in the ending of some Greek names: **as**, N. **Panthūs**; G. **Sapphūs**.

Exceptions in **as**.

**2455.** Final **as** has short **a** in **anas** and in the ending of some Greek nouns: **as**, N. **Īlias**; Pl. Ac. **cratēras**.

Exceptions in **es**.

**2456.** Final **es** has short **e** in the nominative singular of stems in **-d-** and **-t-** which have the genitive in **-idis**, **-itis**, and **-etis** (475, 476): **as**, **praeses**, **teges**, **comes** (but **ē** in **abiēs**, **ariēs**, and **pariēs**), also, in **penes**, in compounds of **es**, *thou art*, and in the endings of some Greek nouns: **as**, N. **Cynosarges**; Pl. N. **Arcades**, **cratēres**.

Exceptions in **os**.

**2457.** Final **os** has short **o** in the nominative of stems in **-o-**: **as**, **servos**, **suos**, **Dēlos**; also in **compos** **impos**, and **exos**; and in the endings of some Greek nouns: **as**, N. and Ac. **epos**; G. **chlamydos**, **Erinyos**.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2468. In Latin poetry down to the time of Cicero, final *s* often does not "make position" before a following consonant (66); as, *tempŭs fert* (Plaut.); *magis stetisse* (Ter.).

2469. The first syllable of *ille*, *illic* (the pronoun), *quippe*, *immō*, *inde*, *unde*, *nempe*, *omnis*, and perhaps *iste*, is sometimes shortened.

In *ille*, *illic*, *quippe* and *immō* the shortening is, some hold, due to the fact that in common speech one of the double consonants was often pronounced faintly or not at all; while in *inde*, *unde*, *nempe*, and *omnis* the nasal was very faintly sounded before the following consonant. But some authorities hold that always in *nempe*, and sometimes in *ille*, *quippe*, *inde*, *unde*, and perhaps *iste*, before an initial consonant final *e* disappears, and the word becomes a monosyllable.

## LAW OF IAMBIC SHORTENING.

2470. A long syllable, preceded by a short monosyllable or by a short initial syllable, and immediately preceded or followed by the verse-ictus, may be shortened: as, *ét hŭnc, dómŏ mē, ad ũxŏrem, volŭntāte*.

The short monosyllable may be a word which has become monosyllabic by elision: as, *ég(o) hŭnc*.

2471. If the syllable to be shortened is the first of a word of more than one syllable, or the second of a polysyllable, it must be one which is long by position, not by nature. There are some possible exceptions to this rule, such as *verĕbāminī* (T. *Ph.* 902); but these are few and doubtful.

2472. Iambic shortening took place not only in verse, but also to a considerable extent in common speech, particularly in iambic words (see 130), in which the accent coöperated with the verse-ictus to produce the shortening.

---

## II. FIGURES OF PROSODY.

### HIATUS.

2473. For hiatus within a word, and the means by which it is avoided, see 114-120.

2474. Hiatus between two words is much more common in old Latin than in writers of the classical period. The precise extent to which it is allowed by the early dramatists is matter of dispute. The following cases may be mentioned in which the Latin poets admit hiatus:

2475. (1.) After interjections: as, *hahahae homo*, T. *Ph.* 411; *ō et praesidium*, H. 1, 1, 2.

2476. (2.) After proper names, and words of Greek origin: as, *ancillam ferre Venerī aut Cupīdinī*, Pl. *As.* 804; *Thrēiciō Aquilōne*, H. *Epod.* 13, 3.

2477. (3.) In the principal caesura of a verse. So especially in Plautus and Terence after the fourth foot of the iambic septenarius, and in Plautus in the principal break in the iambic octonarius, trochaic septenarius and trochaic octonarius.

2478. (4.) Often in the dramatists where there is a change of speakers: as, *qui potuit vidēre ? : : oculis : : quō pacto ? : : hiantibus*, Pl. *Merc.* 182.

2479. (5.) Probably sometimes in cases of repetition, enumeration, or sharp antithesis, and where there is an important pause in the sense: as, *eam volt meretricem facere : ea mē dēperit*, Pl. *Cur.* 46; *sī pereō, hominum manibus periisse iuvābit*, V. 3, 606.

2480. Vergil sometimes admits hiatus when the final syllable ending in a vowel is preceded or followed (or both) by two short syllables: as, *lāmentis gemitūque et fēminēō ūlulātū*, V. 4, 667.

### ELISION.

2481. For elision within a word, see 119.

2482. In verse a final vowel is generally elided before a vowel or *h*: as,

*quidve moror, s(i) omnis ūn(ō) ōrdin(e) habētis Achivōs*, V. 2, 102. Such a vowel was probably faintly sounded, not dropped altogether.

2483. Elision is frequent in most of the early poets; but writers of the Augustan and succeeding ages regarded it with increasing disfavour. The elision of a long vowel before a short was in general avoided; but there are numerous exceptions.

2484. Monosyllabic interjections do not suffer elision.

2485. Monosyllables ending in a diphthong seldom suffer elision before a short vowel.

2486. Diphthongs arising from Synizesis (2499) are sometimes elided in early Latin verse, but not in verse of the classical period.

2487. The monosyllables *quī* (plural), *dō*, *stō*, *rē*, *spē*, are thought never to suffer elision before a short vowel.

2488. The dactylic poets very rarely elide the final syllable of an iambic (∪ —) or Cretic (— ∪ —) word before a short vowel.

2489. Elision seldom occurs if the syllable to be elided is immediately preceded by a vowel: as in *de(am) et*.

2490. The final syllable of a Greek word is rarely elided.

2491. Elision is more common toward the beginning of a verse than toward the end.

2492. Elision rarely occurs in the first syllable or last syllable of a verse; but see under Synapheia (2510), and for the elision of the enclitic *-que* or *-ve* at the end of a dactylic hexameter, see 2568.



**2493.** ECTHLIPSIS (Gr. ἔκθλιψις, *a squeezing out*). Final *m* and a preceding short vowel are usually elided before a vowel or *h*: as,

mōnstr(um) horrend(um) inform(e) ingēns, cui lūmen ademptum,  
V. 3, 658.

In such cases the ending was probably not cut off altogether, but was given a faint nasal sound.

**2494.** Sometimes a monosyllable ending in a short vowel and *m* is not elided before a vowel: as quā́m ego (Ter.); súnt cŭm odōre (Lucr.).

Such unelided monosyllables are most frequent in the early dramatists, and in them usually fall under the verse-ictus. See 61.

**2495.** The monosyllables dem, stem, rem, spem, sim, are thought never to be elided before a short vowel.

**2496.** After a word ending with a vowel, -m, or -us, the verb est often loses its *e*: as, bonast, bonumst, bonust, visust. So, too, es sometimes loses its vowel: as homo's, adeptus'. This usage reflects the actual pronunciation of common speech.

**2497.** SEMI-HIATUS OR SEMI-ELISION. A long final vowel is sometimes shortened before a vowel. This may occur either in the arsis (2520), or in a resolved thesis: as, án quí amant (Verg.); léctulō ērudītulī (Cat.); nam quí aget (Ter.).

This kind of shortening is not frequent except in the early dramatists, who often shorten under the verse-ictus a monosyllable ending in a long vowel and followed by an initial vowel (as in the third example above).

**2498.** SYNALOEPHA (Greek συναλοιφή, *a smearing together*) is a general term used to denote the means of avoiding hiatus. It includes elision and synizesis, though some grammarians use it in the same sense as synizesis.

**2499.** Synizesis (Greek συνίησις, *a settling together*). Two vowels (or a vowel and a diphthong) which belong to different syllables sometimes coalesce so as to form one syllable. This is called *Synizesis*, and is especially common in the early dramatists. Examples are: meō, eādem, cuius, aurei. See 117.

Some grammarians would include under Synizesis only cases in which a short vowel is subordinated to a following long; as tuō.

**2500.** The term *Synacresis* (Greek συναίρεσις, *a taking together*) is sometimes used as a synonym for Synizesis. The ancient grammarians, however, used it in the sense of Contraction (118).

**2501.** DIALYSIS (Greek διάλυσις, *a breaking up*). Conversely, two vowels which usually form a diphthong are sometimes separated so as to form two syllables: as coëpī (Lucr.) for coepī.

This, however, is really the survival of the original forms (120).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2510. SYNAPHEIA (Greek *συνάφεια*, *a joining together*) is the linking together of two verses belonging to the same system. Here elision or word division may occur at the end of the first verse: as,

Iōve nōn probante u-  
xōrius amnis, H. 1, 2, 19.

Iam licet veniās marīt(e),  
uxor in thalamō tibi est, Cat. 61, 191.

### III. VERSIFICATION.

BY HERMAN W. HAYLEY, PH.D.

2511. RHYTHM (Gr. *ῥυθμός*, from *ῥεῖν*, *to flow*) is the effect of regularity produced by the discrimination of a movement or sound into uniform intervals of time. It is often marked by a stress or *ictus* recurring at fixed intervals.

Rhythm is by no means confined to verse. Music, dancing, and even the regular beat of a trip-hammer, have rhythm. Particular kinds of movement are often called rhythms, as anapaestic rhythms, dactylic rhythms, &c.



2512. METRE (Gr. *μέτρον*, *a measure*) is the definite measurement of verse by feet, lines, strophes, systems, &c.

2513. Latin verse is quantitative, the rhythm depending upon the quantity of the syllables (but see 2548). The ictus naturally falls upon a long syllable (or its equivalent). English verse, on the other hand, is accental, its rhythm depending upon the accent of words.

#### QUANTITY.

2514. SIGNS OF QUANTITY. A long syllable is indicated by —, a short one by ∪. A syllable which varies in quantity, being sometimes long, sometimes short, is indicated by ∩ or ∪.

In the following metrical schemes, ∩ indicates that the long is more usual or more strictly in accordance with the rhythm than the short. The reverse is indicated by ∪.

**2515.** The UNIT OF MEASURE is the duration of a short syllable and is called a *Time*, *Tempus*, or *Mora*. The *mora* did not have an absolute length, but varied with the nature of the rhythm. For greater convenience, however, it is assumed that its length was uniform, and equalled that of an eighth note . A long syllable, being equal to two shorts, has a length of two *morae*, which is assumed to be the same as that of our quarter-note . Hence in notation  $\cup = \text{quarter note}$  and  $- = \text{eighth note}$ .

**2516.** PROTRACTION. A long syllable may be prolonged (*Protraction*) so as to have a length of three *morae*, in which case it is called a *triseme* (marked  $\sqcup$ ), or of four *morae*, when it is termed a *tetraseme* (marked  $\sqcup$ ). See 2537 and 2541.

**2517.** CORREPTION. A long or short syllable may be shortened so as to occupy less than its normal time. This is called *Correption* (Lat. *correptiō*, a shortening). See 2523 and 2524.

**2518.** RESOLUTION AND CONTRACTION. In some kinds of verse a long syllable may be, as it were, broken up (*Resolution*) into the equivalent two shorts; and conversely two short syllables may in some cases be united (*Contraction*) into the equivalent long.

## FEET.

**2519.** FEET. Latin verse (like English) is measured by groups of syllables called *Feet*. Each of these groups has a definite length of so many *morae* (2515).

It is theoretically more accurate to make the foot purely a time-division, as some authorities do; but the definition given above is sanctioned by established usage.

**2520.** ARSIS and THESIS. Every complete foot consists of two parts, an accented and an unaccented. The part on which the rhythmical accent or *ictus* falls is called the *Thesis* (Gr. *θέσις*, a setting down). The unaccented part of the foot is termed the *Arsis* (Gr. *ἄρσις*, a raising).

The name *Thesis* originally referred to the setting down of the foot in beating time or marching, or to the movement of the leader's hand in making the downward beat; and *Arsis* in like manner meant the raising of the foot or hand. But the Roman grammarians misunderstood the Greek terms, supposing them to refer to the lowering and raising of the voice, and so interchanged them. Hence many modern writers prefer to use *Arsis* to denote the accented, and *Thesis* the unaccented, part of the foot.

## KINDS OF FEET.

**2521.** The feet in common use are the following:—

FEET OF THREE MORAE.			
Name.	Sign.	Musically.	Example.
Trochee	— ∪		dūcit
Iambus	∪ —		legunt
Tribrach	∪ ∪ ∪		hominis
FEET OF FOUR MORAE.			
Dactyl	— ∪ ∪		dūcimus
Anapaest	∪ ∪ —		regerent
Spondee	— —		fēcī
Proceleusmatic	∪ ∪ ∪ ∪		hominibus
FEET OF FIVE MORAE.			
Cretic	— ∪ —		fēcerint
First Paeon	— ∪ ∪ ∪		lēgeritis
Fourth Paeon	∪ ∪ ∪ —		celeritās
Bacchius	∪ — —		regēbant
FEET OF SIX MORAE.			
Choriambus	— ∪ ∪ —		horribilēs
Ionic <i>ā māiōre</i>	— — ∪ ∪		dēdūcimus
Ionic <i>ā minōre</i>	∪ ∪ — —		relegēbant

2522. Other feet mentioned by the ancient grammarians are : —

Name.	Sign.	Name.	Sign.
Pyrrhic . . . .	∪ ∪	Antispast . . .	∪ — — ∪
Amphibrach . . .	∪ — ∪	Second Paeon .	∪ — — ∪ ∪
Antibacchius or } .	— — —	Third Paeon . .	∪ ∪ — — ∪
Palimbacchius } .	— — ∪	First Epitrite .	∪ — — — —
Molossus . . . .	— — —	Second Epitrite	— ∪ — — —
Dispondee . . . .	— — — —	Third Epitrite .	— — — ∪ —
Ditrochee . . . .	— ∪ — ∪	Fourth Epitrite	— — — — ∪
Diiambus . . . .	∪ — ∪ —		



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

### ANACRUSIS.

**2529.** The ancients recognized both ascending and descending rhythms (2528), and regarded the former class as at least equal in importance to the latter; but many modern scholars since the time of Bentley have preferred to treat all rhythms as descending, regarding the first arsis of an ascending rhythm as merely answering to a preliminary upward beat in music. Such an initial arsis was named by Gottfried Hermann *Anacrūsis* (Gr. ἀνάκρουσις, *a striking up*).

Scholars have been influenced to adopt the anacrusic theory in its widest extent largely by the fact that in most modern music a measure must commence with a downward beat, a rule which did not hold in ancient music. By this theory an iambic verse becomes trochaic with anacrusis, an anapaestic verse dactylic with anacrusis, &c. But in many cases those kinds of verse which begin with an arsis were subject to different rules of construction from those which begin with a thesis. Hence it seems best to restrict anacrusis to logaoedic verse, in which it undoubtedly occurs.

**2530.** The anacrusis may be a long syllable, a short syllable, or two shorts (but not two longs). It is often irrational (2524). In metrical schemes it is often set off from the rest of the verse by a vertical row of dots: thus, :

### GROUPS OF FEET.

**2531.** A group of two feet is called a *dipody*, one of three a *tripody*, one of four a *tetrapody*, one of five a *pentapody*, and one of six a *hexapody*. The dipody is the measure of trochaic, iambic, and anapaestic verse. Other kinds of verse are measured by the single foot.

A single foot is sometimes called a *monopody*. A group of three half feet, i. e. a foot and a half, is sometimes called a *trithemimeris*, one of two and a half feet a *penthemimeris*, one of three and a half a *hepthemimeris*, &c.

**2532.** A *Rhythmical Series*, *Rhythmical Sentence*, or *Colon* is a group of two or more feet (but not more than six) which are united into a rhythmic whole by strengthening one of the ictuses, so that it becomes the principal or dominant ictus of the whole group.

**2533. THE VERSE.** A rhythmical series, or group of two (or even three) series, which forms a distinct and separate whole is called a *Verse*. The final syllable of a verse must terminate a word (except in cases of synapheia, see 2510), and may be either long or short (whence it is termed *syllaba anceps*) without regard to the rhythm. Hiatus (2474) is freely allowed at the end of a verse (though in rare cases elision occurs before a vowel at the beginning of the following verse; see 2492 and 2568).

A verse is generally (but not always) written as one line. Hence, the words "verse" and "line" are often used as synonyms.

## SYLLABA ANCEPS.

**2534.** In the present work, the final syllable of each verse is marked long or short as the rhythm may require, without reference to its quantity in a given example; and in the general schemes it is to be understood that the final syllable is *syllaba anceps* (2533) unless the contrary is expressly stated.

**2535. DICOLIC AND ASYNARTETIC VERSES.** A verse which consists of two rhythmical series (or cola) is called *dicolic*. If the series of which the verse is made up are quasi-independent of each other, so that hiatus or *syllaba anceps* occurs in the caesura, the verse is styled *asynartetic* (Gr. ἀσυνάρτητος, *not joined together*).

**2536. NAMES OF VERSES.** Verses are called *trochaic*, *iambic*, *dactylic*, &c., according to their fundamental (or characteristic) feet. A verse which contains one foot (or one dipody if iambic, trochaic, or anapaestic; see 2531) is called a *monometer*, one of two a *dimeter*, one of three a *trimeter*, one of four a *tetrameter*, one of five a *pentameter*, and one of six a *hexameter*.

Trochaic, iambic, and anapaestic verses are often named by Latin adjectives in *-ārius* (used as nouns) denoting the number of feet. Thus, such a verse of eight feet is called an *octōnārius*, one of seven a *septēnārius*, one of six a *sēnārius*, &c. A short verse which is employed to close a system (2547), or to mark a metrical or musical transition between longer verses, is called a *clausula*.

## CATALEXIS, PAUSE, SYNCOPE.

**2537. CATALEXIS.** A verse, the last foot of which is incomplete, is said to suffer *Catalexis* (Gr. κατάληξις, *a stopping short*) or to be *catalectic*; one of which the last foot is complete is called *acatalectic*.

It is usually the last part of the foot that is omitted; but (according to the theory now generally accepted) in catalectic iambic verses it is the last arsis that is omitted, the preceding thesis being protracted (2516) to compensate for the loss, thus: ∪ ⊥ ⊥

**2538.** A verse in which both the last arsis and the next to the last are suppressed, so that a whole foot appears to be wanting, is called *brachycatalectic*.

**2539.** A verse is said to be catalectic *in syllabam*, *in disyllabum*, or *in trisyllabum*, according to the number of syllables remaining in the last foot. Thus, the dactylic tetrameter — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — is catalectic *in syllabam*, but — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ is catalectic *in disyllabum*.

**2540. PAUSES.** Theoretically all the feet (or dipodies; see 2531) into which a verse is divided must be equal in duration. Hence, when a final syllable (or two final syllables) is lost by catalexis, compensation is made for the loss by a pause at the end of the verse. Such a pause, which serves to fill out the last measure, answers to a *rest* in music.

A pause of one *mora* is often indicated by the sign Λ, and one of two *morae* by Λ̄.



2541. **SYNCOPE** is the omission of one or more arses in the body of a verse. Compensation is made for the suppression of an arsis by protracting (2516) the preceding thesis.

### CAESURA.

2542. **CAESURA AND DIAERESIS.** A *Caesūra* (literally *a cutting*, from *caedo, I cut*) is the break in a verse produced by the ending of a word within a foot. When the end of a word coincides with the end of a foot, the break is called a *Diaeresis* (Gr. *διαίρεσις, a separating*). A caesura is marked ||, a diaeresis ††.

The word *caesura* is often loosely used to include both caesura proper and diaeresis.

2543. Strictly speaking, there is a caesura (or diaeresis, as the case may be) wherever a word ends within a verse; but the main incision in the verse is so much more important than the rest that it is often called the *principal caesura*, or simply *the caesura*.

2544. Caesuras are named according to their position in the verse; thus a caesura after the third half-foot (i. e. in the second foot) is called *trithemimeral* (from Gr. *τριθημιμερής, containing three halves*), one after the fifth half-foot (i. e. in the third foot) *penthemimeral* (Gr. *πενθημιμερής, consisting of five halves*), one after the seventh half-foot (i. e. in the fourth foot) *hepthemimeral* (Gr. *ἑφθημιμερής*), &c.

The Latin names *caesūra sēmiternāria* (= the trithemimeral caesura), *sēmiquīnāria* (= the penthemimeral), *sēmiseptēnāria* (= the hepthemimeral), &c., are sometimes used. For the *masculine* and *feminine* caesuras, see 2557.

### STROPHE. SYSTEM.

2545. **THE STROPHE.** A fixed number of verses recurring in a regular order is called a *Strophe*. A strophe commonly contains verses of different kinds, but some strophes are composed of verses which are all alike. The most common strophes in Latin poetry are either *distichs* (i. e. groups of two lines each), *tristichs* (of three lines each), or *tetrastichs* (of four).

Strophes and verses are frequently named after some poet who made use of them. So the *Alcaic strophe* (named after Alcaeus), the *Sapphic strophe* (named after Sappho), the *Glyconic verse* (named after Glycon), the *Asclepiadean* (after Asclepiades), the *Phalaecean* (after Phalaeceus), the *Pherecratean* (after Pherecrates), &c.

2546. A *Stichic Series* is a series of verses of the same kind not combined into strophes.

2547. **THE SYSTEM.** A group of rhythmical series (see 2532) which is of greater extent than a verse is called a *System*. Long systems, such as are common in Greek poetry, are comparatively rare in Latin verse.

Few verses have more than two rhythmical series; none more than three.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

Virúm mihí, Caména, † insecé versútum.  
(Livius Andronicus.)

Eōrum sectám sequóntur † múltī mórtālēs.  
(Naevius.)

Compare in English: "The queén was ín the párlour, éating bréad and hóney."

2552. Most of the Roman grammarians who discussed the nature of the Saturnian seem to have regarded it as quantitative. In modern times the quantitative theory has been advocated by Ritschl, Buecheler, Havet, Christ, Lucian Mueller, W. Meyer, Reichardt and many others.

2553. (2.) THE ACCENTUAL THEORY. According to this theory, the Saturnian is an accentual verse, constructed without regard to quantity. It is divided by the principal break into two halves, the first of which has three theses. The second half usually has three, but may have only two, in which case it is usually preceded by an anacrusis (2529). Two accented syllables are regularly separated by an unaccented syllable, but in strictly constructed Saturnians the second and third unaccented syllables are regularly separated by two unaccented ones. Hiatus was at first freely admitted, but in the Saturnians of the second century B. C. occurs only at the principal break. Examples of the Saturnian, measured according to this theory, are:

Dábunt málum Metéllī † Naéviō poētae.

Nóvem Ióvis concórdēs † fíliáe soróres.  
(Naevius.)

Virum míhi, Caména, † insecé versútum.  
(Livius Andronicus.)

Eōrum séctam sequóntur † múltī mórtālēs.  
(Naevius.)

2554. The accentual theory was held by the scholiast on V. G. 2, 385, and in modern times has been upheld (in one form or another) by O. Keller, Thurneysen, Westphal, Gleditsch, Lindsay and others. The brief statement given above agrees essentially with that of O. Keller. Gleditsch holds that each half-verse has four accents, as: Dábunt málum Métellī † Naéviō poētaé; Lindsay that the first hemistich has three accents and the second two, as: Dábunt málum Metéllī † Naéviō poētae. The whole question is still far from its final settlement.

## DACTYLIC RHYTHMS.

2555. These are descending rhythms belonging to the *Equal Class* (see 2527). In them the fundamental foot is the dactyl ( $\underline{\quad} \cup \cup$ ), for which its metrical equivalent, the spondee ( $\underline{\quad} \underline{\quad}$ ), is frequently substituted.

## THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

2556. The DACTYLIC HEXAMETER is the verse regularly employed in epic, didactic, and bucolic poetry, and is used by the Latin writers oftener than any other measure. It consists of six feet, the last of which is a spondee (but with the privilege of *syllaba anceps*; see 2534). The fifth foot is usually a dactyl; but sometimes a spondee is employed, in which case the verse is called *spondaic*. In each of the other four feet either a dactyl or a spondee may be used. The scheme is therefore:

┌ ˘ ˘ | ┌ ˘ ˘ | ┌ ˘ ˘ | ┌ ˘ ˘ | ┌ ˘ ˘ | ┌ — —

2557. A caesura which comes immediately after the thesis of a foot is called *masculine*; one which falls in the middle of the arsis (i. e. after the first short of a dactyl) is termed *feminine*. The Roman writers show a strong preference for masculine principal caesuras, and in general their treatment of the caesura is more strict than that of the Greek poets.

2558. The principal caesura in the Latin hexameter is most frequently the penthemimeral (2544): as in:

Arma virumque canō || Troiae quī primus ab ōris  
(V. 1, 1).

Next in order of frequency stands the hephthemimeral, which is usually accompanied by a secondary trithemimeral, and in many cases also by a feminine caesura in the third foot: as in the verse,

Īn̄signem || pietāte || virum || tot adire labōrēs  
(V. 1, 10).

If the secondary trithemimeral caesura is lacking, the penthemimeral is usually accompanied by a feminine caesura in the second foot. Sometimes, though more rarely, the principal break in the line is the feminine caesura in the third foot (often called the "caesura after the third trochee"), as in the verse

Spargēns ūmida mella || sopōriferumque papāver  
(V. 4, 486).

2559. The diaeresis (see 2542) after the fourth foot (often called "bucolic diaeresis" from its use by pastoral writers) sometimes occurs, but is much less common in Latin hexameters than in Greek. An example is

Dīc mihi, Dāmoetā, || cuium pecus ? ‡ An Meliboeī ?  
(V. E. 3, 1).

This diaeresis, though common in Juvenal, is rare in most of the Latin poets (even the bucolic), and when it does occur, it is usually accompanied by a penthemimeral caesura. Lucian Mueller and others deny that the bucolic diaeresis ever forms the principal break in a line.

2560. When a line has several caesuras, it is often hard to determine which is the principal one. In general, masculine caesuras out-rank feminine; the penthemimeral takes precedence over the hephthemimeral, and the latter over all other caesuras. But if the hephthemimeral, or even one of the minor caesuras, coincides with an important pause in the sentence, it may out-rank the penthemimeral. Thus in the verse

Paulāt(im) adnābam || terrae; || iam tūta tenēbam  
(V. 6, 358),

the principal caesura is after *terrae*, not *adnābam*.

Lines without a principal caesura are rare. An instance is

Nōn quivīs videt inmodulāta poēmata iūdex  
(H. AP. 263).

2561. The great flexibility of the hexameter makes it an admirable vehicle of poetic expression. Accumulated spondees give the verse a slow and ponderous movement: as in the line

Ill(i) in|ter sē|sē || ma|gnā vī | bracchia | tollunt  
(V. G. 4, 174).

The multiplication of dactyls imparts to the verse a comparatively rapid and impetuous motion, as in the famous verse

Quadrupe|dante pu|trem || soni|tū quatit | ungula | campum  
(V. 8, 596).

But even when dactyls are numerous, the Latin hexameter, "the stateliest measure ever moulded by the lips of man," should not be read with the jerky  $\frac{3}{8}$  movement which is characteristic of the English hexameter.

2562. The following passage may serve to illustrate the movement of the hexameter, and to show how the use of the different caesuras imparts variety to the measure:

Ō soci|ī || — nequ(e) e|n(im) ignā|rī || sumus | ante ma|lōrum —  
ō pas|sī gravi|ōra, || dalbit deus | hīs quoque | finem.  
Vōs et | Scyllae|am || rabi|em || peni|tusque so|nantēs  
accē|stis scopu|lōs, || vōs | et Cŷ|clōpea | saxa  
exper|tī; || revo|cāt(e) ani|mōs, || maelstumque ti|mōrem  
mittite: | forsan et | haec || ōllim || memi|nisse iu|vābit.  
(V. 1, 198).

Compare in English:

Rolls and rages amain the restless, billowy ocean,  
While with a roar that soundeth afar the white-maned breakers  
Leap up against the cliffs, like foemen madly rejoicing.

## NOTES ON THE HEXAMETER.

2563. (1.) In all probability, the hexameter was originally a composite verse, made up of two tripodies, or of a tetrapody and a dipody. Hence hiatus in the principal caesura is not very rare, even in the Augustan poets. The stress upon the first and fourth theses was probably stronger than that upon the other four.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2573. The pentameter is rarely used except in combination with the hexameter, with which it forms the so-called *Elegiac Distich*:

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} \bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} & | & - & \text{v} & | & - & \text{v} & | & \bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} & | & \bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} & | & \bar{\text{I}} & - \\ \bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} & | & \bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} & | & \bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} & | & \bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} & | & \bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} & | & \bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} \end{array}$$

2574. The Elegiac Distich is used chiefly in elegiac poetry (whence the name), in amatory verse and in epigrams. The end of the pentameter generally coincides with a pause in the sense. As examples of the Elegiac Distich, the following may serve:

Quam legis | ex il|lā || tibi | vēnit e|pisto|la | terrā  
lātus u|b(ī) aequore|is † additur | Hister a|quīs.  
Sī tibi | contige|rit || cum | dulcī | vīta sa|lūte,  
candīda | fortū|nae † pars manet | ūna me|ae.  
O. *Tr.* 5, 7, 1.

Compare in English (but see 2561 *ad fin.*):

“These lame hexameters the strong-winged music of Homer!  
No — but a most burlesque, barbarous experiment . . .  
Hexameters no worse than daring Germany gave us,  
Barbarous experiment, barbarous hexameters.”

(TENNYSON).

2575. The Elegiac Distich was introduced into Roman poetry by Ennius, who used it in epigrams. Varro employed it in his *Saturae*, and Catullus seems to have been the first of the Latins who used it in Elegiac poetry. The elegiac and amatory poets of the Augustan age, especially Ovid, perfected it, and wielded it with unequalled grace and ease.

2576. Ovid nearly always closes the pentameter with a disyllabic word; but earlier poets, especially Catullus, are less careful in this regard. Elision is less frequent in the pentameter than in the hexameter. It sometimes occurs in the main diaeresis of the pentameter, though rarely.

## THE DACTYLIC TETRAMETER ACATALECTIC (OR *Alcmanian*).

2577. This verse is chiefly used in composition with a trochaic tripod to form the Greater Archilochian verse (2677); but it occurs alone once in Terence (*Andria* 625), and is employed in stichic series (2546) by Seneca. The scheme is:

$$\bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} & | & \bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} & | & \bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} & | & \bar{\text{I}} & \text{v} & \text{v}$$

An example is:

hocine | crēdibi|l(e) aut memo|rābile  
(T. *Andr.* 625).

This verse is often called *Alcmanian* because it was used by the Greek poet Alcman.

## THE DACTYLIC TETRAMETER CATALECTIC (or *Archilochian*.)

2578. This verse consists of four dactylic feet, the last one being incomplete. The scheme is :

⌊ ∪ ∪ | ⌊ ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | ⌊ ∪ ∧

An example is :

Cármine | pérpetu|ō cele|brár(e) et

(H. 1, 7, 6).

This verse differs from the preceding in that the last foot is always a trochee or spondee, never a dactyl. It is used only in the Alcmanian strophe (2724).

## THE DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (or *Lesser* *Archilochian*).

2579. This verse has the scheme :

⌊ ∪ ∪ | ⌊ ∪ ∪ | ⌊ ∞

An example is :

Árbori|búsque co | maé

(H. 4, 7, 2).

It is used chiefly in the First Archilochian Strophe (see 2725). In form it is the same as the second half of the pentameter (2570).

2580. These verses (2578, 2579) are often called *Archilochian* because they were first used by the Greek poet Archilochus.

## IAMBIC RHYTHMS.

2581. These are ascending rhythms (2528) in  $\frac{3}{8}$  time. The fundamental foot is the Iambus (∪ ⌊), for which its metrical equivalent the tribrach ∪ ∪ ∪, the irrational spondee > ⌊, the irrational dactyl > ∪ ∪, the cyclic anapaest ∪ ∪ ∪, or the proceleusmatic ∪ ∪ ∪ is sometimes substituted.

2582. The Greek poets excluded all feet except the iambus and tribrach, and in comedy the anapaest, from the even places in iambic verse. The Latin poets were not so strict: but when one of the even feet was formed by a word or a word-ending, they did not usually allow the foot to be a spondee or an anapaest, but required it to be an iambus.



## THE IAMBIC TRIMETER OR SENARIUS.

2583. The IAMBIC TRIMETER is the verse most frequently used by the Roman dramatists. It consists of six iambic feet, or three iambic dipodies. The ictus on the second thesis of each dipody was probably weaker than that upon the first thesis. Some ancient authorities, however, held that the ictus on the second thesis was the stronger. The last foot is always an iambus. The normal scheme is therefore:

∪ ∟ | ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∟

Some prefer (see 2529) to regard this verse as a trochaic trimeter catalectic with anacrusis. The normal scheme will then be:

∪ : ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∪ | ∟ ∪

2584. The Latin poets differ widely in their treatment of the Senarius, some (especially Plautus, Terence, and the other early dramatists) handling it with great freedom, while others (especially Phaedrus and Publilius Syrus) conform more closely to Greek models. We may therefore distinguish two periods:

## (A.) Early Period.

2585. Any one of the substitutions enumerated in 2581 is admitted in any foot except the last. The scheme is therefore:

∩ ∟ | ∩ ∟ | ∩ ∟ | ∩ ∟ | ∩ ∟ | ∪ ∟  
 ∪ ∟ ∪ | ∪ ∟ ∪ | ∪ ∟ ∪ | ∪ ∟ ∪ | ∪ ∟ ∪ |  
 > ∟ ∪ | > ∟ ∪ | > ∟ ∪ | > ∟ ∪ | > ∟ ∪ |  
 ∩ ∟ | ∩ ∟ | ∩ ∟ | ∩ ∟ | ∩ ∟ |  
 ∩ ∟ ∪ | ∩ ∟ ∪ | ∩ ∟ ∪ | ∩ ∟ ∪ | [∩ ∟ ∪] |

The main caesura is usually penthemimeral (2544); but it is sometimes hepthemimeral, in which case there is generally a secondary caesura in, or diaeresis after, the second foot.

The following passage may serve to show the rhythm:

Ubi vén|t(um) ad ae|dīs || ést | Dromō | pultát | forēs ;  
 anŭs quaé|dam prō|dit ; || haéc | ub(i) ape|rit ōs|tium,  
 contínu(ō) | hic sē | conié|cit || in|tr(ō), ego cōn|sequor ;  
 anŭs fóri|bus ob|dit || pēs|sul(um), ad | lānám | redit.  
 Hic scí|rī potu|it || aút | nusqu(am) ali|bī, Clí|nia,  
 quō stúdi|ō vī|tam || suám | t(ē) absen|t(e) exē|gerit,  
 ubi d(ē) in|prōvī|sōst || in|terven|tum múli|erī, &c.

*T. Hau. 275.*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2593. (1.) The anapaest is rare in nearly all classical writers; Catullus does not admit it at all, and Horace only five times in all. The proceleusmatic is admitted in the first foot by Seneca, the author of the *Octavia*, Phaedrus, Publilius Syrus and Terentianus Maurus; other writers exclude it altogether. Catullus keeps the fifth foot pure, and Horace does not admit the tribrach in the fifth foot.

2594. (2.) Catullus (4 and 29), Horace (*Epod.* 16), Vergil (*Cat.* 3, 4, 8), and the authors of the *Priāphēa* sometimes use the *pure* iambic trimeter, without resolutions or substitutions.

2595. (3.) Phaedrus follows in part the earlier usage, admitting the spondee, dactyl, and anapaest, in every foot except the last. The dactyl he employs chiefly in the first, third, and fifth feet, the anapaest in the first and fifth. The proceleusmatic he admits only in the first.

2596. The rhythm of the Senarius may be illustrated by the following lines:

But one amid the throng of eager listeners,  
A sable form with scornful eye and look averse,  
Out-stretched a lean fore-finger and bespake Haroun.

### THE CHOLIAMBUS (or *Scazon*).

2597. The CHOLIAMBUS is an iambic trimeter in which a trochee has been substituted for the final iambus. The penultimate syllable is therefore long instead of short. The caesura is generally the penthemimeral (2544). If it is hephthemimeral, there is regularly a diaeresis after the second foot. The scheme is:

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccc} \text{>} & \text{—} & | & \text{v} & \text{—} & | & \text{>} & \text{—} & | & \text{v} & \text{—} & | & \text{v} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{v} \\ [\text{v} & \text{v} & \text{v}] & | & \text{v} & \text{v} & \text{v} & | & \text{v} & \text{v} & \text{v} & | & \text{v} & \text{v} & \text{v} & | & \\ > & \text{v} & \text{v} & | & & & | & > & \text{v} & \text{v} & | & & & & & & | \\ \text{v} & \text{—} & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & \end{array}$$

An example is:

Fulsē|re quon|dam || cán|didī| tibī | sōlēs.  
(Cat. 8, 3.)

2598. (1.) The anacrusic scheme (see 2529) of the choliambus is:

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccc} \text{>} & : & \text{—} & \text{v} & | & \text{—} & \text{>} & | & \text{—} & \text{v} & | & \text{—} & \text{v} & | & \text{—} & \text{v} & | & \text{—} & \text{v} \\ \text{v} & : & \text{v} & \text{v} & \text{v} & | & \text{v} & \text{v} & \text{v} & | & \text{v} & \text{v} & \text{v} & | & \text{v} & \text{v} & \text{v} & | & \end{array}$$

i. e. trochaic trimeter with anacrusis (2529), syncope (2541), and protraction (2516).

2599. (2.) Resolutions and substitutions are less common in the choliambus than in the ordinary trimeter. No monosyllable except *est* is admitted at the end of the line. The tribrach in the first foot is rare, and the fifth foot is regularly an iambus.

2600. (3.) The verse is named *Choliambus* (i. e. "lame" or "limping iambus") or *Scazon* ("hobbler") from its odd, limping movement. It is sometimes called Hipponactean from its inventor Hipponax, and is chiefly used to produce a satiric or ludicrous effect. It was introduced into Roman poetry by Cn. Mattius, and was employed by Varro, Catullus, Persius, Petronius, Martial, and others.







**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2618. (1.) The verse may also be regarded as a trochaic dimeter catalectic with anacrusis (2529), with the normal scheme:

∪ ∷ ∟ ∪ | ∷ ∪ | ∟ ∪ | ∷ ∟

2619. (2.) Horace admits resolutions only four times, the tribrach once in the second foot and the dactyl thrice in the first.

2620. (3.) Plautus (except in a few instances), Terence, and Horace employ the dimeter only as a *clausula* (2536) to longer verses. Petronius, Seneca, and Prudentius use it to form *systems* (2547); but it is rarely so employed by earlier writers.

### THE IAMBIC DIMETER CATALECTIC (or *Ternarius*).

2621. This is like the preceding verse, except that the last foot is incomplete. Examples are:—

Nequ(e) id | perspice|re quí|vī  
 ∪ ∟ | > ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∟ ∷ (Pl. *Cap.* 784).

Date; móx | eg(o) hūc | revór|tor  
 ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∷ | ∪ ∟ ∷ (T. *Andr.* 485).

2622. (1.) The verse may also be regarded as a syncopated catalectic trochaic dimeter with anacrusis (2529). The normal scheme will then be:—

∪ ∷ ∟ ∪ | ∷ ∪ | ∟ | ∷ ∟

2623. (2.) Plautus and Terence use this verse as a *clausula* (2536). Petronius is the first who employs it to form *systems* (2547).

### OTHER IAMBIC VERSES.

2624. Other short iambic verses, the acatalectic dipody (e. g. eg(o) illúm | famē, | eg(o) illúm | sitī, Pl. *Cas.* 153), and the catalectic tripod (e. g. inóps | amā|tor, Pl. *Tri.* 256) sometimes occur, but are rare.

### THE VERSUS REIZIANUS.

2625. This is a composite verse, consisting of two cola, an iambic dimeter acatalectic and an iambic tripod catalectic. The scheme is therefore,

∷ ∟ | ∷ ∷ | ∷ ∟ | ∪ ∷ # ∷ ∟ | ∷ ∟ | ∪ ∟  
 ∪ ∟ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∟ ∪ | [∪ ∟ ∪] | ∪ ∟ ∪ |  
 > ∟ ∪ | > ∪ ∪ | > ∟ ∪ | > ∟ ∪ | > ∟ ∪ |  
 ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∷ | ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∟ | ∪ ∟ |  
 ∪ ∟ ∪ | [∪ ∪ ∪] | [∪ ∟ ∪] | ∪ ∟ ∪ | ∪ ∟ ∪

Examples are:—

Sed in aé|dibus | quid tibi | meīs # n(am) erát | negó|tī  
 m(ē) absén|te, nis(i) e|go iús|seram ? # volo scí|re. Tac(ē) ér|gō  
 Quia vē|nimūs coc|t(um) ad nū|ptiās. # Quid tú, | malūm, cū|rās.  
 (Pl. *Aul.* 427.)

2626. The nature of the second colon of this verse has long been disputed. Reiz and Christ treat it substantially as above; Studemund regards it as a syncopated iambic dimeter catalectic ( $\cup - \cup \_ - \cup$ ), Spengel and Gleditsch as anapaestic, Leo as logaoedic, Klotz as sometimes logaoedic and sometimes anapaestic. The view of Christ (*Metrik*<sup>2</sup>, p. 348) seems, on the whole, the most reasonable, though the question cannot be said to be fully decided. The tribrach is rare in the second colon, but there seems to be a case in Plautus, *R.* 675 b.

2627. For other iambic verses and combinations of verses, see special editions of the dramatists.

## TROCHAIC RHYTHMS.

2628. These are descending rhythms in  $\frac{3}{4}$  time. The fundamental foot is the trochee  $\_ \cup$ , for which its metrical equivalent the tribrach  $\_ \cup \cup$ , the irrational spondee  $\_ >$ , the cyclic dactyl  $\_ \cup \cup$ , the irrational anapaest  $\_ \cup >$ , and (rarely) the proceleusmatic  $\_ \cup \cup$ , are sometimes substituted.

## THE TROCHAIC TETRAMETER CATALECTIC (or *Septenarius*).

2629. The TROCHAIC TETRAMETER CATALECTIC is, next to the iambic trimeter, the verse most frequently used by the early Roman dramatists. It consists of seven and a half trochaic feet, or four trochaic dipodies (the last one being incomplete). The ictus on the second thesis of each dipody was probably weaker than that on the first thesis. The normal scheme is:—

$\_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \wedge$

As in the case of the senarius, we may distinguish two periods in the usage:—

### (A.) Early Period.

2630. The tribrach is admitted in any of the complete feet, and the irrational spondee, cyclic dactyl, and irrational anapaest in any of the first six feet. Terence does not admit the proceleusmatic in the *Septenarius* (nor in any other kind of trochaic verse), but Plautus admits it in the first foot. The seventh foot of the *Septenarius* is usually a trochee, but the tribrach sometimes occurs there. The principal break in the line is usually a diaeresis after the fourth foot (which in that case must not be a dactyl), often accompanied by a secondary diaeresis after the second foot. Sometimes, however, the principal break is a diaeresis after the fifth foot, in which case there is generally a secondary diaeresis after the third foot or a caesura in the fourth. The full scheme of substitutions is:—

$\_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \wedge$   
 $\_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \cup |$   
 $\_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup | \_ \cup |$   
 $\_ \cup > | \_ \cup > | \_ \cup > | \_ \cup > | \_ \cup > | \_ \cup > |$   
 $[\_ \cup \cup]$



The following lines are examples of the Septenarius:—

Séquere | sis, erŭm | quí lū|dificās † díc̄tis | dēlī|ránti|bus  
 quí quoni(am) | erŭs quod | ímpe|rāvit † néglē|xistī | pérse|quī,  
 núnc ve|nīs eti(am) | úl̄tr(ō) in|rīsum † dóm̄inum|: quae neque | fie|rī  
 póssunt | neque fan|d(ō) úmqu(am) ac|cēpit † quísquam | prōfers, |  
 cárnu|fex. (Pl. *Am.* 585.)

$\acute{u} \cup \cup | \dot{-} \cup \cup | \acute{u} > | \cup \cup > \# \acute{u} > | \dot{-} > | \acute{u} \cup | \dot{-} \wedge$   
 $\acute{u} \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup | \dot{-} > \# \acute{u} > | \dot{-} > | \acute{u} \cup | \dot{-} \wedge$   
 $\acute{u} \cup | \acute{u} \cup \cup | \acute{u} > | \dot{-} > \# \acute{u} \cup > | \dot{-} \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup | \dot{-} \wedge$   
 $\acute{u} > | \cup \cup > | \acute{u} > | \dot{-} > \# \acute{u} > | \dot{-} > | \acute{u} \cup | \dot{-} \wedge$

2631. (1.) When there is a diaeresis after the fourth foot, the verse is *asynartetic* (2535). In Plautus hiatus in the diaeresis is not rare; but there seems to be no *certain* instance of it in Terence (see *Ph.* 528, *Ad.* 697).

2632. (2.) An anapaest is not allowed to follow a dactyl.

2633. (3.) The seventh foot is usually a trochee; rarely a tribrach or dactyl. The tribrach and dactyl are seldom found in the fourth foot.

### (B.) Later Usage.

2634. The later and stricter form of the Septenarius keeps the arses of the odd feet pure, and regularly shows a diaeresis after the fourth foot.

$\acute{u} \cup | \dot{-} \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup | \dot{-} \cup \cup \# \acute{u} \cup | \dot{-} \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup | \dot{-} \wedge$

Resolutions occur, but are far less common than in the earlier form of the verse. The strict form of the Septenarius is found in Varro, Seneca, and often in late poets (as Ausonius, Prudentius, &c.).

2635. The rhythm of the Septenarius may be illustrated by this line:—

“Comrades, leave me here a little, while as yet 'tis early morn.”  
 (Tennyson.)

### THE TROCHAIC TETRAMETER ACATALECTIC (or *Octonarius*).

2636. The TROCHAIC TETRAMETER ACATALECTIC is chiefly confined to the lyrical portions of the early comedy. It consists of four complete trochaic dipodies or eight trochaic feet. The tribrach, irrational spondee, irrational anapaest and cyclic dactyl may stand in any foot save the last. The last foot is regularly a trochee or a tribrach, though (the last syllable being *syllaba anceps*, 2533) an apparent spondee or anapaest, but not a dactyl, may arise. The principal break in the line is regularly a diaeresis after the fourth foot (which in that case must not be a dactyl). Occasionally, however, there is instead a caesura in the fourth or fifth foot. The scheme is:—

$\acute{u} \cup \cup | \dot{-} \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup \cup | \dot{-} \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup \cup | \dot{-} \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup \cup | \dot{-} \cup \cup$   
 $\acute{u} \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup \cup | [\cup \cup \cup]$   
 $\acute{u} \cup \cup | \dot{-} \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup \cup | \dot{-} \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup \cup | \dot{-} \cup \cup | \acute{u} \cup \cup |$   
 $\acute{u} \cup > | \cup \cup > | \acute{u} \cup > | \cup \cup > | \acute{u} \cup > | \cup \cup > | \acute{u} \cup > | [\cup \cup >]$



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

THE TROCHAIC DIMETER CATALECTIC (or *Ternarius*).

2644. This consists of two trochaic dipodies, the second being incomplete. It occurs in the early dramatists and in Horace. The scheme for Plautus and Terence is:—

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \underline{\text{I}} & \text{U} & | & \underline{\text{I}} & \text{U} & | & \underline{\text{I}} & \text{U} & | & \underline{\text{I}} & \wedge \\ \text{U} & \text{U} & | & \text{U} & \text{U} & | & [\text{U} & \text{U} & |] & & \\ \underline{\text{I}} & \text{U} & | & \underline{\text{I}} & \text{U} & | & & & & & \\ \text{U} & \text{U} & > & | & \text{U} & \text{U} & > & | & & & \end{array}$$

The Horatian scheme is:—

$$\underline{\text{I}} \text{U} | \underline{\text{I}} \text{U} | \underline{\text{I}} \text{U} | \underline{\text{I}} \wedge$$

Examples are:—

Aút un|d(e) auxili|úm pe|tam

(T. *Ph.* 729).

Nón e|bur ne|qu(e) aúre|um

(H. 2, 18, 1).

2645. (1.) This is sometimes called the Euripidean verse, from its use by Euripides. The tribrach in the third foot is rare, and is not found in Terence. Horace keeps all the feet pure.

2646. (2.) Plautus and Terence often use this verse between trochaic tetrameters, but sometimes employ several *Ternarii* in succession, as in Plaut. *E.* 3-6, *Cas.* 953-6, *Ps.* 211-13.

## THE TROCHAIC TRIPODY ACATALECTIC.

2647. This verse is confined to the early drama, where it is employed as a *clausula* (2536), especially with Cretics. It consists of three complete trochaic feet. The same substitutions are admitted in every foot that are allowed in the first two feet of the *Ternarius* (2644). An example is:—

Haú bonũm | teneō | sérvom

$$\underline{\text{I}} \text{U} | \text{U} \text{U} > | \underline{\text{I}} \text{U}$$

(Pl. *Most.* 721).

This verse is sometimes called the *Ithyphallic*.

## THE TROCHAIC TRIPODY CATALECTIC.

2648. This verse is employed by the early dramatists, usually either as a *clausula* (2536) or in groups of two lines each. Terence generally uses it in the former way, Plautus in the latter. The scheme of substitutions is:—

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \underline{\text{I}} & \text{U} & | & \underline{\text{I}} & \text{U} & | & \underline{\text{I}} & \wedge \\ \text{U} & \text{U} & | & \text{U} & \text{U} & | & & \\ \underline{\text{I}} & \text{U} & | & \underline{\text{I}} & \text{U} & | & & \\ \text{U} & \text{U} & > & | & \text{U} & \text{U} & > & | \end{array}$$

Example:—

Qu(i) impi|ger fu|f  
 ′ ∪ | ′ ∪ | ′ ^

(Pl. *R.* 925).

In one instance (*R.* 924 ff.) Plautus has six catalectic tripodies in succession.

### OTHER TROCHAIC VERSES.

2649. The Trochaic Monometer Acatalectic is sometimes used by Plautus as a *clausula* (2536) to Cretic tetrameters. It consists of one complete trochaic dipody, e. g. *nimis inlepta' s*, *R.* 681. *iūre in|iūstās*, *Am.* 247. Terence uses the *catalectic* monometer twice (*Eu.* 292, *Ph.* 485) at the beginning of a scene, e. g. *Dōri|ō*, *Ph.* 485. Plautus has a few other trochaic verses and combinations of verses, for which see special editions of his plays.

### LOGAOEDIC RHYTHMS.

2650. Logaoedic verse consists of dactyls and trochees combined in the same metrical series. The dactyls are "cyclic" (see 2523), occupying approximately the time of trochees, and hence the verse moves in  $\frac{3}{2}$  time. Except in the "Lesser Alcaic" verse (2663), only one dactyl may stand in a single series; and a dactyl must not occupy the last place in a line.

2651. (1.) The name "logaoedic" (Gr. *λογαοιδικός*, from *λόγος*, *speech*, *prose*, and *αοιδή*, *song*) may refer to the apparent change of rhythm (due to the mixture of dactyls and trochees), in which logaoedic verse resembles prose; but this is a disputed point.

2652. (2.) In the logaoedic verses of Horace, an irrational spondee almost always takes the place of a trochee before the first dactyl; and if an apparent choriambus (′ ∪ | ′; see 2521) is followed by another apparent choriambus in the same verse, the two are regularly separated by a caesura. These rules are not observed by Catullus.

2653. (3.) Anacrusis (2529) and syncope (2541) are very common in logaoedic verse.

2654. The following are the principal logaoedic rhythms:—

#### DIPODY.

#### THE ADONIC.

2655. This is a logaoedic dipody, with the scheme:—

′ ∪ | ′ ∪

Examples are:—

Térruit | úrbem (H. 1, 2, 4).

Rāra iu|véntus (H. 1, 2, 24).

2656. (1.) Some regard the Adonic as a syncopated catalectic tripod :

┌ ˘ | ┌ | ┌ ˘

2657. (2.) A Latin Adonic should consist of a disyllable + a trisyllable, or the reverse. This rule did not hold in Greek, where such lines occur as ὦ τὸν Ἀδωνιδί. Elision is not allowed in the Latin Adonic. Late Latin poets (like Terentianus) sometimes employ the Adonic in stichic series (2546).

## TRIPODIES.

### THE ARISTOPHANIC.

2658. This is a logaoedic tripod acatalectic, with a dactyl in the first place. The scheme is therefore:—

┌ ˘ | ┌ ˘ | ┌ ˘

There is no fixed caesura. Examples are:—

Quíd latet | út ma|rínae  
(H. 1, 8, 13).

Fúnera | nē vi|rílis  
(H. 1, 8, 15).

Some authorities write the scheme as:

┌ ˘ | ┌ ˘ | ┌ | ┌ ˘

i. e. a syncopated logaoedic tetrapody catalectic.

### THE PHERECRATEAN (or *Pherecratic*).

2659. This verse is used by Catullus (34, 61), and by Horace (as the third line of the Third Asclepiadean Strophe: see 2733). It is a logaoedic tripod, with the dactyl in the second place. The scheme is:—

[┌ ˘] |  
┌ > | ┌ ˘ | ┌ ˘  
[┌ ˘] |

The trochee and iambus are admitted in the first foot by Catullus, but not by Horace. The iambus is very rare. There is no fixed caesura. Examples are:—

Grátō, | Pýrrha, sub | ánrō  
(H. 1, 5, 3).

With initial trochee: Lúte|úmve pa|páver  
(Cat. 61, 195).

With initial iambus: Púel|laéque ca|námus  
(Cat. 34, 4).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## PENTAPODIES.

THE PHALAECEAN (or *Hendecasyllable*).

2664. This verse is a logaoedic pentapody with the dactyl in the second place. The Greek poets admitted the trochee and iambus, as well as the spondee, in the first foot, and Catullus followed their example; but in Petronius, Martial, and the *Priāpēa* the first foot is always a spondee, and in later writers nearly always. Horace does not use the Phalaecean. There is no fixed caesura, though the penthemimeral is often found. The scheme is:—

$$\begin{array}{c} [\text{—} \cup] | \\ \text{—} > | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup \\ [\cup \text{—}] | \end{array}$$

Examples are:—

Cúius | vís fie|rí li|bélle | múnus  
(Mart. 3, 2, 1).

With initial trochee: Dē di|é faci|tís me|í so|dálēs  
(Cat. 47, 6).

With initial iambus: Ágit | péssimus | ómni|úm po|éta  
(Cat. 49, 5).

Compare in English:—

“Look, I come to the test, a tiny poem  
All composed in a metre of Catullus.”

(Tennyson.)

2665. The Phalaecean is a favourite metre in epigrams. It was used by Sappho, Phalaeceus (from whom it took its name), and other Greek poets, and was introduced into Roman poetry by Laevius and Varro. It is a favourite metre with Catullus, and is found in the fragments of Cinna, Cornificius and Bibaculus, in the *Priāpēa*, in Petronius, Statius, Martial, &c. In Catullus 55, a spondee is often employed instead of the dactyl, the two kinds of feet alternating in the latter verses of the poem; but this innovation seems not to have found favour.

## THE LESSER SAPPHIC.

2666. This verse is a logaoedic pentapody acatalectic, with the dactyl in the third place. The scheme is:—

$$\text{—} \cup | [\text{—} \cup] | \text{—} \parallel \cup | \text{—} \cup | \text{—} \cup$$

The trochee in the second foot was admitted by Alcaeus and Sappho, and occurs in Catullus, but not in Horace. In Horace the caesura regularly falls after the thesis, or (less frequently) in the arsis, of the dactyl; but in Catullus, as in Sappho and Alcaeus, it has no fixed position. Examples of this verse are:—

With masculine caesura: Iám sa|tís ter|rís || nivis | átque | dírae  
(H. 1, 2, 1).

With feminine caesura: Phoébe | sílvā|rúmque || po|téns Di|ána  
(H. C. S. 1).

With trochee in second foot: Seú Sa|cās sa|gíttife|rósve | Párthōs  
(Cat. 11, 6).

### THE GREATER (OR HENDECASYLLABIC) ALCAIC.

2667. This verse is a logaoedic pentapody catalectic, with anacrusis and with the dactyl in the third foot. The scheme is:—

∞ : ‾ ∪ | ‾ > # ‾ ∪ | ‾ ∪ | ‾ ∧

There is nearly always a diaeresis after the second foot. Examples are:—

Ō|mātre | púlchrā # fília | púlchri|ór  
(H. 1, 16, 1).

Vi|dēs ut | áltā # stét nive | cándi | dúm  
(H. 1, 9, 1).

2668. Alcaeus admitted a trochee in the second foot, and allowed the anacrusis to be either long or short; but Horace admitted only the spondee in the second foot, and usually (in Bk. 4 always) employed a long anacrusis. Horace also differed from his predecessor in assigning a fixed place to the caesura, which in Alcaeus has no regular position.

### COMPOSITE LOGAOEDIC VERSES.

#### THE LESSER ASCLEPIADEAN.

2669. This is a composite verse, consisting of two series, a syncopated logaoedic tripod + a logaoedic tripod catalectic. There is regularly a diaeresis between the two series. The scheme is:—

‾ > | ‾ ∪ | ‾ # ‾ ∪ | ‾ ∪ | ‾ ∧

Examples are:—

Maécē|nās ata|vís # édite| régi|bús  
(H. 1, 1, 1).

Quís dē|síderi|ō # sít pudor | aút mo|dús  
(H. 1, 24, 1).

#### THE GREATER ASCLEPIADEAN.

2670. This is a composite verse, consisting of three series. It differs from the preceding (2669) in having a syncopated logaoedic dipody (‾ ∪ | ‾) inserted between the two tripodies. The three series are regularly separated by diaeresis. The scheme is therefore:—

‾ > | ‾ ∪ | ‾ # ‾ ∪ | ‾ # ‾ ∪ | ‾ ∪ | ‾ ∧

Examples are:—

Núllam|, Vāre, sa|crā # vîte pri|ús # séveris | árbo|rém  
Círcā | míte so|lúm # Tíburis | ét # moénia | Cāti|lí.)  
(H. 1, 18, 1-2).



## THE GREATER SAPPHIC.

2671. This is a composite verse, consisting of a syncopated logaoedic tetrapody + a syncopated logaoedic tetrapody catalectic. There is regularly a diaeresis between the two series, and a caesura after the thesis of the first dactyl. The scheme is :—

$$\underline{\text{L}} \cup | \underline{\text{L}} > | \underline{\text{L}} \parallel \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \# \underline{\text{L}} \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \cup | \underline{\text{L}} | \underline{\text{L}} \wedge$$

An example is :—

Tē de|ōs ō|rō || Syba|rín † cūr prope|rēs a|mán|dō  
(H. 1, 8, 2).

2672. (1.) The second series has the same form as the Aristophanic, if the latter be written as a tetrapody (see 2658 *ad fin.*).

2673. (2.) Horace (1, 8) is the only Latin poet who makes use of the Greater Sapphic. It seems to be an imitation of the Greek Sapphic :—

$$\underline{\text{L}} \cup | \underline{\text{L}} | \underline{\text{L}} \cup | \underline{\text{L}} | \underline{\text{L}} \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \cup | \underline{\text{L}} | \underline{\text{L}} \wedge, \text{ e. g.}$$

δεῦτέ νιν ἄβραι Χάριτες καλλίκομοί τε Μοῖσαι

but if so, the imitation is not exact.

## THE PRIAPEAN.

2674. This verse is employed by Catullus (17) and in the *Priāpēa* (86). It consists of a syncopated logaoedic tetrapody + a syncopated logaoedic tetrapody catalectic. There is regularly a diaeresis between the two parts, but hiatus and *syllaba anceps* are not allowed at the end of the first series. The scheme is :—

$$\underline{\text{L}} > | \underline{\text{L}} \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \# \underline{\text{L}} > | \underline{\text{L}} \cup | \underline{\text{L}} | \underline{\text{L}} \wedge$$

Examples are :—

Ō Co|lōnia | quaé cu|pīs † pōnte | lūdere | lōn|gō  
(Cat. 17, 1).

Hūnc lū|cūm tibi | dēdi|cō † cōnse|crōque Pri|ā|pé.  
(Cat. *Fr.*).

The first series has the same form as the Glyconic (2660), and the second series has the same form as the Pherecratean, if the latter be written as a tetrapody (see 2659 *ad fin.*).

## DACTYLO-TROCHAIC RHYTHMS.

2675. DACTYLO-TROCHAIC verse, like logaoedic, is composed of dactyls and trochees ; but whereas in logaoedic verse the dactyls and trochees occur within the same metrical series, in dactylo-trochaic they always form separate series. Hence dactylo-trochaic verses are always composite, consisting of two or more series in combination.

2676. It is uncertain whether the dactyls in dactylo-trochaic verse were cyclic (2523) or whether there was a change of time in the middle of the verse.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



2683. The anapaestic verse of the early Latin comedy is extremely irregular, and its limits are often hard to define. Spondees and apparent bacchii (reduced to anapaests by the law of iambic shortening; see 2470) are extremely common, and metrical irregularities of various kinds abound. The Latin language has so few anapaestic words that it does not lend itself readily to this rhythm. Terence wisely abstained altogether from anapaestic verse. Varro, Seneca, and Prudentius and other late writers wrote anapaests conforming more closely to Greek models.

### THE ANAPAESTIC TETRAMETER ACATALECTIC (or *Octonarius*).

2684. This consists of four anapaestic dipodies or eight complete anapaestic feet. There is regularly a diaeresis after the fourth foot, and the last thesis of the line is never resolved. Hiatus and *syllaba anceps* sometimes occur in the diaeresis, the verse being asynartetic (2535). The scheme is:—

∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ ‡ ∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ |  
 — ′ | — ′ | — ′ | — ′ ‡ — ′ | — ′ | — ′ | — ′ |  
 — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ ‡ — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ |  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ | [∪ ∪ ∪] ‡ ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ |

Examples are:—

Neque quód | dubitem | neque quód | timeam ‡ me(ō) ĩn péc |  
 tore con | ditũmst cón | silium  
 (Pl. *Ps.* 575).

Quid míhi | meliust | quid mágis | in remst ‡ qu(am) ā  
 cór|pore vī|tam sē|clũdam  
 (Pl. *R.* 220).

2685. The proceleusmatic is very rare in the fourth foot, but the spondee is very common there. Some editors divide the anapaestic octonarii into dimeters (or *quaternarii*) and write them as such.

### THE ANAPAESTIC TETRAMETER CATALECTIC (or *Septenarius*).

2686. This is like the preceding, except that the last foot is incomplete. The seventh thesis may be resolved. There is regularly a diaeresis after the fourth foot, and hiatus and *syllaba anceps* sometimes occur in the diaeresis. The scheme is:—

∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ ‡ ∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ | ∪ ∪ ′ |  
 — ′ | — ′ | — ′ | — ′ ‡ — ′ | — ′ | — ′ | — ′ |  
 — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ ‡ — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ |  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ | [∪ ∪ ∪] ‡ ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ |

Examples are:—

Em nē|m(ō) habet hō|r(um)? occí|distī. ‡ dic ſgi|tur quis ha|bet  
 né|scīs  
 (Pl. *Aul.* 720).

Hunc hómī|nem decet | aur(ō) éx|pend(ī) : huic † decēt státu|am  
statu(ī) | ex aú|rō

(Pl. B. 640).

### THE ANAPAESTIC DIMETER ACATALECTIC (or *Quaternarius*).

2687. This verse consists of two anapaestic dipodies, or four complete anapaestic feet. There is generally a diaeresis after the second foot, and the fourth thesis is not resolved. The scheme is :—

$$\begin{array}{cccc|cccc|cccc|cccc} \cup & \cup & \text{—} & | & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & \# & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & | & \cup & \cup & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \# & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \cup & \cup & | & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \# & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & | & & & \\ \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & | & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & \# & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & | \end{array}$$

Examples are :—

Quod lúbet | nōn lubet † iam cón|tinuō.  
Ita m(ē) Ámor| lass(um) ani|mī lú|dificat,  
fugat, ágit | appetīt † raptát | retinet

(Pl. *Cist.* 214).

This verse is often used to form systems, which frequently end in a paroemiac (see 2688).

### THE ANAPAESTIC DIMETER CATALECTIC (or *Paroemiac*).

2688. This verse consists of two anapaestic dipodies or four anapaestic feet, the last foot being incomplete. The third thesis is sometimes resolved. There is no fixed caesura. The scheme is :—

$$\begin{array}{cccc|cccc|cccc|c} \cup & \cup & \text{—} & | & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & | & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & | & \cup & \bar{\pi} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & & \\ \text{—} & \cup & \cup & | & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & | & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & | & & \\ \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & | & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & | & \cup & \cup & \cup & \cup & | \end{array}$$

Examples are :—

Volucér| pede cor| pore púll cher  
(Ausonius).

Nimīs tán| d(em) eg(o) ābs tē | conté|mnor.  
Quipp(e) égo | tē nī| conté|mnam,  
stratiō|ticus homo| quī clúe|ar?

(Pl. *Ps.* 916).

2689. (1.) The Paroemiac is generally used to close a system of acatalectic anapaestic dimeters; but sometimes several paroemiatics in succession form a system (as in the second example above), especially in Ausonius, Prudentius, and other late poets.

2690 (2.) Other anapaestic verses sometimes occur, especially in the early comedy, but they are rare.

## CRETIC RHYTHMS.

2691. These are rhythms of the Hemiolic class (2527), in  $\frac{3}{8}$  time. The fundamental foot is the Cretic ( $\underline{\text{—}} \cup \underline{\text{—}}$ ).

Either (but not *both*) of the two longs of a Cretic is sometimes resolved (giving the First Paeon  $\underline{\text{—}} \cup \cup \cup$  or the Fourth Paeon  $\cup \cup \cup \underline{\text{—}}$ ); but there is rarely more than one resolution in a single verse. The middle short is sometimes replaced by an irrational long (giving  $\underline{\text{—}} > \underline{\text{—}}$ , or if there is resolution,  $\cup \cup > \underline{\text{—}}$  or  $\underline{\text{—}} > \cup \cup$ ); but this never occurs in the last foot of a verse, and but rarely when the middle syllable is the penult of a spondaic word (e. g. *nōs nostrās*).

2692. (1.) The ictus on the first long of the Cretic was probably (at least in most cases) stronger than that on the second. The first long and the short form the thesis, the second long the arsis,  $\underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}}$

2693. (2.) The impetuous, swinging movement of the Cretic rhythm fits it for the expression of passionate emotion.

## THE CRETIC TETRAMETER ACATALECTIC.

2694. This verse consists of four complete Cretic feet. There is usually a diaeresis after the second foot, but sometimes there is instead a caesura after the first long of the third foot. Resolution is not admitted before the diaeresis or the end of the line. The irrational long middle syllable is admitted in the first and third feet. The scheme is:—

$$\underline{\text{—}} \cup > \cup \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \cup \underline{\text{—}} \# \underline{\text{—}} \cup > \cup \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \cup \underline{\text{—}}$$

Examples are:—

Út malīs | gaúdeant † átqu(e) ex in|cómmodīs  
(*Γ. Andr.* 627).

Déind(e) uter|qu(e) imperā|tōr || in medi|(um) éxeunt  
(*Pl. Am.* 223).

2695. This verse is common in the *cantica* of the early drama, and is often repeated to form systems. Hiatus and *syllaba anceps* sometimes occur in the diaeresis.

## THE CRETIC TETRAMETER CATALECTIC.

2696. This is similar to the preceding, except that the last foot is incomplete. The scheme is:—

$$\underline{\text{—}} \cup > \cup \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \cup \underline{\text{—}} \# \underline{\text{—}} \cup > \cup \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \cup \bar{\text{—}}$$

Examples are:—

Sí cadēs, | nōn cadēs † quín cadam | tēcum  
(*Pl. Most.* 329).

Nōv(ī) eg(o) hoc | saéculum † mōribus | quíbus sit  
(*Pl. Tri.* 283).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2702. (1.) There are seldom more than two resolutions in the same verse, and never more than three. Bacchiac tetrameters are often repeated to form systems.

2703. (2.) According to some authorities, bacchiac tetrameters catalectic sometimes occur, e. g. *Pl. Cas.* 656, 867, *Men.* 969, 971, *Most.* 313, *Poen.* 244.

### OTHER BACCHIAC VERSES.

2704. (1.) Bacchiac dimeters are occasionally found, especially as *clausulae* to bacchiac systems. An example is:—

Ad aétā|t(em) agúndam

(*Pl. Tri.* 232).

An acatalectic dimeter is not seldom compounded with a catalectic iambic tripod: e. g.

Rerín tēr| in ánnō † t(ū) hās tōn|sitá|rí?

(*Pl. B.* 1127).

2705. (2.) Bacchiac hexameters occur in a few instances, as:—

Satín par|va rēs est | volúptā|t(um) in vít(ā) at|qu(e) in aétā|t(e) agúndā  
(*Pl. Am.* 633).

2706. (3.) Hypermetrical combination of bacchii into a system appears to occur in Varro, *Sat. Men.* fr. 405 Buech.

### CHORIAMBIC RHYTHMS.

2707. In these, the fundamental foot is the choriambus ( $\underline{\quad} \cup \cup \underline{\quad}$ ). True choriambic verse is very rare in Latin poetry, though apparent choriambi of the form  $\underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad}$  or  $\underline{\quad} \cup | \underline{\quad}$  are common in logaoedic verse (2652).

Apparently, however, in Terence, *Ad.* 611-13,

Út neque quid | mé faciam| néc quid agam † certúm|sit.  
mémbra metū | débilia | súnť, animus † timō|re  
óbstipuit, | péctore cōn|sistere nīl † cōnsi|lí quit,

there are three choriambic trimeters, the first two with iambic close, the third with trochaic. In the second line there is *syllaba anceps* at the end of the second choriambus. In Plautus, *Casina* 629, *Menaechmi* 110, and perhaps *Asinaria* 133, we have a choriambic dimeter + an acatalectic trochaic dipody.

Owing to the frequent occurrence of the apparent choriambus in certain kinds of logaoedic verse, the metricians of Horace's day regarded them as really choriambic. Hence the rule mentioned in 2652, a rule unknown to Greek writers of logaoedic verse.

### IONIC RHYTHMS.

2708. In these, the fundamental foot is the Ionic, of which there are two forms, the Ionic *ā māiōre*  $\underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \cup \cup$ , so called because it begins with the greater part (i. e. the thesis) of the foot, and the Ionic *ā minōre*  $\cup \cup \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad}$ , which receives its name from the fact that it begins with the less important part of the foot (i. e. the arsis).

2709. (1.) Ionics *ā minōre* are often treated as Ionics *ā māiōre* with anacrusis,  $\cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \underline{\quad} \cup \cup$ , &c. See 2529 *ad fin.*

2710. (2.) Ionic verse shows numerous resolutions and irrational longs, especially in early Latin. The accumulation of short syllables imparts to the verse a wild and passionate character.

2711. (3.) *Anaclasis* (Gr. ἀνάκλασις, "a bending back") is an exchange of place between a short syllable and the preceding long (e. g.  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \text{—} \cup$  for  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—} \cup \cup$  or  $\cup \cup \overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup$  |  $\text{—} \cup \overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—}$  for  $\cup \cup \overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—}$  |  $\cup \cup \overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—}$ ), and is very frequent in Ionic verse.

### THE IONIC $\bar{a}$ $m\bar{a}i\bar{o}r\bar{e}$ TETRAMETER CATALECTIC (or *Sotadean*).

2712. This verse consists of four Ionic  $\bar{a}$   $m\bar{a}i\bar{o}r\bar{e}$  feet, the last foot being incomplete. In the early Latin poets, beginning with Ennius, the Sotadean is treated with much freedom: resolution, contraction (2518), anaclasis (2711), and irrational longs are freely admitted. Examples are:—

Nám quam varia | sînt genera po|ēmatōrum, | Baébi,  
quámque longē | dístinct(a) ali|(a) áb aliīs sīs, | nōsce  
(Accius, *Didasc.* p. 305 M.).

$\overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—} \cup \cup$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \text{—} >$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—} \bar{\Lambda}$   
 $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \text{—} >$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—} \cup \cup$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \cup \text{—} >$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—} \bar{\Lambda}$

Compare in Greek:—

σειων μελί|ην Πηλαδα | δεξιὸν κατ' | ὤμον (Sotades).

2713. Later poets (Petronius, Martial, Terentianus Maurus) are more strict in their usage, admitting (with very few exceptions) only the forms  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \text{—} \cup \cup$ ,  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \cup \cup \cup$ ,  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \text{—} \cup$  besides the normal  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—} \cup \cup$ . Hence their scheme is:—

$\overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—} \cup \cup$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—} \cup \cup$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—} \cup \cup$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \text{—} \bar{\Lambda}$   
 $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \text{—} \cup \cup$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \text{—} \cup \cup$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \text{—} \cup \cup$  |  
 $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \cup \cup \cup$  |  
 $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \text{—} \cup$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \text{—} \cup$  |  $\overset{/}{\text{—}} \cup \text{—} \cup$  |

Examples are:—

Móllēs, vete | rēs Dēlia|cī manū re|cīsī  
péde tendite, | cúrs(um) addite, | cónvolāte | plántā  
(Petron. 23).

Laevius and Varro employ Ionic  $\bar{a}$   $m\bar{a}i\bar{o}r\bar{e}$  systems of considerable length.

### THE IONIC $\bar{a}$ $m\bar{i}n\bar{o}r\bar{e}$ TETRAMETER CATALECTIC (or *Galliambic*.)

2714. This consists of four Ionic  $\bar{a}$   $m\bar{i}n\bar{o}r\bar{e}$  feet, the last one incomplete. *Anaclasis*, resolution, and contraction are extremely common, and the multiplication of short syllables gives the verse a peculiarly wild and frenzied movement. Catullus very rarely admits Ionics that are not anaclastic (*never* in the first half of the verse, except the doubtful cases 63, 18; 54; 75); but Varro is less strict in this regard. The penultimate long is nearly always resolved. There is rarely more than one resolution in the same half-verse. A diaeresis regularly occurs after the second foot. The scheme is:—







**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

2727. (IX.) The THIRD ARCHILOCHIAN STROPHE, an iambic trimeter (2592) followed by an elegiambus (2680):—

$\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \cup \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \parallel \bar{\cup} | \cup \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \cup \bar{\cup}$   
 $\bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} \# \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} : \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \Lambda$   
*Epode* II.

Compare Archilochus fr. 85, Bergk (elegiambus; the trimeter is lost):—  
*ἀλλά μ' ὀ λυσιμελής, ὦ 'ταῖρε, δάμναται πόθος.*

2728. (X.) The FOURTH ARCHILOCHIAN STROPHE, a Greater Archilochian (2677) followed by an iambic trimeter catalectic (2601):—

$\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \parallel \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \cup \cup \# \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup$   
 $\bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup} | \bar{\cup} \parallel \bar{\cup} | \cup \bar{\cup} | \cup \bar{\cup} \bar{\cup}$   
C. I, 4.

So Archilochus, e. g.:—

*τοῖος γὰρ φιλότῆτος ἔρωσ ὑπὸ καρδίην ἐλυσθεῖς*  
*πολλὴν κατ' ἀχλὺν ὀμμάτων ἔχευεν* (Fr. 103, Bergk).

See, however, 2677 *ad fin.*

2729. (XI.) The LESSER ASCLEPIADEAN METRE, a series of Lesser Asclepiadeans (2669) employed stichically (2546):—

$\bar{\cup} > | \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \# \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \Lambda$  C. I, I; 3, 30; 4, 8.

So Alcaeus, e. g.:—

*ἦλθες ἐκ περάτων γᾶς ἐλεφαντίαν*  
*λάβαν τῷ ξίφεος χρυσοδέταν ἔχων* (Fr. 33, Bergk).

2730. (XII.) The GREATER ASCLEPIADEAN METRE, a series of Greater Asclepiadeans (2670) employed stichically (2546):—

$\bar{\cup} > | \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \# \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \# \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \Lambda$   
C. I, II, 18; 4, 10.

So Alcaeus, e. g.:—

*μηδὲν ἄλλο φυτεύσης πρότερον δένδριον ἀμπέλω*  
(Fr. 44, Bergk).

Many editors hold (with Meineke) that the Horatian odes were written in tetra-  
 stichs (2545), and hence that this metre and the preceding were employed by Horace  
 in strophes of four lines each. Catullus (30) seems to use the Greater Asclepiadean  
 by distichs, and so apparently Sappho (fr. 69, Bergk). But as to these points there is  
 still much dispute.

2731. (XIII.) The FIRST ASCLEPIADEAN STROPHE, a Glyconic (2660)  
 followed by a Lesser Asclepiadean (2669):—

$\bar{\cup} > | \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \Lambda$   
 $\bar{\cup} > | \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \# \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \cup | \bar{\cup} \Lambda$   
C. I, 3, 13, 19, 36; 3, 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; 4, 1, 3.

Cf. Alcaeus: —

νῦν δ' [αὐτ'] οὔτος ἐπικρέτει  
κινήσῃσι τὸν ἀπ' ἴρας πύματον λίθον. (Fr. 82, Bergk).

In one instance, C. 4, 1, 35, elision occurs at the end of the Glyconic.

2732. (XIV.) The SECOND ASCLEPIADEAN STROPHE, three Lesser Asclepiadeans (2669) followed by a Glyconic (2660): —

⊥ > | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ # ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ Λ  
⊥ > | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ # ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ Λ  
⊥ > | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ # ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ Λ  
⊥ > | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ Λ

C. 1, 6, 15, 24, 33; 2, 12; 3, 10, 16; 4, 5, 12.

2733. (XV.) The THIRD ASCLEPIADEAN STROPHE, two Lesser Asclepiadeans (2669), a Pherecratean (2659) and a Glyconic (2660): —

⊥ > | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ # ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ Λ  
⊥ > | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ # ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ Λ  
⊥ > | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪  
⊥ > | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ Λ

C. 1, 5, 14, 21, 23; 3, 7, 13; 4, 13.

Compare Alcaeus (Pherecratean followed by Glyconic; apparently two Lesser Asclepiadeans preceded, but they are lost): —

λάταγες ποτέονται  
κυλιχνᾶν ἀπο Τηΐαν. (Fr. 43, Bergk).

2734. (XVI.) The GREATER SAPPHIC STROPHE, an Aristophanic (2658) followed by a Greater Sapphic (2671): —

⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪  
⊥ ∪ | ⊥ > | ⊥ || ∪ | ⊥ # ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ | ⊥ Λ

C. 1, 8.

2735. (XVII.) The SAPPHIC STROPHE, three Lesser Sapphics (2666) and an Adonic (2655): —

⊥ ∪ | ⊥ > | ⊥ || ∪ | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪  
⊥ ∪ | ⊥ > | ⊥ || ∪ | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪  
⊥ ∪ | ⊥ > | ⊥ || ∪ | ⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪  
⊥ ∪ | ⊥ ∪

C. 1, 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; 2, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; 3, 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; 4, 2, 6, 11; *Carmen Saeculare*. Also in Catullus 11 and 51.

So Sappho: —

φαίνεται μοι κῆνος ἴσος θεοῖσιν  
ἔμμεν ὤνερ ὅστις ἐναντίος τοι  
ἰζάνει καὶ πλασίον ἄδν φωνεύ-  
σας ὑπακούει.

(Fr. 2, Bergk).

Sappho apparently treated the third Sapphic and the Adonic as continuous; but Horace and Catullus allow *syllaba anceps* (and Horace in four cases, 1, 2, 47; 1, 12, 7, and 31; 1, 22, 15, hiatus) at the end of the third line. On the other hand, both Catullus and Horace sometimes join the third line to the fourth (by dividing a word, Hor. 1, 2, 19; 25, 11; 2, 16, 7; Cat. 11, 11; by elision Hor. 4, 2, 23; *Car. Saes.* 47; Cat. 11, 19), and in a few instances the second to the third (Hor. 2, 2, 18; 16, 34; 4, 2, 22; Cat. 11, 22, all by elision) by *synapheia* (see 2510). In Horace, the last foot of the third line is nearly always an irrational spondee.

2736 (XVIII.) The ALCAIC STROPHE, two Greater Alcaics (2667), a nine-syllabled Alcaic (2642) and a Lesser Alcaic (2663):—

$$\begin{array}{l} \zeta : \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} > \# \underline{\text{—}} \omega | \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \wedge \\ \zeta : \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} > \# \underline{\text{—}} \omega | \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \wedge \\ \zeta : \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} > | \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \cup \\ \underline{\text{—}} \omega | \underline{\text{—}} \omega | \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \cup \end{array}$$

C. 1, 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; 2, 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; 3, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; 4, 4, 9, 14, 15.

So Alcaeus:—

Ἄσυνέτημι τῶν ἀνέμων στάσιν·  
τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔνθεν κῦμα κυλίνδεται,  
τὸ δ' ἔνθεν· ἄμμες δ' ἂν τὸ μέσσον  
ναῖ φορήμεθα σὺν μελαίνα.

(Fr. 18, Bergk).

In the Greek poets the last two lines are sometimes joined by *synapheia* (2510), and Horace has elision at the end of the third verse in 2, 3, 27; 3, 29, 35. But he frequently admits hiatus in that place.

2737. (XIX.) The IONIC SYSTEM, a system of ten pure Ionics *ā minōre* (see 2717):—

$$\begin{array}{l} \cup \cup \underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}} | \cup \cup \underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}} | \cup \cup \underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}} | \cup \cup \underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}} \\ \cup \cup \underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}} | \cup \cup \underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}} | \cup \cup \underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}} | \cup \cup \underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}} \\ \cup \cup \underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}} | \cup \cup \underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}} \end{array}$$

C. 3, 12.

### Lyric Strophes of Catullus.

2738. Catullus in 34 uses a strophe consisting of three Glyconics (2660) followed by a Pherecratean (2659):—

$$\begin{array}{l} [\underline{\text{—}} \cup] \\ \underline{\text{—}} > | \underline{\text{—}} \omega | \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \wedge \\ [\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}] \\ [\underline{\text{—}} \cup] \\ \underline{\text{—}} > | \underline{\text{—}} \omega | \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \wedge \\ [\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}] \\ [\underline{\text{—}} \cup] \\ \underline{\text{—}} > | \underline{\text{—}} \omega | \underline{\text{—}} \cup | \underline{\text{—}} \wedge \\ [\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}] \\ [\underline{\text{—}} \cup] \\ \underline{\text{—}} > | \underline{\text{—}} \omega | \underline{\text{—}} \cup \\ [\underline{\text{—}} \underline{\text{—}}] \end{array}$$

In 61 he employs a strophe consisting of *four* Glyconics followed by a Pherecratean.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## ABBREVIATIONS USED IN CITING THE AUTHORS.

2740. In Part First, in which authors are occasionally cited, but without direct reference to their works, the usual abbreviations are employed: as, Plaut., Ter., Cic., Verg., Hor., &c., &c.

2741. In Part Second, the principles adopted are as follows:

2742. (1.) A reference consisting of figures alone (as, 2, 2, 3), denotes book, chapter, and section of Caesar *de Bello Gallica*.

2743. (2.) A reference to a work (in italics), without a preceding abbreviation for the author's name (as, *TD.* 1, 2; *Mil.* 3), denotes the book and section, or the section only, of a work by Cicero. The abbreviations used to denote his works are given in the list below (2745).

2744. (3.) A reference made to Vergil (*V.*), followed by figures alone, is a reference to the *Aeneid*: as, *V.* 1, 20. Similarly, *H.* stands alone for the *Odes* of Horace; *O.* alone for the *Metamorphoses* of Ovid; and *Ta.* alone for the *Annals* of Tacitus.

2745. (4.) Roman letters are used in the abbreviations of the names of authors, *italics* in the abbreviations of the names of their works, as in the following List:—

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

Abbreviations.	Authors and Works.	Abbreviations.	Authors and Works.
Caes.	Caesar.	<i>Fin.</i>	<i>de Finibus.</i>
<i>C.</i>	<i>dē Bellō Cīvīlī.</i>	<i>Fl.</i> or <i>Flacc.</i>	<i>prō Flaccō.</i> [sīs.]
See 2742.	<i>de Bellō Gallicō.</i>	<i>HR.</i>	<i>dē Haruspicum Respō-</i>
Cat.	Catullus.	<i>IP.</i>	<i>dē Imperiō Pompēi.</i>
See 2743.	Cicero.	<i>Inv.</i>	<i>dē Inventiōne.</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>Acadēmica.</i>	<i>L.</i>	<i>Laelius.</i>
<i>ad Br.</i>	<i>ad Brūtum Epistulae.</i>	<i>LAgr.</i>	<i>dē lēge Agrāriā.</i>
<i>Agr.</i>	<i>dē lēge Agrāriā.</i>	<i>Leg.</i>	<i>dē Lēgibus.</i>
<i>Arch.</i>	<i>prō Archiā.</i>	<i>Lig.</i>	<i>prō Ligāriō.</i>
<i>Att.</i>	<i>ad Atticum Epistulae.</i>	<i>Marc.</i>	<i>prō Marcellō.</i>
<i>Balb.</i>	<i>prō Balbō.</i>	<i>Mil.</i>	<i>prō Milōne.</i>
<i>Br.</i>	<i>Brūtus.</i>	<i>Mur.</i>	<i>prō Mūrēnā.</i>
<i>C.</i>	<i>in Catilinam.</i>	<i>O.</i>	<i>Orātor.</i>
<i>Caec.</i>	<i>prō Caecinā.</i>	<i>Off.</i>	<i>dē Officiis.</i> [tōrum.]
<i>Caecil.</i>	<i>Divinātiō in Caecilium.</i>	<i>OG.</i>	<i>de Optimō Genere Orā</i>
<i>Cael.</i>	<i>prō Caeliō.</i>	<i>OP.</i>	<i>de Orātōriā Partitiōne.</i>
<i>CM.</i>	<i>Catō Maior.</i>	<i>Par.</i>	<i>Paradoxa.</i> [bus.]
<i>Clu.</i>	<i>prō Cluentiō.</i>	<i>PC.</i>	<i>de Prōvinciis Cōsulāri-</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>prō Dēiotarō.</i>	<i>Ph.</i>	<i>Philippicac.</i>
<i>Div.</i>	<i>dē Divinātiōne.</i>	<i>Pis.</i>	<i>in Pisonem.</i>
<i>DN.</i>	<i>dē Deōrum Nātūrā.</i>	<i>Pl.</i> or <i>Planc.</i>	<i>prō Planciō.</i> [Epistulae.]
<i>DO.</i>	<i>dē Orātōre.</i>	<i>Q.</i> or <i>Quint</i>	<i>ad Quīntum Frātre</i>
<i>Fam.</i>	<i>ad Familiārēs Epistulae.</i>	<i>QFr.</i>	<i>prō Rōsciō Amerinō.</i>
<i>Fat.</i>	<i>dē Fātō.</i>	<i>RA.</i>	

<i>RC.</i>	<i>prō Rōsciō Cōmoedō.</i>	<i>Most.</i>	<i>Mostellāria.</i>
<i>RP.</i>	<i>dē Rē Pūblicā. [nis reō.</i>	<i>Per.</i>	<i>Persa.</i>
<i>Rab.</i>	<i>prō Rabiriō perduelliō-</i>	<i>Poen.</i>	<i>Poenulus.</i>
<i>RabP.</i>	<i>prō Rabiriō Posthumō.</i>	<i>Ps.</i>	<i>Pseudolus.</i>
<i>Scaur.</i>	<i>prō Scaurō.</i>	<i>R.</i>	<i>Rudēns.</i>
<i>Sest.</i>	<i>prō Sēstiō.</i>	<i>St.</i>	<i>Stichus.</i>
<i>Sull.</i>	<i>prō Sūllā.</i>	<i>Tri.</i>	<i>Trinummus.</i>
<i>T. or Top.</i>	<i>Topica. [nēs.</i>	<i>Tru.</i>	<i>Truculentus.</i>
<i>TD.</i>	<i>Tusculānae Disputātiō-</i>	<i>Vid.</i>	<i>Vīdulāria.</i>
<i>Tim.</i>	<i>Timaeus.</i>	<i>Plin. Ep.</i>	<i>Pliny's Epistulae.</i>
<i>Tul.</i>	<i>prō Tulliō.</i>	<i>Plin. NH.</i>	<i>Pliny's Nātūrālis His-</i>
<i>V. a. pr.</i>	<i>in Verrem āctiō I.</i>	<i>Prop.</i>	<i>Propertius. [toriae.</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>in Verrem āctiō II.</i>	<i>Publil. Syr.</i>	<i>Publilius Syrus.</i>
<i>Corn., Cornif.</i>	<i>Cornificius.</i>	<i>Quint. or</i>	<i>Quintilian.</i>
<i>E.</i>	<i>Ennius.</i>	<i>Quintil. }</i>	<i>Sallust.</i>
<i>Fest.</i>	<i>Festus.</i>	<i>S.</i>	<i>Catilīna. [Lepidī.</i>
<i>Gell.</i>	<i>Gellius.</i>	<i>C.</i>	<i>Fragmenta Orātiōnis</i>
<i>H.</i>	<i>Horace.</i>	<i>Fr. Lep.</i>	<i>Fragmenta Orātiōnis</i>
<i>AP.</i>	<i>Ars Poetica.</i>	<i>Fr. Phil.</i>	<i>Iugurtha. [Philippī.</i>
<i>See 2744.</i>	<i>Carmina.</i>	<i>I.</i>	<i>Seneca.</i>
<i>E.</i>	<i>Epistulae.</i>	<i>Sen.</i>	<i>dē Beneficiis.</i>
<i>Epod.</i>	<i>Epōdoi.</i>	<i>Ben.</i>	<i>Epistulae.</i>
<i>S.</i>	<i>Sermōnēs.</i>	<i>Ep.</i>	<i>Statius.</i>
<i>J.</i>	<i>Juvenal.</i>	<i>St.</i>	<i>Thēbais.</i>
<i>L.</i>	<i>Livy.</i>	<i>Th.</i>	<i>Suetonius.</i>
<i>Lucil.</i>	<i>Lucilius.</i>	<i>Suet.</i>	<i>Augustus.</i>
<i>Lucr.</i>	<i>Lucretius.</i>	<i>Aug.</i>	<i>Caligula.</i>
<i>Macrob.</i>	<i>Macrobius.</i>	<i>Cal.</i>	<i>Claudius.</i>
<i>Sat.</i>	<i>Sāturnālia.</i>	<i>Cl.</i>	<i>Galba.</i>
<i>Mart.</i>	<i>Martial.</i>	<i>Galb.</i>	<i>Iūlius.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>Nepos.</i>	<i>Iul.</i>	<i>Tiberius.</i>
<i>O.</i>	<i>Ovid.</i>	<i>Tib.</i>	<i>Terence.</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>Amōrēs.</i>	<i>T.</i>	<i>Adelphoe.</i>
<i>AA.</i>	<i>Ars Amātōria.</i>	<i>Ad.</i>	<i>Andria.</i>
<i>F.</i>	<i>Fāstī.</i>	<i>Andr.</i>	<i>Eunūchus.</i>
<i>See 2744.</i>	<i>Metamorphōsēs.</i>	<i>Eu.</i>	<i>Hecyra.</i>
<i>Tr.</i>	<i>Trīstia.</i>	<i>Hec.</i>	<i>Hauton Timōrūmenos.</i>
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Plautus.</i>	<i>Hau.</i>	<i>Phormiō.</i>
<i>Am.</i>	<i>Amphitruō.</i>	<i>Ph.</i>	<i>Tacitus.</i>
<i>As.</i>	<i>Asināria.</i>	<i>Ta.</i>	<i>Annālēs.</i>
<i>Aul.</i>	<i>Aululāria.</i>	<i>See 2744.</i>	<i>Agricola.</i>
<i>B.</i>	<i>Bacchidēs.</i>	<i>A. or Agr.</i>	<i>Dialogus.</i>
<i>Cap.</i>	<i>Captivī.</i>	<i>D.</i>	<i>Germānia.</i>
<i>Cas.</i>	<i>Casina.</i>	<i>G.</i>	<i>Historiae.</i>
<i>Cist.</i>	<i>Cistellāria.</i>	<i>H.</i>	<i>Tibullus.</i>
<i>Cur. or Cur.</i>	<i>Curculiō.</i>	<i>Tib.</i>	<i>Vergil.</i>
<i>E.</i>	<i>Epidicus.</i>	<i>V.</i>	<i>Aenēis.</i>
<i>Men.</i>	<i>Menaechmī.</i>	<i>See 2744.</i>	<i>Eclogae.</i>
<i>Mer.</i>	<i>Mercātor.</i>	<i>E.</i>	<i>Geōrgica.</i>
<i>MG.</i>	<i>Miles Glōriōsus.</i>	<i>G.</i>	







**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

# Index of Subjects.

## **Ablative case — continued.**

1399; of accompaniment, 1356, 1357; with *iunctus*, *coniunctus*, 1357; of manner, 1358-1361; absolute, 1362-1374, see also 1533, 1900, 2110, 2121; of quality, 1375; of the route taken, 1376; of instrument or means, 1377-1384, 1476, 1477; with *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *utor*, *vescor*, *usus est*, *opus est*, 1379-1384; of specification, 1385; with verbs of fulness, 1386; with adjs. of fulness, 1387; of measure, exchange, price, 1388-1392; with *dignus*, *indignus*, &c., 1392; of amount of difference, 1393-1399, 1153, 1154, 1459; of time before or after which, 1394, 1154; with *absum* and *disto*, 1153; of *intervallum* and *spatium* in designations of distance, 1399; of persons, instead of abl. with *ab*, 1477.

Combined with other abls. in same sentence, 1400; with *in* and *sub* after verbs of rest, 1423; with *in* after verbs of motion, 1424; of gerundive construction and gerund, 2265-2268; supine in *-ū* as, 235, 2269, 2277.

## **Abounding,**

verbs of, with gen., 1293; with abl., 1386; adjs. of, with gen., 1263, 1264; with abl., 1387.

## **Abridgement,**

of sentences, 1057, 2111.

## **Abstaining,**

verbs of, with gen., 1294; with abl., 1302-1306, 1294; with *quin*, 1986.

## **Abstract,**

substs., defined, 7; plur. of, 416, 1109; subst. suffixes denoting quality, 246-264; adj. suffixes denoting quality, 281-297; suffixes denoting action, 212-237, 249, 285; abstract in rel. sentence instead of in main sentence, 1800.

## **Acatalectic verse,**

defined, 2557.

## **Accent,**

general rules of, 84-91; in gen. and voc. of *-o-* decl., 87; on final syllable, 88; marks of, 29, 3; 30; 85; of proclitics and enclitics, 92-94; of preps., 92; of rel. and indef. prons., 92; of compounds of *facio*, 394; in verse, 2548.

## **Accentual,**

verse, 2548; verse, in *carmina*, 2549; theory of the Saturnian, 2553.

## **Accompaniment,**

abl. of, 1356, 1357.

## **Accomplishing,**

verbs of, with subjv., 1579, 1712; with purpose clause, 1951; with result clause, 1955, 1965; with acc. and infin., 2196.

## **Accusative case,**

defined, 419; sing., of neut. nouns, how formed, 423; plur., of neut. nouns, how formed, 423; sing. and plur., of gender nouns, how formed, 424; lacking, see **Defective**; ending in *d*, 149.

*-ā-* stems, in *-ām*, 436; inscriptional forms, 443; Greek nouns, 444, 445.

*-o-* stems, in *-om* and *-um*, 452; in *-ā-*, 130, 2; 461; inscriptional forms, 465; Greek nouns, 466.

Consonant stems, in *-is*, 505, 507, 622; inscriptional forms, 507; Greek nouns, 508-512.

*-i-* stems, in *-im*, *-em*, 547-551, 517-525; inscriptional forms, 564; Greek nouns, 565.

*-u-* stems, inscriptional forms, 593.

Adverbs from, 699-702, 549, 1156.

Pronouns, peculiar and inscriptional forms, of *ego*, *tū*, *suī*, 648, 650, 651; of *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, 653-655; of *hic*, 663-665; of *ille*, *iste*, 667; of *illic*, *istic*, 670; of *is*, 673; of *idem*, 677; of *ipse*, 680.

Uses of, 1124-1174; general, 1124-1131.

Of the object, 1132-1150; with compounds of *ad*, *circum*, *ex*, *in*, *ob*, *per*, *prae*, *praeter*, *trāns*, 1137; double, with verbs compounded with preps., 1138, 1198; with verbs of feeling, commonly intrans., 1139; emphasizing or defining, 1140-1146, 1173, 1475; of kindred derivation with verb, 1140, 1173; of kindred meaning with verb, 1141; neut., of adj., with verb, 1142; with verbs of smelling and tasting, 1143; neut., of pron., with verbal expression, 1144, 1840, 1851; of appellative, used adverbially, 1145; attached to subst., 1129, 1146; of part concerned, 1147; of thing put on or off, 1148; of exclamation, 1149, 1150, 2112; with verb not expressed, 1150.

Of space and time, 1151-1156, 1475; with *abhinc*, 1154; with ordinals, 1155; expressing 'time at which,' 1156; of aim of motion, 1157-1166; of end of motion with *in* and *sub*, 1423; with verbs of rest, 1424; with names of towns, islands, peninsulas, 1157-1160;

# Index of Subjects.

## Accusative case — *continued.*

with names of countries, 1161; with appellatives, 1159, 1161; *domum, rūs, forās*, 1162-1164; *exsequiās, infitiās, malam crucem, malam rem*, 1165.

Two accusatives combined, 1167-1174; of obj. and pred., 1167, 1168; with verbs of teaching, hiding, demanding, questioning, 1169-1171; with verbs of wishing, reminding, inducing, accusing, 1172; defining acc. and acc. of person, 1173; acc. of extent or duration or aim of motion and acc. of object, 1174.

With verbs otherwise taking dat., 1184, 1185; with compounds of verbs of intrans. use, 1191; combined with dat. or abl., 1199, 1303; with *propior, proximus, prope*, &c., 1201; with *nōmen dō*, &c., 1214; pred., instead of dat., 1221, 1224; with prep., instead of objective gen., 1261; with verbs of remembering and forgetting, 1288; with verbs of reminding, 1291; with *per*, to express instrument, 1378; with *abūtor, fungor, fruor, perfruor, potior*, 1380; with *opus est*, 1383; with *ūsus est*, 1384; with *post* and *ante* in expressions of time, 1394-1397; of extent, with verbs of surpassing, 1398; with comparatives, 1398; with preps., see **Prepositions**.

With infin., 1134, 2172-2203, 2312, 2313, 2321, 2330-2334; infin. as subst. acc., 2204-2206; acc. subj. of infin. omitted, 2183; pred. noun referring to unexpressed subj. of infin. in, 2213; use of reflexive pron. in construction of acc. with infin., 2338-2340; obj. of gerundive, 2247; acc. of gerundive and gerund, use of, 2250-2253, 2243; obj. of gerund, 2242, 2255, 2259, 2265; supine in *-um* as, 235, 1166, 2269; following supine in *-um*, 2272.

## Accusing,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1172; with gen., 1280-1282; with abl., 1280-1282; with *quod*, 1852; with *cūr*, 1852; with acc. and infin., 2185.

## Acquitting,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1172; with gen., 1280-1282; with abl., 1280-1282.

## Action,

suffixes denoting, 212-237, 249, 285; words denoting, range of meaning of, 213.

## Action — *continued.*

Conceivable, subjv. of, in simple sentence, 1554-; 62; in subordinate sentence, 1731; in rel. characteristic or result sentences, 1818; in *quam* sentences, 1888; in *quamquam* sentences, 1901; in sentences of result with *ut*, 1947; in sentences of purpose with *ut*, 1962; in sentences with *quandō*, 2010; tense of, in subordinate sentence, 1753.

Congruent and coincident, 1733; coincident, introduced by *quod, quia*, 1850; introduced by *quī*, 1826; introduced by *cum*, 1874.

Repeated, subjv. of, 1730; non-occurrent, tense of, in subordinate sentence, 1753; defined, 2024; treated, 2091-2108, see **Conditional**; pres., &c., see **Present**, &c.; continued, see **Continued**.

## Active voice,

defined, 723, 1469; *pereō, vēneō, fiō*, meaning of, 1471; of *coepī* and *dēsino*, 1483; perf. partic. with force of, 907, 1485; deponents having, 1488, 1489; deponents having pres. system in, 1488; changed to pass., 1472-1480.

## Adjectives,

defined, 8; iambic shortening of the endings of, 129, 130; used substantively, with *-e, -ī* in abl. sing., 558, 561, 631; pres. partic. used as, with *-ī* in abl. sing., 560, 633; formation of, 180-203; roots and stems, 183-198; without formative suffix, 195, 198, 199; with formative suffix, 195-198, 200-203.

Suffixes of, 280-360; primitive, with act. meaning, 281-290, 293, 294, 296; primitive, with pass. meaning, 291-297, 282, 283, 305; denominative, 298-360, 287; of material or resemblance, 299-301; of appurtenance, 302-330; of supply, 331-338; diminutive, 339, 340; of the compar., 342-348; of the superl., 342-345, 349-352; comparison of, see **Comparison**.

Compound, formation and meaning of, 379-390, see **Composition**; inflection of, 398-643, see **Gender, Number, Case, Declension**; of 'one,' 'two,' 'three' endings, 611.

Agreement of, 1082-1098; used substantively, 1099-1104, 1106, 1093, 1203, 1250; with acc. appended, 1130; neut. acc. of, denoting manner, 1142; pred., with verbs of making, choosing, naming, &c., 1167; with dat., 1183, 1200-1204;

# Index of Subjects.

## Adjectives — *continued.*

with acc., 1201; with acc. and prep., 1201; with gen., 1202-1204, 1238, 1245, 1263-1270; with abl., 1202, 1306; with loc., 1339; instead of gen., 1233, 1262; compar., with abl. or with *quam*, 1320-1330; prepositional expressions equivalent to, 1428; two adjs. compared, 1457; explanatory, put in rel. sentence, 1810; rel. sentence coordinated with, 1820; *quamquam* with, 1900; *quamvis* with, 1903; infin. with, 2166; gerundive used as, 2248, 2249; with acc. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2252; with dat. of gerundive construction, 2254; with gen. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2258; with supine in *-ū*, 2274; partic. as, 2283, 2284; adj. relatives, see **Relative**; pred., see **Predicate**; attributive, see **Attributive**; numeral, see **Numeral adjectives**.

## Adjunct,

adverbial, defined, 1053.

## Admiring,

verbs of, with gen., 1286.

## Adonic,

the, 2655-2657.

## Advantage,

dat. of, 1178, 1205-1210.

## Adverbial,

adjunct, defined, 1053; acc., 1140-1146; ablatives, *iūre*, *ratiōne*, &c., 1358.

## Adverbs,

defined, 10, 696; diminutives of, 341; comparison of, 361-364; compounded with nouns or noun stems, 382, 383, 385; compounded with verbs, 396; in *-im*, 549, 700, 710; origin of, 696-710, 712; from acc., 699-702, 549, 1156; from abl., 703-707; from loc., 708, 709, 1340; from prons., 706, 710; from adjs., 701, 702, 704, 705; from partic., 704, 1372; denoting route by which, 707, 1376; of manner, 700, 704, 710; of place at which, 708, 709; of place to which, 710; of place from which, 710; sentences as, 712; correlative, 711, 1831; adjs. used with force of, 1142-1146.

With gen., 1242, 1248, 1253, 1254; acc. of appellative used as, 1145; compar., followed by abl. or *quam*, 1327-1330; development into preps., 696, 1402-1404; preps. with force of, 1407, 1408, 1432; words used as preps. and advs., 1412-1416, 1421; prepositional expressions

## Adverbs — *continued.*

equivalent to, 1428; function of, 1438; with meaning of adj., 1439; with partic. used as substs., 1440; with substs., 1441; used in place of substs., 1442; use of neg. advs., 1443-1453; neg. advs., two in one sentence, 1452, 1453; two advs., compared, 1457; used as connectives, 1687-1692, 2133-2159; postpositive, 1688; subordinate sentences as, 1715; *quō*, *unde*, &c., in place of rel. pron. with prep., 1793; indet. rel., introducing indic., 1814; numeral, 2404, 2405; numeral, forms in *-iēns*, *-iēs*, 2414.

## Adversative,

words, use of, 1676-1686, 2131, 2150-2153.

## Advising,

verbs of, case with, 1181-1185; with purpose clause, 1950.

## Affirmative,

expressed by two negatives, 1452; answer, expected with *-ne*, *-n*, 1504; answer, expected with *nōne*, 1506; answer, expected with *num*, 1507; answer, how expressed, 1511, 1512; meaning of *haud sciō an*, &c., 1782; coordination, 2159; sentence, *aliquis in*, 2390; sentence, *quīvis*, *quīlibet*, *utervis*, *uterlibet in*, 2401.

## Agent,

suffixes denoting, 204-211; of action, see **Doer**.

## Agreement,

of subst., 1077-1081; of mobile substs., 1078; explaining two or more substs., 1079; collective or distributive, explaining plur., 1080; in apposition with thought or clause, 1081.

Of adjective, 1082-1098; with persons or things implied in subst., 1083; attributive, with one of several substs., 1084; attributive, sing. with plur. subst., 1085; with combined adj. and subst., 1086; pred., with substs. denoting persons, 1088; with substs. denoting things, 1089; with substs. denoting persons and things, 1090; with nearest subst., 1091; *absente nōbis*, 1092; neut. adj. used as subst. in pred., 1093.

Of verb, 1062-1076, 1080, 1807; in plur. with several sing. subjs., 1064, 1065; in sing. with several sing. subjs., 1066, 1067; with mixed subjs., sing. and



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

# Index of Subjects.

- Asking,**  
verbs of, with two accusatives, 1169-1171; with acc. and prepositional phrase, 1170; with indirect question, 1774; with gerundive construction, 2250.
- Asseverations,**  
pres. subjv. in, 1542; fut. in, 1622; *ita . . . ut* in, 1542, 1622, 1937; expressed by *nam*, 2155.
- Assimilation,**  
of vowels, 144; of consonants, 163-166; subjv. of, 1728; subjv. of, sequence of tenses in, 1770-1772.
- Assumption,**  
expressed by subjv. of desire, 1553; expressed by fut., 1620.
- Asynartetic verses,** 2535.
- Asyndetic,**  
coordination, defined, 1637; in simple sentences, 1638-1642; between sentences or periods, 2123-2127.
- Asyndeton,**  
enumerative, 2126; of summary, 2127; see **Asyndetic**.
- Atonic syllable,** 102.
- Attraction,**  
of verb, subst., adj., pron., partic., see **Agreement**.
- Agreement,**  
subjv. of, 1728; sequence of tenses in, 1770-1772; in *cum* sentences, 1859; in *quoniam* sentences, 1882-1884; in *quam* sentences, 1888; in *quamquam* sentences, 1901; in sentences with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, &c., 1924; with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdiū*, 1994.
- Attribute,**  
defined, 1039; kinds of, 1040-1043; attached to proper name, 1044; with loc., 1332, 1333; with *domum*, *domōs*, 1164.
- Attributive,**  
subst., agreement of, 1077-1081; adj., agreement of, 1082-1098, see **Agreement**; subordinate sentence as, 1715; use of *antequam*, 1920; gerundive, 2248, 2249; partic., 2282-2286.
- Avoiding,**  
verbs of, with *nē* and subjv., 1960.
- Bacchiac rhythms,** 2698-2706.
- Bacchius,** 2521.
- Begin,**  
verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.
- Believing,**  
verbs of, with dat., 1181, 1182.
- Benefiting,**  
verbs of, case with, 1205-1210.
- Birth,**  
place of, in abl., 1309; verbs of, with abl., 1312.
- Blaming,**  
verbs of, used with *quod*, 1852.
- Books,**  
pres. used in, 1592; see **Titles**.
- Brachycatalectic verse,** 2538.
- Bucolic diaeresis,** 2559.
- Buying,**  
verbs of, with gen., 1274; with abl., 1388-1392.
- Caesura,**  
2542-2544; hiatus in, 2477; masculine and feminine, 2557; after the third trochee, 2558.
- Calling,**  
verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167; with indef. subj., 1033.
- Can,**  
verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.
- Capability,**  
suffixes denoting, 284, 292-294.
- Capable,**  
adjs. meaning, with gerundive construction or gerund, 2252.
- Cardinal numerals,**  
decl. of, 637-642, 431; list of, 2404, 2405; some forms of, 2415-2418; in dates, 2419; in combination with *singulī*, 2420.
- Case,**  
endings, function of, 398; endings, lacking in prons., 645; the cases, defined, 419, 420; oblique cases, defined, 419; nouns, defective in, see **Defective**; rules for formation of the cases of nouns, general, 422-428; in *-ā-* stems, 436-443; in *-o-* stems, 452-465; in cons. stems, 495-507; in *-i-* stems, 540-564; in *-u-* stems, 590-595; in *-ē-* stems, 602-607; principal and secondary cases, 1111, 1112; see **Agreement**, **Nominative**, &c., **Prepositions**.
- Catalectic verse,**  
defined, 2537; *in syllabam*, &c., 2539.
- Catalexis,** 2537.
- Catullus,**  
lyric strophes of, 2738.
- Causal,**  
sentences, defined, 1716; mood in, 1721; subjv. of ind. disc. and attraction in, 1722, 2319; tense of, after secondary, 1756; words, use of, 2133, 2154-2158; see **Cause**.

# Index of Subjects.

- Causative,**  
verbs, 368; use of verb, 2304.
- Cause,**  
gen. of, 1232-1238; abl. of, 1316-1319; expressed by abl. abs., 1317, 1367; coordinated member denoting, 1703; rel. sentences of, 1824-1830; expressed by sentence with *quod*, *quia*, 1838-1858; expressed by sentence with *cum*, 1859, 1874-1880; expressed by sentence with *quoniam*, 1882, 1884; expressed by sentence with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, &c., 1926, 1930; expressed by sentence with *dum*, 1998; expressed by sentence with *quandō*, *quandōque*, 2010, 2013, 2014; expressed by abl. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2266; expressed by partic., 2295, 1317; otherwise expressed, 1317.
- Cease,**  
verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.
- Change,**  
in characters of alphabet, 17, 19, 21, 25; in sound of vowels, 95-145; in sound of diphthongs, 95-101; in sound of consonants, 146-174; see **Substitution, Development, Disappearance, Assimilation, Dissimilation, Interchange, Lengthening, Shortening, Weakening, Hiatus, Contraction, Elision, Affinities.**
- Characteristic,**  
rel. sentences of, 1818-1823.
- Charge,**  
gen. of, 1280-1282.
- Choliambus, 2597-2600.**
- Choosing,**  
verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167; with pred. abl., 1363.
- Choriambic rhythms, 2707.**
- Choriambus, 2521.**
- Circumflex accent, 174-177.**
- Circumstances,**  
expressed by abl. abs., 1362, 1365; by abl. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2266.
- Cities,**  
see **Towns.**
- Claudus,**  
trochaic tetrameter, 2639-2641.
- Clause,**  
defined, 1055; subst. in apposition to, 1081; see **Sentence, Subordinate.**
- Clausula, 2536.**
- Climax,**  
asyndeton in, 1639; introduced by *vērō*, 1684.
- Cognate,**  
see **Kindred.**
- Coincident action,**  
defined, 1733; introduced by *quī*, 1826; introduced by *quod*, *quia*, 1850; introduced by *cum*, 1864, 1874; introduced by *dum*, 1998.
- Collectives,**  
defined, 6; suffixes forming, 228, 249; with sing. and plur. verb, 1071, 1080; with plur. subst., 1080; words denoting person used as, 1099; used in abl. with *ab*, 1477.
- Colon, 2532.**
- Combination,**  
of sentences, 1055; of substs. by a prep., 1426-1428; of different copulatives, 1662-1666.
- Command,**  
acc. in, 1150; intimated by question, 1531; expressed by subjv., 1547-1552; expressed by imper., 1571-1586; accompanied by voc. or voc. nom., 1571; expressed by fut., 1624; introduced by *proinde*, *proin*, 2157; verbs of, case with, 1181-1185; subjv. coordinated with verbs of, 1708; verbs of, with purpose clause, 1950; verbs of, with acc. and infin., 2200-2202.
- Common,**  
names, defined, 5; quantity, definition and sign of, 30; gender, nouns of, 410.
- Comparative,**  
of adjectives, diminutive formed from stem of, 340; formed from stems and roots, 342; stem of, 346, 470; suffixes of, 346-348; doubled suffix of, 348; lacking, 358, 360; formed by *magis*, 360; declension and case forms of, 621-623, 503, 505, 507; used as adverbs, 701; of adverbs, ending of, 361, 363, 364; lacking, 364.  
Use of, 1455-1464; general function of, 1455; used in comparison of adjs. and advs., 1457, 1458; combined with a positive, 1458; modified by abl. of difference, 1393, 1459; modified by acc., 1398; expressing disproportion, 1460, 1461; in neg. sentence, for superl., 1462; emphasized by *magis*, 1463; modified by *aequē*, 1463; with abl., for positive,



# Index of Subjects.

## Comparative — *continued.*

1464; strengthening a superl., 1468; agreeing with a rel., 1810; followed by **quam**, **quam ut**, **quam quī**, 1896; **quō** of purpose with, 1974; followed by **quasi**, 2122; followed by abl. of gerundive construction, 2268; double, with **quam . . . tam**, 1893; with **quantō . . . tantō**, 1973.

Sentence, defined, 1716; with **ut**, coordinated member equivalent to, 1704; **quisquam** and **ūllus** in, 2402; period of equality, **tam . . . quam**, &c. in, 1889, 1895; of inequality, 1894; with **quō** and **eō**, 1973.

## Comparison,

of adjs., 342-360; in **-ior**, **issimus**, 343; of adjs. in **-ilis**, 345, 359; of adjs. in **-er**, 344; with superl. in **-rimus**, 344, 350; with superl. in **-limus**, 345, 350; with superl. in **-timus**, 351; with superl. in **-mus** or **-imus**, 352; with compar. in **-erī** or **-er**, 347, 348; with compar. and superl. from different forms of same stem or from different stems, 353-355; without positive, 356, 357; without compar., 358; without superl., 359; with **magis** and **maximē**, 360; not admitted, 360.

Of adverbs, 361-364; with superl. in **-ēd**, 362; with superl. in **-ō** or **-um**, 362; without positive, 363; without compar., 364; without superl., 364.

Of participles, 2284.

Use of degrees of, 1454-1468, see

## Positive, Comparative, Superlative.

Ablative of, 1320-1330; **atque**, **et** in, 1653, 1654; periods of, with **quam**, 1888-1898; with **tamquam**, 1908-1910; conditional periods of, 2117-2122.

## Compensation, 121.

## Complement,

the essential, defined, 1177; the essential, uses of, 1180-1204; the optional, defined, 1178; the optional, uses of, 1205-1218; see **Dative**.

## Complementary,

dat., see **Dative**; final clauses, 1948-1960; consecutive clauses, 1948, 1965-1969; infin., 2168-2171, 2223-2225, 1953.

## Completed,

action, tenses of, 1603, 1605, 1614, 1626, 2218.

## Complex,

sentence, defined, 1058; varieties of, 1058-1061; treated, 1714-2122, see **Sentence**.

## Composition,

treated, 376-396; of nouns, 379-390; real compounds, 379-385; apparent compounds, 386-390; of verbs, 391-396; real compounds, 391, 392, 790; apparent compounds, 393-396, 790; verb with verb, 394; subst. with verb, 395; adv. with verb, 396; of partic., 2284.

## Compound,

words, defined, 181; containing mute or **f** followed by **l** or **r**, 178; direct, defined, 377; indirect, defined, 377; real, defined, 378; apparent, defined, 378; determinative, defined, 382-384; objective, defined, 384; possess., defined, 385; compound formative suffixes, defined, 200; compound verbs, with stem differing from simple, 821-823; perf. of, 823; reduplication in, 860, 861; forms of, 922-1020; cases with, 1137, 1138, 1187, 1191, 1194-1199, 1209; formation of, 1402-1409; compound sentence, defined, 1056; abridged, 1057; treated, 1636-1713; see **Sentence**, **Composition**.

## Compounds,

of **dīc**, **dūc**, accent of, 88; of roots **fac-**, **ag-**, **cap-**, 370; of **faciō**, accent of, 394; of **faciō**, form of, 394; in **-cola** and **-gena**, gen. plur. of, 439; in **-fer** and **-ger**, decl. of, 454, 616; of **dō**, 756, 757; of **eō**, 763-767; of **edō**, 771; in **-fiō** and **-ficio**, 790; of **dūcō**, imper. of, 846; of **ne**, 1444, 1445; changes within, 174.

## Conative,

use of verb, 2301-2303.

## Conceivable,

action, subjv. of, in main sentence, 1554-1562; in subordinate sentence, 1731; tense of, in subordinate sentence, 1753; in rel. characteristic or result sentences, 1818; in **quam** sentences, 1888, 1896; in **quamquam** sentences, 1901; in sentences of result with **ut**, 1947; in sentences of purpose with **ut**, 1962; with **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, **quamdiū**, 1994; in sentences with **quandō**, 2010.

## Concession,

expressed by abl. abs., 1367; expressed by subjv. of desire, 1553; expressed by imper., 1571; expressed by



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## Index of Subjects.

### Conditional — *continued.*

2103-2105; apod. in plup. indic., 2104, 2107.

Variation of prot., 2109-2111; variation of apod., 2112-2115; forms which apod. may take, 2018; coordinated member equivalent to prot., 1574, 1701; imper. as prot., 1574; prot. expressed by abl. abs., 2295; prot. expressed by partic., 2295; conditional comparisons, 2117-2122; protases in ind. disc., 2326-2329; apodoses in ind. disc., 2330-2334; sentence, *quisquam* and *ullus* in, 2402.

### Conjugation,

defined, 397; of *sum*, 744-750; of *possum*, 744, 751-753; of *dō*, 744, 754-757; of *bibō*, *serō*, *sistō*, 744, 758; of *inquam*, 759-761; of *eō*, 759, 762-767; of *queō*, *nequeō*, 759, 768; of *edō*, 769-771; of *volō*, 772-774; of *nōlō*, 772, 775-777; of *mālō*, 772, 778, 779; of *ferō*, 772, 780, 781; of verbs in *-ere* (third conjug.), 782-784; of *aiō*, 785-787; of *fiō*, 785, 788-790; of verbs in *-iō*, *-ere*, 784-791; of verbs in *-āre* (first conjug.), 792, 793; of verbs in *-ēre* (sec. conjug.), 794, 795; of verbs in *-īre* (fourth conjug.), 796, 797; of deponent verbs, 798-801; of periphrastic forms, 802-804; see **Stems, Person, Formation.**

### Conjunctional,

see **Conjunctive.**

### Conjunctions,

defined, 13; origin of, 696; copulative, use of, 1644-1661, 1687-1692, 1881, 2133-2149; combination of different, 1662-1666; disjunctive, use of, 1667-1675, 2133-2149; adversative, use of, 1676-1686, 2133, 2150-2153; post-positive, 1676; *quamquam* as, 1899, 1900; *quamvis* as, 1904, 1905; *quī*, 1976; concessive, use of, 2133, 2150-2153; causal and illative, use of, 2133, 2154-2158; affirmative coordination, 2159; see **Connectives.**

### Conjunctive,

particle sentences, 1838-2122; introduced by *quod*, *quia*, 1838-1858; by *nōn quod*, *nōn quō*, &c., 1855; by *cum*, 1859-1881; by *quoniam*, 1882-1884; by *quotiēns*, *quotiēnscumque*, 1885-1887; by *quam*, 1888-1898; by *quantus*, *ut*, 1892; by *quamquam*, 1899-1902; by *quam-*

### Conjunctive — *continued.*

*vis*, 1903-1906; by *quamlibet*, 1907; by *tamquam*, 1908-1910; by *quemadmodum*, 1908; by *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1911-1921; by *prīdiē quam*, *postrīdiē quam*, 1922; by *postquam*, *ubī*, *ut*, *cum primum*, 1923-1934; by *utī*, *ut*, *nē*, 1935-1970; by *ubī*, 1971; by *quō*, *quī*, 1972-1976; by *quantō*, 1973; by *quōminus*, 1977, 1978; by *quō sētius*, 1979; by *quīn*, 1980-1990; by *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdīū*, 1991-2009; by *modo*, 2003; by *quandō*, *quandōque*, 2010-2014; by *sī*, *nisi*, &c., 2015-2115; by *etsī*, *tametsī*, *tamenetsī*, *etiamsī*, *sī*, 2116; by *quasi*, *quam sī*, *tamquam sī*, &c., 2117-2122; particle sentences, in ind. disc., 2315, 2317, 2319.

### Connection,

of the parts of sentence, 1636-1692; of sentences or periods, 2123-2159; relationship, &c., words of, with gen., 1203.

### Connectives,

compound sentence without, 1636-1642; separate sentences or periods without, 2124-2127; relatives as, 2131; demonstrative and determinative words as, 2129, 2130; concessive words as, 2150-2153; disjunctive words as, 1667-1675, 2134-2149; copulative words as, 1644-1661, 2134-2149; adversative words as, 1676-1686, 2150-2153; other words than conjunctions as, 1687-1692; causal words as, 2154-2158; illative words as, 2154-2158; affirmative coordination, 2159.

### Consecutive,

sentences, defined, 1716; tense of, after secondary, 1757-1759; complementary, 1948, 1965-1969; pure, 1948, 1970.

### Consonants,

cons. and vowel *i* and *u*, 22-28; *x* a double cons., how sounded, 70; *x* makes long syllable, 177; doubled cons., how written and how pronounced, 80; doubled, never ends a word, 177; doubled, makes long syllable, 177; pronunciation of, 53-72; classification of the consonants, 73-79; consonant changes, 146-174, see **Substitution, Development, Disappearance, Assimilation, Dissimilation, Interchange**; mute or *f* followed by *l* or *r*,

# Index of Subjects.

## Consonants — *continued.*

how affecting preceding short vowel, 178; cons. roots, defined, 188; cons. stems of substs., decl. of, 467-512, see **Declension**; cons. stems of substs., general rules of gender of, 570-584; cons. stems of adjs., decl. of, 621-626, 467-512. See also **Glides**.

## Contempt,

expressed by diminutives, 269; expressed by *nesciō quid*, &c., 1789; expressed by *hīc*, 2350; expressed by *iste*, 2357; expressed by *homo*, 2365; expressed by *quīdam*, 2393.

## Continued action,

tenses of, 1587, 1594, 1619, 2218; with *cum*, 1864, 1865; see **Incomplete action**.

## Continuants or Continuous,

sounds, defined, 74; classified, 74; subst. stems in, decl. of, 481-493.

## Contraction,

of vowels, 115, 118; of verb forms, 885-893; in versification, 2518.

## Contrary to fact,

see **Non-occurrent**.

## Contrasts,

asyndeton in, 1640; introduced by *et*, 2140; *hīc* and *ille* in, 2352; *ipse* in, 2374, 2375.

## Convicting,

verbs of, with gen., 1280-1282; with abl., 1280-1282.

## Coordination,

of sentences, 1055-1060, 1636; asyndetic, 1637-1642; constructions, history of, 1693-1695, 1705, 1706, 1740, 1957; treated, 1636-1692; without connective, 1636-1642; with copulative conjunctions, 1643-1666; with disjunctive conjunctions, 1667-1675; with adversative conjunctions, 1676-1686; with other words as connectives, 1687-1692; intermediate coordinate sentence, treated, 1693-1713; coordination instead of acc. and infin., 1696; question or exclamation in, 1697; instead of rel. sentence, 1698; instead of temporal expression, 1699; instead of result clause, 1700; instead of condition, 1701, 2110; instead of concessive clause, 1702; instead of causal clause, 1703; instead of compar. clause with *ut*, 1704; subjv. of desire in, 1705; *nē* in, 1706; with verbs of wishing, 1707; with verbs of request, exhortation, command, &c., 1708; with

## Coordination — *continued.*

*oportet*, *optimum est*, &c., 1709; with *permittō*, *concedō*, *sinō*, *licet*, 1710; with *cavē*, &c., 1711; with *cedo*, *dō*, *persuādeō*, *cūrō*, *fac*, &c., 1712; with verbs in general, 1713; of questions, 1787; of imper., 1787, 1710-1712; of rel. sentence with subst., adj., or partic., 1820; of rel. sentences, 1832, 1833; affirmative, 2159; expressed by *quamquam*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, 2153; expressed by *quippe*, 1690.

## Copulative,

words, use of, 1644-1661, 1687-1692, 1881, 2133-2149; combination of different, 1662-1666.

## Correlative,

prons., table of, 695, 1831; advs., table of, 711, 1831; sentences, 1831; *idcirco*, *ideō*, &c., 1855, 1858; *quoniam . . . continuo*, &c., 1883; *quotiens . . . totiēns*, &c., 1886; *quam . . . tam*, &c., 1889, 1890; *tamquam . . . sic*, *ita*, 1908; *ut . . . ita*, *item*, &c., 1937; adversative, *ut . . . ita*, *sic*, 1938; conditional, *ut*, *nē . . . sic*, 1964; *tantus . . . ut*, &c., 1970; *quō . . . eō*, *hōc*, 1973; *quantō . . . tantō*, 1973; *dum . . . subito*, *repente*, *iam*, &c., 1995; *dum*, &c., . . . *tamdiū*, &c., 1999; *dum*, &c., . . . *usque*, &c., 2004; *quandō . . . tum*, 2011; *sic . . . si*, 2015; *si . . . igitur*, &c., 2018, 2067; *etsi*, &c., . . . *tamen*, 2116; lacking in apod., 1890, 1937.

## Correption, 2517.

## Costing,

verbs of, with gen., 1274; with abl., 1388-1392.

## Countries,

names of, in plur., 1107; in acc. with expressions of motion, 1161; used adjectively, 1233; abl. of, attached to a subst., 1309; denoting place from which, 1309, 1310; place in or at which, 1336, 1347.

## Cretic,

defined, 2521; rhythms, 2691-2697.

## Curses,

*duim*, &c. in, 756.

## Customary,

action, expressed by pres., 1588; expressed by impf., 1596.

## Cyclic feet, 2523.

# Index of Subjects.

## Dactyl,

defined, 2521; cyclic, 2523.

## Dactylic,

rhythms, 2555-2580; hexameter, 2556-2569; pentameter, 2570-2576; tetrameter acatalectic, 2577; tetrameter catalectic, 2578; trimeter catalectic, 2579.

## Dactylo-trochaic rhythms,

2675-2681.

## Danger,

expressions of, with *ut*, *nē* clauses, 1957, 1958.

## Dates,

expressed by *abl.*, 1307; expressed by *loc.*, 1307, 1331; cardinals and ordinals in, 2419; marked by names of consuls, 2419.

## Dative case,

defined, 419; plur., how formed, 428; lacking, see **Defective**, substantives, lacking cases.

-*ā*- stems, in -*ī*, 618-620, 656, 693; in -*eis*, 440, 443; in -*īs* for -*iīs*, 440; in -*āis* and -*ēis*, 441; in -*ābus*, 442; inscriptional forms, 443; Greek nouns, 444.

-*o*- stems, in -*ī*, 618-620, 656, 693; in -*āis*, -*ēis*, -*ōis*, 458; in -*ōbus*, 464; inscriptional forms, 465; Greek nouns, 466.

Consonant stems, in -*ē*, 501, 507; inscriptional forms, 507; Greek nouns, 508-512.

-*i*- stems, inscriptional forms, 564; Greek nouns, 565.

-*u*- stems, in -*ubus*, 592; inscriptional forms, 593.

-*ē*- stems, in -*ē*, 602, 606; in -*ī*, 606; sing., of *rēs*, *fidēs*, 160, 602.

Pronouns, peculiar and inscriptional forms, of *ego*, *tū*, *suī*, 651; of *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, 653, 654; of *hic*, 663-665; of *ille*, *iste*, 667, 668; of *illic*, *istic*, 670; of *is*, 672-674, 160; of *īdem*, 677, 678; of *quī*, *quis*, 688, 690.

Uses of, 1175-1225; general, 1175-1179.

The complementary, 1180-1218; as essential complement, 1180-1204; as optional complement, 1205-1218; made subj. in pass., 1480, 1181; with verbs of intrans. use denoting state, disposition, feeling, quality, 1181, 1184, 1185; with *sum* and a pred. noun, 1183; with verbs

## Dative case — *continued.*

of union, contention, difference, 1186, 1357; with verbs combined with *adversum*, *obviam*, *praestō*, *bene*, *male*, *satis*, 1187; with verbs of intrans. use compounded with a prep., 1188-1191; with verbs of trans. use, 1192; with verbs of trans. use compounded with a prep., 1194-1199; with adjs., 1200-1204; with verbs of trans. or intrans. use to denote person or thing interested, benefited, harmed, 1205, 1315; with *similis*, 1204; with interjections, 1206; with sentences, 1207; with verbs denoting *warding off*, *robbing*, *ridding*, 1209; with verbs of motion, 1210; emotional, 1211; of possessor, 1212-1216, 1478, 2181, 2243; with compounds of *sum*, 1212; with *mihī est nōmen*, &c., 1213, 1214; of the doer of an action, 1215, 1216, 1478, 2181, 2243; of relation, 1217, 1218.

The predicative, 1219-1224; of tendency or result, 1219-1222; with verbs of considering or accounting, 1222; of purpose or intention, 1223-1225.

Double, 1213, 1214, 1219-1225; combined with *acc.*, 1199, 1201, 1214, 1221, 1224; combined with *nom.*, 1213, 1214, 1221, 1224; attached to subst., 1183, 1208, 1225; used with *cōnsciūs*, 1265; with *rēfert*, 1278; with impersonal verbs in pass., 1181; pred. noun in, 2214; of gerundive construction and gerund, 2254-2257; supine in -*ū* as, 2269; following supine in -*um*, 2272; with *īdem*, 2373.

## Decasyllabic Alcaic, 2663.

## Declarations,

neg. adv. in, 1443; indic. used in, 1493; verbal expressions denoting ability, duty, propriety, necessity, &c. in, 1495-1497; confounded with questions and exclamations, 1502; subjv. used in, 1540-1562; expressed by indic. in rel. sentence, 1813; expressed by *quod*, 1838.

## Declarative,

sentence, defined, 1025; in ind. disc., mood of, 2312.

## Declension,

defined, 397.

Substantives, 432-607; -*ā*- stems, 432-445; -*ā*- stems, Greek nouns, 444, 445; -*o*- stems, 446-466; -*o*- stems,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

# Index of Subjects.

- Deponents,**  
defined, 725, 1486; imper. of, 297, 731; prin. parts of, 735; how designated, 736, 737; inflection of, 798-801; in -i, list of, 977-986; act. forms of, 798; with act. and pass. endings, 800, 1488, 1489; semi-deponents, 801, 1488; perf. partic. of, with act. and pass. meaning, 907, 1364, 1492; with reflexive, pass., or reciprocal force, 1487; with pass. meaning, 1490; pass. of, how expressed, 1491; perf. with pres. force, 2280.
- Deprive,**  
verbs meaning, with abl., 1302-1306.
- Descending rhythms,** 2528.
- Descriptions,**  
impf. in, 1599; asyndeton in, 1639; in indic. in rel. sentence, 1813; expressed by abl. abs., 1367; expressed by partic., 2295.
- Desiderative,**  
verbs, definition and formation of, 375; defective, 810.
- Desire,**  
subjv. of, 1540-1553; in coordination, 1705-1713; in rel. sentences of purpose, 1817; in sentences with *potius quam*, &c., 1897; in sentences of purpose with *ut*, 1947; in sentences with *dum*, 2005.  
Verbs of, with gen., 1286; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2189-2192, 2228.  
See **Wish, Wishing, Desirous.**
- Desirous,**  
adjs. meaning, gen. with, 1263, 1264.
- Determinative,**  
compounds, defined and classified, 382-384.  
Pronouns., decl. of, 656-659, 671-675; agreement of, 1094-1098, see **Agreement**; omitted in rel. sentence, 1798; as connectives, 2128-2130; correlative prons., 1831; use and force of, 2365-2370, 2361; see **is**.  
Adverbs, 711.
- Development,**  
of vowel before cons., 172; of vowel between consonants, 172; of cons., 167; p between m and s, m and t, 167.
- Diaeresis,**  
defined, 2542, 2543; bucolic, 2559.
- Dialysis,** 2501.
- Diastolé,** 2505.
- Dicolic verses,** 2535.
- Difference,**  
verbs of, case with, 1186; amount of, abl. of, 1393-1399, 1153, 1154, 1459, see **Extent**; *quō . . . eō*, 1973.
- Difficult,**  
adjs. meaning, with supine in -ū, 2274.
- Diiambus,**  
defined, 2522.
- Dimeter,**  
defined, 2536; iambic, 2617-2623; trochaic, 2643-2646; anapaestic, 2687-2689; cretic, 2697; bacchiac, 2704.
- Diminutive,**  
substs., suffixes forming, 267-278; meanings of, 267-270; gender of, 270; adjs., 339, 340; formed from compar. stems, 340; advs., 341.
- Diphthongs,**  
defined, 47; the, 49; origin of, 48, 120; pronunciation of, 49, 50; quantity of, 47, 125; quantity of, before a vowel, 125; *ei* in inscriptions to denote *ī*, 29, 2.  
Diphthong, 95-101; change of *au*, 97; change of *ou*, 100; change of *eu*, 101; change of *ai*, *ae*, 96; change of *aī*, 118, 2; change of *oi*, *oe*, 99; change of *ei*, 98, 764, 789.
- Dipody,**  
defined, 2531; iambic, 2624; trochaic, 2649; logaoedic, 2655-2658.
- Direct,**  
compound, defined, 377, see **Composition**; quotation, 1723, see **Quotations**; discourse, defined, 2308; question, see **Questions**.
- Direction,**  
expressed by subjv., 1547-1551; introduced by *utī*, *ut*, *nē*, &c., 1547; expressed by fut., 1624; verbs of subjv. coordinated with, 1708; introduced by *proinde*, *proin*, 2157.
- Disadvantage,**  
dat. of, 1178, 1205-1210.
- Disappearance,**  
of vowel, 110-113; initial, 112; medial, 111; final, 113; of cons., 168-171; initial, 169; medial, 170, 659; final, 171, 426, 648, 705.
- Disapprobation,**  
questions of, 1566-1569; expressed by infin., 2216.
- Disjunctive,**  
words, use of, 1667-1675, 2133-2149.

# Index of Subjects.

- Displeasing**,  
expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.
- Dispondee**,  
2522.
- Disproportion**,  
expressed by positive, 1454; expressed by compar., 1460, 1461; compar. denoting, followed by *quam*, *quam ut*, *quam quī*, 1896.
- Dissimilation**,  
of *l* to *r*, to avoid repetition of a liquid, 173, 1; by dropping a sound, 173, 2.
- Distance**,  
designations of, abl. of *intervāllum* and *spatium* in, 1399; see **Space**, **Time**.
- Distich**,  
defined, 2545; elegiac, 2573.
- Distress**,  
mental, verbs of, with gen., 1283-1286; with loc. and abl., 1339, 1344.
- Distributive**,  
numerals, suffix of, 317; decl. of, 643; list of, 2404, 2405; some forms of, 2418; uses of, 2420-2422; words, with plur. subst., 1080; with sing. and plur. verb, 1080.
- Disyllabic**,  
preps., position of, 1434; perfects and perf. partic., quantity of penult vowel of, 2434-2436.
- Ditrochee**, 2522.
- Doer**,  
of action, expressed by dat., 1215, 1216, 1478, 2181, 2243; expressed by abl. with *ab*, 1318, 1476, 1477, 2243; expressed by abl. alone, 1319, 1477.
- Doing**,  
verbs of, with *quod*, *quia*, introducing coincident action, 1850; with *quī*, 1826; with *cum*, 1874.
- Double**,  
questions, see **Alternative**; class, of rhythms, 2527.
- Doubt**,  
questions of, in pres. indic., 1531; in fut., 1531, 1623; in subjv., 1563; in subordinate sentence, 1731; tense of, in subordinate sentence, 1753; in indirect question, 1786; *fortasse*, &c., and subjv., 1554; verbs of, loc. and abl. with, 1339, 1344; indirect question with, 1774; with *quī*, 1986.
- Dreading**,  
verbs of, with gen., 1286.
- Dual**, 415.
- Dubitative**,  
see **Appeal**.
- Duration**,  
of time, denoted by acc., 1151-1156, 1475; acc. of, combined with a second acc., 1174; denoted by abl., 1355.
- Duty**,  
verbal expressions of, in indic., 1495-1497; in conditional periods, 2074, 2101.
- Easy**,  
adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2252; with supine in *-ū*, 2274.
- Ecthlipsis**, 2493.
- Effect**,  
suffixes denoting, 213, 217, 224, 241.
- Effort**,  
see **Striving**.
- Elegiac distich**, 2573.
- Elegiambus**, 2680, 2681.
- Elision**,  
within a word, 115, 119; between words, 2481-2495; at end of verse, 2533, 2568.
- Emotion**,  
verbs of, with *quod*, *quia*, 1851; with *cum*, 1851, 1875; with acc. and infin., 2187, 2188, 2184; with perf. infin., 2231.
- Emotional dative**, 1211.
- Emphasizing**,  
acc., 1140-1146, 1173, 1475.
- Enclitics**,  
the, 93; defined, 93; accent of, 93; quantity of, 2433; *-met*, 650, 655; *-pte*, 655; *-ce*, 662, 663, 669, 670, 2015; *dum*, with imper., 1573, 1992; at end of verse, 2568; see *-que*, &c.
- End**,  
of motion, see **Motion**.
- Endeavour**,  
verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.
- Endings**,  
case, function of, 398; lacking, in prons., 645; of nouns and verbs, shortened in the classical period, 132; 'one,' 'two,' 'three.' adjs. of, see **Adjectives**; see **Person**, **Declension**, **Suffix**.



# Index of Subjects.

- Enlargement**,  
of simple sentence, 1037-1054; of subj., 1038-1047; of pred., 1048-1054.
- Entreaty**,  
expressed by imper., 1571; verbs of, subjv. coordinated with, 1708.
- Enumerative asyndeton**, 2126.
- Envy**,  
verbs of, with dat., 1181.
- Epicenes**, 411.
- Epistolary**,  
impf., 1601; plup., 1616.
- Epitrite**, 2522.
- Equal class**,  
of rhythms, 2527.
- Essential**,  
complement, see **Complement**.
- Ethical**,  
see **Emotional**.
- Euripidean verse**, 2644-2646.
- Exchange**,  
abl. of, 1388-1392.
- Exclamation**,  
nom. of, 1117; acc. of, 1149, 1150, 2112; gen. of, 1295; verbal expressions denoting ability, duty, propriety, necessity in, 1495-1497; indic. in, 1499; confounded with questions and declarations, 1502; introduced by prons. and **unde**, **ubi**, **quō**, **cūr**, **quī**, **quīn**, **quam**, **quandō**, **quotiēns**, 1526, 1527; introduced by **ut**, 1528; two or more exclamations with one verb, 1530; as member of coordinate sentence, 1697; subordinate, or indirect, 1773, see **Questions**; **mīrum quantum**, &c., 1790; in apod. of conditional sentence, 2018; infin. of, 2216.
- Exclamatory**,  
sentence, defined, 1025; questions, 1566-1569.
- Exemplification**,  
periods of, 2054, 2090.
- Exhortation**,  
intimated by question, 1531; expressed by subjv., 1547-1551; introduced by **utī**, **ut**, **nē**, **nēmō**, **nihil**, &c., 1547; expressed by imper., 1571; expressed by fut., 1624; verbs of, subjv. coordinated with, 1708.
- Expectation**,  
expressions of, with **sī**, **sī forte**, 1777; see **Hope**.
- Explanatory**,  
**cum**, 1859, 1874-1880.
- Explosives**, 73.
- Extent**,  
of space, denoted by acc., 1151-1156, 1475; acc. of, combined with a second acc., 1174; with verbs of surpassing, 1398.
- Faithful**,  
adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200.
- Favour**,  
verbs of, with dat., 1181, 1182.
- Fearing**,  
verbs of, with indirect question, 1774, 1959; with **ut**, **nē** clauses, 1957, 1958; with acc. and infin., 1959; with complementary infin., 1959, 2169.
- Feeling**,  
verbs of, with acc., 1139; with gen., 1283-1286; with loc. and abl., 1339, 1344; **animī** with verbs and adjs. of, 1339; see **Emotion**, **Mental distress**, &c.
- Feet**,  
metrical, defined, 2519; kinds of, 2521, 2522; cyclic, 2523; irrational, 2524; groups of, 2531, 2532.
- Feminine**,  
gender, general rules of, 407; for cons. and **-i-** stems, 577-581; caesura, 2557.
- Figures of prosody**, 2473-2510.
- Final**,  
disappearance, of vowel, 113; of cons., 171.  
Syllable, vowel of, shortened, 132; retained long, 132; with accent, 88; quantity of, 2437-2457; of verse, *syllaba anceps*, 2533, 2534.  
**e** from **i**, 107, **b**; short vowel followed by word beginning with two consonants or double cons., 2458.  
Sentences, defined, 1716; complementary, 1948-1960; pure, 1948, 1961-1964; tense of, after perf. definite, 1754.
- Fitness**,  
adj. suffixes implying, 298, 302-330; adjs. denoting, cases with, 1200; adjs. denoting, with gerund and gerundive, 2252.
- Flowers**,  
names of, gender, 407, 408, 573.
- Forgetting**,  
verbs of, with gen., 1287-1291; with acc., 1288; with infin., 2169.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

# Index of Subjects.

## Future tense — *continued.*

predictions, 1621; in asseverations, 1622; in questions of appeal, 1623; expressing exhortation, request, command, &c., 1624; sequence of, 1717, 1740-1746, 1751, 1753; in subordinate sentence, 1625; fut. perf. with force of, 1632; rel. time, 1733-1735; independent, 1738; with *cum*, 1860-1862; with *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1913, 1916; with *ubi*, *simul atque*, &c., 1934; with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdiū*, 1996, 2000, 2002, 2009; in conditional prot., 2023, 2052-2058; in conditional apod., 2023, 2030, 2037, 2045, 2054, 2061, 2079, 2086; periphrastic, in conditional prot., 2092, 2108; in conditional apod., 2074, 2081, 2087, 2093, 2097, 2100; of direct discourse represented by impf. or pres. subjv. in ind. disc., 2324; infin., see **Infinite**; partic., see **Participles**.

## Galliambic, 2714-2716.

### Gender,

kinds of, 402; defined, 403; nouns, defined, 402, 398; mobile nouns, 409; nouns of common, 410; epicenes, 411; variable, 413, 586, 597; general rules of, 402-413; of diminutives, 270; of inanimate things, 403; of Greek words, 570; of *-ā-* stems, 432, 433; of *-o-* stems, 446, 447; general rules of, for cons. and *-i-* stems, 570-584; of cons. stems, 467, 471-494; of *-i-* stems, 513, 517-539, 545; of *-u-* stems, 585, 586, 588; of *-ē-* stems, 596, 597; agreement of adj. and partic. in, 1082-1098; agreement of rel. pron. in, 1082-1098, 1801-1811, see **Relative**; agreement of demonstrative and determinative prons. in, 1082-1098, see **Demonstrative**, **Determinative**; agreement of subst. in, 1077-1081; see **Neuter**.

### General,

truth, expressed by pres., 1588; expressed by impf., 1599; fut. in, 1620; in subordinate sentence, tense of, 1748, 1760; with *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1912-1914; introduced parenthetically by *ut*, 1940; introduced by *sic*, *ita*, 2159; conditions, 2034, 2035, 2044, 2050, 2054, 2069-2071; subj., in 1st pers. plur. and 2d pers. sing., omitted, 1030.

### Genitive case,

defined, 419; plur., how formed, 427; stem of noun seen in, 421; stem of noun

## Genitive case — *continued.*

indicated by, 421; lacking, see **Defective**; stem vowel of *-o-* stems lengthened in, 56, 462.

*-ā-* stems, in *-īus*, *-ius*, 162, 618-620, 656, 657, 694; in *-āī*, 160, 437; in *-ās*, 437; in *-ūm*, 439; inscriptional forms, 443; Greek nouns, 443-445.

*-o-* stems, in *-īus*, *-ius*, 127, 7; 618-620, 656, 657, 694; in *-āī*, *-ēī*, *-ōī*, 458; of words in *-ius*, *-ium*, form and accent of, 87, 456, 457; in *-ūm*, *-ōm*, 462, 463, 465, 640, 641, 643; inscriptional forms, 465; Greek nouns, 466.

Consonant stems, in *-uum*, 492, 506; in *-om*, 494, 507; in *-ium*, 477, 478, 489, 492, 494, 506, 507; inscriptional forms, 507; Greek nouns, 508-512.

*-i-* stems, in *-um*, 527-337, 563, 629, 631, 633, 636; inscriptional forms, 564; Greek nouns, 565.

*-u-* stems, in *-uis*, 590; in *-tī*, 590; in *-om*, 591; in *-ūm*, 591; inscriptional forms, 593.

*-ē-* stems, in *-ē*, 602, 606; in *-ēs*, 602, 606; in *-ī*, 602, 606; of *rēs*, *fidēs*, 160, 602.

Present participles, in *-um*, 563.

Pronouns, peculiar and inscriptional, forms, of *ego*, *tū*, *suī*, 646, 649; of *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, 653; of *hic*, 663, 665; of *ille*, *iste*, 667, 668; of *illic*, *istic*, 670; of *is*, 672-674; of *idem*, 677; of *quī*, *quis*, 688, 690; of *neuter*, 694.

Uses of, 1226-1295; general, 1226.

With substantives, 1227-1262; combined with one or more genitives limiting same subst., 1228; with limited subst. omitted, 1229; of the subj., cause, origin, owner, 1232-1238, 1207; of personal and reflexive prons., 1234; of word in apposition with possess. pron., 1235; as pred. with verbs meaning *am*, *belong*, *become*, &c., 1236, 1237; with *commūnis*, *proprius*, *aliēnus*, *sacer*, *tōtus*, 1238; of quality, attributively and predicatively, 1239, 1240; partitive, 1241-1254; with advs., 1242, 1248, 1253, 1254; partitive, with adjs., 1245; partitive, in pred., 1251; partitive, *nostrūm*, *vestrūm*, 2335; of definition, 1255-1259; with *causā*, *grātiā*, *nōmine*, *ergō*, 1257; with *quidquid est*, &c., 1259; the

## Index of Subjects.

### Genitive case — *continued.*

objective, 1260-1262; objective, **nostrī, vestrī**, 2335.

With adjectives, 1263-1270, 1203, 1204; with **cōnsciū** and dat., 1265; with partic., 1266; with **similis**, 1204; with **dignus, indignus**, 1269.

With verbs, 1271-1294; with verbs of valuing, &c., 1271-1275, 1279; with **rēfert** and **interest**, 1276-1279; with judicial verbs, 1280-1282; with **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet**, 1283, 1284; with **misereor, misereō, miserēscō**, 1285; with personal verbs of desiring, loathing, admiring, dreading, 1286; with verbs of memory, 1287-1291; with verbs of participation and mastery, 1292; with verbs of fulness and want, 1293; with verbs of separating and abstaining, 1294.

Of exclamation, 1295; with **mihī est nōmen, nōmen dō**, &c., 1213, 1214; with **opus**, 1383; with **post** and **intrā** in expressions of time, 1396; with preps., 1406, 1413, 1419, 1420, 1232; possess., with infin., 1237, 2208, 2211, 1232; of gerundive construction and gerund, 2258-2264, 2164.

### Genus,

*par, duplex, sescuplex*, 2527.

### Gerund.

no plur. of, 416; a verbal noun, 732, 2237; formation of, 899; dat. of doer of action with, 1215, 1478, 2243; abl. with **ab** with, 2243; in reflexive sense, 1482; treated, 2237-2268; character of, 2237-2239; with and without obj., 2241, 2242; of verbs of trans. use, 2242, 2255, 2259, 2265; use of acc. of, with **ad**, 2252, 2164; with other preps., 2253; use of dat. of, 2255, 2257; in gen., 2259; denoting purpose, 2263; with **causā** expressing purpose, 2164; use of abl. of, 2265-2268; denoting means, cause, &c., 2266; with preps., 2267; in abl. of separation, 2268.

### Gerundive,

a verbal noun, 732, 2237; formation of, 899, 288; originally neither act nor pass., 288, 2238; dat. of possessor with, 1215, 1478, 2243; abl. with **ab** with, 2243; treated, 2237-2268; character of, 2237-2239; the construction, 2240; use of nom. of, 2243-2249, 2251; with **sum**, 2243; inflection of, with **sum**,

### Gerundive — *continued.*

804; with **sum** in conditional periods, 2101; **fruendus, fungendus, &c.**, 2244; **habēō** with, 2245; impersonally, 2246, 2180, 2244; impersonally with obj., 2247; adjectively, 288, 2248; denoting possibility, 2249; with pass., 2251; use of acc. of, 2250-2253, 2243; with verbs, 2250; with **ad**, 2252, 2164; with other preps., 2253; use of dat. of, 2254, 2256, 1208; use of gen. of, 2258-2264; with subst. or adj., 2258, 2259; with **nostrī, &c.**, 2260, 2261; predicately with **sum**, 2262; with **causā** expressing purpose, 2164; alone, denoting purpose, 2263; with judicial verbs, 2264; use of abl. of, 2265-2268; denoting means, cause, &c., 2266; with preps., 2267; in abl. of separation, 2268; with compar. expression, 2268.

### Giving,

verbs of, subjv. coordinated with, 1712; with gerundive construction, 2250.

### Glides, consonantal, 167.

### Glyconic, 2660-2662.

### Gnomic, see Often.

### Gradation,

quantitative vowel, 135; qualitative, 145.

### Grave accent, 90.

### Greek,

characters of the alphabet, 17, 18; words, **eu** in, 101; changed in Latin, 172, 2; quantity in, 125; 127, 8, 9; patronymics, 279; nouns, gender of, 406, 408, 570; nouns of **-ā-** decl., forms of, 443-445; of **-o-** decl., 466; of cons. decl., 508-512; of **-i-** decl., 565; idiom, imitated in Latin with dat. of **volēns, &c.**, 1218; acc., see **Part concerned.**

### Grief,

verbs of, with **quod, quia**, 1851; with **cum**, 1851, 1875; with acc. and infin., 2187, 2188, 2184.

### Gutturals,

44, 77; guttural mute stems, decl. of, 471-473.

### Haplology, 179.

### Happening,

verbs of, case with, 1181-1185; **quī** with, 1826, 1850; **quod** with, introducing coincident action, 1850; **cum** with, 1874, 1850; with result clause, 1965; with result clause, how translated, 1966.

# Index of Subjects.

- Hardening**, 2503.  
**Harming**,  
verbs of, case with, 1205-1210.  
**Having**,  
verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167.  
**Hearing**,  
verbs of, in pres. of past action, 1592;  
with indirect question, 1774.  
**Helping**,  
expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.  
**Hemiole class**,  
of rhythms, 2527.  
**Hendecasyllabic Alcaic**, 2667, 2668.  
**Hendecasyllable**, 2664, 2665.  
**Hepthemimeral caesura**, 2544.  
**Hepthemimeris**, 2531.  
**Hesitate**,  
verbs meaning, with *quīn*, 1987;  
with *infin.*, 2169.  
**Hexameter**,  
defined, 2536; dactylic, 2556-2569;  
bacchiac, 2705.  
**Hexapody**, 2531.  
**Hiatus**,  
within a word, 114-116; between  
words, 2473-2480; at end of verse, 2533.  
**Hidden quantity**, 2459-2463.  
**Hiding**,  
verbs of, with two accusatives, 1169-  
1171; with acc. and prepositional phrase,  
1170.  
**Hindering**,  
verbs of, with *nē*, 1960, 1977; with  
*quōminus*, 1960, 1977; with *quīn*,  
1986; with acc. and *infin.*, 2203; with  
acc. of gerundive construction or gerund,  
2252.  
**Hipponactean verse**,  
2597-2600, 2639-2641; strophe, in  
Horace, 2721.  
**Hiring**,  
verbs of, with gen., 1274; with abl.,  
1388-1392.  
**Historical**,  
perf., 1602-1604, see **Perfect**; *infin.*,  
see **Intimation**; pres., see **Vivid  
narration**.  
**Hope**,  
expressions of, with *sī*, *sī forte*,  
1777; with acc. and *infin.*, 2186; with  
pres. *infin.*, 2186.  
**Horace**,  
lyric metres of, 2718-2737, 2739.  
**Hortatory**,  
see **Desire**.  
**Hostility**,  
words of, with gen., 1203.  
**Hypothesis**,  
expressed by abl. abs., 1367; ex-  
pressed by partic., 2295; variation of  
prot., 2109-2111.  
**Hypermetrical verse**, 2568.  
**Iambelegus**, 2678, 2679.  
**Iambic**,  
words, last syllable of, shortened in  
verse, 129; shortening, law of, 129,  
2470; rhythms, 2581-2627; trimeter  
(senarius), 2583-2596; choliambus,  
2597-2600; trimeter catalectic, 2601-  
2603; tetrameter acatalectic, 2604-2609;  
septenarius, 2610-2616; dimeter acata-  
lectic, 2617-2620; dimeter catalectic,  
2621-2623; acatalectic dipody and cata-  
lectic tripod, 2624; versus Reizianus,  
2625, 2626; trimeter, in Horace, 2719;  
strophe, in Horace, 2720.  
**Iambus**, 2521.  
**Ictus**,  
2511; in combination with word  
accent, 2548.  
**Identity**,  
pron. of, decl. of, 676-678; use of,  
2371-2373; see *idem*.  
**Illative**,  
words, use of, 2133, 2154-2158.  
**Illustrations**,  
ut in, 1941; introduced by *nam*,  
2155.  
**Imparisyllables**,  
defined, 469; decl. of, cons. stems,  
471-512; -i- stems, 529-569; gender  
of, 571-584.  
**Imperative**,  
with short final vowel, 130, 4; tense  
of, 716, 1575; of *dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*,  
113, 846; of compounds of *dūcō*, 846;  
accent of compounds of *dīc*, *dūc*, 88;  
endings of, 297, 731; in -d, 748; forma-  
tion of, 844-846; perf., 879, 813; sing.,  
of more than one, 1075; with *quīn*,  
1527; in commands, 1571-1580; ac-  
companied by *amābō*, age, *sānē*, &c.,  
1572, 1573, 1992; in protasis of con-  
ditional sentence, 1574, 2032, 2038,  
2056, 2063; use of third person and  
longer forms, 1575-1578; the fut.,  
1575; *fac*, *fac ut*, *cūrā ut*, *vidē*,  
&c., 1579; periphrastic perf. pass.,  
1580; in prohibitions, 1581-1586; *nōn*



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

# Index of Subjects.

## Indefinite — *continued.*

peated action, 1730; in *cum* sentences, 1859, 1860; with *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1912; with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, &c., 1924; with *sive . . . sive*, 2019; in conditional sentences, 2070.

Antecedent, omitted, 1799; *multi*, *quidam*, &c., used with *sunt qui*, &c., 1822; abl. *qui* used with *quippe*, *ut*, 1828; adv., *quamquam*, 1899; adv., *quamvis*, 1903; adv., *quamlibet*, 1907; use of *ut quisque*, 1939; use of *quō quisque*, 1973; adv., *quandō*, 2010; time, with *quandō*, 2011; time, denoted by impf. subjv. of action non-occurrent, 2091; subj., of infin., not expressed, 2212; expressed, 2212; unexpressed, with pred. noun in acc., 2213; in 1st pers. plur. and 2nd pers. sing., omitted, 1030.

## Independent,

time, of subordinate sentence, 1738, 1744.

## Indeterminate,

meaning, verbs of, 1035; with pred. nom., forming pred., 1035; rel. agreeing with pred. subst., 1806; period, defined, 2024; protases, defined, 2023; treated, 2025-2090, see **Conditional**; in pres. or perf. subjv. in ind. disc. after secondary, 2328; apodoses to, in ind. disc., 2330.

## Indicative mood,

tenses of, 716; how translated, 717.

Formation of tenses of, pres., 828-840; impf., 847, 848; perf., 854-875; stem without suffix, 858-866; stem in -s-, 867, 868; stem in -v- or -u-, 869-875; fut., 851-853; plup., 880; fut. perf., 882-884; short or old forms, 885-893.

Uses of, in declarations, 1493; the neg. of, 1494; in verbal expressions denoting ability, duty, propriety, necessity, &c., 1495-1497; in questions and exclamations, 1499-1533, see **Questions**; use of tenses in simple sentence, 1587-1633, see **Present**, &c.; in subordinate sentence, 1732-1739; tenses of, sequence after, 1717, 1746-1761; general rule for indic. in subordinate sentence, 1721; in ind. disc., 1729, 2318; with *sī*, *sī forte*, 1777; with *nesciō quis*, &c., 1788, 1789; with *mīrum quantum*, &c., 1790; in rel. sentence equivalent to conditional prot., 1812; in rel. sentence of simple declara-

## Indicative mood — *continued.*

tion or description, 1813; in rel. sentence introduced by indef. pron. or adv., 1814; with *sunt qui*, &c., 1823; with *qui tamen*, 1825; in rel. sentence resembling causal sentence, 1826; with *quippe qui*, *ut qui*, *ut pote qui*, 1827; with *quippe qui* (adv.), *ut qui*, 1828; *quod attinet ad*, &c., 1830; with *quod*, *quia*, 1838-1858; with *cum*, 1859-1871, 1873-1876, 1881; with *quoniam*, 1882-1884; with *quotiēns*, *quotiēnscumque*, 1885, 1886; with *quam*, 1888-1895; with *quantum*, *ut*, 1892; with *quamquam*, 1899, 1900; with *quamvis*, 1905, 1906; with *tamquam*, 1908; with *quemadmodum*, 1908; with *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1911-1921; with *prīdiē quam*, *postrīdiē quam*, 1922; with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *cum*, *prīmum*, 1923-1934; with *utī*, *ut*, 1935-1946; with *ubi*, 1971; with *quō*, *qui*, 1972, 1973, 1976; with *quandō*, 1973; with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdīū*, 1991-2009; with *quandō*, 2010-2014; in conditional periods of indeterminate protases, 2023, 2025-2071, 2074, 2078-2081, 2086, 2087, 2090; in conditional periods of action non-occurrent, 2092, 2097, 2100-2108, 2112-2114; with *etsī*, *tametsī*, *tamenetsī*, *etiamsī*, *sī*, 2116.

## Indirect compound,

defined, 377, see **Composition**.

## Indirect discourse,

defined, 1723, 2309; verbs introducing, 1724, 2309; with main verb not expressed, 1725, 2310, 2319; verb of saying, introduced by *qui*, *quod*, *cum*, put illogically in subjv., 1727, 2320; subjv. of attraction, 1728; sequence of tenses in, 1770-1772; in *quod* sentences, 1838, 2319; in *quia* sentences, 2319; in *quoniam* sentences, 1882-1884; in *quamquam* sentences, 1901; in *tamquam* sentences, 1909; in *antequam*, *priusquam* sentences, 1916, 1919, 1921; in sentences with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, &c., 1924; with *nōn dubitō*, 1987; with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdīū*, 1994, 1995, 2005, 2007, 2008; in sentences with *quandō*, 2010; fut. perf. of main sentence how represented in, 2234; mood of main sentence in, 2312-2314; declarative sentences in,

# Index of Subjects.

## Indirect discourse — *continued.*

2312; imper. sentences in, 2312; interrogative sentences in, 2312; rhetorical questions in, 2313; original subjv. questions in, 2314; mood of subordinate sentences in, 1722-1729, 2315-2320; indic. in, 1729, 1995, 2318; rel. sentence equivalent to main sentence in acc. with infin., 2316; sentences introduced by conjunctive particles in acc. with infin., 2317; tense of infin. in, 2321; tense of subjv. in, 2322-2324; fut. and fut. perf. of subordinate sentence how represented in, 2324; use of prons. in, 2325, 2341, 2342; conditional protases in, 2326-2329; conditional apodoses in, 2330-2334; see **Infinitive**.

## Indirect object,

see **Complement**.

## Indirect question,

see **Questions**.

## Induced lengthening,

122.

## Infinitive,

in -e, -ē, 134, 2; gender of, 412; the infinitives, verbal nouns, 732, 2160-2163; fut. act. and pass. and perf. pass., 732, 898, 2273; short or old forms of, 885-893; the fut. perf., 887; formation of, 894-898; pass. in -ier, 897.

Use of, treated, 2160-2236; origin and character of, 2160-2163; old and poetical use of, 2164-2166; of purpose, 2164, 2165; with adjs., 2166; ordinary use of, 2167-2215; the complementary, 2168-2171, 2223, 1953; acc. with, 2172-2203; acc. with, origin of construction of, 1134, 2172, 2173; with verbs of perceiving, knowing, thinking, saying, 2175-2184, 2219, 2226; with verbs of accusing, 2185; with verbs of hoping, promising, threatening, 2186; with verbs of emotion, 2187, 2188, 2184; with verbs of desire, 2189-2192, 2228; with verbs of resolving, 2191; with verbs of demanding, 2194; with *suādeō*, *persuādeō*, *precor*, 2195; with verbs of accomplishing, 2196; with verbs of teaching and training, 2197; with verbs of bidding, forbidding, allowing, 2198-2202; with verbs of hindering, 2203, 1960; as subst. acc., 2204-2206; as subj., 2207-2215; of exclamation, 2216; use of pres., 2218-2222, 2236; use of perf.,

## Infinitive — *continued.*

2218, 2220, 2223-2231; use of fut., 2218, 2232-2236; fut. pass., use of, 2273; with verbs signifying *represent*, 2299; in declarative sentences in ind. disc., 2312; in rhetorical questions in ind. disc., 2313; in rel. sentences equivalent to main sentences in ind. disc., 2316; in conjunctive particle sentences in ind. disc., 2317; force of tenses in ind. disc., 2321; use of tenses in conditional apodoses in ind. disc., 2330-2334; use of reflexive pron. in construction of acc. with infin., 2338-2340; partic. in agreement with, 1373; act. and pass., with forms of *coepi* and *dēsinō*, 1483; with forms of *possum*, *queō*, *nequeō*, 1484; with *nōli*, *fuge*, *parce*, *mitte*, &c., 1583, 1584; of intimation, 1534-1539; used interrogatively, 1538; after *cum*, *ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*, 1539, 1868, 1869, 1924; after *dōnec*, 2009; sequence after, 1717, 1766-1769; with *dignus*, *indignus*, *idōneus*, *aptus*, 1819; with *quam*, 1898; with verbs of fearing, 1959; with *sequitur*, *efficitur*, 1965; with *nōn dubitō*, 1987.

## Inflection,

defined, 397; of the noun, 398-712, see **Gender**, **Number**, **Case**, **Declension**; of the verb, 713-1022, see **Conjugation**, **Formation**, **Verbs**.

## Influence,

abl. of, 1316-1319; otherwise expressed, 1317; see **Inducing**.

## Initial,

disappearance, of vowel, 112; of cons., 169.

## Injuring,

expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.

## Inscriptions,

cons. i, how represented in, 29, 2; i *longa* in, 24; long vowel, how represented in, 29; the apex in, 29; *ou* in, 100; *ai* in, 96; *ē* in, 29, 1; *oi*, *oe*, *ei* in, 99; final *m* dropped in, 61, 443, 465, 564; final *s* dropped in, 465, 507, 564, 593; ablatives in -*ād*, -*ōd*, -*īd*, -*ūd*, in, 426, 443, 465, 507, 593; case forms of -*ā*- decl. in, 443; of -*o*- decl. in, 465; of cons. decl. in, 507; of -*i*- decl. in, 564; of -*u*- decl. in, 593; of *ego*, *tū*, *suī* in, 651; of *meus*, *tuus*, *suus* in, 654; of *hic* in, 665; of *ille* in, 668; of *is* in, 674; of



# Index of Subjects.

## Inscriptions — *continued.*

*īdem* in, 678; of *quī*, *quis* in, 690; person endings in, 729; form of *sum* in, 748; form of *possum* in, 753; forms of *eō* in, 764, 765; form of *tulī* in, 781; fut. perf. in, 884, 888; perf. subjv. in, 877, 887; pass. infin. in, 897, 965; use of nom. in, 1114.

## Instrument,

suffixes denoting, 238-245, 213, 224; abl. of, 1377-1384, 1476, 1477.

## Instrumental case,

meaning of, 1300; uses of, 1356-1399, see **Ablative.**

## Intensive,

verbs, definition and formation of, 371-374; pron., decl. of, 656, 657, 679, 680; use of, 2374-2384; see *ipse*.

## Intention,

dat. of, 1223-1225.

## Interest,

dat. of, 1205-1210; expressed by emotional dat., 1211.

## Interjections,

defined, 14; used with nom., 1117, 1123; used with voc., 1123; used with dat., 1206; used with acc., 1149, 1150; used with gen., 1295; hiatus after, 2475; monosyllabic, not elided, 2484.

## Intermediate,

coordinate sentence, treated, 1693-1713.

## Interrogations,

neg. adv. in, 1443; as apod. in *tam . . . quam* sentences, 1889.

## Interrogative adverbs, 711, 1526.

## Interrogative implication,

infin. of intimation with, 1538.

## Interrogative pronouns,

decl. of, 658, 659, 681-694; adj. and subst. forms of, 683-685; use of, in simple sentences, 1526-1533, 1787-1791; in subjv. questions, 1563-1570; in indirect question, 1785, 1786; *quid tibi hanc cūratiōst rem*, 1136: of kindred meaning with verb, 1144, 1840, 1851; with verbs of intrans. use, 1183-1186; with emotional dat., 1211; with *rēfert*, interest, 1276-1279; rel. developed from, 1795, 1808; difference between *uter* and *quis*, *quī*, 2385; difference between *quis*, *quid*, and *quī*, *quod*, 2386.

## Interrogative sentences,

defined, 1025; *quisquam* and *ūllus* in, 2402; see **Questions.**

## Interrogative subjunctive,

1563-1569; in subordinate sentence, 1731; in indirect question, 1786.

## Intimation,

infin. of, 1534-1539, 1717, 1868, 1869, 1924, 2009.

## Intransitive use,

verbs of, used impersonally in pass., 724, 1479; verbs of trans. use used as, 1133; used transitively, 1137, 1139, 1191; with dat., 1181-1191, 1205; use of gerundive of, 2246.

## Ionic,

rhythms, 2708-2717; *ā māiōre*, 2708-2713; *ā minōre*, 2708, 2709, 2714-2717; system, in Horace, 2737.

## Ionic *ā māiōre*,

defined, 2521; see **Ionic.**

## Ionic *ā minōre*,

defined, 2521; see **Ionic.**

## Irrational syllables and feet,

2524.

## Irregular,

verbs, defined, 743; conjugated, 744-781, see **Conjugation.**

## Islands,

names of, in acc., with expressions of motion, 1157, 1158; constructions with, to denote place from which, 1307-1310; constructions with, to denote place in or at which, 1331-1336, 1342, 1343; rel. advs., *ubi*, *quō*, *unde*, referring to, 1793.

## Iterative,

see **Frequentative.**

## Ithyphallic verse, 2647.

## Joy,

verbs of, with *quod*, *quia*, 1851; with *cum*, 1851, 1875; with acc. and infin., 2187, 2188, 2184.

## Judicial,

verbs, with gen., 1280-1282; with abl., 1280-1282; with gen. of gerundive construction, 2264.

## Keeping,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167; with pred. abl., 1363.

## Kindred,

derivation, acc. of, 1140, 1173; meaning, acc. of, 1141.

## Know how,

verbs meaning, with infin., 2160



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



# Index of Subjects.

**Medial,**  
disappearance, of vowel, 112; of  
cons., 170.

**Meditative,**  
verbs, definition and formation of,  
375; the, 970.

**Memory,**  
adjs. of, with gen., 1263; verbs of,  
with gen., 1287-1291; with acc., 1286,  
1291; with *de* and abl., 1289, 1291.

**Mental distress,**  
verbs of, with gen., 1283-1286.

**Metre,** 2512.

**Metrical lengthening,**  
123, 2.

**Middle,**  
see **Reflexive.**

**Military,**  
expressions, dat. in, 1223, 1225; abl.  
in, 1356.

**Mobile,**  
nouns, defined, 409; substs., agree-  
ment of, 1078.

**Modal sentences,** 1716.

**Modesty,**  
plur. of, 1074.

**Molossus,** 2522.

**Monometer,**  
defined, 2536; trochaic, 2649.

**Monopody,** 2531.

**Monosyllables,**  
defective in case, 430; quantity of,  
2430-2433; rarely elided, 2484, 2485,  
2487, 2494, 2495.

**Months,**  
names of, adjs., 627; decl. of, 627.

**Moods,**  
names of, 715; subjv. in simple sen-  
tence, syntax of, 1540-1570, see **Sub-  
junctive**; imper., uses of, 1571-1586,  
see **Imperative**; indic. in simple  
sentence, syntax of, 1493-1533, see **In-  
dicative**; of subordinate sentence,  
1720-1731; indic. in subordinate sen-  
tence, general rule, 1721; indic. in sub-  
ordinate sentence, in ind. disc., 1729,  
2318; subjv. of repeated action in  
subordinate sentence, 1730; subjv. of  
wish, action conceivable, interrogation  
in subordinate sentence, 1731; subjv.  
in indirect question, 1773-1786; moods  
in rel. sentence, 1812-1830; use of  
moods in ind. disc. and subjv. of attrac-  
tion, 1722-1729, 2312-2320; see **quod**,  
**cum**, &c.

**Mora,** 2515.

**Motion,**  
aim of, denoted by acc., 1157-1166;  
end of, denoted by dat., 1210; from,  
how expressed, 1307-1311; abl. of route  
taken with verbs of, 1376; verbs of,  
with *in* and *sub* and acc., 1423; with  
*in* and *sub* and abl., 1424; with infin.  
of purpose, 2164; with supine in *-um*,  
1166, 2270.

**Motive,**  
abl. of, 1316-1319; expressed by abl.  
abs., 1367, 1317; otherwise expressed,  
1317; introduced by **quod**, 1853; ex-  
pressed by **tamquam**, 1909.

**Mountains,**  
names of, gender, 405, 406.

**Multiplicatives,** 2423.

**Mutes,**  
73; mute stems, decl. of, 471-480,  
see **Declension.**

**Names,**  
of characters of alphabet, 16; proper,  
defined, 5; plur. of, 416, 1105; form of  
gen. and voc. of, in *-o-* decl., 87, 457,  
459; with accent on final syllable, 83;  
ending in *-āius*, *-ēius*, *-ōius*, de-  
clensional forms of, 458; with attribute  
attached, 1044; see **Greek**; common,  
defined, 5; of males, gender of, 405; of  
females, gender of, 407.

**Naming,**  
verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167;  
with indef. subj., 1033.

**Narration,**  
vivid, pres. of, 1590; asyndeton in,  
1639; see **Present.**

**Nasals,** 76.

**Near,**  
adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200-  
1203.

**Necessary,**  
adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200-  
1203.

**Necessity,**  
verbal expressions of, in conditional  
periods, 2074, 2101; verbal expressions  
of, subjv. coordinated with, 1709; verbal  
expressions of, in indic., 1495-1497;  
expressed by subjv., 1552.

**Need,**  
adjs. of, with gen., 1263; verbs mean-  
ing, with abl., 1302-1306; with gen.,  
1293.

# Index of Subjects.

## Negative,

advs., general use of, 1443-1453; with wishes, 1540; with exhortations, prohibitions, &c., 1547; two in one sentence, 1452, 1453, 1660, 1661; *nōn*, with subjv. of action conceivable, 1554; *nē*, *nōn*, in subjv. questions, 1563, 1566; *nē*, *nēve*, *neque*, *nōn*, *nēmō*, with imper., 1581, 1582, 1586; conjs., use of, 1657-1661, 2141-2144; combination of, with affirm. conjs., 1665; *nē* in coordinated subjv., 1706; *necne* and *an nōn* in indirect questions, 1778; meaning of *haud sciō an*, &c., 1782; *ut nē*, *nē*, *ut nōn*, &c., of purpose and result, 1947; in conditional prot., 2020, 2021; *nōn*, position of, in conditional sentences, 2067; apod. in *tam . . . quam* sentences, 1889; implied by perf., 1610; answer, expected with *-ne*, *-n*, 1504; expected with *nōnne*, 1506; expected with *num*, 1507; how expressed, 1513; sentence, *quīvis*, *quīlibet*, *utervīs*, *uterlibet* in, 2401; sentence, *quisquam* in, 2402.

## Neglect,

verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.

## Neuter,

gender, defined, 402; general rule for, 412; for cons. and *-i-* stems, 582-584; nom. and acc. plur., form of, 423; in *-ā*, 130, 2; 461; of *-u-* stems, 586; of adjs., as substs., use of, 1093, 1101, 1106, 1250; acc., of pron., with verbal expressions, 1144; word, with partitive gen., 1247; adjs., in gen. with verbs of valuing, 1271; use of gerundive in, 2180, 2244, 2246, 2247.

## Nine-syllabled Alcaic, 2642.

## Nominative case,

defined, 419; sing., of gender nouns, how formed, 422, 448, 495, 587, 598; sing., of nouns with stems in *-ā-*, *-l-*, *-n-*, *-r-*, *-s-*, how formed, 422, 434, 496-500; sing., of neut. nouns, how formed, 423, 448, 496; plur., of neut. nouns, how formed, 423; lacking, see **Defective**; of fem. and neut. in *-a*, *-ā*, 130, 1 and 2; in *-or*, *-ōr*, 132; ending in *d*, 149: 171, 2.

*-ā-* stems, with long final vowel, 130, 1; 436, 445; in *-ās*, 436; inscrip- tional forms, 443; Greek nouns, 444, 445.

*-o-* stems in *-os* and *-us*, 452; in *-us*, *-er*, *-r*, 453, 454, 613-617;

## Nominative case — continued.

in *-ei*, *-eis*, *-īs*, 461, 465; in *-āī*, *-ēī*, *-ōī*, 458; neut. plur., in *-ā*, 65, 461; inscrip- tional forms, 465; Greek nouns, 466.

Consonant stems, sing., how formed, 495-500; plur., in *-īs*, 505, 507; in- scriptional forms, 507; Greek nouns, 508-512.

*-i-* stems, sing., how formed, 540-546; plur., in *-ēs*, *-īs*, *-eis*, *-ia*, *-iā*, 562, 564; inscrip- tional forms, 564; Greek nouns, 565.

*-u-* stems, inscrip- tional forms, 593.

Pronouns, without case ending, 645; peculiar and inscrip- tional forms, of *tuus*, *meus*, *suus*, 653; of *hic*, 663-665; of *ille*, *iste*, 667, 668; of *illic*, *istic*, 670; of *is*, 673, 674; of *idem*, 677, 678; of *ipse*, 680; of *quī*, *quis*, 688, 690; *alis*, *alid*, for *alius*, *aliud*, 619.

Uses of, 1113-1123; subj. of verb, 1113, 1027; general, 1113; as subj., in titles, &c., 1114-1116; in exclamations, 1117; as case of address, 1118-1123; combined with voc., 1121; with *mihī est nōmen*, &c., 1213, 1214; pred., instead of dat., 1221, 1224; with *opus est*, 1383; as subj. of infin., 1535; ac- companying imper., 1571; pred. noun with infin. in, 2184; pred., see **Predic- ate**; of gerundive construction, 2243-2249, 2251.

## Non-occurrent,

action, tense of, in subordinate sen- tence, 1753, 2329; protases of, defined, 2024; treated, 2091-2118, see **Con- ditional**; apodoses of, in ind. disc., 2331-2334.

## Notation, 2406-2411.

## Nouns,

defined, 3-8; endings of, with short- ened vowel, 129, 130; with long vowel retained, 132; formation of, 180-203; roots and stems, 183-198; without forma- tive suffix, 195, 198, 199; with forma- tive suffix, 195-198, 200-203; suffixes of, 204-364, see **Formation**; com- pound, formation and meaning of, 379-390; gender nouns, defined, 398, 402; mobile, defined, 409; epicenes, 411; of common gender, 410; inflection of, 398-712, see **Gender**, **Number**, **Case**, **Declension**; with two forms of stem, 401, 413, 470, 475, 531, 545, 566-569,

# Index of Subjects.

## Nouns — *continued.*

603; agreement of, 1077-1098, see **Agreement**; use of, 1099-1468, see **Ablative, &c., Substantives, Adjectives.**

## Nouns of the verb,

enumerated, 732; formation of, 894-919, see **Formation**; sequence of tenses following, 1766-1769; uses of, 2160-2299; see **Infinitive, Gerund, Gerundive, Supine, Participles.**

## Number,

in nouns, defined, 414; in verbs, defined, 722; dual forms, 415; nouns defective in, see **Defective**; sing. and plur., with different meaning, 418, 480; agreement of verb in, 1062-1076; agreement of subst. in, 1077-1081; agreement of adj. and partic. in, 1082-1098; agreement of rel. pron. in, 1082-1098, 1801-1811, see **Relative**; agreement of demonstrative and determinative prons. in, 1082-1098, see **Demonstrative, Determinative**; sing., in collective sense, 1099; sing., of a class, 1100; sing., of neut. adjs. used as substs., 1101, 1093, 1250; plur., of a class, 1104; plur., of proper names, 1105, 416; plur., of neut. adjs. used as substs., 1106; plur., of names of countries, 1107; plur., of material substs., 1108, 416; plur., of abstracts, 1109, 416; plur., in generalizations and in poetry, 1110; denoted by gen. of quality, 1239; denoted by advs., 1438.

## Numeral adjectives,

decl. of, 637-643; agreeing with a rel., 1810; kinds of, 2404; table of, 2405; see **Numerals.**

## Numeral adverbs,

2404; table of, 2405; forms in **-iēns, -iēs**, 2414.

## Numerals,

cardinals, decl. of, 637-642, 431; ordinals and distributives, decl. of, 643; kinds of, 2404; table of, 2405; notation, 2406-2411; some forms of, 2412-2418; some uses of cardinals and ordinals, 2419; some uses of distributives, 2420-2422; multiplicatives, proportionals, and adjs. derived from numerals, 2423; fractions, 2424-2428; see **Numeral Adjectives, Cardinal numerals, Ordinal, Distributive.**

## Numeri Italici, 2549.

## Obeying,

expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.

## Object,

of a subst., defined, 1046; of a verb, direct, becomes nom. in pass., 1125; constructions of, 1132-1150, 1167-1174, see **Accusative**; subordinate sentence as, 1715; expressed by sentence with **quod**, 1845; complementary clause as, 1948; infin. as, 2167-2206, see **Infinitive**; of gerundive, 2247; of gerund, 2242, 2255, 2259, 2265; indirect, see **Complement.**

## Objective,

compounds, defined, 384; gen., 1260-1262; gen., **nostrī, vestrī** used as, 2335.

## Obligation,

expressions of, in indic. with infin., 1495-1497; expressed by subjv., 1552; expressed by gerundive, 2243, 2248.

## Obligatory,

use of verb, 2306.

## Oblique cases, 419.

## Octōnārius,

defined, 2536; iambic, 2604-2609; trochaic, 2636-2638; anapaestic, 2684, 2685.

## Office,

suffixes denoting, 216, 235; titles of, with gerundive construction, 2254.

## Often,

perf. expressing action often or never done, 1611.

## Omission,

of prep., with several substs., 1430; of antecedent of rel., 1798, 1799; of subj. acc. of infin., 2183, 2184.

## Open vowels, 46.

## Optative,

see **Wish.**

## Orātiō Obliqua,

see **Indirect Discourse.**

## Order,

see **Command.**

## Ordinal,

numerals, decl. of, 643; in acc., to express time, 1155; with **post** and **ante** in expressions of time, 1394-1397; list of, 2404, 2405; in dates, 2419; some forms of, 2412-2418; with subst. not used in sing., 2419; **quisque** with, 2397.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

# Index of Subjects.

## Passive voice — *continued.*

of act. made subj. in, 1181, 1480, 2202; with reflexive meaning, 1481, 1487, 1148; of *coepī* and *dēsinō*, 1483; perf. partic. with act. meaning, 1485; deponents with force of, 1487; deponents with meaning of, 1490; perf. partic. of deponents with act. and pass. meaning, 907, 1364, 1492; forms with *fuī*, &c., 1609; of verbs of perceiving, knowing, thinking, saying, &c.. personal and impersonal constructions of, 2177-2182; of *iubeō*, *vetō*, *sinō*, used personally, 2201; with gerundive, 2251; fut. infin., formation and use of, 2273.

## Patronymics,

suffixes forming, 279; gen. plur. of, 439.

## Pauses, 2540.

## Penalty,

denoted by gen., 1282; denoted by abl., 1282.

## Pentameter,

defined, 2536; dactylic, 2570-2576.

## Pentapody,

defined, 2531; logaoedic, 2664-2668.

## Penthemimeral caesura, 2544.

## Penthemimeris, 2531.

## Penult,

defined, 175; when accented, 86, 87; quantity of, in polysyllables, 2434-2436.

## Perceiving,

verbs of, coordinated, 1696; in pres. with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, &c., 1926; with acc. and infin., 2175; time of infin. with, 2219, 2226.

## Perfect tense,

indicative, formation of, 854-875; stem without suffix, 858-866; stem in *-s-*, 867, 868; stem in *-v-* or *-u-*, 869-875; short or old forms, 885-893; *-runt* and *-re* in 3rd pers. plur., 727; quantity of vowel preceding *-runt*, *-re*, 856, 857; *-it*, 857, 68; reduplication of, 858-861, 922-932, 989, 995, 1011; quantity of penult vowel in disyllabic perfects, 2434-2436.

Dative of possessor with, 1216, 1478; in simple sentence, uses of, 1602-1613, 1616; definite, defined, 1602; historical, defined, 1602; historical, function of, 1603; historical, for plup., 1604; definite, function of, 1605; definite, expressed by *habeō* and partic., 1606; definite, of inceptives, 1607; definite, denoting pres.

## Perfect tense — *continued.*

resulting state, 1608; definite, pass. with *fuī*, &c., 1609; definite, other uses of, 1610-1616, 2027, 2030; sequence of, 1717, 1740-1761, 2322-2324; 2326-2329; in subordinate sentence, rel. time, 1735; 1736; independent, 1738; with *cum*, 1860, 1861, 1866, 1867, 1869, 1871; with *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1912, 1917, 1920; with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, &c., 1925, 1927, 1929, 1930, 1932; with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdiū*, 1998, 2001, 2002, 2006, 2007, 2009; in conditional prot., 2023, 2034-2041, 2066-2068; in conditional apod., 2023, 2027, 2035, 2043, 2049, 2053, 2060, 2101, 2103-2105.

Subjunctive, formation of, 876-878; short or old forms, 885-893; in wishes, 1541, 1543; in exhortations, prohibitions, &c., 1549, 1551; of action conceivable, 1557, 1558; with force of fut., 1541, 1549, 1551, 1558; of repeated action, 1730; sequence of, 1764, 1765; in subordinate sentence, following primary, 1746, 1762, 1766, 1771, 2323; following pres. of vivid narration and pres. of quotation, 1752; following perf. definite, 1754; following secondary, in rel., causal, and concessive sentences, 1756; following secondary, in consecutive sentences, 1757; following secondary, in indirect question, 1760; following secondary, in ind. disc., 2328; in sequence with adjacent verb, 1761; of action non-occurrent, in pres. sequence, 1763; in sequence with perf. infin., 1768; with *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1913, 1916, 1919; with *ut* purpose, 1962; in conditional prot., 2023, 2070, 2072, 2084-2088, 2090; in conditional apod., 2023, 2058, 2073, 2077, 2085, 2090; with *quasi*, *tamquam si*, &c., 2119; in ind. disc. representing a fut. perf., 2324.

Imperative, formation of, 813, 879; pass., 1580.

Infinitive, see **Infinitive.**

Participle, see **Participles.**

## Periods,

connection of, 2123-2159.

## Periphrastic,

forms of the verb, 802-804; fut. partic. with form of *sum*, 802, 803; fut. partic. with form of *sum*, use of, 1633, 1737, 1742, 1746, 1747; in conditional sentences, 2074, 2081, 2087, 2092, 2093, 2097, 2100, 2108; gerundive with

# Index of Subjects.

## Periphrastic — *continued.*

sum, 804, 2101, 2243; circumlocutions for perf. pass., fut. act., fut. pass. infin., 732, 898, 2273; perf. pass. imper., 1580; perf. with *habeō*, 1606, 2297; fore, *futūrum esse, ut*, 2233; fore with perf. partic., 2234; forms in conditional apodoses of action non-occurrent in ind. disc., 2331-2334.

## Permission,

verbs of, subjv. coordinated with, 1710; verbs of, with purpose clause, 1950; expressed by *quamvis*, 1904; expressed by *quamlibet*, 1907.

## Permissive,

use of verb, 2307.

## Person,

in verbs, defined, 721; in imper., 731; 3rd pers. plur., in indef. sense, 1033; agreement of verb in, 1062; when subjects are of different pers., 1076; when subj. is rel., 1807; use of *nōs* for *ego*, 1074; order of persons, 1076; pers. of *quī*, 1792.

## Personal pronouns,

decl. of, 644-651; possess., 652-655; when used with 1st and 2nd pers., 1029; possess. used instead of gen., 1231, 1262; gen. of, used possessively, 1234; preps. following, 1435; use of *nostrūm, vestrūm, nostri, vestri*, 2335; possess. omitted, 2346; possess. meaning *proper, appropriate, favourable*, 2346; *ipse* with, 2376; see *ego*, &c.

## Personal verbs,

impersonal verbs used as, 1181, 1284; verbs of intrans. use used as, in pass., 1181, 1480, 2203; verbs of perceiving, knowing, thinking, saying as, in pass., 2177-2182; *iubeō, vetō, sinō* as, in pass., 2201.

## Person endings,

vowel of, short, 129, 130; vowel of, long, 132; *-mino* in imper., 297, 731; *-mini* in 2nd pers. plur., 297, 730; function of, 713, 721; table of, 726; *-runt* and *-re* in perf., 727; of 1st and 2nd pers., 728; *-ris* and *-re* in 2nd pers. pass., 730; in inscriptions, 729; 3rd pers. plur. *-ont, -unt*, 827.

## Persuading,

verbs of, case with, 1181-1185; subjv. coordinated with, 1712.

Phalaecean, 2664, 2665.

P. erecratean, 2659.

## Phonetic,

see **Sound.**

## Pity,

see **Mental distress.**

## Place,

subst. suffixes denoting, 266, 228, 241, 242, 245, 249; adj. suffixes denoting, 317, 321, 347; advs. denoting, 708, 709, 1438; expressed by loc, 1331-1341; expressed by loc. abl., 1342-1349; expressed by attributive prepositional phrase, 1426, 1233; expressed by adj., 1427, 1233; expressed by gen., 1427, 1232; from which, advs. denoting, 710; from which, how expressed, 1307-1311; to which, advs. denoting, 710; to which, how expressed, 1157-1166, 1210; rel. advs., *ubi, quō, unde*, 1793.

## Places,

names of, see **Towns.**

## Plants,

names of, gender, 407, 408, 573.

## Pleasing,

expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.

## Plenty,

see **Fulness.**

## Pluperfect tense,

indicative, formation of, 880; short or old forms, 885-893; dat. with, 1216, 1478; uses of, in simple sentence, 1614-1618, 1607, 1609; of past action completed, 1614; expressing past resulting state, 1615; in letters, 1616; for perf., 1617; of time anterior to past repeated action, 1618; of inceptives, 1607; pass. with *fueram*, &c., 1609; sequence of, 1717, 1740-1745, 1747, 1748, 1755-1760, 2322-2324, 2326-2329; in subordinate sentence, rel. time, 1733, 1736; independent, 1738; with *cum*, 1860, 1861; with *antequam, priusquam*, 1918; with *postquam, ubi, ut, &c.*, 1928, 1929, 1932, 1933; with *dum, donec*, 1997, 2009; in conditional prot., 2023, 2048-2051; in conditional apod., 2023, 2029, 2036, 2104, 2107.

Subjunctive, formation of, 881; *-ēt*, 68; short or old forms, 885-893; in wishes, 1544; in expressions of obligation or necessity, 1552; of action conceivable, 1561; of repeated action, 1730; sequence of, 1762, 1763; in subordinate sentence, following secondary, 1747, 1762, 1766, 1771, 2322; following pres. of vivid narration and pres. of quotation, 1752; following primary, 1753, 2329; following perf. definite, 1754;



# Index of Subjects.

## Pluperfect tense — *continued.*

following perf. infin., or perf. partic., 1767; with *cum*, 1872, 1873; with *quotiēns*, *quotiēnscumque*, 1887; with *antequam*, *priusquam*, 1914, 1920, 1921; with *postea quam*, *postquam*, &c., 1924; with *dōnec*, 2009; with indef. rel. pron. or adv., 1814; in conditional prot., 2024, 2071, 2089, 2091, 2096, 2098-2107; in conditional apod., 2024, 2041, 2071, 2073, 2083, 2089, 2091, 2095, 2099; with *quasi*, *tamquam sī*, &c., 2120; in ind. disc. representing a fut. perf., 2324; in conditional apod. of direct discourse, how represented in ind. disc., 2331-2334.

## Plural number,

in nouns, defined, 414; lacking, see **Defective**; with different meaning from sing., 418, 480; of material substs., 416, 1108; of abstracts, 416, 1109; of proper names, 416, 1105; of names of countries, 1107; in generalizations and in poetry, 1110; adjs. in, used as substs., 1103, 1104, 1106; in substs., in agreement, 1077-1081; in adjs., prons., and partic., in agreement, 1082-1098; in verbs, defined, 722; with sing. and plur. subjects, 1062-1076; of modesty, 1074; of gerundive with *nostrī*, &c., 2261.

## Polysyllables,

quantity of penult in, 2434-2436; quantity of final syllable in, 2437-2457.

## Position,

syllables long by, 177; syllable containing vowel before mute or *f* followed by *l* or *r*, 178; final short vowel before word beginning with two consonants or double cons., 2458; final *s* does not always make, 2468; of preps., 1433-1437.

## Positive,

expressing disproportion, 1454; used in comparison of adjs. and advs., 1457, 1458; combined with a compar., 1458; expressed by compar. with *abl.*, 1464; see **Comparison**, **Affirmative**.

## Possession,

adj. suffixes implying, 298, 302-330; expressed by *dat.*, 1207, 1212-1216; expressed by *gen.*, 1232-1238.

## Possessive compounds, 385.

## Possessive pronouns,

decl. of, 652-655; agreement of, 1082-1098; used instead of *gen.* of personal or reflexive pron., 1234, 1262; with

## Possessive pronouns — *continued.*

word in apposition in *gen.*, 1235; with *rēfert* and *interest*, 1277; *gen.* of, with infin., 1237, 2208, 2211; implying antecedent to *rel.*, 1807; of reflexive, referring to subj. of verb, 2336; of reflexive, referring to word not subj. of verb, 2337; of reflexive, in construction of acc. with infin., 2338-2340; of reflexive, in subordinate clauses, 2341-2343; omitted, 2346; meaning *proper*, *appropriate*, *favourable*, 2346; see *meus*, &c.

## Possessor,

*dat.* of, 1212-1216, 1478, 2181, 2243.

## Possibility,

expressed by subjv., 1554-1562; denoted by gerundive, 2249; verbal expressions of, see **Ability**.

## Postpositive,

words, 1676, 1688; preps., 1433-1436.

## Posttonic syllable,

102.

## Potential,

use of verb, 2305; see **Action conceivable**.

## Prayer,

*duim*, &c. in, 756; forms of perf. subjv. and fut. perf. in, 887; expressed by imper., 1571; in verse, 2549.

## Predicate,

defined, 1023, 1035; omitted, 1036; enlarged, 1048-1054; pred. subst., verb agreeing with, 1072; agreement of pred. subst., 1077-1081; in oblique case, 1052, 1363; pred. adj., agreement of, 1082-1098; pred. nom., with verb of indeterminate meaning, 1035; with other verbs, 1051; infin. as pred. nom., 2207; noun, in nom. with complementary infin., 2171; in acc., referring to subj. acc. 2174; in nom., with verbs of perceiving, knowing, &c., used in pass., 2177; in nom., with verbs of perceiving, knowing, &c., used in act., 2184; in acc., referring to unexpressed indef. subj. of infin., 2213; in *dat.*, with implied subj. of infin., 2214; in acc., with verbs of making, choosing, naming, &c., 1167, 1168; pred. uses of *gen.*, 1236, 1237, 1239, 1251; pred. use of *abl.* of quality, 1375; with *ūtor*, 1381; pred. partic. with *ūsus est*, *opus est*, 1382; pred. use of prepositional expressions, 1428; pron. agreeing with pred. subst., 1097, 1806; pred. use of *gen.* of gerundive construction, 2262-2264; see **Predicative**.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## Index of Subjects.

**Proceleusmatic**, 2521.

**Proclitics**, 92.

**Prohibitions**,

expressed by subjv., 1547-1551; expressed by imper., 1581-1586; expressed by fut., 1624; perf. infin. with *volō*, *nōlō* in, 2224.

**Promise**,

expressed by fut., 1619; implication of, in fut. perf., 1629.

**Promising**,

verbs of, with acc. and infin., 2186; with pres. infin., 2186, 2221, 2236.

**Pronominal**,

see **Pronouns**.

**Pronoun**,

questions, 1526-1530; questions, indirect, 1785.

**Pronouns**,

defined, 9; as proclitics, 92; inflection of, 644-694; personal, 644-651; reflexive, 644-651; possess., 652-655; demonstrative, 656-670; determinative, 656-659, 671-675; of identity, 656-659, 676-678; intensive, 656-659, 679, 680; rel., interrogative, indef., 656-659, 681-694; interrogative, adj. and subst. forms of, 683-685; indef., adj. and subst. forms of, 686; reduplicated, 650; correlative, 695, 1831; advs. from, 696-698, 701, 702, 704-710.

Agreement of, 1093-1098, 1801-1811, see **Agreement**; adj., equivalent to gen., 1098, 1234, 1262; used in neut. acc. with verbal expressions, 1144; as connectives, 2129-2132; use of, in ind. disc., 2325, 2338-2342; use of, 2335-2403; use of personal, 2335; use of reflexive, 2336-2345; use of possess., 2346; use of *hic*, 2347-2355; use of *iste*, 2356, 2357; use of *ille*, 2358-2364; use of *is*, 2365-2370; use of *idem*, 2371-2373; use of *ipse*, 2374-2384; use of *uter*, *quis*, 2385, 2386; use of rel., 1792-1837; use of indef. *quis*, *quī*, 2388, 2389; use of *aliquis*, 2390, 2391; use of *quidam*, 2392, 2393; use of *quisque*, 2394-2398; use of *uterque*, 2399, 2400; use of *quīvis*, *quīlibet*, *utervīs*, *uterlibet*, 2401; use of *quisquam*, *ūllus*, 2402; use of *nēmō*, *nihil*, *nūllus*, neuter, 2403; place of reciprocal taken by *inter nōs*, &c., *invicem*, &c., 2344, 2345; see **Relative**, &c., *quī*, &c.

**Pronunciation**,

of names of characters of alphabet, 16, 31-72; of vowels, 33, 37-42; of diphthongs, 47, 49; of consonants, 53-72; change of sound of vowels, 103-145; of diphthongs, 95-101; of consonants, 146-174; rules of vowel quantity, 34-36, 2429-2472, see **Quantity**; division of syllables, 175; long and short syllables, 177, 178; of *es*, *est* in combination with other words, 747; see also **Accent**, **Substitution**, **Development**, **Disappearance**, **Assimilation**, **Dissimilation**, **Interchange**, **Lengthening**, **Shortening**, **Weakening**, **Hiatus**, **Contraction**, **Elision**.

**Proper**,

names, defined, 5; of -o- decl., form and accent of voc. and gen. sing. of, 87; 456-459; with accent on final syllable, 88; plur. of, 416, 1105; ending in, -āius, -ēius, -ōius, declensional forms of, 458; with attribute attached, 1044; see **Greek**.

**Proportionals**, 2423.

**Propriety**,

verbal expressions of, in indic., 1495-1497; subjv. coordinated with verbal expressions of, 1709; verbal expressions of, in conditional periods, 2074, 2101; expressed by subjv., 1547-1552; expressed by gerundive construction, 2243, 2248.

**Prosody**,

2429-2739; see **Quantity**, **Figures of prosody**, **Versification**.

**Protasis**,

defined, 1061; fut. perf. in, coincident in time with fut. perf. in apod., 1627; concessive, 2116; see **Conditional**, **Relative**, **Conjunctive**.

**Protest**,

introduced by sentence with *quod*, 1842.

**Protestations**,

subjv. in, 1542; fut. in, 1622; *ita . . . ut*, 1542, 1622, 1937.

**Protraction**, 2516.

**Proviso**,

introduced by *ut*, *nē . . . ita*, 1964; by *dum*, 2003; by *modo*, 2003.

**Punishment**,

see **Penalty**.

**Purpose,**

dat. of, 1223-1225; clauses, tense of, after perf. definite, 1754; rel. sentences of, 1817; expressed by *quod*, *id*, 1840; sentences of, with *priusquam*, 1919; sentences of, with *ut*, *nē*, &c., 1947-1964; sentences of, with *quō*, 1974; sentences of, with adv. *quī*, 1976; sentences of, with *dum*, *dōnec*, &c., 2005-2009; infin. of, 2164, 2165; expressed by acc. of gerundive construction, 2250; expressed by dat. of gerundive construction, 2256; expressed by gerundive construction or gerund with *causā*, 2164, 2258, 2270; expressed by gen. of gerundive construction alone, 2263; expressed by gen. of gerund alone, 2263; expressed by acc. of gerundive construction or gerund with *ad*, 2164, 2270; denoted by supine, 1166, 2270; expressed by partic., 2295; use of reflexive pron. in subjv. clauses of, 2341, 2342.

**Pyrrhic**, 2522.

**Pythiambic strophe**,  
in Horace, 2722, 2723.

**Qualitative,**

vowel changes, 136-143; gradation, 145.

**Quality,**

subst. suffixes denoting, 246-264; adj. suffixes denoting, 281-297; gen. of, 1239, 1240; abl. of, 1375.

**Quantitative,**

vowel gradation, 135; verse, 2548; theory of the Saturnian, 2551.

**Quantity,**

of diphthongs, 47, 125; how denoted in inscriptions, 24, 29; how denoted in books, 30, 2514; common, definition and sign of, 30, 2514; pronunciation of long and short vowels, 33, 38-40; change in quantity of vowels and preservation of long quantity, 123-133; long and short syllables, 177; of syllable containing vowel before mute or *f* followed by *l* or *r*, 178; general principles of vowel quantity, 35-36; vowel before another vowel or *h*, 35; diphthong before a vowel, 125; compounds of *prae*, 125; gen. in *āī*, 127, 7; length of *e* in *diēī*, *rēī*, *fidēī*, *ēī*, 127, 4. 601, 602; the endings *-āī*, *-āīs*, *-ōī*, *-ōīs*, *-ēī*, *-ēīs*, 127, 7; gen. in *-īus*, *-ius*, 127, 6; 618, 656, 657, 694; vowel before *nf*, *ns*, cons. *i*, gn. 122; as determining accent, 86-88; *-it* in perf., 857; *ī*, *i*, in perf. subj. 877;

**Quantity — continued.**

878; *ī*, *i*, in fut. perf., 883, 884; rules of, in classical Latin, 2429-2463; monosyllables, 2430-2433; penults, 2434-2436; final syllables ending in vowel, 2437-2446; final syllables ending in single cons. not *s*, 2447-2450; final syllables ending in *s*, 2451-2457; position, 2458; hidden, 2459-2463; some peculiarities of, in old Latin, 2464-2469; law of Iambic shortening, 2470-2472; in versification, 2514-2518.

**Quaternarius,**

iambic, 2617-2620; trochaic, 2643; anapaestic, 2687.

**Questioning,**

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1169-1171; with acc. and prepositional phrase, 1170; with indirect question, 1774.

**Questions,**

indic. in, 1499; commoner in Latin than in English, 1500; two, short (*quid est*, *quid vērō*, &c.) leading to longer, 1500; kinds of, 1501.

Yes or No questions, 1501-1525; confounded with exclamations and declarations, 1502; without interrogative particle, 1502; with *nōn*, 1502; with *-ne*, *-n*, 1503-1505; with *nōnne*, 1503, 1506; with *nōnne . . . nōn . . . nōn*, 1506; with *num*, 1503, 1507; with *numne*, 1507; *an*, *anne*, *ān nōn* in single, 1503, 1508; with *ecquis*, *ecquō*, *ecquandō*, *ēn umquam*, 1509; with *satin*, *satin ut*, 1510; how answered, 1511-1514.

Alternative, history of, 1515-1517; without interrogative particle, 1518; with *utrum*, *-ne*, *-n*, and *an*, *anne*, *an nōn*, 1519; with *necne*, 1520; with several alternatives, 1521; with *utrum*, and *-ne* and *an*, 1522; with *utrumne . . . an*, 1522; with no alternative expressed, 1523; how answered, 1525.

Pronoun questions, 1526-1530; introduced by interrogative advs., 1526; with *ut*, *how*, 1528; with *quisne*, &c., 1529; two or more with one verb, 1530.

Subjunctive questions, 1563-1570; of appeal, 1563; in alternative form, 1564; asking whether action is conceivable, 1565; in exclamative sentences, with no interrogative word or with *-ne*, 1566, 1567; with *utī*, *ut*, 1568; with *utī*, *ut*, and *-ne*, *-n*, 1569; in subordinate

# Index of Subjects.

## Questions — *continued.*

sentence, 1731; tense of, in subordinate sentence, 1753.

Indirect, defined, 1773; subjv. in, 1773; expressions introducing, 1774; with verbs of fearing, 1774, 1959; sequence of tenses in, 1760; Yes or No questions as, 1775-1777; introduced by *sī*, *sī fōrte*, 1777; alternative questions as, 1778-1784; introduced by *quī sciō an*, *quī scīs an*, *quis scit an*, 1781; introduced by *haud sciō an*, 1782; without interrogative particle, 1784; pron. questions as, 1785; original subjv. questions as, 1786; rel. constructions distinguished from, 1791; use of reflexive pron. in, 2341, 2342.

Accusative without verb in, 1150; verbal expressions denoting ability, duty, propriety, necessity in, 1495-1497; in indic. pres. or fut., intimating command, exhortation, deliberation, appeal, 1531, 1623; set forms expressing curiosity, incredulity, wrath, captiousness, 1532; threats introduced by *scīn quō modō*, 1532; united with partic., abl. abs., or subordinate sentence, 1533; coordinate with imper. or *tē rogō*, *scīn*, &c., 1697, 1787; introduced by indef. *nesciō quis*, &c., 1788, 1789; *mīrum quantum*, &c., 1790; direct, defined, 1723; question and answer, original form of rel. sentence, 1795; in apod. of conditional sentence, 2018; introduced by *nam*, 2155; in ind. disc., 2312-2314; use of *uter*, *quis*, *quī*, 2385, 2386.

## Reason,

introduced by *quod*, 1853; introduced by *nōn quō*, &c., 1855; introduced by *quoniam*, 1884; expressed by *tamquam*, 1909; coordinated members denoting, 1703; see **Cause**.

## Recessive accent,

89-91.

## Reciprocal,

action, deponents expressing, 1487, see **Reflexive**; pron., place taken by *inter nōs*, &c., *invicem*, &c., 2344, 2345; relations, expressed by *uterque* and *alter*, 2400.

## Redundant verbs, 818-823, 924-1019.

## Reduplication,

defined, 189; in prons., 650; in verb roots, 758, 828, 829; in perf., 858-861, 922-932, 989, 995, 1011.

## Reflexive pronouns,

decl. of, 644-651; possess., 652-655; possess. used instead of gen., 1234, 1262; gen. of, used possessively, 1234; preps. following, 1435; referring to subj. of verb, 2336; referring to word not the subj. of verb, 2337; in construction of acc. with infin., 2338-2340; in subordinate clauses, 2341-2343; *inter sē*, *invicem inter sē*, *invicem sē*, *invicem*, and expressions with *alter*, *alius*, for reciprocal, 2344, 2345; possess. omitted, 2346; possess. meaning *proper*, *appropriate*, *favourable*, 2346; is used for, 2370; *ipse* with, 2376; see *sui*, *suus*.

## Reflexive verbs,

1481; pres. partic. of, in reflexive sense, 1482; gerund of, in reflexive sense, 1482; deponents, 1487; with acc., 1148.

## Reizianus versus, 2625, 2626.

## Relation,

dat. of, 1217, 1218.

## Relationship,

words of, with gen., 1203.

## Relative adverbs,

711; in place of rel. pron. and prep., 1793; correlative prons. and advs., 1831; adv., *utī*, *ut*, 1935; *quoad*, 1991.

## Relative conjunctive particles,

1794; sentences introduced by, 1838-2122.

## Relative pronouns,

decl. of, 658, 659, 681-694; agreement of, 1094-1098, 1801-1811; agreement determined by sense, 1095, 1804; with several substs., 1096, 1803; referring to proper name and explanatory appellative combined, 1805; agreeing with pred. subst., 1097, 1806; equivalent to gen., 1098; verb agreeing in pers. with antec. of rel., 1807; verb agreeing in pers. with antec. of rel. implied in possess., 1807; rel. attracted to case of antec., 1808; word in appos. with rel., 1809; word explanatory of antec. agreeing with rel., 1810; *quod*, *id quod*, *quae rēs*, 1811; rel. introducing main sentence, 1835; rel. introducing main sentence put in acc. with infin. in ind. disc., 2316; with a compar., 1321, 1326; preps. following, 1434, 1435; introducing rel. sentence, 1792; representing any pers., 1792; rel. advs. instead of, 1793; developed from interrogative



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

- Result** — *continued.*  
 member equivalent to clause of, 1700;  
 dat. of, 1219-1222; suffixes denoting,  
 213, 222, 231, 234-236, 239, 249, 296.
- Rhetorical questions,**  
 see **Appeal.**
- Rhythm,**  
 defined, 2511; kinds of, 2525-2528;  
 Numeri Italici, 2549; Saturnian, 2550-  
 2554; dactylic, 2555-2580; iambic,  
 2581-2627; trochaic, 2628-2649; logaoe-  
 dic, 2650-2674; dactylo-trochaic, 2675-  
 2681; anapaestic, 2682-2690; cretic,  
 2691-2697; bacchiac, 2698-2706; chor-  
 iambic, 2707; ionic, 2708-2717.
- Rhythmical sentence,** 2532, 2533.
- Rhythmical series,** 2532, 2533.
- Rivers,**  
 names of, gender, 405, 406; decl., 518,  
 519, 549, 554, 556.
- Roots,**  
 defined, 183; nature of, 184; three  
 kinds, noun roots, verb roots, pron.  
 roots, 186; two or more forms of one  
 root, 187; vowel and cons. roots, 188;  
 reduplicated, 189; reduplicated in verbs,  
 758, 828, 829; pres. stems used as,  
 190-194, 855; used as stems, 195, 198,  
 199; used as stems in verbs, 738-743,  
 844; root stem, defined, 195; root verbs,  
 defined, 743; root verbs, inflected, 744-  
 781, 828; prin. parts of root verbs, 922.
- Route taken,**  
 advs. denoting, 707, 1376; abl. of,  
 1376.
- Sapphic,**  
 strophe, 2545; the lesser, 2666; the  
 greater, 2671-2673; in Horace, 2734,  
 2735.
- Saturnian,** 2550-2554.
- Saying,**  
 verbs of, with indef. subj., 1033; in  
 pres. of past action, 1592; in plup.,  
 1617; ind. disc. with, 1724, 2309; illo-  
 gically in subjv. in clause introduced by  
*quī, quod, cum*, 1727, 2320; coordi-  
 nated, 1696; with acc. and infin., 2175;  
 time of infin. with, 2219, 2226; see **In-  
 direct discourse.**
- Scazon,**  
 choliambus, 2597-2600; trochaic te-  
 trameter, 2639-2641.
- Secondary cases,** 1111, 1112.
- Secondary tenses,**  
 1717, 1762; rules for use of, 1740-  
 1772; subordinate to indic., 1746-1761;  
 subordinate to subjv., 1762-1765; sub-  
 ordinate to noun of verb, 1766-1769;  
 subjv. in ind. disc. or by attraction,  
 1770-1772, 2322-2324, 2326-2329; perf.  
 def. and pres. of vivid narration, 1717,  
 1752, 1754; secondary sequence with  
 primary, 1751-1753; primary sequence  
 with secondary, 1755-1760.
- Seeing,**  
 verbs of, in pres. of past action, 1592;  
 with indirect question, 1774; in pres.  
 with *postquam, ubī, ut, &c.*, 1926.
- Selling,**  
 verbs of, with gen., 1274; with abl.,  
 1388-1392.
- Semi-deponents,** 801, 1488.
- Semi-elision,** 2497.
- Semi-hiatus,** 2497.
- Sēmiquināria caesura,** 2544.
- Sēmiseptēnāria caesura,** 2544.
- Sēmitemnāria caesura,** 2544.
- Semivowels,** 52.
- Sēnārius,**  
 defined, 2536; iambic, 2583-2596.
- Sentence,**  
 defined, 1023; simple, defined, 1024;  
 simple, enlarged, 1037-1054; simple,  
 combined, 1055; simple, treated, 1099-  
 1635; declarative, defined, 1025; ex-  
 clamatory, defined, 1025; imper., de-  
 fined, 1025; coordinate and subordinate,  
 1055-1061; subordinate, history of,  
 1693-1695, 1705, 1706, 1957, see **Sub-  
 ordinate sentences**; compound, de-  
 fined, 1056; compound, abridged, 1057;  
 compound, treated, 1636-1713; com-  
 plex, defined, 1058; complex, varie-  
 ties of, 1058-1061; as advs., 712; inter-  
 rogative, defined, 1025, see **Questions**;  
 coordinate, treated, 1636-1692; inter-  
 mediate coordinate, treated, 1693-1713,  
 see **Coordination**; complex, treated,  
 1714-2122; compar., defined, 1716;  
 local, defined, 1716; temporal, defined,  
 1716, see **Temporal**; modal, defined,  
 1716; correlative, 1831; main, intro-  
 duced by rel. pron., 1835-1837; con-  
 junctive particle, 1838-2122, see  
**Conjunctive**; connection of sen-  
 tences, 2123-2159; rhythmical, 2532,  
 2533; see **Conditional, Causal, Con-  
 ccessive, Final, Consecutive, Relative sentence.**

# Index of Subjects.

- Separating,**  
verbs of, with dat., 1195, 1209; with gen., 1294; with abl., 1302-1306, 1294; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2268; adjs. of, with gen., 1263; with abl., 1306.
- Separation,**  
expressed by supine in *-ū*, 2277; see **Separating**.
- Septēnārius,**  
defined, 2536; iambic, 2610-2616; trochaic, 2629-2635; anapaestic, 2686.
- Sequence of tenses,**  
1745-1772; subjv. subordinate to indic., 1746-1761; subjv. subordinate to subjv., 1762-1765; subjv. subordinate to noun of verb, 1766-1769; subjv. in ind. disc. or by attraction, 1770-1772, 2322-2324, 2326-2329.
- Series,**  
rhythmical, 2532, 2533; stichic, 2546.
- Service,**  
adjs. of, with dat., 1200.
- Serving,**  
verbs of, with dat., 1181, 1182.
- Sharing,**  
verbs meaning, with gen., 1263.
- Shortening,**  
of vowels, 124-132; of vowel before another vowel, 124; in final syllable, 129-132; in nom. of *-ā-* stems, 130, 1; 436; in neut. plur., 130, 2; 461; in abl. ending *e* of cons. stems, 502; in verb endings, 130, 132; in nom. ending *-or*, 132; in *mihī, tibī, sibī, ibī, ubī, alicubī, nēcubi, sīcubi, ubinam, ubivīs, ubicumque, ibīdem*, 129, 2; in iambic words in verse, 129, 1; before *-n* for *-sn*, 129, 1; in perf. ending *-ērunt*, 857; in perf. subjv., 876; variations of quantity, 134; in first syllable of *ille, illic, quippe, immō, &c.*, 2469; iambic, rule of, 2470-2472; vowel before another vowel retained long, 127; long vowel in specific endings in Old Latin, 132.
- Showing,**  
verbs of, with two accusatives, 1167.
- Sibilants,**  
79.
- Simple,**  
words, defined, 181; formative suffixes, defined, 200; sentence, defined, 1024, see **Sentence**.
- Singular number,**  
in nouns, defined, 414; lacking, see **Defective**; with different meaning from plur., 418, 480; in substs., in agreement, 1077-1081, see **Agreement**; in adjs., prons., partic., in agreement, 1082-1098, see **Agreement**; in collective sense, 1099; of a class, 1100; neut., of adjs. used as substs., 1093, 1101, 1250; of other adjs. used as substs., 1102, 1103; in verbs, defined, 722; in verbs, in agreement, 1062-1076, 1080, see **Agreement**; of gerundive, with *nostrī, &c.*, 2260.
- Smell,**  
verbs of, with acc., 1143.
- Softening,** 2504.
- Sonants,** 75.
- Sotadean,** 2712, 2713.
- Sound,**  
one of the divisions of Latin Grammar, treated, 1, 16-179; change of, in vowels, 55-113; change of, in diphthongs, 80-88; change of, in consonants, 114-154; see **Substitution, Development, Disappearance, Assimilation, Dissimilation, Interchange, Lengthening, Shortening, Weakening, Hiatus, Contraction, Elision, Affinities, Pronunciation, Accent, Quantity**.
- Sounds,**  
continuous, defined, 51; momentary, defined, 51; classified, 54.
- Source,**  
abl. of, 1312-1315, 1426; expressed by gen., 1232; expressed by adj., 1427.
- Space,**  
extent of, denoted by acc., 1151-1156, 1398, 1475; denoted by abl., 1153, 1399.
- Sparing,**  
expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.
- Specification,**  
abl. of, 1385; acc. of, see **Part concerned**; gen. of, see **Genitive**.
- Spirants,** 78.
- Spondaic verse,**  
defined, 2556; use, 2566, 2567.
- Spondee,**  
defined, 2521; irrational, 2524.
- Statements,**  
general, with *antequam. priusquam*, 1912-1914; particular, with *antequam. priusquam*, 1915-1921.



# Index of Subjects.

## Stems,

defined, 195; roots used as, 195, 198, 199; root used as stem in root verbs, 738-743, 828, 844; pres., used as roots, 190-194, 855; new, how formed, 196; root stem, defined, 195; stem vowel retained before ending, in verbs, 367, 840; retained in nouns, 400; noun stems classified, 399; noun stems, how found, 421; how indicated, 421; nouns with two forms of stem or two stems, 401, 413, 470, 475, 531, 545, 566-569, 603, 632; prons. with, 645, 652, 672; verbs with, 720, 818-823, 924-1019; -ā-stems of substs., decl. of, 432-445; -o-stems of substs., decl. of, 446-466; cons. stems of substs., decl. of, 467-512, see **Declension**; -i- stems of substs., decl. of, 513-569, see **Declension**; mixed, 513; -ū- stems, decl. of, 585-595; -ē- stems, decl. of, 596-607; -o- and -ā- stems of adjs., decl. of, 613-620, 432-466; cons. stems of adjs., decl. of, 621-626, 467-512, see **Declension**; -i- stems of adjs., decl. of, 627-636, 529-569, see **Declension**; of pres. partic. 632; of personal prons., 645; of *hic*, 662; of *is*, 672; of *ipse*, 679; of *quī*, *quis*, 681, 687-689; of the verb, number of, 718; defective verbs, 805-817; formation of, 824-919, 365-375, see **Formation**; verbs arranged according to prin. parts, 920-1022, see **Verbs**.

**Stichic series**, 2546.

## Stipulation,

verbs of, with purpose clause, 1950.

## Striving,

verbs of, with purpose clause, 1950;  
with complementary infin., 1953.

## Strophe,

defined, 2545; Alcaic and Sapphic, 2545.

## Stuff,

abl. of, 1312-1315; gen. of, 1255.

## Subject,

of sentence, defined, 1023; subst. or equivalent word or words, 1026; in nom., 1027; when expressed and when omitted, 1028-1034; enlarged, 1038-1047; subordinate sentence as, 1715; **quod** sentence as, 1845; **cum** sentence as, 1871; complementary clause as, 1948; infin. as, 2167, 2207-2215; perf. partic. as, 2289; nom., of infin., 1535; acc., of infin., 2173; of infin., omitted, 1537, 2183; gen. of, 1232-1238.

## Subjunctive mood,

tenses of, 716; how translated, 717.

Formation of tenses of, pres., 841-843; impf., 849, 850; perf., 876-878; plup., 881; short or old forms, 885-893.

Uses of, forms of **possum** and **dē-beō** in, 1498; of desire, 1540-1553; in wishes, 1540-1546; in exhortation, direction, statement of propriety, obligation, necessity, prohibition, 1547-1552; expressing willingness, assumption, concession, 1553; of action conceivable, in simple sentences, 1554-1562; accompanied by **fōrtasse**, &c., 1554; **velim**, **nōlim**, **mālim**, 1555; **vellem**, **nōllem**, **māllem**, 1560; in questions, in simple sentences, 1563-1569; tenses of, in simple sentences, 1634, 1635; tenses of, in subordinate sentences, 1740-1772; sequence of tenses, 1740-1745; subordinate to indic., 1746-1761; subordinate to subjv., 1762-1765; subordinate to noun of verb, 1766-1769; tenses of, in ind. disc. and by attraction, 1770-1772, 2322-2324; tenses of, in conditional protases in ind. disc., 2326-2329; in coordination, 1705-1713, see **Coordination**; in ind. disc., 1722-1727, 2312-2324, 2326-2329; of attraction or assimilation, 1728; of repeated action, 1730; of wish, action conceivable, interrogation, in subordinate sentence, 1731; of indirect question, 1773-1786, see **Questions**; indic. questions apparently indirect, 1787-1791: **sī**, **sī forte** with, 1777; rel. sentence equivalent to conditional prot., 1812; with indef. rel. prons. and advs., 1814; rel. sentences of purpose in, 1816, 1817; rel. sentences of characteristic or result in, 1816, 1818-1823; with **dignus**, **indignus**, **idōneus**, 1819; coordinated with subst., adj., or partic., 1820; with antec. omitted, indef. antec., or **nēmō est quī**, **nihil est quod**, &c., 1821, 1822; rel. sentences of cause, reason, proof, concession in, 1824-1830; **quippe quī**, **ut quī**, **ut pote quī** with, 1827; parenthetical, **quod sciam**, **quī quidem**, 1829; with **quod**, **quia**, 1838-1858; with **cum**, 1859, 1870, 1872, 1873, 1877-1881; with **quoniam**, 1882-1884; with **quotiēns**, **quotiēns-cumque**, 1887; with **quam**, 1896, 1897; with **quamquam**, 1900, 1901; with **quamvis**, 1904, 1905; with **quamlibet**, 1907; with **tamquam**,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

# Index of Subjects.

## Suffix — *continued.*

quality, 291-297, 282, 283; denoting material or resemblance, 299-301; denoting appurtenance, 302-330; denoting supply, 331-338; forming diminutives, 339, 340; compar. suffixes, 346-348; superl. suffixes, 349-352; denoting place, 317, 321, 347.

Adverb suffixes, diminutive, 341; of compar. and superl., 361-364.

Verbal suffixes, denominative, 365-375; frequentative or intensive, 371-374; desiderative, 375; meditative, 375; inceptive or inchoative, 834; -nō, -tō, -iō, 832, 833, 835-838.

Pronoun suffix -met, 650, 655; -pte, 655; -ce, 662-664, 669, 670.

## Summary,

asyndeton of, 2127.

## Superlative,

Of adjs., suffixes of, 349-352; of adjs. in -er, 344, 350; of adjs. in -ilis, 345, 350, 359; lacking, 359, 360; formed from stems and roots, 342; formed by *māximē*, 360.

Of adverbs, endings of, 361-363; lacking, 364; with gen., 1242.

Use of *summus*, &c., 1249; abl. with words of superl. meaning, 1393; used when two things are compared, 1456; expressed by compar. and neg, 1462; of more than two things, 1465; strengthened by *ūnus*, *quam*, *maximē*, &c., 1466, 1892, 1903; denoting high degree, 1467; absolute, 1467; of eminence, 1467, 1468; strengthened by a compar., 1468; accompanied by *vel*, 1671; agreeing with a rel., 1810; *tam . . . quam quī*, *quantus*, *ut*, &c., 1892; double, with *quam . . . tam*, 1893; represented by *quamvis* with adj. or adv., 1903; *ut quisque*, *quisque* with, 1939.

## Supine,

acc. or abl. of substs. in -tu- (-su-), 235, 2269; the supines, verbal nouns, 732, 2269; formation of, 900; lacking, 900; denoting purpose, 1166, 2270; use of supine in -um, 2269-2273; use of supine in -ū, 2269, 2274-2277.

## Surds, 75.

## Surprise,

expressed by dat., 1211; questions of, 1532, 1566-1569; verbs of, with *quod*, *quia*, 1851; with *cum*, 1851, 1875; with acc. and infn., 2187, 2188, 2184; expressed by infn., 2216.

**Syllaba anceps**, 2533, 2534.

**Syllabic function**, 22, 82, 83.

## Syllables,

final, vowel of shortened, 129-132; see **Shortening**; vowel of retained long, 132; quantity of, 177; containing h, qu, 177; containing short vowel before mute or f followed by l or r, 178; division of, 175; names of, 175; irrational, 2524; see **Accent**, **Atonic**.

**Synaeresis**, 2500.

**Synaloepha**, 2498.

**Synapheia**, 2510.

## Syncope,

defined, 111, 168, 2508; in versification, 2541.

## Synecdochical,

acc., see **Part concerned**.

**Synizesis**, 117, 2499.

## System,

the pres., 828-853, 365-367, 738-740; the perf., 854-919, 738-740, see **Formation**; in versification, defined, 2547.

**Systolé**, 2507.

## Taking away,

verbs of, with dat., 1209; with infn. of purpose, 2165.

## Taking up,

verbs of, with infn. of purpose, 2165.

## Taste,

verbs of, with acc., 1143.

## Teaching,

verbs of, with two accusatives, 1169-1171; with acc. and infn., 2197.

## Telling,

verbs of, with indirect question, 1774.

## Temporal,

sentences, defined, 1716; subjv. of ind. disc. and attraction in, 1722, 2319; subjv. of repeated action in, 1730; *cum*, 1859-1873; *quoniam*, 1882, 1883; *antequam*, *priusquam*, &c., 1911-1922; *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *quamdiū*, 1991; *quandō*, 2010-2012; *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, &c., 1923-1934; coordinated member equivalent to, 1699.

## Tempus,

in versification, 2515.

## Tendency,

dat. of, 1219-1222.

## Tenses,

of the indic., 716; of the subjv., 716; of the imper., 716; meanings of, 717; from two stems, 720; formation of, 824-

# Index of Subjects.

## Tenses — *continued.*

919, see **Formation**; primary and secondary, 1717; sequence of, 1740-1745.

In simple sentences, pres. indic., 1587-1593, 1601; impf. indic., 1594-1601, 1495-1497; fut., 1619-1625; perf. indic., 1602-1613, 1616; plup. indic., 1614-1618, 1607, 1609; fut. perf., 1626-1632, 1607, 1609; subjv., 1634, 1635, 1540-1569.

In subordinate sentences, indic., 1732-1739; subjv., general remarks, 1740-1745; subjv. subordinate to indic., 1746-1761; subjv. subordinate to subjv., 1762-1765; subjv. subordinate to noun of the verb, 1766-1769; subjv. in ind. disc. or by attraction, 1770-1772, 2322-2324; conditional protases in ind. disc., 2326-2329; use in indirect questions, 1773-1791; use in rel. sentence, 1792-1837; use with conjunctive particles, 1838-2122.

Of infin., 2218-2236, 2321; conditional apodoses in ind. disc., 2330-2334; of partic., 2278-2299; see **Present**, &c.

## Ternārius,

iambic, 2621-2623; trochaic, 2644-2646.

## Tetrameter,

defined, 2536; dactylic, 2577, 2578; iambic, 2604-2609; trochaic, 2629-2641; anapaestic, 2684-2686; cretic, 2694-2696; bacchiac, 2701-2703; ionic, 2712-2716.

## Tetrapody,

defined, 2531; logaoedic, 2660-2663.

## Tetraseme, 2516.

## Tetrastich, 2545.

## Thanks,

expressed by fut., 1622; *ita . . . ut* in, 1542, 1622, 1937.

## Theme,

of verb, 738-740.

## Thesis, 2520.

## Thinking,

verbs of, with indef. subjv., 1033; with two accusatives, 1167; coordinated, 1696; ind. disc. with, 1724; illogically in subjv. in rel. clause, 1727, 2320; with acc. and infin., 2175; time of infin. with, 2219, 2226; see **Indirect Discourse**.

## Threat,

introduced by question, 1532; expressed by fut., 1619; implication of in fut. perf., 1629.

## Threatening,

expressions of, case with, 1181-1185; with acc. and infin., 2186; with pres. infin., 2186.

## Thymelicus, 2697.

## Time,

duration of, denoted by acc., 1151-1156; acc. of duration of made subj. in pass., 1475; duration of, denoted by abl., 1355; at which, denoted by acc., 1156; at which, denoted by loc., 1341; at which, denoted by abl., 1350, 1351, 1353; within which, denoted by abl., 1352-1354; before or after which, 1394-1397, 1154; denoted by advs., 1438; rel. of subordinate sentence, 1732, 1741; independent, of subordinate sentence, 1738, 1744; *antequam* with nouns denoting, 1920; *postquam* with nouns denoting, 1929; denoted by abl. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2266; of partic., 2279-2281; expressed by abl. abs., 1367; expressed by partic., 2295; see **Temporal**.

A, in versification, defined, 2515.

## Titles,

of books, use of nom. in, 1114-1116; of office, with gerundive construction, 2254.

## Tmesis,

defined, 1407, 2509; in *quicumque*, 692.

## Towns,

names of, form of loc. case of, 438, 460, 504, 554; decl. of, 518, 549, 554, 557; in acc. with expressions of motion, 1157-1160; used adjectively, 1233; constructions with, to denote place from which, 1307-1310; constructions with, to denote place in or at which, 1331-1336, 1342, 1343; rel. advs., *ubi*, *quō*, *unde*, referring to, 1793.

## Transfer of quantity,

133.

## Transition,

expressed by *quid quod*, 1849; expressed by *quoniam*, 1884; *hic* and *ille* in, 2353, 2360.

## Transitive use,

verbs of, defined, 1133; used intransitively, 1133, 1479; verbs usually intransitive used as, 1137, 1139, 1191; with double acc., 1138; with dat., 1192-1199, 1205-1210; used impersonally, 1479; use of gerundive of, 2180, 2246, 2247; use of gerund of, 2242, 2255, 2259, 2265.

# Index of Subjects.

**Trees**,  
names of, gender, 407, 408, 573.

**Trial**,  
expressions of, with *sī*, *sī forte*, 1777.

**Tribrach**, 2521.

**Trimeter**,  
defined, 2536; dactylic, 2579; iambic (senarius), 2583-2596; the choliambus, 2597-2600; iambic, catalectic, 2601-2603; cretic, 2697.

**Tripody**,  
defined, 2531; iambic, 2624; trochaic, 2647, 2648; logaoedic, 2659.

**Triseme**, 2516.

**Tristich**, 2545.

**Trithemimeral caesura**, 2544.

**Trithemimeris**, 2531.

**Trochaic**,  
rhythms, 2628-2649; tetrameter catalectic, 2629-2635; tetrameter acatalectic, 2636-2638; tetrameter claudus, 2639-2641; nine-syllabled Alcaic, 2642; dimeter acatalectic, 2643; dimeter catalectic, 2644-2646; tripody acatalectic, 2647; tripody catalectic, 2648; monometer, &c., 2649; dactylo-trochaic, 2675-2681; strophe, in Horace, 2721.

**Trochee**, 2521.

**Trusting**,  
verbs of, case with, 1181-1185.

**Try**,  
verbs meaning, with infin., 2169.

**Undertaking**,  
verbs of, with gerundive construction, 2250.

**Unfulfilled**,  
wishes, tenses of, 1544, 1545; conditions, see **Non-occurrent**.

**Union**,  
verbs of, case with, 1186.

**Unit of Measure**, 2515.

**Unsyllabic function**,  
22, 82, 83.

**Useful**,  
adjs. meaning, cases with, 1200; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2252.

**Value**,  
abl. of, 1388-1392.

**Valuing**,  
verbs of, with gen., 1271-1275.

**Variable**,  
vowel, 824-827, 839, 840, 758, 759, 366.

**Variations of quantity**, 134.

**Velars**, 44, 77.

**Verbs**,  
defined, 12; endings of, shortened, 129; endings of, retained long, 132; reduplicated verb roots, 758, 828, 829; reduplicated perf., 858-861, 923-932; primitive, theme in, 738-741; compounded with nouns or noun stems, 384, 395; with preps., 391, 392, 396; with verb stems, 394; with advs., 396; root verbs, defined, 743; irregular, defined, 743; inflected, 744-781; semi-deponents, 801, 1488.  
Inflection of, 713-1022; the stem, 714-720; the person ending, 721-731; nouns of the verb, 732; prin. parts, 733-735; designation of the verb, 736, 737; theme of the verb, 738-740; arrangement of the verb, 741, 742; inflection of primitive verbs, 743-791; inflection of denominative verbs, 792-797; deponent, 798-801; periphrastic forms, 802-804; defective verbs, 805-817, 907, 922-1019; redundant verbs, 818-823, 924-1019.  
Formation of stems of, 824-919; variable vowel, 824-827; pres. indic. of root verbs, 828; pres. indic. of verbs in -ere, 829-838; pres. indic. of denominatives, 339, 840; pres. subjv., 841-843; imper., 844-846; impf. indic., 847, 848; impf. subjv., 849, 850; fut., 851-853; perf. indic., 854-875; perf. subjv., 876-878; perf. imper., 879; plup. indic., 880; plup. subjv., 881; fut. perf., 882-884; short or old forms, 885-893; infin., 894-898; gerundive and gerund, 899; supine, 900; pres. partic., 901-903; fut. partic., 904, 905; perf. partic., 906-919; formation of denominative verbs, 365-375.  
List of, 920-1022; root verbs, 922; verbs in -ere, perf. stem without suffix, 923-951; verbs in -ere, perf. stem in -s-, 952-961; verbs in -ere, perf. stem in -v-, 962-970; verbs in -ere, perf. stem in -u-, 971-976; deponents in -ī, 977-986; verbs in -āre, perf. stem without suffix, 989, 990; verbs in -āre, perf. stem in -v-, 991, 992; verbs in -āre, perf. stem in -u-, 993; deponents in -ārī, 994; verbs in -ēre, perf. stem without suffix, 985-998; verbs in



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## *Index of Subjects.*

---

### **Wish — *continued.***

ordinate sentence, 1731; expressed by imper., 1571; as prot. of conditional period, 2110.

### **Wishing,**

verbs of, with double acc., 1172; subjv. coordinated with, 1707; with *ut*, *nē*, 1950; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2189, 2190, 2228; with perf. act. infin., 2223, 2224; with perf. pass. infin., 2229; see **Desire**.

### **Without,**

expressed by partic. and neg., 2296.

### **Wondering,**

verbs of, with indirect question, 1774; with *quod*, *quia*, 1851; with *cum*,

### **Wondering — *continued.***

1851, 1875; with acc. and infin., 2187, 2188, 2184.

### **Words,**

simple, defined, 181; compound, defined, 181; gender words, 398, 402; their sound, 2-179; their formation, 180-396; their inflection, 397-1022.

### **Yes,**

how expressed, 1511, 1512.

### **Yes or No Questions,**

1501-1525; in indirect questions, 1775-1777; see **Questions**.

### **Yielding,**

expressions of, case with, 1181-1185.

# INDEX OF LATIN WORDS.

THE REFERENCES ARE TO SECTIONS.

- a**, the vowel, pronunciation of, 33, 38, 40, 41, 43; final, quantity of, 2437-2439.  
**a**, weakened to **e**, 104; weakened to **i**, 104; weakened to **u**, 104.  
**ā**, how denoted in inscriptions, 29, 1 and 3.  
**ab** (**ā**), prep., 1417; form of, 164, 2; with abl. proper, 1297; in expressions of distance, 1153; after **aliēnus**, 1202; expressions with, used with adjs., 1268; with abl. of separation, &c., 1304; with town names, 1308; denoting origin, 1309; expressing source, 1312; expressing cause, &c., 1317; expressing doer of action, 1318, 1476, 1477, 2243; with act. verbs equivalent to pass., 1318; with things and animals, 1318, 1477; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2267; with subst. and partic., 2285, 2286; quantity of, 2430, 2432.  
**abeō**, forms of, 766.  
**abhinc**, with acc., 1154; with abl., 1154.  
**abiēs**, gender and decl. of, 477; quantity of **e** in, 2456.  
**abigō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**abnueō**, forms of, 819.  
**aboleō**, prin. parts of, 1003.  
**abolēscō**, prin. parts of, 968.  
**abs**, prep., 1417; pronunciation of, 54, 164; form of, 71c.  
**abscondō**, perf. of, 860.  
**absēns**, 749, 902.  
**absente nōbis**, 1092.  
**absiste**, with infin., for **nōlī**, 1584, 2170.  
**absorbeō**, forms of, 1006.  
**absque, apsq̄ue**, 1421, 1701, 2110.  
**absum**, with abl. of amount of difference, 1153; with dat., 1212; **paulum abest**, &c., with **quīn**, 1986.  
**abunde**, with partitive gen., 1248.  
**abūtor**, with acc., 1380.  
**ac**, quantity, 2433; see **atque**.  
**accēdit**, with **quod**, 1845; with **ut**, 1965.  
**Accherūns**, in acc., 1157; in loc., 1336; in abl., 1307, 1336, 1343.  
**accidō**, forms of, 930; tense after, 1758; **accidit** with result clause, 1965, 1966.  
**accīdō**, prin. parts of, 930.  
**accipiō**, with acc. and infin., 2175; **accēpimus** with pres. infin., 2220.  
**accītus**, 919.  
**accommodātus**, with dat. of person and acc. with **ad** of thing, 1201; with gerundive construction, 2254.  
**accumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.  
**ācer**, comparison of, 344; decl. of, 627-629.  
**acēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**aciēs**, decl. of, 606, 607.  
**acquiēscō**, defective, 905.  
**acuō**, form of, 367, 839, 840; perf. of, 865; prin. parts of, 947.  
**acus**, gender of, 588; decl. of, 592.  
**ad**, prep., 1410; in comp., form of, 148; position of, frequently following a relative, 1435; compounds of, with acc., 1137; compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other constructions with, 1190, 1191, 1196, 1198; with **urbem** or **oppidum**, 1159; signifying motion towards or nearness, 1160; with country names and appellatives, 1161; expressions with, used with adjs., 1201, 1268; **adque adque**, 1408; **ad id** introductory to sentence with **quod**, 1847; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2164, 2252, 2270; with subst. and partic., 2285, 2286.  
**adaequē**, correlative of **ut**, 1937.  
**adamussim**, form of, 549, 698, 699.  
**addō**, with **quod**, 1846.  
**adeō**, verb, conjug. of, 763, 766.  
**adeō**, adv., correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970.  
**adeps (adips)**, decl. of, 480; gender of, 480, 580.



## Index of Latin Words.

- adfati**m, form of, 549, 699; with partitive gen., 1248.
- adfīnis**, decl. of, 558; with gen., 1263; with dat., 1268.
- adgredior**, forms of, 791, 799, 986.
- adhūc**, form of, 93; with partitive gen., 1253; with compar., 1459.
- adiciō**, with *quod*, 1846.
- adigō**, construction with, 1198.
- adimō**, perf. of, 823; with infin. as obj., 2206.
- adipīscor**, 980; with gen., 1292; **adep-tus** as pass., 1492.
- adiuero**, **adiuerit**, 891.
- adlegō**, prin. parts of, 937.
- adliciō**, prin. parts of, 956.
- admodum**, adv., 698, 699.
- adnexuerant**, 960.
- adolēscō**, prin. parts of, 968.
- ador**, gender of, 575.
- adorior**, forms of, 791.
- ad ravim**, adv., 549.
- adsentiō**, **adsentior**, 800, 1015, 1488; with *haud*, 1449.
- adspergō**, constructions with, 1199.
- adsuēfaciō**, with acc. and infin., 2197.
- adūlō**, 1489.
- adūlor**, with dat. or acc., 1184.
- adultus**, with act. meaning, 907, 1485.
- adveniō**, forms of, 822.
- adversum**, prep., 1410; verbs combined with, followed by dat., 1187.
- adversus**, prep., 1410; used after *im-pius*, 1201; expression with, instead of objective gen., 1261.
- advertō**, see *animum advertō*.
- advesperāscit**, perf. of, 872.
- advorsum quam**, 1895.
- ae**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 49, 96; for earlier *ai*, 96; change of sound of to *ē*, 96; weakened to *ei* and *ī*, 108.
- aedīle**, decl. of, 558.
- aedis**, sing. and plur. of, meaning, 418; decl. of, 522, 540, 541.
- aegrē . . . cum**, 1869.
- Aegyptus**, use of acc. of, 1161; use of loc. of, 1336.
- aemulus**, with gen., 1263; with dat., 1183, 1268.
- aequālis**, decl. of, 558.
- aequē**, with abl., 1392; with compar., 1463; followed by *et*, 1653; **aequē . . . quam**, 1890; correlative of *ut*, 1937.
- aequius erat**, 1497.
- aequius est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1495, 1496.
- aequus**, constructions with, 1201; agreeing with abl. of quality, 1240; **aequī** as gen. of value, 1275; with abl., 1392; **aequum est**, **erat**, implying non-occurrent action, 1495, 1497; **aequum est** with infin., 2211; **aequum est** with perf. pass. and act. infin., 2230.
- aes**, form of, 58; decl. of, 430, 491; dat. in *-ē*, 501; gender of, 491, 572; use of plur. of, 1108.
- aestimō**, with gen. of value, 1271; with abl. of value, 1273, 1390.
- age**, used of several persons, 1075; with imper., 1572; **age sis**, 1572; asyndeton with, 1641.
- agedum**, 93, 1572, 1573.
- agidum**, with imper., 1572.
- agite dum**, 1573.
- agnōscō**, fut. partic. of, 905; perf. partic. of, 919; prin. parts of, 965.
- agō**, pres. stem of, 829; perf. of, 863; perf. partic. of, 916; prin. parts of, 937; compounds of, 937; **grātiās agō** with *quod* and *cum*, 1852, 1875.
- ai**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 50, 96; weakened to *ae*, *ei*, *ī*, 96.
- ai**, weakened to *ē*, 96.
- aiō**, form of, 23; 153, 2; conjug. of, 785, 786; old forms of, 787; defective, 786, 805.
- albeō**, defective, 809.
- āles**, decl. of, 506.
- alēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- algeō**, perf. of, 868; prin. parts of, 1000.
- algēscō**, prin. parts of, 959.
- aliās**, adv., 702; with fut. perf., 1630.
- alicubī**, quantity, 129, 2; form of, 709.
- aliēnus**, formation of, 319; with gen., 1202, 1238; with dat., 1200; with abl., 1306; with *ab* and abl., 1202; with *domus*, 1337.
- aliquamdiū**, accent of, 92.
- aliquis**, **aliquī**, decl. of, 692; with correlatives, 695; sing. defining plur. subst., 1080; neut. acc. used adverbially, 1144; common use of, 2390; equivalent to **aliquis alius**, 2391.
- Ālis**, use of acc. of, 1161; use of abl. of, 1347.
- aliter**, followed by *et*, 1653; **nōn aliter**, correlative of *ut*, 1937; with *sī*, 2021.
- alius**, gen. sing. of, 127, 6: 618-620; decl. of, 618-620; **alis**, **alid**, 619; **aliut**, 659; **alius modī**, 619; sing. defining plur. subst., 1080; abl. of comparison with, 1323; followed by *et*, 1653; **aliī . . . aliī**, 1687; **aliī sunt**



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



## Index of Latin Words.

- Arpinās**, accent of, 88 ; decl. of, 533.  
**artua**, nom. and acc. plur., 586.  
**artūs**, decl. of, 592.  
**ās**, form of, 171, 1; decl. of, 539; stems of, 569; gender of, 539, 578; **āssis** as gen. of value, 1272; meaning and divisions of, 2427.  
**ast**, 1685.  
**at**, use of, 1676, 1685, 2151; correlative of **sī**, 2018.  
**atque**, connecting subst. with sing. or plur. verb, 1064-1066; after a compar., 1324, 1654; after words of likeness and unlikeness, 1653; in comparisons after positive, 1654; use of, as copulative conj., 1644, 1647, 1652-1655, 2147, 2148; force of, 1652; **atque . . . atque**, 1652; meaning *but*, 1655; **atque**, (**ac**), **nōn**, &c., 1659; **-que . . . atque**, 1664; **atque . . . et**, 1664; **atque . . . -que**, 1664; **neque . . . ac**, 1665; **simul atque**, 1923-1934; **idem atque**, 2373.  
**atquī**, form of, 706; use of, 2152.  
**atquīn**, 2152.  
**atteruisse**, 963.  
**attingō**, forms of, 925.  
**attondeō**, 995.  
**attribuō**, with gerundive construction, 2250.  
**au**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 47, 49; change of sound of, to **ō** and **ū**, 97, 108.  
**au**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123.  
**aucupō**, 1489.  
**audeō**, forms of, 801, 1488.  
**audiō**, conjug. of, 796, 797; **audiō cum**, 1870; used personally in pass., 2178.  
**augeō** prin. parts of, 999.  
**auspicātō**, as adv., 704, 1372.  
**auspicō**, 1489.  
**aut**, connecting subst. with sing. or plur. verb, 1070; **aut . . . aut** connecting subst. with sing. or plur. verb, 1070; use of, 1667-1669, 2149.  
**autem**, introducing parenthesis, 1642; position of, 1676; common use of, 1677; in questions, 1678; with **sī**, **sīn**, 2021; introducing adversative sentence, 2151.  
**auxilium**, sing. and plur. of, meaning, 418; dat. of, with verb, 1220, 1223.  
**avē**, **havē**, 805.  
**aveō**, defective, 809.  
**avis**, decl. of, 521, 555.  
**axis**, gender of, 579.
- b**, sound of before **s** or **t**, 54, 164; from **v**, **f**, or **p**, 161; assimilation of, 164, 2 and 4; monosyllables ending in, with vowel short, 2432.  
**balbutiō**, defective, 810.  
**balsamum**, gender of, 408.  
**bātuō**, 367.  
**bellī**, loc., 460; use of, 1338.  
**bellō**, with dat., 1186.  
**Bellius**, form of, 161.  
**bellum**, form of, 161.  
**bellus**, comparison of, 358.  
**bene**, comparison of, 363; verbs combined with, followed by dat., 1187; quantity, 2440.  
**beneficus**, comparison of, 353.  
**benevolēns**, comparison of, 354.  
**benevolus**, comparison of, 354; constructions with, 1201.  
**bēs**, decl. of, 539; meaning of, 2427.  
**bētō**, **bītō**, defective, 808; pres. stem of, 835.  
**bibō**, conjug. of, 744, 758; root verb, reduplicated, 744, 758; form of **bibit**, 828; perf. of, 859, 2435; perf. of compounds of, 860; prin. parts of, 922; **dō bibere**, with infin. of purpose, 2164; **ministrō bibere**, 2164.  
**biceps**, form of, 104; decl. of, 533.  
**bīlis**, decl. of, 521, 555.  
**bīnī**, formation of, 317; decl. of, 643; **bīnūm**, 462, 643; use of, 2405, 2420.  
**bipennis**, decl. of, 551.  
**bipēs**, decl. of, 532, 636.  
**bis**, quantity, 2433.  
**bis tantō quam**, 1895.  
**blandior**, prin. parts of, 1021.  
**bōlētus**, gender of, 408.  
**bonus**, form of, 161; comparison of, 355; decl. of, 613; **bonī** as gen. of value, 1275.  
**bōs**, gender and decl. of, 494.  
**brevis**, decl. of, 630, 631.  
**būrim**, 548; gender of, 579.  
**Burrus**, for later **Pyrrhus**, 21.
- c**, the sign, earliest form of, 20; used as abbreviation, 20; sound of, 20, 55; **q** written for, 20, 690; medial, how treated, 170, 4; medial, disappearance of, 170, 1-5; changed to **g**, causing development of vowel, 164, 6.  
**cadō**, compounds of, 860, 930; prin. parts of, 930; followed by **ab** and **abl.**, 1318.  
**caedēs**, decl. of, 523, 563; form **caedis**, 541.

## Index of Latin Words.

- caedō**, perf. of, 858; prin. parts of, 930; compounds of, 930.  
**caelebs**, defective, 624.  
**caelestis**, -um in gen. plur., 563.  
**caelicolūm**, gen., 439, 2449.  
**caelite**, **caelitēs**, decl. of, 477, 626.  
**caleō**, defective, 905; prin. parts of, 1006.  
**calēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**calix**, decl. of, 473; gender of, 473, 581.  
**callis**, gender of, 579.  
**calveō**, defective, 809.  
**calx**, *heel*, decl. of, 531; gender of, 531, 581.  
**calx**, *limestone*, decl. of, 531; gender of, 531, 581.  
**canālis**, decl. of, 520, 554; gender of, 579.  
**candeō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**candēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**cāneō**, defective, 809.  
**cānēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**canis (canēs)**, gender and decl. of, 486, 500, 566.  
**canō**, prin. parts of, 924.  
**capāx**, with gen., 1267.  
**capēssō**, prin. parts of, 970.  
**capīō**, conjug. of, 784; pres. stem of, 832, 836; perf. of, 863; forms **capsō**, &c., 887; prin. parts of, 940; compounds of, 940.  
**cardō**, decl. of, 485; gender of, 485, 574.  
**carduus**, gender of, 408.  
**careō**, defective, 905; prin. parts of, 1006; constructions with, 1303, 1304.  
**carnifex**, form of, 108.  
**carō**, decl. of, 545; gender of, 545, 574.  
**carpō**, prin. parts of, 953; compounds of, 953.  
**Carthāginī**, see **Karthāginī**.  
**Carystus**, how used in abl., 1308.  
**cassēs**, gender of, 579.  
**caudex**, see **cōdex**.  
**caulis**, gender of, 579.  
**causa**, gen. of definition with **causā**, 1257; **causā** expressing cause, &c., 1317; **causā** resembling prep., 1406; **nūlla causa est quīn**, 1983; **causā** with gerundive construction or gerund, 2164, 2258, 2270.  
**cautēs**, decl. of, 523.  
**caveō**, perf. of, 864; prin. parts of, 996; **cavē**, used of several persons, 1075; **cavē**, **cavē nē**, **cavētō nē**, &c., with subjv., 1585, 1711, 1950, 1960.  
**-ce (-c)**, enclitic, 93, 113; in **hīc**, 663, 659; in **istic**, **illic**, 669, 670; in **sīc**, 2015; quantity, 2433.
- cedo**, 805; coordinated, 1712; with short o, 2443.  
**cēdō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**cēlō**, with double acc., 1169; with **dē** and abl., 1170; constructions with pass. of, 1171.  
**cēnātus**, with act. meaning, 907.  
**cēnseō**, prin. parts of, 1005; coordinated, 1708; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2175, 2193.  
**centum**, indeclinable, 637.  
**cernō**, pres. stem of, 833; prin. parts of, 964; **cernitur**, impersonally, 2181.  
**certē**, in answers, 1512; correlative of **sī**, 2018.  
**certō**, verb, with dat., 1186.  
**certō**, adv., in answers, 1512.  
**cēsor**, form for **cēnsor**, 63.  
**cēterum**, use of, 1676, 1683.  
**cētus**, decl. of, 508.  
**ceu**, 2118.  
**ch**, sound of, 72; use of, 72.  
**Chersonēsus**, in loc., 1336.  
**cicer**, gender of, 573.  
**cicur**, defective, 624.  
**cieō**, forms of, 821; perf. partic. of, 918; prin. parts of, 1002; defective, 1002.  
**cingō**, prin. parts of, 954.  
**circā**, adv. and prep., 707, 1410, 1412; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2253.  
**circiter**, prep., 1410; not compounded, 1406.  
**circum**, prep., 1410; compounds of, with acc., 1137; with double acc., 1138; with dat., 1194, 1195; other constructions with, 1196.  
**circumdō**, conjug. of, 757; constructions with, 1199.  
**circumfodiō**, forms of, 791.  
**circumfundō**, constructions with, 1199.  
**circum stō**, perf. of, 860.  
**cis**, comparison of, 357; prep., 1410; quantity, 2433.  
**citerior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 357.  
**citimus**, formation of, 351; comparison of, 357.  
**citius quam**, 1897.  
**cito**, with iambic shortening of the final o, 130, 3; 2442.  
**citrā**, prep. and adv., 1410, 1412.  
**citus**, 918, 2436.  
**civis**, decl. of, 521, 555.  
**clādēs**, decl. of, 523; form **clādis**, 541.  
**clam**, as adv., 1415; with acc., 1415; with abl., 1415.

## Index of Latin Words.

- clangō**, defective, 808.  
**clārēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**classis**, decl. of, 521, 555.  
**claudō**, **claudēō**, defective, 808.  
**claudō**, **clūdō**, prin. parts of, 958; compounds of, 958; form **clūdō**, 109.  
**clāvis**, decl. of, 519, 551, 555.  
**Clōdius**, form of, 97.  
**clueō**, defective, 809.  
**Cn.**, abbreviation for **Gnaeus**, 18.  
**cōdex**, form of, 97.  
**coemō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**coēō**, with dat., 1186.  
**coepī**, defective, 812; synopsis of, 812; forms of pres. system, 99, 813, 940; form **coēpī**, 120, 813, 863; form **coeptūrus**, 814; prin. parts of, 940; use of act. and pass. of, 1483.  
**coerceō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**cōgnōscō**, form of, 169, 2; perf. partic. of, 919; prin. parts of, 965; used personally in pass., 2178.  
**cōgō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**collis**, decl. of, 556; gender of, 579.  
**colō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**colus**, gender of, 447.  
**com-**, compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; other constructions with, 1190, 1196, 1197.  
**combūrō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**comedō**, conjug. of, 771.  
**comitia**, with gerundive construction, 2254.  
**comminīscor**, prin. parts of, 980.  
**commiserēscit**, construction with, 1283.  
**commodum**, acc. as adv., 701, 1156.  
**commonēfaciō**, with double acc., 1291; with acc. and gen. or **dē** and abl., 1291.  
**commoneō**, with double acc., 1291; with acc. and gen. or **dē** and abl., 1291.  
**commūnis**, constructions with, 1202, 1238.  
**commūtō**, with abl., 1389; with **cum**, 1389.  
**cōmō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**comparō**, construction with, 1197.  
**compectus**, 980.  
**compede**, **compedium**, 532; stems of, 569; gender of, 532, 572.  
**compercō**, forms of, 930; **comperce** with infin. for **nōlī**, 1584.  
**comperiō**, **comperior**, forms of, 1012; used personally in pass., 2178.  
**compescō**, prin. parts of, 976; **conpesce** with infin. for **nōlī**, 1584.  
**compingō**, prin. parts of, 938; perf. of, 863.  
**complector**, pres. stem of, 835; prin. parts of, 985.  
**compleō**, with gen., 1293; with abl., 1386.  
**complicō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**complūrēs**, decl. of, 623.  
**compos**, defective, 624; with gen., 1263; quantity of second **o** in, 2457.  
**comprimō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**compungō**, prin. parts of, 954.  
**concedō**, coordinated, 1710; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 1954; used personally in pass., 2178.  
**concidō**, perf. of, 860.  
**concinō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**concitus (concitus)**, 919.  
**concolor**, decl. of, 537, 559.  
**concors**, decl. of, 532, 559.  
**concrēduō**, 756.  
**concupīscō**, prin. parts of, 968.  
**concurrō**, with dat., 1186.  
**condignē**, with abl., 1392.  
**condōnō**, with double acc., 1172.  
**cōnficior**, **cōnfīō**, 790.  
**cōnfidō**, forms of, 801, 1488; with dat., 1181; with abl., 1349.  
**cōnfiteor**, prin. parts of, 1010.  
**cōnfricō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**cōnfringō**, prin. parts of, 938.  
**congruō**, prin. parts of, 947; **congruere** for **congruere**, 819.  
**cōniveō**, prin. parts of, 1000.  
**conlocō**, with **in** and abl., 1424; with gerundive construction, 2250; with supine, 2271.  
**conquīrō**, prin. parts of, 967.  
**conrigō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**conruptus**, 938.  
**cōnsciūs**, with gen., 1263; with gen. and dat. or dat. alone, 1265; with gen. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2258.  
**cōnserō**, prin. parts of, 922.  
**cōnspergō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**cōnstituō**, prin. parts of, 947; with **in** and abl., 1424; with purpose clause, 1950; with infin., 1953, 2169.  
**cōnsulō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**cōnsultus**, adj., with gen., 1263; with **iūre**, 1268.  
**contāgēs**, decl. of, 603.  
**contendō**, with dat., 1186; with purpose clause, 1951; with acc. and infin., 1954; with infin., 2169.  
**conticēscō**, **conticīscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**contineō**, with **quīn**, 1986.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## Index of Latin Words.

- dāmma**, gender of, 433.  
**danunt**, 756, 833.  
**dapis**, decl. of, 480.  
**dē**, prep., 1417; with abl. proper, 1297; comparison of, 357; compounds of, with dat., 1194, 1195; compounds of, other constructions with, 1196; expressions with, used with adjs., 1268; with **meminī** and **recordor**, 1289; with **venit in mentem**, 1290; expressing source, 1312; with abl. of material, 1314; expressing cause, &c., 1317; **susque dēque**, 1408; position of, 1435; **dē eō** introductory to sentence with **quod**, 1847; introducing acc. and infin., 2176; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2267; expression with, instead of partitive gen., 1246.  
**dea**, decl. of, 442.  
**dēbeō**, usual and open forms of, 1004; with dat., 1193; implying non-occurrent action, 1496; in subjv., 1498; with infin., 2169; in past tense with pres. infin., translation of, 2222; with perf. infin., 2223.  
**dēcernō**, with subj. coordinated, 1708; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 1954, 2193; with infin., 1953, 2169.  
**dēcerpō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**decet**, with dat. or acc., 1184; with abl., 1392; implying non-occurrent action, 1496; with subjv. coordinated, 1709; with subj. infin., 2209; with perf. pass. and act. infin., 2230.  
**decimus**, form of, 2412; formation of, 352.  
**decōrus**, with abl., 1392.  
**dēcumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.  
**decumus**, 2412.  
**dēfetiscor**, prin. parts of, 984.  
**dēfit**, &c., 790.  
**dēfricō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
  
**dēgener**, decl. of, 537, 559, 636.  
**dēgō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**dehibuistī**, 1004.  
**deinde**, disyllabic, 93; **primum (prīmō) . . . deinde . . . tum**, 1687.  
**dēleō**, defective, 900; prin. parts of, 1001.  
**dēmō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**dēmum**, **tum**, correlative of **sī**, 2018.  
**dēnārius**, gen. plur. of, 462.  
**dēnique**, **tum**, correlative of **sī**, 2018.  
**dēnotō**, with gerundive construction, 2250.  
**dēns**, decl. of, 533, 543; gender of, 580.  
**dēnsō**, **dēnsēō**, 820.  
**dēpeciscor**, 980.  
**depsō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**dērupier**, 975.  
**dēscendō**, prin. parts of, 950.  
**\*dēses**, defective, 624.  
**dēsiderō**, with acc. and infin., 2190.  
**dēsinō**, forms of, 893, 964; use of act. and pass. of, 1483; with infin., 2169; with **o** shortened, 2443.  
**dēspondeō**, prin. parts of, 995.  
**dēsūm**, with dat., 1212; **nōn dēsunt quī**, 1822.  
**dētendō**, forms of, 924.  
**dēterior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 357.  
**dēterreō**, with **nē**, 1960, 1977; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977; with **quīn**, 1986.  
**dēterrimus**, comparison of, 357.  
**dētineō**, prin. parts of, 1004.  
**dētondeō**, forms of, 995.  
**dētrahō**, with dat., 1209.  
**deūnx**, decl. of, 531; meaning of, 2427.  
**deus (dīvos, dīus)**, declension of, 450, 462, 2449.  
**dēvortor**, forms of, 801.  
**dēxtāns**, decl. of, 533; gender of, 580; meaning of, 2427.  
**dexter**, formation of, 347; decl. of, 616.  
**dexterior**, formation of, 348.  
**dextimus**, formation of, 351.  
**Dīāna**, quantity of **i** in, 127, 8.  
**dīcō**, imper. of, 113, 846; imper. of compounds of, 88; form **dixtī**, 886; form **dīxe**, 886; prin. parts of, 953; use of **dixerim**, **dīcō**, 1555; **dīcam** after **vel**, 1670; used personally in pass., 2178; **dīcitur**, impersonally, 2181; **dīcī**, subj. of, omitted with verbs of desire, 2190.  
**dīēs**, gen. and dat. sing., 127, 3; gender of, 597; decl. of, 601, 602; repeated in rel. sentence, 1796.  
**differō**, with dat., 1186; with **quīn**, 1986.  
**difficilis**, comparison of, 345, 359; **difficile est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1496; with acc. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2274; with supine in **-ū**, 2274.  
**diffidō**, forms of, 801, 1488.  
**diffindō**, perf. of, 861.  
**dignus**, with abl., 1269, 1392; with gen., 1269; with acc., 1144, 1392; with **quī**, 1819; with infin., 1819; with **ut**, 1819; with supine in **-ū**, 2276.

## Index of Latin Words.

- diligō**, perf. of, 823; prin. parts of, 953.  
**dīmicō**, forms of, 993.  
**dīnōscō** (**dīgnōscō**), 965.  
**dirruptus**, 938.  
**dīs**, decl. of, 533, 559.  
**dis-**, inseparable prep., 392, 1409.  
**discō**, form of, 170; pres stem of, 834; perf. of compounds of, 860; prin. parts of, 927.  
**discolor**, decl. of, 537.  
**discors**, decl. of, 532, 559.  
**discrepō**, with dat., 1186; **discrepāvit**, 993.  
**discumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.  
**dispandō**, **dispendō**, forms of, 950.  
**dispār**, decl. of, 537, 561.  
**dispennite**, 950.  
**displīceō**, prin. parts of, 1004.  
**dissentiō**, with dat., 1186.  
**dissiciō**, form of, 104, 940.  
**dissideō**, prin. parts of, 997.  
**dissimilis**, comparison of, 345; agreeing with abl. of quality, 1240.  
**distendō**, forms of, 924.  
**distō**, with abl. of amount of difference, 1153; with dat., 1186.  
**diū**, comparison of, 364.  
**dīū**, *open sky*, quantity of *i* in, 127, 2.  
**dīus**, quantity of *i* in, 127, 2.  
**dīves**, decl. of, 477, 625; defective, 624; with gen., 1264; with abl., 1268, 1387.  
**dīvidō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**dīvus** (**dīvos**), see **deus**.  
**dō**, two verbs, 754; root verb, 744; conjug. of, 744, 754; **duim**, &c., 756, 841; quantity of *a* in, 755; old forms of, 756, 841; **interduō**, **concrēduō**, **crēduam**, &c., 756; compounds of, 757; perf. of, 859, 2435; perf. of compounds of, 860; perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 922; with **vēnum**, 1165; **nōmen dō**, case with, 1214; with subjv. coordinated, 1712; **dō bibere** with infin. of purpose, 2164; with infin. as obj., 2206; with acc. of gerundive construction, 2250; with supine, 2271; with perf. partic., 2297; form **dō** not elided before short vowel, 2487; form **dem** not elided before short vowel, 2495.  
**doceō**, defective, 900; prin. parts of, 1004; with **dē** and abl., 1170; with double acc., 1169; constructions with pass. of, 1171; with acc. and infin., 2175, 2197; used personally in pass., 2178.  
**dōdrāns**, decl. of, 533; gender of, 580; meaning of, 2427.  
**doleō**, defective, 905; prin. parts of, 1006; with acc., 1139; with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851; with acc. and infin., 2188.  
**-dolēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**domō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**domus**, gender of, 447, 588; decl. of, 594; **domī**, 594, 708; use of, 1337; **domō**, as adv., 703; use of, 1311; with **in**, 1337; **domūi**, loc., 594, 1337; **domum**, use of, 1162-1164, 1129, 699; **domōs**, 1163.  
**dōnec**, form of, 1991; meaning *all the time while*, 2002; meaning *until*, 1993, 2007-2009.  
**dōneque**, **dōneque cum**, 2007.  
**dōnicum**, 1991, 2007, 2009.  
**dōnique**, form of, use of, 1991, 2007, 2009.  
**dōnō**, with double acc., 1172; other constructions with, 1199.  
**-dormiscō**, prin. parts of, 968.  
**dōs**, decl. of, 430, 477; dat. sing. in **-ei**, 502; gender of, 576.  
**dubitō**, with **an**, 1782; with **quīn**, 1986, 1987; **nōn dubitō quīn** as expansion of apod., 2114; with infin., 1987, 2169; with acc. and infin., 1987; with indirect question, 1987.  
**dūcō**, imper. of, 113, 846; imper. of compounds of, 173, 846; prin. parts of, 953; with **prō** and abl., 1168; with dat., 1222; with gen. of value, 1271.  
**duelli**, loc., 1338.  
**dum**, enclitic, 93; with imper., 1572, 1573; with pres. indic. of fut. action, 1593; meanings of, 1991-1993; **dum . . . dum**, *one while . . . another*, 1992; use of, when meaning *in the time while*, 1993-1998; with pres. indic., 1995; with fut., 1996; with impf. and plup. indic. and impf. subjv., 1997; denoting cause, 1998; meaning *all the time while*, 1993, 1994, 1999-2001; of proviso, with or without **modo**, **quidem**, 1993, 1994, 2003, 2110; meaning *until*, 1993, 1994, 2004, 2005; indic. with **dum**, *while*, where subjv. with **dum**, *until*, is expected, 2006.  
**dūmī**, gender of, 408.  
**duo**, dual, 415; decl. of, 442, 464, 639, 640; with **ex** or **dē**, 1246; with short final vowel, 2442.  
**duplex**, decl. of, 531.  
**dūrēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**Dūria**, gender of, 406.



## Index of Latin Words.

- e**, the vowel, pronunciation of, 33, 38-41, 43, 44; final, quantity of, 2437, 2440, 2441.
- e**, disappearance of, 113; weakening of, in unaccented syllables, 103-105; in perf. partic., 910; development of, 111, *b*.
- ē**, how denoted in inscriptions, 29, 1 and 3; from **ā**, 96; from **ae**, 104; from **aī**, 96; weakened to **ī**, 103.
- ē** (**ex**), quantity of, 2430; see **ex**.
- eapse**, &c., 680.
- ebur**, gender and decl. of, 489.
- ēcastor**, with acc., 1149.
- ecce**, combined with **iste**, **ille**, 667; combined with **is**, 673; with nom., 1117; with acc., 1149; with dat., 1206.
- ecfodiō**, forms of, 791.
- ecquis**, **ecquī**, decl. of, 692; in questions, 1509.
- ecquandō**, in questions, 1509.
- ecquō**, in questions, 1509.
- edepol**, with acc., 1149.
- ēditus**, with abl., 1312.
- edō**, conjug. of, 769, 770; pass. forms of, 770; compounds of, 771; form **ēsus**, 137; form of **ēst**, 828; forms **edim**, &c., 841; form of **ēsem**, &c., 850; form of **ēsse**, 895; prin. parts of, 922.
- efficiō**, prin. parts of, 940; with purpose clause, 1951; with result clause, 1965.
- effigiēs**, decl. of, 607.
- effit**, &c., 790.
- effulgeō**, forms of, 1000.
- egeō**, prin. parts of, 1006; compound of, 1006; with gen., 1293, 1305; with abl., 1303, 1304.
- ego**, decl. of, 644-651; length of **o** in, 645, 2442; **mī**, 132; **mihī**, 60, 2446; when used, 1029; dat. of, with acc. of exclamation, 1150; with subjv. questions, 1566; **mē**, subj. of infin., omitted, 2183; **nōs**, subj. of infin., omitted, 2183; **nostrī** with gerundive, 2260; represented by **sē** in ind. disc., 2325; use of **nostrūm**, **nostrī**, 2335; **inter nōs** expressing reciprocal relation, 2344; **ipse** with, 2376.
- egomet**, 93.
- ehem**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123.
- ēheu**, quantity of **e** in, 127, 8; with voc. nom. and voc., 1123; with acc., 1149.
- eho**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123.
- eī**, diphthong, pronunciation of, 50; origin and change of, 98, 764, 789; in inscriptions to denote **ī**, 29.
- eī**, interjection, with dat., 1206.
- ēia**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123.
- ēiciō**, prin. parts of, 940.
- ēliciō**, prin. parts of, 975.
- ēluviēs**, decl. of, 607.
- em**, combined with **ille**, 667; with acc., 1149; with dat., 1206.
- ēmineō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- emō**, defective, 900; prin. parts of, 937; compounds of, 823, 937, 953.
- ēmorig**, forms of, 791.
- ēmungō**, prin. parts of, 954.
- ēn**, with nom. of exclamation, 1117; with acc., 1149; **ēn umquam** in questions, 1509.
- endo**, 1402, 1422; with short final vowel, 2442.
- ēnecō**, forms of, 993.
- enim**, introducing parenthesis, 1642; position of, 1688; meaning *indeed, verily*, &c., 1688; use of, 1688, 2154, 2155.
- enimvērō**, in answers, 1512.
- ēnsis**, decl. of, 522; gender of, 579.
- eō**, verb, conjug. of, 759, 762; pass. forms of, 763; compounds of, 763-767, 895; old and inscriptional forms of, 764, 765; forms with **v**, 767, 823; forms **īs**, &c., **eis**, &c., 764; form of **it**, 828; form of **eam**, &c., 842; gerundive of, 899; no supine, 900; pres. partic. of, 902; perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 922.
- With **exsequiās**, **infitiās**, **malam crucem**, **malam rem**, **vēnum**, 1165; **ī** with imper., 1572; **ī**, asyndeton with, 1641; **ī nunc**, 1641; with infin. of purpose, 2164; with supine, 2271; **īrī** with supine, 2273; with **o** shortened, 2443; quantity in **iīt**, 2450.
- eō**, adv., 710; with gen., 1254.
- Ephesus**, loc. and abl. of, 1334.
- Epidamnus**, loc. and abl. of, 1334.
- Epidaurus**, loc. and abl. of, 1334.
- ergā**, prep., 1410; used after **benevolus**, 1201; expression with, instead of objective gen., 1261.
- ergō**, gen. of definition with, 1257; resembling prep., 1406; denoting inference, 1688, 2158; **ergō igitur**, 1689; **itaque ergō**, 1689; with gen. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2258; with shortened **o**, 2442.
- ērigō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- ēripiō**, prin. parts of, 975.
- escit**, **escunt**, 748.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



## Index of Latin Words.

- fateor**, prin. parts of, 1010; compounds of, 1010.  
**fatiscō**, defective, 808.  
**faveō**, prin. parts of, 996.  
**febris**, decl. of, 519, 550, 555.  
**fel**, gender and decl. of, 430, 482; quantity, 2433.  
**femur**, gender and decl. of, 489.  
**ferē**, quantity, 2440.  
**feriō**, defective, 810.  
**fermē**, quantity, 2440.  
**ferō**, conjug. of, 772, 780, 781; form **tulī**, 860, 2435; form **tetulī**, 781, 860; form **tolī**, 781; compound forms, **rettulī**, **rētulī**, 781, 861; defective, 780, 807, 900; form of **fert**, 828; form of **feram**, &c., 842; form of **fer**, &c., 844; prin. parts of, 922; **ferunt**, *they say*, 1033; used reflexively, 1481, 1482; **molestē ferō** with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851.  
**fertilis**, comparison of, 359; with gen., 1263.  
**ferveō**, **fervō**, 821, 866; prin. parts of, 998.  
**fervēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**ficus**, gender of, 408.  
**fidēlis**, constructions with, 1201.  
**fidēs**, gen. and dat. sing. of, 160; defective, 600; decl. of, 602.  
**fidō**, forms of, 801; with abl., 1349.  
**figō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**fīlia**, decl. of, 442; with **familiās**, 437.  
**fīlius**, gen. sing. of, 456; voc. sing. of, 459; nom. plur. **fīlī**, 461; dat. and abl. sing. **fīlīs**, 464; with **familiās**, 437.  
**findō**, perf. of, 861, 2435; prin. parts of, 934; with **o** shortened, 2443.  
**fungō**, prin. parts of, 954.  
**finis**, difference of meaning in sing. and plur., 418; decl. of, 556; gender of, 579; **fīnī** as prep. with abl., 1406, 1419; as subst. with gen., 1419; position of, 1419; **fīne** with gen., 1419.  
**fiō**, conjug. of, 785, 788; quantity of **i** in, 127; supplying parts of **faciō**, 788, 1471; form **fiō**, 789; form **fieri**, 789, 895; **fiere**, 789, 895; quantity of **i** in **fieri**, &c., 789; in composition, 394, 790; defective, 807; fit with **quōminus**, 1977.  
**flāgitō**, with double acc., 1169; with ab and abl., 1170; constructions with pass. of, 1171; with **ut**, 1950.  
**flāveō**, defective, 809.  
**flectō**, pres. stem of, 835; prin. parts of, 960.  
**fleō**, prin. parts of, 1901; with acc., 1139.
- fligō**, forms of, 953.  
**flō**, prin. parts of, 991.  
**floccl**, as gen. of value, 1272.  
**flōreō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**flōrēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**fluō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**fodiō**, forms of, 791; pres. stem of, 836; prin. parts of, 946.  
**follis**, gender of, 579.  
**forās**, use of, 1162.  
**forceps**, decl. of, 480; gender of, 580.  
**forfex**, gender of, 581.  
**fornix**, gender of, 581.  
**forsan**, with subjv., 1554.  
**forsitan**, form of, 712; with subjv., 1554.  
**fortasse**, with subjv., 1554; introducing concessive period, 2150; with subj. infin., 2209.  
**foveō**, prin. parts of, 996.  
**frangō**, perf. of, 863; prin. parts of, 938; compounds of, 938.  
**fremō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**frētus**, with abl., 1349.  
**fricō**, prin. parts of, 993; compounds of, 993.  
**frīgēscō**, prin. parts of, 959.  
**frūgī**, comparison of, 353; indeclinable, 431; as adj., 431; with **bonae**, 1220.  
**fruor**, prin. parts of, 978; with abl., 1379; with acc., 1380; use of gerundive of, 2244.  
**frūstra**, **frūstrā**, 701, 707, 2467.  
**fugiō**, pres. stem of, 836; defective, 905; prin. parts of, 940; **fuge** with infin. for **nōlī**, 1584, 2170.  
**fulgeō**, forms of, 1000.  
**fundō**, prin. parts of, 944.  
**fungor**, prin. parts of, 979; with abl., 1379; with acc., 1380; use of gerundive of, 2244.  
**fūnis**, gender of, 579.  
**furfur**, gender of, 583.  
**fūstis**, decl. of, 521, 555; gender of, 579.
- g**, introduction of, 20; form of, 20; followed by **v**, 27; sound of, 20, 57; from **c**, 164, 6; initial before **n**, disappearance of, 169, 2; medial, disappearance of, 170, 1; assimilation of, 166, 9; **gn**, quantity of vowel preceding, 122, *c*.  
**Gāia**, abbreviated, 20.  
**Gāius**, abbreviated, 20; quantity of **a** in, 127, 5; decl. of, 127, 7; 458.  
**ganniō**, defective, 810.  
**gaudeō**, forms of, 801, 1488; with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851; with **sī**, 2068; with acc. and infin., 2188; with perf. infin., 2231.

## Index of Latin Words.

- gemō**, prin. parts of, 972; with acc., 1139.  
**generātus**, with abl., 1312.  
**genius**, voc. sing. of, 459.  
**genū**, gender of, 586; decl. of, 592.  
**gerō**, form of, 154; prin. parts of, 953.  
**gignō**, forms of, 973; **genitus** with abl., 1312.  
**glīs**, decl. of, 538, 544; stems of, 569; gender of, 579.  
**gliscō**, defective, 808.  
**glōmus**, 62, 491.  
**glōrior**, with abl., 1349.  
**glūbō**, defective, 808.  
**Gnaeus**, abbreviated, 20; diphthong before vowel in, 125.  
**gracilis**, comparison of, 345.  
**gradior**, conjug. of, 799; compounds of, 791, 799, 986; pres. stem of, 836; prin. parts of, 986.  
**grātia**, sing. and plur. of, meaning, 418; **grātiā**, gen. of definition with, 1257; **grātiā**, expressing cause, &c., 1317; **grātiā**, resembling prep., 1406; **grātiās agō** with **quod** and **cum**, 1852, 1875; **eā grātiā . . . quod**, 1854; **grātiā** with gen. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2258.  
**grātulor**, with **quod**, 1852; with **cum**, 1852, 1875.  
**grave est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1496.  
**grex**, decl. of, 472; gender of, 581.  
**grūs**, gender and decl. of, 494.
- h**, from guttural aspirate, 152; not a cons., 177; medial, disappearance of, 151; elision before, 2482, 2493.  
**habēō**, prin. parts of, 1004; compounds of, 1004; with **prō** and abl., 1168; with dat., 1222; with gen. of value, 1271; **habētō**, 1576; with perf. partic., 1606, 2297; with gerundive, 2245, 2250.  
**Hadria**, gender of, 433.  
**haereō**, defective, 905; prin. parts of, 1000; with dat., 1186.  
**hau**, use of, 1450.  
**haud**, see **haut**.  
**hauddum**, following **cum**, 1868.  
**hauriō**, fut. partic. of, 905; forms of, 1014.  
**hausciō**, formation of, 396, 1450.  
**haut**, **haud**, with adjs., advs., verbs, 1449; **haud sciō an**, &c., 1449, 1554, 1782.
- havē**, **avē**, 805.  
**hebeō**, defective, 809.  
**hebes**, decl. of, 533, 635.  
**hēia**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123; with short final vowel, 2438.  
**hem**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123.  
**hercle**, in answers, 1513.  
**herī**, **here**, 1341.  
**heu**, with nom. of exclamation, 1117; with acc., 1149; with gen., 1295.  
**heus**, with voc. nom. and voc., 1123.  
**hīc**, decl. of, 658-665; nom. plur., **hīsce**, 461, 664, 665; dat. and abl. plur., **hībus**, 664, 665; formation of, 659, 662; with short vowel, 664, 2466; inscriptional forms of, 665; full form with **-ce**, 663;  
**hoice**, 658; **hīcine**, 663; with correlatives, 695; **huius**, quantity, 153, 2.  
 Adj. equivalent to gen., 1098; rules for agreement of, 1094-1098; neut. acc. used adverbially, 1156; neut. with partitive gen., 1248; **huius** as gen. of value, 1272; with rel., 1797; correlative of **quī**, 1831; used instead of repeated rel., 1833; correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970; **hōc . . . quō**, 1973; as connective, 2129, 2130; **hoc ipsum**, **tōtum hoc**, as attribute of infin., 2215; pointing out what is near in place, time, or thought, 2347; referring to the speaker, 2348; **haec** meaning *the realm, our country*, &c., 2349; expressing something familiar, with shade of contempt, 2350; referring to words of a sentence, 2351; **hīc** and **ille** contrasted, 2352-2355; in concessions, 2361; **īdem** used with, 2372.  
**hīc**, adv., 708, 1340; defined by loc., 1340; quantity of vowel in, 2466.  
**hiemps** (**hiems**), form of, 167, 495; decl. of, 430.  
**hinc**, adv., 710; as coordinating word, 1691.  
**hīscō**, defective, 808.  
**Hispalis**, decl. of, 518, 549, 554; in abl. with **in**, 1335.  
**homō**, **hominēs sunt quī**, 1822; **hominem** as indef., 2212; expressing feeling, as admiration or contempt, 2365; with short final vowel, 2442, form, 144.  
**honōrificus**, comparison of, 353.  
**horreō**, prin. parts of, 1006; with acc., 1139.  
**horrēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**hosticapās**, nom., 436.  
**hostis**, decl. of, 517, 552.  
**hūc**, with gen., 1254.

## Index of Latin Words.

- humilis, comparison of, 345.  
 humus, gender of, 447; *humī*, loc., 460; use of *humī*, 1337; *humō*, use of, 1311.
- i**, as vowel and as cons., how represented, 22, 24, 26; the vowel, pronunciation of, 33, 38-41; the cons., pronunciation of, 59; the cons., how represented, 24, 26; the doubled consonant, how represented, 23; the cons., medial, disappearance of, 153, 2; *ii* (cons. and vowel), the combination, 52; interchange of vowel and cons., 153, 4; *i longa*, 23, 24; final, quantity of, 129, 2437, 2445, 2446.
- i**, intermediate sound between **u** and **a**, 23, 103; from **a**, 104; from **e**, 103; from **o**, 105; medial, disappearance of, 111; weakened to **e**, 107, *b*; in perf. subjv., 878; in fut. perf., 883.
- i**, how denoted in inscriptions, 29, 2; from *ai*, *ae*, 108, *a*; from *oi*, *oe*, 108, *a*; from *ei*, 108, *a*, 764, 789; in perf. subjv., 877; in fut. perf., 884.
- iaceō*, prin. parts of, 1006.  
*iaciō*, form of, in compounds, 52, 104, 940; pres. stem of, 836; perf. of, 863; defective, 905; prin. parts of, 940.
- iamdiū*, accent of, 92.  
*ibī*, quantity, 129, 2; 2446; form of, 709; *ubī* . . . *ibī*, 1831.  
*ibīdem*, quantity, 129, 2.  
*icī*, forms of, 937.  
*idcircō*, as coordinating word, 1691; *idcircō* . . . *quod* (*quia*), 1854, 1855, 2067; before *ut*, *nē*, 1961; correlative of *sī*, 2018, 2067.
- īdem*, decl. of, 676-678; abl. of, with *locī*, 1252; correlative of *quī*, 1831; used instead of repeated rel., 1833; connecting two different predicates to same person or thing, 2371; used with *hīc*, &c., 2372; followed by *quī*, &c., meaning *the same as*, 2373.
- ideō*, as coordinating word, 1691; *ideō* . . . *quod*, 1854; *ideō* . . . *quia*, 1854, 1855, 1858, 2067; before *ut*, *nē*, 1961; correlative of *sī*, 2067.
- idōneus*, with dat. and acc., 1201; with *quī*, 1819; with infn., 1819.  
*īdūs*, gender of, 588.  
*iecur*, gender and decl. of, 489.  
*igitur*, position of, 1688; *ergō igitur*, 1689; correlative of *sī*, 2018; use of, 1688, 2158.
- ignis*, decl. of, 521, 555.  
*ignōrō*, with *haud*, 1449.  
*ignōscō*, form of, 170, 6; fut. partic. of, 905; prin. parts of, 965.  
*īlicet*, form of, 712; with acc., 1149.  
*īlicō*, adv., 698, 703; correlative of *sī*, 2067; with shortened **o**, 2442.  
*ille*, decl. of, 656-659, 666-668; *illut*, 659; old and inscriptional forms of, 667, 668; combined with *ecce* and *em*, 667; with correlatives, 695.  
 Adj. equivalent to gen., 1098; rules for agreement of, 1094-1098; neut. with partitive gen., 1248; with subjv. questions, 1566; with rel., 1797; correlative of *quī*, 1831; used instead of repeated rel., 1833; correlative of *ut*, *ut nōn*, 1970; of ind. disc. representing *tū* and *vōs* of direct discourse, 2325; *hīc* and *ille* contrasted, 2352-2355; pointing to what is remote in place, time, or thought, 2358; pointing out a celebrity, 2359; indicating change of subj., 2360; in concessions, 2361; in poetry, to repeat a thing with emphasis, 2362; in poetry, to emphasize the second of two ideas, 2363; in poetry, to anticipate the real subj., 2364; *īdem* used with, 2372; first syllable of, shortened, 2469.  
*illī*, *illic*, adv., 708; use of, 1340; quantity of second **i**, 2466.  
*illic*, decl. of, 669, 670; rare forms of, 670; quantity of second **i**, 2466; first syllable of, shortened, 2469.  
*imber*, form of, 111, *b*; decl. of, 525, 542, 556.  
*Imbros*, in abl. with *in*, 1334.  
*imbuō*, prin. parts of, 947.  
*immāne quantum*, 1790.  
*immemor*, decl. of, 537, 559.  
*immineō*, defective, 809.  
*immō*, in answers, 1514; with shortened **o**, 2442; first syllable of, shortened, 2469.  
*impār*, decl. of, 537, 561.  
*impediō*, with *nē*, 1960, 1977; with *quōminus*, 1960, 1977; with acc. and infn., 2203.  
*imperō*, use of, 2202.  
*impertiō*, constructions with, 1199.  
*impingō*, prin. parts of, 938; perf. of, 863.  
*impius*, constructions with, 1201.  
*impleō*, with gen., 1293; with abl., 1386.  
*implicō*, prin. parts of, 993.  
*impos*, quantity of **o** in, 2457.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## Index of Latin Words.

- intereā**, with partitive gen., 1253; **cum intereā**, 1868.  
**interemō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**intereō**, followed by **ab** and **abl.**, 1318.  
**interest**, constructions with, 1276-1279.  
**interferī**, 790.  
**interim**, **cum interim**, 1868.  
**interior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 357.  
**interlegō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**intermittō**, with **quīn**, 1986.  
**internōscō**, prin. parts of, 965.  
**interrogō**, with double acc., 1169; with **dē** and **abl.**, 1170; constructions with **pass. of**, 1171.  
**intervāllum**, use of **abl. of**, 1399.  
**intibus**, gender of, 408.  
**intimus**, formation of, 351; comparison of, 357; with partitive meaning, 1249.  
**intonō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**intrā**, in expressions of time, 1396; **prep.**, 1410; **intrā . . . quam**, 1929.  
**invehō**, used reflexively, 1482.  
**inveniō**, used personally in **pass.**, 2178.  
**inveterāscō**, prin. parts of, 968.  
**invicem**, **adv.**, 699; **invicem inter sē**, **invicem sē**, **invicem**, expressing reciprocal relations, 2345.  
**invictus**, comparison of, 358.  
**invitus**, comparison of, 358; use of **dat. of**, 1218.  
**iō**, with **voc. nom** and **voc.**, 1123.  
**ipse**, the superlative **ipsissumus**, 358; **decl. of**, 656, 657, 679, 680; **gen. of**, in apposition with **possess. pron.**, 1235; with **abl. abs.**, 1366; **ipsum**, **hoc ipsum**, as attribute of **infin.**, 2215; in contrasts, 2374, 2375; with **personals** and **reflexives**, 2376; standing for **sē** or **suus**, 2377; meaning *actual, positive, even*, 2379; meaning *regular, proper, real*, 2380; and **et ipse**, meaning *as well, likewise, too*, 2381; meaning *alone, mere*, 2382; meaning *exactly, just, precisely, right*, 2383; meaning *of oneself, voluntarily, of one's own motion*, 2384.  
**ipsissumus**, 358.  
**ipsus**, 680.  
**irāscor**, with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851.  
**is**, **dat. sing. of**, 127, 672; **decl. of**, 656-659, 671-674; **it**, 659; **stems of**, 672; old and inscriptional forms of, 673, 674; combined with **ecce**, 673; in table of correlatives, 695; **eius**, quantity, 153, 2.  
**Adj. equivalent to gen.**, 1098; **id quod**, 1811; **is, eius modī** followed by **rel. sentence of characteristic or result**, 1818; **rules for agreement of**, 1094-1098; **acc. used adverbially**, 1129, 1144, 1146, 1156, 1840; **neut. with partitive gen.**, 1248; **abl. of, with locī**, 1252; with **rel.**, 1797; **correlative of quī**, 1831; used instead of repeated **rel.**, 1833; **correlative of ut, ut nōn**, 1970; **eō . . . quō**, 1973; as **connective**, 2129, 2130; **eum**, **subj. of infin.**, omitted, 2183; in **concessions**, 2361; referring to something named in context, 2365; referring to something named before or after, 2366; with **connective**, denoting important addition, 2367; indicating something restrained or restricted by a **rel. or indef.**, 2368; used for **reflexive**, 2370; **quantity**, 2433.  
**iste**, **form of**, 171, 1; **decl. of**, 656-659, 666, 667; **istut**, 659; old forms of, 667; combined with **ecce**, 667; with **correlatives**, 695.  
 With **rel.**, 1797; **correlative of ut, ut nōn**, 1970; pointing out something connected with person addressed, 2356; expressing contempt, 2357; in **concessions**, 2361; **īdem** used with, 2372; first syllable of, shortened, 2469.  
**istī, istīc, adv.**, 708, 1340; **quantity of second i**, 2466.  
**istlc, decl. of**, 669, 670; rare forms of, 670; **quantity of second i**, 2466.  
**istice (istic), pron.**, 93.  
**istice (istic), adv.**, 93.  
**istuc, form of**, 659; **īdem** used with, 2372; with long **u**, 2448.  
**ita, ita enim vērō, ita vērō**, in answers, 1512; **nōn ita** in answers, 1513; **correlative of ut, ut nōn**, 1831, 1937, 1970; **correlative of tamquam**, 1908; preceding **quīn**, 1988; **correlative of dum, quoad, quamdiū**, 1999; **correlative of dum nē**, 2003; **correlative of sī**, 2018; **correlative of quasi, tamquam sī, &c.**, 2118; expressing affirmative coordination, 2159; introducing **acc. and infin.**, 2176; with short final vowel, 2438.  
**itaque**, position of, 1688; **itaque ergō, ergō itaque**, 1689; use of, 1688, 2158.  
**item**, **correlative of ut**, 1831, 1937.  
**iter**, **decl. of**, 500; **gender of**, 573.  
**itidem**, **correlative of ut**, 1937.  
**iūbar**, **gender and decl. of**, 489.  
**iubeō**, **form of iussī**, 100; **forms of**, 1000; with **subjv. coordinated**, 1708, 2200; with **acc. and infin.**, 2198; with **ut**,

## Index of Latin Words.

- 2200; used personally in pass., 2201; in causative use, 2304.
- iūdicium**, abl. of, with judicial verbs, 1280.
- iūdicō**, used personally in pass., 2178.
- iuncus**, gender of, 408.
- iungō**, prin. parts of, 954; with dat., 1186; **iūctus** with **cum**, 1357.
- Iuppiter**, form of, 94; formation of, 389; decl. of, 494, 500.
- iūrātus**, with active meaning, 907.
- iūrō**, with fut. infin., 2235; with pres. infin., 2236.
- iūs**, *right*, decl. of, 491, 496, 498; dat. sing. in **-ē**, 501, 507; **iūre cōsultus**, **peritus**, 1268.
- iūs**, *broth*, decl. of, 491.
- iuvenis**, comparison of, 353, 354; gender and decl. of, 486, 500, 566.
- iuvō**, perf. of, 864; form **iuerint**, 891; fut. partic. of, 905; prin. parts of, 990.
- iūxtā**, not compounded, 1406; prep. and adv., 1410, 1412; **iūxtā quam**, 1890.
- j**, the character, 26.
- k**, supplanted by **c**, 20; used as abbreviation, 20.
- kalendae**, abbreviated, 20; no sing., 417.
- Karthāginī**, 504, 708, 1331; **-ē**, 1343.
- l**, doubled, pronunciation of, 60; anaptyctical vowel inserted before, 172, 1; from **d** or **r**, 147, 166, 7; preceded by mute or **f**, 178.
- lābor**, prin. parts of, 983.
- lac**, decl. of, 478.
- lacēssō**, prin. parts of, 970.
- \***laciō**, pres. stem of, 836.
- lacteō**, defective, 809.
- lacus**, decl. of, 592.
- laedō**, prin. parts of, 958; compounds of, 958.
- Laenās**, accent of, 88.
- laetor**, with abl., 1349; with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851; with acc. and infin., 2188.
- lāmentor**, with acc., 1139.
- languēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- lanx**, decl. of, 531.
- lār**, gender and decl. of, 489.
- largior**, prin. parts of, 1021.
- largiter**, with partitive gen., 1248.
- largus**, with gen., 1264.
- lateō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- latēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- lātus**, partic., form of, 169, 4;
- lātus**, adj., with acc. appended, 1130.
- laudō**, conjug. of, 792, 793; use of pass. of, 1491.
- lavō**, forms of, 820, 864, 990; prin. parts of, 990.
- legō**, prin. parts of, 937; compounds of, 937.
- Lēmnus**, use of acc. of, 1158; use of abl. of, 1334; use of loc. of, 1334.
- lēnībunt**, 852.
- Lēthē**, gender of, 406.
- levō**, with gen., 1294; with abl., 1303, 1304.
- lēx**, abl. of, with judicial verbs, 1280.
- liber**, **librī**, in titles of books, 1115; use of abl. of, 1345.
- liber**, with gen., 1306; with abl., 1306; with prep., 1306.
- liberālis**, with gen. 1263.
- liberō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304; used personally in pass., 2178.
- libet**, form of, 28.
- liceō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- liceor**, prin. parts of, 1009.
- licet**, forms of, 816, 817; implying non-occurrent action, 1496; **sī licuerit**, 1632; coordinated, 1710; as correlative of **quamvis**, 1904; with subj. infin., 2209, 2214; with concessive partic., 2295.
- liēn**, gender of, 583.
- Liger**, decl. of, 519, 544, 556.
- linō**, pres. stem of, 832, 833; perf. partic. of, 918; forms of, 964.
- linquō**, prin. parts of, 938.
- linter**, see **lunter**.
- liqueō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- liquēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- lis**, form of, 169, 4; decl. of, 533; stems of, 569.
- littera**, sing. and plur. of, meaning, 418.
- litus**, 918, 2436.
- liveō**, defective, 809.
- locō**, with **in** and abl., 1424; with gerundive, 2250.
- locuplēs**, decl. of, 533.
- locus**, form of, 169, 4; use of abl. of, 1344, 1345; repeated in rel. sentence, 1796.
- longē**, 705; **longē ab**, 1308; with compar., 1459; with superl., 1466.
- longius**, without **quam**, 1328; with **quam**, 1328; with abl., 1328.
- longus**, with acc. appended, 1130; **longus est** implying non-occurrent action, 1496.
- loquor**, prin. parts of, 978.
- lubet** (**libet**), forms of, 816, 817.



## Index of Latin Words.

- lūceō**, prin. parts of, 999.  
**lūcēscit**, impersonal, 1034.  
**lūcēscō**, **lūciscō**, prin. parts of, 959.  
**lūcet**, impersonal, 1034.  
**lūdō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**luēs**, decl. of, 430.  
**lūgeō**, prin. parts of, 999; with acc., 1139; with acc. and infin., 2188.  
**lunter** (*linter*), decl. of, 525; gender of, 573.  
**luō**, prin. parts of, 947.  
**lūxuriēs**, decl. of, 605.
- m**, development of an anaptyctical vowel before, 172, 2; final, how treated, 61; assimilation of, 164, 3; monosyllables ending in, with vowel short, 2432; final, elided, 2493-2495.
- madeō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**madēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**Maecenās**, accent of, 88.  
**maereō**, defective, 809; with acc., 1139; with *quod*, *quia*, *quom*, 1851.  
**mage**, form of, 363.  
**magis**, form of, 363; as sign of compar., 360; *magis . . . quam*, 1457; with compar., 1463; *magis quod*, &c., . . . *quam quō*, &c., 1855; *nōn magis quam*, 1889.  
**magister**, formation of, 348.  
**magnificus**, comparison of, 353.  
**magnus**, comparison of, 353; agreeing with dat. of tendency or result, 1220; *magnī* as gen. of value, 1271, 1279; *magnō* as abl. of value, 1273, 1390, 1391; *magnum est* implying non-occurrent action, 1496.  
**maior**; form of, 23; 166, 9; comparison of, 353; agreeing with dat. of tendency or result, 1220; in expressions of age, 1329.  
**male**, comparison of, 363; verbs combined with, followed by dat., 1187; intimating negation, 1451; quantity, 2440.  
**maledicēns**, comparison of, 354.  
**maledicus**, comparison of, 354.  
**maleficus**, comparison of, 358.  
**malevolus**, comparison of, 358.  
**mālō**, form of, 170, 2; formation of, 396; conjug. of, 772, 775, 778, 779; form of *mālim*, &c., 841; prin. parts of, 922; use of *mālim*, *mālō*, 1555; use of *māllem*, 1560; coordination of forms of, 1707; with *ut*, 1950; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2189, 2190.  
**malus**, comparison of, 355; *malam crucem* and *malam rem*, 1165.
- manceps**, decl. of, 480.  
**mandō**, prin. parts of, 950; with subjv. coordinated, 1708; with purpose clause, 1950.  
**maneō**, prin. parts of, 1000.  
**manus**, gender of, 588.  
**marcēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**mare**, declension of, 526, 527, 546, 552, 557.  
**margō**, gender of, 574.  
**marmor**, gender of, 489, 575.  
**Mārspiter**, formation of, 389.  
**mās**, decl. of, 538, 544.  
**mātūrē**, comparison of, 363.  
**mātūrēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**mātūrus**, comparison of, 344.  
**maximē**, as sign of superl., 360; with superl., 1466.  
**maximus**, form of, 28; formation of, 351; comparison of, 353; agreeing with dat. of tendency or result, 1220; *maximī* as gen. of value, 1271; *maximus nātū*, superl. of *senex*, 353.  
**medius**, with partitive meaning, 1249; with loc. abl., 1346.  
**mel**, gender and decl. of, 430, 482; quantity, 2433.  
**melior**, comparison of, 355; decl. of, 503, 505, 622.  
**melius**, form of, 107, *c*; comparison of, 363; *melius est* implying non-occurrent action, 1496; *melius est* with perf. infin., 2231.  
**melos**, decl. of, 508.  
**meminī**, defective, 812; synopsis of, 812; no pass., 813; perf. imper. act.  
**mementō**, **mementōte**, 813, 879;  
**meminēns**, perf. act. partic., 907; with gen., 1287; with acc., 1288; with *dē* and abl., 1289; meaning of, 1607; with secondary sequence, 1769; *meminī cum*, 1870; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2175; with pres. infin., 2220.  
**memor**, decl. of, 537, 559, 636; with gen., 1263.  
**memoriā teneō**, with pres. infin., 2220.  
**memorō**, used personally in pass., 2178; **memorātur**, impersonally, 2181.  
**Menandrū**, gen., 466.  
**mēns**, decl. of, 533; **venit in mentem**, 1290; use of *mentis*, 1339.  
**mēnsis**, decl. of, 492, 500, 566; gender of, 579.  
**mentior**, prin. parts of, 1021.  
**mercēs**, gender of, 572.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## Index of Latin Words.

- mox**, with fut. perf., 1630.  
**mulceō**, prin. parts of, 1000.  
**mulgeō**, prin. parts of, 1000.  
**multiplex**, decl. of, 531.  
**multum**, comparison of, 363.  
**multus**, comparison of, 355; **multum** with partitive gen., 1248; **multō** with compar., 1459; **multī sunt quī**, &c., 1822; **nōn multum abest** with **quīn**, 1986.  
**mūniceps**, decl. of, 479, 480, 495, 507.  
**mūnificus**, comparison of, 358.  
**mūnus**, dat. of, with verb, 1223.  
**mūtō**, with abl., 1389; with **cum**, 1389.
- n**, **adulterīnum**, before **c**, **g**, **q**, **x**, 62; **ncn**, 170, 5; before **s**, 63, 155; after **m**, 172, 2; in **coniūnx**, 122, *e*; medial, disappearance of, 170, 6; final **ns**, disappearance of, 171, 4; assimilation of, 166, 5; **nf**, **ns**, **gn**, quantity of vowel preceding, 122, dropped in pres. partic., 902.  
**nam**, introducing parenthesis, 1642; with **et**, 1648; position of, 1688; causal or illative, 2154; asseverative, 2155; introducing question, 2155; introducing explanation, illustration, &c., 2155.  
**namque**, position of, 1688, 2155; use of, 2154, 2155.  
**nam quis**, 692.  
**nancīscor**, prin. parts of, 980.
- nāscor**, prin. parts of, 980; with abl., 1312; with prep. and abl., 1312; constructions of **nātus** in expressions of age, 1329; **nātus** used actively, 1364.  
**nātū maximus**, superl. of **senex**, 353.  
**nātū minimus**, superl. of **iuvenis**, 353.  
**naucī**, as gen. of value, 1272.  
**nāvis**, decl. of, 519, 551, 555.  
**nāvus**, form of, 169, 2.  
**nē**, with subjv., 1447; **nē . . . quidem**, 1447; **nōn modo (nōn solum) . . . sed nē . . . quidem**, 1682; **nē . . . quidem** after a neg., 1661; with wishes, 1540; with subjv. in exhortations, 1547; with subjv. questions, 1563; with imper., 1447, 1581, 1586; with coordinated subjv., 1706; in purpose clauses, 1947; with expressions of fear, 1958; **ūt nē**, 1947; **nē nōn**, 1957; with **dum** and subjv., 2003; with subjv., following supine in **-um**, 2272; followed by **quis**, **quī**, indef., 2388; see **ut**.
- ne (-n)**, enclitic and interrogative, 93, 170, 2; **tūtine**, 650; **hīcine**, &c., 663; **illicine**, &c., 670; answer expected with, 1503, 1504; position of, 1505; **numne**, 1507; **anne**, 1503, 1508; in first half of alternative question, 1517, 1519; **necne**, 1520, 1778; **utrum . . . ne . . . an**, 1522; **utrumne**, 1522; **-ne . . . -ne**, 1524; with **quis**, **uter**, **quantus**, 1529; with subjv. questions, 1567; with **ut**, **utī**, in questions, 1569; in indirect questions, 1775; **-ne . . . -ne** in indirect questions, 1776; **utrum . . . -ne . . . an**, **utrumne . . . an** in indirect questions, 1779; in second member of indirect alternative question, 1780; appended to infin. of exclamation, 2216; quantity, 2433.  
**nec**, *and not, but not*, 1445; **nec . . . nec** connecting substs. with sing. or plur. verb, 1070; in sense of **nōn**, 1446; **necne**, 1520, 1778; with wishes, 1540; for **nē . . . quidem**, 1658; **nec . . . quidem**, 1658; in purpose clauses, 1947; quantity, 2433; see **neque**.  
**necdum**, 1446.  
**necessārius**, constructions with, 1201.  
**necesse est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1496; coordinated, 1709; with infin., 2211.  
**necō**, forms of, 993.  
**nec opināns**, 1446.  
**nectō**, pres. stem of, 835; forms of, 960.  
**nēcubi**, quantity, 129; form of, 146, 709.  
**nēdum**, with subjv., 1962.  
**nefās**, defective, 430; gender of, 578; with supine in **-ū**, 2274; **nefās est** with infin., 2211.  
**neglegō**, perf. of, 823; prin. parts of, 953.  
**negō**, translation of, 1445; used personally in pass., 2178.  
**negōtium dō**, with purpose clause, 1950.  
**negōtium est**, with infin., 2211.  
**nēmō**, form of, 118, 150; decl. of, 430, 485; forms of **nūllus** used for, 485; translation of, 1445; with **nōn**, 1452; with subjv. in exhortations, 1547; with imper., 1586; after **et**, **atque**, **-que**, 1659; **nēmō est quī**, 1822; **ut nēmō**, **nēmō ut**, 1947; **nēmō quisquam**, 2402; **nēmō** for **nōn quisquam**, and **nēmō umquam** for **numquam quisquam**, 2403.  
**nempe**, first syllable of, shortened, 2469.  
**neō**, pres. stem of, 837; form **neunt**, 837; prin. parts of, 1001.

## Index of Latin Words.

- nēquam**, comparison of, 353; indeclinable, 431; as adj., 431.
- neque**, with imper., 1581; introducing parenthesis, 1642; as copulative conj., 1644, 1657, 2141-2144; **neque . . . neque**, 1657; preferred to **et nōn**, 1659; **nec . . . nōn**, 1660; **neque . . . haud**, 1660; after a neg., 1661; **neque . . . et, et . . . neque**, 1665; **neque . . . -que**, 1665; **neque . . . ac**, 1665; in purpose clauses, 1947; see **nec**.
- nequeō**, conjug. of, 768; form of **nequit**, 828; pass. forms of, 768, 1484; prin. parts of, 922; translation of, 1445.
- nesciō**, formation of, 396; translation of, 1445; with **nisi**, 2020; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2175; with **o** shortened, 2443; **nesciō an**, 1782; **nesciō quis, &c.**, 1788, 1789; **nesciō quōmodo**, as adv., 712, 1788, 1789; **nesciō quō pacto**, as adv., 712, 1788, 1789.
- neu**, 1674; see **nēve**.
- neuter**, form of, 120; gen. sing. of, 127, 6; 618-620, 657, 694; decl. of, 618-620, 694; translation of, 1445; use of sing. and plur., 2403.
- nēve**, form of, 1674; with imper., 1581, 1586; in purpose clauses, 1947.
- nex**, gender of, 581.
- nī**, 2020; with **mīrum**, 2068.
- nigrēscō**, inceptive verb, prin. parts of, 976.
- nihil**, form of 144, 150, 455; used adverbially, 1144; with partitive gen., 1248; translation of, 1445; with **nōn**, 1452; for **nēmō**, 1462; **nihil minus** in answers, 1513; with subjv. in exhortations, 1547; after **et, atque, -que**, 1659; **nihil est quod**, 1822, 1841; **nihil habeō quod**, 1822; **ut nihil, nihil ut**, 1947; **nihil quicquam**, 2402; used for **nōn quicquam**, 2403; **nihil abest**, with **quīn**, 1986; **nihil aliud quam**, 1895; **nihilī**, as gen. of value, 1272; **nihilō**, as abl. of value, 1391; **nihilō minus**, 1676, 1686; **cum nihilōminus**, 1868; **nihilō minus** introducing adversative sentence, 2151; **nihilum**, form of, 150, 455; **nīl**, form of, 151, 455; with **ī** in second syllable, 2448.
- nimiō**, with compar., 1459.
- nimis**, with partitive gen., 1248.
- nimum**, with partitive gen., 1248.
- nisi**, introducing subst. with which verb agrees, 1073; with abl. abs., 1374; **nisi quod**, 1848; **nisi quia**, 1848; **nisi sī**, 2020; in adversative sense, after **nesciō**, with **tamen**, 2020; as neg. of **sī**, 2016, 2020; **nisi forte, vērō**, 2020; coordinating, 2153; **nisi fōrte** with infin. in ind. disc., 2317; followed by **quis, quī**, indef., 2388; with short final vowel, 2445.
- niteō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- nītor**, prin. parts of, 983; with abl., 1349; with **haud**, 1449; with purpose clause, 1951; with infin., 1953, 2169.
- nix**, gender and decl. of, 494, 500; use of plur. of, 1108.
- nō**, prin. parts of, 991.
- nōbilis**, comparison of, 359.
- noceō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- noctū**, 533, 703.
- noenu**, form of, 99, 699, 1444, 2444; use of, 1444.
- noenum**, form of, 99, 455, 699, 1444; use of, 1444.
- nōlō**, form of, 775, 396; conjug. of, 772, 775-777; form of **nōlim, &c.**, 841; imper. of, 844; prin. parts of, 922; translation of, 1445; use of **nōlim, nōlō**, 1555; use of **nōllem**, 1560; use of **nōlī, nōlite**, 1583, 1584; **nōlim** with subjv., 1585; coordination of forms of, 1707; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin. 2189, 2190, 2228; with perf. act. infin., in prohibitions, 2224; with perf. pass. infin., 2229.
- nōmen**, decl. of, 481; **mihī est nōmen**, case with, 1213; **nōmen dō, indō, &c.**, case with, 1214; gen. of definition with, 1256; gen. of definition with **nōmine**, 1257; abl. of, with judicial verbs, 1280; **nōmine** resembling prep., 1406.
- nōmus**, 892.
- nōn**, formation, 99, 455, 699, 1444; common use of, 1443, 1494; **nōn, nēmō, &c.**, 1452; **nēmō nōn, &c.**, 1452; **nōn . . . nōn**, 1452; in questions, 1502; **nōnne . . . nōn**, 1506; **an nōn**, 1508, 1519; with and without particles in answers, 1513; with wishes, 1540; with subjv. in exhortations, 1547; with subjv. of action conceivable, 1554; with subjv. questions, 1563, 1566; with imper., 1582; with fut. expressing prohibition, 1624; after **et, atque (ac), -que**, 1659; **ut nōn**, 1947; **nē nōn**, 1957; with **dum** and subjv., 2003; **sī**

## Index of Latin Words.

- nōn**, 2020; **nōn aliter**, correlative of **ut**, 1937; **nōn aliud quam**, 1895; **nōn dubitō**, constructions with, 1986, 1987; **nōndum . . . cum**, 1869; **cum . . . nōndum**, 1868; **nōn magis . . . quam**, 1889; **nōn minus . . . quam**, 1889; **nōn modo**, after a neg., 1661; **nōn modo**, followed by **sed etiam**, &c., 1680; **nōn modo**, meaning **nōn dicam**, 1681; **nōn modo**, followed by **nē . . . quidem**, **vix**, 1682; **nōn multum abest**, with **quīn**, 1986; **nōn quod**, **nōn quō**, &c., 1855, 1989; **nōn secus**, correlative of **ut**, 1937; **nōn secus**, correlative of **quasi**, **tamquam sī**, &c., 2118; **nōn solum**, followed by **sed etiam**, &c., 1680; **nōn solum**, followed by **nē . . . quidem**, **vix**, 1682; **nōn tantum**, 1680.
- nōnne**, answer expected with, 1503, 1506; **nōnne . . . nōn**, 1506; in indirect questions, 1775.
- nōnnihilō**, as abl. of price, 1391.
- nōn nulli sunt quī**, 1822.
- nōs**, decl. of, 644-651; used for **ego**, 1074; see **ego**.
- nōscō**, form of, 169; prin. parts of, 965; compounds of, 965.
- noster**, decl. of, 652; used for **meus**, 1074; **nostrā** with **rēfert**, interest, 1277; represented by **suus** in ind. disc., 2325; used instead of gen., 1234, 1262.
- nostrās**, accent of, 88.
- nōtēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- novus**, comparison of, 358.
- nox**, decl. of, 533; stems of, 569; adv., 533.
- noxius**, with gen., 1264.
- nūbō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- nūdiustertius**, form of, 712.
- nūdō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304.
- nūdus**, with gen., 1263; with abl., 1306; with prep., 1306.
- nūllus**, form of, 119; forms of, used for **nēmō**, 485; gen. sing. of, 127, 6; 618-620; decl. of, 618-620; translation of, 1445; for **nōn** or **nē**, 1448; with **nōn**, 1452; **ut nūllus**, **nūllus ut**, 1917; **nūlla causa est quīn**, 1983; used for **nōn ūllus**, 2403.
- num**, an acc., 1156; answer expected with, 1503, 1507; **numne**, 1507; **numquid**, 1507; **num . . . num**, 1524; in indirect questions, 1775; followed by **quis**, **quī**, indef., 2388.
- Numidia**, in loc., 1336.
- nummus**, gen. plur. of, 462.
- numquam**, translation of, 1445; with **nōn**, 1452; with subjv. in exhortations, 1547; with subjv. of action conceivable, 1556.
- nunc**, an acc., 1156.
- nūntiō**, form of, 100; with **ut**, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2175; used personally in pass., 2178; **nūntiātur**, impersonally, 2181.
- nuō**, defective, 905; prin. parts of, 947.
- nūper**, comparison of, 364; form of, 111, a.
- nusquam**, with partitive gen., 1253; translation of, 1445.
- o**, the vowel, pronunciation of, 33, 38-41, 43-45; final, quantity of, 2437, 2442, 2443.
- o** and **ō**, weakening of, 105, 107, c, 452, 827; in contraction, 118, 3; combination into diphthongs, 120; analogical lengthening, 123; iambic shortening, 129, 130; qualitative changes of, 140, 141, 143; qualitative gradation, 145.
- ō**, with nom. of exclamation, 1117; with voc. nom. and voc., 1123; with acc., 1149; **ō utinam**, **ō sī**, with wishes, 1541, 1546.
- ob**, prep. 1410; form of, 164, 2; compounds of, with acc., 1137; compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other constructions with, 1190, 1191, 1196; expressing cause, &c., 1317; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2253.
- obcumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.
- obeō**, construction with, 1191.
- ōbice**, decl. of, 473; gender of, 581.
- oblīvīscor**, prin. parts of, 980; cases with, 1287, 1288.
- obmutēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- obsideō**, prin. parts of, 997.
- obsisto**, with **nē**, 1960, 1977; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977.
- obsolēscō**, prin. parts of, 968.
- obstō**, with **nē**, 1960, 1977; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977.
- obsurdēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- obtundō** (op-), forms of, 931.
- obviam**, verbs combined with, followed by dat., 1187.
- occalēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- occidō**, prin. parts of, 930.
- occinō**, perf. of, 823; forms of, 972.
- occulō**, prin. parts of, 972.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## Index of Latin Words.

- pars**, decl. of, 530, 533; use of abl. of, 1345; **pars . . . pars**, 1687.  
**particeps**, decl. of, 480, 624, 625.  
**partim**, acc. as adv., 549, 699; with partitive gen., 1248.  
**partior**, conjug. of, 798; prin. parts of, 1021; **partitus** used passively, 1364.  
**partus**, decl. of, 592.  
**parum**, with partitive gen., 1248; intimating negation, 1451.  
**parvĕ**, comparison of, 363.  
**parvus**, comparison of, 355; **parvĭ** as gen. of value, 1271, 1279; **parvō** as abl. of value, 1391.  
**pāscō**, prin. parts of, 965; used reflexively, 1482.  
**passus**, gen. plur. **passūm**, 591.  
**pateō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**patior**, pres. stem of, 836; prin. parts of, 986; compounds of, 986; with acc. and infin., 2198; **nōn patior** with purpose clause, 1950.  
**paucī sunt quī**, 1822.  
**paulum**, with partitive gen., 1248; **paulum abest**, with **quīn**, 1986.  
**pauper**, comparison of, 344; decl. of, 480, 624, 625; with gen., 1264.  
**pavēscō**, prin. parts of, 939.  
**pectō**, pres. stem of, 832, 835; prin. parts of, 960.  
**peior**, comparison of, 355.  
**peius**, comparison of, 363.  
**pelagus**, decl. of, 493, 508.  
**pelliciō**, prin. parts of, 956.  
**pellō**, prin. parts of, 932; compounds of, 932; constructions with, 1303, 1304.  
**pelvis**, decl. of, 550.  
**pendeō**, perf. of, 859; prin. parts of, 995.  
**pendō**, prin. parts of, 930; with gen. of value, 1271.  
**penes**, prep., 1410; position of, 1434; quantity of second e in, 2456.  
**penus**, gender of, 588.  
**per**, prep., 1410; after its case, 178; compounds of, with acc., 1137; with acc. of duration of time, 1151; expressing cause, &c., 1317; denoting place, 1346; expressing manner, 1361; expressing instrument, 1378; position of, 1437; quantity, 2433.  
**peragō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**percellō**, perf. of, 861, 2435; prin. parts of, 935.  
**percitus**, 919.  
**perdō**, forms of, 757; forms of, supplied by **pereō**, 757, 1471; with infin. as obj., 2206.
- peregrī**, 1340.  
**peremō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**pereō**, supplying forms of **perdō**, 757, 1471; followed by **ab** and **abl.**, 1318.  
**perfricō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**perfruo**, with **abl.**, 1379; with **acc.**, 1380.  
**pergō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**perinde**, pronunciation of, 93; correlative of **ut**, 1937; correlative of **quasi**, **tamquam sī**, &c., 2118; **perinde . . . quam**, 1890.  
**peritus**, with **gen.**, 1263; with **iūre**, 1268, 1385; with **infin.**, 2166; with **gen.** of gerundive construction or **gerund**, 2258.  
**perlegō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**permagnī**, as **gen.** of estimation, 1279.  
**permagnō**, as **abl.** of value, 1273, 1390, 1391.  
**permittō**, coordinated, 1710; with purpose clause, 1950, 2202; with **acc.** and **infin.**, 2202; with gerundive construction, 2250.  
**permulsus**, 1000.  
**perniciēs**, decl. of, 606.  
**perōsus**, 814; with **act.** meaning, 907.  
**perōsus sum**, 813.  
**perpes**, decl. of, 533.  
**perpetior**, prin. parts of, 986.  
**perplaceō**, prin. parts of, 1004.  
**persuādeō**, with purpose clause, 1950; with **acc.** and **infin.**, 1954, 2195.  
**pertundō**, forms of, 931.  
**pervenio**, forms of, 822.  
**pēs**, compounds of, decl. of, 532, 636.  
**pessimē**, comparison of, 363.  
**pessimus**, formation of, 351; comparison of, 355.  
**pessumdō**, conjug. of, 757.  
**petō**, forms of, 895, 967; quantity in **petiit**, 2450; with **subjv.** coordinated, 1708; with gerundive construction, 2250.  
**ph**, sound of, 19; use of, 72.  
**piget**, forms of, 815, 817; impersonal, 1034; construction with, 1283; used personally, 1284.  
**pilī**, as **gen.** of value, 1272.  
**pingō**, prin. parts of, 954.  
**piper**, gender of, 573.  
**pīsō**, **pīnsō**, forms of, 819, 972.  
**placeō**, prin. parts of, 1004; compounds of, 1004; **sī placuerit**, 1632; coordination of forms of, 1707; **placet** with purpose clause, 1950; **sī placet**, 2113; **placet** with **subj. infin.**, 2209; **placitus**, with **act.** meaning, 907.

## Index of Latin Words.

- plangō**, prin. parts of, 954.  
**plaudō**, prin. parts of, 958; compounds of, 958.  
**plēbs** (**plēps**, **plēbēs**), pronunciation of, 54; decl. of, 524, 534, 603.  
**plēnus**, with gen., 1263; with abl., 1268, 1387.  
**-pleō**, prin. parts of, 1001.  
**plērique**, use of, 1244; with abl. abs., 1366.  
**plērumque**, with partitive gen., 1248.  
**-plicō**, prin. parts of, 993; compounds of, 993.  
**pluit**, defective, 815; form **plūvit**, 823; prin. parts of, 947; impersonal, 1034.  
**plūrimum**, comparison of, 363.  
**plūrimus**, formation of, 352; comparison of, 355; **plūrimum** with partitive gen., 1248; **plūrimī** as gen. of value, 1271; **quam plūrimō** as abl. of value, 1391.  
**plūs**, adj. and adv., comparison of, 355, 363; defective, 355; decl. of, 623; with partitive gen., 1248; **plūris** as gen. of value, 1271, 1274, 1279; without **quam**, 1328; with **quam**, 1328; with abl., 1328; **plūrēs** with subjv. of action conceivable, 1556.  
**pol**, quantity, 2433.  
**polleō**, defective, 809.  
**polliceor**, with acc. and infin., 2186; with fut. infin., 2235; with pres. infin., 2236.  
**pōne**, not compounded, 1406; prep., 1410.  
**pōnō**, form of, 111; forms of, 972; **nōmen pōnō**, case with, 1214; with in and abl., 1424.  
**populō**, **populor**, 800, 1488.  
**por-**, inseparable prep., 392, 1409.  
**porrigō**, **porgō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**porticus**, gender of, 588.  
**pos**, prep. 1410.  
**poscō**, form of, 170, 10; pres. stem of, 834; perf. of compounds of, 860; prin. parts of, 927; with double acc., 1169; with **ab** and abl., 1170; constructions with pass. of, 1171.  
**possum**, conjug. of, 744, 751; form of, 752, 753; **potis sum**, &c., for, 752; defective, 753; old and rare forms of, 753; pass. forms of, 753, 1484; prin. parts of, 922; **potēns**, 922; with **haud**, 1449; with superl., 1466, 1892; implying non-occurrent action, 1496; in subjv., 1498; **sī potuerō**, 1632; **quod** (quantum) . . . **possum**, 1830; **nōn possum quīn (ut nōn)**, &c., 1985; **nōn possum** in conditions, 2074; in past tense with pres. infin., translation of, 2222; with perf. infin., 2223; use of pres. infin. of, for fut., 2236; in perf. infin. in conditional apodoses in ind. disc., 2333.  
**post**, forms of, 1410; compounds of, with dat., 1195; in expressions of time, 1394-1397; followed by **quam** or **cum** in expressions of time, 1397; with fut. perf., 1630; with subst. and partic., 2285, 2286.  
**poste**, prep., 1410.  
**postea**, with partitive gen., 1253.  
**postera**, defective, 356.  
**posterī**, use of, 347.  
**posterior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 356.  
**posthabeō**, prin. parts of, 1004.  
**postid**, with partitive gen., 1253; prep., 1410.  
**postideā**, with partitive gen., 1253.  
**postquam**, **postea quam**, **posquam**, with infin., 1539, 1924; with indic. and subjv., 1923-1931.  
**postrēmus**, formation of, 352; comparison of, 356; with partitive meaning, 1249.  
**postrīdiē**, as adv., 1341; with gen., 1413, 1232; with acc., 1406, 1413; **postrīdiē quam**, 1922.  
**postulō**, with subjv. coordinated, 1708; with **ut**, 1950; used personally in pass., 2178; with acc. and infin., 1953, 2194.  
**postumus**, formation of, 351; comparison of, 356.  
**pote**, forms of, used with or without **sum**, 752; **ut pote quī**, 1827; **ut pote cum**, 1879.  
**potior**, forms of, 791, 799; prin. parts of, 981; with gen., 1292; with abl., 1379; with acc., 1380; use of gerundive of, 2244.  
**potis**, with or without **sum**, 752.  
**potius**, after **vel**, 1670; with **sive**, 1672; **potius quam**, 1897.  
**pōtus**, with act. meaning, 907.  
**prae**, prep., 1417; comparison of, 357; compounds of, with acc., 1137; compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other constructions with, 1190, 1191, 1196; with abl. proper, 1297; expressing cause, &c., 1317; **prae quam**, 1895; **prae quam quod**, 1895.



# Index of Latin Words.

- praebeō**, form of, 118, 2; 125; forms of, 1004.  
**praecinō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**praecipio**, with subjv. coordinated, 1708; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2194.  
**praecox**, decl. of, 531.  
**praehibeō**, with short diphthong, 125; form of, 1004.  
**praelegō**, prin. parts of, 937.  
**praemordeō**, forms of, 995.  
**Praeneste**, decl. of, 557.  
**praesāgus**, with gen., 1264.  
**praescius**, with gen., 1264.  
**praesideō**, prin. parts of, 997.  
**praesidium**, dat. of, with verb, 1220, 1223.  
**praestō**, prin. parts of, 989; with purpose clause, 1951; **praestat** with subj. infin., 2209.  
**praestō**, adv., verbs combined with, followed by dat., 1187.  
**praestōlor**, with dat. or acc., 1184.  
**praeter**, form of, 710; prep., 1410; compounds of, with acc., 1137; **praeter quam quod**, 1848, 1895; **praeter quam**, 1895; with infin. as obj., 2205.  
**praeternittō**, with **quā**, 1986.  
**praeterquam**, introducing subst. with which verb agrees, 1073.  
**praeut**, 1945.  
**prandeō**, perf. of, 866; prin. parts of, 998; **prānsus**, with act. meaning, 907.  
**precor**, with subjv. coordinated, 1708; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2195.  
**prehendō**, 125; or **praehendō**, **prēndō**, 950.  
**premō**, prin. parts of, 958; compounds of, 958.  
**prīdiē**, as adv., 1341; with acc., 1406, 1413; with gen., 1413, 1232; **prīdiē quam**, 1922.  
**primum**, 362, 701; **primum (prīmō)** . . . **deinde . . . tum**, 1687; **ubī, ut, cum primum**, 1923-1934.  
**prīmus**, formation of, 352; comparison of, 357; with partitive meaning, 1249.  
**prior**, comparison of, 357.  
**prius quam**, for **potius quam**, 1897.  
**priusquam**, with fut. perf., 1626; with pres. indic. of fut. action, 1593; general statement of use, 1911; in general statements, 1912-1914; in particular statements, 1915-1921.  
**privō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304.  
**prō**, prep., 1417; with abl. proper, 1297; following **dūcō**, **habeō**, **putō**, 1168; expressions with, for dat. of tendency or result, 1221; **quam prō**, 1461; **prō eō** introductory to sentence with **quod**, 1847; **prō quam**, 1895; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2267.  
**prō**, interjection, with nom. of exclamation, 1117; with voc. nom. and voc., 1123; with acc., 1150.  
**procul**, as adv. and prep., 1421.  
**prōcumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.  
**prōcurrō**, perf. of, 860.  
**prōdigus**, with gen., 1264.  
**prōdinunt**, 833.  
**proficīscor**, prin. parts of, 980; **profectus**, used actively, 1364.  
**prōfūsus**, with gen., 1263.  
**prōgnātus**, with abl., 1312.  
**prōgredior**, forms of, 791, 799.  
**prohibeō**, forms **prohibēssis**, &c., 887; contracted, 1004; case constructions with, 1303, 1304; with **nē**, 1960; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977; with acc. and infin., 2203.  
**proin**, introducing command, 2157.  
**proinde**, disyllabic in verse, 93, 7; correlative of **quasi**, **tamquam sī**, &c., 2118; introducing command, 2157.  
**prōmittō**, with acc. and infin., 2175; with fut. infin. 2235.  
**prōmō**, perf. of, 823; prin. parts of, 953.  
**prope**, prep., 1410; comparison of, 357; with acc., 1201; **prope ut**, 1947.  
**prōpendeō**, prin. parts of, 995.  
**properō**, with acc. and infin., 2190.  
**propior**, comparison of, 357; with acc., 1201.  
**propius**, prep., 1410; with acc., 1201.  
**proprius**, constructions with, 1202, 1238.  
**propter**, prep., 1410; expressing cause, &c., 1317; not compounded, 1406; position of, 1434; with gerundive construction or gerund, 2253; with subst. and partic., 2286.  
**propterea**, as coordinating word, 1691; **propterea . . . quod**, 1854; **propterea . . . quia**, 1854, 1858; before **ut**, **nē**, 1961.  
**prout**, 1942.  
**prōvidus**, with gen., 1263.  
**proximē**, prep. 1410; with acc., 1201.  
**proximus**, formation of, 351; comparison of, 357; with acc., 1201.  
**prūdēns**, form of, 111; with gen., 1263.  
**-pte**, enclitic, 655.  
**pūbēs**, decl. of, 491, 523, 624, 625.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## Index of Latin Words.

- que, 1663; -que . . . et, 1664; -que . . . atque, 1664; atque . . . -que, 1664; neque . . . -que, 1665; quantity, 2433, 2506; at end of verse, 2568.
- quemadmodum, with infin. in ind. disc., 2317.
- queō, conjug. of, 759, 768; used with neg., 768; pass. forms of, 768, 1484; form of queam, &c., 842; perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 922.
- queror, conjug. of, 798; prin. parts of, 978; with acc., 1139.
- quī, decl. of, 681-683; quot, 659; stems of, 681, 687; rel., 682; interrogative adj., 683; interrogative subst., 685; quōius, quōi, 658, 688; dat. and abl. plur. quīs, 688; inscriptional forms of, 690; derivatives of, 691, 692; with correlatives, 695; neut. acc. used adverbially, 1144, 1840; neut. with partitive gen., 1248; quod est with gen., 1259; in questions, 1526; use of, 1792; rules for agreement of, 1094-1098, 1801-1811; agreeing with antecedent implied in possess., 1807; id quod, 1811; quae rēs, 1811; equivalent to conditional prot., 1812; with indic., 1813-1815; with subjv. denoting purpose, 1816, 1817; with subjv. of characteristic or result, 1818-1823; with dignus, indignus, idōneus, aptus, 1819; est quī, nēmō est quī, nōn habēō quod, &c., 1822; est quī, &c., with indic., 1823; with subjv. of cause or concession, 1824; quī tamen, 1825; with indic. instead of causal subjv., 1826; quippe quī, 1827, 1828; ut quī, 1827, 1828; ut pote quī, 1827; quod sciam, &c., 1829; quī quidem, 1829; quod attinet ad, quod . . . possum, 1830; correlatives of, 1831; omitted in second clause, 1832, 1833; repeated, 1833; place supplied by is, &c., in second clause, 1833; introducing main sentence, 1835, 2131, 2316; formulas quō factō, &c., 1836; preceding sī, &c., 1837, 2132; tam . . . quam quī, 1892; quam quī, 1896; prae quam quod, 1895; referring to is, 2368; idem quī, *the same as*, 2373; quis, quī, distinguished from uter, 2385; quis, quid, distinguished from quī, quod, 2386; indef., after sī, &c., 686, 2388; quī (plur.) not elided before short vowel, 2487.
- quī, adv., form and use of, 689, 706, 1972; in questions, 1526; with wishes, 1541; quippe quī, 1828; ut quī, 1828; with subjv., 1976.
- quia, form of, 701; nisi quia, 1848; use of, 1854-1858; with infin. in ind. disc., 2317; with short final vowel, 2438.
- quicumque, decl. of, 692; tmesis in, 692; quodcumque est with gen., 1259; agreement of, 1802; with indic., 1814; referring to is, 2368.
- quīdam, decl. of, 692; with ex or dē, 1246; quīdam sunt quī, &c., 1822; usual force of, 2392; used to soften metaphor or expressing contempt, 2393.
- quidem, with nē, 1447, 1661, 1682; with sānē in answers, 1512; with nōn and minimē in answers, 1513; quī quidem, 1829; cum quidem, 1868; with dum and subjv., 2003; with quandō, 2013; with sī, 2019; introducing concessive period, 2150; following ille in concessions, 2361.
- quīes, decl. of, 477; gender of, 572.
- quīescō, perf. of, 871; prin. parts of, 968.
- quīlibet, decl. of, 692; use of, 2401.
- quīn, form of, 113, 1980; in questions, 1526, 1531, 1981; with imper. or indic., 1527; nōn quīn, 1855, 1989; with subjv. in question, 1982; nūlla causa est quīn, 1983; mirum quīn, 1984; with nōn possum, &c., 1985; with other verbs and expressions, 1986-1990; quantity of, 2430.
- quīncunx, decl. of, 531; meaning of, 2427.
- quīnquātrūs, gender of, 588.
- quīntus, form of, 170, 4; 2412.
- quippe, 1690, 2156; quippe quī, 1827, 1828; quippe cum, 1879; first syllable shortened, 2469.
- Quirīs, accent of, 88; decl. of, 533; quantity of second i in, 2452.
- quis, decl. of, 684, 686; quit, 659; stems of, 681, 687; interrogative subst., 684; interrogative adj., 685; feminine, quis, quae, 684; quai, 687; quōius, quōi, &c., 658, 688; dat. and abl. plur. quīs, 688; nom. plur. quēs, 688; inscriptional forms of, 690; derivatives of, 691, 692; with correlatives, 695; adj. equivalent to gen., 1098; rules for agreement of, 1094-1098; quid tibi with subst. in -tiō and est, 1136; neut. acc. used adverbially, 1144; neut. with partitive gen., 1248; abl. of,

## Index of Latin Words.

- with loci, 1252; quid for quis, 1462; quid est, quid dīcis, quid, quid vērō, &c., 1500; in questions, 1526; with -ne, 1529; nesciō quis, 1788, 1789; sciō quid as indef., 1788; quis est quī, 1822; quid est quod, &c., 1841; quid quod, 1849; quis, quī distinguished from uter, 2385; quis, quid distinguished from quī, quod, 2386; indef., after sī, &c., 686, 2388; quantity, 2433.
- quisnam**, decl. of, 692.
- quispiam**, decl. of, 692; use of, 2389.
- quisquam**, decl. of, 692; with haud, 1449; use of, 2402, 2403; nēmō quisquam and nihil quicquam, 2402.
- quisque**, decl. of, 692; with abl. abs., 1366; with ut, *when*, 1932; with ut, *as*, 1939; with superl., 1939; usual force of, 2394; in both rel. and demonstrative sentence, 2395; in rel. sentence alone, 2396; following sē, suus, superl., or ordinal, 2397; equivalent to quicumque, quisquis, 2398; cuiusque generis, cuiusque modī, 2398.
- quisquis**, decl. of, 692; quidquid est with gen., 1259; with indic., 1814; for quisque, 2398.
- quivīs**, decl. of, 692; use of, 2401.
- quō**, adv., with acc. of exclamation, 1150; with gen., 1254; in questions, 1526; instead of rel. pron. with prep., 1793; quō . . . eō, 1831; nōn quō, nōn eō quō, nōn quō nōn, 1855; with indic., 1973; with subjv., 1974; quō nē, 1975; followed by quis, quī, indef., 2388.
- quoad**, form of, 1991; use of, meaning *all the time while*, 1994, 1999-2001; meaning *until*, 2007, 2008.
- quod**, conj., origin of, 1838; with declarative and causal sense, 1838; resembling pron. quod, 1839-1842; with veniō, mittō, 1840; quid est quod, &c., 1841; meaning *as to what*, 1842; meaning *in case*, 1843, 2110; with indic. and subjv., 1838; meaning *the fact that*, 1844-1852; addō quod, 1846; adiciō quod, 1846; nisi quod, 1848; praeter quam quod, 1848, 1895; super quam quod, 1848, 1895; tantum quod, 1848; quid quod, 1849; with gaudeō, &c., 1851; with verbs of praising, &c., 1852; meaning *because*, 1853; with correlatives eō, ideō, &c., 1854, 1855; nōn quod, sed quod, &c., 1855; magis quod . . . quam quod, &c., 1855; nōn quod nōn, 1855; following supine in -um, 2272.
- quoiās, formation of, 329.
- quoius, in questions, 1526.
- quom. see cum.
- quōminus, use of, 1977, 1978.
- quoniam, form of, 153, 4; 1882; use of, 1882-1884.
- quoque, with sed, 1680.
- quōr, see cūr.
- quō sētius, 1979.
- quot, indeclinable, 431; as adj., 431; not used partitively, 1244; nesciō quot, 1788; tot . . . quot, 1831.
- quotiēns, in questions, 1526; with perf. indic. of anterior time, 1613; totiēns . . . quotiēns, 1831, 1886; mood with, 1885-1887.
- quotiēnscumque, use of, 1885-1887.
- r**, development of short vowel before, 111, *b*; varies with *d*, 148; before *i*, 94; changed to *l*, 166, 7; from *s*, 154, 488; medial, disappearance of, 170, 9; preceded by mute or *f*, 178.
- rabiēs, decl. of, 606.
- rādō, prin. parts of, 958.
- rapiō, pres. stem of, 836; prin. parts of, 975; compounds of, 975.
- rauciō, defective, 905.
- re-, compounds with, perf. of, 781, 861.
- reāpse, 680.
- receptuī, 1225.
- recidō, defective, 905.
- recipiō, loc. abl. with, 1348.
- recordor, with gen., 1287; with acc., 1288; with dē and abl., 1289; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2175.
- recumbō, prin. parts of, 974.
- recūsō' with nē, 1960, 1977; with quōminus, 1960, 1977; with quīn, 1986.
- red- (re-), inseparable prep., 392, 1409.
- reddō, conjug. of, 757; with infin. as obj., 2206; with perf. partic., 2297.
- redīnunt, 833.
- redux, decl. of, 531, 635.
- refellō, prin. parts of, 932.
- rē fert (rēfert), forms of, 816; constructions with, 1276-1279; with subj. infin., 2209.
- refertus, with gen., 1263, 1387; with abl., 1268, 1387.
- regō, conjug. of, 782, 783; no supine, 900; prin. parts of, 953; compounds of, 953.
- relegō, prin. parts of, 937.

## Index of Latin Words.

- relicuus (reliquus)**, with partitive meaning, 1249.  
**rēnēs**, gender of, 583.  
**renīdeō**, defective, 809.  
**reor**, perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 1008.  
**reparcō**, forms of, 930.  
**repellō**, prin. parts of, 932.  
**reperiō**, prin. parts of, 1011.  
**replicō**, prin. parts of, 993.  
**rēpō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**reprimō**, with **quīn**, 1986.  
**repugnō**, with **nē**, 1960, 1977; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977.  
**requiēs**, decl. of, 477, 603; gender of, 572.  
**rēs**, gen. and dat. sing. of, 127, 4; decl. of, 601, 602; **malam rem** and in **malam rem**, 1165; repeated in rel. sentence, 1796; **quae rēs**, 1811; form **rē** not elided before short vowel, 2487; form **rem** not elided before short vowel, 2495.  
**resideō**, prin. parts of, 997.  
**resipiscō**, prin. parts of, 968.  
**resistō**, with **nē**, 1960, 1977; with **quōminus**, 1960, 1977.  
**resonō**, forms of, 993.  
**respondeō**, prin. parts of, 995.  
**restis**, decl. of, 520, 550.  
**rēte**, decl. of, 528, 557.  
**retendō**, forms of, 924.  
**reticeō**, prin. parts of, 1004.  
**retineō**, with **quīn**, 1986.  
**rettulī, rētulī**, 781, 861.  
**retundō**, prin. parts of, 931.  
**reus**, with gen., 1263.  
**revivēscō (-viviscō)**, 959.  
**revortor**, forms of, 801.  
**Rhodus**, in loc., 1334.  
**rideō**, prin. parts of, 1000.  
**rigeō**, prin. parts of, 1006.  
**rigēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**rōbur**, gender of, 408; decl. of, 489.  
**rōdō**, prin. parts of, 958.  
**rogō**, with double acc., 1169; with **dē** and abl., 1170; constructions with pass. of, 1171; with gerundive construction, 2250.  
**rubēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**rubus**, gender of, 408.  
**rudēns**, gender of, 580.  
**rudis**, with gen., 1263.  
**rumex**, gender of, 408.  
**rumpō**, prin. parts of, 938; compounds of, 938.  
**ruō**, perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 947.
- rursum, russum, rūsum**, accusatives as adverbs, 701.  
**rūs**, decl. of, 430, 491; loc. **rūrī**, 504; use of **rūrī**, 1337; acc. as adv., 699; acc. without prep., 1162; use of abl. **rūre**, 1311; use of loc. abl. **rūre**, 1344, 1345; **rūre** as adv., 703.
- s**, sound of, 65; followed by **u**, 27, 65; (and **ss**) used for **z**, 21, 67; intervocalic, 155; **ss** from **tt**, 159; changed to **r**, 154, 488; (and **st**), initial, disappearance of, 169, 4; medial, disappearance of, 170, 2; final, disappearance of, 66, 171; **ns**, quantity of vowel preceding, 122, *a*: final syllables in, quantity of vowel of, 2451-2457; does not always make position, 2468.
- sacer**, comparison of, 358; constructions with, 1202, 1238.  
**saepe**, comparison of, 364.  
**saepiō**, prin. parts of, 1014.  
**Sagra**, gender of, 406.  
**sāl**, decl. of, 430, 482; gender of, 583.  
**saliō**, prin. parts of, 1019; compounds of, 1019.  
**sam**, pron., 675.  
**Samnis**, accent of, 88; decl. of, 533; quantity of **i** in, 2452.  
**sanciō**, forms of, 1014.  
**sānē**, introducing concessive period, 2150; **sānē quam**, 1790; **sānē, sānē quidem**, in answers, 1512; with imper., 1572.  
**sānēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**sanguis**, form of, 171, 4; decl. of, 486; gender of, 579; quantity of **i** in, 2452.  
**sapiō**, pres. stem of, 836; prin. parts of, 969; compounds of, 969.  
**sarciō**, prin. parts of, 1014.  
**sās** (for **suās**), 653.  
**Satin**, in questions, 1510.  
**Satis**, verbs combined with, followed by dat., 1187; with partitive gen., 1248; **satis est** implying non-occurrent action, 1496; **satis est**, &c., with perf.-infin., 2231.  
**satisdō**, conjug. of, 757.  
**satius est**, implying non-occurrent action, 1496.  
**scalpō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**scandō**, prin. parts of, 950; compounds of, 950.  
**scilicet**, form of, 712; in answers, 1512.  
**scindō**, perf. of, 859, 860, 2435; prin. parts of, 934.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## Index of Latin Words.

- sis** (for **sī vīs**), 774; with **imper.**, 1572; parenthetical, 2113.
- sīs**, determinative pron., 675.
- sistō**, conjug. of, 744, 758; root verb, reduplicated, 744, 758; form of **sistit**, 828; perf. of, 133, 859, 2435; perf. of compounds of, 860; perf. partic. of, 918, 2436; prin. parts of, 922.
- sitis**, decl. of 518, 548, 554.
- sive**, conjunction, use of, 1667, 1672, 1673; followed by **quis**, **quī**, indef., 2388; see **sī**.
- societās**, formation, 103, u.
- sōcors**, decl. of, 559.
- sōdēs**, with **imper.**, 1572.
- soleō**, forms of, 801, 1488.
- solum**, with **nōn**, 1680, 1682.
- sōlus**, gen. sing. of, 126, 6; 618-620; decl. of, 618-620; gen. in apposition with possess. pron., 1235; **sōlus est quī**, 1822.
- solvō**, prin. parts of, 947; constructions with, 1303, 1304.
- sonō**, forms of, 820; defective, 905; prin. parts of, 993; compound of, 993.
- sorbeō**, forms of, 1006; compounds of, 1006.
- sors**, decl. of, 533, 543, 556.
- sortior**, prin. parts of, 1021.
- sōs**, determinative pron., 675.
- sōspes**, decl. of, 477, 624, 625.
- spargō**, prin. parts of, 958; compounds of, 958.
- Sparta**, abl. of, with **in**, 1334
- spatium**, use of abl. of, 1399.
- speciēs**, decl. of, 606, 607.
- speciō**, **spiciō**, pres. stem of, 836; forms of, 956.
- specus**, gender of, 588; decl. of, 592.
- spernō**, pres. stem of, 833; prin. parts of, 964.
- spērō**, with acc. and infin., 2175, 2186; with fut. infin., 2235; with pres. infin., 2236.
- spēs**, defective, 600, 602; **spē** with compar., 1330; form **spē** not elided before short vowel, 2487; form **spem** not elided before short vowel, 2495.
- spoliō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304.
- spondeō**, perf. of, 173, 2; 859; prin. parts of, 995; compounds of, 995.
- spuō**, prin. parts of, 947.
- squāleō**, defective, 809.
- sta**, **stūc** (for **ista**, **istūc**), 667.
- statuō**, 367; prin. parts of, 947; compounds of, 947; with **in** and abl., 1424; with purpose clause, 1950; with infin., 1953, 2169; with acc. and infin., 1954.
- sternō**, prin. parts of, 964.
- sternuō**, pres. stem of, 833; prin. parts of, 948.
- stertō**, prin. parts of, 972.
- stinguō**, prin. parts of, 954.
- stirps**, gender of, 580.
- stō**, pres. stem of, 837; perf. of, 173, 2; 859, 2435; perf. of compounds of, 860; defective, 905; prin. parts of, 989; with abl., 1349; **stat per aliquem** with **quōminus**, 1977; form **stō** not elided before short vowel, 2487; form stem not elided before short vowel, 2495.
- strepō**, prin. parts of, 972.
- strīdeō**, perf. of, 862; prin. parts of, 997.
- strigilis**, decl. of, 519, 551, 555.
- stringō**, prin. parts of, 954.
- struō**, perf. of, 164, 1; 865, 867; prin. parts of, 953.
- studeō**, prin. parts of, 1006; with purpose clause, 1951; with infin., 2169; with acc. and infin., 2190.
- studiōsus**, with gen. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2258.
- stupeō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- stupēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- Styx**, gender of, 406.
- suādeō**, prin. parts of, 1000; with subjv. coordinated, 1712; with purpose clause, 1950; with acc. and infin., 2195.
- sub**, form of, 164, 2; compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other constructions with, 1190, 1191, 1196; with loc. abl., 1299; with acc. and abl., 1422, 1423.
- subcumbō**, prin. parts of, 974.
- subinde**, pronunciation of, 93.
- subitō**, with **cum**, 1869.
- subrepsit**, 975.
- subrupiō**, forms of, 975.
- subter**, with acc., 1410; with abl., 1416.
- subtundō**, forms of, 931.
- suēscō**, perf. of, 871; prin. parts of, 968.
- sūgō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- sui**, decl. of, 644-651; use of gen. of, 1234; **sē**, subj. of infin., omitted, 2183; **sui** with gerundive, 2260, 2261; in ind. disc. representing **ego** and **nōs** of direct discourse, 2325; referring to subj. of verb, 2336; referring to word not subj. of verb, 2337; use in construction of acc. with infin., 2338-2340; use in subordinate clauses, 2341-2343; **inter sē**, **invicem** **inter sē**, **invicem sē**, expressing reciprocal relations, 2344, 2345; **is** used for, 2370; **ipse** with, 2376; **ipse** standing for, 2377; **sē quisque**, 2397.

## Index of Latin Words.

- Sūlla**, formation of, 274.  
**sultis** (for **sī voltis**), 774; with imper., 1572; parenthetical, 2113.  
**sum**, form **esum**, 746; conjugation of, 744, 745; old forms of, 748; pronunciation of **es**, and **est** after a vowel or **-m**, 747, 2496; pronunciation of **es**, and **est** after **-s**, 747, 2496; **sonit**, 748; **escit**, &c., 748; **siem**, &c., 748, 841; **estōd**, 748; form of **eram**, **erō**, &c., 154, 746, 848; **es** for **ess**, 747; partic. of, 749, 902; in compounds, 749, 902; no gerund or gerundive of, 749; no perf. partic. or supine of, 750, 900; **fuam**, &c., 750, 842; **fore**, &c., 750, 803; **fūit**, &c., 126, 750, 865; with **potis**, **pote**, 752; no perf. system of, 745, 807; form **est**, 828; suffix of pres. subjv. **-i-** and **-iē-**, 841; form of **sim**, &c., 841; form of **es**, &c. (imper.), 844; form of **essem**, &c., 850; form of **esse**, 895; prin. parts of, 922; root verb, 744.  
 Used impersonally, 1034; omitted, 1036; fut. partic. with, 802, 803, 1633, 1737, 1742, 1746, 1747; gerundive with, 804, 2101, 2243; dat. of possessor with, 1212; dat. of tendency or result with, 1219; gen. of value with, 1271; abl. with, 1315; combinations with **est** implying non-occurrent action, 1496; use of **ēs**, **estō**, 1576; **fui**, **fuera**, **fuero**, with perf. partic., 1609; **est qui**, 1822; with attributive **cum** sentence, 1870, 1871; with attributive **postquam** or **ut** sentence, 1927; **esse**, subj. of, omitted with verbs of desire, 2190; **fore** or **futura esse** **ut** as circumlocution, 2233; **fore** with perf. partic., 2234; predicate use of gen. of gerundive construction with, 2262; **futura** as adj., 2283; **futura** as subst., 2292; **esse** and **fuisse** with fut. partic., and **futura fuisse** **ut** in conditional apodoses in ind. disc., 2331, 2334; form **sim** not elided before short vowel, 2495.  
**sum**, pron., 675.  
**summus**, formation of, 352; comparison of, 356; with partitive meaning, 1249.  
**sūmō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**Sūnium**, in loc., 1334.  
**suō**, prin. parts of, 947.  
**supellēx**, decl. of, 545, 556.  
**super**, compounds of, with dat., 1188, 1189, 1194; compounds of, other constructions with, 1190, 1191, 1196; with acc. and abl., 1422, 1425; **super id** introductory to sentence with **quod**, 1847; **super quam quod**, 1848, 1895; with acc. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2253; with abl. of gerundive construction or gerund, 2267.  
**supera**, defective, 356.  
**superbiō**, defective, 810.  
**superfit**, &c., 790.  
**superi**, use of, 347; no sing., 417.  
**superior**, formation of, 348; comparison of, 3:6.  
**superne**, with short final vowel, 2440.  
**supersedeō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304.  
**superstes**, decl. of, 477, 624, 625.  
**supplex**, decl. of, 531.  
**suprā**, prep., 1410; **suprā quam**, 1894.  
**suprēmus**, formation of, 352; comparison of, 356.  
**surgō**, **surrigō**, prin. parts of, 953.  
**surpuit**, &c., 975.  
**sūs**, gender and decl. of, 494.  
**suscēseō**, with **quod**, **quia**, **quom**, 1851.  
**suscipiō**, with gerundive, 2250.  
**susque dēque**, 1408.  
**suus**, form of, 107, c; decl. of, 652-655; used instead of gen., 1234, 1262; in ind. disc. representing **meus**, **noster** of direct discourse, 2325; referring to subj. of verb, 2336; referring to word not subj. of verb, 2337; use in construction of acc. with infin., 2338-2340; use in subordinate clauses, 2341-2343; omitted, 2346; meaning *proper*, *appropriate*, *favourable*, 2346; **ipse** standing for, 2377; **suus quisque**, 2397.  
**t**, sound of, 68; varies with **l**, 147; with **r**, 148; with **t**, 149, 2; initial, disappearance of, 169, 1; **tt**, treatment of, 159, 160; assimilation of, 166; **dt**, the combination, its treatment, 159, 160; final, in **it**, **illut**, &c., 659; monosyllables ending in, with vowel short, 2432.  
**tābēs**, decl. of, 523, 603.  
**tābēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.  
**taceō**, prin. parts of, 1004.  
**taedet**, forms of, 815; impersonal, 1034; construction with, 1283; used personally, 1284.  
**tagō**, 925.  
**talentum**, gen. plur. of, 462.



# Index of Latin Words.

- tālis**, followed by rel. sentence of result, 1818; **tālis . . . quālis**, 1831; correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970.
- talpa**, gender of, 433.
- tam**, form of, 702; **tam . . . quam**, correlatives, 1831; **tam . . . quam**, use of, 1889, 1891; **tam . . . quam quī**, 1892; **quam . . . tam**, 1893; correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970; preceding **quīn**, 1988.
- tamdiū**, correlative of **dum**, **quoad**, **quamdiū**, **quam**, **dōnec**, 1999, 2004.
- tamen**, with abl. abs., 1374; common use of, 1676, 1686; **quī tamen**, 1825; **cum tamen**, 1868; **cum . . . tamen**, 1880; correlative of **sī**, 2018; with **sī**, 2019; with **nisi**, 2020; correlative of **etsī**, **tametsī**, &c., 2116; introducing adversative sentence, 2151; after partic. expressing concession, 2295.
- tamenetsī**, 2116.
- tametsī**, concessive, 2116; coordinating, 2153.
- tamquam**, in periods of comparison, 1908; introducing reason, 1909; with or without **sī** in conditional comparisons, 2117-2121.
- tandem**, form of, 164, 3.
- tangō**, prin. parts of, 925; forms **tagō**, &c., 925; compounds of, 925.
- tantisper**, 1999.
- tantopere**, correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970.
- tantum**, with **nōn**, 1680; **quantum . . . tantum**, 1831; **tantum quod**, 1848; **tantum abest ut . . . ut**, 1969; correlative of **dum**, **quoad**, **quamdiū**, 1999.
- tantummodo**, 1999.
- tantundem**, with partitive gen., 1248.
- tantus**, form of, 147; **tantum** with gen., 1248, 1259; **tantī** as gen. of value, 1271, 1274, 1279; correlative of **ut**, **ut nōn**, 1970; **quantō . . . tantō**, 1973; preceding **quīn**, 1988.
- teges**, gender of, 572.
- tegō**, defective, 900; prin. parts of, 953.
- temnō**, defective, 808; pres. stem of, 833; prin. parts of, 955.
- temperī**, comparison of, 364.
- temperō**, with **nē**, 1960; with **quīn**, 1986.
- temptō**, with purpose clause, 1951; with infin., 1953.
- tendō**, prin. parts of, 924; form of **tenitur**, 166, 4; 924; compounds of, 924; with perf. infin., 2225.
- teneō**, prin. parts of, 1004; compounds of, 1004; with loc. abl., 1348; with **nē**, 1960; with **quōminus**, 1977; with **quīn**, 1986; **memoriā teneō** with pres. infin., 2220.
- tenus**, with abl. proper, 1297, 1420; as subst. with gen., 1406, 1420; position of, 1420.
- tepēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- ter**, quantity, 2433.
- teres**, decl. of, 533, 559, 635.
- tergeō**, **tergō**, forms of, 1000.
- terō**, prin. parts of, 963.
- terreō**, prin. parts of, 1004; with **sī**, 2068.
- terunci**, as gen. of value, 1272.
- texō**, prin. parts of, 972.
- th**, sound of, 72; use of, 19.
- Tiberis**, decl. of, 518, 549, 554.
- timeō**, prin. parts of, 1006; with **ut**, 1957.
- tingō**, prin. parts of, 954.
- tīs**, 646.
- tollō**, form of, 166, 6; 833; supplying parts of **ferō**, 780; prin. parts of, 926.
- tondeō**, perf. of, 859; prin. parts of, 995; compounds of, 995.
- tonō**, forms of, 993; **tonat**, defective, 815; **tonat**, impersonal, 1034.
- torpēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- torqueō**, prin. parts of, 999.
- torquis**, gender of, 579.
- torreō**, prin. parts of, 1004.
- tot**, indeclinable, 431; as adj., 431; not used partitively, 1244; **tot . . . quot**, 1831.
- totidem**, not used partitively, 1244.
- totiēns . . . quotiēns**, 1831, 1886.
- tōtus**, gen. sing. of, 127, 6; 618-620: decl. of, 618-620; construction with, 1202, 1238; with loc. abl., 1346; **tōtum hōc** as attribute of infin., 2215.
- trādux**, gender of, 581.
- trahō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- trāns**, compounds of, with acc., 1137; compounds of, with double acc., 1138; as adv., 1402; prep., 1410.
- tremiscō**, **tremēscō**, prin. parts of, 976, 834.
- tremō**, prin. parts of, 972.
- trēs**, decl. of, 639; with **ex** or **dē**, 1246.
- tribuō**, 367; prin. parts of, 947; **nōmen tribuō**, case with, 1214.
- tribus**, gender of, 588; decl. of, 592.
- triēns**, gender of, 580; meaning of, 2427.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## Index of Latin Words.

- ut, utei, utī**, form of, 1935; with gen., 1254; with *satin* in questions, 1510; in wishes, 1540; with subjv. in exhortations, 1547; with questions, 1568, 1569; coordinated member equivalent to result clause with, 1700; *sciō ut* as indef., 1788; with *dignus, indignus*, 1819; *quam ut*, 1896; general statement of use in subordinate clause, 1947, 1948; *ut nē*, 1947; *ut nōn*, 1947; *nēmō ut, vix ut, &c.*, 1947; in complementary final clauses, 1949-1960; after expressions of fear, &c., 1957, 1958; in pure final clauses, 1961-1964; in parenthetical clauses, 1962; expressing assumption or concession, 1963, 2110; in *provisos*, 1964; in complementary consecutive clauses, 1965-1969; *tantum abest ut . . . ut*, 1969; in pure consecutive clauses, 1970; after *nōn possum, &c.*, 1985.
- How*, in questions and exclamations, 1528.
- As*, with *infin.*, 1539; with *fut. perf.*, 1626; coordinated member equivalent to comparative sentence with, 1704; *ut quī*, 1827, 1828; *ut pote quī*, 1827; *ut . . . ita, sic, item*, 1831; *ut pote cum*, 1879; with *superl.*, 1892; *ut* or *sicut* after *quamvis*, 1905; correlatives of, 1937; *sicuti, sicut, velutī, velut*, 1937; with *adversative* correlation, 1938; with *quisque*, 1939; introducing parenthesis, 1940; in illustrations, 1941; *ut, prout*, making allowance, 1942; meaning *as indeed, as in fact*, 1943; meaning *like*, 1944; *praeut*, 1945; *sicut, since*, 1946; with *infin.* in *ind. disc.*, 2317; *idem ut*, 2373.
- ut, ut primum, simul ut, when*, use of, 1923-1934; with *quisque*, 1932.
- ut, where*, 1936.
- ut, ut sī*, in conditional comparisons, 2117, 2121.
- uter**, form of, 146; formation of, 347; gen. sing. of, 162, 618-620, 657, 693; decl. of, 618-620, 693; as rel. or indef., 693; in questions, 1526; with *-ne*, 1529; distinguished from *quis, quī*, 2385.
- ūter**, decl. of, 525.
- utercumque**, decl. of, 694.
- uterlibet**, decl. of, 694; use of, 2401.
- uterque**, gen. sing. of, 127, 6; 657, 694; decl. of, 694; **utriusque** with gen. of pron., 1234; as subst. and as adj., 1243; of two individuals, 2399; **utriusque**, of two sets, 2399; **utriusque**, of two individuals, 2399; combined with different case of *alter* or different case of same word to express reciprocal relations, 2400.
- utervīs**, decl. of, 694; use of, 2401.
- ūtilis**, comparison of, 359; constructions with, 1201.
- utinam**, in wishes, 1540.
- ūtor**, prin. parts of, 983; with *abl.*, 1379, 1381; use of *gerundive* of, 2244.
- utrum . . . an, anne, an nōn**, 1517, 1519; **utrum . . . an . . . an**, 1521; **utrum . . . -ne . . . an**, 1522; **utrumne . . . an**, 1522; **utrum**, alone, 1523; as pron., 1522; **utrum . . . -ne . . . an, utrumne . . . an**, 1779; followed by *quis, quī*, indef., 2388.
- v**, the character, as vowel and as cons., 22; as cons., 25, 26; sound of, 69; after *q, g, s*, 27, 177; interchange of vowel and cons., 52; changed to *b*, 161; medial, disappearance of, 153, 1.
- vacō**, constructions with, 1303, 1304.
- vacuus**, with gen., 1264; with *abl.*, 1306; with *prep.*, 1306.
- vādō**, defective, 808; prin. parts of, 958.
- vae**, with *dat.*, 1206.
- vafer**, comparison of, 358.
- vāh**, with *nom.* of exclamation, 1117.
- vāleō**, defective, 905; prin. parts of, 1006.
- valēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- vallēs (vallis)**, 541.
- vānēscō**, prin. parts of, 976.
- vannus**, gender of, 447.
- vas**, gender and decl. of, 475.
- vās**, decl. of, 492; gender of, 578.
- vātēs**, decl. of, 478, 566.
- ve**, enclitic, 93; appended to *nē*, 1581, 1586, 1674; use of, 1667, 1674; quantity, 2433; at end of verse, 2568.
- vēcors**, decl. of, 532.
- vectis**, gender of, 579.
- vehō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- vel**, with *superl.*, 1466, 1671; meaning *if you will, even, perhaps, for instance*, 1671; use of, 1667, 1669, 1670; followed by *etiam, potius, dicam*, 1670; in sense of *aut*, 1670; quantity, 2433.
- vellō**, see **vollō**.

## Index of Latin Words.

- velutī, velut**, 1937; **velut sī**, in conditional comparisons, 2117-2121.
- vēndō**, formation of, 395; forms of, 757; forms of, supplied by **vēneō**, 757, 1471; **vēnum dō** used for, 1165.
- vēneō**, formation of, 395; supplying forms of **vēndō**, 757, 1471; **vēnum eō** used for, 1165; followed by **ab** and **abl.**, 1318.
- veniō**, perf. of, 862; prin. parts of, 1013; compounds of, 822; **venit in mentem**, 1290; **quod veniō**, &c., 1840; with infin. of purpose, 2164; with supine, 2271.
- venter**, decl. of, 525.
- vēnum dō**, use of, for **vēndō**, 1165.
- vēnum eō**, use of, for **vēneō**, 1165.
- veprēs**, gender of, 579.
- vēr**, gender and decl. of, 489.
- verberis**, decl. of, 489; gender of, 573.
- vereor**, conjug. of, 798; prin. parts of, 1009; with **gen.**, 1286; with **ut, nē**, 1957, 1958; **vereor nē** as expansion of **apod.**, 2114; with infin., 1959, 2169; with indirect question, 1959.
- vergō**, defective, 808.
- vermis**, gender of, 579.
- vērō**, use of, 1684; with **nisi**, 2020; introducing adversative sentence, 2151; position of, 1676; **nōn hercle vērō**, **minimē vērō**, 1513; **vērō, ita enim vērō, ita vērō**, in answers, 1512.
- verrō**, see **vorrō**.
- versicolor**, decl. of, 537.
- versus**, prep., 1414; position of, 1414.
- vertō (vortō)**, prin. parts of, 950.
- verū**, gender of, 586; decl. of, 592.
- vērūm**, in answers, 1512; with **et**, 1648; **vērūm** or **vērūm etiam** after **nōn modo**, &c., 1680; common use of, 1679; introducing adversative sentence, 2151.
- vēscor**, with **abl.**, 1379; use of gerundive of, 2244.
- vesperāscit**, prin. parts of, 968.
- vesperī, vespere**, use of, 703, 1341.
- vester**, decl. of, 652; **vestrā** with **rēfert, interest**, 1277; used instead of **gen.**, 1234, 1262.
- vetō**, forms of, 993; used personally in **pass.**, 2201; with **o** shortened, 2443.
- vetus**, comparison of, 358; decl. of, 491, 503, 626.
- vicem**, resembling prep., 1406.
- vicīniae, loc.**, 1339, 1340.
- vicis**, decl. of, 430, 473.
- vidēlicet**, form of, 712.
- videō**, perf. of, 862; prin. parts of, 997; **vidē, vidē ut** with subjv., 1579; **vidē nē, vidētō nē** with subjv., 1585, 1958; in **pres. indic.** after **postquam**, &c., 1926; with purpose clause, 1951; **sī vidētur**, 2113; with **acc.** and **infn.**, 2175; **videor** with **infn.**, 2169; **videor** personally, 2179; **vidētur** impersonally, 2181; **vidērī**, subj. of, omitted with verbs of desire, 2190.
- vigeō**, prin. parts of, 1006.
- vigil**, gender and decl. of, 636, 482, 544, 561.
- vinciō**, prin. parts of, 1014.
- vincō**, prin. parts of, 938.
- vīrus**, gender and decl. of, 493.
- vīs**, decl. of, 430, 518, 548, 554; stems of, 569.
- vīscus**, gender and decl. of, 491.
- vīsō**, **pres. stem** of, 835; prin. parts of, 945.
- vītis**, decl. of, 522.
- vītō**, with **dat.** or **acc.**, 1184; with **nē**, 1960.
- vīvēscō**, prin. parts of, 959.
- vīvō**, prin. parts of, 953.
- vix**, 1451; **nōn modo (nōn solum, . . . sed vix, 1682; vix . . . cum, 1869; vix ut, 1947; with gerundives, 2249; vixdum . . . cum, 1869.**
- vollō (vellō)**, perf. of, 866; prin. parts of, 951.
- volō**, conjug. of, 772, 773; forms **volt, vult, voltis, vultis**, 774; forms **vellem, &c.**, 146; **sīs**, 774; **sīs** with **imper.**, 1572; **sīs** parenthetical, 2113; **sultis**, 774; **sultis** with **imper.**, 1572; **sultis** parenthetical, 2113; form of **volt**, 828; form of **velim, &c.**, 841; prin. parts of, 922; use of **dat.** of partic. of, 1218; use of **velim, volō**, 1555; use of **vellem**, 1560; **volō, velim**, with subjv., 1579; **sī voluerō**, 1632; coordination of forms of, 1707, 1787; **quam vīs, &c.**, 1374, 1903-1906; with **ut**, 1950; with **infn.**, 2169; with **acc.** and **infn.**, 1954, 2189, 2190, 2228; with **perf. act. infn.**, 2223, 2224, 2228; with **perf. pass. infn.**, 2229; in **conative** use, 2303.
- volturius**, **voc. sing.** of, 459.
- volucris**, stems of, 490, 500, 566.
- volvō**, prin. parts of, 947.
- vōmis**, decl. of, 491, 499; gender of, 579.

## *Index of Latin Words.*

---

**vomō**, prin. parts of, 972.  
**vorrō**, **verrō**, prin. parts of, 950.  
**vorsus**, prep., 1414; position of, 1414.  
**vortō**, see **vertō**.  
**vōs**, decl. of, 644-651; see **tū**.  
**voster**. see **vester**.  
**vostrās**, accent of, 88.  
**votō**, see **vetō**.  
**voveō**, prin. parts of, 996.

**x**, double cons., 70; sound of, 70; result of assimilation, 164; makes position, 177.

**y**, introduction of, 17; represented by **u**, 21; pronunciation of, 33, 42.

**z**, introduction of, 17; represented by **s** and **ss**, 21; makes position, 177.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

# Lane's Latin Grammars

---

LANE'S LATIN GRAMMAR . . . . . \$1.50

FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By GEORGE M. LANE, Ph.D., LL.D., Late Professor Emeritus in Harvard University.

In many respects this is the most thorough, philosophical, and complete Latin Grammar ever published in this country, representing, as it does, the crowning work and ripest conclusions of one of the most eminent teachers of the language. The work has the distinction, rarely accorded to a text-book, of being regarded both as a literary and as a scientific event. Its preparation engaged the author, during the intervals of teaching at Harvard University, for nearly thirty years. After his death the work was taken up and completed by his colleague, Dr. Morris H. Morgan, of Harvard University. Some of the distinguishing features and merits of the book are comprehensiveness and accuracy in detail, precision of definition and statement, combined with a remarkably clear arrangement and singular aptness of illustration. The supplementary aids are an important feature. These include a chapter on Versification written by Dr. Herman W. Hayley, a former pupil of Professor Lane, and brief expositions of such important subjects as Rules of Quantity and Figures of Prosody, Occasional Peculiarities of Verbs, Indirect Discourse, Use of Pronouns and Numerals. The book contains also a complete Index of Subjects and an Index of Latin Words with references.

LANE AND MORGAN'S SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR . . . \$1.00

Prepared by MORRIS H. MORGAN, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor of Classical Philology in Harvard University.

This book is intended for the use of students of Latin during their course in secondary schools. It is based on "Lane's Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges," and furnished abundant material for careful training in Latin pronunciation, for the study of leading principles under which Latin words are formed, for thorough drill in inflections, and for acquiring a good working knowledge of the most important principles of Latin syntax and composition. The arrangement of the material is clear and logical with cross-references to the to the larger grammar.

---

*Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.*

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

# Latin Prose Writing

WITH FULL INTRODUCTORY NOTES ON IDIOM

By MAURICE W. MATHER, Ph.D.

Formerly Instructor in Latin in Harvard University

and ARTHUR L. WHEELER, Ph.D.

Instructor in Latin in Yale University

Half Leather, 12mo, 216 pages . . . . . Price \$1.00

---

The present book furnishes all the essential material for the writing of average passages in Latin Prose. It is not intended to teach how to write isolated sentences, illustrative of given constructions, but the book assumes that the pupil, after a year or more of such practice, is ready to learn the art of writing connected narrative in Latin. The authors have based their exercises on Caesar's Gallic War Books III and IV, Nepos's Alcibiades and Hannibal, and Cicero's Manilian Law and Archias, inasmuch as these are not only models of good style, but are usually read in schools. As the book is not for beginners, the individual exercises have not been made vehicles for teaching any one or two constructions, but the authors have felt at liberty to introduce at any time even the more difficult constructions; indirect discourse, for instance, being taken up at the very beginning.

While, in general, the vocabulary and the constructions for any exercise are supplied in the Latin text on which the given exercise is based, yet enough variation from the language of the model is required to give the pupil abundant practice in handling forms and constructions. By this means the pupil's power of observation is increased, his interest is quickened by the pleasure of discovery, and he will remember the word much better than if he found it ready at hand in a dictionary.

A number of recent examination papers from various colleges have been inserted in the belief that they will be found useful for sight tests and occasional examinations. The notes accompanying some of the papers belong to the original examinations. At the end of the book are indexes of words and constructions, and of English words and phrases with references to sections of the Notes on Idiom in Part I.

---

*Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.*

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati



Chicago



# HORACE'S ODES, EPODES and CARMEN SAECULARE

EDITED, WITH INTRODUCTION AND COMMENTARY,  
BY CLIFFORD HERSCHEL MOORE,

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND GREEK, HARVARD UNIVERSITY.

Cloth, 12mo, 465 pp. Price, \$1.50. Text edition. Price, 40 cents.

---

**T**HIS edition of Horace's lyrical poems has been prepared for the needs of freshmen and sophomores. The introduction is intended to give the necessary information as to the poet's life and writings. The text is the vulgate, although in some passages the better manuscript edition has been preferred. Inasmuch as young students require no little help if they are to understand as well as translate the Odes and Epodes, the editor has not limited his commentary to the baldest aids, but has tried to give such assistance in interpretation as may help students to some appreciation of Horace's art and charm. The relation of the poet to his Greek models is shown by frequent quotations. To all the more difficult Greek passages translations have been appended. A number of quotations from the later Latin writers are also given to indicate in some degree the ready acceptance which Horace's phrases found among his successors.

---

*For list of the entire series and descriptive catalogue of text-books  
in the Ancient Languages, write to the Publishers,*

**AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY**

**NEW YORK                      CINCINNATI                      CHICAGO**  
**BOSTON                      ATLANTA                      DALLAS                      SAN FRANCISCO**



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



# HISTORY

---

Tens of thousands of important historical sources, many previously unobtainable, are now available for the first time with a Forgotten Books Full Membership.

Unlimited Access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

# A DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF HIGH SCHOOL AND COLLEGE TEXT-BOOKS

---

---

WE issue a complete descriptive catalogue of our text-books for secondary schools and higher institutions, illustrated with authors' portraits.

For the convenience of teachers, separate sections are published, devoted to the newest and best books in the following branches of study:

ENGLISH  
MATHEMATICS  
HISTORY AND POLITICAL SCIENCE  
SCIENCE  
MODERN LANGUAGES  
ANCIENT LANGUAGES  
PHILOSOPHY AND EDUCATION

If you are interested in any of these branches, we shall be very glad to send you on request the catalogue sections which you may wish to see. Address the nearest office of the Company.

---

---

## AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Publishers of School and College Text-Books

NEW YORK

CINCINNATI

CHICAGO

Boston

Atlanta

Dallas

San Francisco

# Latin Dictionaries

---

## HARPER'S LATIN DICTIONARY

Founded on the translation of "Freund's Latin-German Lexicon."  
Edited by E. A. ANDREWS, LL.D. Revised, Enlarged, and in great  
part Rewritten by CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D., and CHARLES  
SHORT, LL.D.

Royal Octavo, 2030 pages . Sheep, \$6.50 ; Full Russia, \$10.00

The translation of Dr. Freund's great Latin-German Lexicon, edited by the late Dr. E. A. Andrews, and published in 1850, has been from that time in extensive and satisfactory use throughout England and America. Meanwhile great advances have been made in the science on which lexicography depends. The present work embodies the latest advances in philological study and research, and is in every respect the most complete and satisfactory Latin Dictionary published.

## LEWIS'S LATIN DICTIONARY FOR SCHOOLS

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.

Large Octavo, 1200 pages . Cloth, \$4.50 ; Half Leather, \$5.00

This dictionary is not an abridgment, but an entirely new and independent work, designed to include all of the student's needs, after acquiring the elements of grammar, for the interpretation of the Latin authors commonly read in school.

## LEWIS'S ELEMENTARY LATIN DICTIONARY

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.

Crown Octavo, 952 pages. Half Leather . . . . \$2.00

This work is sufficiently full to meet the needs of students in secondary or preparatory schools, and also in the first and second years' work in colleges.

## SMITH'S ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

A Complete and Critical English-Latin Dictionary. By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D., and THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A., Fellow of University College, London. With a Dictionary of Proper Names.

Royal Octavo, 765 pages. Sheep . . . . \$4.00

---

*Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.*

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

# Classical Dictionaries

---

## HARPER'S DICTIONARY OF CLASSICAL LITERATURE AND ANTIQUITIES

Edited by H. T. PECK, Ph.D., Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Columbia University.

Royal Octavo, 1716 pages. Illustrated.

One Vol. Cloth . . .	\$6.00	Two Vols. Cloth . . .	\$7.00
One Vol. Half Leather . . .	8.00	Two Vols Half Leather . . .	10 00

An encyclopaedia, giving the student, in a concise and intelligible form, the essential facts of classical antiquity. It also indicates the sources whence a fuller and more critical knowledge of these subjects can best be obtained. The articles, which are arranged alphabetically, include subjects in biography, mythology, geography, history, literature, antiquities, language, and bibliography. The illustrations are, for the most part, reproductions of ancient objects. The editor in preparing the book has received the co-operation and active assistance of the most eminent American and foreign scholars.

## SMITH'S DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES

Edited by WILLIAM SMITH, Ph.D. Revised by CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. Octavo, 1133 pages. Illustrated. Sheep \$4.25

Carefully revised, giving the results of the latest researches in the history, philology, and antiquities of the ancients. In the work of revision, the American editor has had the assistance of the most distinguished scholars and scientists.

## STUDENTS' CLASSICAL DICTIONARY

A Dictionary of Biography, Mythology, and Geography. Abridged. By WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.

12mo, 438 pages. Cloth . . . . . \$1.25

Designed for those schools and students who are excluded from the use of the larger Classical Dictionary, both by its size and its price. All names have been inserted which one would be likely to meet with at the beginning of classical study.

---

*Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.*

American Book Company

New York  
(311)

Cincinnati

Chicago